Hand-book of physiology / by W. D. Halliburton.

Contributors

Kirkes, William Senhouse, 1823-1864.
Augustus Long Health Sciences Library

Publication/Creation

Philadelphia : Blakiston, 1908.

Persistent URL

https://wellcomecollection.org/works/j6fgtx3t

License and attribution

This material has been provided by This material has been provided by the Augustus C. Long Health Sciences Library at Columbia University and Columbia University Libraries/Information Services, through the Medical Heritage Library. The original may be consulted at the the Augustus C. Long Health Sciences Library at Columbia University and Columbia University. where the originals may be consulted.
This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.

wellcome collection

Wellcome Collection
183 Euston Road
London NW1 2BE UK
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722
E library@wellcomecollection.org
https://wellcomecollection.org

COLUMBIA LIBRARIES OFFSITE
HEALTH SCIENCES STANDARD
HX64126820
QP34 .K63 1908 Hand-book of physiol
RECAP

QP34
K63
1908

Columbia University
in the City of New York

School of Dental and Oral Surgery



Reference Library

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2010 with funding from
Open Knowledge Commons (for the Medical Heritage Library project)

http://www.archive.org/details/handbookofphysio1908kirk

HALLIBURTON'S
HANDBOOK OF PHYSIOLOGY

HAND-BOOK

OF

PHYSIOLOGY

By W. D. HALLIBURTON, M.D.
LL.D., F.R.C.P., F.R.S.
PROFESSOR OF PHYSIOLOGY, KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON.

TWENTY-FIRST EDITION

WITH NEARLY SEVEN HUNDRED ILLUSTRATIONS

INCLUDING SOME COLOURED PLATES

PHILADELPHIA:
P. BLAKISTON'S SON, & CO.
1012 WALNUT STREET
1908

[*Printed in Great Britain*]

QP34
K63
1908

PREFACE

THE rapid progress Physiology has made within the last few years has necessitated somewhat extensive alterations in the present edition. The chapters dealing with the proteins, blood coagulation, digestion, absorption, respiration, kidney function, and metabolism are almost entirely new. I am much indebted to Mr J. Barcroft, M.A., of King's College, Cambridge, for his valued help in re-writing many portions of the book, especially those relating to gaseous metabolism. I have also again to thank Dr C. S. Myers, M.A., Professor of Psychology at King's College, London, for assistance in revising the account given of the special senses, and to Professor Arthur Robinson, of the University of Birmingham, for similar help in connection with the subjects of generation and development. A good many new illustrations have been introduced, room having been made for them by the omission of some of the old ones. Some of the new tracings shown I owe to the kindness of Professor Sherrington, F.R.S., of the University of Liverpool. Without the kind co-operation of so many friends, it would have been impossible for me to have brought out such a complete revision of the book within the short space of time that has elapsed since the last edition was published. In spite of the introduction of so much new material, the bulk of the volume has not been materially increased, extensive excisions of what has now become antiquated having also been carried out. In bringing the book up to date, I have endeavoured to remember that the main object of the work is to supply students with an elementary text-book, although at the same time my aim has been to make it as complete as possible.

W. D. HALLIBURTON.

KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON.
1907.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I

	PAGE
INTRODUCTORY	1
Definition of the Science of Physiology	1
Physiological Methods	3
The Organs, Tissues, and Cells of the Body	4
Animal and Vegetable Cells	5
The Signs of Life	6

CHAPTER II

THE ANIMAL CELL	8
Protoplasm	8
Nucleus	10
Attraction Sphere	12
Protoplasmic Movement	12
Cell Division	16
The Ovum	20

CHAPTER III

EPITHELIUM	22
Classification of Epithelium	22
Pavement Epithelium	22
Cubical, Spheroidal, and Columnar Epithelium	25
Ciliated Epithelium	27
Ciliary Motion	29
Transitional Epithelium	30
Stratified Epithelium	31
Nutrition of Epithelium	33
Chemistry of Epithelium	33

CHAPTER IV

PAGE

THE CONNECTIVE TISSUES 35
Areolar Tissue 36
Fibrous Tissue 41
Elastic Tissue 43
Adipose Tissue 43
Retiform Tissue 46
Adenoid or Lymphoid Tissue 47
Basement Membranes 47
Jelly-like Connective Tissue 48

CHAPTER V

THE CONNECTIVE TISSUES—*continued* 49
Cartilage 49
Bone 54
Ossification 59
Teeth 64
The Blood 76

CHAPTER VI

MUSCULAR TISSUE 78
Voluntary Muscle 79
Red Muscles 87
Cardiac Muscle 87
Plain Muscle 87
Development of Muscular Fibres 88

CHAPTER VII

NERVE 90
Structure of Nerves 90
Terminations of Nerves 95
Development of Nerves 96

CHAPTER VIII

IRRITABILITY AND CONTRACTILITY 99

CHAPTER IX

CONTRACTION OF MUSCLE—Summary 105

CHAPTER X

PAGE

Change in Form in a Muscle when it Contracts 107
Instruments used 107
Simple Muscle Curve 116
The Muscle-Wave 118
Effect of two Successive Stimuli 119
Effect of more than two Stimuli 120
Tetanus 121
Voluntary Tetanus 121

CHAPTER XI

Extensibility, Elasticity, and Work of Muscle 125

CHAPTER XII

The Electrical Phenomena of Muscle 133

CHAPTER XIII

Thermal and Chemical Changes in Muscle 147
Fatigue 150
Rigor Mortis 153
Chemical Composition of Muscle 154

CHAPTER XIV

Comparison of Voluntary and Involuntary Muscle 158

CHAPTER XV

Physiology of Nerve 161
Classification of Nerves 161
Investigation of Nerve Functions 164
Degeneration of Nerve 164
Regeneration of Nerve 166
Roots of the Spinal Nerves 168
Changes in Nerve during Activity 171
Velocity of a Nerve Impulse 172
Direction of a Nerve Impulse 173
Crossing of Nerves 173
Chemistry of Nervous Tissues 175

CHAPTER XVI

Electrotonus 179

CHAPTER XVII

PAGE

NERVE CENTRES 190
Structure of Nerve-Cells 192
The Significance of Nissl's Granules 200
Classification of Nerve-Cells according to their Function . . . 203
The Law of Axipetal Conduction 204

CHAPTER XVIII

THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM 206
The Heart 206
Course of the Circulation 213
Structure of Arteries 214
Structure of Veins 216
Structure of Capillaries 219
Structure of Lymphatic Vessels 221

CHAPTER XIX

THE CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD 226

CHAPTER XX

PHYSIOLOGY OF THE HEART 231
The Cardiac Cycle 231
Action of the Valves of the Heart 233
Sounds of the Heart 234
Coronary Arteries 237
Cardiographs 237
Intracardiac Pressure 240
Frequency of the Heart's Action 244
Work of the Heart 244
Innervation of the Heart 247
The Excised Heart 252

CHAPTER XXI

THE CIRCULATION IN THE BLOOD-VESSELS 259
Use of the Elasticity of the Vessels 261
Blood-pressure 263
Velocity of the Blood-flow 278
The Time of a Complete Circulation 285
The Pulse 287
The Capillary Flow 293
The Venous Flow 295
The Vaso-motor Nervous System 297
Plethysmography 307
Pathological Conditions 310
Local Peculiarities of the Circulation 311

CHAPTER XXII

PAGE

Lymph and Lymphatic Glands 314
Composition of Lymph 314
Lymphatic Glands 315
Lymph Flow 317
Relation of Lymph and Blood 318
Formation of Lymph 318
Osmotic Phenomena 321

CHAPTER XXIII

The Ductless Glands 328
Spleen 329
Hæmolymph Glands 333
Thymus 334
Thyroid 335
Parathyroids 337
Supra-renal Capsules 338
Pituitary Body 341
Pineal Gland 341
Coccygeal and Carotid Glands 342

CHAPTER XXIV

Respiration 343
Respiratory Apparatus 343
Respiratory Mechanism 351
The Respiratory Centre 359
The Nervous Cause of Respiration 360
The Chemical Cause of Respiration 362
Special Respiratory Acts 364
Effect of Respiration on the Circulation 366
Asphyxia 370
Effects of Foreign Gases, and Alterations of Pressure . . . 373
Chemistry of Respiration 374
External Respiration 374
Gases of the Blood 377
Tension of Gases in Fluids 380
Tissue Respiration 384
Ventilation 389

CHAPTER XXV

The Chemical Composition of the Body 390
Carbohydrates 390
Fats 397
Proteins 399
Protein-hydrolysis 414
Ferments 415

CHAPTER XXVI

PAGE

The Blood 419
Coagulation of the Blood 421
The Plasma and Serum 426
The Blood-Corpuscles 429
Development of the Blood-Corpuscles 436
Chemistry of the Blood-Corpuscles 439
Hæmoglobin 440
Immunity 451

CHAPTER XXVII

The Alimentary Canal 457

CHAPTER XXVIII

Food 470
Dietaries 470
Milk 472
The Mammary Glands 475
Eggs 476
Meat 477
Flour 478
Bread 479
Cooking of Food 479
Accessories to Food 480

CHAPTER XXIX

Secreting Glands 481
Electrical Variations in Glands 484

CHAPTER XXX

Saliva 485
The Salivary Glands 485
Secretory Nerves of Salivary Glands 487
The Saliva 490

CHAPTER XXXI

The Gastric Juice 493
Composition 495
Innervation of the Gastric Glands 496
Action of Gastric Juice 498

CHAPTER XXXII

PAGE

Digestion in the Intestines 502
The Pancreas 502
Composition and Action of Pancreatic Juice 503
The so-called Peripheral Reflex Secretion of the Pancreas . . 505
The Succus Entericus 507
Bacterial Action 510
Leucine and Tyrosine 511
Extirpation of the Pancreas 511

CHAPTER XXXIII

The Liver 513
Functions 518
Bile 518
Glycogenic Function of the Liver 524
Diabetes 526
Nerves of the Liver 528

CHAPTER XXXIV

The Absorption of Food 529

CHAPTER XXXV

The Mechanical Processes of Digestion 535
Mastication 535
Deglutition 536
Movements of the Stomach 538
Vomiting 540
Movements of the Intestines 541

CHAPTER XXXVI

The Urinary Apparatus 545
Functions of the Kidneys 553
The Nerves of the Kidney 553
The Kidney Oncometer 554
Activity of Renal Epithelium 555
Activity of Glomeruli 557
The Work done by the Kidney 559
Extirpation of the Kidneys 560
Passage of Urine into the Bladder 561
Micturition 561

CHAPTER XXXVII

PAGE

The Urine 563
Urea 564
Ammonia 570
Creatinine 570
Uric Acid 571
Hippuric Acid 574
Inorganic Constituents of Urine 575
Urinary Deposits 578
Pathological Urine 581

CHAPTER XXXVIII

The Skin and Its Appendages 585

CHAPTER XXXIX

General Metabolism 594
Balance in Health 595
Metabolism of Carbohydrates 596
Metabolism of Fat 598
Metabolism of Protein 602
Inanition or Starvation 607

CHAPTER XL

Animal Heat 609

CHAPTER XLI

The Central Nervous System 618

CHAPTER XLII

Structure of the Spinal Cord 620

CHAPTER XLIII

The Brain 634

CHAPTER XLIV

Structure of the Bulb, Pons, and Mid-Brain 638
The Cranial Nerves 652

CHAPTER XLV

PAGE
Structure of the Cerebellum 659

CHAPTER XLVI

Structure of the Cerebrum 663
Histology of the Cortex 667
The Convolutions 673

CHAPTER XLVII

Functions of the Spinal Cord 678
The Cord as an Organ of Conduction 678
Reflex Action of the Cord 680
Reflex Action in Man 682
The Principle of the Common Path 686
Reaction Time 689
Spinal Visceral Reflexes 690

CHAPTER XLVIII

Functions of the Cerebrum 692
Removal of the Cerebrum 692
Localisation of Cerebral Functions 693
Function and Myelination 705
Association Fibres and Centres 707
Electrical Variation 711
Sleep 711

CHAPTER XLIX

Functions of the Cerebellum 716
The Semicircular Canals 719

CHAPTER L

Comparative Physiology of the Brain 724

CHAPTER LI

Sensation 728

CHAPTER LII

Cutaneous Sensations 733
Tactile End-Organs 733
Localisation of Tactile Sensations 737
Varieties of Cutaneous Sensations 739
The Motorial Sense 742

CHAPTER LIII

PAGE

TASTE AND SMELL 743
Taste 743
Smell 748

CHAPTER LIV

HEARING 752
Anatomy of the Ear 752
Physiology of Hearing 759

CHAPTER LV

VOICE AND SPEECH 764
Anatomy of the Larynx 764
Movements of the Vocal Cords 770
The Voice 771
Speech 773
Defects of Speech 774

CHAPTER LVI

THE EYE AND VISION 776
The Eyeball 777
The Eye as an Optical Instrument 788
Accommodation 792
Defects in the Optical Apparatus 796
Functions of the Iris 799
Functions of the Retina 801
The Ophthalmoscope 804
The Perimeter 806
Visual Sensations and Colour Vision 808
Changes in the Retina during Activity 813
Positions of the Eyeballs 816
Nervous Paths in the Optic Nerves 819
Visual Judgments 820

CHAPTER LVII

TROPHIC NERVES 824

CHAPTER LVIII

THE REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS 827
Male Organs 828
Female Organs 832

CHAPTER LIX

PAGE

DEVELOPMENT 838
The Ovum 838
Maturation of the Ovum 839
Impregnation 841
Segmentation 842
The Decidua and the Fœtal Membranes 847
Development of the Fœtal Appendages and Membranes . . . 850
Development of the Framework of the Body 856
Development of the Vascular System 861
Development of the Nervous System 871
Development of the Alimentary Canal 879
Development of the Respiratory Apparatus 882
Development of the Genito-urinary Apparatus 883

INDEX 891

FAHRENHEIT and CENTIGRADE SCALES.

F.	C.
500°	260°
401	205
392	200
383	195
374	190
356	180
347	175
338	170
329	165
320	160
311	155
302	150
284	140
275	135
266	130
248	120
239	115
230	110
212	100
203	95
194	90
176	80
167	75
140	60
122	50
113	45
105	40·54
104	40
100	37·8
98·5	36·9
95	35
86	30
77	25
68	20
50	10
41	5
32	0
23	− 5
14	−10
+ 5	−15
− 4	−20
−13	−25
−22	−30
−40	−40
−76	−60

1 deg. F. = ·54° C.
1·8 ,, = 1° C.
3·6 ,, = 2° C.
4·5 ,, = 2·5° C.
5·4 ,, = 3° C.

To convert degrees F. into degrees C., subtract 32, and multiply by $\frac{5}{9}$.

To convert degrees C. into degrees F., multiply by $\frac{9}{5}$, and add 32°.

MEASUREMENTS.

FRENCH INTO ENGLISH.

LENGTH.

1 mètre, 10 décimètres, 100 centimètres, 1000 millimètres = 39·37 English inches (or 1 yard and 3¼ in.)

1 décimètre, 10 centimètres, 100 millimètres = 3·937 inches (or nearly 4 inches).

1 centimètre, 10 millimètres = ·3937 or about (nearly $\frac{2}{5}$ inch).
1 millimètre = nearly $\frac{1}{25}$ inch.

Or,

One Mètre = 39·37079 inches.

(It is the ten-millionth part of a quarter of the meridian of the earth.)

1 Décimètre = 4 in.
1 Centimètre = $\frac{4}{10}$ in.
1 Millimètre = $\frac{1}{25}$ in.
Décamètre = 32·80 feet.
Hectomètre = 109·36 yds.
Kilomètre = 0·62 mile.
One inch = 2·539 Centimètres.
One foot = 3·047 Décimètres.
One yard = 0·91 of a Mètre.
One mile = 1·60 Kilomètre.

WEIGHT.

(One gramme is the *weight* of a cubic centimètre of water at 4° C. at Paris.)

1 gramme, 10 décigrammes, 100 centigrammes, 1000 milligrammes = 15·432349 grs. (or nearly 15½).

1 décigramme, 10 centigrammes, 100 milligrammes = rather more than 1½ grain.

1 centigramme, 10 décigrammes = rather more than $\frac{3}{20}$ grain.

1 milligramme = rather more than $\frac{3}{2000}$ grain.

Or,

1 Décagramme = 2 dr. 34 gr.
1 Hectogrm. = 3½ oz. (Avoir.)
1 Kilogrm. = 2 lb. 3 oz. 2 dr. (Avoir.)

A grain equals about 1·16 gram., a Troy oz. about 31 grams., a lb. Avoirdupois about ½ Kilogrm., and 1 cwt. about 50 Kilogrms.

CAPACITY.

1,000 cubic décimètres, 1,000,000 cubic centimètres = 1 cubic mètre.

1 cubic décimètre or 1000 cubic centimètres = 1 litre.

Or,

One Litre = 1 pt. 15 oz. 1 dr. 40.

(For simplicity, *Litre* is used to signify 1 cubic décimètre, a little less than 1 English quart.)

Décilitre (100 c.c.)	= 3½ oz.
Centilitre (10 c.c.)	= 2½ dr.
Millilitre (1 c.c.)	= 17 m.
Décalitre	= 2½ gals.
Hectolitre	= 22 gals.
Kilolitre (cubic mètre)	= 27½ bushels.

A cubic inch = 16·38 c.c.; a cubic foot = 28·315 cubic dec., and a gallon = 4·54 litres.

CONVERSION SCALE.

To convert Grammes to Ounces avoirdupois, multiply by 20 and divide by 567.

To convert Kilogrammes to Pounds, multiply by 1000 and divide by 454.

To convert Litres to Gallons, multiply by 22 and divide by 100.

To convert Litres to Pints, multiply by 88 and divide by 50.

To convert Millimètres to Inches, multiply by 10 and divide by 254.

To convert Mètres to Yards, multiply by 70 and divide by 64.

SURFACE MEASUREMENT.

1 square mètre = about 1550 sq. inches (or 10,000 sq. centimètres, or 10·75 sq. ft.)
1 sq. inch = about 6·4 sq. centimètres.
1 sq. foot = ,, 930 ,, ,,

ENERGY MEASURE.

1 kilogrammètre = about 7·24 ft. pounds.
1 foot pound = ,, ·1381 kgm.
1 foot ton = ,, 310 kgms.

HEAT EQUIVALENT.

1 kilocalorie = 424 kilogrammètres.

ENGLISH MEASURES.

Apothecaries Weight.

7000 grains = 1 lb.

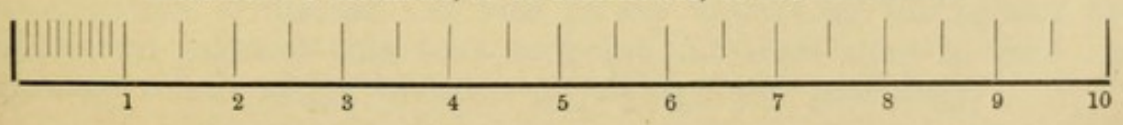
Or,

437·5 grains = 1 oz.

Avoirdupois Weight.

16 drams = 1 oz.
16 oz. = 1 lb.
28 lbs. = 1 quarter.
4 quarters = 1 cwt.
20 cwt. = 1 ton.

Measure of 1 décimètre, or 10 centimètres, or 100 millimètres.



HANDBOOK OF PHYSIOLOGY

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTORY

Biology is the science that treats of living things, and it is divided into two main branches, which are called respectively Morphology and Physiology. *Morphology* is the part of the science that deals with the form or structure of living things, and with the problems of their origin and distribution. *Physiology*, on the other hand, treats of their functions, that is, the manner in which their individual parts carry out the processes of life. To take an instance: the eye and the liver are two familiar examples of what are called organs; the anatomist studies the structure of these organs, their shape, their size, the tissues of which they are composed, their position in the body, and the variations in their structure met with in different parts of the animal kingdom. The physiologist studies their uses, and seeks to explain how the eye fulfils the function of vision, and how the liver forms bile, and ministers to the needs of the body in other ways.

Each of these two great branches of biological science can be further subdivided according as to whether it deals with the animal or the vegetable kingdom; thus we get vegetable physiology and animal physiology. Human Physiology is a large and important branch of animal physiology, and to the student of medicine is obviously the portion of the science that should interest him most. In order to understand morbid or pathological processes it is necessary that the normal or physiological functions should be learnt first. Physiology is not a study which can be put aside and forgotten when a certain examination has been passed; it has a most direct and intimate bearing in its application to the scientific and successful investigation of disease. It will be my endeavour throughout the subsequent pages of this book to point out from time to time the practical relationships between physiology and pathology.

Human physiology will be our chief theme, but it is not a portion of the great science that can be studied independently of its other portions. Thus, many of the experiments upon which our knowledge of human physiology rests have been performed principally on certain of the lower animals. In order to obtain a wide view of vital processes it will be occasionally necessary to go still further afield, and call the science of vegetable physiology to our assistance.

The study of physiology must go hand in hand with the study of anatomy. It is impossible to understand how the body or any part of the body acts unless we know accurately the structure of the organs under consideration. This is especially true for that portion of anatomy which is called Microscopic Anatomy or Histology. Indeed, so close is the relationship between minute structure and function that in this country it is usual for the teacher of physiology to be also the teacher of histology. Another branch of anatomy, namely, Embryology, or the process of growth from the ovum, falls also to some extent within the province of the physiologist.

But physiology is not only intimately related in this way to its sister science anatomy, but the sciences of chemistry and physics must also be considered. Indeed, physiology has been sometimes defined as the application of the laws of chemistry and physics to life. That is to say, the same laws that regulate the behaviour of the mineral or inorganic world are also to be found operating in the region of organic beings. If we wish for an example of this we may again go to the eye; the branch of physics called optics teaches us, among other things, the manner in which images of objects are produced by lenses; these same laws regulate the formation of the images of external objects upon the sensitive layer of the back of the eye by the series of lenses in the front of that organ. An example of the application of chemical laws to living processes is seen in digestion; the food contains certain chemical substances which are acted on in a chemical way by the various digestive juices in order to render them of service to the organism.

The question arises, however, is there anything else? Are there any other laws than those of physics and chemistry to be reckoned with? Is there, for instance, such a thing as "vital force"? It may be frankly admitted that physiologists at present are not able to explain all vital phenomena by the laws of the physical world; but as knowledge increases it is more and more abundantly shown that the supposition of any special or vital force is unnecessary; and it should be distinctly recognised that when, in future pages, it is necessary to allude to vital action, it is not because we believe in any specific vital energy, but merely because the phrase is a convenient one for expressing something that we do not fully understand, some-

thing that cannot at present be brought into line with the physical and chemical forces that operate in the inorganic world.

But just as there is no hard-and-fast line between physiology and its allies pathology, anatomy, physics, and chemistry, so also there is no absolute separation between its three great divisions; physical, chemical, and so-called vital processes have to be considered together.

Physiology is a comparatively young science. Though Harvey more than three hundred years ago laid the foundation of our science by his discovery of the circulation of the blood, it is only during the last half-century that active growth has occurred. The reasons for this recent progress come under two headings: those relating to observation and those relating to experiment.

The method of observation consists in accurately noting things as they occur in nature; in other words, the knowledge of anatomy must be accurate before correct deductions as to function are possible. The instrument by which such correct observations can be made is, *par excellence*, from the physiologist's standpoint, the microscope, and it is the extended use of the microscope, and the knowledge of minute anatomy resulting from that use, which has formed one of the greatest stimuli to the successful progress of physiology during the last sixty years.

But important as observation is, it is not the most important method; the method of experiment is still more essential. This consists, not in being content with mere reasonings from structures or occurrences seen in nature, but in producing artificially changed relationships between the structures, and thus causing new combinations that if one had waited for Nature herself to produce might have been waited for indefinitely. Anatomy is important, but mere anatomy has often led people astray when they have tried to reason how an organ works from its structure only. Experiment is much more important; that is, one tests one's theories by seeing whether the occurrences actually take place as one supposes; and thus the deductions are confirmed or corrected. It is the universal use of this method that has made physiology what it is. Instead of sitting down and trying to reason out how the living machine works, physiologists have actually tried the experiment, and so learnt much more than could possibly have been gained by mere cogitation. Many experiments involve the use of living animals, but the discovery of anæsthetics, which renders such experiments painless, has got rid of any objection to experiments on the score of pain.

We must next proceed to an examination of the general structure of the body, and an explanation of some of the technical terms which will frequently be used hereafter.

The adult body consists of a great number of different parts; and each part has its own special work to do. Such parts of the body are

called **organs**. Each organ does not only its own special work, but acts in harmony with other organs. This relationship between the organs enables us to group them together into what are termed **systems**. Thus, we have the *circulatory system*, that is, the group of organs (heart, arteries, veins, etc.) concerned in the circulation of the blood; the *respiratory system*, that is, the group of organs (air passages, lungs, etc.) concerned in the act of breathing; the *digestive system*, which deals with the digestion of food; the *excretory system*, with the getting rid of waste products; the *muscular system*, with movement; and the *skeletal system*, with the support of the softer parts of the body. Over and above all these is the *nervous system* (brain, spinal cord, nerves), the great master system of the body which presides over, controls, and regulates the functions of the other systems.

If we proceed still further on our anatomical analysis, and take any organ, we see that it consists of various textures, or, as they are called, **elementary tissues**. Just as one's garments are made up of textures (cloth, lining, buttons, etc.), so each organ is composed of corresponding tissues. The elementary tissues come under the following four headings:—

1. Epithelial tissues.
2. Connective tissues.
3. Muscular tissues.
4. Nervous tissues.

Each of these is again divisible into sub-groups.

Suppose we continue our anatomical analysis still further, we find that the individual tissues are built up of structures which require the microscope for their accurate study. Just as the textures of a garment are made up of threads of various kinds, so also in many of the animal tissues we find threads or *fibres*, as they are called. But more important than the threads are little masses of living material. Just as the wall of a house is made up of bricks united by cement, so the body walls are built of extremely minute living bricks, united together by different amounts of cementing material. Each one of these living units is called a **cell**.

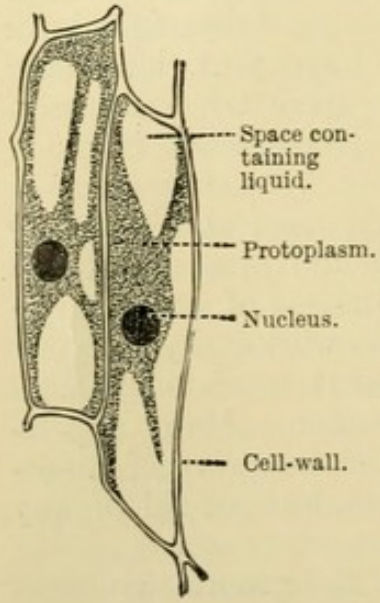


FIG. 1.—Vegetable cells.

Some of the tissues already enumerated consist of cells with only very little cement material binding them together; this, for instance, is seen in the epithelial tissues; but in other tissues, particularly the connective tissues which are not so eminently living as the rest, the amount of cement or **inter-**

cellular material is much greater, and in this it is that the fibres are developed that confer the necessary strength upon these binding tissues.

If, instead of going to the adult animal, we look at the animal in its earliest stage of development, the ovum, we find that it consists of a single little mass of living material, a single cell. As development progresses it becomes an adherent mass of cells. In the later stages of development various tissues become differentiated from each other by the cells becoming grouped in different ways, by alterations in the shape of the cells, by deposition of intercellular matter between the cells, and by chemical changes in the living matter of the cells themselves. Thus in some situations the cells are grouped into the various epithelial linings; in others the cells become elongated and form muscular fibres; and in others, as in the connective tissues, there is a preponderating amount of intercellular material which may become permeated with fibres, or be the seat of the deposition of calcareous salts, as in bone. Instances of chemical changes in the cells themselves are seen on the surface of the body where the superficial layers of the epidermis become horny; in the mucous glands, where they become filled with mucin, and in adipose tissue, where they become charged with fat.

The term cell was first used by botanists; in the popular sense of the word a cell is a space surrounded by a wall, as the cell of a prison, or the cell of a honeycomb. In the vegetable cell there is a wall made of the starch-like material called cellulose, within this is the living matter, and a number of large spaces or vacuoles filled with a watery fluid. The use of the term cell by botanists was therefore completely justified.

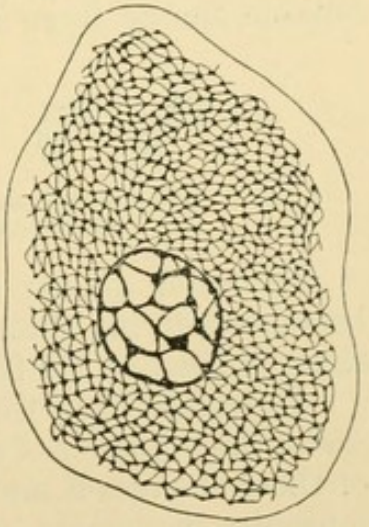


FIG. 2.—Animal cell consisting of protoplasm containing a nucleus.

But the animal cell is different; as a rule, it has no cell-wall, and vacuoles are not conspicuous. It is just a little naked lump of living material. This living material is jelly-like in consistency, possessing the power of movement, and the name **protoplasm** has been bestowed on it.

Somewhere in the protoplasm of all cells, generally near the middle in animal cells, is a roundish structure of more solid consistency than the rest of the protoplasm, called the **nucleus**.

An animal cell may therefore be defined as a *mass of protoplasm containing a nucleus.*

The simplest animals, like the amœbæ, consist of one cell only; the simplest plants, like bacteria, torulæ, etc., consist of one cell only.

Such organisms are called unicellular. In the progress of their

life history the cell divides into two; and the two new cells separate and become independent organisms, to repeat the process later on.

In the case of the higher animals and plants, they are always unicellular to start with, but on dividing and subdividing the resulting

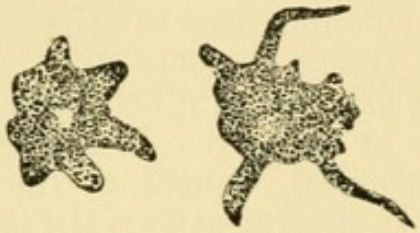


FIG. 3.—Amœbæ; unicellular animals.



FIG. 4.—Cells of the yeast plant in process of budding; unicellular plants.

cells stick together and subsequently become differentiated and altered in the manner already indicated. In spite of these changes, the variety of which produces the great complexity of the adult organism, there are certain cells which still retain their primitive structure; notable among these are the white corpuscles of the blood.

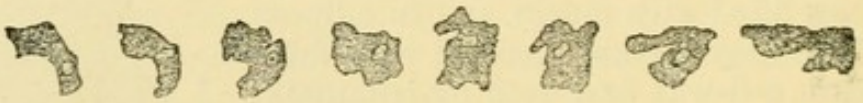


FIG. 5.—Human colourless blood-corpuscle, showing its successive changes of outline within ten minutes when kept moist on a warm stage. (Schofield.)

It would appear at first sight an easy problem to distinguish between a living thing, and one which is not living. The principal signs of life are the following:—

1. Irritability; that is the property of responding by some change under the influence of an external agent or stimulus. The most obvious of these changes is movement (amœboid movement, ciliary movement, muscular movement, etc.).

2. Power of assimilation, that is, ability to convert into protoplasm the nutrient material or food which is ingested.

3. Power of growth; this is a natural consequence of the power of assimilation.

4. Power of reproduction; this is a variety of growth.

5. Power to excrete; to give out waste materials, the products of other activities.

It should, however, be recognised that certain of these five characteristics may be absent or latent, and yet the object may be living. For instance, power of movement is absent in many vegetable structures; certain seeds and spores can be dried and kept for many years in an apparently dead condition, and yet will sprout and grow when placed in appropriate surroundings.

Of all the signs of life, those numbered 2 and 5 in the foregoing table are the most essential. Living material is in a continual state of unstable chemical equilibrium, building itself up on the one hand, breaking down on the other; the term used for the sum total of these intra-molecular rearrangements is **metabolism**. The chemical substances in the protoplasm which are the most important from this point of view are the complex nitrogenous compounds called *Proteins*. So far as is at present known, protein material is never absent from living substance, and is never present in any thing else but that which is alive or has been formed by the agency of living cells. It may therefore be stated that **Protein Metabolism** is the most essential characteristic of vitality.

The proteins or albuminous substances have received different names at different times, and the nomenclature has thus given rise to confusion. They have been very generally called proteids in English books, but the term protein which I have decided to adopt appears likely to meet with general acceptance.

CHAPTER II

THE ANIMAL CELL

An animal cell is usually of microscopic dimensions, in the human body varying from $\frac{1}{300}$ to $\frac{1}{3000}$ of an inch in diameter.

It consists of—

1. *Protoplasm.* This makes up the main substance of the cell.
2. *Nucleus:* a vesicular body within the protoplasm, generally situated near the centre of the cell.
3. *Centrosome and attraction sphere:* these are contained within the protoplasm, near the nucleus.

These three portions demand separate study.

Protoplasm.

Until recent years, protoplasm was supposed to be a homogeneous material entirely destitute of structure, though generally containing minute granules of solid consistency, or globules (vacuoles) containing a watery fluid.

It has, however, now been shown with high powers of the microscope that in many cells the protoplasm consists of two parts, a fine

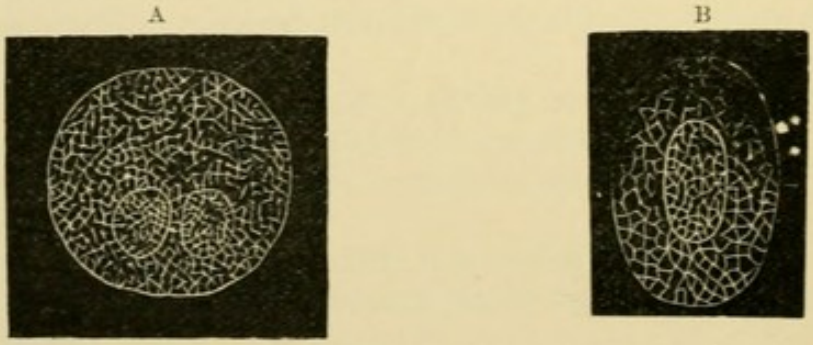


Fig. 6.—(A.) A colourless blood-corpuscle showing the intra-cellular network, and two nuclei with intra-nuclear network.
(B.) Coloured blood-corpuscle of newt showing the intra-cellular network of fibrils. Also oval nucleus composed of limiting membrane and fine intra-nuclear network of fibrils. × 800. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

network of fibrillæ in which the more fluid and apparently structureless portion of the protoplasm is contained. (See figs. 2 and 6.)

The network or spongework is called the **reticulum** or **spongioplasm**, and the more fluid portion in its meshes the **enchylema** or **hyaloplasm**.

In order to study the microscopic structure of such transparent objects as cells, it is necessary to have recourse to various methods of fixing and staining. When one sees certain appearances after such treatment of the cells, the question arises whether they may not be due to the action of the reagents employed. Appearances which are undoubtedly produced artificially in this way are generally spoken of as *artifacts*. The network just described is regarded by some observers as an artifact, but it is impossible at present to state this positively. Hardy, in particular, has shown that a film of any colloidal substance like gelatin will, when it sets, present the appearance of a network, and he regards it as probable that the network seen in cells may be due to a similar setting or coagulation of the protoplasm which occurs either when the cell dies, or is fixed by hardening reagents. Bütschli regards the spongioplasm as the optical effect of a honeycomb or froth-like structure. There are numerous other views.

The granules in protoplasm are partly thickened portions of the spongioplasm, but in addition to this there appear to be free granules, some fatty in nature (staining black with osmic acid), some composed of the substance called glycogen or animal starch (staining reddish-brown with iodine), and sometimes in a few unicellular animals they consist of inorganic (calcareous) matter. But by far the most constant and abundant of the granules are like the main substance of the protoplasm, protein or albuminous in composition. In all probability the protein granules are actual constituents of the protoplasm. Substances stored within the protoplasm, such as pigment granules, fat globules, fluid in vacuoles, and glycogen, are spoken of as *cell-contents* or *paraplasm*.

The chemical structure of protoplasm can only be investigated after the protoplasm has been killed. The substances it yields are (1) **Water**; protoplasm is semifluid, and at least three-quarters of its weight, often more, are due to water. (2) **Proteins**. These are the most constant and abundant of the solids. A protein or albuminous substance consists of carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, oxygen, with sulphur and phosphorus in small quantities only. In nuclein, a protein-like substance found in the nuclei of cells, phosphorus is more abundant. The protein obtained in greatest abundance in the cell protoplasm is called a **nucleo-protein**; that is to say, it is a compound containing varying amounts of this material nuclein with protein. White of egg is a familiar instance of an albuminous substance or protein, and the fact (which is also familiar) that this sets into a solid on boiling will serve as a reminder that the greater number of the proteins found in nature have a similar tendency to coagulate under the influence of heat and other agencies. (3) Various other substances occur in smaller proportions, the most constant of which are **lecithin**, a phosphorised fat; **cholesterin**, a

monatomic alcohol; and **inorganic salts,** especially phosphates and chlorides of calcium, sodium, and potassium.

The large quantity of water present should be particularly noted; the student when first shown diagrams of the reticulum in protoplasm is apt to imagine that it consists of a firm solid, like a system of wires pervading a jelly. The reticulum is only slightly more solid than the hyaloplasm.

The Nucleus.

In form the nucleus is generally round or oval, but it may have in some cases an irregular shape, and in other cases there may be more than one nucleus in a cell.

The nucleus exercises a controlling influence over the nutrition and subdivision of the cell; any portion of a cell cut off from the nucleus undergoes degenerative changes.

A nucleus consists of four parts—

1. *The nuclear membrane,* which encloses it.
2. *A network* of fibres in appearance like the spongioplasm of the protoplasm but on a larger scale; that is to say, the threads of which it is composed are much coarser and much more readily seen. The name **chromoplasm** has been given to this network.
3. *The nuclear sap or matrix,* a more fluid and homogeneous substance which occupies the interstices of the spongework of chromoplasm.
4. *Nucleoli;* these are of two principal varieties; some are knots or thickened portions of the network (pseudo-nucleoli), and others, the true nucleoli, float freely in the nuclear sap.

These four parts of the nucleus are represented in the next diagram.

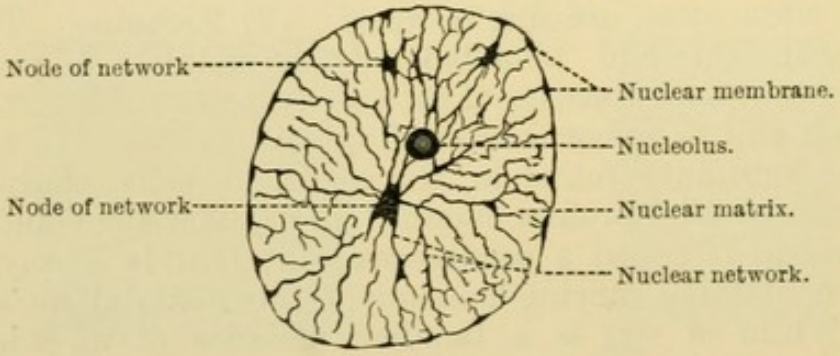


FIG. 7.—The resting nucleus—diagrammatic. (Waldeyer.)

The next figure (fig. 8) gives a view of the nucleus, according to the researches of Rabl. He considers that the fibres of the network may be divided into thick fibres which he terms primary, and thinner connecting branches which he terms secondary (shown only on the

right-hand side of the figure). This observer also supposes that the primary fibres have the looped arrangement depicted in the diagram.

In the investigation of microscopic objects, a histologist is nearly always obliged to use staining agents; the extremely thin objects he examines are so transparent that, without such stains, much of the structure would be invisible. If such dyes as hæmatoxylin or safranin are employed, it is the nucleus which becomes most deeply stained, and thus stands out on the lighter background of the protoplasm.

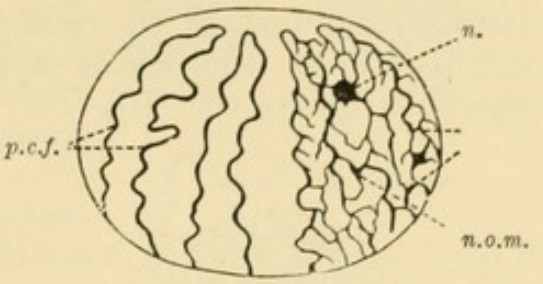


FIG. 8.—Diagram of nucleus showing the arrangement of chief chromatic filaments. Viewed from the side, the polar end being uppermost. *p.c.f.*, primary chromatic filaments; *n.*, nucleolus; *n.o.m.*, node of meshwork. (Rabl.)

But the whole nucleus does not stain equally deeply; it is the chromoplasmic filaments and the nucleoli which have most affinity for the stain, while the nuclear sap is comparatively unaffected. Hence the terms *chromatin* and *achromatin* originally introduced by Fleming. The membrane, the network, and the nucleoli are composed of chromatic substance or chromatin; it is so called not because it has any colour in the natural state, but because it has an affinity for colours artificially added to it. For a corresponding reason, achromatin or achromatic substance is the name given to the substances which make up the nuclear sap.



FIG. 9.—Part of a chromoplasmic filament, greatly magnified. (Carnoy.)

Balbiani showed that the chromoplasmic filaments are apparently transversely marked into alternate dark and light bands; this is due to the existence of minute highly refracting particles imbedded in regular series in a clear homogeneous and unstainable matrix (see fig. 9). The term *chromatin* should properly be restricted to these particles. These particles have special affinity for basic dyes like methyl green, and safranin.

Coming next to the chemical composition of the nucleus, it is found to consist principally of protein and protein-like substances. The nuclei of cells may be obtained by subjecting the cells to the action of artificial gastric juice; the protoplasm is nearly entirely dissolved, but the nuclei resist the solvent action of the juice. No doubt the nuclei contain several chemical compounds, but the only one of which we have any accurate knowledge has been termed *nuclein*, and this is identical with the substance called *chromatin* by histologists. It is soluble in alkalis, but precipitated by acids; it is different from a simple protein, as it contains in addition to carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, hydrogen, and sulphur, an enormous quantity (7 to 8 per cent. or even more) of phosphorus in its molecule. In many cases nucleins contain iron also.

The Attraction Sphere.

Recent research has shown that, in addition to the nucleus and protoplasm, most if not all living cells contain another structure; it consists of a minute particle called a "*centrosome*," which has an attractive influence on protoplasmic fibrils and granules in its neighbourhood, the whole appearance produced being called an *attraction sphere* (fig. 10).

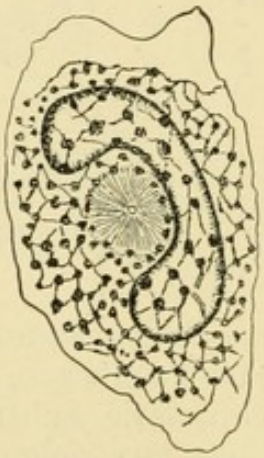


FIG. 10.—A cell (white blood-corpuscle) showing its attraction sphere. In this, as in most cases, the attraction sphere lies near the nucleus. (Schafer.)

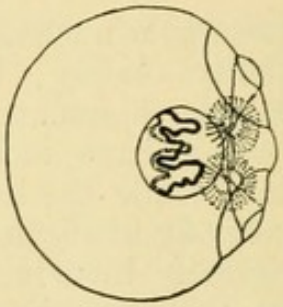


FIG. 11.—Ovum of the worm Ascaris, showing a twin attraction sphere. The nucleus with its contorted filament of chromoplasm is represented, but the protoplasm of the cell is not filled in. (v. Beneden.)

It is most prominent in cells which are dividing or about to divide. The centrosome, and then the attraction sphere, become double (fig. 11). In all probability the centrosome gives the primary impulse to cell-division. Some cells, like the giant cells of red marrow, contain numerous centrosomes.

Protoplasmic Movement.

A cell possesses the power of *breathing*, that is, taking in oxygen; of *nutrition*, of building itself up from food materials; and of *excretion*, or the getting rid of waste material. But the most obvious physiological characteristic of most cells is their power of *movement*.

When an amœba is observed with a high power of the microscope, it is found to consist of an irregular mass of protoplasm containing one or more nuclei, the protoplasm itself being more or less granular and vacuolated. If watched for a minute or two, an irregular projection is seen to be gradually thrust out from the main body and retracted; a second mass is then protruded in another direction, and gradually the whole protoplasmic substance is, as it

were, drawn into it. The Amœba thus comes to occupy a new position, and when this is repeated several times we have locomotion in a definite direction, together with a continual change of form. These movements, when observed in other cells, such as the colourless blood-corpuscles of higher animals (fig. 13), in the branched corneal cells of the frog and elsewhere, are hence termed *amœboid*. The projections which are alternately protruded and retracted are called *pseudopodia*.

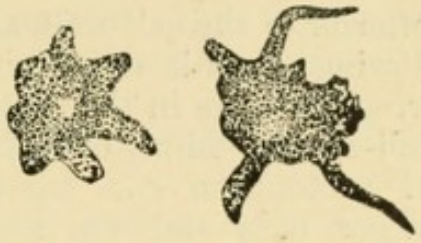


Fig. 12.—Amœbæ.

A *streaming* movement is not infrequently seen in certain of the protozoa, in which the mass of protoplasm extends long and fine processes, themselves very little movable, but upon the surface of which freely-moving or streaming granules are seen. A *gliding* movement has also been noticed



Fig. 13.—Human colourless blood-corpuscle, showing its successive changes of outline within ten minutes when kept moist on a warm stage. (Schofield.)

in certain animal cells; the motile part of the cell is composed of protoplasm bounding a central and more compact mass; by means of the free movement of this layer, the cell may be observed to move along.

In vegetable cells the protoplasmic movement can be well seen

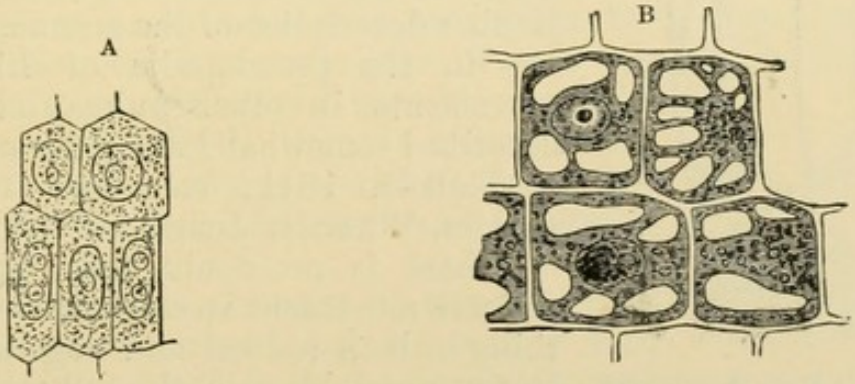


Fig. 14.—(A.) Young vegetable cells, showing cell-cavity entirely filled with granular protoplasm enclosing a large oval nucleus, with one or more nucleoli.
(B.) Older cells from same plant, showing distinct cellulose-wall and vacuolation of protoplasm.

in the hairs of the stinging-nettle and Tradescantia and the cells of Vallisneria and Chara; it is marked by the movement of the granules nearly always imbedded in it. For example, if part of a hair of Tradescantia (fig. 15) be viewed under a high magnifying power,

streams of protoplasm containing crowds of granules hurrying along, like the foot-passengers in a busy street, are seen flowing steadily in definite directions, some coursing round the film which lines the interior of the cell-wall, and others flowing towards or away from the irregular mass in the centre of the cell-cavity. Many of these streams of protoplasm run together into larger ones and are lost in the central mass, and thus ceaseless variations of form are produced. The movement of the protoplasmic granules to or from the periphery is sometimes called vegetable *circulation*, whereas the movement of the protoplasm round the interior of the cell is called *rotation*.

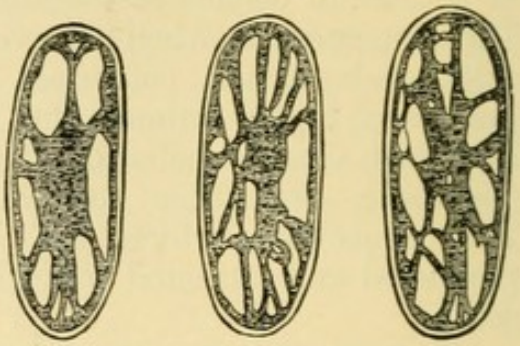


FIG. 15.—Cell of Tradescantia drawn at successive intervals of two minutes.—The cell-contents consist of a central mass connected by many irregular processes to a peripheral film, the whole forming a vacuolated mass of protoplasm, which is continually changing its shape. (Schofield.)

The first account of the movement of protoplasm was given by Rösel in 1755, as occurring in a small Proteus, probably a large freshwater amœba. His description was followed twenty years later by Corti's demonstration of the rotation of the cell sap in Characeæ, and in the earlier part of last century by Meyer in Vallisneria, 1827, and by Robert Brown, 1831, in "Staminal Hairs of Tradescantia." Then came Dujardin's description of the granular streaming in the pseudopodia of Rhizopods; movements in other animal cells were described somewhat later (Planarian eggs, v. Siebold, 1841; colourless blood-corpuscles, Wharton Jones, 1846).

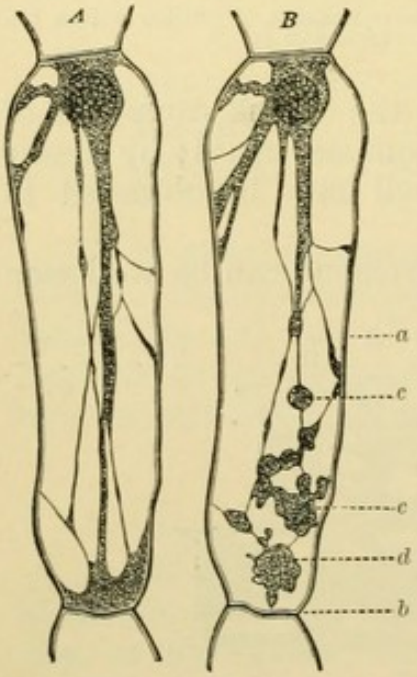


FIG. 16.—Cells from the staminal hairs of Tradescantia. *A*, fresh in water; *B*, the same cell after slight electrical stimulation; *a*, *b*, region of stimulation; *c*, *d*, clumps and knobs of contracted protoplasm. (Kühne.)

There is no doubt that the protoplasmic movement is essentially the same thing in both animal and vegetable cells. But in vegetable cells the cell-wall obliges the movement to occur in the interior, while in the naked animal cells the movement results in an external change of form.

Although the movements of amœboid cells may be loosely described as spontaneous, yet they are produced and increased under the action of external agencies which excite them, and which are

therefore called *stimuli*, and if the movement has ceased for the time, as is the case if the temperature is lowered beyond a certain point, movement may be set up by raising the temperature. Again, contact with foreign bodies, gentle pressure, certain salts, and electricity, produce or increase the movement in the amœba. The protoplasm is, therefore, sensitive or irritable to stimuli, and shows its irritability by movement or contraction of its mass.

The effects of some of these stimuli may be thus further detailed :—

a. Changes of temperature.—Moderate heat acts as a stimulant: the movement stops when the temperature is lowered near the freezing-point or raised above 40° C. (104° F.); between these two points the movements increase in activity; the optimum temperature is about 37° to 38° C. Though cold stops the movement of protoplasm, exposure to a temperature even below 0° C. does not prevent its reappearance if the temperature is raised; on the other hand, prolonged exposure to a temperature of 42°-45° C. altogether kills the protoplasm and causes it to enter into a condition of coagulation or *heat rigor*. We have already seen that proteins, the most abundant constituents of protoplasm, are coagulated by heat.

b. Chemical stimuli.—Distilled water first stimulates then stops amœboid movement, for by imbibition it causes great swelling and finally bursting of the cells. In some cases, however (myxomycetes), protoplasm can be almost entirely dried up, but remains capable of renewing its movement when again moistened. Dilute salt solution and very dilute alkalis stimulate the movements temporarily. Acids or strong alkalis permanently stop the movements: ether, chloroform, veratrine and quinine also stop it for a time.

Movement is suspended in an atmosphere of hydrogen or carbonic acid, and resumed on the admission of air or oxygen; complete withdrawal of oxygen will after a time kill protoplasm.

c. Electrical.—Weak currents stimulate the movement, while strong currents cause the cells to assume a spherical form and to become motionless.

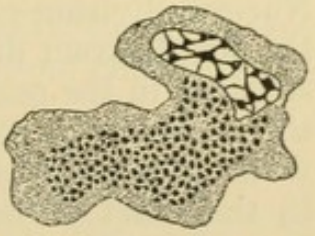


FIG. 17.—An Amœboid corpuscle of the newt killed by instantaneous application of steam, showing the appearance of the pseudopodia. (After Schäfer, "Quain's Anatomy.")

The amœboid movements of the colourless corpuscles of the blood may be readily seen when a drop of blood from the finger is mixed with salt solution, and examined on a warm stage with the microscope. If a pseudopodium of such a corpuscle is observed under a high power, it will be seen to consist of hyaloplasm, which has flowed out of its spongy home, the reticulum. Later, however, a portion of the reticular part of the protoplasm may enter the pseudopodium. The cells may be fixed

by a jet of steam allowed to play for a moment on the surface of the cover glass. The next figure illustrates one fixed in this way.

The essential act in the protrusion of a pseudopodium is the flowing of the hyaloplasm out of the spongioplasm; the retraction of the pseudopodium is a return of the hyaloplasm to the spongioplasm. The spongioplasm has an irregular arrangement with openings in all directions, so that the contractility of undifferentiated cells may exhibit itself towards any point of the compass.

The relation of cells to various forms of stimulus has been recently very extensively studied. Various forms of unicellular organisms have been used in these experiments, and the stimuli employed have been chemical, thermal, light, electric currents, and so forth. If the cell moves towards the source of attraction, the term *positive taxis* is employed; if it is repelled, *negative taxis*. The words, chemo-taxis, thermo-taxis, photo-taxis, galvano-taxis, etc., indicate the kind of stimulus investigated.

Cell Division.

A cell multiplies by dividing into two; each remains awhile in the resting or, more correctly, non-dividing condition, but later it grows and subdivides, and the process may be repeated indefinitely.

The supreme importance of the cell, the growth of the body from cells, and the fact that cells are the living units of the organism, were first established in the vegetable world by Schleiden, and extended to the animal kingdom by Theodor Schwann. The ideas of physiologists depending on this idea are grouped together as cellular physiology, which under the guidance of Virchow was extended to pathology also: Virchow expressed the doctrine now so familiar as to be almost a truism in the terse phrase *omnis cellula e cellula* (every cell from a cell).

The division of a cell is preceded by division of its nucleus. Nuclear division may be either (1) *simple or direct*, which consists in the simple exact division of the nucleus into two equal parts by constriction in the centre, which may have been preceded by division of the nucleoli; or (2) *indirect*, which consists in a series of changes which goes on in the arrangement of the nuclear reticulum, resulting in the exact division of the chromatic fibres into two parts, which form the chromoplasm of the daughter nuclei.

The changes in the nucleus during indirect division constitute *karyokinesis* (κάρυον, a kernel), or *mitosis* (μίτος, a thread), and direct division is called *amitotic* or *akinetic* (κίνησις, movement). It is now believed that the mitotic nuclear division is all but, though not quite, universal. Somewhat different accounts of the stages of the nuclear division have been given by different authorities, according to the kind of cell in which the nuclear changes have been

studied. The following figure (fig. 18) shows some of the typical stages of karyokinesis as observed by Klein:—

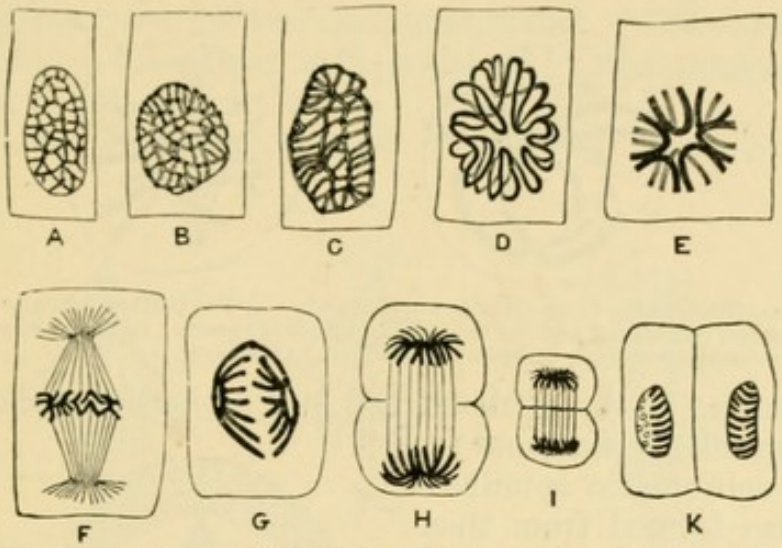


FIG. 18.—Karyokinesis. A, ordinary nucleus of a columnar epithelial cell; B, C, the same nucleus in the stage of *convolution*; D, *the wreath or rosette* form; E, the *aster*, or single star; F, a nuclear spindle from the Descemet's endothelium of the frog's cornea; G, H, I, diaster; K, two daughter nuclei. (Klein.)

The process may be divided into the following stages:—

1. The non-dividing nucleus (fig. 19.)

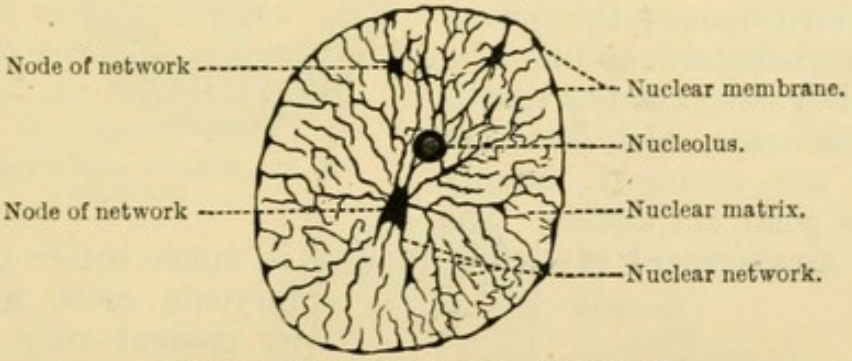


FIG. 19.—The resting nucleus. (Waldeyer.)

2. The spirem or skein stage: the nucleoli dissolve, the secondary fibres disappear, and the primary loops running from polar to anti-polar regions remain (figs. 8, 20). In some cells there is at first one long, much twisted thread, which subsequently breaks up into segments. The loops are called *chromosomes*.

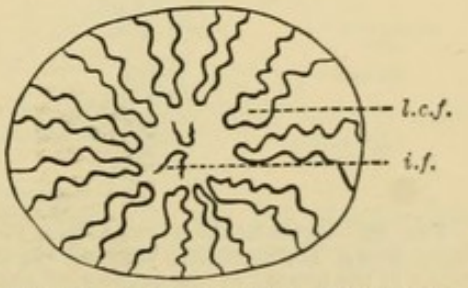


FIG. 20.—Early condition of the skein stage viewed at the polar end. *l. c.f.*, looped chromatic filament. *i.f.*, irregular filament. (Rabl.)

3. Each loop becomes less convoluted and splits longitudinally into two sister threads, and the achromatic spindle appears (fig. 21, A and B).

4. The equatorial stage; monaster. The nucleus has now two poles, those of the spindle; and at each pole there is a polar corpuscle or centro-

some. The division of the centrosome of the original cell, and then of the attraction sphere into two, usually precedes the commence-

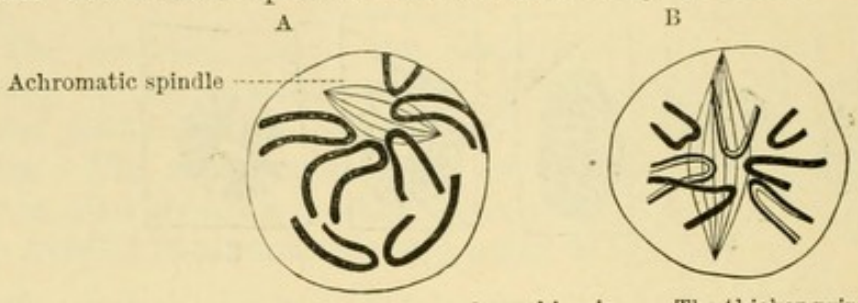


FIG. 21.—Later condition of the skein stage in karyokinesis. A. The thicker primary fibres or chromosomes become less convoluted and the achromatic spindle appears. B. The chromosomes split into two and the achromatic spindle becomes longitudinal. (Waldeyer.)

ment of changes in the nucleus; the two attraction spheres become prominent in cell division, and the connecting achromatic spindle is probably also formed from them or from the achromatic material of the nucleus.

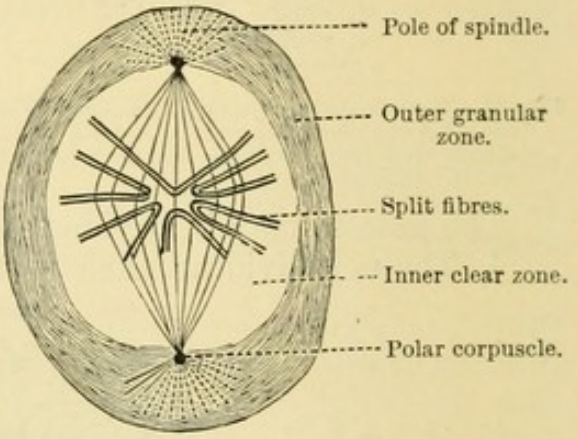


FIG. 22.—Monaster stage of karyokinesis. (Waldeyer.)

At this stage the nuclear membrane is lost, and thus cell protoplasm and nuclear sap become continuous; the protoplasm immediately around the nucleus is clear; outside this is a granular zone, and here the granules are arranged radially from the polar corpuscles. The star-like arrangement of these granules is much better marked in embryonic cells, indeed the lines present very much the appearance of fibrils (see fig. 23).

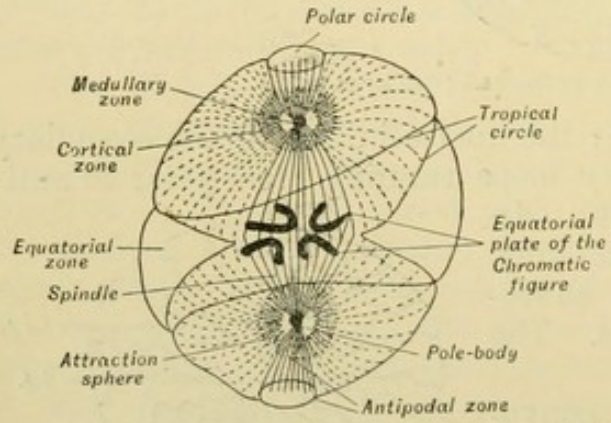


FIG. 23.—Ovum of the worm Ascaris in process of division. The attraction spheres are at opposite ends of the ovum; at the equator of the spindle which unites them, four chromosomes are seen. The protoplasm of the ovum, except in the equatorial zone of the cell, is arranged in lines radiating from the centre (centrosome) of the attraction sphere. (Waldeyer.)

The V-shaped *chromosomes* sink to the equator of the spindle, and arrange themselves so as to project horizontally from it.

In cells which are the result of the sexual process, the number of chromosomes is always even, an equal number being contributed by each sex.

The number of chromosomes varies with the species from four to twenty-four; in man the number is sixteen.

5. *The stage of metakinesis.* The sister threads separate, one set going towards one pole, and the other to the other pole of the spindle (fig. 24): these form the two daughter nuclei. The chromosomes are probably pulled into their new position by the contraction of the spindle fibres attached to them.

6. Each daughter nucleus goes backwards through the same series

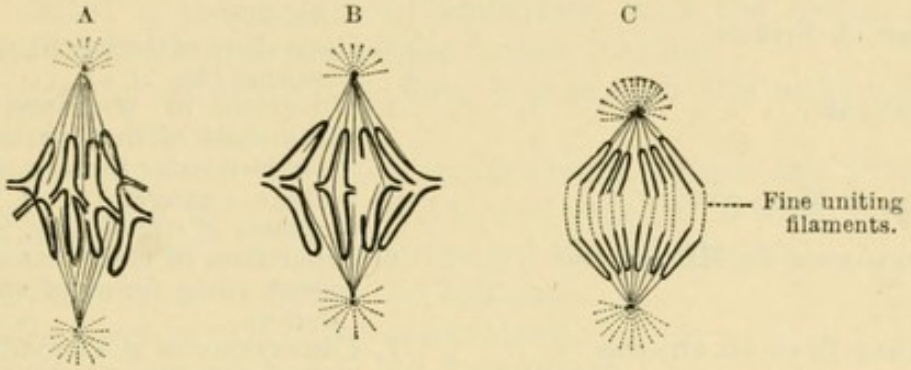


FIG. 24.—Metakinesis. A. Early stage. B. Later stage. C. Latest stage—formation of diaster. B. and C. show how the sister threads disentangle themselves from one another. (Waldeyer.)

of changes; the diaster or double star is followed by the dispirem or double skein, until at last two resting nuclei are obtained (fig. 25).

A new membrane forms around each daughter nucleus, the spindle atrophies, and the attraction sphere becomes less prominent. The division of the cell protoplasm into two parts around the two nuclei begins in the diaster stage, and is complete in the stage represented in fig. 25.

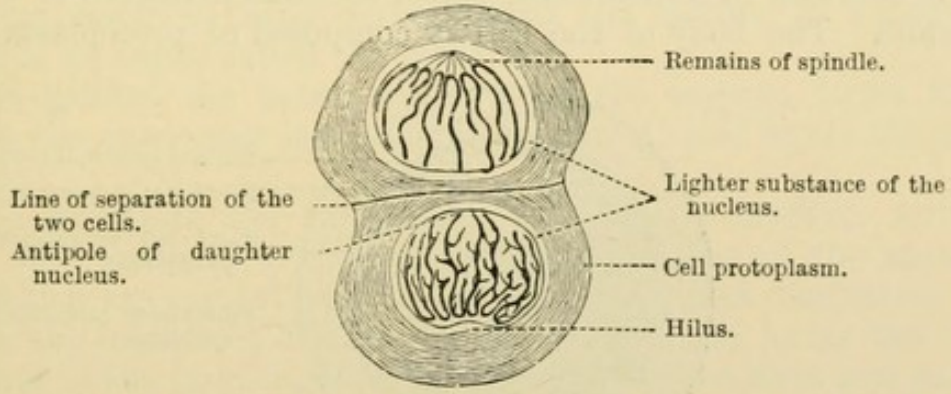


FIG. 25.—Final stages of karyokinesis. In the lower daughter nucleus the changes are still more advanced than in the upper. (Waldeyer.)

The karyokinetic process has been watched in all its stages by more than one observer. The time occupied varies from half an hour to three hours; the details, however, must be studied in hardened and appropriately stained specimens. They are most readily seen in cells with large nuclei, such as occur in the epidermis of amphibians.

The process varies a good deal in different animal and vegetable

cells; such as in the number of chromosomes, and the relative importance of the different stages. All attempted here has been to give an account of a typical case. The phases may be summarised in a tabular way as follows (from "Quain's Anatomy"):—

Network or Reticulum . . .	1. Resting condition of mother nucleus (fig. 19).
Skein or Spirem	2. Close skein of fine convoluted filaments (fig. 20). 3. Open skein of thicker filaments. Spindle appears (fig. 21 A).
Cleavage	4. Movement of V-shaped chromosomes to middle of nucleus, and each splits into two sister threads (fig. 21 B).
Star or Monaster	5. Stellate arrangement of V filaments at equator of spindle (fig. 22).
Divergence or Metakinesis . .	6. Separation of cleft filaments and movement along fibres of spindle (fig. 24 A and B).
Double Star or Diaster . .	7. Conveyance of V filaments towards poles of spindle (fig. 24 C).
Double Skein or Dispirem . .	8. Open skein in daughter nuclei. 9. Close skein in daughter nuclei (fig. 25).
Network or Reticulum . . .	10. Resting condition of daughter nuclei (fig. 25).

The Ovum.

The ovary is an organ which produces ova.

An ovum is a simple animal cell; its parts are seen in the next diagram.

It is enclosed in a membrane called the zona pellucida or vitelline membrane. The body of the cell is composed of protoplasm loaded

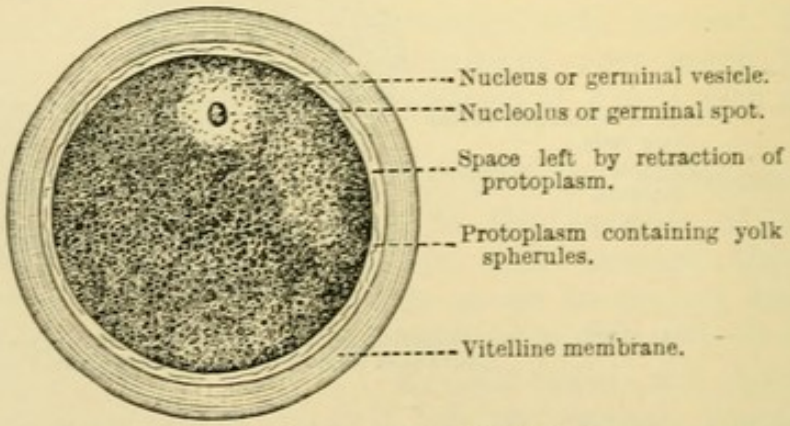


Fig. 26.—Representation of a human ovum. (Cadiat.)

with granules of food material, called the yolk or vitellus. The nucleus and nucleolus are sometimes still called by their old names, *germinal vesicle* and *germinal spot* respectively. The attraction sphere is not shown in the diagram.

The formation of ova will form the subject of a chapter later on,

but it is convenient here at the outset to state briefly one or two facts, and introduce to the student a few terms which we shall have to employ frequently in the intervening chapters.

The ovum first discharges from its interior a portion of its nucleus, which forms two little globules upon it called the polar globules.

Fertilisation then occurs; that is to say, the head or nucleus of a male cell called a spermatozoon penetrates into the ovum, and becomes fused with the remains of the female nucleus.

Cell division or segmentation then begins, and the early stages are represented in the next figure.

Fluid discharged from the cells accumulates within the interior of the mulberry mass seen in fig. 27 *d*, and later, if a section is cut through it, the cells will be found arranged in three layers.

The outermost layer is called the **epiblast.**

The middle layer is called the **mesoblast.**

The innermost layer is called the **hypoblast.**

From these three layers the growth of the rest of the body occurs,



FIG. 27.—Diagram of an ovum (*a*) undergoing segmentation. In (*b*) it has divided into two, in (*c*) into four; and in (*d*) the process has resulted in the production of the so-called "mulberry-mass." (Frey.)

nutritive material being derived from the mother in mammals by means of an organ called the placenta.

The *epiblast*, the outermost layer of the embryo, forms the epidermis, the outermost layer of the adult. It also forms the nervous system.

The *hypoblast*, the innermost layer of the embryo, forms the lining epithelium of the alimentary (except that of the mouth and anus which are involutions from the epiblast) and respiratory tracts, that is, the innermost layer of the adult. It also forms the cellular elements in the large digestive glands, such as the liver and pancreas, which are originally, like the lungs, outgrowths from the primitive digestive tube.

The *mesoblast* forms the remainder, that is, the great bulk of the body, including the muscular, osseous, and other connective tissues; the circulatory and urino-genital systems.

CHAPTER III

EPITHELIUM

THE elementary tissues of which the organs of the body are built up may be arranged into four groups: epithelial, connective, muscular, and nervous. The first of these, the epithelial tissues, follows naturaliy on a study of the animal cell, as an epithelium may be defined as a tissue composed entirely of cells united by a minimal amount of cementing material. As a rule, an epithelium is spread out as a membrane covering a surface or lining the cavity of a hollow organ.

These epithelia may be grouped into two great classes, each of which may be again subdivided according to the shape and arrangement of the cells of which it is composed. The following table gives the principal varieties:—

CLASS 1.—*Simple epithelium;* that is, an epithelium consisting of one layer of cells only. Its subgroups are as follows:—

a. Pavement epithelium.
b. Cubical and columnar epithelium.
c. Ciliated epithelium.

CLASS 2.—*Compound epithelium;* that is, an epithelium consisting of more than one layer of cells. Its subgroups are as follows:—

a. Transitional epithelium.
b. Stratified epithelium.

This classification does not include the more specialised forms of epithelium found in secreting glands, or in the sense organs, nor structures like hair, and enamel of tooth, which are epithelial in origin. These will be considered in their proper place later on.

Pavement Epithelium.

This consists of a layer of thin cells, arranged like flat pavement-stones accurately fitting together and united by a small amount of cementing material. The structure of the cells and their outlines may be best demonstrated in the following way:—

A portion of the fresh tissue is taken and immersed for a few

minutes in a 1 per cent. solution of nitrate of silver; it is taken out, washed with distilled water, and exposed in water or spirit to sunlight. The silver forms a compound with the cement, which in the

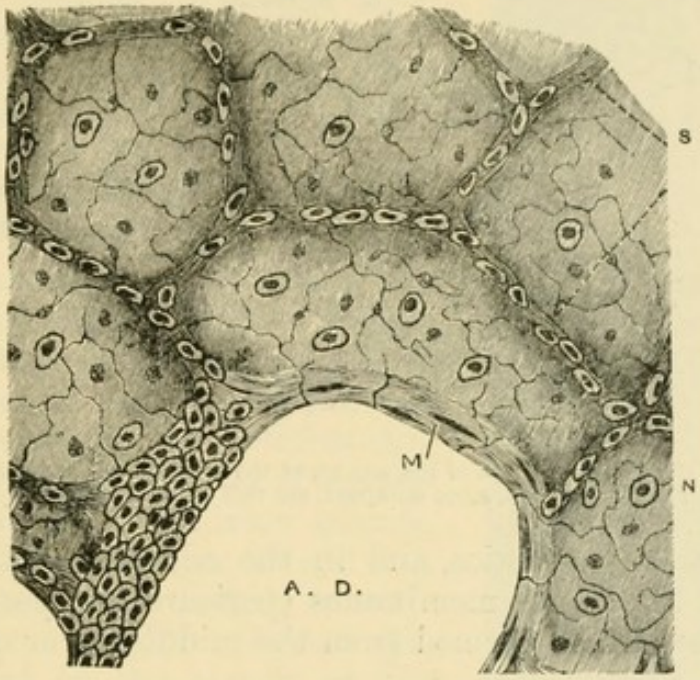


FIG. 28.—From a section of the lung of a cat, stained with silver nitrate. N. Alveoli or air-cells, lined with large flat, nucleated cells, with some smaller polyhedral nucleated cells. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

light is decomposed or reduced, leading to a fine deposit of silver, showing as black or brown lines between the cells, and accurately defining their outlines. The preparation may then be immersed in some stain like logwood to bring out the nuclei, and finally mounted in the usual way.

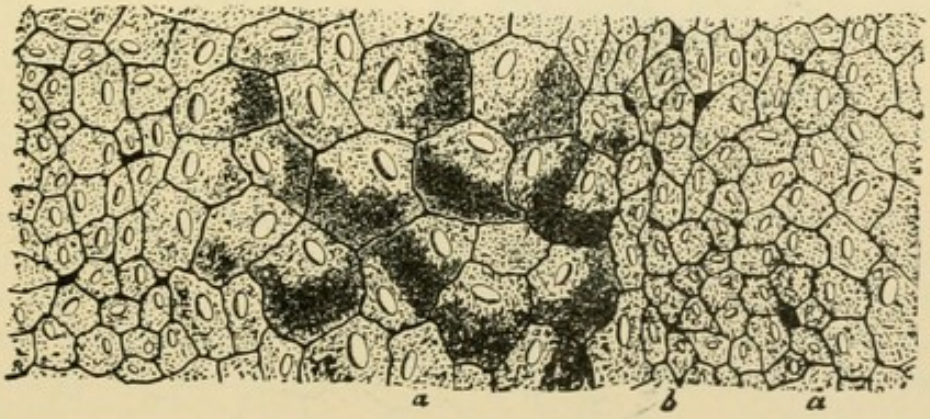


FIG. 29.—Abdominal surface of central tendon of the diaphragm of rabbit, showing the general polygonal shape of the endothelial cells; each cell is nucleated. × 300. (Klein.)

Fig. 28 shows the appearance presented in a preparation of lung. In the alveoli or air-sacs of the lung, pavement epithelium of a typical kind is found forming a lining membrane.

Endothelium.—Epithelium of similar appearance is found lining the interior of the whole of the vascular system, heart, arteries, capil-

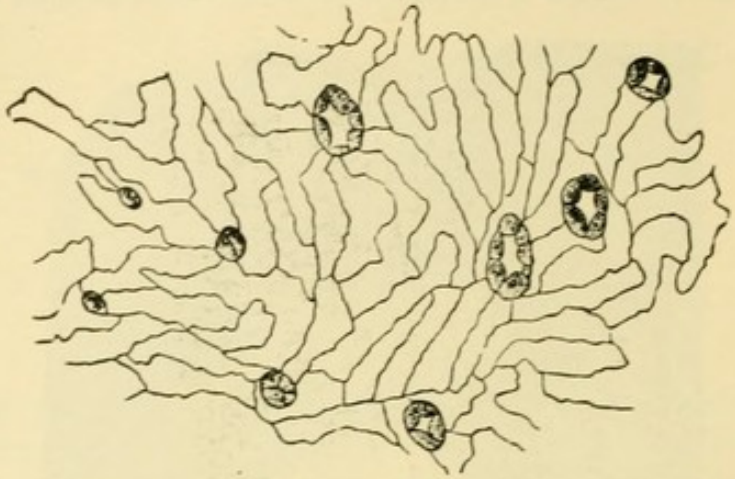


FIG. 30.—Peritoneal surface of a portion of the septum of the great lymph-sac of a frog. The stomata, some of which are open, some collapsed, are well shown. × 160. (Klein.)

laries, veins, and lymphatics, and in the adjuncts of the circulatory system called the serous membranes (pericardium, peritoneum, etc.).

This epithelium is formed from the middle layer of the embryo,



FIG. 31.—A portion of the great omentum of dog, which shows, amongst the flat endothelium of the surface, small and large groups of germinating endothelium, between which are many stomata. × 300. (Klein.)

the mesoblast; most other epithelium is derived either from epiblast or hypoblast. Hence it has received a distinct name, viz.: *endothelium.*

The general appearance presented by endothelium in serous membranes is shown in figs. 29, 30, and 31; in blood-vessels in fig. 32.

The stomata seen in some of the drawings are minute openings surrounded by more darkly staining cells, which lead from serous cavities into lymphatic vessels.

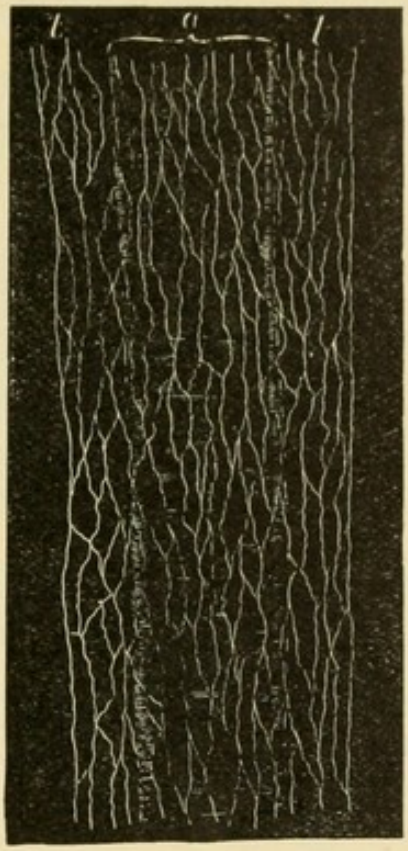


FIG. 32.—Surface view of an artery from the mesentery of a frog, ensheathed in a peri-vascular lymphatic vessel. *a*, The artery, with its circular muscular coat (media) indicated by broad transverse markings, with an indication of the adventitia outside. *l*, Lymphatic vessel; its wall is a simple endothelial membrane. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

Cubical, Spheroidal, and Columnar Epithelium.

In these forms of epithelium, the cells are not flat, but are thick; if they approximate cubes or spheres in shape, the epithelium is called cubical or spheroidal respectively. *Polyhedral* epithelium is found in the alveoli of secreting glands, such as the salivary glands, liver, and pancreas (see figs. 33 and 34), and will be discussed at length in connection with those organs. *Cubical* epithelium is found in the alveoli of the thyroid (see fig. 35), in the tubules of the testis, and in the ducts of some glands.

In *columnar* epithelium the cells are tall, and form a kind of palisade or rows of columns. It is found lining the interior of the stomach and intestines, and the ducts of the majority of secreting glands; it forms also the layer on the outer surface of the ovary.

In the intestinal epithelium each cell has a distinct brightly refracting and striated border. Fig. 36 shows two isolated cells of this kind.

The nucleus with its usual network and the vacuolated condition of the protoplasm are very well seen. The attached border is narrower than the free edge. Amœboid lymph cells are found in the spaces that must necessarily be left when cells of such a shape cover a surface. Fig. 37 shows a row of columnar cells from the rabbit's intestine.

The next figure (fig. 38) shows the arrangement of these cells on the surface of a villus, one of the numerous little projections found in the small intestine.

The gaps seen there are due to the formation of what are called goblet cells. In some of the columnar cells, a formation of granules

occurs which consist of a substance called mucigen; these run together, and are discharged from the cell as a brightly refracting globule of mucin, leaving the cell with open mouth like a goblet, the

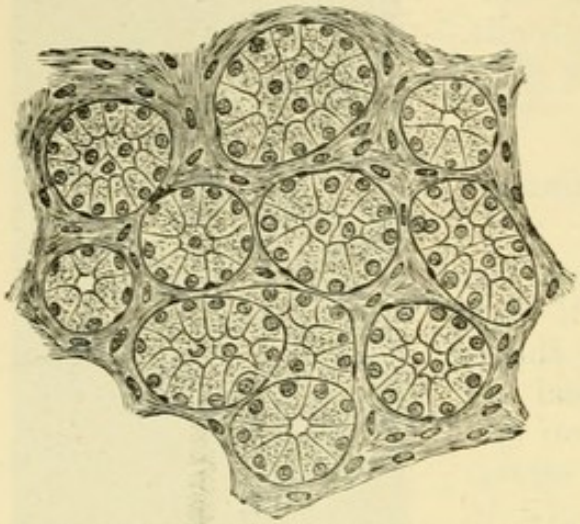


FIG. 33.—Glandular epithelium. Small lobule of a mucous gland of the tongue, showing nucleated glandular cells. × 200. (V. D. Harris.)



FIG. 34.—A small piece of the liver of the horse. (Cadiat.)

nucleus being surrounded by the remains of the protoplasm in its narrow stem (see fig. 39).

This transformation is a normal process continually going on

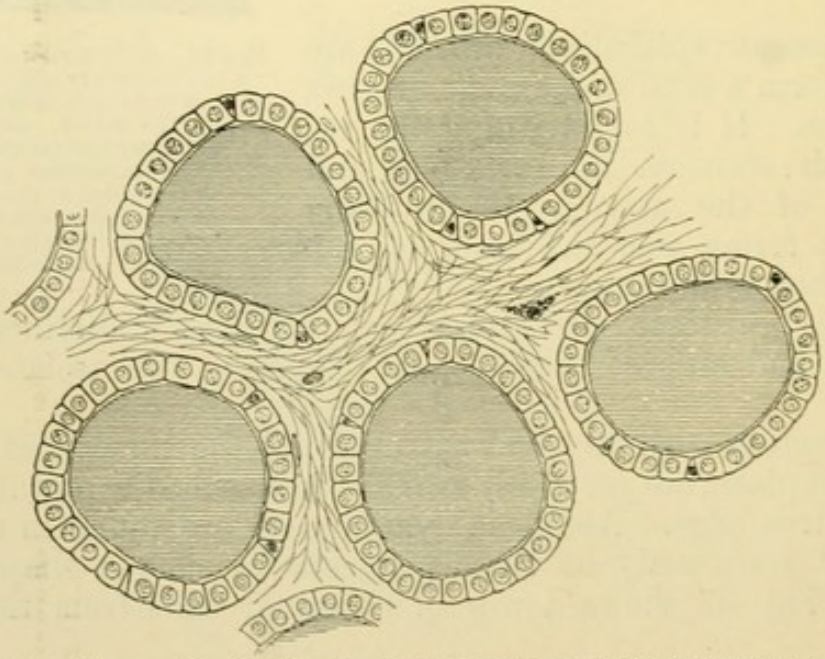


FIG. 35.—Section of human thyroid; the few vesicles shown are lined by cubical epithelium, and contain a colloid material. (After Schäfer.)

throughout life, the discharged *mucin* contributing to form *mucus*. The cells themselves may recover their original shape after discharge, and repeat the process later on.

Ciliated Epithelium.

The cells of ciliated epithelium are generally of columnar shape (fig. 40), but they may occasionally be spheroidal (fig. 41).

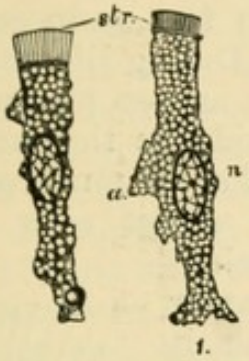


FIG. 36.—Columnar epithelium cells of the rabbit's intestine. The cells have been isolated after maceration in very weak chromic acid. The cells are much vacuolated, and one of them has a fat globule near its attached end. The striated border (*str.*) is well seen, and the bright disc separating it from the cell protoplasm. *n*, nucleus with intranuclear network. *a*, a thinned-out winglike projection of the cell which probably fitted between two adjacent cells. (Schäfer.)

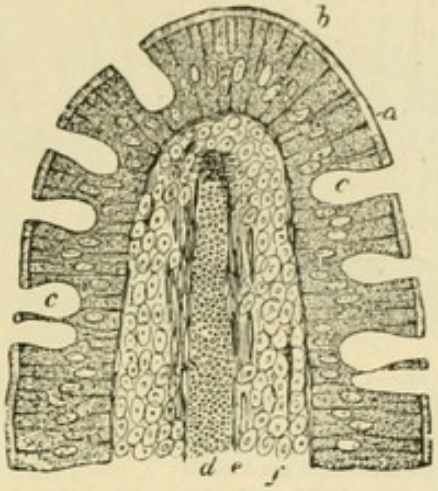


FIG. 38.—Vertical section of an intestinal villus of a cat. *a*, the striated border of the epithelium; *b*, columnar epithelium; *c*, goblet cells; *d*, central lymph-vessel; *e*, unstriped muscular fibres; *f*, adenoid stroma of the villus in which are contained lymph-corpuscles. (Klein.)

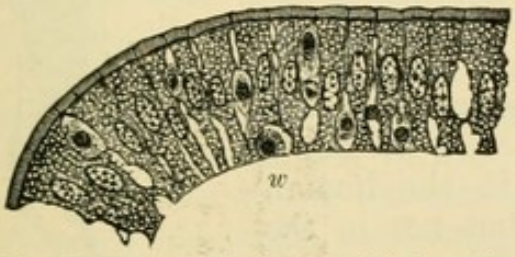


FIG. 37.—A row of columnar cells from the rabbit's intestine. Smaller cells are seen between the epithelium cells; these are lymph-corpuscles. (Schäfer.)

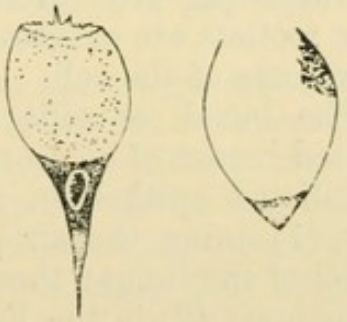


FIG. 39.—Goblet cells. (Klein.)

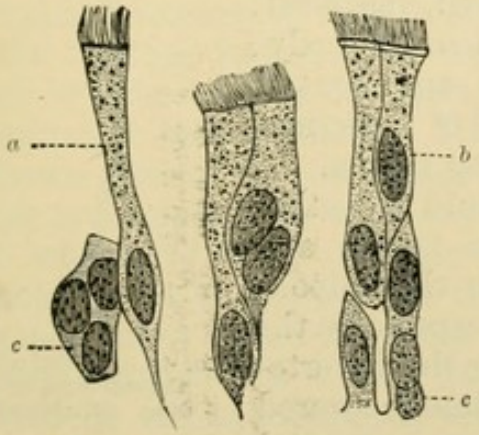


FIG. 40.—Ciliated epithelium from the human trachea. *a*, large fully-formed cell; *b*, shorter cell; *c*, developing cells with more than one nucleus. (Cadiat.)

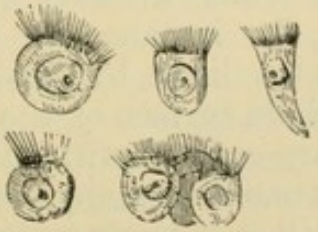


FIG. 41.—Spheroidal ciliated cells from the mouth of the frog. × 800 diameters. (Sharpey.)

Each cell is surmounted by a bunch of fine tapering filaments. They were originally called *cilia* because of their resemblance in shape to eyelashes. They differ from eyelashes in being extremely small, and in not being stiff; they are in fact composed of protoplasm. During life these move to and fro, and so produce a current of fluid over the surface they cover. Like columnar cells, they may form goblet cells and discharge mucin.

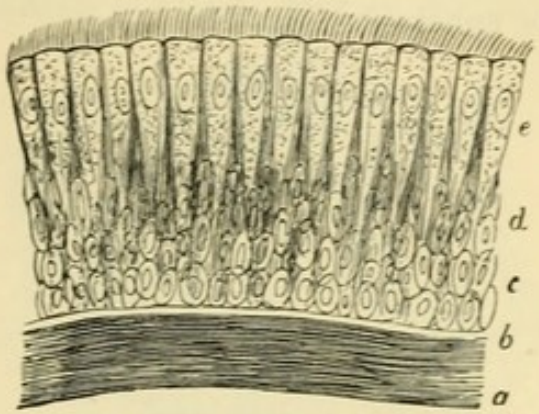


FIG. 42.—Ciliated epithelium of the human trachea. *a*, layer of longitudinally arranged elastic fibres; *b*, basement membrane; *c*, deepest cells, circular in form; *d*, intermediate elongated cells; *e*, outermost layer of cells fully developed and bearing cilia. × 350. (Kölliker.)

In the larger ciliated cells, it will be seen that the border on which the cilia are set is bright, and composed of little knobs, to each of which a cilium is attached; in some cases the knobs are prolonged into the cell protoplasm as filaments or rootlets (fig. 43). According to some observers these rootlets are outgrowths from the multiplied centrosome of the cell.

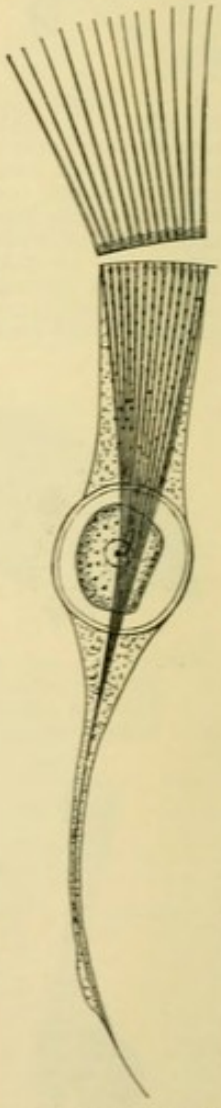


FIG. 43.—Ciliated cell from the intestine of a mollusc. (Engelmann.)

The bunch of cilia is homologous with the striated border of columnar cells.

Ciliated epithelium is found in the human body, (1) lining the air passages, but not in the alveoli of the lungs; these are lined by pavement epithelium; (2) in the Fallopian tubes and upper part of the uterus; (3) in the ducts of the testis known as the vasa efferentia and coni vasculosi; here the cilia are the longest found in the body; (4) in the ventricles of the brain and central canal of the spinal cord; (5) the tail of a spermatozoon may also be regarded as a long cilium.

In other animals cilia are found in other parts; for instance, in the frog the mouth and gullet are lined by ciliated cells; in the tadpole, the whole surface of the body and especially the gills are covered with cilia. Among the invertebrates one finds many protozoa completely covered with cilia; in many embryos the cilia are arranged in definite bands round the body; in the rotifers or wheel animalcules, a ring of cilia round the mouth gives the name to this par-

ticular group. The gills of many animals are covered with cilia; and the cells of the kidney tubules in some animals are ciliated.

Ciliary Motion.

Ciliary motion reminds one of amœboid movement, but it is much more rapid, and more orderly. It consists of a rhythmical movement of the cilia, a bending over, followed by a lessening of the curvature, repeated with great frequency.

When living ciliated epithelium, *e.g.*, from the gill of a mussel, or from the mouth of the frog, is examined under the microscope in a drop of 0·75 per cent. solution of common salt (*normal saline solution*), the cilia are seen to be in constant rapid motion, each cilium being fixed at one end, and swinging or lashing to and fro. The general impression given to the eye of the observer is very similar to that produced by waves in a field of corn, or swiftly running and rippling water, and the result of their movement is to produce a continuous current in a definite direction, and this direction is the same on the same surface, being usually in the case of a cavity towards the external orifice.

There is not only rhythmicality in the movement of a single cilium, but each acts in harmony with its fellows in the same cell, and on neighbouring cells.

The uses of cilia can from the above be almost guessed; in the respiratory passages they create a current of mucus with entangled dust towards the throat; in the Fallopian tube or oviduct they assist the ovum on its way to the uterus; in the gullet of the frog they act downwards and assist swallowing; in the ciliated protozoa they are locomotive organs. Over the gills of marine animals they keep up a fresh supply of water, and in the case of the rotifers, which are fixed animals, the current of water brings food to the mouth.

Ciliary motion is independent of the will, and of the influence of the nervous system. It may continue for several hours after death or removal from the body, provided the portion of tissue under examination be kept moist. Its independence of the nervous system is shown also in its occurrence in the lowest invertebrate animals, which are unprovided with anything analogous to a nervous system. The vapour of ether or chloroform and carbon dioxide arrest the motion, but it is renewed on the discontinuance of the application. The movement ceases when the cilia are deprived of oxygen, although it may continue for a time in the absence of *free* oxygen, but is revived on the admission of this gas. The contact of various substances, *e.g.*, bile, strong acids, and alkalis, will stop the motion altogether; but this depends on destruction of the delicate substance of which the cilia are composed. Temperatures above 45° C. and near

0° C. stop the movement, whereas moderate heat and dilute alkalis are favourable to the action, and revive the movement after temporary cessation. The exact explanation of ciliary movement is not known; whatever may be the exact cause, the movement must depend upon some changes going on in the cell to which the cilia are attached, as when the latter are cut off from the cell the movement ceases, and when severed so that a portion of the cilia are left attached to the cell, the attached and not the severed portions continue the movement. It has been suggested by Engelmann that the contractile part of the protoplasm is only on the concave side of a curved cilium, and that when this contracts that the cilium is brought downwards; where relaxation occurs, the cilium rebounds by the elastic recoil of the convex border.

Schäfer has suggested that the flow of hyaloplasm backwards and forwards will explain ciliary as it will amœboid movement. In an amœboid cell, the spongioplasm is irregular in arrangement, hence an outflow of hyaloplasm from it can occur in any direction. But in the curved projection called a cilium, the hyaloplasm can obviously flow in only one direction into the cilium and back again. The flow of hyaloplasm into the cilium will raise the pressure there and cause it to straighten; a movement in the reverse direction will cause the cilium to curve.

The action of dilute alkalis and acids on cilia is interesting. Dilute acids stop ciliary motion; and cilia, if allowed to act in salt solution for a time, get more and more languid, and finally cease acting; in popular language they become fatigued. Now we shall find in muscle that fatigue is largely due to the accumulation of the acid products of muscular activity; remove the sarco-lactic acid and fatigue passes off. It is probable that the same occurs in other contractile tissues; the cilia gradually stop, due to acid products of their activity collecting around them; when these are neutralised with dilute alkali the cilia resume activity.

Transitional Epithelium.

This term has been applied to cells which are neither arranged in a single layer, as is the case with simple epithelium, nor yet in many superimposed strata, as in stratified epithelium; in other words, it is employed when epithelial cells are found in two, three, or four superimposed layers.

The upper layer may be either columnar, ciliated, or squamous. When the upper layer is columnar or ciliated the second layer consists of smaller cells fitted into the inequalities of the cells above them, as in the trachea (fig. 42).

The epithelium which is met with lining the urinary bladder and

ureters is, however, the transitional *par excellence*. In this variety there are two or three layers of cells, the upper being more or less flattened according to the full or collapsed condition of the organ, their under surface being marked with one or more depressions, into which the heads of the next layer of club-shaped cells fit. Between the lower and narrower parts of the second row of cells are fixed the

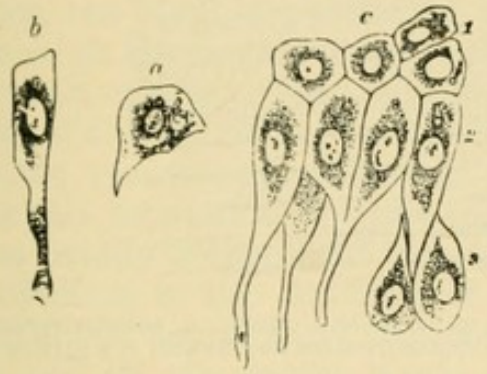


FIG. 44.—Epithelium of the bladder. *a*, one of the cells of the first row; *b*, a cell of the second row; *c*, cells *in situ*, of first, second, and deepest layers. (Obersteiner.)

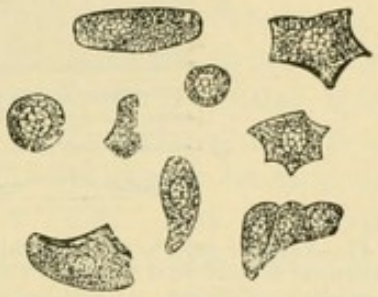


FIG. 45.—Transitional epithelial cells from a scraping of the mucous membrane of the bladder of the rabbit. (V. D. Harris.)

irregular cells which constitute the third row; sometimes a fourth row is present (fig. 44). If a scraping of the mucous membrane of the bladder is teased, and examined under the microscope, all these forms may be made out (fig. 45). Each cell contains a large nucleus, and the larger and superficial cells often possess two.

Stratified Epithelium.

The term *stratified epithelium* is employed when the cells forming the epithelium are arranged in a considerable number of superimposed layers. The shape and size of the cells of the different layers, as well as the number of the layers, vary in different situations; but the superficial cells are, as a rule, of the squamous, or scaly variety, and the deepest of the columnar form.

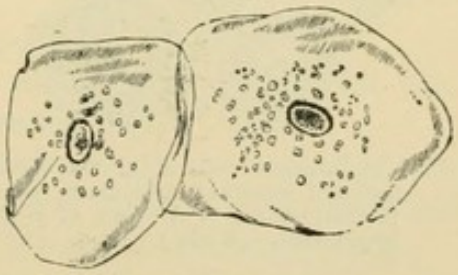


FIG. 46.—Epithelium scales from their side of the mouth. × 260. (Henle.)

The cells of the intermediate layers are of different shapes, but those of the middle layers are more or less rounded. The superficial cells are broad and overlap by their edges (fig. 46). Their chemical composition is different from that of the underlying cells, as they contain keratin, and are therefore horny in character.

The really cellular nature of even the dry and shrivelled scales cast off from the surface of the epidermis can be proved by the

application of caustic potash, which rapidly causes them to swell and assume their original form. Their nuclei, however, have disappeared.

The squamous cells exist in the greatest number of layers in the epidermis or superficial part of the skin; the most superficial of

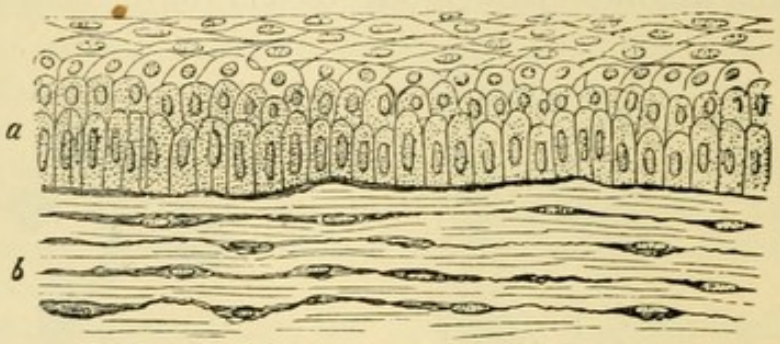


FIG. 47.—Vertical section of the stratified epithelium of the rabbit's cornea. *a*, anterior epithelium, showing the different shapes of the cells at various depths from the free surface; *b*, a portion of the substance of cornea. (Klein.)

these are being continually removed by friction, and new cells from below supply the place of those cast off.

In many of the deeper layers in the mouth and skin the outline of the cells is very irregular, in consequence of processes passing from cell to cell across these intervals.

Such cells (fig. 48) are termed "ridge and furrow," "cogged" or "prickle" cells. These "prickles" are prolongations of the intra-cellular network which run across from cell to cell, thus joining them together, the interstices being filled by lymph and transparent inter-cellular cement substance. When this increases in quantity in inflammation the cells are pushed further apart, and the connecting fibrils or "prickles" are elongated and therefore more clearly visible.

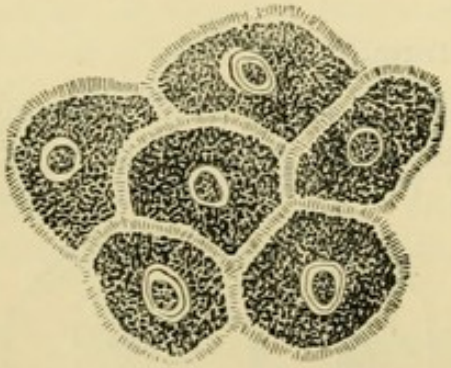


FIG. 48.—Jagged cells from the middle layers of stratified epithelium, from a vertical section of the gum of a new-born infant. (Klein.)

This connection of cell to cell is sometimes spoken of as *continuity of protoplasm*; the same occurs in involuntary muscular tissue. It is very marked in the tissues of many plants.

The columnar cells of the deepest layer are distinctly nucleated; they multiply rapidly by division; and as new cells are formed beneath, they press the older cells forwards to be in turn pressed forwards themselves towards the surface, gradually becoming flatter in shape and horny in composition until they are cast off from the surface.

Stratified epithelium is found in the following situations:—(1) Forming the epidermis, covering the whole of the external surface of the body; (2) Covering the mucous membrane of the nasal orifice,

tongue, mouth, pharynx, and œsophagus; (3) As the conjunctival epithelium, covering the cornea; (4) Lining the vagina and the vaginal part of the cervix uteri.

Nutrition of Epithelium.

Epithelium has no blood-vessels; it is nourished by lymph. When the blood is circulating through the thin-walled small blood-vessels in the tissues beneath the epithelium, some of its fluid constituents escape. This fluid is called *lymph;* it penetrates to all parts of the cellular elements of tissues and nourishes them. In the thicker varieties of epithelium, the presence of the irregular minute channels between the prickle cells (fig. 48) enables the lymph to soak more readily between the cells than it would otherwise be able to do. Epithelium is also destitute of nerves as a rule. But in stratified epithelium, particularly that covering the cornea at the front of the eye and in the deeper layers of the epidermis, a plexus of nerve fibrils is found.

Chemistry of Epithelium.

There is not much to add to what has been already stated concerning cells; protoplasm and nucleus have the same chemical composition as has been already described in Chapter II. Two new substances have, however, been mentioned in the foregoing chapter—namely, mucin and keratin.

Mucin.—This is a widely distributed substance occurring in epithelial cells or shed out by them (see goblet cells, fig. 39). It also forms the chief constituent of the cementing substance between epithelial cells. We shall again meet with it in the intercellular substance of the connective tissues. The mucin obtained from different sources varies somewhat in composition and reactions, but they all agree in the following points:—

(a) Physical character: viscid and tenacious.
(b) Precipitability from solutions by acetic acid. They all dissolve in dilute alkalis, like lime-water.
(c) They are all compounds of protein, with a carbohydrate material; by treatment with mineral acid this is hydrated into a reducing but non-fermentable sugar-like substance.

The substance mucin, when it is formed within cells (goblet cells, cells of mucous glands), is preceded in the cells by granules of a substance which is not mucin, but is readily changed into mucin. This precursor, or mother-substance of mucin, is called *mucigen* or *mucinogen.*

Keratin, or horny material, is the substance found in the surface layers of the epidermis, in hairs, nails, hoofs, and horns. It is very

insoluble, and chiefly differs from other proteins in its high percentage of sulphur.

The silver nitrate reaction of cementing substance. The principal chemical reaction which is employed by histologists for demonstrating the cement or intercellular substance which binds epithelial cells together was formerly supposed to be due to the formation of a silver-protein compound which was reduced by sunlight. Macallum has conclusively shown that this is not the case, but that it is an inorganic reaction. Cementing material is specially rich in chlorides (mainly sodium chloride); the addition of silver nitrate leads to the formation of silver chloride, and it is this which is reduced by light. The silver reaction obtained in other tissues is similarly explained: in fact silver nitrate is a micro-chemical reagent for detecting the localities in the body where chlorides occur. According to Macallum the nuclei of all cells are entirely free from chlorides.

CHAPTER IV

THE CONNECTIVE TISSUES

THE connective tissues are the following:—

1. Areolar tissue.
2. Fibrous tissue.
3. Elastic tissue.
4. Adipose tissue.
5. Retiform and lymphoid tissues.
6. Jelly-like tissue.
7. Cartilage.
8. Bone and dentine.
9. Blood.

At first sight these numerous tissues appear to form a very heterogeneous group, including the most solid tissues of the body (bone, dentine) and the most fluid (blood).

But on examining a little more deeply, one finds that the grouping of these apparently different tissues together depends on a number of valid reasons, which may be briefly stated as follows:—

1. They all resemble each other in origin. All are formed from the mesoblast, the middle layer of the embryo.
2. They resemble each other structurally; that is to say, the cellular element is at a minimum, and the intercellular material at a maximum.
3. They resemble each other functionally; they form the skeleton, and act as binding, supporting, or connecting tissues to the softer and more vital tissues.

An apology is sometimes made for calling the blood a tissue, because one's preconceived idea of a tissue or texture is that it must be something of a solid nature. But all the tissues contain water. Muscular tissue contains, for instance, at least three-quarters of its weight as water. Blood, after all, is not much more liquid than muscle. Blood, moreover, contains cellular elements analogous to the cells of other tissues, but separated by large quantities of a fluid intercellular material called blood-plasma.

Blood is also mesoblastic, and thus the two first characteristics of a connective tissue are present. It does not fulfil the third condition by contributing to the support of the body as part of the skeleton, but it does so in another sense, and serves to support the body by conveying nutriment to all parts.

Areolar Tissue.

This is a very typical connective tissue. It has a wide distribution, and constitutes the subcutaneous, subserous, and submucous tissues. It forms sheaths (fasciæ) for muscles, nerves, blood-vessels, glands, and internal organs, binding them in position and penetrating into their interior, supports and connects their individual parts.

If one takes a little of the subcutaneous tissue from an animal, and stretches it out on a glass slide, it appears to the naked eye like a soft, fleecy network of fine white fibres, with here and there wider fibres joining it. It is, moreover, elastic.

But in order to make out its structure accurately, it is necessary to examine the thinnest portions of the film with the microscope, and

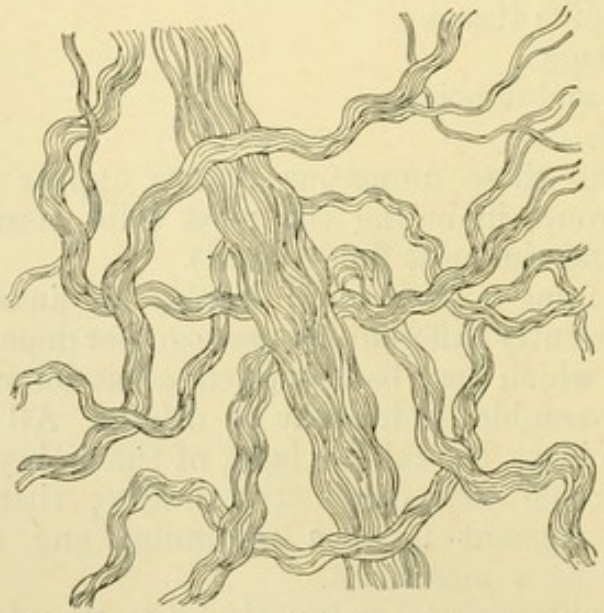


FIG. 49.—Bundles of the white fibres of areolar tissue partly unravelled. (After Sharpey.)

the action of staining and other reagents may then be also studied. By such means it is seen that this typical connective tissue consists of four different kinds of material, or, as they may be termed, *histological elements*. They are:—

(a) Cells, or connective-tissue corpuscles.
(b) A homogeneous matrix, ground substance, or intercellular material.
(c) White fibres
(d) Yellow or elastic fibres } These are deposited in the matrix.

In considering these four histological elements we may first take the fibres, because they are the most obvious and abundant of the structures observable.

The white fibres. These are exquisitely fine fibres collected into bundles which have a wavy outline. The bundles run in different directions, forming an irregular network, the meshes between which are called *areolæ;* hence the name areolar. The individual fibres never branch or join other fibres, but they may pass from one bundle to another.

On treatment with dilute acetic acid they become swollen and indistinct, leaving the other structures mixed with them more apparent.

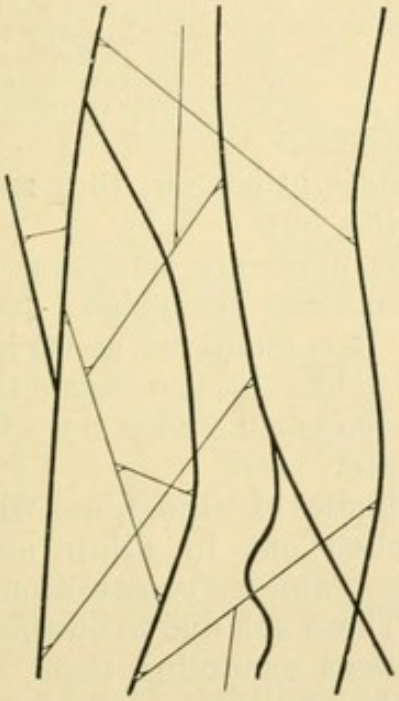


FIG. 50.—Elastic fibres of areolar tissue. (After Schäfer.)

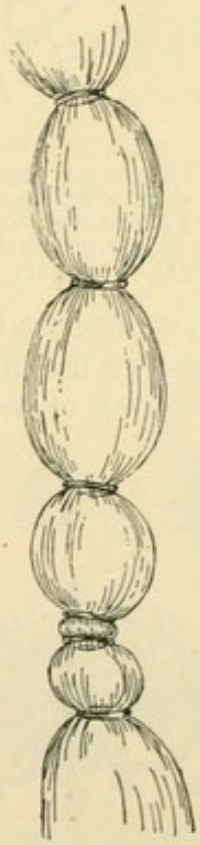


FIG. 51.—A white bundle swollen by acetic acid. (Toldt.)

They are composed of the chemical substance called *collagen.* On boiling they yield *gelatin;* some chemists regard collagen as the anhydride of gelatin; but whether this is so or not, the gelatin is undoubtedly derived from the collagen. Gelatin is a protein though it has certain characters which distinguish it from most members of the large protein family. Its most characteristic property is its power of jellying or gelatinising; that is, it is soluble in hot water, but on cooling the solution it sets into a jelly.

The yellow or elastic fibres. These are seen readily after the white fibres are rendered almost invisible by treatment with dilute acetic

acid, or after staining with such dyes as magenta and orcein, for which elastic fibres have a great affinity. They are bigger than the white

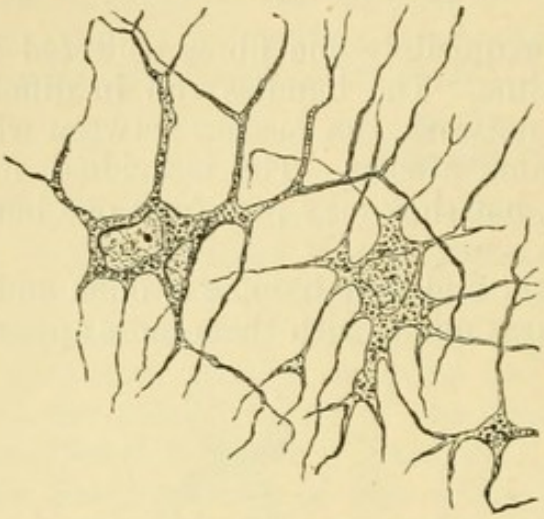


FIG. 52.—Horizontal preparation of the cornea of frog, stained with gold chloride; showing the network of branched corneal corpuscles. The ground substance is completely colourless. × 400. (Klein.)

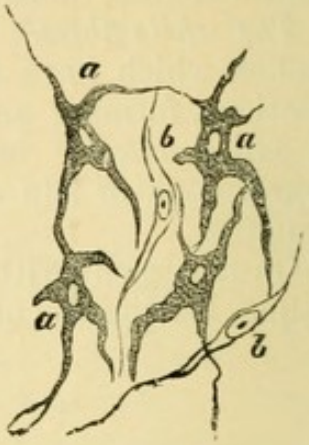


FIG. 53.—Ramified pigment-cells, from the tissue of the choroid coat of the eye. × 350. *a*, Cell with pigment; *b*, colourless fusiform cells. (Kölliker.)

fibres, have a distinct outline, and a straight course; they run singly, branch, and join neighbouring fibres (fig. 50).

The material of which the elastic fibres are composed is called *elastin*, another somewhat exceptional protein. It is unaltered, as we have seen, by dilute acid. It also resists the action of very strong acid, and is not affected by boiling water.

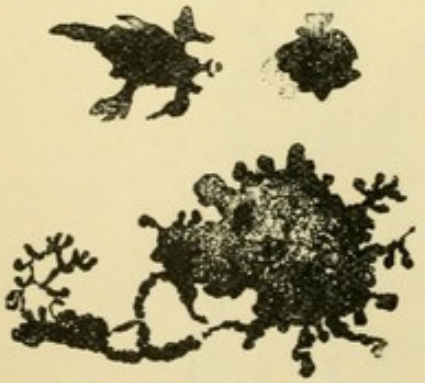


FIG. 54.—Flat, pigmented, branched connective-tissue cells from the sheath of a large blood-vessel of the frog's mesentery; the pigment is not distributed uniformly throughout the substance of the larger cell, consequently some parts of it look blacker than others (uncontracted state). In the two smaller cells most of the pigment is withdrawn into the cell-body, so that they appear smaller, blacker, and less branched. × 350. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

The bundles of white fibres which have been swollen out by dilute acetic acid sometimes exhibit constrictions as in fig. 51. These are due to elastic fibres or cell processes encircling them and preventing the swelling at those points.

Connective-tissue corpuscles. These are the cells of connective tissue: several varieties may be made out, especially after a preparation has been stained.

1. Flattened cells, branched, and often united by their processes, as in the cornea.
2. Flattened cells, unbranched, and joined edge to edge like the cells of an epithelium; these are well seen in the sheath of a tendon.
3. Plasma cells of Waldeyer, varying greatly in size and form, but not flattened. The protoplasm is much vacuolated.

4. Granule cells ("mast" cells of Ehrlich): like plasma cells, but containing albuminous granules (stainable by basic aniline dyes) instead of vacuoles.
5. Wander cells: white blood-corpuscles which have emigrated from the neighbouring blood-vessels.
6. Pigment cells: these are seen in the subcutaneous tissues of many animals, *e.g.*, the frog, and in the choroid coat of the eyeball.

Fig. 55 shows a highly magnified view of a small piece of sub-

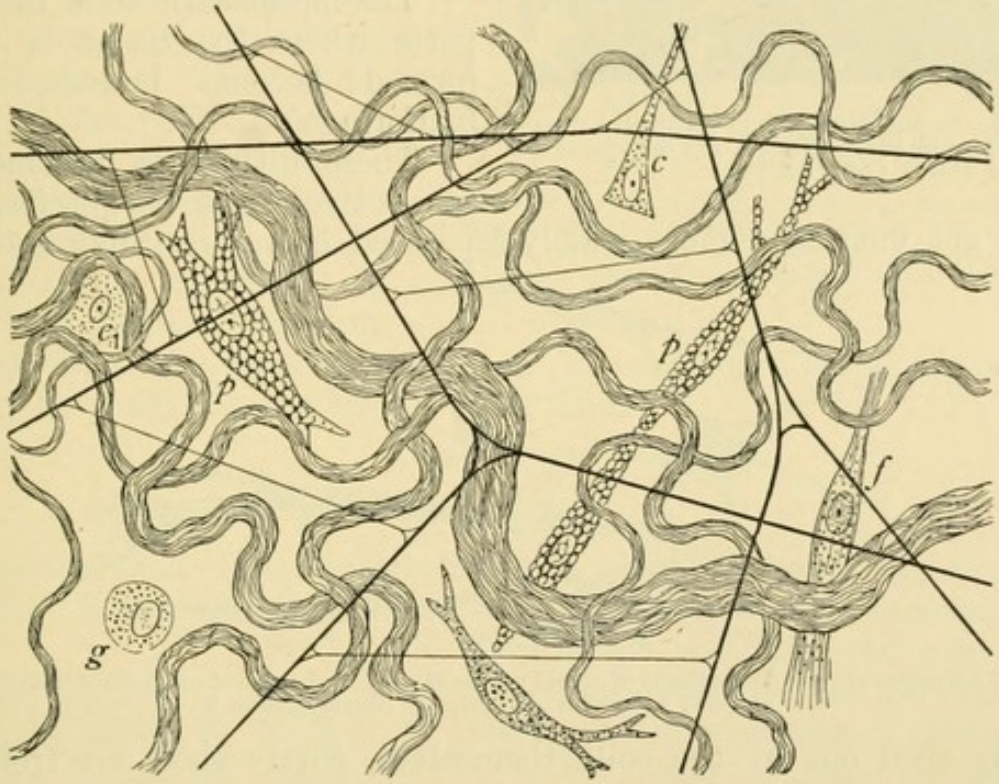


FIG. 55.—Areolar tissue. The white fibres are seen in wavy bundles; the elastic fibres form an open network. *p*, *p*, Plasma cells; *g*, granule cell; *c*, *c*, lamellar cells; *f*, fibrillated cell. (After Schäfer.)

cutaneous tissue, and illustrates the irregular way in which the fibres and cells are intermixed.

The ground-substance. This may be represented in fig. 55 by the white background of the paper.

It may be readily demonstrated in a silver nitrate preparation; for the intercellular material has the same property of reducing silver salts in the sunlight that the cement-material of epithelium has (see p. 34). It becomes in consequence dark brown, with the exception of the spaces occupied by the corpuscles.

The spaces intercommunicate like the cells, and being considerably larger than the cells form a ramifying network of irregular channels, which were first termed by v. Recklinghausen the *Saft Kanälchen*, or little juice canals. Areolar tissue is certainly pro-

vided with blood-vessels, but the tissue elements are, as in all tissues, provided with nutriment by the exudation from the blood called *lymph*. The *Saft Kanälchen* enable the lymph to penetrate to every part of the areolar tissue.

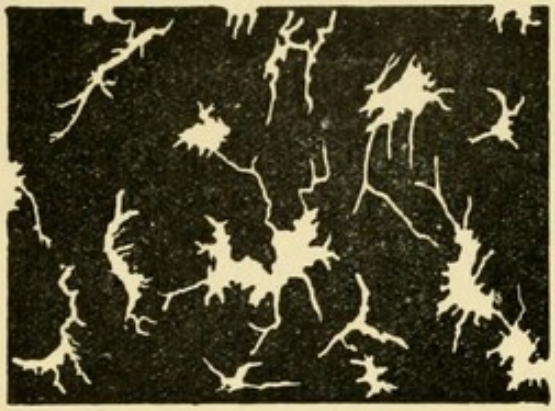


FIG. 56.—Ground-substance of connective tissue, stained by silver nitrate. The cell spaces are left white. (After Schäfer.)

Development of Areolar Tissue.

The mesoblastic cells in those parts where the tissue is to be formed become branched and fusiform.

These ultimately become the connective-tissue corpuscles, and they get more and more widely separated by intercellular material,

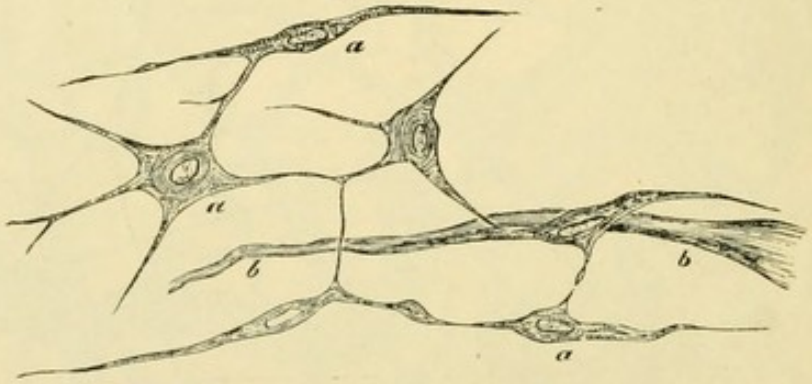


FIG. 57.—Portion of submucous tissue of gravid uterus of sow. *a*, Branched cells, more or less spindle-shaped; *b*, bundles of connective tissue. (Klein.)

partly shed out by the cells themselves, partly shed out from the

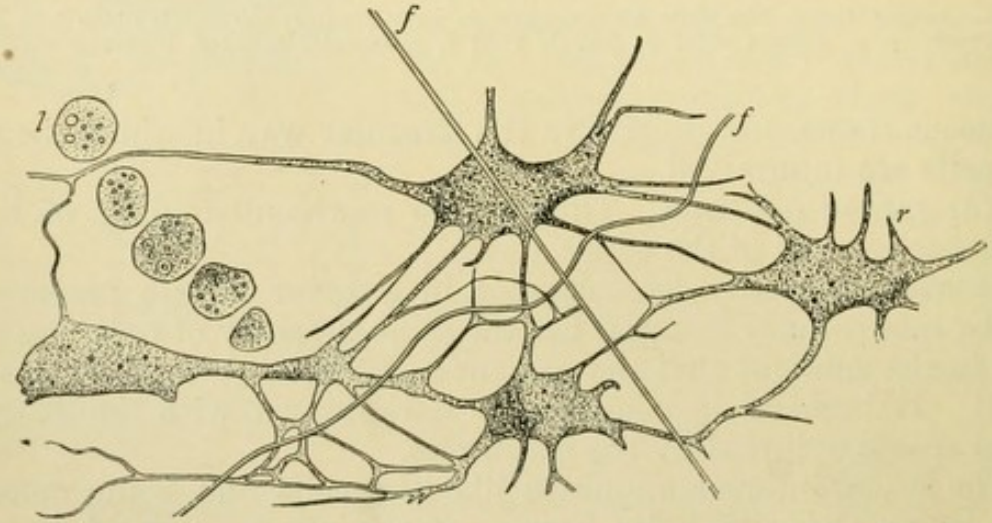


FIG. 58.—Jelly of Wharton. *r*, Ramified cells intercommunicating by their branches; *l*, a row of lymph-cells; *f*, fibres developing in the ground-substance. (Ranvier.)

neighbouring blood-vessels. This becomes the ground-substance.

The fibres are subsequently deposited in this matrix. At one time it was believed that the cells themselves became elongated and converted into fibres. No doubt the cells do exercise a controlling influence on fibre-formation in their neighbourhood, but it is certain that they never become fibres. The formation of fibres is intercellular. Some of the fibres formed are of the white, others of the yellow variety. In the case of the elastic fibres, rows of granules of elastin are first deposited; these joining together in single or multiple rows form the long fibres: traces of this are seen in transverse markings occasionally noticeable in the larger elastic fibres.

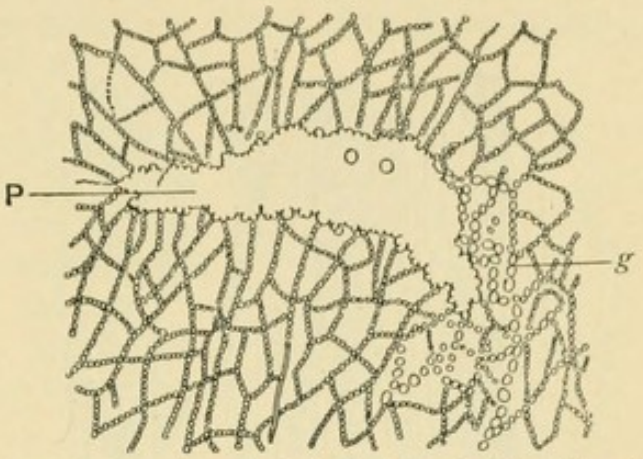


FIG. 59.—Development of elastic tissue by deposition of fine granules. *g*, Fibres being formed by rows of elastic granules; P, platelike expansion of elastic substance formed by the fusion of elastic granules. (Ranvier.)

Fibrous Tissue.

This is a kind of connective tissue in which the white fibres predominate; it is found in tendons and ligaments, in the periosteum, dura mater, true skin, the sclerotic coat of the eye, and in the thicker fasciæ and aponeuroses of muscle.

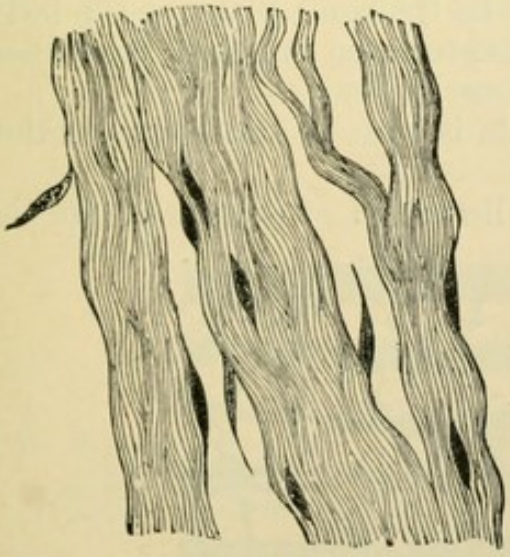


FIG. 60.—Fibrous tissue of tendon, consisting mainly of white fibres. (Stricker.)

The tissue is one of great strength; this is conferred upon it by the arrangement of the fibres, the bundles of which run parallel, union here, as elsewhere, giving strength. The fibres of the same bundle now and then intersect each other. The cells in tendons (fig. 61) are forced to take up a similar orderly arrangement, and are arranged in long chains in the ground-substance separating the bundles of fibres, and are more or less regularly quadrilateral with large round nuclei containing nucleoli, which are generally placed so as to be nearly contiguous in two cells. Each of these cells consists of a thick body, from which processes pass in various directions into, and partially fill

up the spaces between, the bundles of fibres. The cells are generally marked by one or more lines or stripes when viewed longitudinally.

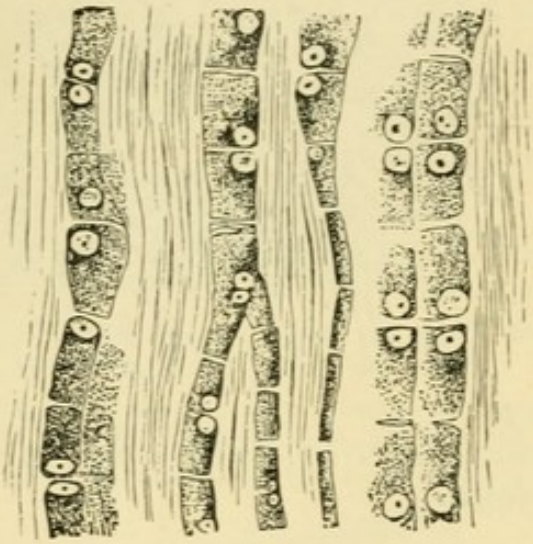


FIG. 61.—Caudal tendon of young rat, showing the arrangement, form, and structure of the tendon cells. The bundles of white fibres between which they lie have been rendered transparent and indistinct by the application of acetic acid. × 300. (Klein.)

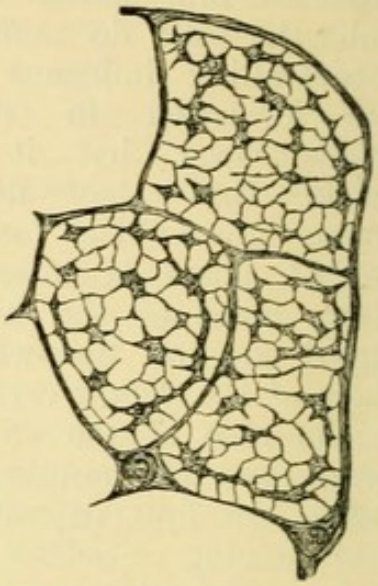


FIG. 62.—Transverse section of tendon from a cross section of the tail of a rabbit, showing sheath, fibrous septa, and branched tendon cells. The spaces left white in the drawing represent the tendinous bundles in transverse section. × 250. (Klein.)

This appearance is really produced by the wing-like processes of the cell, which project away from the chief part of the cell in different directions. These processes not being in the same plane as the body of the cell are out of focus, and give rise to these bright stripes when the cells are looked at from above and are in focus.

The branched character of the cells is seen in transverse section in fig. 62.

The cell spaces in which the cells lie are in arrangement like the

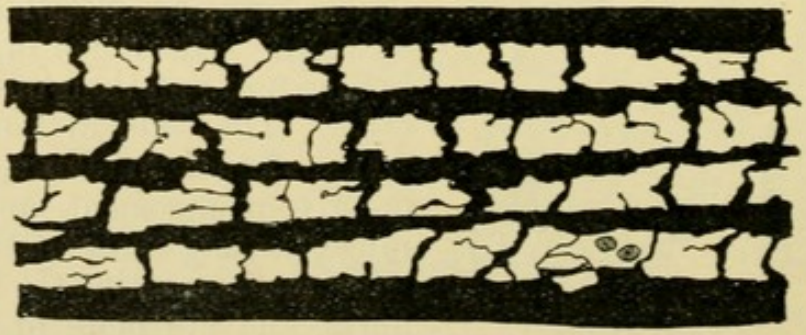


FIG. 63.—Cell spaces of tendon, brought into view by treatment with silver nitrate. (After Schäfer.)

cells; they can be brought into relief by staining with silver nitrate (see fig. 63).

Elastic Tissue.

This is a form of connective tissue in which the yellow or elastic fibres predominate. The yellow fibres are larger than those found in areolar tissue (see fig. 64), and are bound into bundles by areolar tissue. It is found in the ligamentum nuchæ of the ox, horse, and many other animals; in the ligamenta subflava of man; in the arteries and veins, constituting the fenestrated coat of Henle; in the lungs and trachea; in the stylo-hyoid, thyro-hyoid, and crico-thyroid ligaments; and in the true vocal cords.

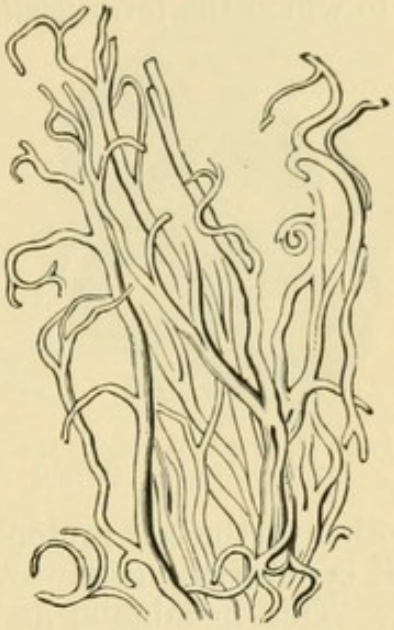


FIG. 64.—Elastic fibres from the ligamenta subflava. × 200. (Sharpey.)

Elastic tissue occurs in various forms, from a structureless, elastic membrane to a tissue whose chief constituents are bundles of fibres crossing each other at different angles; when seen in bundles elastic fibres are yellowish in colour, but individual fibres are not so distinctly coloured. The larger elastic fibres are often transversely marked, indicating their mode of origin (see p. 41), and on transverse section are seen to be angular (fig. 65).

Elastic tissue, being extensible and elastic (*i.e.*, recoiling after it has been stretched), has a most important use in assisting muscular tissue in a mechanical way, and so lessening the wear and tear of such an important tissue as muscle. Thus, in the ligamenta subflava of the human vertebral column it assists in the maintenance of the erect posture; in the ligamentum nuchæ in the neck of quadrupeds it assists in the raising of the head and in keeping it in that position. In the arterial walls, and in the air tubes and lungs, it has a similar important action, as we shall see when discussing the subjects of the circulation and respiration.

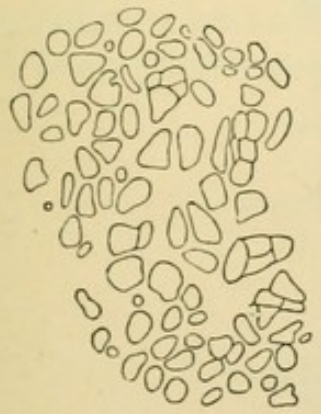


FIG. 65.—Transverse section of a portion of lig. nuchæ, showing the outline of the fibres. (After Stöhr.)

We now come to those forms of connective tissue in which the cells rather than the fibres are most prominent.

Adipose Tissue.

In almost all regions of the human body a larger or smaller quantity of adipose or fatty tissue is present; the chief exceptions being the

subcutaneous tissue of the eyelids, penis and scrotum, the nymphæ, and the cavity of the cranium.

Adipose tissue is developed in connection with areolar tissue, and forms in its meshes little masses of unequal size and irregular shape, to which the term *lobules* is applied.

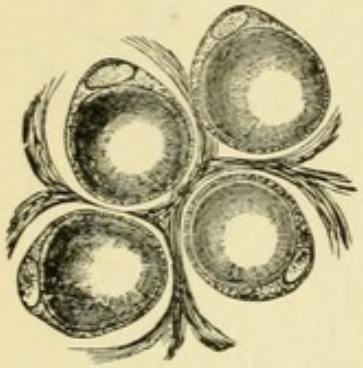


FIG. 66.—Fat-cells from the omentum of a rat. (Klein.)

Under the microscope adipose tissue is found to consist essentially of little vesicles or cells which present dark, sharply-defined edges when viewed with transmitted light: they are about $\frac{1}{400}$ or $\frac{1}{500}$ of an inch in diameter; each consists of a structureless and colourless membrane or bag formed of the remains of the original protoplasm of the cell, filled with fatty matter, which is liquid during life, but is in part solidified (or sometimes crystallised) after death. A nucleus is always present in some part or other of the cell protoplasm, but in the ordinary condition of the cell it is not easily or always visible (fig. 67).

This membrane and the nucleus can generally be brought into view by staining the tissue: it can be still more satisfactorily demonstrated by extracting the contents of the fat-cells with ether, when the shrunken, shrivelled membranes remain behind. By mutual pres-

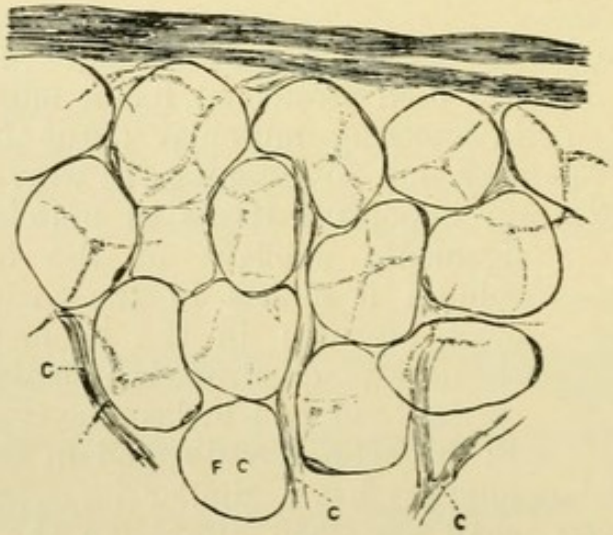


FIG. 67.—Group of fat-cells (F C) with capillary vessels (C). (Noble Smith.)

sure, fat-cells assume a polyhedral figure (fig. 68, *b*). When stained with osmic acid fat-cells appear black.

The oily matter contained in the cells is composed of the compounds of fatty acids with glycerin, which are named *olein*, *stearin*, and *palmitin*.

Development of Adipose Tissue.—Fat-cells are developed from

connective-tissue corpuscles, especially the "mast"-cells; these cells may be found exhibiting every intermediate gradation between

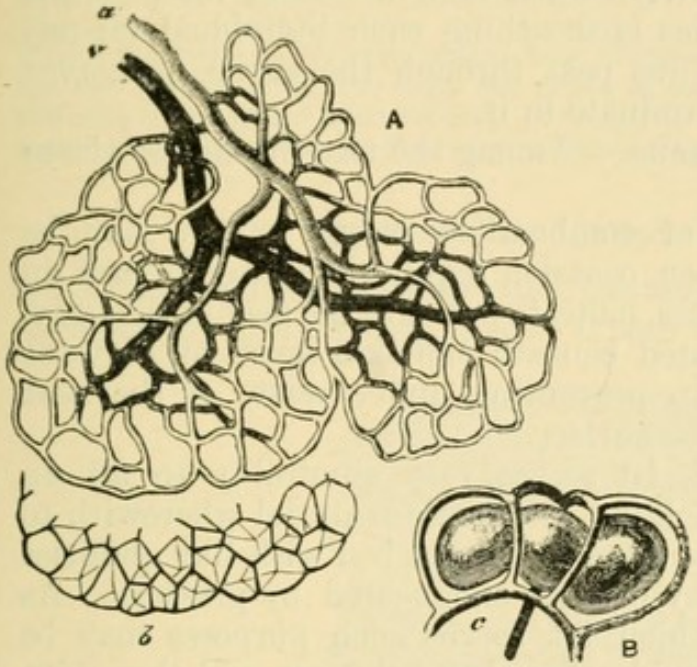


FIG. 68.—Blood-vessels of adipose tissue. A, Minute fat-lobule, in which the vessels only are represented. *a*, artery; *v*, vein; *b*, the fat-vesicles of one border of the lobule separately represented. × 100. B, Plan of the arrangement of the capillaries (*c*) on the exterior of the vesicles; more highly magnified. (Todd and Bowman.)

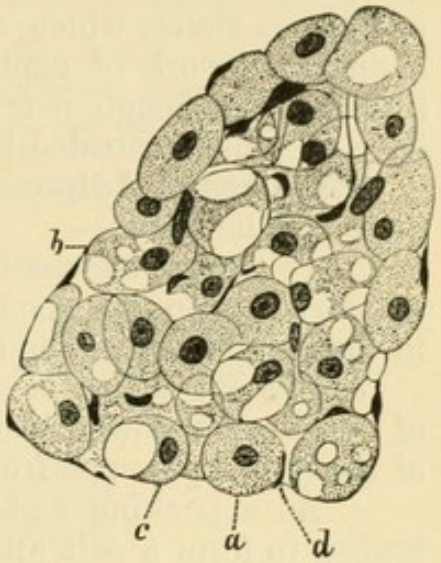


FIG. 69.—A lobule of developing adipose tissue from an eight months' fœtus. *a*, Spherical or, from pressure, polyhedral cells with large central nucleus, surrounded by protoplasm staining uniformly with hæmatoxylin. *b*, Similar cells with spaces from which the fat has been removed by oil of cloves. *c*, Similar cells showing how the nucleus with enclosing protoplasm is being pressed towards periphery. *d*, Nucleus of endothelium of investing capillaries. (M'Carthy.) Drawn by Treves.

an ordinary granular corpuscle and a mature fat-cell. The process of development is as follows: a few small drops of oil make their

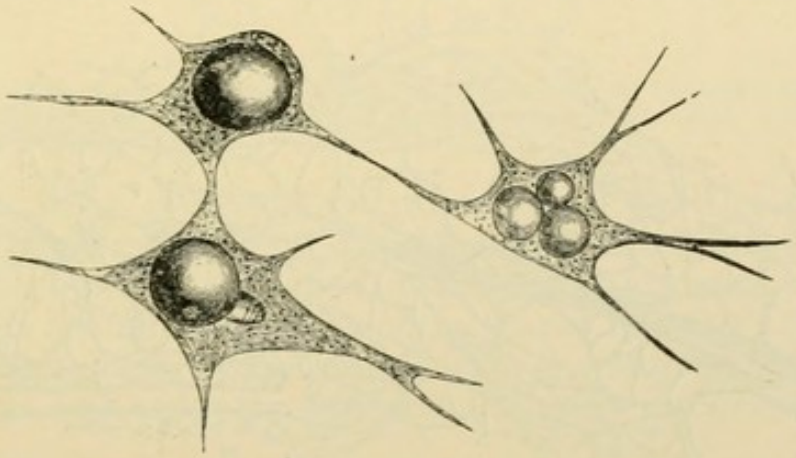


FIG. 70.—Branched connective-tissue corpuscles, developing into fat-cells. (Klein.)

appearance in the protoplasm, and by their confluence a larger drop is produced (figs. 69 and 70): this gradually increases in size at the expense of the original protoplasm of the cell, which becomes cor-

respondingly diminished in quantity till in the mature cell it only forms a thin film, with a flattened nucleus imbedded in its substance (fig. 66).

Vessels and Nerves.—A large number of blood-vessels are found in adipose tissue, which subdivide until each lobule of fat contains a fine meshwork of capillaries ensheathing each individual fat-cell (fig. 68). Although nerve fibres pass through the tissue, no nerves have been demonstrated to terminate in it.

The Uses of Adipose Tissue.—Among the uses of adipose tissue these are the chief:—

a. It serves as a store of combustible matter which may be reabsorbed into the blood when occasion requires, and, being used up in the metabolism of the tissues, helps to preserve the heat of the body.

b. The fat which is situated beneath the skin must, by its want of conducting power, assist in preventing undue waste of the heat of the body by escape from the surface.

c. As a packing material, fat serves very admirably to fill up spaces, to form a soft and yielding yet elastic material wherewith to wrap tender and delicate structures, or form a bed with like qualities on which such structures may lie, not endangered by pressure. As examples of situations in which fat serves such purposes may be mentioned the palms of the hands, the soles of the feet, and the orbits.

d. In the long bones fatty tissue, in the form known as yellow marrow, fills the medullary canal, and supports the small blood-vessels which are distributed from it to the inner part of the substance of the bone.

Retiform Tissue.

Retiform or reticular tissue is a kind of connective tissue in which the ground substance is of more fluid consistency than elsewhere.

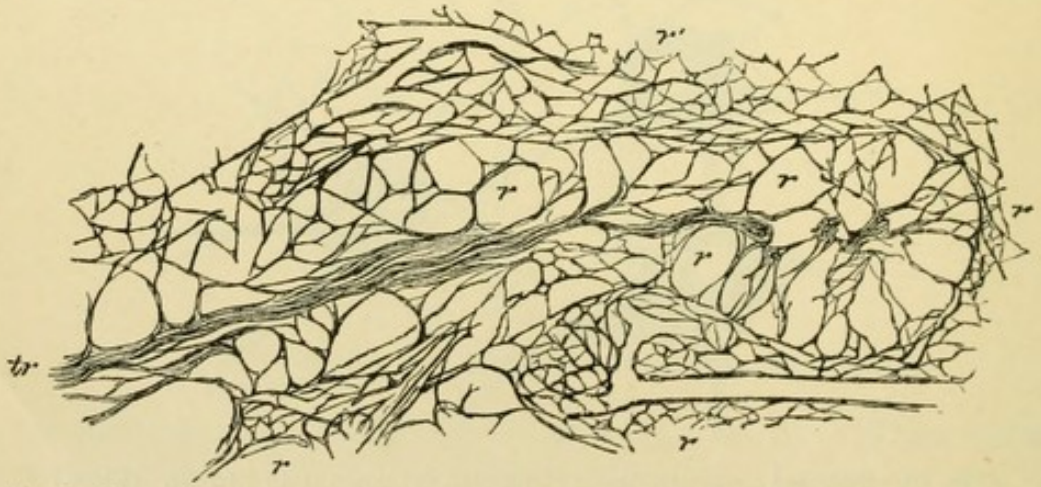


FIG. 71.—Retiform tissue from a lymphatic gland, from a section which has been treated with dilute potash. (Schäfer.)

There are few or no elastic fibres in it, but the white fibres run in very fine bundles forming a close network. The bundles are covered

and concealed by flattened connective-tissue corpuscles. When these are dissolved by dilute potash, the fibres are plainly seen (fig. 71).

The statement has been made that the fibres of retiform tissue are chemically different from those of areolar tissue, in spite of the fact that they are indistinguishable microscopically, and in many places continuous with each other. Miss Tebb has conclusively proved that chemical differences do not exist between the two groups of fibres; both are made of collagen, and the substance termed reticulin by Siegfried is an artifact; it is merely collagen which has been rendered resistant and insoluble by the reagents (alcohol, ether) used in its preparation.

Adenoid or Lymphoid Tissue.

This is retiform tissue in which the meshes of the network are largely occupied by lymph corpuscles. These are in certain foci actively

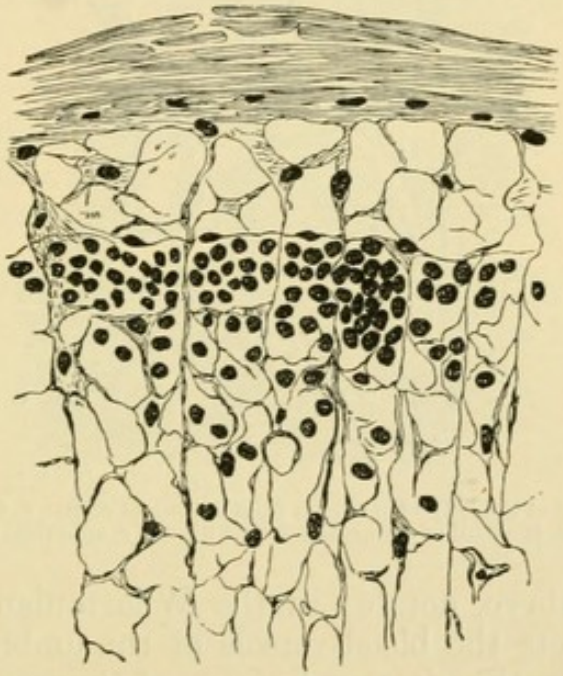


FIG. 72.—Part of a section of a lymphatic gland, from which the corpuscles have been for the most part removed, showing the supporting retiform tissue. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

multiplying; they get into the lymph stream, which washes them into the blood, where they become the variety of colourless corpuscles called lymphocytes. It is found in the lymphatic glands, the thymus, the tonsils, in the follicular glands of the tongue, in Peyer's patches, and in the solitary glands of the intestines, in the Malpighian corpuscles of the spleen, and under the epithelium of many mucous membranes.

Basement Membranes.

These are homogeneous in appearance, and are found between the epithelium of a mucous membrane and the subjacent connective tissue. They are generally formed of flattened connective-tissue corpuscles

joined together by their edges, but sometimes they are made of condensed ground-substance, not of cells, and in other cases again (as in the cornea) they are of elastic nature.

Jelly-like Connective Tissue.

We have now considered connective tissues in which fibres of one or the other kind predominate, and some in which the cells are in preponderance. We come lastly to a form of connective tissue in which the ground substance is in excess of the other histological elements. This is called jelly-like connective tissue. The cells and fibres scattered through it are few and far between. It is found

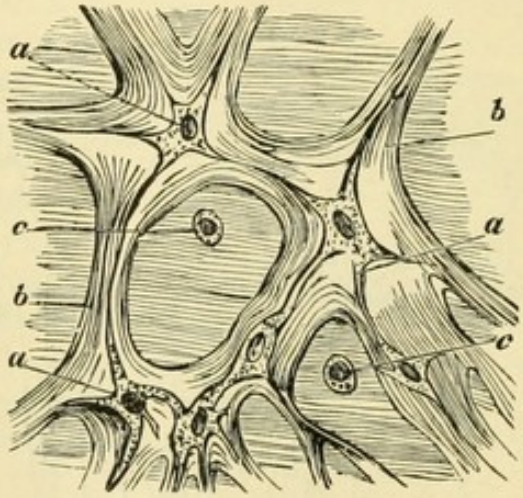


FIG. 73.—Tissue of the jelly of Wharton from umbilical cord. *a*, Connective-tissue corpuscles; *b*, fasciculi of connective-tissue fibres; *c*, spherical cells. (Frey.)

largely in the embryo, notably in the Whartonian jelly, which surrounds and protects the blood-vessels of the umbilical cord. In the adult it is found in the vitreous humour of the eye.

Various points in the structure of the tissue are illustrated in figs. 58 (p. 40) and 73.

The occurrence of large quantities of ground-substance in such tissues has enabled physiologists to examine its chemical nature. Its chief constituents are water, and one or more varieties of mucin-like substances termed *mucoids* and mineral salts (especially sodium chloride).

CHAPTER V

THE CONNECTIVE TISSUES (*continued*)

CARTILAGE, BONE, TEETH, BLOOD

Cartilage.

CARTILAGE is popularly termed gristle. It may be divided into two chief kinds: *Hyaline cartilage;* here the matrix or ground substance is clear and free from fibres: *Fibro-cartilage;* here the matrix is per-

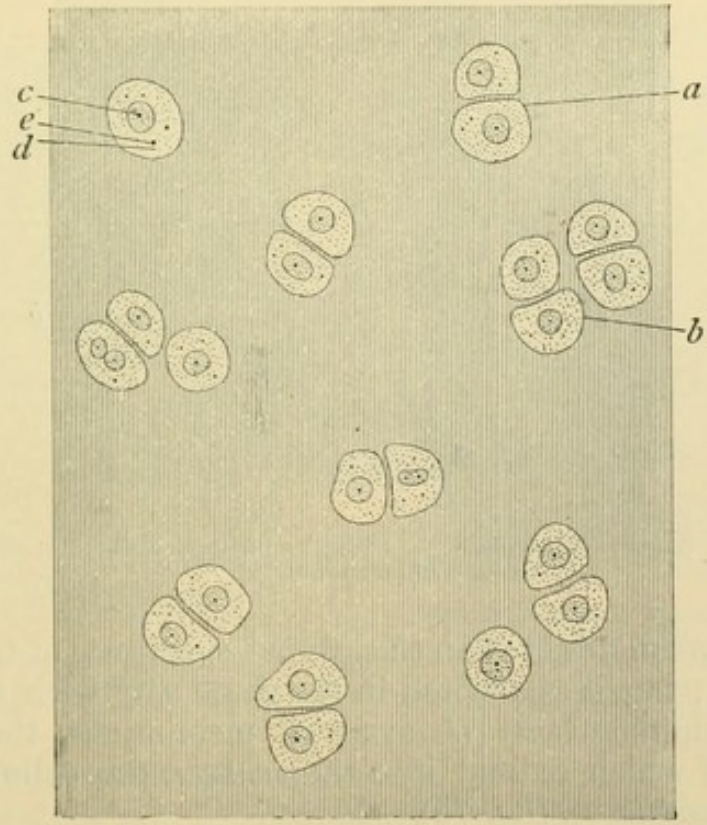


FIG. 74.—Section of articular cartilage. *a*, Group of two cells; *b*, group of four cells; *d*, protoplasm of cell with *e*, fatty granules; *c*, nucleus. (After Schäfer.)

vaded with connective-tissue fibres; when these are of the white variety, the tissue is *white fibro-cartilage;* when they are of the yellow or elastic variety, the tissue is *yellow* or *elastic fibro-cartilage.*

Hyaline Cartilage is found in the following places:—

1. Covering the articular ends of bones; here it is called *articular cartilage.*

2. Forming the rib-cartilages; here it is called *costal cartilage.*

3. The cartilages of the nose, of the windpipe, of the external auditory meatus, and the greater number of the laryngeal cartilages.

4. *Temporary cartilage:* rods of cartilage which prefigure the majority of the bones in process of development.

Articular cartilage: here the cells are rounded and scattered in groups of two and four through the matrix, which is non-fibrillated

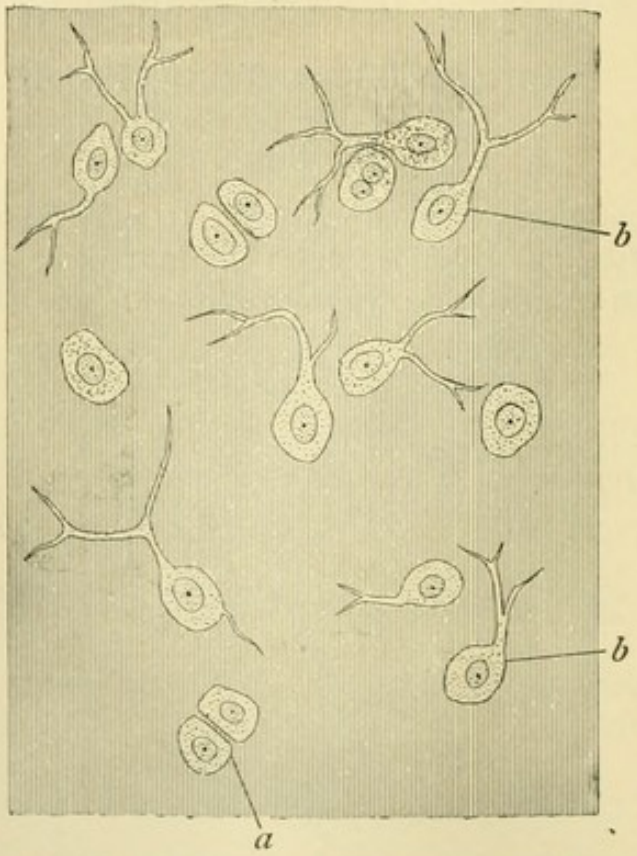


FIG. 75.—Section of transitional cartilage. *a*, Ordinary cartilage cells; *b b*, those with processes. (After Schäfer.)

(fig. 74), and much firmer than the ground-substance of the connective tissues proper; but it is affected in the same way with silver nitrate.

In the neighbourhood of synovial membranes, the connective-tissue fibres of which extend into the matrix, the cells are branched (*transitional cartilage*), (fig. 75).

The next figure (fig. 76) shows the general arrangement of the cell-groups in a vertical section of articular cartilage. Cartilage is free from blood-vessels, and also from nerves. It is nourished by lymph, but canals connecting the cell-spaces are not evident.

Costal cartilage: here the matrix is not quite so clear, and the cells

are larger, more angular, and collected into larger groups than in articular cartilage. Under the *perichondrium*, a fibrous membrane which surrounds the rod of cartilage, the cells are flattened and lie parallel to the surface; in the deeper parts they are irregularly arranged; they frequently contain fat (see fig. 77).

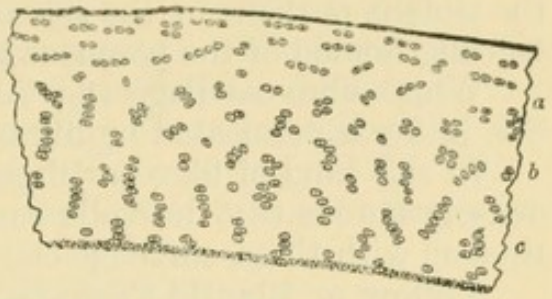


FIG. 76.—Vertical section of articular cartilage; *a*, cell-groups arranged parallel to surface; *b*, cell-groups irregularly arranged; *c*, cell-groups arranged perpendicularly to surface.

The hyaline cartilages of the nose, larynx, and trachea (fig. 78) resemble costal cartilage.

Hyaline cartilage in many situations (costal, laryngeal, tracheal) shows a tendency to become calcified late in life.

On boiling, the ground-substance of cartilage yields a material called *chondrin*. This resembles gelatin very closely, and the differences in its reactions are due to the fact that chondrin is not a chemical individual, but a mixture of gelatin with varying amounts of mucoid substances.

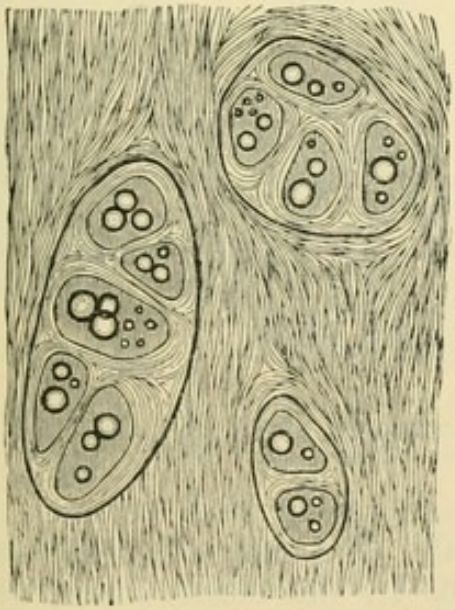


FIG. 77.—Costal cartilage from an adult dog, showing fat-globules in the cartilage-cells. (Cadiat.)

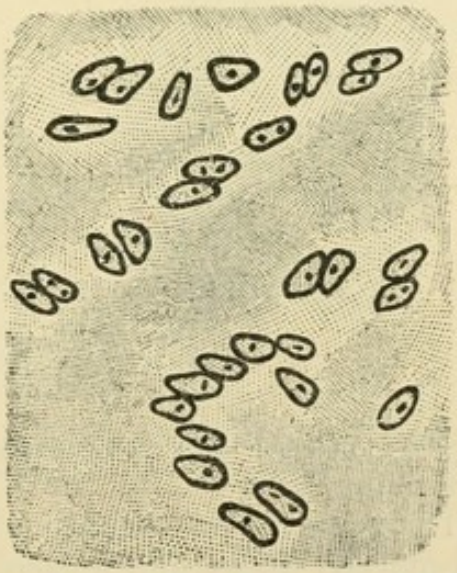


FIG. 78.—Ordinary hyaline cartilage from trachea of a child. The cartilage-cells are enclosed singly or in pairs in a capsule of hyaline substance. × 150 diams. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

White Fibro-Cartilage occurs—

1. As *inter-articular* fibro-cartilage—*e.g.*, the semilunar cartilages of the knee-joint.

2. As *circumferential* or marginal cartilage, as on the edges of the acetabulum and glenoid cavity.

3. As *connecting* cartilage—*e.g.*, the inter-vertebral discs.

4. In the *sheaths of tendons* and sometimes in their substance. In

the latter situation the nodule of fibro-cartilage is called a *sesamoid* fibro-cartilage, of which a specimen may be found in the tendon of the tibialis posticus in the sole of the foot, and usually in the neighbouring tendon of the peroneus longus.

White fibro-cartilage (fig. 79) is composed of cells and a matrix. The latter is permeated by fibres of the white variety.

In this kind of fibro-cartilage it is not unusual to find portions so densely fibrous that no cells can be seen; but in other parts continuous with these, cartilage-cells are freely distributed.

Yellow *or* **Elastic Fibro-Cartilage** is found in the pinna of the external ear, in the epiglottis and cornicula laryngis, and in the Eustachian tube.

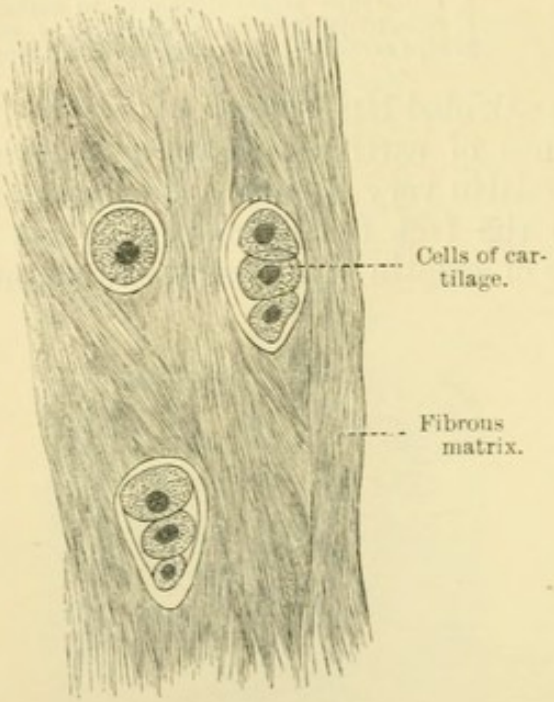


FIG. 79.—White fibro-cartilage. (Cadiat.)

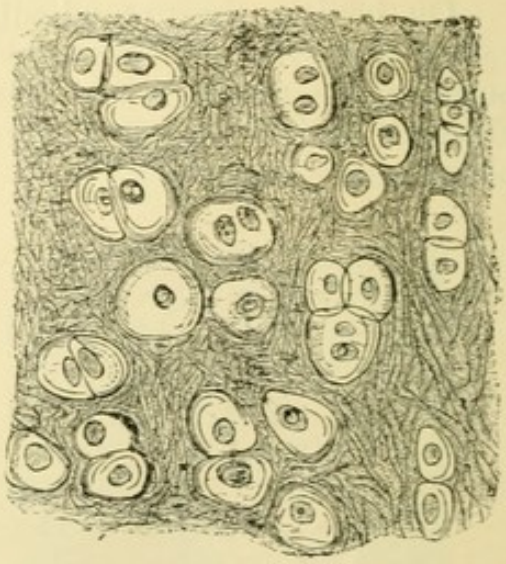


FIG. 80.—Yellow or elastic fibro-cartilage. (Cadiat.)

The cells in this variety of cartilage are rounded or oval, with well-marked nuclei and nucleoli (fig. 80). The matrix in which they are seated is pervaded in all directions by fine elastic fibres, which form an intricate interlacement about the cells: a small and variable quantity of non-fibrillated hyaline intercellular substance is present around the cells.

Development of Cartilage.—Like other connective tissues, cartilage originates from mesoblast; the cells are unbranched, and the disposition of the cells in fully formed cartilage in groups of two, four, etc., is due to the fact that each group has originated from the division of a single cell, first into two, each of these again into two, and so on. This process of cell division is accompanied with the usual karyokinetic changes.

Each cell deposits on its exterior a sheath or capsule; on division each of the daughter-cells deposits a new capsule within this, and the process may be repeated (see fig. 81).

Thus the cells get more and more separated. The fused capsules form a very large part of the matrix, and indications of their previous existence may sometimes be seen in fully formed cartilage by the presence of faint concentric lines around the cells (see fig. 77).

In a variety of cartilage found in the ears of rats and mice called

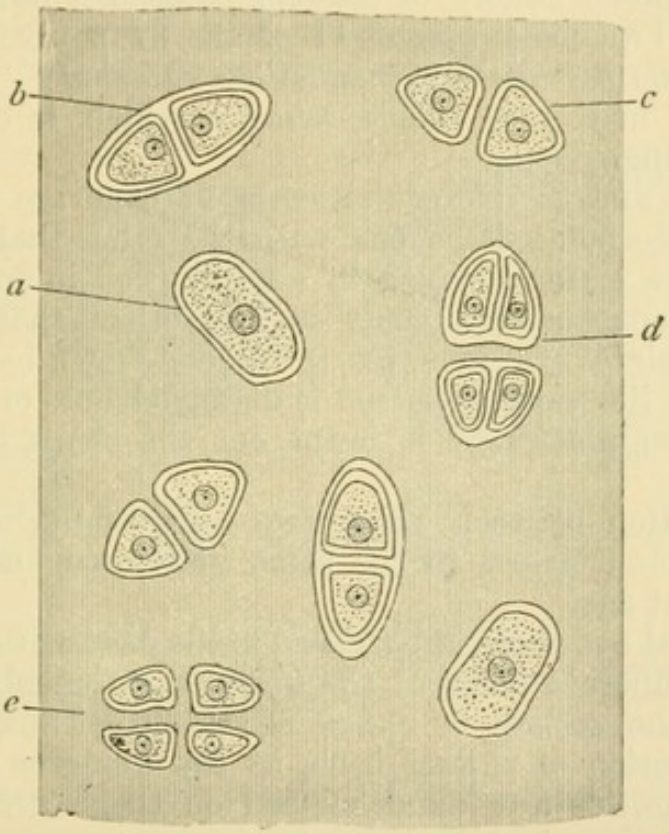


FIG. 81.—Plan of multiplication of cells in cartilage. *a*, Cell in its capsule; *b*, divided into two, each with a capsule; *c*, primary capsule disappeared, secondary capsules coherent with matrix; *d*, tertiary division; *e*, secondary capsules disappeared, tertiary coherent with matrix. (After Sharpey.)

cellular cartilage, the cells never multiply to any great extent, and they are only separated by their thickened capsules.

But in most cartilages the cell-capsules will not explain the origin of the whole matrix, but intercellular material accumulates outside the capsules and still further separates the cells.

By certain methods of double staining, this twofold manner of formation may be shown very markedly. We have seen that chondrin obtained by boiling cartilage is really a mixture of two substances; one is a mucoid material, and comes from the capsules; the other is gelatin, which comes from the rest of the ground-substance which is collagenous. In hyaline cartilage, however, the collagen does not become precipitated to form fibres, but in white

fibro-cartilage it does. In yellow fibro-cartilage the matrix is pervaded by a deposit of elastin, which results in the formation of a network of elastic fibres.

Bone.

Bone contains nearly 50 per cent. of water; the solid material is composed of *earthy* and *animal* matter in the proportion of about 67 per cent. of the former to 33 per cent. of the latter. The earthy matter is composed chiefly of *calcium phosphate*, but besides this, there is a small quantity (about 11 of the 67 per cent.) of *calcium carbonate*, *calcium fluoride*, and *magnesium phosphate*.

The animal matter is chiefly *collagen*, which is converted into *gelatin* by boiling.

The animal and earthy constituents of bone are so intimately blended and incorporated the one with the other that it is only by severe measures, as for instance by a white heat in one case and by the action of concentrated acids in the other, that they can be separated. Their close union, too, is further shown by the fact that when by acids the earthy matter is dissolved out, or on the other hand when the animal part is burnt out, the shape of the bone is alike preserved.

The proportion between these two constituents of bone varies slightly in different bones in the same individual and in the same bone at different ages.

To the naked eye there appear two kinds of structure in different bones, and in different parts of the same bone, namely, the *dense* or *compact*, and the *spongy* or *cancellous* tissue. Thus, in making a longitudinal section of a long bone, as the humerus or femur, the articular extremities are found capped on their surface by a thin shell of compact bone, while their interior is made up of the spongy or cancellous tissue. The *shaft*, on the other hand, is formed almost entirely of a thick layer of the compact bone, and this surrounds a central canal, the *medullary* cavity—so called from its containing the *medulla* or marrow.

In the flat bones, as the parietal bone or the scapula, the cancellous structure (diploë) lies between two layers of the compact tissue, and in the short and irregular bones, as those of the *carpus* and *tarsus*, the cancellous tissue fills the interior, while a thin shell of compact bone forms the outside.

Marrow.—There are two distinct varieties of marrow—the *red* and *yellow*.

Red marrow is the connective tissue which occupies the spaces in the cancellous tissue; it is highly vascular, and thus maintains the nutrition of the spongy bone, the interstices of which it fills. It contains a few fat-cells and a large number of *marrow-cells*. The

marrow-cells are amœboid, and resemble large leucocytes; the granules of some of these cells stain readily with acid and neutral dyes, but a considerable number have coarse granules which stain readily with basic dyes like methylene blue. Among the cells are some nucleated cells of the same tint as coloured blood-corpuscles. These are termed *erythroblasts.* From them the coloured corpuscles of the blood are developed. There are also a few large cells with many nuclei, termed *giant cells* or *myeloplaxes* (fig. 82).

Yellow marrow fills the medullary cavity of long bones, and consists chiefly of fat-cells with numerous blood-vessels; many of its cells also are the colourless marrow-cells just mentioned.

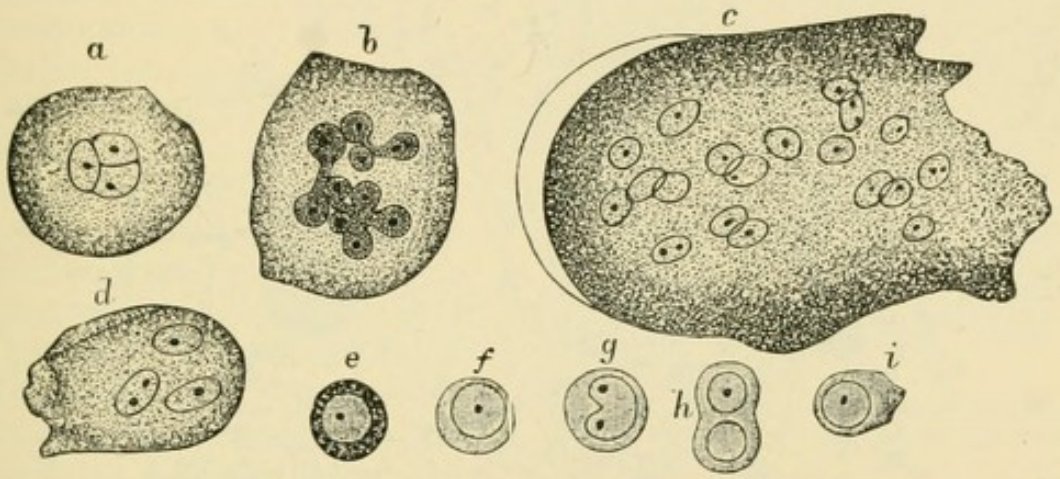


FIG. 82.—Cells of the red marrow of the guinea-pig, highly magnified. *a*, A large cell, the nucleus of which appears to be partly divided into three by constrictions; *b*, a cell, the nucleus of which shows an appearance of being constricted into a number of smaller nuclei; *c*, a so-called giant cell or myeloplaxe, with many nuclei; *d*, a smaller myeloplaxe, with three nuclei; *e—i*, proper cells of the marrow. (E. A. Schäfer.)

Periosteum and Nutrient Blood-vessels.—The surfaces of bones, except the part covered with articular cartilage, are clothed by a tough, fibrous membrane, the *periosteum;* and it is from the blood-vessels which are distributed in this membrane, that the bones, especially their more compact tissue, are in great part supplied with nourishment; minute branches from the periosteal vessels enter the little foramina on the surface of the bone, and find their way to the Haversian canals, to be immediately described. The long bones are supplied also by a proper nutrient artery which, entering at some part of the shaft so as to reach the medullary cavity, breaks up into branches for the supply of the marrow, from which again small vessels are distributed to the interior of the bone. Other small blood-vessels pierce the articular extremities for the supply of the cancellous tissue.

Microscopic Structure of Bone.—Notwithstanding the differences of arrangement just mentioned, the structure of all bone is found under the microscope to be essentially the same,

Examined with a rather high power its substance is found to contain a multitude of small irregular spaces, approximately fusiform in shape, called *lacunæ*, with very minute canals or *canaliculi* leading from them, and anastomosing with similar little prolongations from other lacunæ (fig. 83). In very thin layers of bone, no other canals but these may be visible; but on making a transverse section of the compact tissue as of a long bone, *e.g.*, the humerus or ulna, the arrangement shown in fig. 83 can be seen.

The bone seems mapped out into small circular districts, at or about the centre of each of which is a hole, around which is an

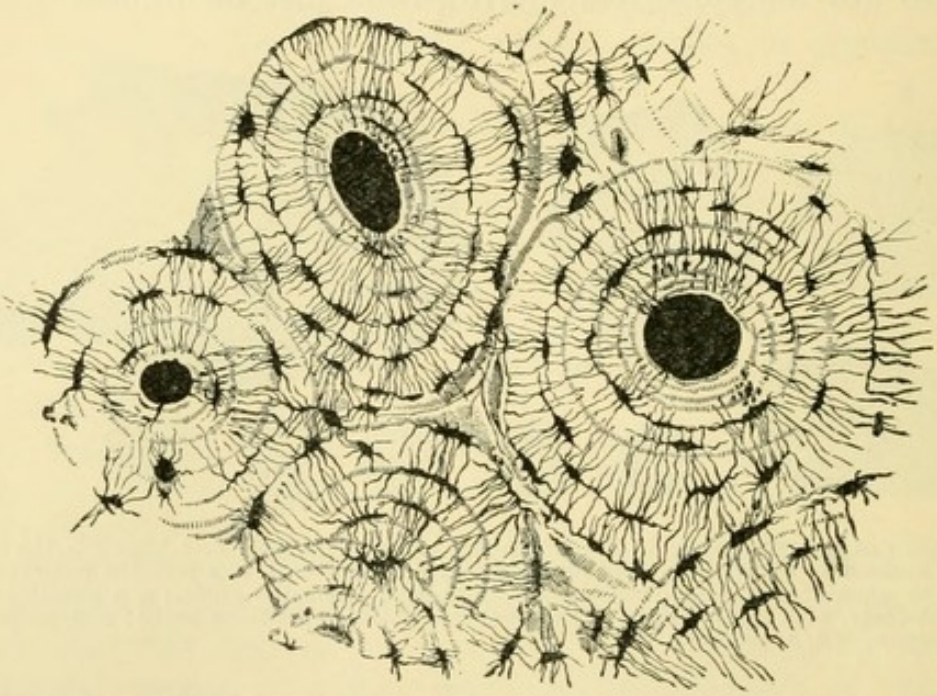


FIG. 83.—Transverse section of compact bony tissue (of humerus). Three of the Haversian canals are seen, with their concentric rings; also the lacunæ, with the canaliculi extending from them across the direction of the lamellæ. The Haversian apertures were filled with air and débris in grinding down the section, and therefore appear black in the figure, which represents the object as viewed with transmitted light. The Haversian systems are so closely packed in this section, that scarcely any *interstitial* lamellæ are visible. × 150. (Sharpey.)

appearance as of concentric layers; the *lacunæ* and *canaliculi* follow the same concentric plan of distribution around the small hole in the centre, with which indeed they communicate.

On making a longitudinal section, the central holes are found to be simply the cut extremities of small canals which run lengthwise through the bone, anastomosing with each other by lateral branches (fig. 84); these canals are called *Haversian canals*, after the name of the physician, Clopton Havers, who first accurately described them.

The **Haversian canals**, the average diameter of which is $\frac{1}{500}$ of an inch, contain blood-vessels, and by means of them blood is conveyed to all, even the densest parts of the bone; the minute canaliculi and

lacunæ take up the lymph exuded from the Haversian blood-vessels, and convey it to the substance of the bone which they traverse.

The blood-vessels enter the Haversian canals both from without, by traversing the small holes which exist on the surface of all bones beneath the periosteum, and from within by means of small channels which extend from the medullary cavity, or from the cancellous tissue. The arteries and veins usually occupy separate canals, and the veins, which are the larger, often present, at irregular intervals, small pouch-like dilatations. Nerve filaments are also found in the Haversian canals, and a little connective tissue with cleft-like lymph spaces. The larger canals may contain a few marrow cells.

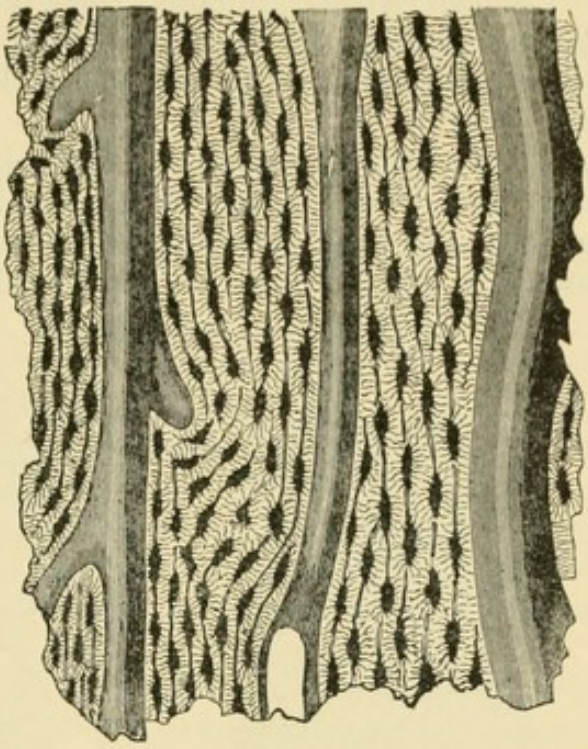


FIG. 84.—Longitudinal section from the human ulna, showing Haversian canals, lacunæ, and canaliculi. (Rollett.)

The **lacunæ** are occupied by branched cells, which are called *bone-cells*, or *bone-corpuscles* (fig. 85); these closely resemble ordinary branched connective-tissue corpuscles. Bone is thus essentially connective tissue, the ground-substance of which is impregnated with lime salts. The bone-corpuscles with their processes, occupying the lacunæ and canaliculi, correspond exactly to the connective-tissue corpuscles lying in branched spaces. The connection of the lacunæ by the canaliculi allows the nutrient lymph to pass from place to place.

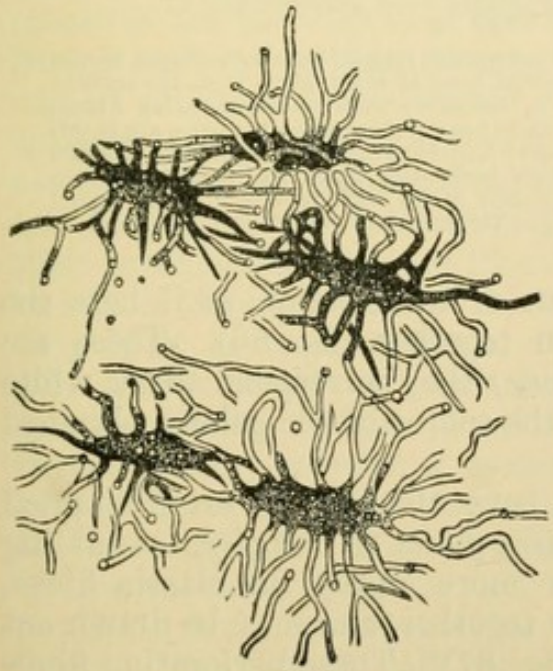


FIG. 85.—Bone-corpuscles with their processes as seen in a thin section of human bone. (Rollett.)

Lamellæ of Compact Bone.—In the shaft of a long bone three distinct sets of lamellæ can be clearly recognised.

1. *Circumferential* lamellæ; these are concentrically arranged just beneath the periosteum, and around the medullary cavity.

2. *Haversian* lamellæ; these

are concentrically arranged around the Haversian canals to the number of six to eighteen around each.

3. *Interstitial* lamellæ; these connect the systems of Haversian lamellæ, filling the spaces between them, and consequently attaining their greatest development where the Haversian systems are few, and *vice versâ*.

The ultimate structure of the lamellæ is fibrous. If a thin film be peeled off the surface of a bone, from which the earthy matter has been removed by acid, and examined with a high power of the microscope, it will be found composed of very slender fibres decussating

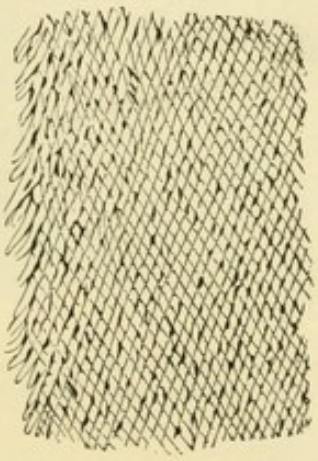


FIG. 86.—Thin layer peeled off from a softened bone. This figure, which is intended to represent the reticular structure of a lamella, gives a better idea of the object when held rather farther off than usual from the eye. × 400. (Sharpey.)

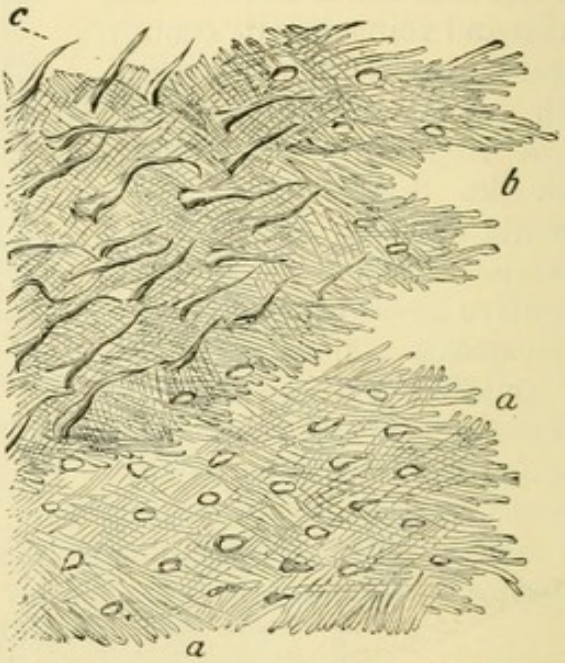


FIG. 87.—Lamellæ torn off from a decalcified human parietal bone at some depth from the surface. *a*, *a*, Lamellæ, showing intercrossing fibres; *b*, darker part, where several lamellæ are superposed; *c*, perforating fibres. Apertures, through which perforating fibres had passed, are seen especially in the lower part, *a*, *a*, of the figure. (Allen Thomson.)

obliquely, but coalescing at the points of intersection, as if here the fibres were fused rather than woven together (fig. 86). These are called the *intercrossing fibres of Sharpey;* they correspond to the white fibres of connective tissue, and form the source of the gelatin obtained by boiling bone.

In many cases, as in the parietal bone, the lamellæ are perforated by tapering fibres called the *perforating fibres of Sharpey,* resembling in character the ordinary white or more rarely the elastic fibres, which bolt the neighbouring lamellæ together, and may be drawn out when the latter are torn asunder (fig. 87). These perforating fibres originate from ingrowing processes of the periosteum, and in the adult still retain their connection with it.

Development of Bone.—From the point of view of their development, all bones may be subdivided into two classes:—

(*a.*) Those which are ossified directly or from the first in a fibrous membrane afterwards called the periosteum—*e.g.*, the bones forming the vault of the skull, parietal, frontal, and a certain portion of the occipital bones.

(*b.*) Those whose form, previous to ossification, is laid down in *hyaline cartilage—e.g.*, humerus, femur.

The process of development, pure and simple, may be best studied in bones which are not preceded by cartilage; and without a knowledge of this process (ossification in *membrane*), it is impossible to understand the more complex series of changes through which such a structure as the cartilaginous femur of the fœtus passes in its transformation into the bony femur of the adult (ossification in *cartilage*).

Ossification in Membrane.—The membrane, afterwards forming the periosteum, from which such a bone as the parietal is developed, consists of two layers—an external *fibrous*, and an internal *cellular* or *osteo-genetic.*

The external layer is made up of ordinary fibrous tissue. The internal layer consists of a network of fine fibrils with a large number of nucleated cells (*osteoblasts*), some of which are oval, others drawn out into long branched processes: it is more richly supplied with capillaries than the outer layer. It is this portion of the periosteum which is immediately concerned in the formation of bone.

In such a bone as the parietal, ossification is preceded by an increase in the vascularity of this membrane, and then spicules, starting from a *centre of ossification* near the centre of the future bone, shoot out in all directions towards the periphery. These primary bone spicules consist of fibres which are termed *osteo-genetic fibres;* they are composed of a soft, transparent substance called *osteogen*, around and between which calcareous granules are deposited. The fibres in their precalcified state are likened to bundles of white fibrous tissue, to which they are similar in chemical composition, but from which they differ in being stiffer and less wavy. The deposited granules after a time become so numerous as to imprison the fibres, and bony spiculæ result. By the junction of the osteo-genetic fibres and their resulting bony spicules a meshwork of bone is formed. The osteo-genetic fibres, which become indistinct as calcification proceeds, persist in the lamellæ of adult bone as the intercrossing fibres of Sharpey. The osteoblasts, being in part retained within the bony layers thus produced, form bone corpuscles. On the bony trabeculæ first formed, layers of osteoblastic cells from the osteo-genetic layer of the periosteum repeat the process just described; and as this occurs in several thicknesses, and also at the edges of the spicules previously formed,

the bone increases, both in thickness, length and breadth. The process is not completed by the time the child is born; hence the fontanelles or still soft places on the heads of infants. Fig. 88 represents a small piece of the growing edge of a parietal bone.

The bulk of the primitive spongy bone is in time converted into compact bony tissue, with Haversian systems. Those portions in the interior not converted into bone become filled with the red marrow of the cancellous tissue.

Ossification in Cartilage.—Under this heading, taking the femur

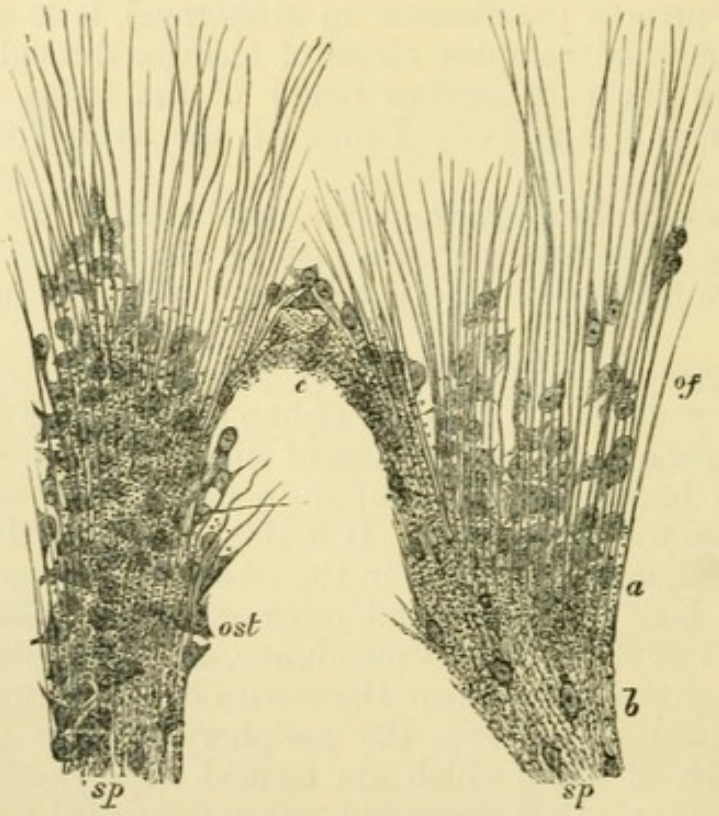


FIG. 88.—Part of the growing edge of the developing parietal bone of a fœtal cat. *sp*, Bony spicules with some of the osteoblasts imbedded in them, producing the lacunæ; *of*, osteogenic fibres prolonging the spicules with osteoblasts (*ost*) between them and applied to them. (Schäfer.)

or any other long bone as an example, we have to consider the process by which the solid cartilaginous rod which represents the bone in the fœtus is converted into the hollow cylinder of compact bone with expanded ends formed of cancellous tissue of which the adult bone is made up. We must bear in mind the fact that this fœtal cartilaginous femur is many times smaller than even the medullary cavity of the shaft of the mature bone, and, therefore, that not a trace of the original cartilage can be present in the femur of the adult. Its purpose is indeed purely temporary; and, after its calcification, it is gradually and entirely absorbed.

The cartilaginous rod which forms the precursor of a fœtal long

bone is sheathed in a membrane termed the *perichondrium*, which exactly resembles the periosteum described above; it consists of two layers, in the deeper one of which spheroidal and branched cells predominate and blood-vessels abound, while the outer layer consists mainly of fibres.

Between the cartilaginous prefigurement of which the fœtal long bone consists and the adult bone there are several intermediate stages.

The process may, however, be most conveniently described as occurring in three principal stages.

The first stage consists of two sets of changes, one in the cartilage, the other under the perichondrium. These take place side by side. In the cartilage the cells in the middle * become enlarged and separated from one another. The cartilage-cells on each side get arranged in rows in the direction of the extremities of the cartilaginous rod. If at this stage one cuts the little embryonic bone with a knife, the knife encounters resistance, and there is a sensation of grittiness. This is due to the fact that calcareous particles are deposited in the matrix; and in consequence of this the matrix stains differently with histological reagents from the unaltered matrix. Simultaneously with this, the periosteal tissue is forming layer after layer of true bone; this is formed exactly in the same way

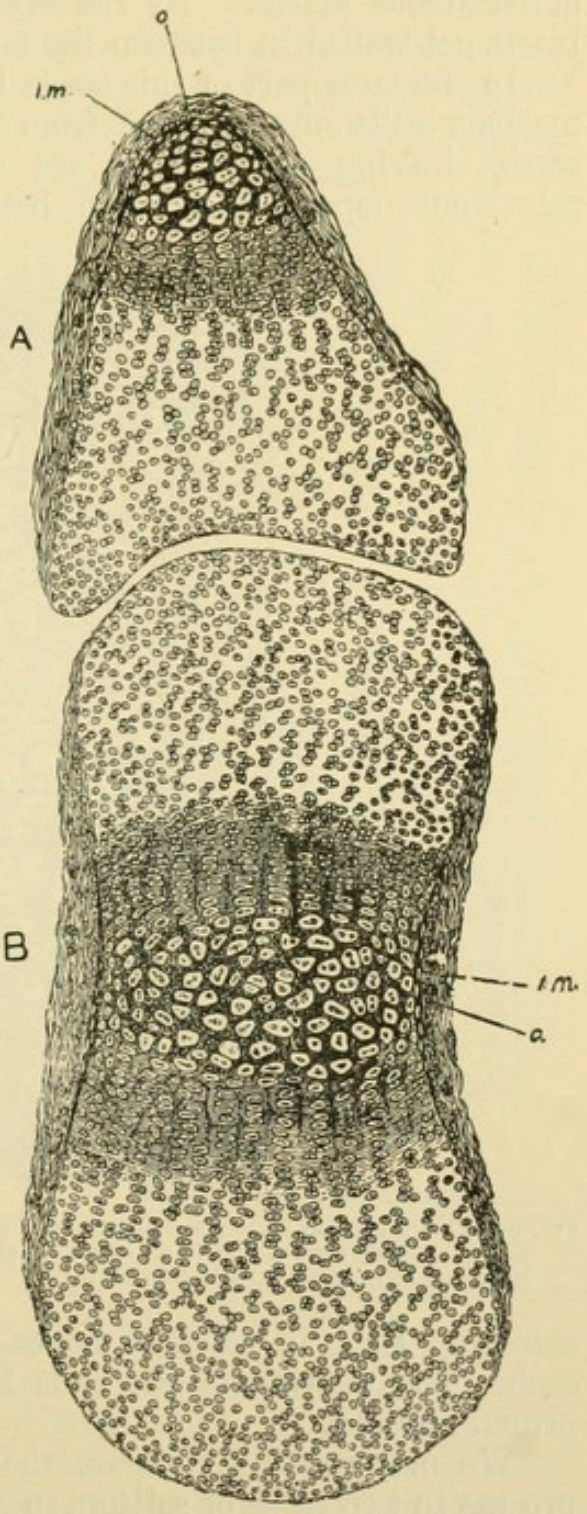


FIG. 89.—Section of two fœtal phalanges; the cartilage-cells in the centre of B are enlarged and separated from one another by calcified matrix. *im*, Layer of bone deposited under the periosteum; *o*, layer of osteoblasts by which this layer was formed. The rows of cartilage-cells are seen on each side of the centre of calcification. In A, the terminal phalanx, the changes begin at the tip. (After Dixey.)

* This is the case in nearly all the long bones, but in the terminal phalanges the change occurs first, not in the middle but at their distal extremities.

as in such a bone as the parietal; by the agency of the osteoblasts, osteogenetic fibres, and then spicules of bone, are formed by deposit of calcareous matter. As the layers are formed, some of the osteoblasts get walled in between the layers, and become bone cells.

In the later part of this stage the calcareous deposit between the cartilage-cells cuts them off from nutrition, and they in consequence waste, leaving spaces that are called the *primary areolæ*. The calcareous deposit creeps up between the rows of cartilage-cells,

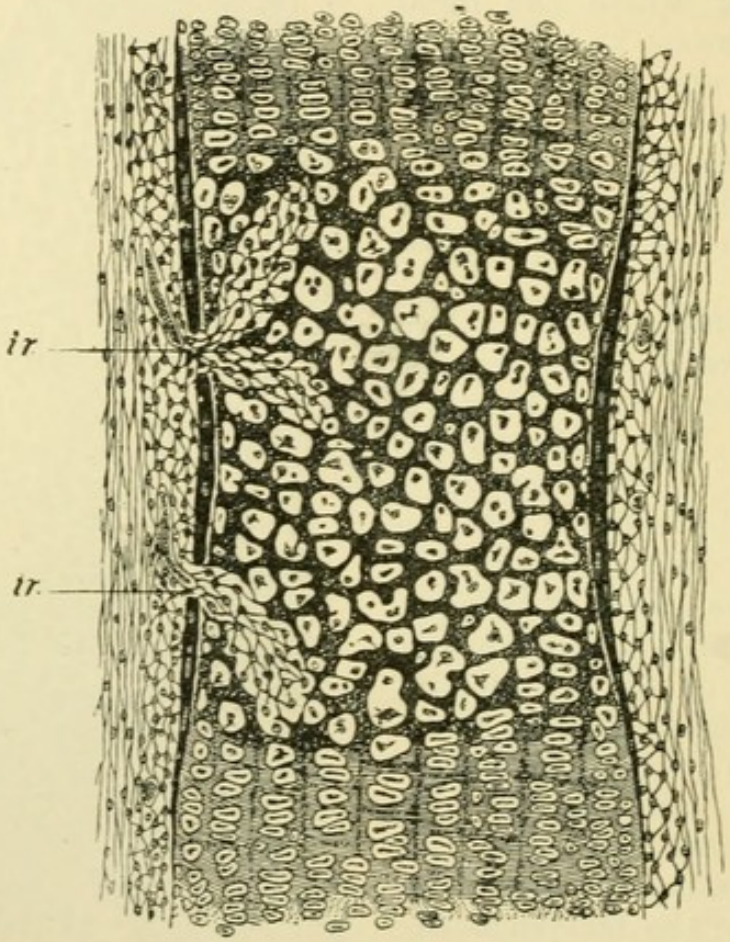


FIG. 90.—Ossification in cartilage showing stage of irruption. The shrunken cartilage-cells are seen in the primary areolæ. At *ir* an irruption of the subperiosteal tissue has penetrated the subperiosteal bony crust. (After Lawrence.)

enclosing them in calcified boxes containing one, two, or more cells each. The wasting of the cells leads here also to the formation of primary areolæ.

We may roughly compare the two sets of cells engaged in the process to two races of settlers in a new country. The cartilage-cells constitute one race, and so successfully build for themselves calcareous homes as to be completely boxed up; so they waste and disappear, leaving only the walls of their homes enclosing the spaces called primary areolæ. The osteoblasts, the other race of cells under the perichondrium, are forming layers of true bone in that situation.

Some, it is true, get walled in in the process, and become bone-corpuscles, but the system of intercommunicating lacunæ and canaliculi maintains their nutrition.

These two races are working side by side, and at first do not interfere with each other. But soon comes a declaration of war, and we enter upon the *second stage* of ossification, which is very appropriately called the *stage of irruption* (fig. 90). Breaches occur in the bony wall which the osteoblasts have built like a girdle round the calcifying cartilage, and through these the perichondrial tissue pours an invading army into the calcified cartilage. This consists of *osteoblasts*, the bone formers; *osteoclasts*, or the bone destroyers; the latter are large cells, similar to the myeloplaxes found in marrow (fig. 82). There are also a few fibres, and a store of nutrient supply in the shape of blood-vessels.

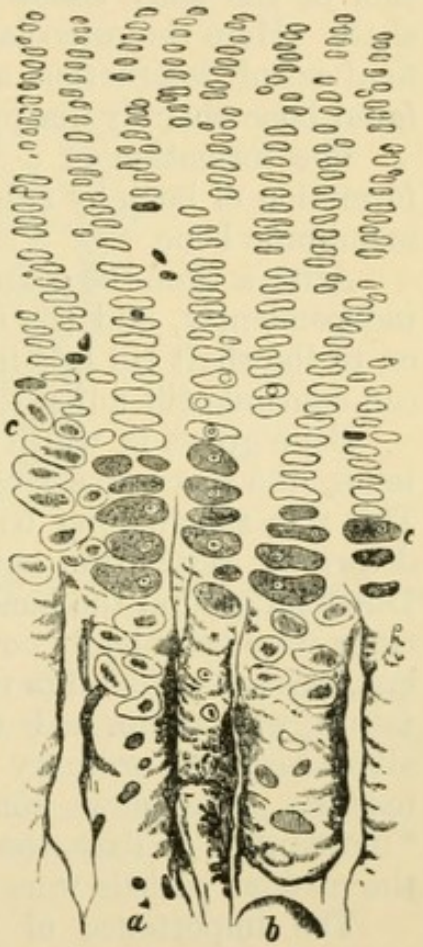


FIG. 91.—Longitudinal section of ossifying cartilage. Calcified trabeculæ are seen extending between the columns of cartilage-cells. *c*, Cartilage-cells; *a*, *b*, secondary areolæ. × 140. (Sharpey.)

Having got inside, the osteoclasts set to work to demolish the homes of the cartilage-cells, the walls of the primary areolæ, and thus large spaces are formed, which are called the *secondary areolæ*, or the *medullary spaces*. On the ruins of the calcified cartilage, the osteoblasts proceed to deposit true bone in layers, just as they were wont to do in their own country, under the periosteum.

The third stage of ossification is a repetition of these two stages towards the extremities of the cartilage. The cartilage-cells get flattened and arranged in rows; calcareous deposit occurs around these, and primary areolæ result; then follows the advance of the subperiosteal tissue, the demolition of the primary areolæ, the formation of secondary areolæ, and the deposit of true bone. At the same time, layer upon layer is still being deposited beneath the periosteum, and these, from being at first a mere girdle round the waist of the bone, now extend towards its extremities.

The next figure (fig. 91) is a magnified view of the line of advance.

The bone which is first formed is less regularly lamellar than that of the adult. The lamellæ are not deposited till after birth, and their formation is preceded by a considerable amount of absorption.

To carry our simile further, the osteoblasts are not satisfied with the rough constructions that they were first able to make, but having exterminated the cartilage, they destroy (again through the agency of the regiment of giant osteoclasts) their first work, and build regular lamellæ, leaving lacunæ for the accommodation of those who desire to retire from active warfare.

About this time, too, the marrow cavity is formed by the absorption of the bony tissue that originally occupied the centre of the shaft. Here the osteoclasts have again to do the work, and, with this final act of destruction, all remains of any calcified cartilage of the fœtal bone entirely disappear.

The formation of a so-called cartilage bone is thus, after all, a formation of bone by subperiosteal tissue, just as it is in the so-called membrane bone.

After a time the cartilage at the ends of the shaft begins to ossify independently, and the epiphyses are formed. They are not joined on to the shaft till late in life, so that growth of the bone in length can continue till union takes place.

Bone grows in width by the deposition of layers under the periosteum, like successive rings formed under the bark of a growing tree. This was shown long before the histological details which we have described were made out by Sharpey. Silver rings were placed by Duhamel around the bones of young pigeons. When killed later, the rings were completely covered in by bone; and in the animals killed last, were even found in the central cavity. Another series of experiments was performed upon pigs. The young animals were fed alternately on ordinary food and food dyed by the red pigment madder. The new bony tissue acts like what dyers called a "mordant": it fixes the dye, and the rings of bone deposited during the madder periods were distinctly red in colour.

The importance of the periosteum in bone formation is now recognised by surgeons. When removing a piece of bone they are careful, if possible, to leave the periosteum behind: this leads to regeneration of the lost bone. If it is absolutely necessary to remove the periosteum, successful cases have occurred in which the living periosteum from an animal has effectively been transplanted.

The Teeth.

During the course of his life, man, in common with most other mammals, is provided with two sets of teeth; the first set, called the *temporary* or *milk-teeth*, makes its appearance in infancy, and is in the course of a few years shed and replaced by the second or *permanent* set.

The **temporary** or **milk-teeth** have only a very limited term of existence.

They are ten in number in each jaw, namely, on either side from the middle line two *incisors*, one *canine*, and two deciduous *molars*, and are replaced by ten permanent teeth. The number of permanent

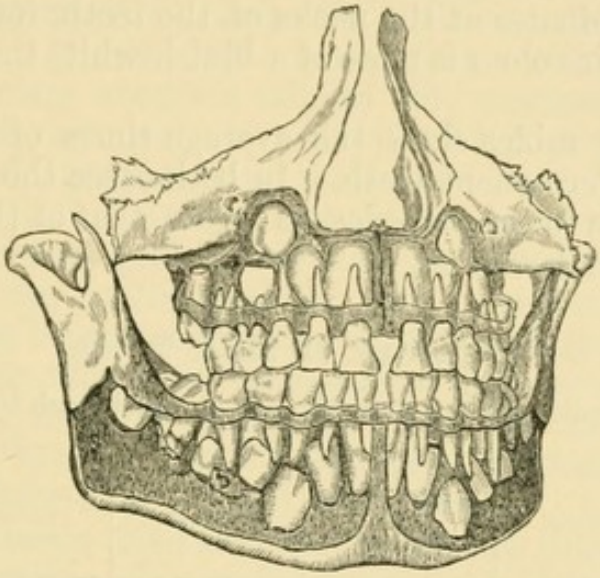


FIG. 92.—Normal well-formed jaws, from which the alveolar plate has been in great part removed, so as to expose the developing permanent teeth in their crypts in the jaws. (Tomes.)

teeth in each jaw is, however, increased to sixteen by the development of three molars on each side of the jaw, which are called the permanent or true molars.

The following formula shows, at a glance, the comparative arrangement and number of the temporary and permanent teeth:—

Temporary Teeth.

MIDDLE LINE OF JAW.

MOLARS.	CANINE.	INCISORS.	INCISORS.	CANINE.	MOLARS.	
2	1	2	2	1	2=10	=20
2	1	2	2	1	2=10	

Permanent Teeth.

MIDDLE LINE OF JAW.

TRUE MOLARS.	BICUSPIDS OR PRE-MOLARS.	CANINE.	INCISORS.	INCISORS.	CANINE.	BICUSPIDS OR PRE-MOLARS.	TRUE MOLARS.
3	2	1	2	2	1	2	3
3	2	1	2	2	1	2	3

From this formula it will be seen that the two bicuspid or premolar teeth in the adult are the successors of the two deciduous

molars in the child. They differ from them, however, in some respects, the *temporary* molars having a stronger likeness to the *permanent* than to their immediate descendants the so-called bicuspids, besides occupying more space in the jaws.

The temporary incisors and canines differ from their successors but little except in their smaller size and the abrupt manner in which their enamel terminates at the necks of the teeth, forming a ridge or thick edge. Their colour is more of a bluish-white than of a yellowish shade.

The following tables show the average times of eruption of the Temporary and Permanent teeth. In both cases the eruption of any given tooth of the lower precedes, as a rule, that of the corresponding tooth of the upper jaw.

Temporary or Milk Teeth.

The figures indicate in months the age at which each tooth appears.

INCISORS.	DECIDUOUS FIRST MOLARS.	CANINES.	DECIDUOUS SECOND MOLARS.
6	12	18	24

Permanent Teeth.

The age at which each tooth is cut is indicated in this table in years.

FIRST MOLARS.	INCISORS.		BICUSPIDS OR PRE-MOLARS.		CANINES.	SECOND MOLARS.	THIRD MOLARS OR WISDOMS.
	CENTRALS.	LATERALS.	FIRST.	SECOND.			
6	7	8	9	10	11	12	17 to 25

The times of eruption given in the above tables are only approximate: the limits of normal variation are tolerably wide. Certain diseases affecting the bony skeleton, *e.g.* Rickets, retard the eruptive period considerably.

It is important to notice that it is a molar which is the first tooth to be cut in the permanent dentition, not an incisor as in the case of the temporary set, and also that it appears *behind* the last deciduous molar on each side.

The third molars, often called *Wisdoms*, are sometimes unerupted through life from want of sufficient jaw space and the presence of

the other teeth; cases of whole families in which their absence is a characteristic feature are occasionally met with.

When the teeth are fully erupted it will be observed that the upper incisors and canines project obliquely over the lower front teeth, and the external cusps of the upper bicuspids and molars lie outside those of the corresponding teeth in the lower jaw. This arrangement allows to some extent of a scissor-like action in dividing and biting food in the case of incisors; and a grinding motion in that of the bicuspids and molars when the side to side movements of the lower jaw bring the external cusps of the lower teeth into direct articulation with those of the upper, and then cause them to glide down the inclined surfaces of the external and up the internal cusps of these same upper teeth during the act of mastication.

The work of the canine teeth in man is similar to that of his incisors. Besides being a firmly implanted tooth and one of stronger substance than the others, the canine tooth is important in preserving the shape of the angle of the mouth, and by its shape, whether pointed or blunt, long or short, it becomes a character tooth of the dentition as a whole in both males and females.

Another feature in the fully developed and properly articulated set of teeth is that no two teeth oppose each other only, but each tooth is in opposition with two, except the upper Wisdom, usually a small tooth. This is the result of the greater width of the upper incisors, which so arranges the "bite" of the other teeth that the lower canine closes in front of the upper one.

Should a tooth be lost, therefore, it does not follow that its former opponent remaining in the mouth is rendered useless and thereby liable to be removed from the jaw by a gradual process of extrusion commonly seen in teeth that have no work to perform by reason of absence of antagonists.

Structure of a Tooth.

A tooth is generally described as possessing a *crown*, *neck*, and *root*.

The *crown* is the portion which projects beyond the level of the gum. The *neck* is that constricted portion just below the crown which is embraced by the free edges of the gum; and the *root* includes all below this.

On making longitudinal and transverse sections through its centre (figs. 93, 94), a tooth is found to be composed of a hard material, *dentine* or ivory, which is moulded around a central cavity which resembles in general shape the outline of the tooth; the cavity is called the *pulp* cavity from its containing the very vascular and sensitive pulp.

The *tooth-pulp* is composed of loose connective tissue, blood-vessels,

nerves, and large numbers of cells of varying shapes; on the surface in close connection with the dentine is a specialised layer of

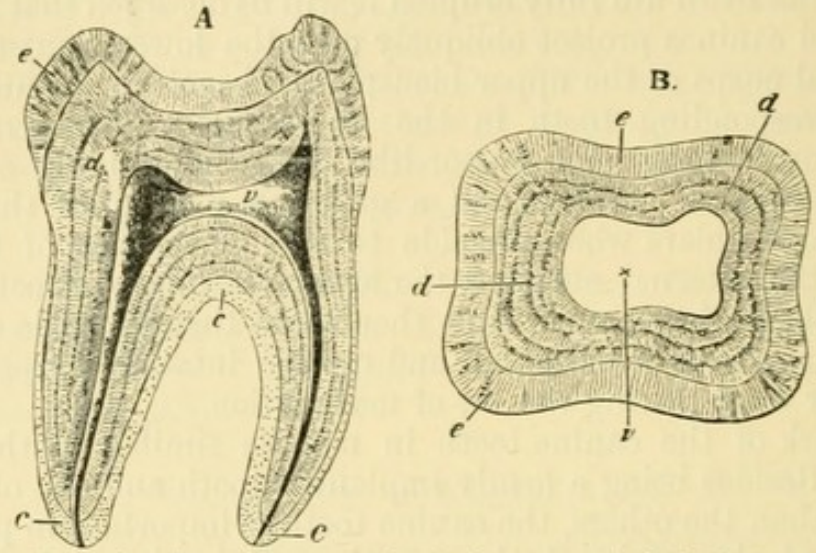


FIG. 93.—A, Longitudinal section of a human molar tooth; *c*, cement; *d*, dentine; *e*, enamel; *v*, pulp-cavity. (Owen.)
B, Transverse section. The letters indicate the same as in A.

cells called *odontoblasts*, which are elongated columnar cells with a large nucleus at the tapering ends farthest from the *dentine*.

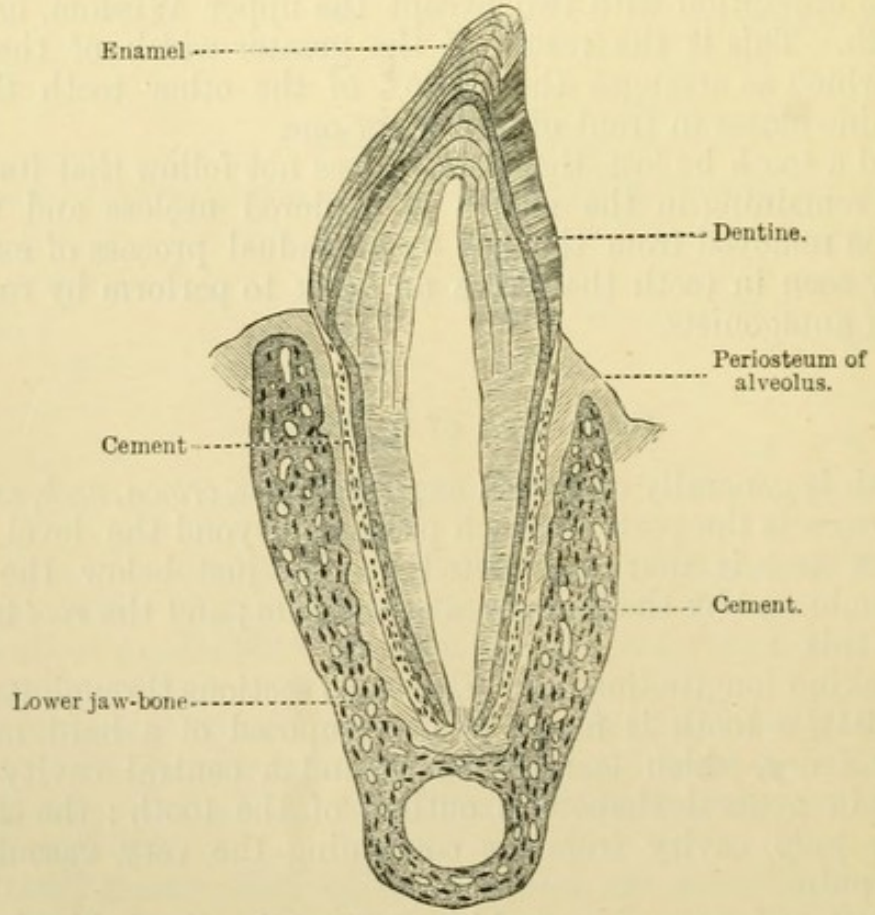


FIG. 94.—Premolar tooth of cat *in situ*.

The blood-vessels and nerves enter the pulp through a small opening at the apical extremity of each root. The exact terminations of the nerves are not definitely known. They have never been observed to enter the dentinal tubes. No lymphatics have been seen in the pulp.

A layer of very hard calcareous matter, the *enamel*, caps that part of the dentine which projects beyond the level of the gum; while sheathing the portion of dentine which is beneath the level of the gum, is a layer of true bone, called the *cement* or *crusta petrosa*.

At the neck of the tooth, where the enamel and cement come into contact, each is reduced to an exceedingly thin layer; here the cement overlaps the enamel, and is prolonged over it. On the surface of the crown of the tooth, when it first comes through the jaw, is a thin membrane called *Nasmyth's membrane*, or the *cuticle* of the tooth. The covering of enamel becomes thicker towards the crown, and the cement towards the lower end or apex of the root.

Dentine or *Ivory*.

Dentine closely resembles bone in chemical composition. It contains, however, only 10 per cent. of water. The proportion in a hundred parts of the solids is about twenty-eight *animal* to seventy-two of *earthy* matter. The former, like the animal matter of bone, may be converted into *gelatin* by boiling. It also contains a trace of fat. The earthy matter is made up chiefly of *calcium phosphate*, with a small portion of the *carbonate*, and traces of *calcium fluoride* and *magnesium phosphate*.

Under the microscope dentine is seen to be finely channelled by a multitude of delicate tubes, which by their inner ends communicate with the pulp-cavity, and by their outer extremities come into contact with the under part of the enamel and cement, and sometimes even penetrate them for a greater or less distance (figs. 95, 97). The matrix in which these tubes lie is composed of "a reticulum of fine fibres of connective tissue modified by calcification, and where that process is complete, entirely hidden by the densely deposited lime salts" (Mummery).

In their course from the pulp-cavity to the surface, the minute tubes form gentle and nearly parallel curves, and divide and subdivide dichotomously, but without much lessening of their calibre until they approach their peripheral termination.

From their sides proceed other exceedingly minute secondary canals, which extend into the dentine between the tubules and anastomose with each other. The tubules of the dentine, the average diameter of which at their inner and larger extremity is $\frac{1}{4500}$ of an inch, contain fine prolongations from the tooth-pulp, which give the dentine a certain faint sensitiveness under ordinary circumstances, and,

without doubt, have to do also with its nutrition. These prolongations from the tooth-pulp are processes of the dentine-cells or *odontoblasts*, the columnar cells lining the pulp-cavity; the relation of these processes to the tubules in which they lie is precisely similar to that of the processes of the bone-corpuscles to the canaliculi of bone. The outer portion of the dentine, underlying the cement, and the enamel to a much lesser degree, forms a more or less distinct layer termed the *granular* or *interglobular* layer (fig. 95). It is characterised

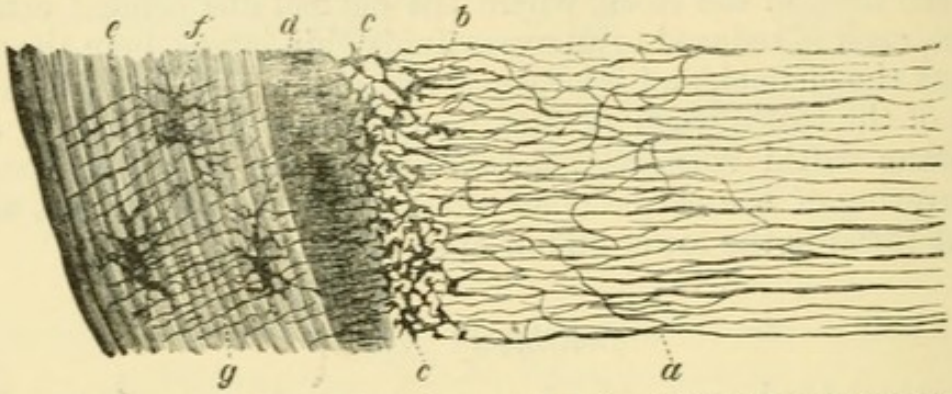


FIG. 95.—Section of a portion of the dentine and cement from the middle of the root of an incisor tooth. *a*, Dentinal tubules ramifying and terminating, some of them in the interglobular spaces *b* and *c*; *d*, inner layer of the cement with numerous closely set canaliculi; *e*, outer layer of cement; *f*, lacunæ; *g*, canaliculi. × 350. (Kölliker.)

by the presence of a number of irregular minute cavities. The explanation of these will be seen when we study the development of a tooth.

Enamel.

Enamel is by far the hardest tissue in the body; it is composed of the same inorganic compounds that enter into the composition of

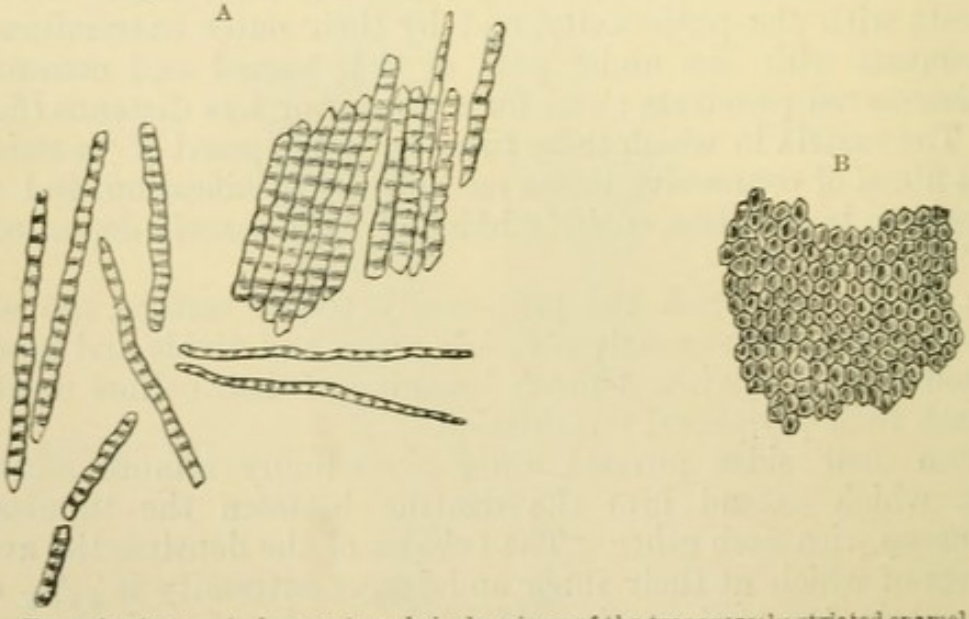


FIG. 96.—Enamel prisms. A, fragments and single prisms of the transversely-striated enamel, isolated by the action of hydrochloric acid. B, surface of a small fragment of enamel, showing the hexagonal ends of the fibres with darker centres. × 350. (Kölliker.)

dentine and bone. According to Tomes, it contains no animal matter at all, and only 2 or 3 per cent. of water. Gelatin is a characteristic product of connective tissue, and enamel is not a connective tissue, but is epithelial in origin.

Examined under the microscope, enamel is found composed of six-sided prisms (figs. 96, 97) $\frac{1}{5000}$ of an inch in diameter, which are set on end on the surface of the dentine, and fit into corresponding depressions in the same.

They radiate in such a manner from the dentine that at the top of the tooth they are more or less vertical, while towards the sides they tend to the horizontal direction. Like the dentine tubules, they are not straight, but disposed in wavy and parallel curves. The prisms are marked by transverse lines and are solid.

The enamel prisms are connected together by a very minute quantity of hyaline cement substance. In the deeper part of the enamel, between the prisms, are often small *lacunæ*, which have the processes or fibrils lying in the dentinal tubes in connection with them (fig. 97, *c*).

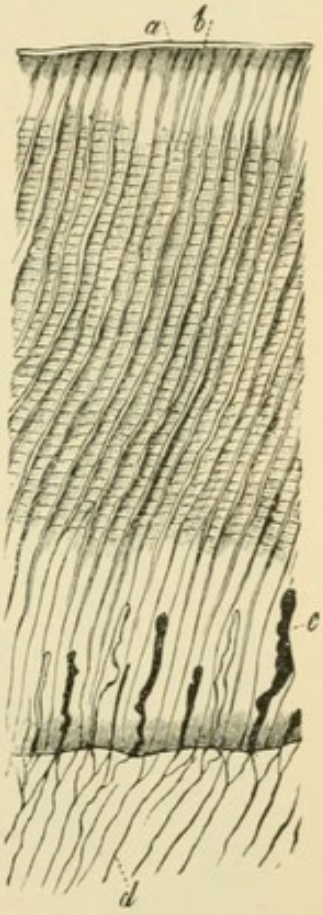


FIG. 97.—Thin section of the enamel, and a part of the dentine. *a*, Cuticular pellicle of the enamel (Nasmyth's membrane); *b*, enamel columns with fissures between them and cross striæ; *c*, larger cavities in the enamel, communicating with the extremities of some of the dentinal tubules (*d*). × 350. (Kölliker.)

Crusta Petrosa.

The *crusta petrosa* or *cement* (fig. 95, *e*, *d*) is composed of true bone, and in it are lacunæ (*f*) and canaliculi (*g*), which sometimes communicate with the outer finely branched ends of the dentinal tubules, and generally with the interglobular spaces. Its laminæ are bolted together by perforating fibres like those of ordinary bone (Sharpey's fibres). Cement differs from ordinary bone in possessing no Haversian canals, or, if at all, only in the thickest part. Such canals are more often met with in teeth with the cement hypertrophied than in the normal tooth.

Development of the Teeth.

The first step in the development of the teeth consists in a downward growth (fig. 98, A, 1) from the deeper layer of stratified epithelium of the mucous membrane of the mouth, which becomes thickened in the neighbourhood of the maxillæ or jaws now in the course of formation. This process passes downward into a recess of

the imperfectly developed tissue of the embryonic jaw. The downward epithelial growth forms the *common enamel* or *dental germ*, and its position is indicated by a slight groove in the mucous membrane of the jaw. After this there is an increased development at certain points corresponding to the situations of the future milk-teeth. The common enamel germ thus becomes extended by further growth into a number of *special enamel germs* (fig. 98, B,) corresponding to each of the milk-teeth, and connected to the common germ by a narrow neck (*f*). Each tooth is thus placed in its own special recess in the embryonic jaw.

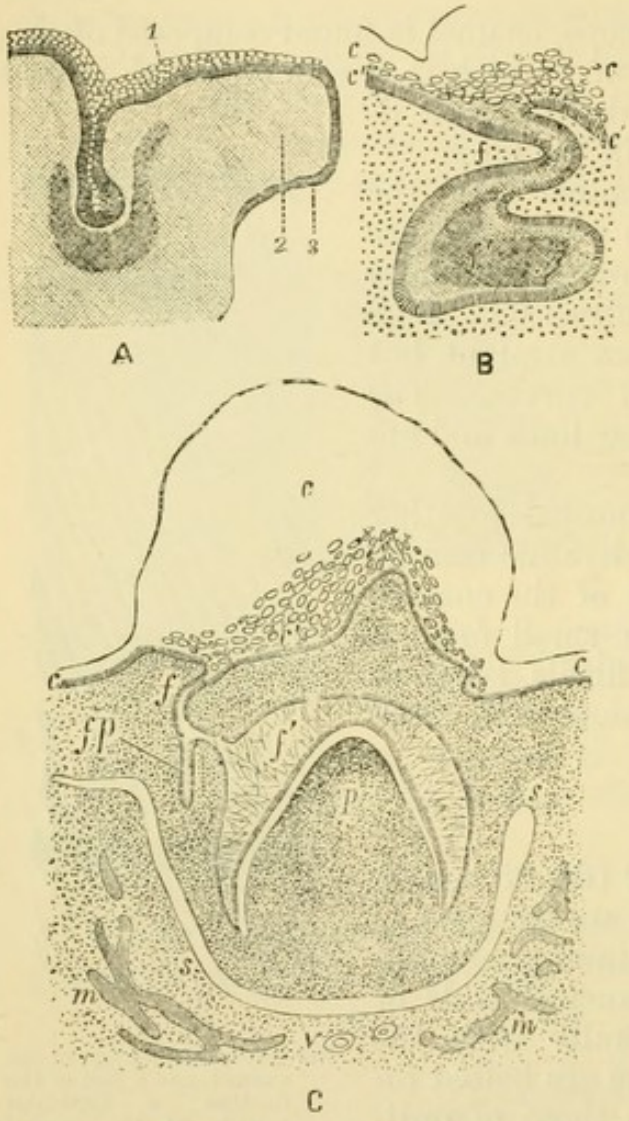


FIG. 98.—Section of the upper jaw of a fœtal sheep. A.—1, common enamel germ dipping down into the mucous membrane; 2, palatine process of jaw; 3, Rete Malpighi. B.—Section similar to A, but passing through one of the special enamel germs here becoming flask-shaped; *c*, *c'*, epithelium of mouth; *f*, neck; *f'*, body of special enamel germ. C.—A later stage; *c*, outline of epithelium of gum; *f*, neck of enamel germ; *f'*, enamel organ; *p*, papilla; *s*, dental sac forming; *f p*, the enamel germ of permanent tooth; *m*, bone of jaw; *v*, vessels cut across. (Waldeyer and Kölliker.)

As these changes proceed, there grows up from the underlying connective tissue into each enamel germ (fig. 98, C, *p*), a distinct vascular papilla (*dental papilla*), and upon it the enamel germ becomes moulded, and presents the appearance of a cap of two layers of epithelium separated by an interval (fig. 98, C, *f'*). Whilst part of the subepithelial tissue is elevated to form the dental papilla, the part which bounds the embryonic teeth forms the dental sac (fig. 98, C, *s*); and the rudiment of the jaw sends up processes forming partitions between the teeth. In this way small chambers are produced in which the dental sacs are contained, and thus the sockets of the teeth are formed. The papilla is composed of nucleated cells arranged in a mesh-work of connective tissue, the outer or peripheral part being covered with a layer of columnar nucleated cells called *odontoblasts*.

These cells either by secretion, or as some think by direct transformation of the outer part of each, form a layer of dentinal matrix on the apex of the papilla, or if the tooth has more than one cusp, then at the apex of each cusp. This layer is first uncalcified (*odontogen*), but globules of calcareous matter soon appear in it. These, becoming more numerous, blend into the first cap of dentine. In the meanwhile the odontoblasts have formed a second layer of odontogen within this (fig. 99), and this in turn becomes calcified; thus layer after layer is formed, each extending laterally further than its predecessor; the layers blend except in some places; here portions of odontogen remain, which in a tooth macerated for histological purposes get destroyed, and appear as the *interglobular spaces* (fig. 95), so called because bounded by the deposit of calcareous salts, which occurs, as we have already seen, in the form of globules.

As the odontoblasts retire towards the centre, depositing layer after layer of dentine, they leave behind them long filaments of their protoplasm around which the calcareous deposit is moulded; thus the dentinal tubules occupied by the processes of the odontoblasts are formed.

The other cells of the dental papilla form the cells of the pulp.

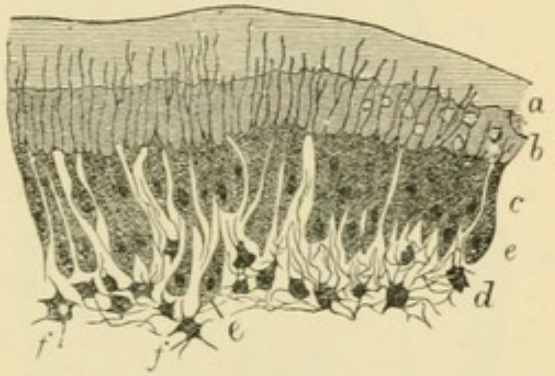


FIG. 99.—Part of section of developing tooth of a young rat, showing the mode of deposition of the dentine. Highly magnified. *a*, Outer layer of fully formed dentine; *b*, uncalcified matrix with one or two nodules of calcareous matter near the calcified parts; *c*, odontoblasts sending processes into the dentine; *d*, pulp; *e*, fusiform or wedge-shape cells found between odontoblasts; *f*, stellate cells of pulp in fibrous connective tissue. The section is stained with carmine, which colours the uncalcified matrix but not the calcified part. (E. A. Schäfer.)

Formation of the enamel.—The portion of the enamel or dental germ that covers the dental papilla is at this stage called the *enamel organ*. This consists of four parts (see figs. 100 and 101).

1. A layer of columnar epithelium cells in contact with the dentine. These are called the *enamel cells*, or *adamantoblasts*.
2. Two or three layers of smaller polyhedral nucleated cells, *the stratum intermedium* of Hannover.
3. A matrix of non-vascular jelly-like tissue containing stellate cells.
4. An outer membrane of several layers of flattened epithelium cells.

The first three layers on an enlarged scale are seen in fig. 101.

The enamel prisms are formed by the agency of the ends of the adamantoblasts which abut on the dental papilla. Each forms a fine

deposit of globules staining with osmic acid and resembling keratin in its resistance to mineral acid. At one time it was believed that each adamantoblast was itself calcified and converted into an enamel prism, but this view has been disproved by recent research. The layer of keratin-like material is outside the bodies of the cells, although a process of each adamantoblast extends into it as a tapering fibre (process of Tomes), and it is usually produced simultaneously with the first layer of uncalcified dentine; when it undergoes calcification, the first layer of enamel is complete. The adamantoblasts then repeat the process, first causing a deposition of keratin-like material, and this in turn is calcified, and so on. During the formation of layer after layer of enamel, the adamantoblasts retire. By the time the enamel is approaching completion the other layers of the enamel organ have almost disappeared, and they entirely disappear when the tooth emerges through the gum. But for some little time there is a somewhat more persistent membrane covering the crown; this is Nasmyth's membrane, or the *enamel cuticle;* this is the last formed keratinous layer of enamel which has remained uncalcified.

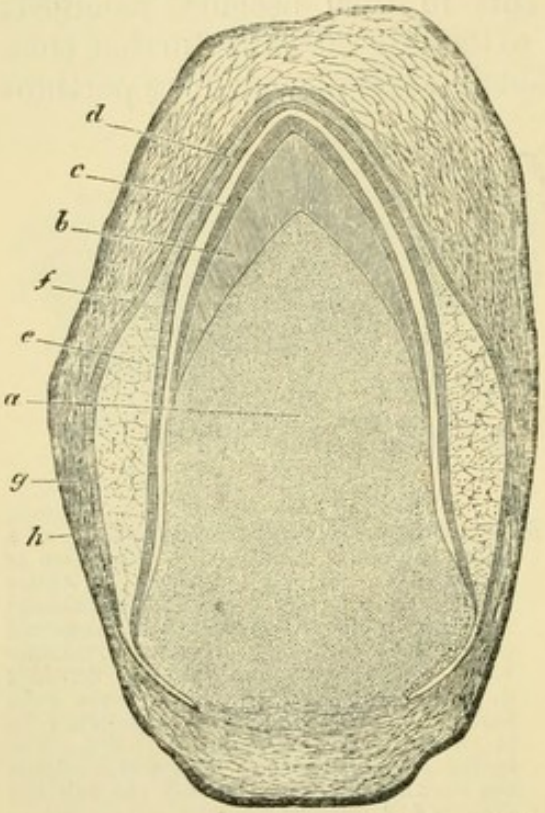


FIG. 100.—Vertical transverse section of the dental sac, pulp, etc., of a kitten. *a*, Dental papilla or pulp; *b*, the cap of dentine formed upon the summit; *c*, its covering of enamel; *d*, inner layer of epithelium of the enamel organ; *e*, gelatinous tissue; *f*, outer epithelial layer of the enamel organ; *g*, inner layer, and *h*, outer layer of dental sac. × 14. (Thiersch.)

As with the dentine, the formation of enamel appears first on the apex of each cusp.

The *cement* or *crusta petrosa* is formed from the internal tissue of the tooth sac, the structure and function of which are identical with those of the osteogenetic layer of the periosteum; or, in other words, ossification in membrane occurs in it.

The outer layer or portion of the membrane of the tooth sac forms the *dental periosteum.*

This periosteum, when the tooth is fully formed, is not only a means of attachment of the tooth to its socket, but also in conjunction with the *pulp* a source of nourishment to it. Additional laminæ of cement are added to the root from time to time during the life of the tooth (as is especially well seen in the abnormal condition called

an *exostosis*), by the process of ossification taking place in the periosteum. On the other hand, absorption of the root (such as occurs when the milk-teeth are shed) is due to the action of the osteoclasts of the same membrane.

In this manner the first set of teeth, or the milk-teeth, are formed; and each tooth, as it grows, presses at length on the wall of the sac enclosing it, and, causing its absorption, is *cut*, to use a familiar phrase.

The *temporary* or *milk-teeth* are later replaced by the growth of the permanent teeth, which push their way up from beneath them.

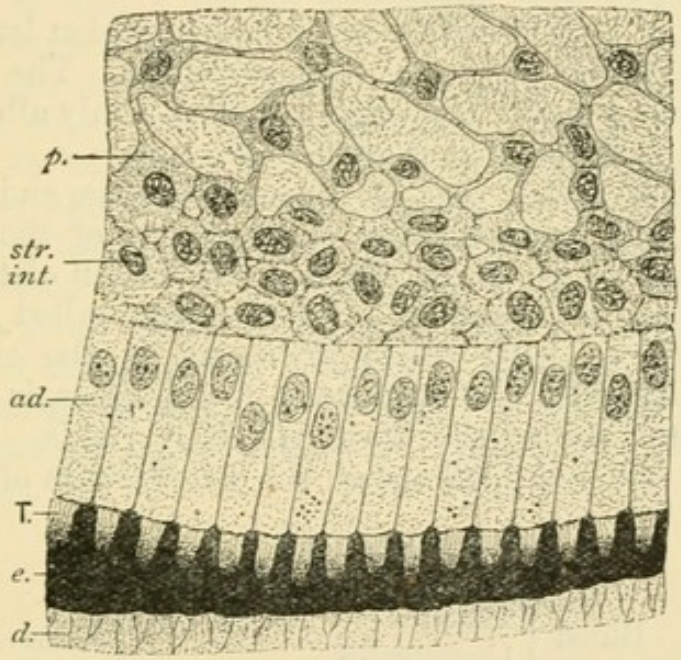


FIG. 101.—Highly magnified view of a piece of the enamel organ in a kitten's canine. *d*, Superficial layer of dentine. *e*, Newly formed enamel stained black by osmic acid. T, Tomes' processes from the adamantoblasts, *ad.*; *str. int.*, stratum intermedium of the enamel organ. *p*, Branched cells of the enamel pulp. (After Röse.)

Each temporary tooth is replaced by a tooth of the permanent set which is developed from a small sac which was originally an offshoot from the sac of the temporary tooth which precedes it, and called the *cavity of reserve* (fig. 98, C, *fp*). Thus the temporary incisors and canines are succeeded by the corresponding permanent ones, the temporary first molar by the first bicuspid; the temporary second molar develops two offshoots, one for the second bicuspid, the other for the permanent first molar. The permanent second molar is budded off from the first permanent molar, and the wisdom from the permanent second molar.

The development of the temporary teeth commences about the sixth week of intra-uterine life, after the laying down of the bony structure of the jaws. Their permanent successors begin to form about the sixteenth week of intra-uterine life. The second permanent

molars originate about the third month after birth, and the wisdom teeth about the third year.

The Blood.

A full consideration of the blood will come later, when we know more about the chemical aspects of physiology, but it will be impossible to discuss all the other phenomena we shall have to study in the meanwhile without some elementary knowledge of the principal properties of this fluid. For that reason, and also to complete our list of the connective tissues, we may here rapidly and briefly enumerate its principal characters.

The blood is a fluid which holds in suspension large numbers of solid particles which are called the *corpuscles*. The fluid itself is called the *plasma* or *liquor sanguinis*. It is a richly albuminous fluid; and one of the proteins in it is called *fibrinogen*.

After blood is shed it rapidly becomes viscous, and then sets into a jelly. The jelly contracts and squeezes out of the clot a straw-coloured fluid called *serum*, in which the shrunken clot then floats.

The formation of threads of a solid protein called *fibrin* from the soluble proteid we have called *fibrinogen* is the essential act of coagulation; this, with the corpuscles it entangles, is called the *clot*. Serum is plasma *minus* the fibrin which it yields. The following scheme shows the relationships of the constituents of the blood at a glance:—

$$\text{Blood} \begin{cases} \text{Plasma} \begin{cases} \text{Serum} \\ \text{Fibrin} \end{cases} \text{Clot.} \\ \text{Corpuscles} \end{cases}$$

The corpuscles are of two chief kinds, the red and the white. The white corpuscles are typical animal cells, and we have already made their acquaintance when speaking about amœboid movements.

The red corpuscles are much more numerous than the white, averaging in man 5,000,000 per cubic millimetre, or 400 to 500 red to each white corpuscle. It is these red corpuscles that give the red colour to the blood. They vary in size and structure in different groups of the vertebrates. In mammals they are biconcave (except in the camel tribe, where they are biconvex) non-nucleated discs, in man $\frac{1}{3200}$ inch in diameter; during fœtal life nucleated red corpuscles are, however, found. In birds, reptiles, amphibians and fishes they are biconvex oval discs with a nucleus: they are largest in the amphibia. The most important and abundant of the constituents of the red corpuscles is the pigment which is called *hæmoglobin*. This is a protein-like substance, but is remarkable as it contains a small amount of iron (about 0·4 per cent.).

The blood during life is in constant movement. It leaves the

heart by the vessels called *arteries*, and returns to the heart by the vessels called *veins;* the terminations of the arteries and the commencements of the veins are, in the tissues, connected by the thin-walled microscopic vessels called *capillaries.* In the capillaries, leakage of the blood-plasma occurs; this exuded fluid (lymph) carries nutriment from the blood to the tissue-elements, and removes from them the waste products of their activity. The lymph is collected by lymphatic vessels, which converge to the main lymphatic, called the *thoracic duct.* This opens into the large veins near to their entrance into the heart; and thus the lymph is returned to the blood.

But blood is also a carrier of oxygen, and it is the pigment hæmoglobin which is the oxygen carrier; in the lungs the hæmoglobin combines with the oxygen of the air, and forms a loose compound of a bright scarlet colour called *oxyhæmoglobin.* This arterial or oxygenated blood is taken to the heart and thence propelled by the arteries all over the body, where the tissues take the respiratory oxygen from the hæmoglobin, and this removal of oxygen changes the colour of blood to the bluish-red tint it has in the veins. The veins take the blood *minus* a large quantity of oxygen and *plus* a large quantity of carbonic acid received in exchange from the tissues to the heart, which sends it to the lungs to get rid of its surplus carbonic acid, and replenish its store of oxygen; then the same round begins over again.

CHAPTER VI

MUSCULAR TISSUE

MUSCLE is popularly known as flesh. It possesses the power of contraction, and is, in the higher animals, the tissue by which their movements are executed. The muscles may be divided from a physiological standpoint into two great classes, the *voluntary* muscles, those which are under the control of the will, and the *involuntary* muscles, those which are not. The contraction of the involuntary muscles is, however, controlled by the nervous system, only by a different part of the nervous system from that which controls the activity of the voluntary muscles.

When muscular tissue is examined with the microscope, it is seen to be made up of small, elongated, thread-like structures, which are called *muscular fibres;* these are bound into bundles by connective tissue, and in the involuntary muscles there is in addition a certain amount of cement substance, stainable by nitrate of silver, between the fibres.

The muscular fibres are not all alike; those of the voluntary muscles are seen by the microscope to be marked by alternate dark and light stripings or striations; these are called *transversely striated muscular fibres.* The involuntary fibres have not got these markings as a rule. There is one important exception to this rule, namely, in the case of the heart, the muscular fibres of which are involuntary, but transversely striated. There are, however, histological differences between cardiac muscle and the ordinary voluntary striated muscles. The unstriated involuntary muscular fibres found in the walls of the stomach, intestine, bladder, blood-vessels, uterus, and other contractile organs are generally spoken of as *plain muscular fibres.*

From the histological standpoint there are, therefore, three varieties of muscular fibres found in the body of the higher animals: two of them are transversely striated, and one is not. The relationship of this histological classification to the physiological

classification into voluntary and involuntary is shown in the following table:—

1. Transversely striated muscular fibres:	
a. In skeletal muscle . . .	Voluntary.
b. In cardiac muscle . . .	Involuntary.
2. Plain muscular fibres: In blood-vessels, intestine, uterus, bladder, etc. . . .	Involuntary.

All kinds of muscular tissue are therefore composed of fibres, but the fibres are essentially different from those we have hitherto studied in the connective tissues. There, it will be remembered, the fibres are developed between the cells; here, in muscle, the fibres are developed from the cells; that is, the cells themselves become elongated to form the muscular fibres.

Voluntary Muscle.

The voluntary muscles are those which are sometimes called *skeletal*, constituting the whole of the muscular apparatus attached to the bones.*

Each muscle is enclosed in a sheath of areolar tissue, called the *Epimysium;* this sends in partitions, or septa, dividing off the fibres

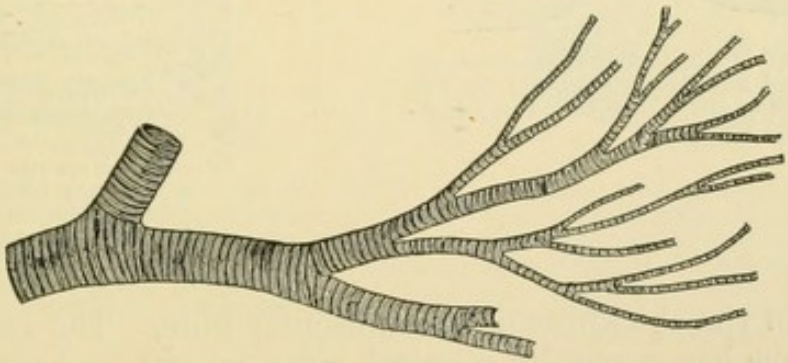


Fig. 102.—A branched muscular fibre from the frog's tongue. (Kölliker.)

into *fasciculi*, or bundles; the sheath of each bundle may be called the *Perimysium.* Between the individual fibres is a small amount of loose areolar tissue, called the *Endomysium.* The blood-vessels and nerves for the muscle are distributed in this areolar tissue.

The fibres vary in thickness and length a good deal, but they average $\frac{1}{500}$ inch in diameter, and about 1 inch in length. Each fibre is cylindrical in shape, with rounded ends; many become prolonged into tendon bundles (fig. 111), by which the muscle is attached to bone. As a rule they are unbranched, but the muscle fibres of the face and tongue divide into numerous branches before being inserted

* The muscular fibres of the pharynx, part of the œsophagus, and of the muscles of the internal ear, though not under the control of the will, have the same structure as the voluntary muscular fibres.

to the under surface of the skin, or mucous membrane (fig. 102). The fibres in these situations are also finer than in the majority of the voluntary muscles.

Each fibre consists of a sheath, called the *sarcolemma*, enclosing a soft material called the *contractile substance*. The sarcolemma is homogeneous, elastic in nature, and especially tough in fish and amphibia. It may readily be demonstrated in a microscopic preparation of fresh muscular fibres by applying gentle pressure to the cover slip; the contractile substance is thereby ruptured, leaving the sarcolemma bridging the space (fig. 103). To the sarcolemma are seen adhering some nuclei.

The contractile substance within the sheath is made up of alternate discs of dark and light substance.

Muscular fibres contain oval nuclei. In mammalian muscle these are situated just beneath the sarcolemma; but in frog's muscle they

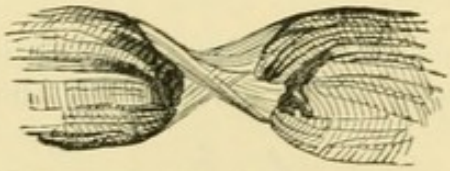


FIG. 103.—Muscular fibre torn across, the sarcolemma still connecting the two parts of the fibre. (Todd and Bowman.)

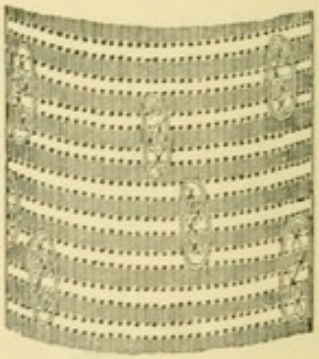


FIG. 104.—Muscular fibre of a mammal highly magnified. The surface of the fibre is accurately focussed. (Schäfer.)

occur also in the thickness of the muscular fibre. The chromoplasm of the nucleus has generally a spiral arrangement, and often there is a little granular protoplasm (well seen in the muscular fibres of the diaphragm) around the poles of each nucleus.

The foregoing facts can be made out with a low power of the microscope; on examining muscular fibres with a high power other details can be seen. Treatment with different reagents brings out still further points of structure. These are differently described and differently interpreted by different histologists; and perhaps no subject in the whole of microscopic anatomy has been more keenly debated than the structure of a muscular fibre, and the meaning of the changes that occur when it contracts. A good deal of the difficulty has doubtless arisen from the fact that a muscular fibre is cylindrical, and if one focusses the surface one gets different optical effects from those obtained by focussing deep in the substance of the fibre. I shall, in the following account of the structure of

striated muscle, adhere very closely to the views of Professor Schäfer.

If the surface is carefully focussed rows of apparent granules are seen lying at the boundaries of the light streaks, and fine longitudinal lines passing through the dark streaks may be detected uniting the apparent granules (fig. 104).

In specimens treated with dilute acids or gold chloride, the granules are seen to be connected side by side, or transversely also. This reticulum (fig. 105), with its longitudinal and transverse meshes, was at one time considered to be the essential contractile portion of the muscular fibre; it was thought that on contraction the transverse networks, with their enlargements, the granules, became increased by

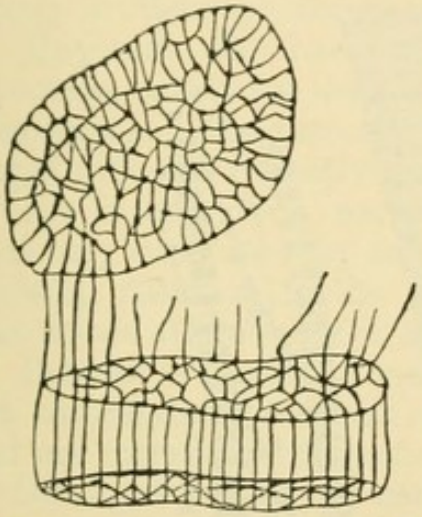


FIG. 105.—Portion of muscle-fibre of water-beetle, showing network very plainly. One of the transverse networks is split off, and some of the longitudinal bars are shown broken off. (After Melland.)

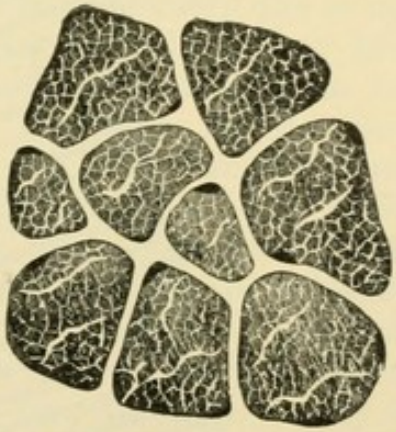


FIG. 106.—Transverse section through muscular fibres of human tongue. The nuclei are deeply stained, situated at the inside of the sarcolemma. Each muscle fibre shows "Cohnheim's areas." × 450. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

the longitudinal strands diminishing in length and running into them. Most histologists have rejected this idea, and regard the network as mere interstitial substance lying between the essentially contractile portions of the muscle. A muscular fibre is thus made up of what are variously called *fibrils, muscle-columns* or *sarcostyles;* and the longitudinal interstitial substance with cross networks comprising the reticulum just referred to is called *sarcoplasm.* By the use of certain reagents, such as osmic acid or alcohol, the muscle-columns or sarcostyles may be completely separated from one another.

A transverse section of a muscular fibre (fig. 106) shows the sections of these sarcostyles; the interstitial sarcoplasm is represented as white in the drawing. The angular fields separated by sarcoplasm may still be called by their old name, *areas of Cohnheim.*

If, instead of focussing the surface of a fibre, it is observed in its

depth, a fine dotted line is seen bisecting each light stripe; this has been variously termed *Dobie's line*, or *Krause's membrane* (fig. 107). At one time this was believed to be an actual membrane continuous with the sarcolemma. It is probably very largely an optical effect, caused by light being transmitted between discs of different refrangibility.

If cross membranes do exist they are not very resistant; this was well shown by an accidental observation first made by Kühne, and subsequently seen by others. A minute thread-worm, called the *Myorectes*, was observed crawling up the interior of the contractile

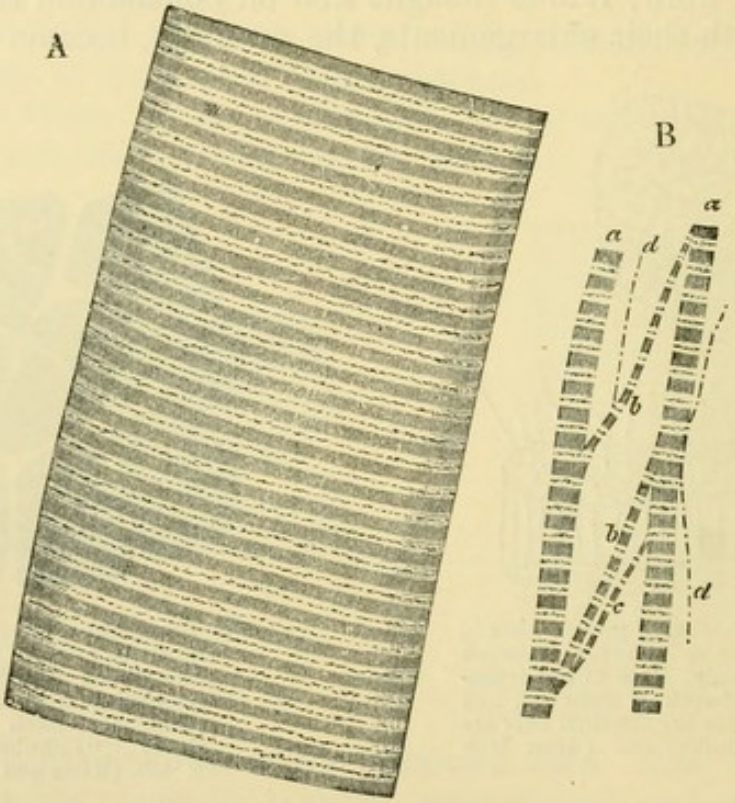


FIG. 107.—A. Portion of a human muscular fibre. × 800. B. Separated bundles of fibrils equally magnified; *a*, *a*, larger, and *b*, *b*, smaller collections; *c*, still smaller; *d*, *d*, the smallest which could be detached, possibly representing a single series of sarcous elements. (Sharpey.)

substance of a muscular fibre; it crawled without any opposition from membranes, and the track it left, closed up slowly behind it without interfering with the normal cross-striations of the contractile substance. This observation strikingly illustrates the fact that the contractile substance in a muscular fibre is fluid, but only semi-fluid, for the closing of the thread-worm's track occurred slowly as a hole always closes in a viscous material.

Another appearance which is sometimes seen is a fine clear line running across the fibre in the middle of each dark band. It is called *Hensen's line* or *disc*.

A muscular fibre may not only be broken up into fibrils or muscle-

columns, but under the influence of some reagents like dilute hydrochloric acid, it can be broken up into discs, the cleavage occurring in the centre of each light stripe. Bowman, the earliest to study muscular fibres with profitable results, concluded that the subdivision of a fibre into fibrils was a phenomenon of the same kind as the cross cleavage into discs. He considered that both were artificially produced by a separation in one or the other direction of particles of the fibre he called "sarcous elements." The cleavage into discs is however much rarer than the separation into fibrils; indeed, indications of the fibrils are seen in perfectly fresh muscle before any reagent has been added, and this is markedly evident in the wing muscles of many insects. It is now believed that a muscular fibre is built up of contiguous fibrils or sarcostyles, while cleavage into discs is a purely artificial phenomenon.

Haycraft, who has also investigated the question of muscular structure, concludes that the cross striation is entirely due to optical phenomena. The sarcostyles are varicose, and where they are enlarged different refractive effects will be produced from those caused by the intermediate narrow portions. This view he has very ingeniously supported by taking negative casts of muscular fibres by pressing them on to the surface of collodion films. The collodion cast shows alternate dark and light bands like the muscular fibres.

Schäfer is unable to accept this view; he regards the substance of the sarcostyle in its dark stripes as being of different composition, and not merely of different diameter, from the sarcostyle in the region of the light stripes; it certainly stains very differently with many reagents, especially chloride of gold. His views regarding the intimate structure of a sarcostyle have been worked out chiefly in the wing muscles of insects, where the sarcostyles are separated by a considerable quantity of interstitial sarcoplasm, and a brief summary of his conclusions is as follows:—

Each sarcostyle is subdivided in the middle of each light stripe by transverse lines (membranes of Krause) into successive portions, which may be termed *sarcomeres*. Each sarcomere is occupied by a portion of the dark stripe of the whole fibre; this portion of the dark stripe may be called a *sarcous element*.* The sarcous element is really double, and in the stretched fibre (fig. 108, B) separates into two at the line of Hensen. At either end of the sarcous element is a clear interval separating it from Krause's membrane; this clear interval is more evident in the extended sarcomere (fig. 108, B), but diminishes on contraction (fig. 108, A). The cause of this is to be found in the structure of the sarcous element. It is pervaded with longitudinal canals or pores open towards Krause's membrane, but closed

* Notice that this expression has a different meaning from what it originally had when used by Bowman.

at Hensen's line. In the contracted muscle the clear part of the muscle substance passes into these pores, disappears from view to a great extent, swells up the sarcous element, widens it and shortens the sarcomere. In the extended muscle, on the other hand, the clear substance passes out from the pores of the sarcous element, and lies between it and the membrane of Krause; this lengthens and narrows the sarcomere.* This is shown in the diagrams. It may be added that the sarcous element does not lie free in the middle of the sarcomere, but is attached at the sides to a fine enclosing envelope, and at either end to Krause's membrane by fine lines running through the clear substance (fig. 109, A).

This view is interesting, because it brings into harmony amœboid, ciliary, and muscular movement. In all three instances we have

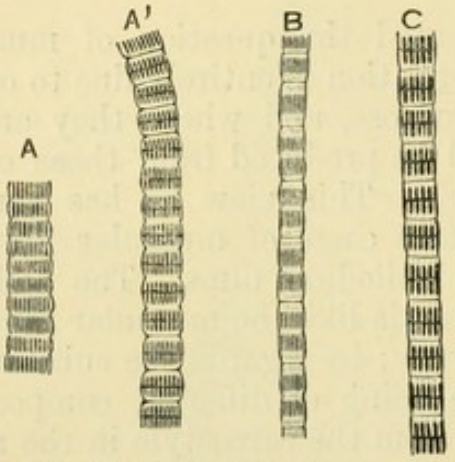


FIG. 108.—Sarcostyles from the wing-muscles of a wasp.

A, A'. Sarcostyles showing degrees of contraction.

B. A sarcostyle extended with the sarcous elements separated into two parts.

C. Sarcostyles moderately extended (semidiagrammatic). (E. A. Schäfer.)

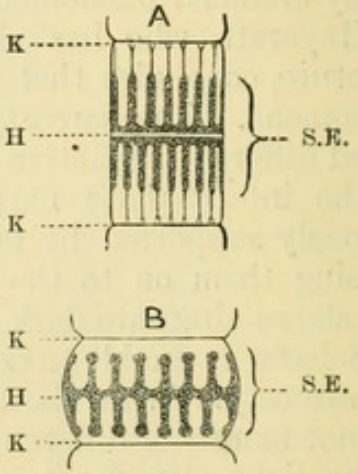


FIG. 109.—Diagram of a sarcomere in a moderately extended condition, A, and in a contracted condition, B.

K, K, Krause's membranes; H, plane of Hensen; S.E., poriferous sarcous element. (E. A. Schäfer.)

protoplasm composed of two materials, spongioplasm and hyaloplasm. In amœboid movement the irregular arrangement of the spongioplasm allows the hyaloplasm to flow in and out of it in any direction. In ciliary movement the flow is limited by the arrangement of the spongioplasm to one direction; hence the limitation of the movement in one direction (see p. 30). In muscle, also, the definite arrangement of the spongioplasm (represented by the sarcous element) in a longitudinal direction limits the movement of the hyaloplasm (represented by the clear substance of the light stripe), so that it must flow either in or out in that particular direction. The muscular fibre is made up of sarcostyles and the sarcostyle of sarcomeres. The contraction of

* The existence of open pores is not admitted by all observers. These regard the passage of fluid in and out of the sarcous element as due to diffusion through its membrane.

the whole muscle is only the sum total of the contraction of all the constituent sarcomeres.

In an ordinary muscular fibre it is stated that when it contracts, not only does it become thicker and shorter, but the light stripes become dark and the dark stripes light. This again is only an optical illusion, and is produced by the alterations in the shape of the sarcostyles, affecting the sarcoplasm that lies between them. When the sarcous elements swell during contraction, the sarcoplasm accumulates opposite the membranes of Krause, and diminishes in amount opposite the sarcous elements; the accumulation of sarcoplasm in the previously light stripes makes them appear darker by contrast than the dark stripes proper. This is very well shown in fig. 110. There is no true reversal of the stripings in the sarcostyles themselves.

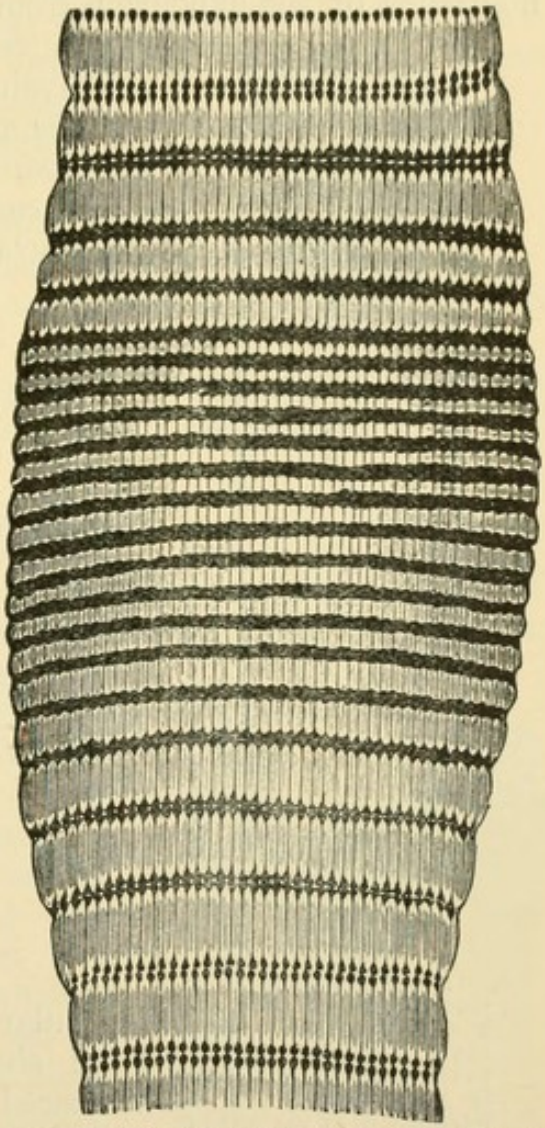


FIG. 110.—Wave of contraction passing over a muscular fibre of water-beetle. R, R, portions of the fibre at rest; C, contracted part; I, I, intermediate condition. (Schäfer.)

That this is the case can be seen very well when a muscular fibre is examined with polarised light. A polarising microscope contains a Nicol's prism beneath the stage of the microscope which polarises the light passing through the object placed on the stage. The eye-piece contains another Nicol's prism, which detects this fact. If the two Nicols are parallel, the light passing through the first passes also through the second; but if the second is at right angles to the first, the light cannot traverse it and the field appears dark. If an object on the microscope stage is doubly refracting it will appear bright in this dark field; if it remains dark it is singly refracting. The sarcoplasm is singly refracting or isotropous; it remains dark in the dark field of the polarising microscope. The muscle columns or sarcostyles are in great measure doubly refracting or anisotropous, and appear bright in the dark field of the polarising microscope. The sarcostyle, however, is not wholly doubly refracting; the sarcous elements are doubly refracting, and the clear intervals are singly refracting. On contraction there is no reversal of these appearances, though of course the relative thickness of the singly refracting intervals varies inversely with that of the doubly refracting sarcous elements.

Ending of Muscle in Tendon.—A tendon-bundle passes to each muscular fibre, and becomes firmly united to the sarcolemma. The

areolar tissue between the tendon-bundles becomes also continuous with that between the muscular fibres (fig. 111).

Blood-vessels of Muscle.—The arteries break up into capillaries, which run longitudinally in the endomysium, transverse branches connecting them (fig. 112). No blood-vessels ever penetrate the sarcolemma. The muscular fibres are thus, like other tissues, nourished by the exudation from the blood called *lymph.* The lymph is removed by lymphatic vessels found in the perimysium.

The nerves of voluntary muscle pierce the sarcolemma, and terminate in expansions called *end-plates,* to be described on p. 95.

Neuro-muscular Spindles.—Bundles of fine muscular fibres enclosed within a thick lamellated sheath of connective tissue are found scattered through voluntary muscles; they are especially numerous near the tendons and in the proximity of intra-muscular septa. It is remarkable that they have not been found in the ocular or tongue muscles. These structures are called *neuro-muscular spindles;* they vary in length from $\frac{1}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{3}$ inch, and are about $\frac{1}{125}$ inch in diameter. Each receives a nerve fibre which divides into secondary and tertiary branches. The myelin sheath is lost, and the tertiary branches encircle the muscular fibres, breaking up usually into a network. It is believed that these are sensory end organs in the muscle. (See further, chapter LII. on Touch.)

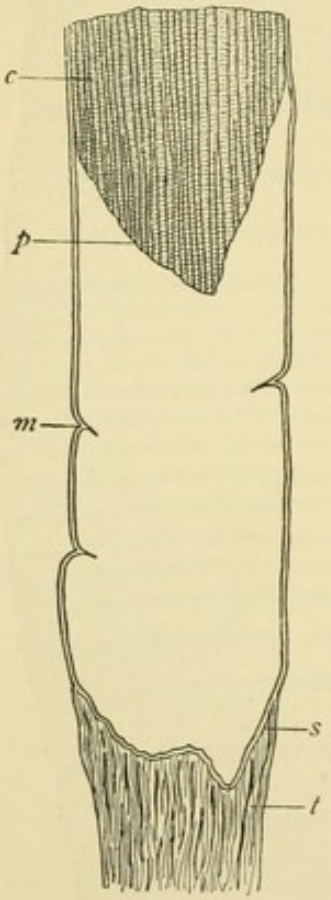


FIG. 111.—Termination of a muscular fibre in a tendon-bundle. *m*, sarcolemma; *s*, the same passing over the end of bundle; *p*, extremity of muscular substance *c*, retracted from the end of sarcolemma tube; *t*, tendon bundle fixed to sarcolemma. (Ranvier.)

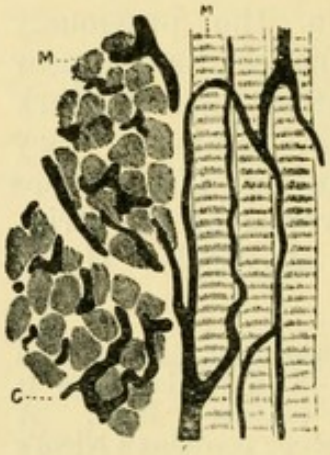


FIG. 112.—Three muscular fibres running longitudinally, and two bundles of fibres in transverse section, M, from the tongue. The capillaries, C, are injected. × 150. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

Red Muscles.

In many animals, such as the rabbit, and some fishes, most of the muscles are pale, but some few (like the diaphragm, crureus, soleus, semi-membranosus in the rabbit) are red. These muscles contract more slowly than the pale muscles, and their red tint is due to hæmoglobin contained within their contractile substance.

In addition to these physiological distinctions, there are histological differences between them and ordinary striped muscle. These histological differences are the following:—

1. Their muscular fibres are thinner.
2. They have more sarcoplasm.
3. Longitudinal striation is therefore more distinct.
4. Transverse striation is more irregular than usual.
5. Their nuclei are situated not only under the sarcolemma, but also in the thickness of the fibre.
6. The transverse loops of the capillary network are dilated into little reservoirs, far beyond the size of ordinary capillaries.

Cardiac Muscle.

The muscular fibres of the heart, unlike those of most of the involuntary muscles, are striated; but although, in this respect, they resemble the skeletal muscles, they have distinguishing characteristics of their own. The fibres which lie side by side are united at frequent intervals by short branches (fig. 113). The fibres are smaller than those of the ordinary striated muscles, and their transverse striation is less distinct. No sarcolemma can be discerned. Each fibre has only one nucleus which is situated in the middle of its substance. At the junctions of the fibres there is a certain amount of cementing material, stainable by silver nitrate. This is bridged across by fine fibrils from cell to cell.

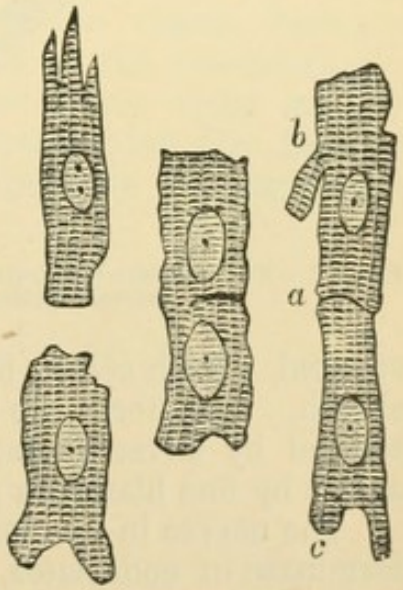


FIG. 113.—Muscular fibre-cells from the heart. (E. A. Schäfer.)

Plain Muscle.

Plain muscle forms the proper muscular coats (1.) of the digestive canal from the middle of the œsophagus to the internal sphincter ani; (2.) of the ureters and urinary bladder; (3.) of the trachea and bronchi; (4.) of the ducts of glands; (5.) of the gall-bladder; (6.) of

the vesiculæ seminales; (7.) of the uterus and Fallopian tubes; (8.) of blood-vessels and lymphatics; (9.) of the iris, and ciliary muscle of the eye. This form of tissue also enters largely into the composition (10.) of the *tunica dartos*, the contraction of which is the principal cause of the wrinkling and contraction of the scrotum on exposure to cold. It occurs also in the skin generally, being found surrounding the secreting part of the sweat glands and in small bundles attached to the hair follicles; it also occurs in the areola of the nipple. It is composed of long, fusiform cells (fig. 114), which vary in length, but are not as a rule more than $\frac{1}{600}$ inch long. Each cell has an oval or rod-shaped nucleus. The cell substance is longitudinally but not transversely

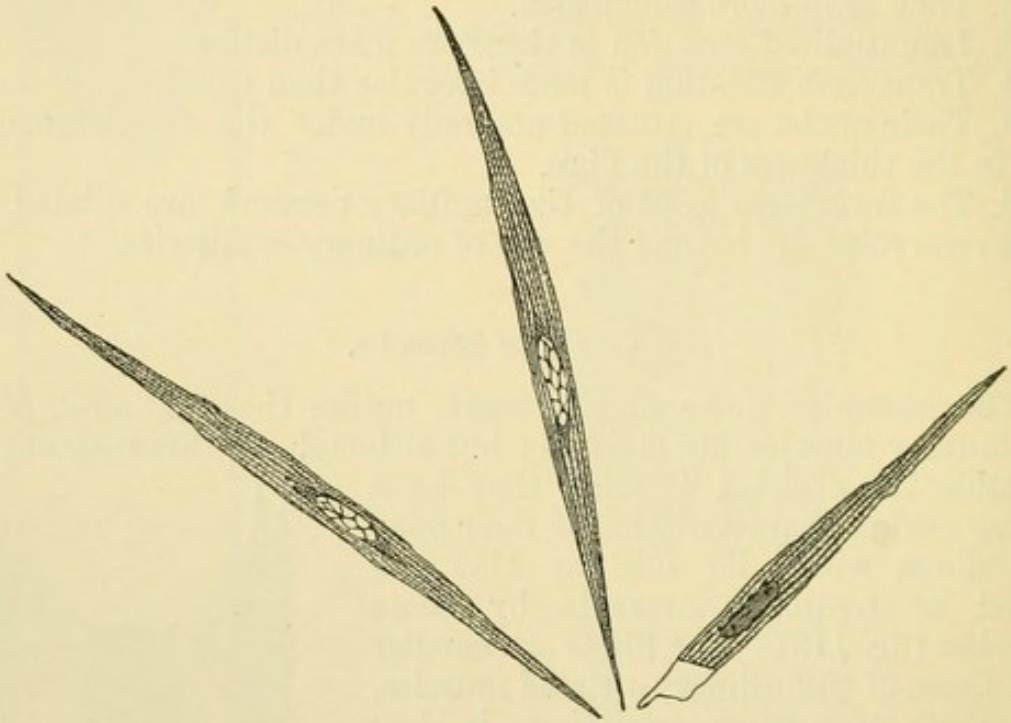


FIG. 114.—Muscular fibre-cells from the muscular coat of intestine—highly magnified. Note the longitudinal striation, and in the broken fibre the sheath is visible.

striated. Each cell or fibre, as it may also be termed, has a delicate sheath. The fibres are united by cementing material, which can be stained by silver nitrate. This intercellular substance is bridged across by fine filaments passing from cell to cell.

The nerves in involuntary muscle (both cardiac and plain) do not terminate in end-plates, but by plexuses or networks, which ramify between and around the muscular fibres.

Development of Muscular Fibres.

All muscular fibres (except those of the sweat glands which are epiblastic) originate from the mesoblast. The *plain fibres* are simply elongated cells in which the nucleus becomes rod-shaped. In *cardiac*

muscle, the likeness to the original cells from which the fibres are formed is not altogether lost, and in certain situations (immediately beneath the lining membrane of the ventricles) there are found peculiar fibres called after their discoverer *Purkinje's fibres;* these are large clear quadrangular cells with granular protoplasm containing several nuclei in the centre, and striated at the margin. It appears that the differentiation of these cells is arrested at an early stage, though they continue to grow in size.

Voluntary muscular fibres are developed from cells which become elongated, and the nuclei of which multiply. In most striated muscle fibres the nuclei ultimately take up a position beneath the cell-wall or sarcolemma which is formed on the surface. Striations appear first along one side, and extend round the fibre (fig. 115), then they extend into the centre.

During life new fibres appear to be formed in part by a longitudinal splitting of pre-existing fibres; this is preceded by a multiplication of nuclei; and in part by the lengthening and differentiation of embryonic cells (sarcoplasts) found between the fully formed fibres.

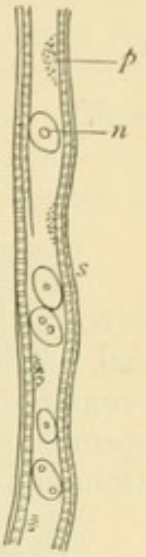


FIG. 115. — Developing muscular fibre from fœtus of two months. (Ranvier).

In plain muscle, growth occurs in a similar way: this is well illustrated in the enlargement of the uterus during pregnancy; this is due in part to the growth of the pre-existing fibres, and in part to the formation of new fibres from small granular cells lying between them. After parturition the fibres shrink to their original size, but many undergo fatty degeneration and are removed by absorption.

CHAPTER VII

NERVE

NERVOUS tissue is the material of which the nervous system is composed. The nervous system is composed of two parts, the *central nervous system*, and the *peripheral nervous system*. The central nervous system consists of the brain and spinal cord; the peripheral nervous system consists of the nerves, which conduct the impulses to and from

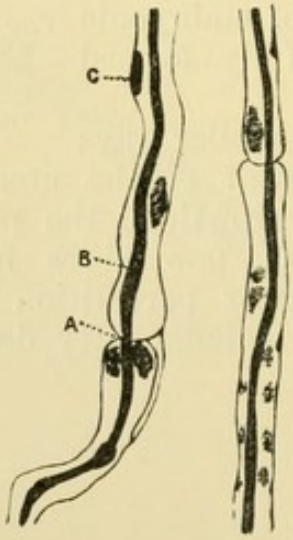


FIG. 116.—Two nerve-fibres of sciatic nerve. A. Node of Ranvier. B. Axis-cylinder. C. Sheath of Schwann, with nuclei. Medullary sheath is not stained. × 300. (Klein and Noble Smith.)



FIG. 117.— Axis cylinder, highly magnified, showing its component fibrils. (M. Schultze.)

the central nervous system, and thus bring the nerve centres into relationship with other parts of the body.

Some of the nerves conduct impulses from the nerve-centres and are called *efferent;* those which conduct impulses in the opposite direction are called *afferent.* When one wishes to move the hand, the nervous impulse starts in the brain and passes down the efferent or motor nerve-tracts to the muscles of the hand, which contract; when

one feels pain in the hand, afferent or sensory nerve-tracts convey an impulse to the brain which is there interpreted as a sensation. If all the nerves going to the hand are cut through, all communication with the nerve-centres is destroyed, and the hand loses the power of moving under the influence of the will, and the brain receives no impulses from the hand, or, as we say, the hand has lost sensibility.



FIG. 118. — Nerve-fibre stained with osmic acid. A, node; B, nucleus. (Key and Retzius.)

This distinction between efferent and afferent nerves is a physiological one, which we shall work out more thoroughly later on. No histological distinction can be made out between motor and sensory nerves, and it is histological structure which we wish to dwell upon in this chapter.



FIG. 119.—A node of Ranvier in a medullated nerve-fibre, viewed from above. The medullary sheath is interrupted, and the primitive sheath thickened. Copied from Axel Key and Retzius. × 750. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

Under the microscope nervous tissue is found to consist essentially of *nerve-cells* and their branches. The nerve-cells are contained in the brain and spinal cord, and in smaller collections of cells on the course of the nerves called *ganglia*. The part of the nerve-centres containing cells is called *grey matter*.

Long branches of the nerve-cells are known as *nerve-fibres*. These become sheathed in a manner to be immediately described, and are contained in the nerves, and in the *white matter* of brain and spinal cord. The bodies of nerve-cells differ in size, shape, and arrangement, and we shall discuss these fully when we get to the nerve-centres. For the present it will be convenient to confine ourselves to the nerve-fibres as they are found in a nerve.

Nerve-fibres are of two histological kinds, *medullated* and *non-medullated*. Medullated nerve-fibres are found in the white matter of the nerve-centres and in the nerves originating from the brain and spinal cord. Non-medullated nerve-fibres occur in the sympathetic nerves.

The **medullated** or **white fibres** are characterised

by a sheath of white colour, fatty in nature, and stained black by osmic acid; it is called the *medullary sheath* or *white substance of Schwann;* this sheathes the essential part of the fibre which is a process from a nerve-cell, and is called the *axis cylinder.* Outside the medullary sheath is a thin homogeneous membrane of elastic nature called the *primitive sheath* or *neurilemma.*

The axis cylinder is a soft transparent thread in the middle of the fibre; it is made up of exceedingly fine fibrils (fig. 117) which stain readily with gold chloride. *The medullary sheath* gives a characteristic double contour and tubular appearance to the fibre. It is interrupted at regular intervals known as the *nodes of Ranvier.* The stretch of a nerve fibre between two nodes is called an *inter-node,* and in the middle of each inter-node is a nucleus which belongs to the

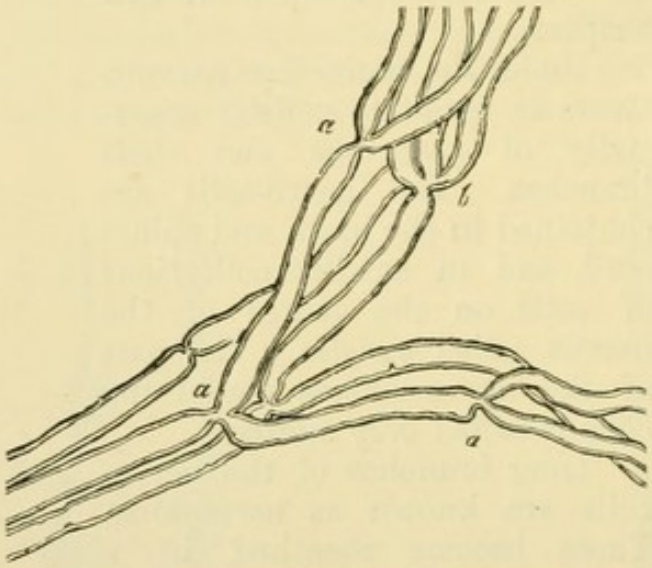


FIG. 120.—Small branch of a muscular nerve of the frog, near its termination, showing division of the fibres. *a*, into two; *b*, into three. × 350. (Kölliker.)

primitive sheath. Besides these interruptions, a variable number of oblique clefts are also seen dividing the sheath into *medullary segments* (fig. 118); but most if not all of these are produced artificially in the preparation of the specimen.

The medullary sheath also contains a horny substance called *neurokeratin:* the arrangement of this substance is in the form of a network or reticulum holding the fatty matter of the sheath in its meshes. The occurrence of horny matter in the epidermis, in the development of the enamel of teeth and in nerve is an interesting chemical reminder that all these tissues originate from the same embryonic layer, the epiblast. The fatty matter consists largely of *lecithin,* a phosphorised fat, and *cholesterin,* a monatomic alcohol.

Near their terminations the nerve-fibres branch: the branching occurs at a node (fig. 120).

Staining with silver nitrate produces a peculiar appearance at the nodes, forming what is known as the *crosses of Ranvier*.

One limb of the cross is produced by the dark staining of cement

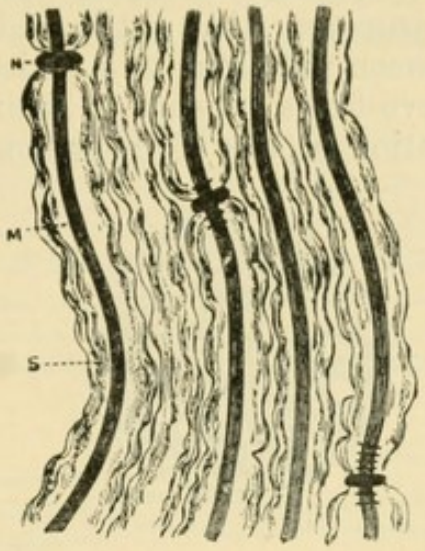


FIG. 121.—Several fibres of a bundle of medullated nerve-fibres acted upon by silver nitrate to show behaviour of nodes of Ranvier, M, towards this reagent. The silver has penetrated at the nodes, and has stained the axis-cylinder, M, for a short distance. S, the white substance. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

substance which occurs between the segments of the neurilemma; the other limb of the cross is due to the staining of a number of minute

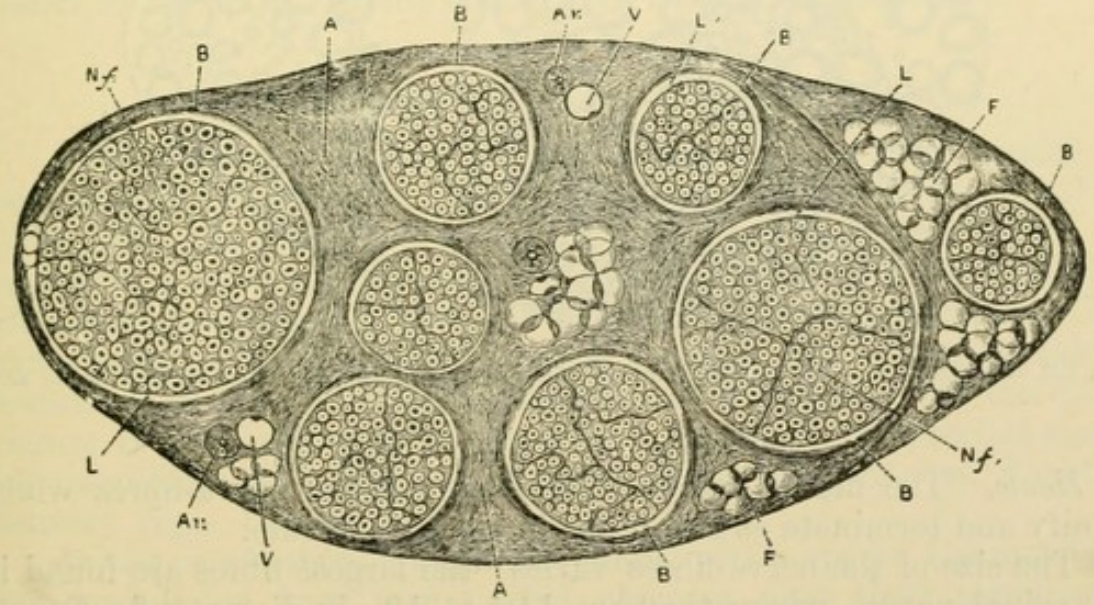


FIG. 122.—Transverse section of the sciatic nerve of a cat about × 100.—It consists of bundles (*funiculi*) of nerve-fibres ensheathed in a fibrous supporting capsule, *epineurium*, A; each bundle has a special sheath (not sufficiently marked out from the *epineurium* in the figure) or *perineurium* B; the nerve-fibres N*f* are separated from one another by *endoneurium*; L, lymph spaces; Ar, artery; V, vein; F, fat. Somewhat diagrammatic. (V. D. Harris.)

transverse bands in the axis cylinder (*Fromann's lines*), which is here not closely invested by the medullary sheath (fig. 121).

The arrangement of the nerve-fibres in a nerve is best seen in a transverse section.

The nerve is composed of a number of bundles or *funiculi* of nerve-fibres bound together by connective tissue. The sheath of the whole nerve is called the *epineurium;* that of the funiculi the *perineurium;* that which passes between the fibres in a funiculus, the *endoneurium* (fig. 122). Single nerve-fibres passing to their destination are surrounded by a prolongation of the perineurium, known as the *Sheath*

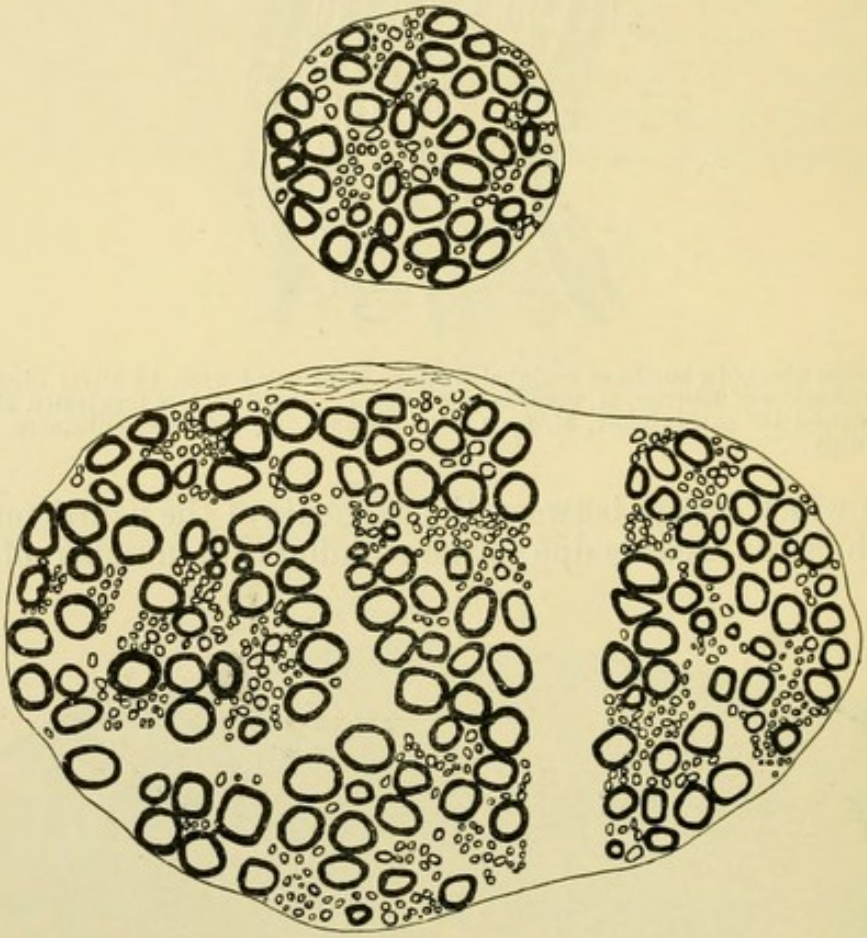


FIG. 123.—Section across the second thoracic anterior root of the dog, stained with osmic acid. (Gaskell.)

of Henle. The nerve trunks themselves receive nerve-fibres which ramify and terminate as end-bulbs in the epineurium.

The size of the nerve-fibres varies; the largest fibres are found in the spinal nerves, where they are 14·4 to 19μ in diameter.* Others mixed with these measure 1·8 to 3·6μ. These small nerve-fibres are the visceral nerves; they pass to collections of nerve-cells called the sympathetic ganglia, whence they emerge as non-medullated fibres, and are distributed to involuntary muscle. They are well seen in

* μ = micro-millimetre = $\frac{1}{1000}$ millimetre.

sections stained by osmic acid, the black rings being the stained medullary sheaths (fig. 123).

The non-medullated fibres or *fibres of Remak* have no medullary sheath, and are therefore devoid of the double contour of the medullated fibres, and are unaffected in appearance by osmic acid. They

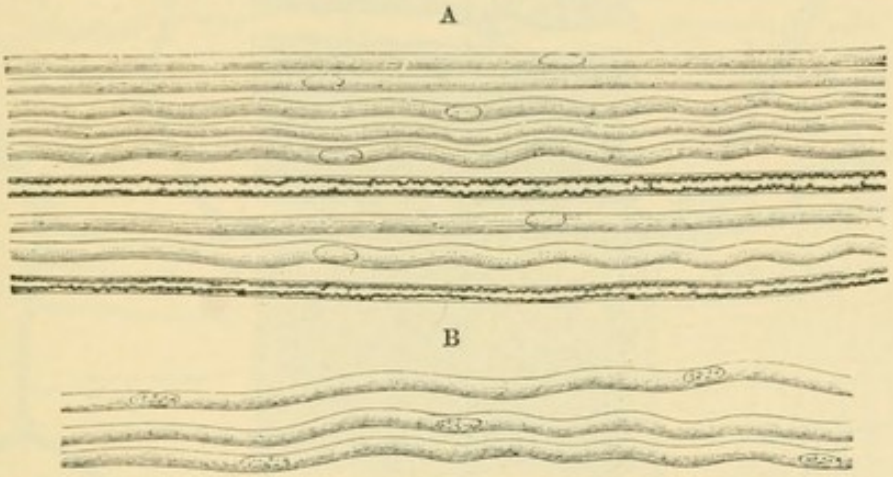


FIG. 124.—Grey, or non-medullated nerve-fibres. A. From a branch of the olfactory nerve of the sheep; two dark-bordered or white fibres from the fifth pair are associated with the pale olfactory fibres. B. From the sympathetic nerve. × 450. (Max Schultze.)

consist of an axis cylinder covered by a nucleated fibrillated sheath. They branch frequently.

Though principally found in the sympathetic nerves, a few are found in the spinal nerves mixed with the medullated fibres.

Termination of Nerves in Muscle.

In the *voluntary muscles* the motor nerve-fibres have special end organs called *end-plates*. The fibre branches two or three times (figs. 120, 125), and each branch goes to a muscular fibre. Here the neurilemma becomes continuous with the sarcolemma, the medullary sheath stops short, and the axis cylinder branches repeatedly. This ramification is embedded in a layer of granular protoplasm containing numerous nuclei. Considerable variation in shape of the end-plates occurs in different parts of the animal kingdom. Somewhat similar nerve-endings are seen in tendon; these, however, are doubtless sensory (figs. 126, 127).

In the *involuntary muscles*, the fibres, which are for the most part non-medullated, form complicated plexuses near their termination. The plexus of Auerbach (fig. 128) between the muscular coats of the intestine is a typical case. Groups of nerve-cells will be noticed at the junctions of the fine nervous cords. From these plexuses fine branches pass off and bifurcate at frequent intervals, until at last ultimate fibrillæ are reached. These subdivisions of the axis cylinders do not anastomose with one another, but they come into close relation-

ship with the involuntary muscular fibres; though some histologists have stated that they end in the nuclei of the muscular fibres, it is now believed that they do not pass into their interior.

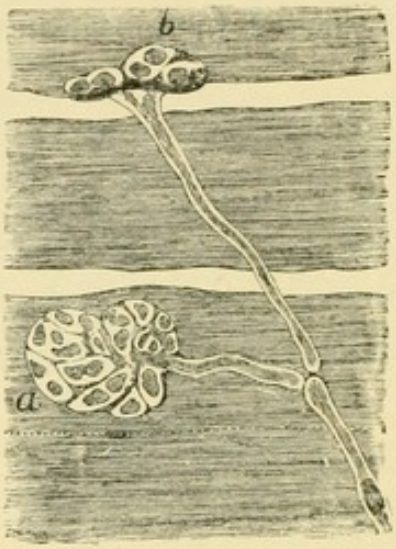


FIG. 125.—From a preparation of the nerve-termination in the muscular fibres of a snake. *a*, End-plate seen in surface view. *b*, End-plate seen in profile. (Lingard and Klein.)

The terminations of sensory nerves are in some cases plexuses, in others special end organs. We shall deal with these in our study of sensation.



FIG. 126.—Termination of medullated nerve-fibres in tendon near the muscular insertion. (Golgi.)

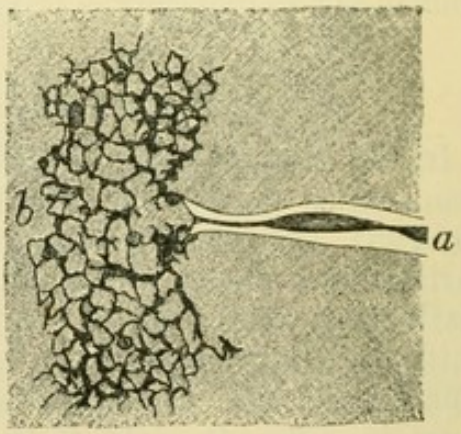


FIG. 127.—One of the reticulated end-plates of fig. 126, more highly magnified. *a*, medullated nerve-fibres; *b*, reticulated end-plates. (Golgi.)

Development of Nerve-fibres.

A nerve-fibre is primarily an out-growth from a nerve-cell, as is shown in the accompanying diagram (fig. 129). A nerve-cell, though it may have many branches, only gives off one process which becomes the axis cylinder of a nerve-fibre. This acquires a medullary sheath when it passes into the white matter of the brain or spinal cord, and

a primitive sheath when it leaves the nerve-centre and gets into the nerve. But at first the axis cylinder is not sheathed at all.

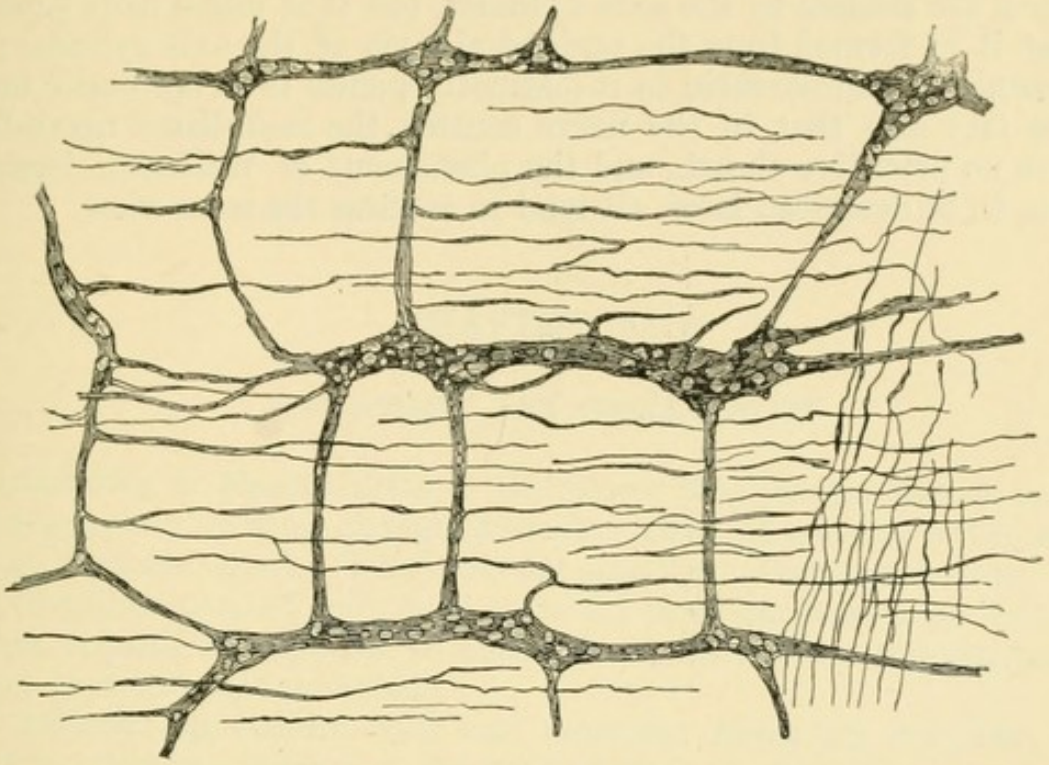


FIG. 128.—Plexus of Auerbach, between the two layers of the muscular coat of the intestine. (Cadiat.)

The formation of the sheaths is still a matter of doubt, but the generally accepted opinion is that the primitive sheath is formed by

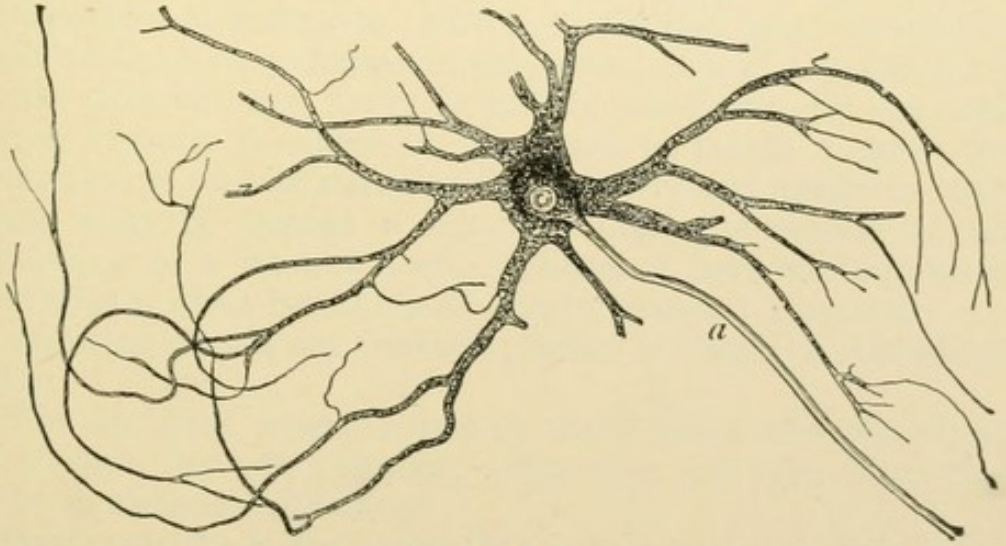


FIG. 129.—Multipolar nerve-cell from anterior horn of spinal cord; *a*, axis cylinder process. (Max Schultze.)

mesoblastic cells which become flattened out and wrapped round the fibre end to end. These are separated at the nodes by intercellular or cement substance stainable by silver nitrate (fig. 121). These cells are

probably mesoblastic. The medullary sheath is formed, according to some, by a fatty change occurring in the parts of these same cells which are nearest to the axis cylinder, but it is much more probable that it is formed from the peripheral layer of the axis cylinder; the presence of neurokeratin in it distinctly points to an epiblastic origin. The fact also that, in the nerve centres, the medullated nerve-fibres have no primitive sheath, and the phenomena of Wallerian degeneration, to be described later, all tend to confirm the same view.

CHAPTER VIII

IRRITABILITY AND CONTRACTILITY

Irritability or **Excitability** is the power that certain tissues possess of responding by some change (transformation of energy) to the action of an external agent. This external agent is called a **stimulus**.

Undifferentiated cells such as white blood-corpuscles are irritable; when stimuli are applied to them they execute the movements we have learnt to call amœboid.

Ciliated epithelium cells and muscular fibres are irritable; they also execute movements under the influence of stimuli.

Nerves are irritable; when they are stimulated, a change is produced in them; this change is propagated along the nerve, and is called a nervous impulse; there is no change of form in the nerve visible to the highest powers of the microscope; much more delicate and sensitive instruments than a microscope must be employed to obtain evidence of a change in the nerve; it is of a molecular nature. But the irritability of nerve is readily manifested by the results the nervous impulse produces in the organ to which it goes; thus the stimulation of a motor nerve produces a nervous impulse in that nerve which, when it reaches a muscle, causes the muscle to contract: stimulation of a sensory nerve produces a nervous impulse in that nerve which, when it reaches the brain, causes a sensation.

Secreting glands are irritable; when irritated or stimulated they secrete.

The electrical organs found in many fishes like the electric eel, and torpedo ray, are irritable; when they are stimulated they give rise to an electrical discharge.

Contractility is the power that certain tissues possess of responding to a stimulus by change of form. Contractility and irritability do not necessarily go together; thus both muscle and nerve are irritable, but of the two, only muscle is contractile.

Some movements visible to the microscope are not due to contractility; thus granules in protoplasm or in a vacuole may often be

seen to exhibit irregular, shaking movements due simply to vibrations transmitted to them from the outside. Such movement is known as *Brownian movement.*

Instances of contractility are seen in the following cases:—

1. The movements of protoplasm seen in simple animal and vegetable cells; in the former we have already considered streaming, gliding, and amœboid movement (see p. 12); in the latter case we have noted the rotatory movements of the protoplasm within the cell wall in certain plants (see p. 13).

2. The movements of pigment cells. These are well seen under the skin of such an animal as the frog; under the influence of electricity and of other stimuli, especially of light, the pigment granules are massed together in the body of the cell, leaving the processes quite transparent (fig. 130). If the stimulus is removed the granules gradually extend into the processes again. Thus the skin of the frog is sometimes uniformly dusky, and sometimes quite light

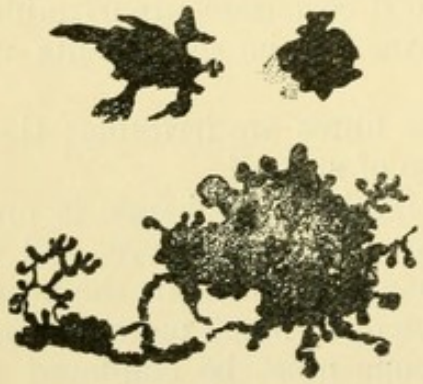


FIG. 130.—Frog's pigment cells.

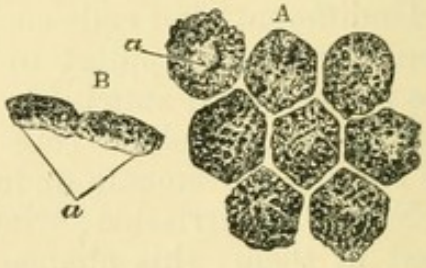


FIG. 131.—Pigment cells from the retina. A, cells still cohering, seen on their surface; *a*, nucleus indistinctly seen. In the other cells the nucleus is concealed by the pigment granules. B, two cells seen in profile; *a*, the outer or posterior part containing scarcely any pigment. × 370. (Henle.)

coloured. The chamæleon is an animal which has become almost proverbial, since it possesses the same power to a marked degree. This function is a protective one; the animal approximates in colour that of its surroundings, and so escapes detection.

In the retina we shall find a layer of pigment cells (fig. 131), the granules in which are capable of moving in the protoplasm in a somewhat similar way; the normal stimulus here also is light.

3. Ciliary movement; here we have a much more orderly movement which has already been described (see p. 29).

4. In Vorticellæ, a spiral thread of protoplasm in their stalk enables them by contracting it to lower the bell at the end of the stalk.

5. In certain of the higher plants, such as the sensitive and carnivorous plants, movements of the stalks and sensitive hairs of the leaves occur under the influence of stimuli.

6. Muscular movement. This for the student of human physio-

logy is the most important of the series; it is by their muscles that the higher animals (man included) execute most of their movements.

If we contrast together amœboid, ciliary, and muscular movement, we find that they differ from each other very considerably. Amœboid movement can occur in any part of an amœboid cell, and in any direction. Ciliary and muscular movement are limited to one direction; but they are all essentially similar, consisting of the movement of hyaloplasm in and out of spongioplasm; it is the arrangement of the spongioplasm that limits and controls the movement of the hyaloplasm (see also p. 84).

Rhythmicality.—In some forms of movement there is not only order in direction, but order in time also. This is seen in ciliary movement, and in many involuntary forms of muscular tissue, such as that of the heart. Here periods of contraction alternate with periods of rest, and this occurs at regular intervals. Under the influence of certain saline solutions,* voluntary muscles may be made artificially to exhibit rhythmic contractions.

A familiar instance of rhythmic movement in the inorganic world is seen in a water-tap nearly turned off but dripping; water accumulates at the mouth of the tap till the drop is big enough to fall; it falls, and the process is repeated. If, instead of water, gum or treacle, or some other viscous substance is watched under similar circumstances, the drops fall much more slowly; each drop has to get bigger before it possesses enough energy to fall. Thus we may get different degrees or rates of rhythmic movement. So in the body, during the period of rest, the cilium or the heart is accumulating potential energy, till, as it were, it becomes so charged that it discharges; potential energy is converted into kinetic energy or movement.

When contraction travels as a wave along muscular fibres, or from one muscular fibre to another, the term *peristalsis* is employed. These waves are well seen in such a muscular tube as the intestine, and are instrumental in moving its contents along. The heart's contraction is a similar but more complicated peristalsis occurring in a rhythmic manner.

Muscle and nerve are admirable tissues for studying irritability and contractility.

The question may be first asked, what evidence there is of irritability in muscle? May not the irritability be a property of the nerve-fibres which are distributed throughout the muscle and terminate in its fibres? The doctrine of independent muscular irrita-

* Biedermann's fluid has the following composition:—Sodium chloride 5 grammes, alkaline sodium phosphate 2 gr., sodium carbonate 0·5 gr., water 1 litre. If one end of the sartorius of a curarised frog is dipped into this fluid, it contracts rhythmically in a manner analogous to the heart. A solution of pure sodium chloride (0·65 per cent.) has a similar action.

bility was enunciated by Haller more than a century ago, and was afterwards keenly debated. It was finally settled by an experiment of Claude Bernard which can be easily repeated by every student.

If a frog is taken and its brain destroyed by pithing, it loses consciousness, but the circulation goes on, and the tissues of its body retain their vitality for a considerable time. If now a few drops of a solution of *curare*, the Indian arrow poison, are injected with a small syringe under the skin of its back, it loses in a few minutes all power of movement. If next the sciatic or any other nerve going to muscle is dissected out and stimulated, no movement occurs in the muscles to which it is distributed. Curare paralyses the motor end-plates, so that for all practical purposes the muscles are nerveless; or rather nervous impulses cannot get past the end-plates and cause any effect on the muscles. But if the muscles are stimulated themselves, they contract.

Another proof that muscle possesses inherent irritability was adduced by Kühne. In part of some of the frog's muscles (*e.g.* part of the sartorius) there are no nerves at all; yet these parts are irritable and contract when stimulated.

The evidence of the statement just made that the poisonous effect of curare is on the end-plates is the following:—The experiment described proves it is not the muscles that are paralysed. It must therefore be either the nerves, or the links between the nerve-fibres and the muscular fibres. By a process of exclusion we arrive at the conclusion that it is these links, for the following experiment shows it is not the nerves. The frog is pithed as before, and then one of its legs is tightly ligatured so as to include everything except the sciatic nerve of that leg. Curare is injected and soon spreads by the circulating blood all over the body except to the leg protected by the ligature. It can get to the sciatic nerve of that leg because that was not tied in with the rest. The sciatic nerve of the other leg is now dissected out; when the muscles supplied by it cease to contract when the nerve is stimulated, the frog may be considered to be fully under the influence of the drug. But on stimulating the sciatic nerve of the protected limb, the muscles respond normally; this shows that the nerve which has been exposed to the action of the poison has not been affected by it.

Varieties of Stimuli.

The normal stimulus that leads to muscular contraction is a nervous impulse; this is converted into a muscular impulse (visible as a contraction) at the end-plates. This nervous impulse starts at the nerve-centre, brain or spinal cord, and travels down the nerve to the muscle. In a reflex action the nervous impulse in the nerve-

centre is started by a sensory impulse from the periphery; thus when one puts one's hand on something unpleasantly hot, the hand is removed; the hot object causes a nervous impulse to travel to the brain, and the brain reflects down to the muscles of the hand another impulse by the motor nerves which causes the muscles to contract in such a manner as to move the hand out of the way.

But the details of muscular contraction can be more readily studied in muscles removed from the body of such an animal as the frog, and made to contract by artificial stimuli. When we have considered these, we can return to the lessons they teach us about the normal contractions in our own bodies.

The first thing to do is to make from a pithed frog a *muscle-nerve preparation;* the muscle usually selected is the gastrocnemius, the large muscle of the calf of the leg, with the sciatic nerve attached. For some experiments the sartorius or gracilis may be used; but nearly all can be demonstrated on the gastrocnemius.

The tendon of the gastrocnemius may be tied to a lever with a flag at the end of it, and thus its contractions rendered more evident; the bone at the other end is fixed in a clamp. Stimuli may be applied either to the nerve or to the muscle. If the stimulus is applied to the nerve, it is called *indirect stimulation;* the stimulus starts a nervous impulse which travels to the muscle; the muscle is thus stimulated as it is in voluntary contraction by a nervous impulse. Stimulation of the muscle itself is called *direct stimulation.* These stimuli may be:

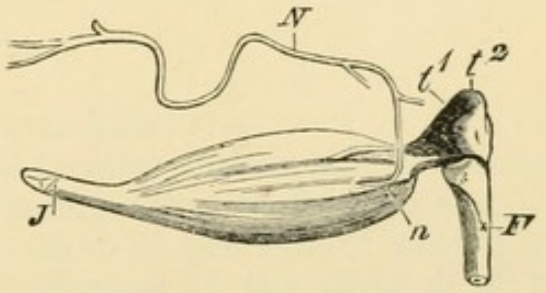


FIG. 132.—Muscle-nerve preparation. F, femur; N, nerve; T, tendo Achillis. (M'Kendrick.)

1. Mechanical; for instance a pinch or blow.

2. Chemical; for instance salt or acid sprinkled on the nerve or muscle.

3. Thermal; for instance touching the nerve or muscle with a hot wire.

4. Electrical; the constant or the induced current may be used.

In all cases the result of the stimulation is a muscular contraction. Of all methods of artificial stimulation, the electrical is the one most generally employed, because it is more under control and the strength and duration of the stimuli (shocks) can be regulated easily. We shall therefore have to study some electrical apparatus.

Chemical stimuli are peculiar, for some which affect muscle do not affect nerve, and *vice versâ;* thus glycerine stimulates nerve, but not muscle; ammonia stimulates muscle, but not motor nerves.

We may regard stimuli as liberators of energy; muscle and nerve

and other irritable structures undergo disturbances in consequence of a stimulus. The disturbance is some form of movement, visible movement in the case of muscle, molecular movement in the case of nerve. A stimulus may be regarded as added motion. Sir William Gowers compares it to the blow that causes dynamite to explode, or the match applied to a train of gunpowder. A very slight blow will explode a large quantity of dynamite; a very small spark will fire a long train of gunpowder. So in muscle or nerve the effect is often out of all proportion to the strength of the stimulus; a light touch on the surface of the body may elicit very forcible nervous and muscular disturbances; and moreover, the effect of the stimulus is propagated along the nerve or muscle without loss.

CHAPTER IX

CONTRACTION OF MUSCLE

MUSCLE undergoes many changes when it contracts; they may be enumerated under the following five heads:—

1. Changes in form.
2. Changes in extensibility and elasticity.
3. Changes in temperature.
4. Changes in electrical condition.
5. Chemical changes.

In brief, each of these changes is as follows:—

1. *Changes in form.*—The muscle becomes shorter, and at the same time thicker. The amount of shortening varies so that the length of the muscle when contracted is from 65 to 85 per cent. of what it was originally. Up to a certain point, increase of the strength of the stimulus increases the amount of contraction. Fatigue diminishes, and up to about 33° C. the application of heat increases the amount of contraction. Beyond this temperature the muscular substance begins to be permanently contracted, and a condition called *heat rigor*, due to coagulation of the muscle proteins, sets in a little over 40° C.

What the muscle loses in length it gains in width; there is no appreciable change of volume.

Among the changes in form must also be mentioned those changes in the individual muscular fibres which require a microscope for their investigation; these have been already considered (see p. 84).

2. *Changes in elasticity and extensibility.*—The contracted muscle is more stretched by a weight in proportion to its length than an uncontracted muscle with the same weight applied to it; the extensibility of contracted muscle is increased; its elasticity is diminished.

3. *Changes in temperature.*—When muscle is at work or contracting, more energetic chemical changes are occurring than when it is at rest; more heat is produced and its temperature rises.

4. *Changes in electrical condition.*—A muscle when it contracts undergoes a diphasic variation in its electrical condition.

5. *Chemical changes.*—These consist in an increased consumption of oxygen, and an increased output of waste materials such as carbonic acid, and sarco-lactic acid. After prolonged contraction the muscle consequently acquires an acid reaction.

These five sets of changes will form the subjects of the following five chapters.

CHAPTER X

CHANGE IN FORM IN A MUSCLE WHEN IT CONTRACTS

THOUGH it has been known since the time of Erasistratus (B.C. 304) that a muscle becomes thicker and shorter when it contracts, it was not until the invention of the *graphic method* by Ludwig and Helmholtz, about sixty years ago, that we possessed any accurate knowledge of this change. The main fact just stated may be seen by simply looking at a contracting muscle, such as the biceps of one's own arm; but more elaborate apparatus is necessary for studying the various phases in contraction and the different kinds of contraction that may occur.

These may be readily demonstrated on the ordinary muscle-nerve preparation (gastrocnemius and sciatic nerve) from a frog. By the graphic method, one means that the movement is recorded by a writing. We shall find that the same method is applied to the heart's movements, respiratory movements, blood pressure, and many other important problems in physiology. The special branch of the graphic method we have now to study is called *myography;* the instrument for writing is called a *myograph;* the writing itself is called a *myogram.* Put briefly, a myograph consists of a writing point at the end of a lever attached to the muscle, and a writing surface which travels at a uniform rate, on which the writing point inscribes its movement.

The first thing, however, that is wanted is something to stimulate the muscle and make it contract; the stimulus is usually applied to the nerve, and the form of stimulus most frequently employed is electrical.

The galvanic battery in most common use is the *Daniell cell.* It consists of a well-amalgamated zinc rod immersed in a cylinder of porous earthenware containing 10 per cent. sulphuric acid; this is contained within a copper vessel (represented as transparent for diagrammatic purposes in fig. 133) filled with saturated solution of copper sulphate. Each metal has a binding screw attached to it, to which wires can be fastened. The zinc rod is called the *positive element,* the copper the *negative element.* The distal ends of the wires

attached to these are called *poles* or *electrodes*, and the pair of electrodes may be conveniently held in a special form of holder. The electrode attached to the positive element (zinc) is called the *negative pole* or *kathode;* that attached to the negative element (copper) is called the *positive pole* or *anode*. If now the two electrodes are connected together, an electrical, galvanic or *constant* current flows from the copper to the zinc outside the battery, and from the zinc to the copper through the fluids of the battery; if the electrodes are not connected the circle is broken, and no current can flow at all. If now a nerve or muscle is laid across the two electrodes the circuit is completed, and it will be noticed at the moment of completion of the circuit the muscle enters into contraction; if the muscle is lifted off the electrodes, another contraction occurs at the moment the circuit is broken. The same thing is done more conveniently by means of a key: fig. 134 represents two common forms of key. A key is a piece of apparatus by which the current

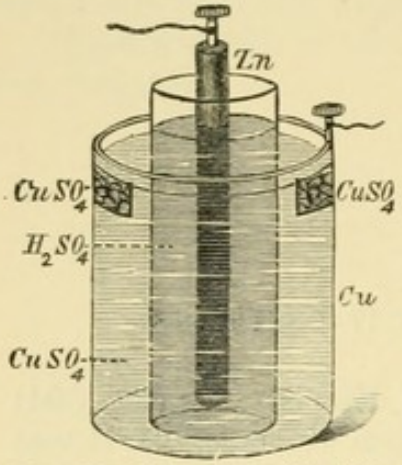
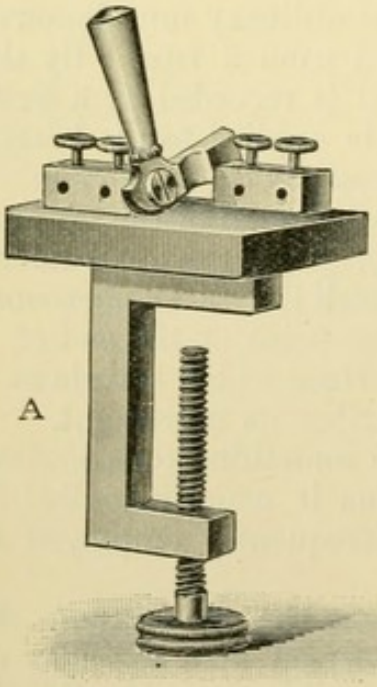


FIG. 133.—Diagram of a Daniell's Battery.



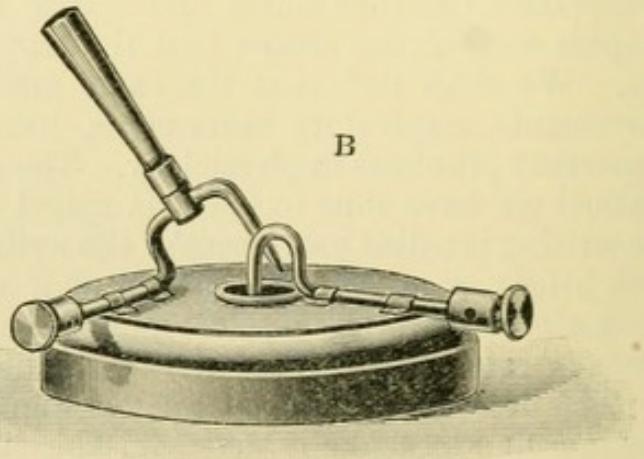


FIG. 134.—A. Du Bois Reymond's Key. B. Mercury Key.

can be allowed to pass or not through the nerve or muscle laid on the electrodes. When the key is open the current is broken, as in the next figure (fig. 135); when it is closed the current is allowed to pass. The opening of the key is called *break;* the closing of the key is called *make*. A contraction occurs only at make and break, not while the current is quietly traversing the nerve or muscle.

But it will be seen in the Du Bois Reymond key (fig. 134) that there are four binding screws. This key is used as a bridge or *short circuiting key*, and for many reasons this is the best way to use it. The next diagram (fig. 136) represents this diagrammatically. The two wires from the battery go one to each side of the key; the electrodes come off one from each side of the key. When the key is open no current can get across it, and therefore all the current has to go to the electrodes with the nerve resting on them; but when the key is closed, the current is cut off from the nerve, as then practically all of it goes by the metal bridge, or short cut, back to the battery. Theoretically a small amount of current goes through the nerve; but the resistance of animal tissues to electrical currents is enormous as compared to that of metal, and the amount of electricity that flows through a conductor is inversely proportional to the resistance; the resistance in the metal bridge is so small that for all practical purposes, all the current passes through it.

Another form of electrical stimulus is the *induced current*, produced in an induction coil.

In a battery of which the metals are connected by a wire, we have

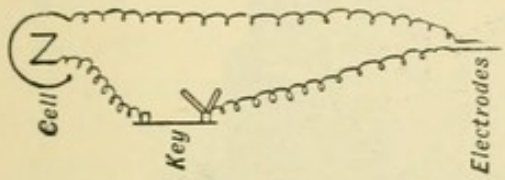


FIG. 135.

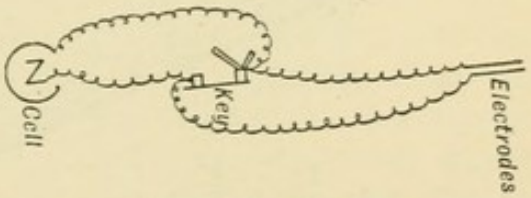


FIG. 136.

seen that the current in the wire travels from the copper to the zinc; if we have a key on the course of this wire the current can be made or broken at will. If in the neighbourhood of this wire we have a second wire forming a complete circle, nothing whatever occurs in it while the current is flowing through the first wire, but at the instant of making or breaking the current in the first or *primary wire*, a momentary electrical current occurs in the *secondary wire*, which is called an induced current; and if the secondary wire is not a complete circle, but its two ends are connected by a nerve, this induction shock traverses the nerve and stimulates it; this causes a nervous impulse to travel to the muscle, which in consequence contracts.

If the first and second wires are coiled many times, the effect is increased, because each turn of the primary coil acts inductively on each turn of the secondary coil.

The direction of the current induced in the secondary coil is the same as that of the current in the primary coil at the break; in the opposite direction at the make. The nearer the secondary coil is to the primary, the stronger are the currents induced in the former.

Fig. 137 represents the Du Bois Reymond coil, the one generally employed in physiological experiments. *c* is the primary coil, and *d* and *d'* its two ends, which are attached to the battery, a key being interposed for making and breaking; *g* is the secondary coil, the two terminals of which are at its far end; to these the electrodes to the nerve are attached; the distance between the two coils, and so the strength of the induction currents, can be varied at will. It is only when the primary current is made or broken, or its intensity increased or diminished, that induction shocks occur in the secondary circuit which stimulate the nerve. When one wishes to produce a rapid succession of make and break shocks the automatic interrupter or

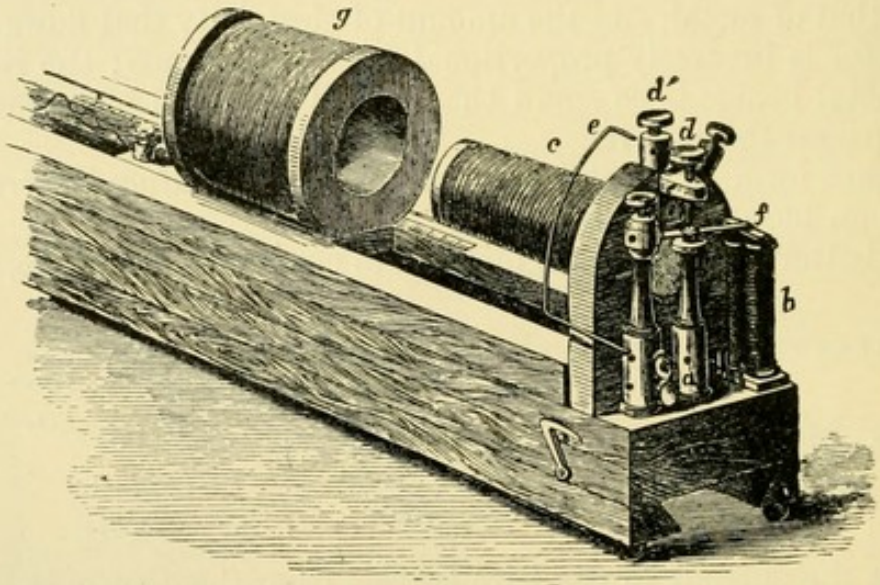


FIG. 137.—Du Bois Reymond's Induction Coil.

Wagner's hammer seen at the right-hand end of the diagram is included in the circuit.

The next thing to be noticed is that the break effects are stronger than the make effects; this is easily felt by placing the electrodes on the tongue. This is due to what is called Faraday's extra current. This is a current produced in the primary coil by the inductive influence of contiguous turns of that wire on each other; its direction is against that of the battery current at make, and so the make shock is lessened. At the break the extra current is of such short duration (because when the circuit is broken there can be no current at all) that for all practical purposes it may be considered as non-existent.

The same difference of strength occurs alternately in the repeated shocks produced by Wagner's hammer. Helmholtz, to obviate this, introduced a modification now known after him. It consists in bridging the current by a side wire, so that the current never

entirely ceases in the primary coil, but is alternately strengthened and weakened by the rise and fall of the hammer; the strengthening corresponds to the ordinary make, and is weakened by the make extra current, which occurs in the opposite direction to the battery current; the break is also incomplete, and so it is weakened by the break extra current, which being in the same direction as the battery current impedes its disappearance.

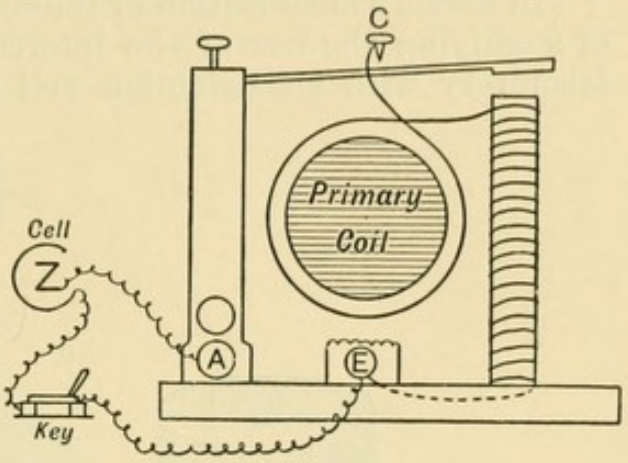


FIG. 138.

The two next diagrams show the way the interrupter acts. We are supposed to be looking at the end of the primary coil; the battery wires are attached to the binding screws A and E (fig. 138). The current now passes to the primary coil by the pillar on the left and the spring or handle of the hammer as far as the screw (C); after going round the primary coil, one turn only of which is seen, it twists round a pillar of soft iron on the right-hand side, and then to the screw E and back to the battery; the result of a current going around a bar of soft iron is to make it a magnet, so it attracts the hammer, and draws the spring away from the top screw C, and thus breaks the current; the current ceases, the soft iron is no longer a magnet, so it releases the hammer, and contact is restored by the spring; then the same thing starts over again, and so a succession of break and make shocks occurs alternately and automatically.

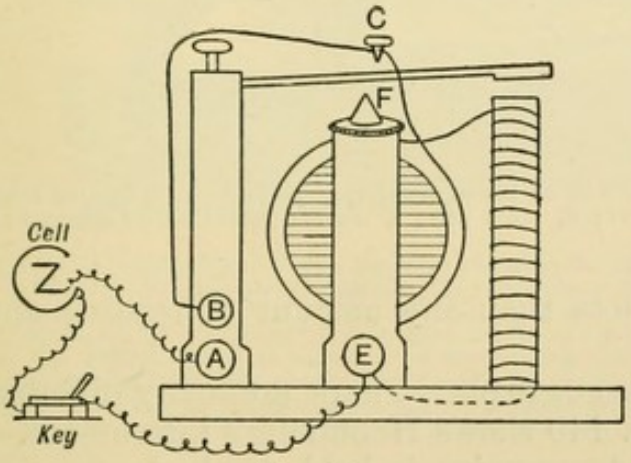


FIG. 139.

In Helmholtz's modification (fig. 139) the battery wires are connected as before. The interrupter is bridged by a wire from B to C (also shown in fig. 137, *e*). C is raised out of reach, and the lower screw F is brought within reach of the spring. Owing to the wire BC, the vibration of the hammer never entirely breaks the current.

Instead of Wagner's hammer a long vibrating reed constructed on the same principle is often used. This has the advantage that the rate of vibration can be varied at will by means of a sliding

clamp which fixes the reed, so that different lengths of it can be made to vibrate. If a long piece of reed vibrates, it does so slowly, and thus successive induction shocks at long intervals can be sent into the nerve. But if one wishes to stimulate a nerve more rapidly, the length of reed allowed to vibrate can be shortened.

In Ewald's modification of the coil there is another simple method of modifying the rate of the interrupter. But an hour spent in the laboratory with an induction coil and cell will teach the student

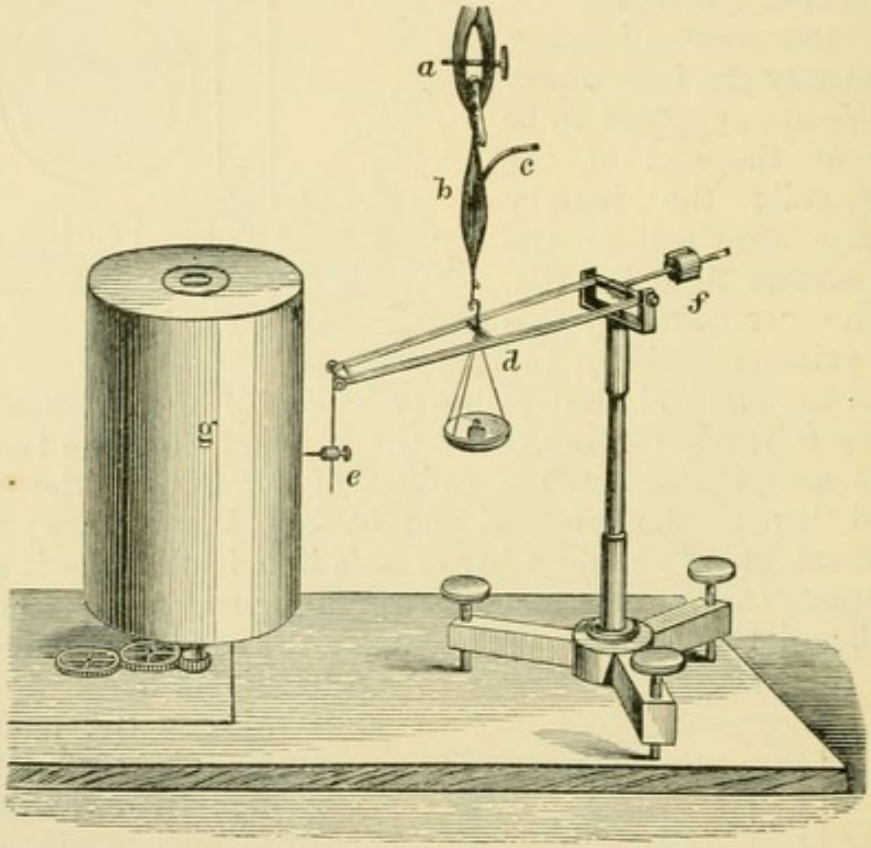


FIG. 140.—Myograph of von Helmholtz, shown in an incomplete form. *a*, forceps for holding frog's femur; *b*, gastrocnemius; *c*, sciatic nerve; *d*, scale pan; *e*, marker recording on cylinder; *f*, counterpoise. (M'Kendrick.)

much more easily all these facts than any amount of reading and description.

We can pass now to the **myograph**. There are many different forms of this instrument. Fig. 140 shows Helmholtz's instrument.

The bony origin of the gastrocnemius is held firmly by forceps, and the tendo Achillis tied to a weighted lever; the end of the lever is provided with a writing-point such as a piece of pointed parchment; when the muscle contracts it pulls the lever up, and this movement is magnified at the end of the lever. The writing-point scratches on a piece of glazed paper covered with a layer of soot; the paper is wrapped round a cylinder. When the lever goes up the writing-point will mark an up-stroke; when it falls it will mark a

down-stroke, and if the cylinder is travelling, the down-stroke will be written on a different part of the paper than the up-stroke; thus a **muscle curve** or **myogram** is obtained. The paper may then be removed, varnished, and preserved.

Fig. 141 shows a somewhat different arrangement.

The muscle is fixed horizontally on a piece of cork B, one end being fixed by a pin thrust through the knee-joint into the cork; the

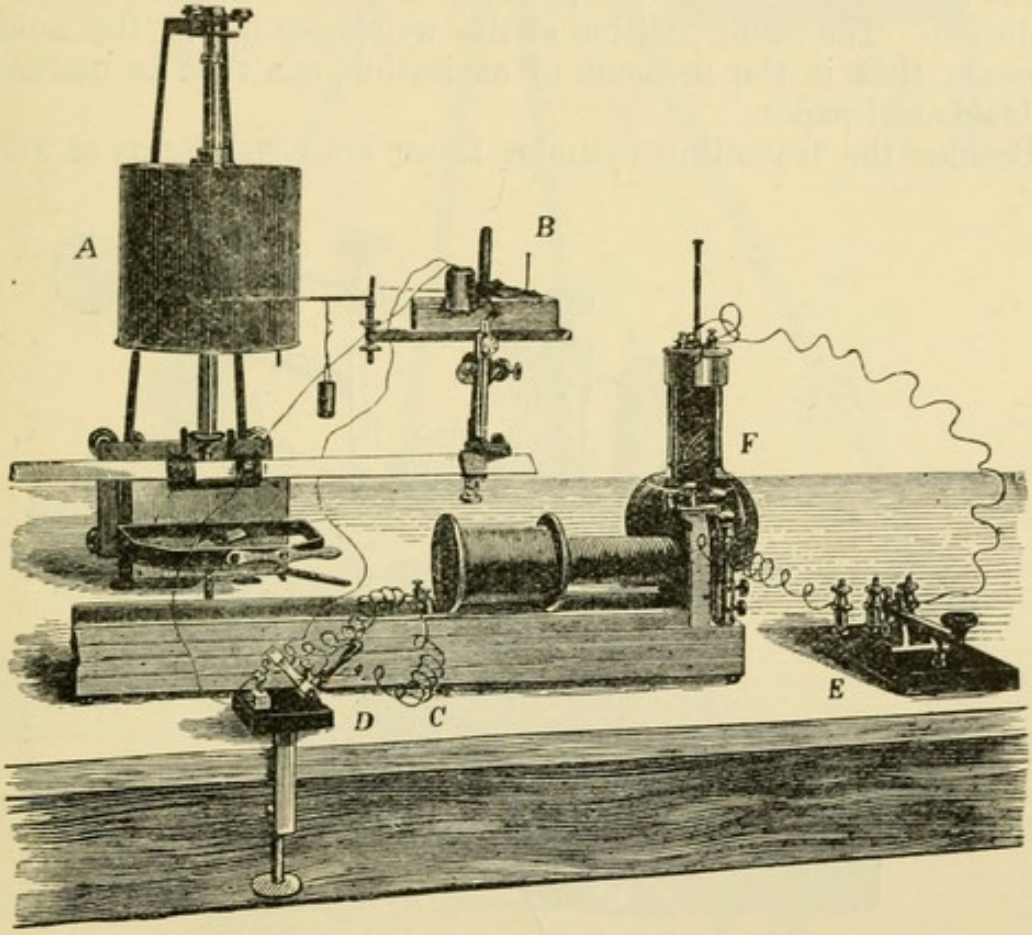


FIG. 141.—Arrangement of the apparatus necessary for recording muscle contractions with a revolving cylinder carrying smoked paper. A, revolving cylinder; B, the muscle arranged upon a cork-covered board which is capable of being raised or lowered on the upright, which also can be moved along a solid triangular bar of metal attached to the base of the recording apparatus—the tendon of the gastrocnemius is attached to the writing lever, properly weighted, by a ligature. The electrodes from the secondary coil pass to the nerve—being, for the sake of convenience, first of all brought to a short-circuiting key, D (Du Bois Reymond's); C, the induction coil; F, the battery (in this fig. a bichromate one); E, the key (Morse's) in the primary circuit.

tendo Achillis is tied to a lever which is weighted near its fulcrum: the lever is so arranged that it rests on a screw till the muscle begins to contract; the muscle therefore does not feel the weight till it begins to contract, and gives a better contraction than if it had been previously strained by the weight. This arrangement is called *after-loading.*

The writing surface is again a travelling cylinder tightly covered with smoked glazed paper. The rest of the apparatus shows how

cell, coil, keys, and electrodes are applied with the object of stimulating the nerve.

The key E makes and breaks the primary circuit, but the effect is only felt by the muscle-nerve preparation when the short-circuiting key D in the secondary circuit is opened.

Instead of the key E it is better to have what is called a "kick-over" key which the cylinder by means of a bar projecting from it knocks over and so breaks the primary circuit during the course of a revolution. The exact position of the writing-point at the moment of break, that is the moment of excitation, can then be marked on the blackened paper.

Besides the travelling cylinder there are other forms of writing

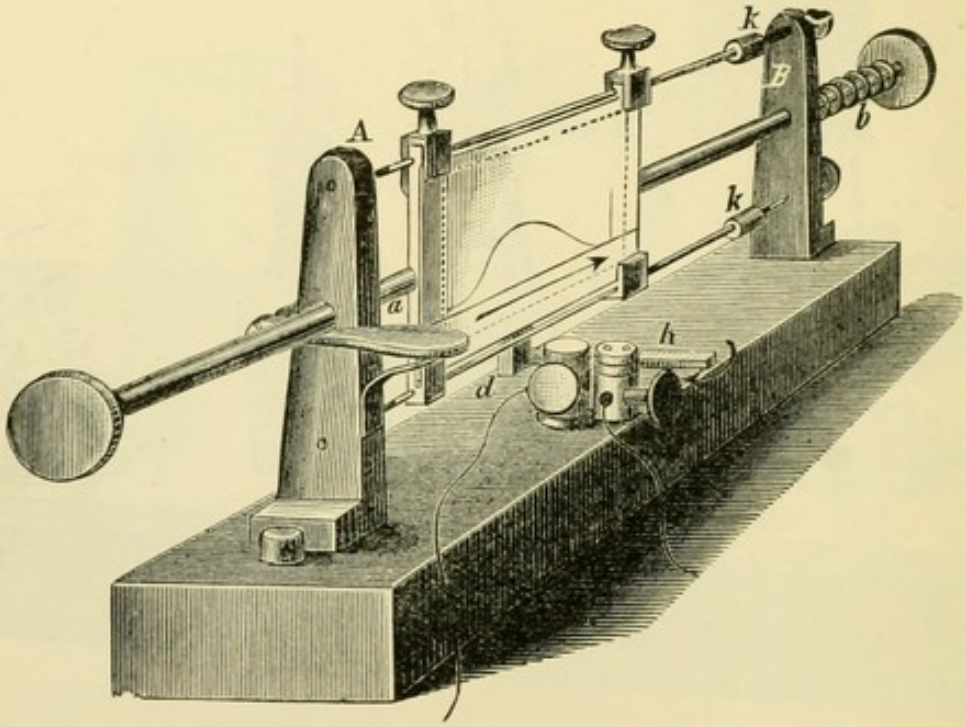


FIG. 142.—Du Bois Reymond's Spring Myograph. (M'Kendrick.)

surface. Thus fig. 142 represents the *spring myograph* of Du Bois Reymond. Here a blackened glass plate is shot along by the recoil of a spring; as it travels it kicks over a key, and the result of this, the muscular contraction, is written on the plate.

The *pendulum myograph* (fig. 143) is another form. The pendulum carries a smoked glass plate upon which the writing-point of the muscle lever is made to mark. The break shock is sent into the muscle-nerve preparation by the pendulum in its swing opening a key in the primary circuit. This is shown in an enlarged scale in BC (fig. 143).

To keep the preparation fresh during an experiment, it should be covered with a glass shade, the air of which is kept moist by means

of wet blotting-paper. A somewhat elaborate form of *moist chamber* is shown in fig. 144.

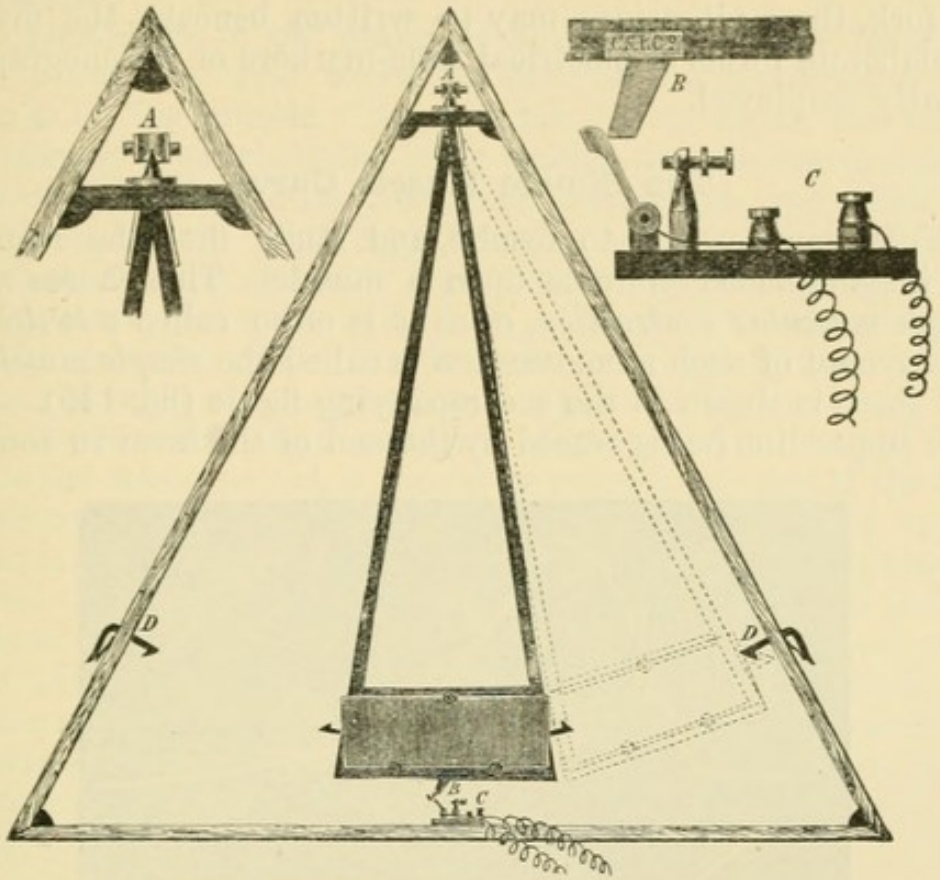


FIG. 143.—Pendulum myograph and accessory parts (Fick's pattern). *A*, pivot upon which pendulum swings; *B*, catch on lower end of myograph opening the key, *C*, in its swing; *D*, a spring-catch which retains myograph, as indicated by dotted lines, and on pressing down the handle of which the pendulum swings along the arc to *D* on the left of figure, and is caught by its spring.

The last piece of apparatus necessary is a time-marker, so that the events recorded in the myogram can be timed. The simplest

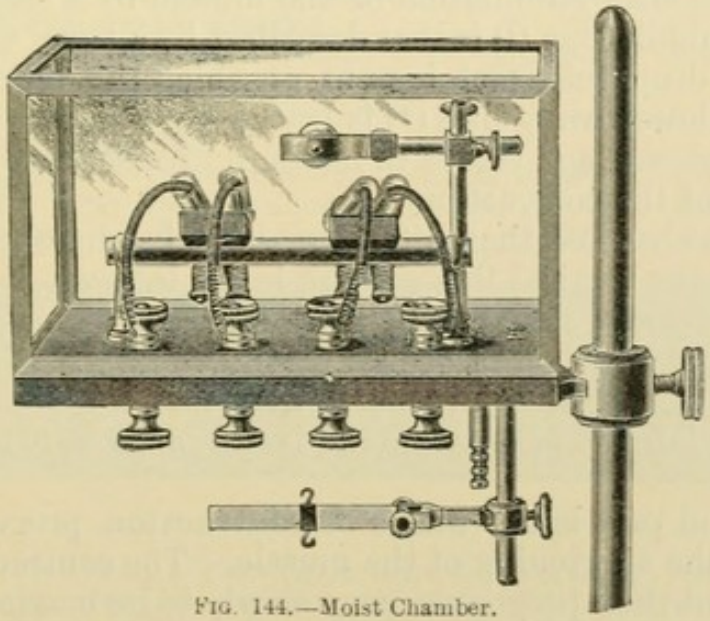


FIG. 144.—Moist Chamber.

time-marker is a tuning-fork vibrating 100 times a second. This is struck, and by means of a writing-point fixed on to one of the prongs of the fork, these vibrations may be written beneath the myogram. More elaborate forms of electrical time-markers or chronographs are frequently employed.

The Simple Muscle Curve.

We can now pass on to results, and study first the result of a single instantaneous stimulus upon a muscle. This causes a single or *simple muscular contraction,* or as it is often called a *twitch.* The graphic record of such a contraction is called the *simple muscle curve.* One of these is shown in the accompanying figure (fig. 145).

The upper line (*m*) is traced by the end of the lever in connection

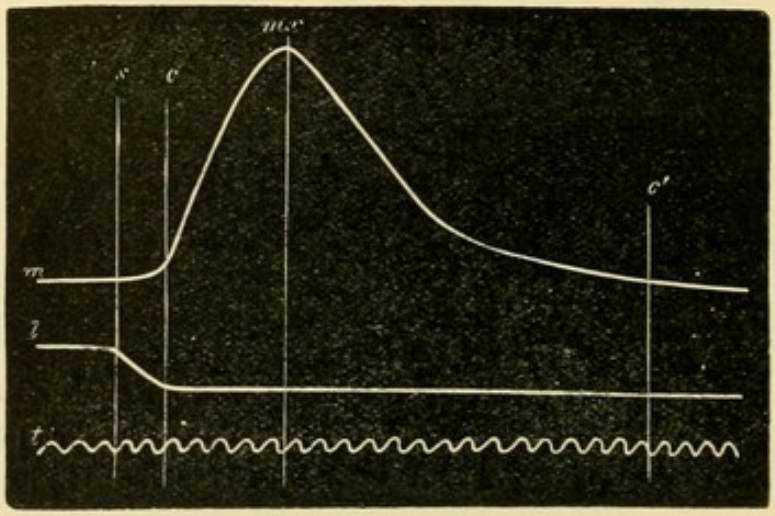


FIG. 145.—Simple muscle curve. (M. Foster.)

with a muscle after stimulation of the muscle by a single induction-shock: the middle-line (*l*) is that described by a lever, which indicates by a sudden drop the exact instant at which the induction-shock is given. The lower wavy line (*t*) is traced by a tuning-fork vibrating 200 times a second, and serves to measure precisely the time occupied in each part of the contraction.

It will be observed that after the stimulus has been applied as indicated by the vertical line *s*, there is an interval before the contraction commences, as indicated by the line *c*. This interval, termed the **latent period**, when measured by the number of vibrations of the tuning-fork between the lines *s* and *c*, is found to be about $\frac{1}{100}$ sec. During the latent period there is no *apparent* change in the muscle.

The second part is the **stage of contraction** proper. The lever is raised by the shortening of the muscle. The contraction is at first very rapid, but then progresses more slowly to its maximum, indicated

by the line *mx*, drawn through its highest point. It occupies in the figure $\frac{5}{200}$sec.

The next stage is the **stage of elongation**. After reaching its highest point, the lever begins to descend, in consequence of the elongation of the muscle. At first the fall is rapid, but then becomes more gradual until the lever reaches the *abscissa* or base line, and the muscle attains its pre-contraction length, indicated in the figure by the line *c'*. The stage occupies $\frac{15}{200}$sec. Very often after the main contraction the lever rises once or twice to a slight extent, producing small curves (as in fig. 147). These contractions are simply due to the elasticity of the muscle and recording apparatus, and are most marked when the contraction is rapid and vigorous.

The whole contraction occupies about $\frac{1}{10}$ of a second. With regard to the latent period, it should be pointed out that if the muscle is stimulated indirectly, *i.e.*, through its nerve, some of the apparent lost time is occupied in the propagation of the nervous impulse along the nerve. To obtain the true latent period, this must be deducted. Then there is latency in the apparatus (friction of the lever, etc.) to be taken into account. This can be got rid of by photographing the contracting muscle, on a sensitive photographic plate travelling at an accurately-timed rate. By such means it is found that the true latent period is much shorter than was formerly supposed. It is only $\frac{1}{400}$ of a second. In red muscles it is longer.

We now come to the action of various factors in modifying the character of the simple muscle curve.

1. *Influence of strength of stimulus.*—A minimal stimulus is that which is just strong enough to produce a contraction. If the strength of stimulus is increased the amount of contraction as measured by the height of the curve is increased, until a certain point is reached (maximal stimulus), beyond which increase in the stimulus produces no increase in the amount of contraction. The latent period is shorter with a strong than with a weak stimulus.

2. *Influence of load.*—Up to a certain point increase of load increases the amount of contraction, beyond which it diminishes, until at last a weight is reached which the muscle is unable to lift. The latent period is somewhat longer with a heavy load than with a light one.

3. *Influence of fatigue.*—This can be very well illustrated by letting the muscle write a curve with every revolution of the cylinder, until it ceases to contract at all. The next diagram shows the early stages of fatigue. At first the contractions improve, each being a little higher than the preceding; this is known as the *beneficial effect of contraction*, and the graphic record is called a *staircase*. Then the contractions get less and less. But what is most noticeable is that the contrac-

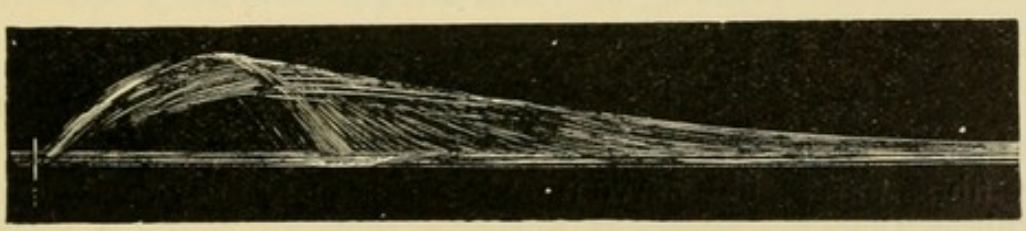


FIG. 146.—Fatigue.

tion is much more prolonged; the latent period gets longer; the period of contraction gets longer; and the period of relaxation gets very much longer; there is a condition known as *contracture*, so that the original base line is not reached by the time the next stimulus arrives. In the last stages of fatigue, contracture passes off.

4. *Effect of temperature.*—Cold at first increases the height of contraction, then

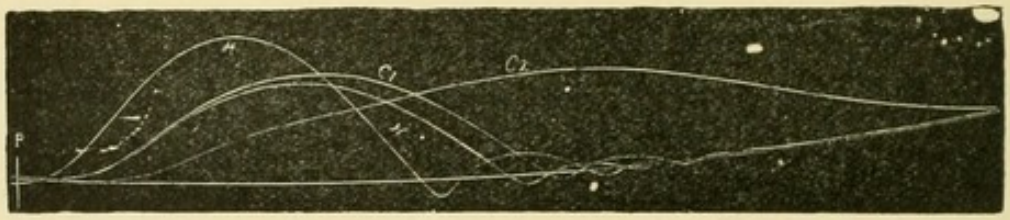


FIG. 147.—Effect of temperature on a single muscular contraction; *N*, normal; *H*, warm; *C*1, cooling; *C*2, very cold; *P*, point of stimulation. The above tracing is a considerably reduced facsimile of a tracing taken with the pendulum myograph.

diminishes it; otherwise the effect is very like that of fatigue increasing the duration of all stages of the curve.

Moderate warmth increases the height and diminishes the duration of all stages of the curve, latent period included. This may be readily shown by dropping some warm salt solution* on to the muscle before taking its curve. Too great heat (above 42° C.) induces *heat rigor* due to the coagulation of the muscle proteids.

5. *Effect of veratrine.*—If this is injected into the frog before the muscle-nerve preparation is made, the very remarkable result seen in the next diagram is

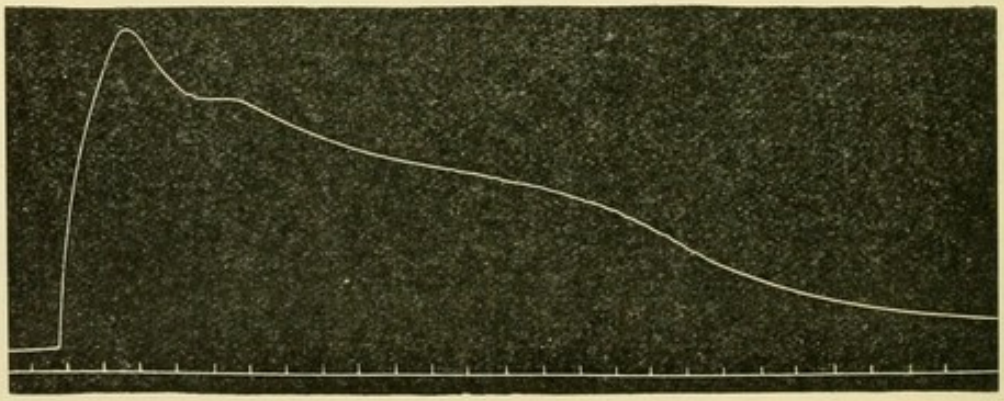


FIG. 148.—Veratrine curve, taken on a very slowly-travelling cylinder; the time tracing indicates seconds.

produced on stimulation; there is an enormous prolongation of the period of relaxation; marked by a secondary rise, and sometimes by tremors. After repeated stimulation this effect passes off, but returns after a period of rest.

The Muscle-Wave.

The first part of a muscle which contracts is the part where the nerve-fibres enter; but nerve impulses are so rapidly carried to all the fibres that for practical purposes they all contract together. But in a nerveless muscle, that is one rendered physiologically nerve-

* Physiological saline solution used for bathing living tissue is a 0·7 to 0·9 per cent. solution of sodium chloride in ordinary tap water.

less by curare, if one end of the muscle is stimulated, the contraction travels as a wave of thickening to the other end of the muscle, and the rate of propagation of this wave can be recorded graphically. The next figure (fig. 149) represents one of the numerous methods that have been devised for this purpose. A muscle with long parallel fibres, like the sartorius, is taken; it is represented diagrammatically in the figure. It is stimulated at the end, where the two wires, + and −, are placed; it is grasped in two places by pincers, which are opened by the wave of thickening; the opening of the first pair of pincers (1) presses on a drum or tambour connected to a second tambour with a recording lever (1′), and this lever goes up first; the

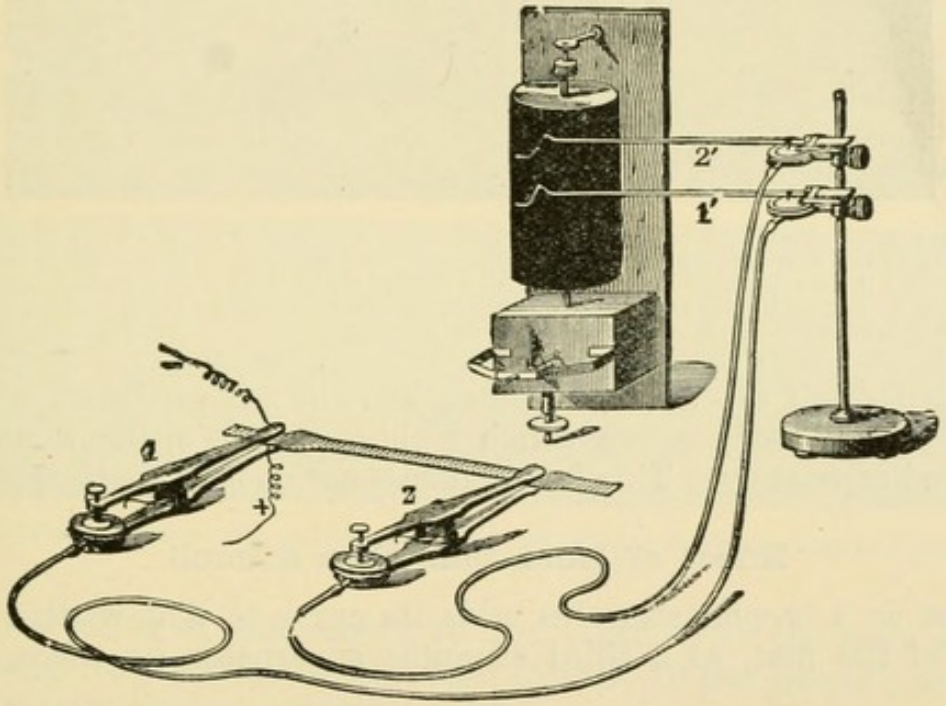


FIG. 149.—Arrangement for tracing the muscle-wave. (McKendrick.)

lever (2′) of the tambour connected with the second pair of pincers (2) goes up later. If the length of muscle between the pairs of pincers is measured, and by a time-tracing the delay in the raising of the second lever is ascertained, we have the arithmetical data for calculating the rate of propagation of the muscle-wave. It is about 3 metres per second in frog's muscle, but is hastened by warmth and delayed by cold and fatigue.

The Effect of Two successive Stimuli.

If a second stimulus follows the first stimulus, so that the muscle receives the second stimulus before it has finished contracting under the influence of the first, a second curve will be added to the first, as shown in the accompanying diagram (fig. 150). The third little

curve is only due to elastic after-vibration. This is called *superposition*, or *summation of effects.*

If the two stimuli are in such close succession that the second occurs during the latent period of the first, the result will differ according as the stimuli are maximal or submaximal. If they are maximal, the second stimulus is without effect; but if submaximal,

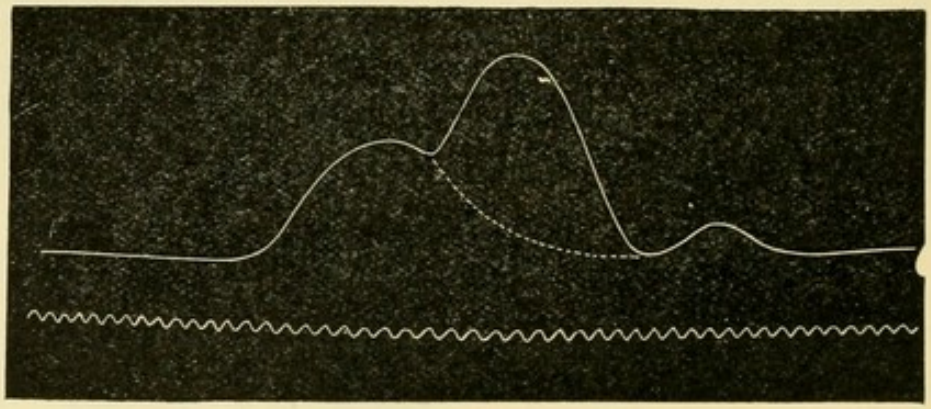


FIG. 150.—Tracing of a double muscle-curve. To be read from left to right. While the muscle was engaged in the first contraction (whose complete course, had nothing intervened, is indicated by the dotted line), a second induction-shock was thrown in, at such a time that the second contraction began just as the first was beginning to decline. The second curve is seen to start from the first, as does the first from the base line. (M. Foster.)

the two stimuli are added together, and though producing a simple muscle-curve, produce one which is bigger than either would have produced separately. This is called *summation of stimuli.*

Effect of More than Two Stimuli.

Just as a second stimulus adds its curve to that written as the result of the first, so a third stimulus superposes its effect on the

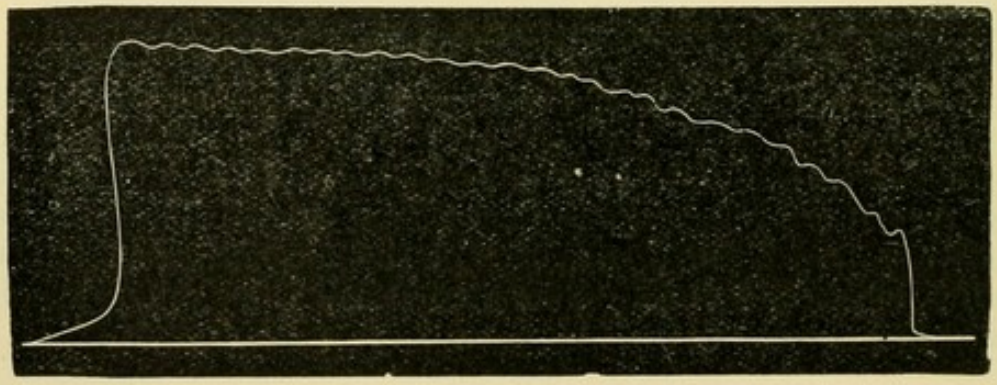


FIG. 151.—Curve of incomplete tetanus, obtained from the gastrocnemius of a frog, where the shocks were sent in from an induction coil, about sixteen times a second, by the interruption of the primary current by means of a vibrating spring, which dipped into a cup of mercury, and broke the primary current at each vibration. (Tracing to be read right to left.)

second; a fourth on the third, and so on. Each successive increment is, however, smaller than the preceding, and at last the muscle

remains at a maximum contraction, till it begins to relax from fatigue.

A succession of stimuli may be sent into the nerve of a nerve-muscle preparation by means of the Wagner's hammer of a coil, or the vibrating reed previously mentioned (p. 111). This method of stimulation is called *faradisation*. Figs. 151 and 152 show the kind of tracings one obtains. The number of contractions corresponds to the number of stimulations; the condition of prolonged contraction so produced, the muscle never relaxing completely between the individual contractions of which it is made up, is called *tetanus: incomplete tetanus*, or *clonus*, when the individual contractions are discernible (fig. 151); *complete tetanus*, as in fig. 152, when the contractions are so rapid as to be completely fused to form a continuous line without waves.

The rate of faradisation necessary to cause complete tetanus varies a good deal; for frog's muscle it averages 15 to 20 per second; for

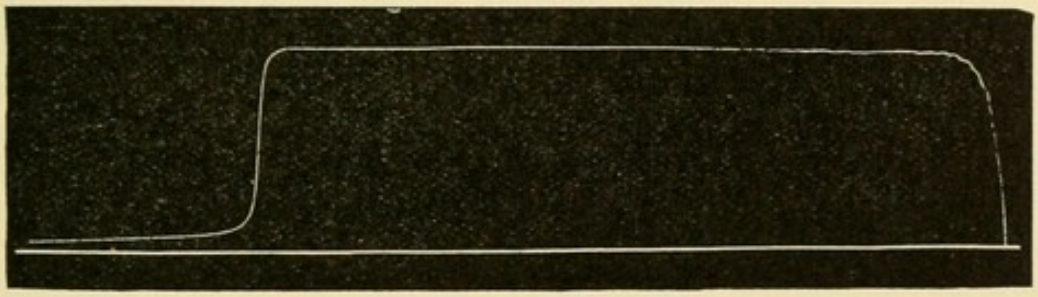


FIG. 152.—Curve of complete tetanus, from a series of very rapid shocks from a magnetic interrupter. (Tracing to be read right to left.)

the pale muscles of the rabbit, 20 per second; for the more slowly contracting red muscles of the same animal, 10 per second; and for the extremely slowly contracting muscles of the tortoise 2 per second is enough. With fatigue, the rate necessary to produce complete tetanus is diminished.

Voluntary Tetanus.

We have seen that voluntary muscles under the influence of artificial stimuli may be made to contract in two ways: a single excitation causes a single contraction; a rapid series of excitations causes a series of contractions which fuse to form tetanus.

We now come to the important question, in which of these two ways does voluntary muscle ordinarily contract in the body? The answer to this is, that voluntary contraction resembles, though it is not absolutely identical with, tetanus artificially produced. It is certainly never a twitch. The nerve-cells from which the motor fibres originate do not possess the power of sending isolated impulses to the muscles; they send a series of impulses which result in a

muscular tetanus,* or *voluntary tetanus*, as it may conveniently be termed.

If a stethoscope is placed over any contracting muscle of the human body, such as the biceps, a low sound is heard. The tone of this sound, which was investigated by Wollaston, and later by Helmholtz, corresponds to thirty-six vibrations per second; this was regarded as the first overtone of a note of eighteen vibrations per second, and for a long time 18 per second was believed to be the rate of voluntary tetanus.

The so-called "muscle sound" is, however, no indication of the rate of muscular vibration. Any irregular sound of low intensity will produce the same note; it is, in fact, the natural resonance-tone of the membrana tympani of the ear, and, therefore, selected by the organ of hearing when we listen to any irregular mixture of faint, low-pitched tones and noises.

A much more certain indication of the rate of voluntary tetanus is obtained by the graphic method. The myographs hitherto described are obviously inapplicable to the investigation of such a problem in man. The instrument employed is termed a *transmission myograph*. The next figure shows the recording part of the apparatus.

It is called a Marey's Tambour. It consists of a drum, on the

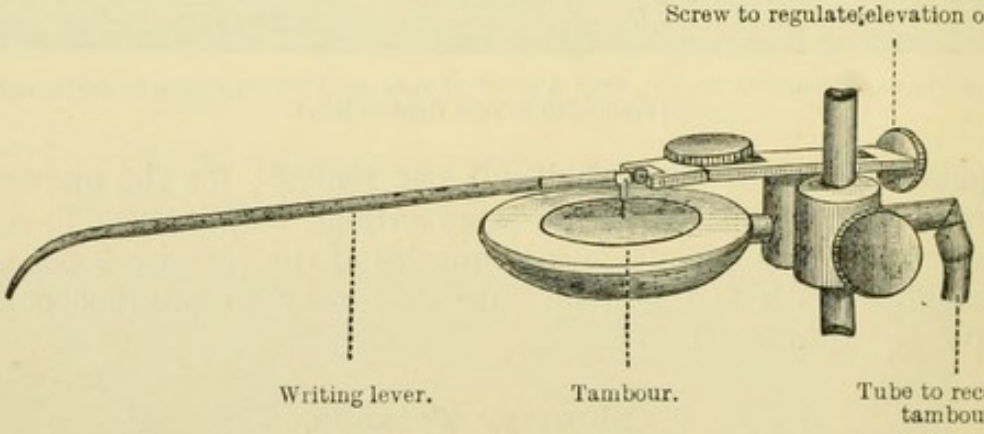


FIG. 153.—Marey's Tambour, to which the movement of the column of air in the first tambour is conducted by a tube, and from which it is communicated by the lever to a revolving cylinder, so that the tracing of the movement is obtained.

membrane of which is a metallic disc fastened near one end of a lever, the far extremity of which carries a writing point. The interior of the drum is connected by an india-rubber tube (seen at the right-hand end of the drawing) to a second tambour called the receiving tambour, in which the writing lever is absent. Now if the receiving tambour is held in the hand, and the thumb presses on the metallic

* The use of the word tetanus in physiology must not be confounded with the disease known by the same name, in which the most marked symptom is an intense condition of muscular tetanus or cramp.

disc on the surface of its membrane, the air within it is set into vibrations of the same rate as those occurring in the thumb muscles; and these are propagated to the recording tambour and are written in a magnified form by the end of the lever on a recording travelling surface.

The tracing obtained is very like that in fig. 151; it is an incomplete tetanus, which by a time marker can be seen to be made up of 10 to 12 vibrations a second.

In some diseases these tremors are much increased, as in the clonic convulsions of epilepsy, or those produced by strychnine poisoning, but the rate is the same.

Similar tracings can be obtained in animals by strapping the receiving tambour on the surface of a muscle, and causing it to contract by stimulating the brain or spinal cord. The rate of stimulation makes no difference; however slow or fast the stimuli occur, the nerve-cells of the central nervous system give out impulses at their own normal rate.

The same is seen in a reflex action. If a tracing is taken from a frog's gastrocnemius, the muscle being left in connection with the rest of the body, its tendon only being severed and tied to a lever, and if the sciatic nerve of the other leg is cut through, and the end attached to the spinal cord is stimulated, an impulse passes up to the cells of the cord, and is then reflected down to the gastrocnemius, under observation. The impulse has thus to traverse nerve-cells; the rate of stimulation then makes no difference; the reflex contraction occurs at the same rate, 10 or 12 per second.

But now a difficulty arises; if a twitch only occupies $\frac{1}{10}$ of a second, there would be time for ten complete twitches in a second; they would not fuse to form even an incomplete tetanus. There must be some means by which each individual contraction can be lengthened till it fuses with the next contraction; or, in other words, our results of electrical stimulation of excised muscles must not be applied without reserve to the contraction of the intact muscles in the living body in response to the will. Recent experiments made by Sir J. Burdon Sanderson on the electrical variation that accompanies voluntary movements, have shown that this is the case: each component of the so-called voluntary tetanus is a somewhat prolonged single contraction; a condition which closely resembles the tonic contraction of involuntary muscle.

Lever Systems.—The arrangement of the muscles, tendons, and bones presents examples of the three systems of levers which will be known to anyone who has studied mechanics; the student of anatomy will have no difficulty in finding examples of all three systems in the body. What is most striking is that the majority of cases are levers of the third kind, in which there is a loss of the mechanical

power of a lever, though a gain in the rapidity and extent of the movement.

Most muscular acts involve the action of several muscles, often of many muscles. The acts of walking and running are examples of very complicated muscular actions in which it is necessary not only that many muscles should take part, but also must do so in their proper order and in due relation to the action of auxiliary and antagonistic muscles. This harmony in a complicated muscular action is called *co-ordination*.

By the device of taking instantaneous photographs at rapidly repeated intervals during a muscular act, the details of different modes of locomotion in man and other animals have been very thoroughly worked out. With this branch of research the name of Prof. Marey is intimately associated.

CHAPTER XI

EXTENSIBILITY, ELASTICITY, AND WORK OF MUSCLE

MUSCLE is both *extensible* and *elastic*. It is stretched by a weight, that is, it possesses *extensibility;* when the weight is taken off, it returns to its original length, that is, it possesses *elasticity*. The two properties do not necessarily go together; thus a piece of putty is very extensible, but it is not elastic; a piece of steel or a ball of

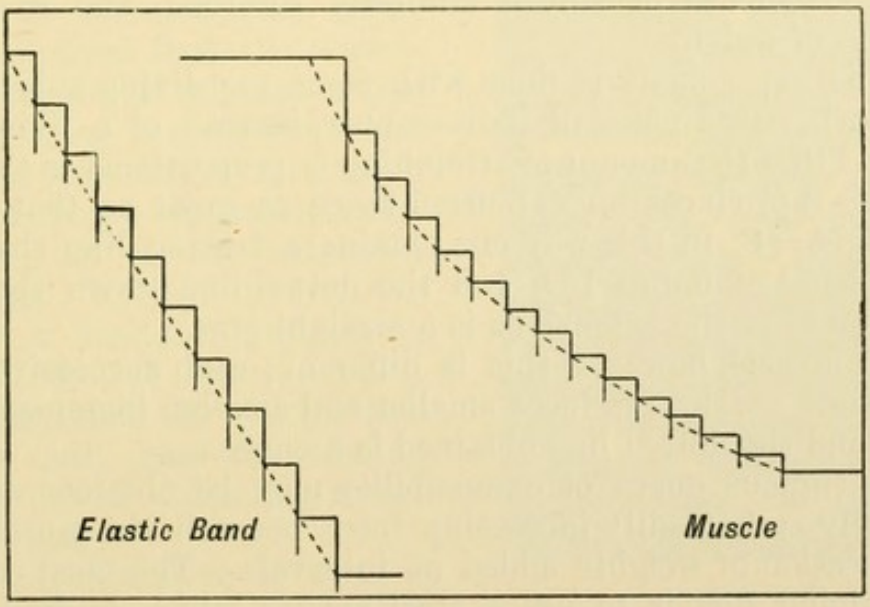


FIG. 154.—(After Waller.)

ivory are only slightly extensible, but after the stretching force has been removed they return to their original size and shape very perfectly.

A substance is said to be *strongly elastic*, when it offers a great resistance to external forces; steel and ivory are strongly elastic.

A substance is said to be perfectly elastic, when its return to its original shape is absolute; again steel and ivory may be quoted as examples.

Muscle is very extensible, *i.e.*, it is easily stretched; it is feebly

elastic, *i.e.*, it opposes no great resistance to external force; it is, however, perfectly elastic; that is, it returns to its original shape very exactly after stretching. This is true in the case of living muscle within the body, but after very great stretching even in the body, and still more so after removal from the body, when it begins to undergo degenerative changes culminating in death, its elasticity is less perfect.

The cohesion of muscular tissue is less than that of tendon. E. Weber stated that a frog's muscle one centimetre square in transverse section will support a weight of a kilogramme (over 2 lbs.) without rupture, but this diminishes as the muscle gradually dies.

The extensibility of any material may be studied and recorded by measuring the increase of length which occurs when that material is loaded with different weights. In Helmholtz's myograph (fig. 140), different weights may be placed in the scale-pan beneath the muscle, and the increase of length recorded on a stationary blackened cylinder by the downward movement of the writing point; the cylinder may then be moved on a short distance, more weight added, and the additional increase of length similarly recorded, and so on for a succession of weights.

If this experiment is done with some non-living substance, like a steel spring or a piece of india-rubber, instead of a living muscle, it is found that the amount of stretching is proportional to the weight; a weight = 2 produces an extension twice as great as that produced by a weight = 1; in this way one obtains a tracing like that seen on the left hand of figure 154, and the dotted line drawn through the lowest points of the extensions is a straight one.

With muscle, however, this is different; each successive addition of the same weight produces smaller and smaller increments of extension, and the dotted line obtained is a curve.

A continuous curve of extensibility may be obtained by placing a gradually and steadily increasing force beneath the muscle instead of a succession of weights added at intervals. The most convenient way of doing this is to use a steel spring, which is gradually and steadily extended; and the writing point connected to the muscle inscribes its excursion on a slowly moving cylinder. If, then, after the muscle has been stretched, the steel spring is gradually and steadily relaxed, the muscle retracts and again writes a curve now in the reverse direction, until it regains its original length.* But in muscles removed from the body, unless they are very slightly loaded, the return to the original length is never complete; the muscle is

* A mathematical examination of these curves shows that they are not rectangular hyperbolas as they were once considered. They are very variable in form, and cannot be identified with any known mathematical curve.

permanently longer to a slight extent, which varies with the amount of the previous loading.

If the muscle is slowly loaded and slowly unloaded, the curvature of its tracing is much more marked than if the experiment is done rapidly.

The following three tracings are reproduced from some obtained by Dr Brodie. In the method used, the records are not complicated by the curve of a lever, but the movement was simply magnified by a beam of light falling on a mirror attached to the end of the muscle, and reflected on to a travelling photographic plate. Each tracing is to be read from right to left; the first one (A) shows the result of stretching a steel spring by a steadily increasing force; the end of the spring gets lower and lower, and describes a straight line; at the apex of the tracing unloading began and went on steadily till the spring once more regained its initial length. The upstroke, like the downstroke, is a straight line. In B and C muscles were used; it will be noticed that the muscle does not regain its original length after unloading is completed, and the upward tendency of the tracing beyond this point represents after-retraction. In B, the extension was applied rapidly, the tracing is almost a straight line; in C, the extension was brought about more slowly, and the tracing is a curve; in both cases the tracing of the period of unloading shows more curvature.

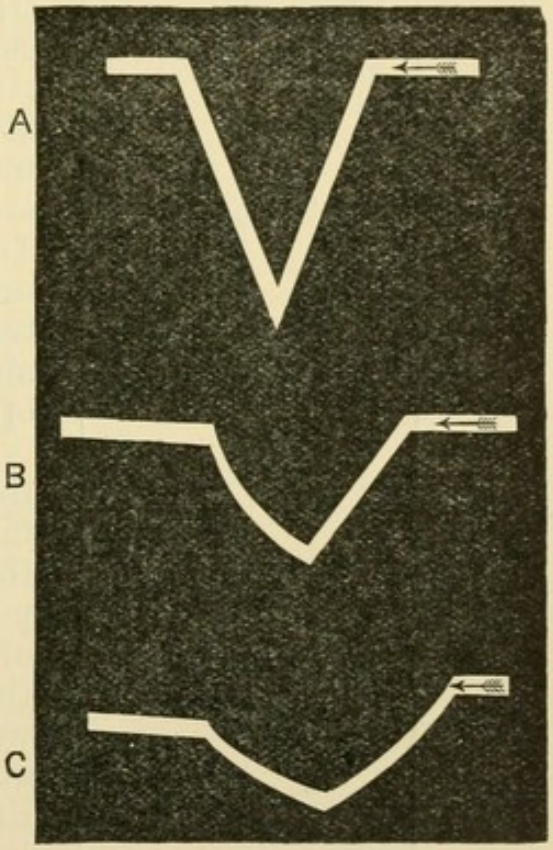


FIG. 155.—Curves of extensibility. (Brodie.)

This introduces us to what is called *after-extension* and *after-retraction.* That is to say, after a muscle is weighted there is an immediate elongation, followed by a gradual elongation which continues for some time; or if a muscle has been weighted and is then unloaded there is an immediate slackening, followed by a gradual after-retraction.

This may be shown by looking at the graphic records shown in the next diagram. It will be noticed that the extension is greatest when the muscle is in a contracted condition, and smallest when it is dead (in rigor). In fatigue the after-extension is very marked, and the return after unloading very imperfect.

We may now give the results of an actual experiment; a muscle was loaded with successive weights of 50, 100, 150, etc., grammes, and its length carefully measured in centimetres.

Load	50	100	150	200	250	300
Total extension . .	3·2	6	8	9·5	10	10·3
Increment of extension	—	2·8	2	1·5	0·5	0·3

Figure 156 shows that the contracted muscle is more extensible than the uncontracted muscle. This may be still further illustrated by an example given on the opposite page in the form of a diagram.

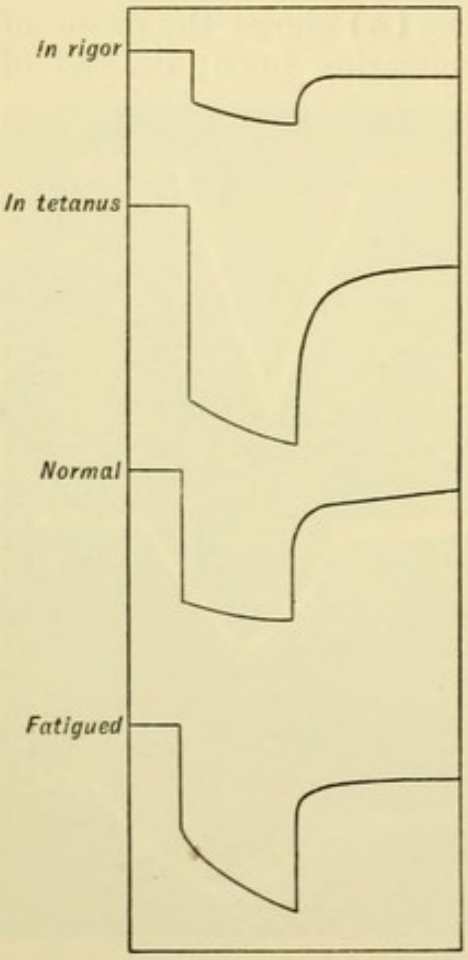


FIG. 156.—Extensibility of muscle in different states; tested by 50 grammes applied for short periods. Tracings to be read from left to right. (After Waller.)

The thick lines represent the contracted muscle, the thin ones the uncontracted. It is represented as being stretched by different weights indicated along the top line; and the lengths under the influence of these weights are separated by equal distances. Thus A C represents the length of the uncontracted muscle, A B of the contracted muscle when unloaded. A′ C′ and A′ B′ the same under the influence of a weight of 50 grammes, and so on.

The curve connecting the ends of the lengths of the contracted muscle falls faster than that obtained from the uncontracted one, until at the point P under the influence of a weight of 250 grammes, the two curves meet; that is to say, 250 grammes is the weight which the muscle was just unable to lift. Suppose a muscle has to lift the weight of 200 grammes, it begins with a length A″ C″, but when it contracts it has a length A″ B″, that is, it has contracted a distance of B″ C″, which is very small; when it has to lift a less weight it shortens more, when a greater weight it shortens less; till when it shortens least it lifts the greatest weight.

This experiment illustrates the general truth that when a muscle is contracted it is more extensible. At the point P the energy tending to shorten the muscle (its contractile power) is exactly equal to the energy tending to lengthen it against its elastic force. Thus we have the apparent paradox at this point that a muscle when

contracted has exactly the same length as when uncontracted; but this is a matter of everyday experience; if one tries to lift a weight beyond one's strength, one fails to raise it, but nevertheless one's muscles have been contracting in the effort; they have not contracted in the restricted sense of becoming shorter, but that is not the only change a muscle undergoes when it contracts; the other changes, electrical, thermal, chemical, etc., have taken place, as evidenced in one's own person by the fact that the individual has got warm in his efforts, or may even feel fatigue afterwards.

But the paradox does not end here, for if diagram 157 is again looked at, it will be seen that beyond the point P the two curves cross; in other words, the muscle may even elongate due to increase of extensibility when it contracts. This is known after its discoverer as *Weber's paradox.* The increase of extensibility of muscle during

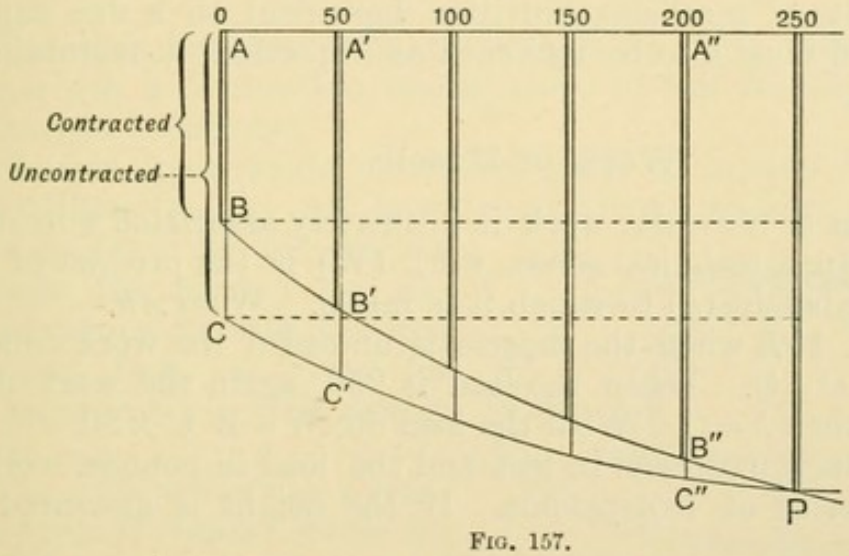


FIG. 157.

contraction is protective and tends to prevent rupture in efforts to raise heavy weights.

Influence of Temperature on Extensibility.—If a piece of iced india-rubber is taken and stretched by a weight, its retractility when the weight is removed is very small. If, now, when the weight is on it, it is warmed at one point as by placing the hand on it, its retractility is increased and it contracts, raising the weight. Some physiologists have considered that muscular contraction can be explained in this way; they have supposed that the heat formed in muscular contraction acts like warmth as applied to india-rubber. This view is, however, incorrect. It is much more probable that there is no causal relationship between the temperature-change and the extensibility-change which occur when muscle contracts; both are simultaneously produced by the stimulus.

Moreover, the influence of heat on muscle is by no means the same as that on india-rubber. This influence is not invariable, and

at certain temperatures near the freezing-point, and under the influence of certain weights, actual elongation may occur when the temperature is raised.

Muscular Tonus.

In the living animal, muscles are more or less stretched, but never taut between their two attachments. They are in a state of *tonicity* or *tonus*, and when divided they contract and the two parts separate. Thus a muscle, even at rest, is in a favourable condition to contract without losing time or energy in taking in slack.

Muscular tonus is under the control of the nervous system (on the reflex character of this control, see later, under Tendon Reflexes); the muscles lengthen when their nerves are divided, or when they are rendered physiologically nerveless by curare. Besides the nervous system, the state of muscular nutrition dependent on a due supply of healthy blood must also be reckoned as important in maintaining muscular tonus.

Work of Muscle.

The question of muscular work is intimately associated with that of elasticity. In a technical sense, work (W) is the product of the load (l) and the height (h) to which it is raised. $W = l \times h$.

Thus in fig. 157, when the muscle is unloaded the work done is *nil:* $W = BC \times O = O$. When the load is 250, again the work done is *nil*, because then $h = O$. With the load 50, $W = B'C' \times 50$.

If the height is measured in feet and the load in pounds, work is expressed in terms of foot-pounds. If the height is measured in

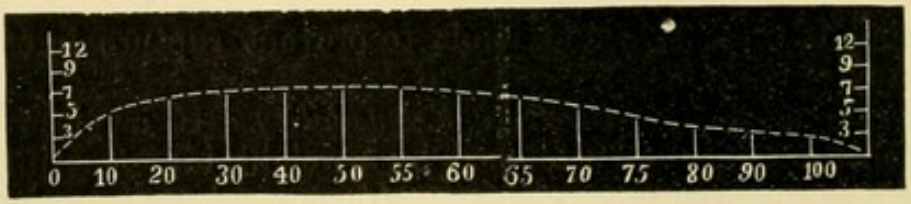


Fig. 158.—Diagram to show the mode of measuring muscle work. (M'Kendrick.)

millimetres or metres, and the load in grammes, the work is expressed in gramme-millimetres or gramme-metres respectively.

This may be shown diagrammatically by marking on a horizontal base line or abscissa, distances proportionate to different weights, and vertical lines (ordinates) drawn through these represent the height to which they are lifted (see fig. 158).

In the diagram (fig. 158) the figures along the base line represent grammes, and the figures along the vertical line represent millimetres. The work done as indicated by the first line is $10 \times 5 = 50$

gramme-millimetres, the next $20 \times 6 = 120$ gramme-millimetres, and so on, while the last on the right, $100 \times 3 = 300$ gramme-millimetres. It is thus seen that the height of a muscle-curve is no measure of the work done by the muscle unless the weight lifted is taken into account as well.

The following figures are taken from an actual experiment done with the frog's gastrocnemius (Weber):—

Weight lifted.	Height.	Work done.
5 grammes	27·6 millimetres	138 gramme-millimetres
15 ,,	25·1 ,,	376 ,,
25 ,,	11·45 ,,	286 ,,
30 ,,	7·3 ,,	219 ,,

The work increases with the weight up to a certain maximum, after which a diminution occurs, more or less rapidly, according as the muscle is fatigued.

Similar experiments have been made in human beings, weights being lifted by the calf muscles, or elbow muscles, leverage being allowed for. In the higher animals the energy so obtained compared with the frog is about twice as great for the same volume of muscular tissue.

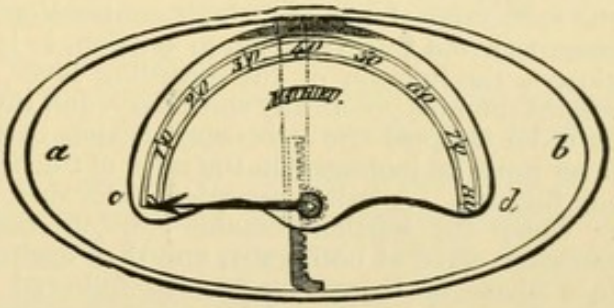


FIG. 159.—Dynamometer.

Fig. 159 represents a common form of dynamometer for clinical use, employed in testing the muscles of the arms and hands. It is squeezed by the hand, and an index represents kilogrammes of pressure.

The muscle, regarded as a machine, is sometimes compared to artificial machines like a steam-engine. A steam-engine is supplied with fuel, the latent energy of which is transformed into work and heat. The carbon of the coal unites with oxygen to form carbonic acid, and it is in this process of combustion or oxidation that heat and work are liberated. Similar, though more complicated, combustions occur in muscle. In a steam-engine a good deal of fuel is consumed, but there is great economy in the consumption of the living muscular material. Take the work done by a gramme (about 15 grains) of muscle in raising a weight of 4 grammes to the height of 4 metres (about 13 feet); in doing this work probably less than a thousandth part of the muscle has been consumed.

Next let us consider the relationship between the work and the

heat produced. An ordinary locomotive wastes about 96 per cent. of its available energy as heat, only 4 per cent. being represented as work. In the best triple-expansion steam-engine the work done rises to 12·5 per cent. of the total energy.

In muscle, various experimenters give different numbers. Thus, Fick calculated that 33 per cent. of the mechanical energy is available as work; later he found this estimate too high, and stated the number as 25; Chauveau gives 12 to 15; M'Kendrick 17. Thus muscle is a little more economical that the best steam-engines; but the muscle has this great advantage over any engine, for the heat it produces is not wasted, but is used for keeping up the body temperature, the fall of which below a certain point would lead to death not only of the muscles but of the body generally.

So far we have been speaking as though the only active phase of muscular contraction is the period of shortening. It is, however, extremely probable that lengthening is also an active process. This was originally mooted by Fick, who pointed out that the fall of a muscle lever during the relaxation period is of variable speed, and is obviously not due to the passive elongation of the muscle by gravity; the way in which this part of the curve is varied by such agencies as temperature, and drugs like veratrine, also indicates that relaxation is an independent process.

Isotonic and Isometric Curves.—If, in recording the contraction of a muscle, the load is applied vertically under the muscle, its pull upon the muscle varies during the successive stages of a single contraction, owing to the inertia of the load. In order to avoid this variation in tension, it is usual to apply the weight at a point close to the fulcrum of the recording lever, so that when the lever is raised, the weight remains practically stationary, and thus the error due to its inertia is avoided. In order to apply the necessary tension to the muscle, the weight hanging on the lever must be increased in the ratio of the distances of the muscle and weight from the fulcrum. A twitch recorded under such circumstances is called *isotonic*, *i.e.*, one in which the tension remains constant throughout. If, on the other hand, the muscle is fixed at both ends, and then excited, the resulting activity expresses itself in a phase of increasing tension followed by one of decreasing tension. If the alterations of tension are recorded, we obtain what is called an *isometric* curve. This curve is obtained by making the muscle pull against a spring which is so strong that the muscle can only move it to a very slight extent. This slight movement is then highly magnified. The curve thus obtained resembles in its main features an isotonic contraction, but its maximum is reached earlier, and it returns to the zero position sooner. The flat top of the isometric curve described by the earlier observers was due to the imperfection of the instruments employed. The tracings of muscle curves given in previous illustrations (see figs. 145 to 147) were obtained by the isotonic method, but it is probable that the isometric curve is a more faithful record of the variations in the intensity of the contraction process than that yielded by the isotonic method. The momentum or swing of a light lever such as is used for obtaining isotonic curves will no doubt account for the extra upward movement it executes. The whole matter has been keenly discussed, and the foregoing view is that expressed by Kaiser. Schenk, on the other hand, maintains what appears to be an improbable idea that there are really two kinds of change in muscle, which account for the difference obtained by the two methods.

CHAPTER XII

THE ELECTRICAL PHENOMENA OF MUSCLE

We have seen that the chemical processes occurring in muscular contraction lead to a transformation of energy into work and heat. These changes are accompanied by electrical disturbances also.

The history of animal electricity forms one of the most fascinating of chapters in physiological discovery. It dates from 1786, when Galvani made his first observations. Galvani was Professor of Anatomy and Physiology at the University of Bologna, and his wife was one day preparing some frog's legs for dinner, when she noticed that the apparently dead legs became convulsed when sparks were emitted from a frictional electrical machine which stood by. Galvani then wished to try the effect of lightning and atmospheric electricity on animal tissues. So he hung up some frogs' legs to the iron trellis-work round the roof of his house by means of copper hooks, and saw that they contracted whenever the wind blew them against the iron. He imagined this to be due to electricity secreted by the animal tissues, and this new principle was called *Galvanism.* But all his contemporaries did not agree with this idea, and most prominent among his opponents was Volta, Professor of Physics at another Italian university, Pavia. He showed that the muscular contractions were not due to animal electricity, but to artificial electricity produced by contact with different metals.

The controversy was a keen and lengthy one, and was terminated by the death of Galvani in 1798. Before he died, however, he gave to the world the experiment known as "contraction without metals," which we shall study presently, and which conclusively proved the existence of animal electricity. Volta, however, never believed in it. In his hand electricity took a physical turn, and the year after Galvani's death he invented the Voltaic pile, the progenitor of our modern batteries. Volta was right in maintaining that galvanism can be produced independently of animals, but wrong in denying that electrical currents could be obtained from animal tissues. Galvani was right in maintaining the existence of animal electricity, but

wrong in supposing that the contact of dissimilar metals with tissues proved his point.

This conclusion has been arrived at by certain new methods of investigation. In 1820 Oersted discovered electro-magnetism: that is, when a galvanic current passes along a wire near a magnetic needle, the needle is deflected one way or the other, according to the direction of the current. This led to the invention of the astatic needle and the galvanometer, an instrument by which very weak electrical currents can be detected. For a long time the subject of animal electricity, however, fell largely into disrepute, because of the quackery that grew up around it. It is not entirely free from this evil nowadays; but the scientific investigation of the subject has led to a considerable increase of knowledge, and among the names of modern physiologists associated with it must be particularly mentioned those of Du Bois Reymond and Hermann.

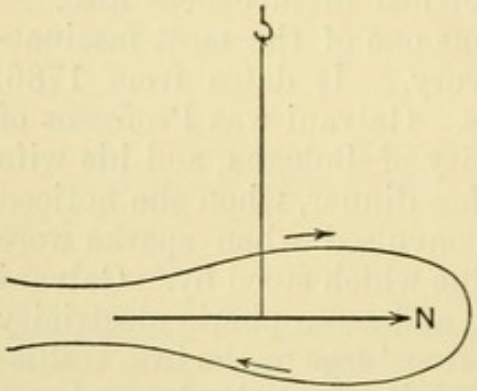


FIG. 160.

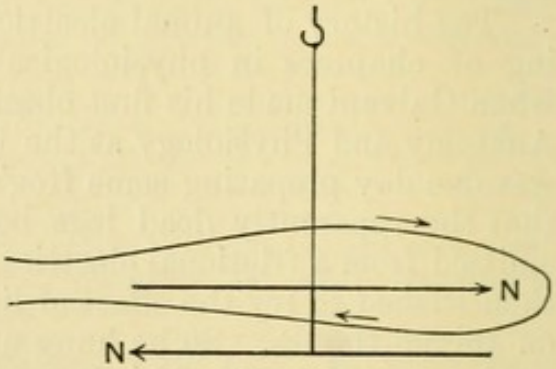


FIG. 161.

Before we can study these it is, however, necessary that we should understand the instruments employed.

The Galvanometer.—The essential part of a galvanometer is a magnetic needle suspended by a delicate thread; a wire coils round it; and if a current flows through the wire, the needle is deflected. Suppose a man to be swimming with the current with his face to the needle, the north-seeking pole is turned to the left hand. But such a simple instrument as that shown in fig. 160 would not detect the feeble currents obtained from animal tissues. It is necessary to increase the delicacy of the apparatus, and this is done in several ways. In the first place, the needle must be rendered *astatic*, that is, independent of the earth's magnetism. The simplest way of doing this is to fix two needles together (as shown in fig. 161), the north pole of one pointing the same way as the south pole of the other. The current is led over one needle and then over the other; the effect is to produce a deflection in each in the same direction, and so the sensitiveness of the instrument is doubled. If now the wire is coiled not only once, but twice or more in the same position, each coil has its effect

on the needles; the multiplication of the effect of a weak current in this way is accomplished in actual galvanometers by many hundreds of turns of fine wire.

Fig. 162 illustrates the best galvanometer: that of Sir William Thomson (now Lord Kelvin). It is called a reflecting galvanometer, because the observer does not actually watch the moving needle, but a spot of light reflected on to a scale from a little mirror, which is attached to and moves with the needle. A very small movement of the needle is rendered evident, because the movement of the spot of light being, as it were, at the end of a long lever—namely, the beam of light, magnifies it.

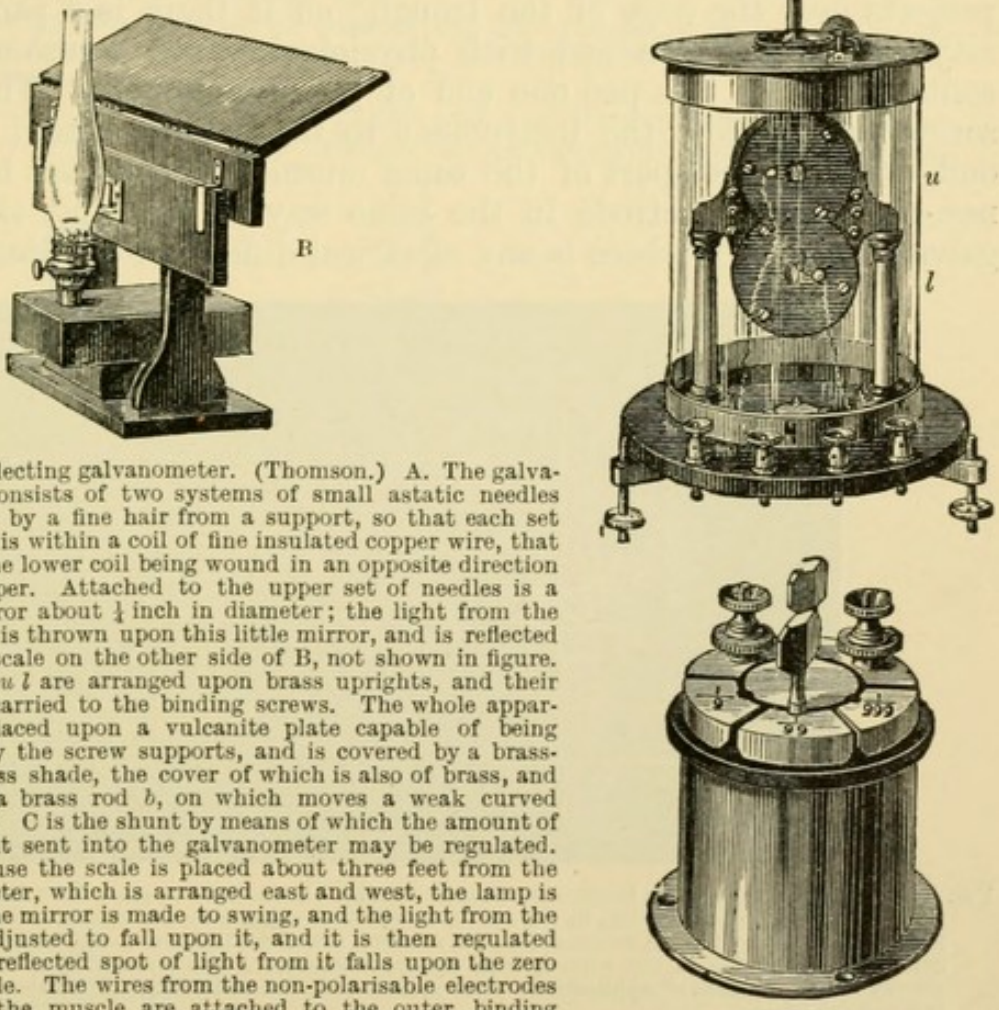


FIG. 162.—Reflecting galvanometer. (Thomson.) A. The galvanometer consists of two systems of small astatic needles suspended by a fine hair from a support, so that each set of needles is within a coil of fine insulated copper wire, that forming the lower coil being wound in an opposite direction to the upper. Attached to the upper set of needles is a small mirror about ¼ inch in diameter; the light from the lamp at B is thrown upon this little mirror, and is reflected upon the scale on the other side of B, not shown in figure. The coils *u l* are arranged upon brass uprights, and their ends are carried to the binding screws. The whole apparatus is placed upon a vulcanite plate capable of being levelled by the screw supports, and is covered by a brass-bound glass shade, the cover of which is also of brass, and supports a brass rod *b*, on which moves a weak curved magnet *m*. C is the shunt by means of which the amount of the current sent into the galvanometer may be regulated. When in use the scale is placed about three feet from the galvanometer, which is arranged east and west, the lamp is lighted, the mirror is made to swing, and the light from the lamp is adjusted to fall upon it, and it is then regulated until the reflected spot of light from it falls upon the zero of the scale. The wires from the non-polarisable electrodes touching the muscle are attached to the outer binding screws of the galvanometer, a key intervening for short circuiting, or if a portion only of the current is to pass into the galvanometer, the shunt should intervene as well with the appropriate plug in. When a current passes into the galvanometer the needles and, with them, the mirror, are turned to the right or left according to the direction of the current. The amount of the deflection of the needle is marked on the scale by the spot of light travelling along it.

Non-polarisable Electrodes.—If a galvanometer is connected

with a muscle by wires which touch the muscle, electrical currents are obtained in the circuit which are set up by the contact of metal with muscle. The currents so obtained form no evidence of electromotive force in the muscle itself. It is therefore necessary that the wires from the galvanometer should have interposed between them and the muscle some form of electrodes which are non-polarisable. Fig. 163 shows one of the earliest non-polarisable electrodes of Du Bois Reymond. It consists of a zinc trough on a vulcanite base. The inner surface of the trough is amalgamated and nearly filled with a saturated solution of zinc sulphate. In the trough is placed a cushion of blotting-paper, which projects over the edge of the trough; on it there is a pad of china clay or kaolin, moistened with physiological salt solution (0·8 per cent. NaCl); on this pad one end of the muscle rests. The binding screw (*k*) connects the instrument to the galvanometer; the other end, or some other part of the same muscle, is connected by another non-polarisable electrode in the same way to the other side of the galvanometer. If there is any electrical difference of potential (that

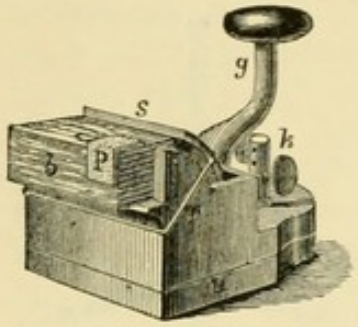


FIG. 163.—Non-polarisable electrode of Du Bois Reymond. (M'Kendrick.)

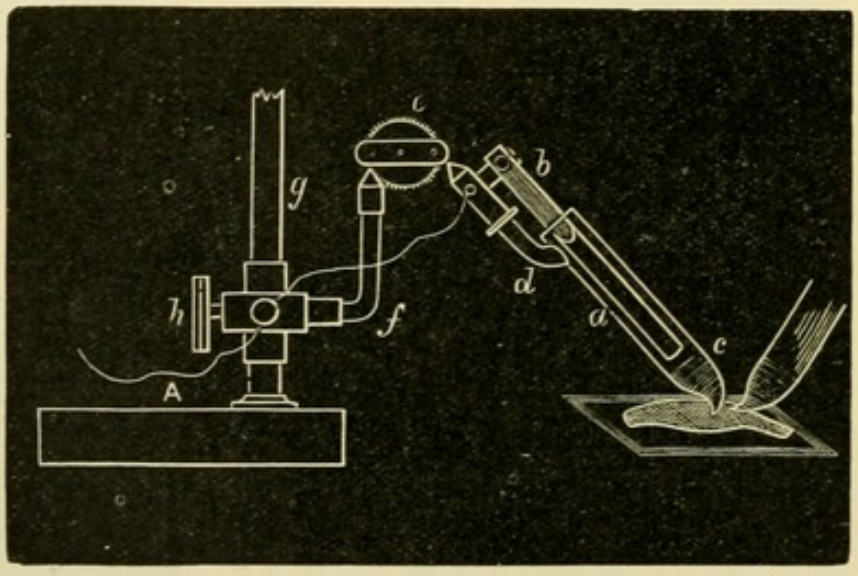


FIG. 164.—Diagram of Du Bois Reymond's non-polarisable electrodes. *a*, glass tube filled with a saturated solution of zinc sulphate, in the end, *c*, of which is china clay drawn out to a point; the clay is moistened with 0·8 NaCl solution; in the solution a well amalgamated zinc rod is immersed and connected, by means of the wire A, with the galvanometer. The remainder of the apparatus is simply for convenience of application. The muscle and the end of the second electrode are to the right of the figure.

is, difference in amount of positive or negative electricity) between the two parts of the muscle thus led off, there will be a swing of the galvanometer needle; the galvanometer detects the existence and direction of any current that occurs.

Fig. 164 shows a more convenient form of non-polarisable electrodes.

In order to measure the strength (electromotive force) of such currents, the mere amount of swing of the needle is only a very rough indication, and in accurate work the arrangement shown in fig. 165 must be used. The electromotive force is usually measured in terms of a standard Daniell cell. The two surfaces of the muscle (M) are led off to a galvanometer (B); the needle swings, and then a fraction of a Daniell cell is introduced in the reverse direction so as to neutralise the muscle current, and bring back the needle to rest. From the Daniell cell K, wires pass to the ends *a*, *b* of a long platinum wire of high resistance, called the compensator; *c* is a slider on this wire; *a* and *c* are connected to the galvanometer, the commutator C enabling the observer to ensure that the current from the Daniell passes in the opposite direction to that produced by the muscle. If the slider *c* is placed at the end *b* of the compensator, the whole strength of the Daniell will be sent through the galvanometer and will more than

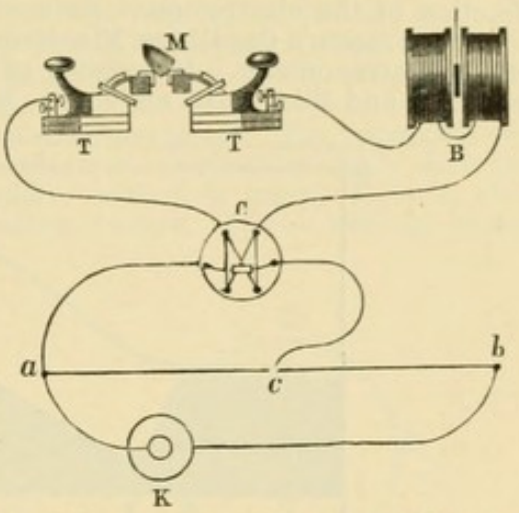


Fig. 165.—Arrangement for measuring the electromotive force of muscle. (M'Kendrick.)

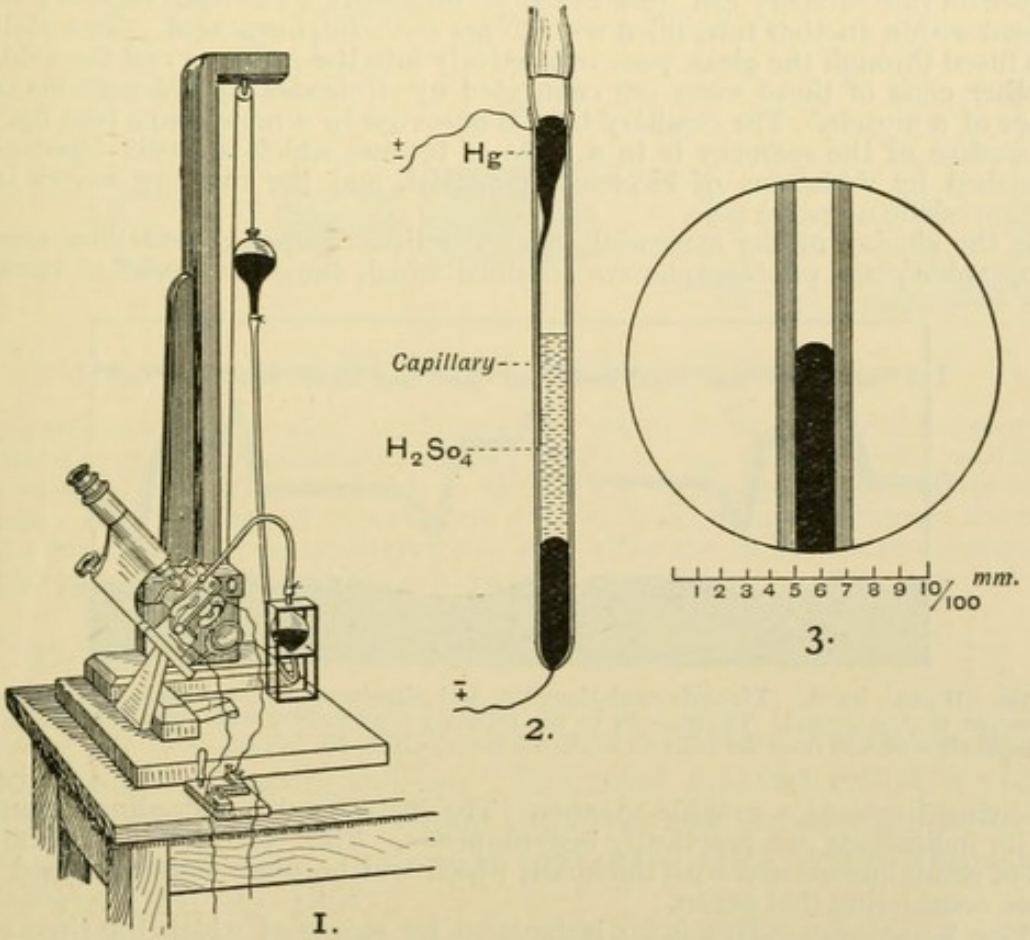


Fig. 166.—Lippmann's Capillary Electrometer. (After Waller.)
1. Pressure apparatus and microscope on stand of which the capillary tube is fixed.
2. Capillary tube, fixed in outer tube containing 10 per cent. sulphuric acid; the platinum wires are also shown.
3. Capillary and column of mercury as seen in the field of the microscope.

neutralise the muscle current; if c is half way between a and b, half the Daniell's strength will be sent in; but this is also too much; ac will be found to be only quite a small fraction of ab; and this fraction will correspond to a proportional fraction of the electromotive force of the Daniell cell.

Lippmann's Capillary Electrometer.—This instrument is often used instead of the galvanometer. It consists of a glass tube drawn out at one end to a fine capillary and filled with mercury. It is connected to an apparatus by which the

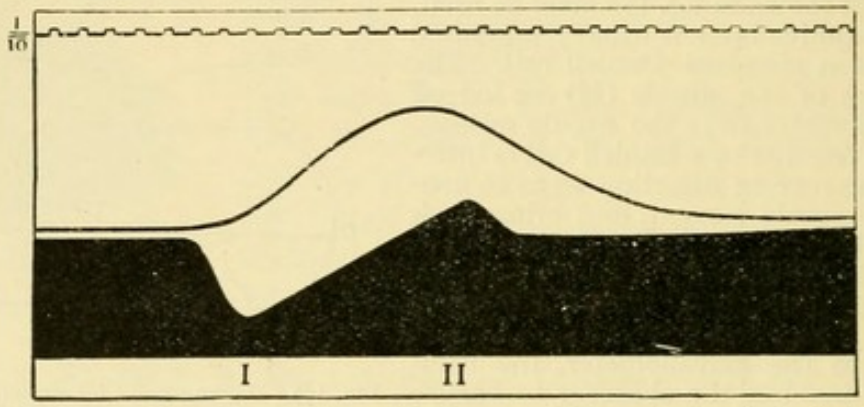


FIG. 167.—Frog's heart. Diphasic variation. Simultaneous photograph of a single beat (upper black line), and the accompanying electrical change indicated by the level of the black area, which shows the varying level of mercury in a capillary electrometer. (Waller.)

pressure on this mercury can be lowered or increased. The open capillary tube is enclosed within another tube filled with 10 per cent. sulphuric acid. Two platinum wires fused through the glass, pass respectively into the mercury and the acid, and the other ends of these wires are connected by electrodes to two portions of the surface of a muscle. The capillary tube is observed by a microscope (see fig. 166). The surface of the mercury is in a state of tension which is easily increased or diminished by variations of electrical potential, and the mercury moves in the direction of the negative pole.

If the shadow of the mercurial column is thrown upon a travelling sensitive photographic plate, photographs are obtained which show the electrical variations

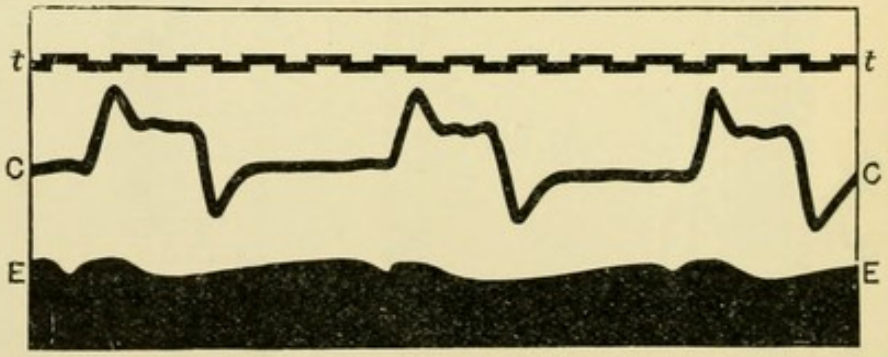


FIG. 168.—Human heart. Diphasic variation, EE, and simultaneous cardiogram, CC. Time tt is marked in $\frac{1}{5}$th second. The lead-offs to the capillary electrometer were from the mouth to the sulphuric acid, and from the left foot to the mercury. (Waller.)

in a living tissue in a graphic manner. The instrument is exceedingly sensitive, and its indications are practically instantaneous. Figs. 167 and 168 indicate the kind of result one obtains with the heart, which will be more fully discussed when we are considering that organ.

The Rheotome.—This is an instrument by means of which the time of the occurrence of electrical disturbances in relation to the contraction of a muscle can be determined. This is in principle effected by a revolving bar carrying two contacts, one in the primary or exciting circuit (1, 1, 1, 1), one in the galvanometer circuit

(2, 2, 2, 2). The bar revolves, and by making or breaking the primary circuit sends an induction shock into the nerve at the same instant.

The muscle is connected by non-polarisable electrodes to the galvanometer; this circuit includes the brass blocks 2, 2, on the disc over which the bar revolves, and a compensator not shown in the figure to neutralise any current set up by the muscle in a state of rest. If an electrical change occurs in the muscle, it is only noticed by the galvanometer if at the same time the bar on its revolution connects the two brass blocks on the disc, and so completes the circuit. The apparatus can be set so that the bar makes the primary contact (1, 1) simultaneously with the galvanometer contacts, or that the galvanometer contact is made, 1, 2, 3, etc., hundredths of a second later than the primary contact. If the two are closed

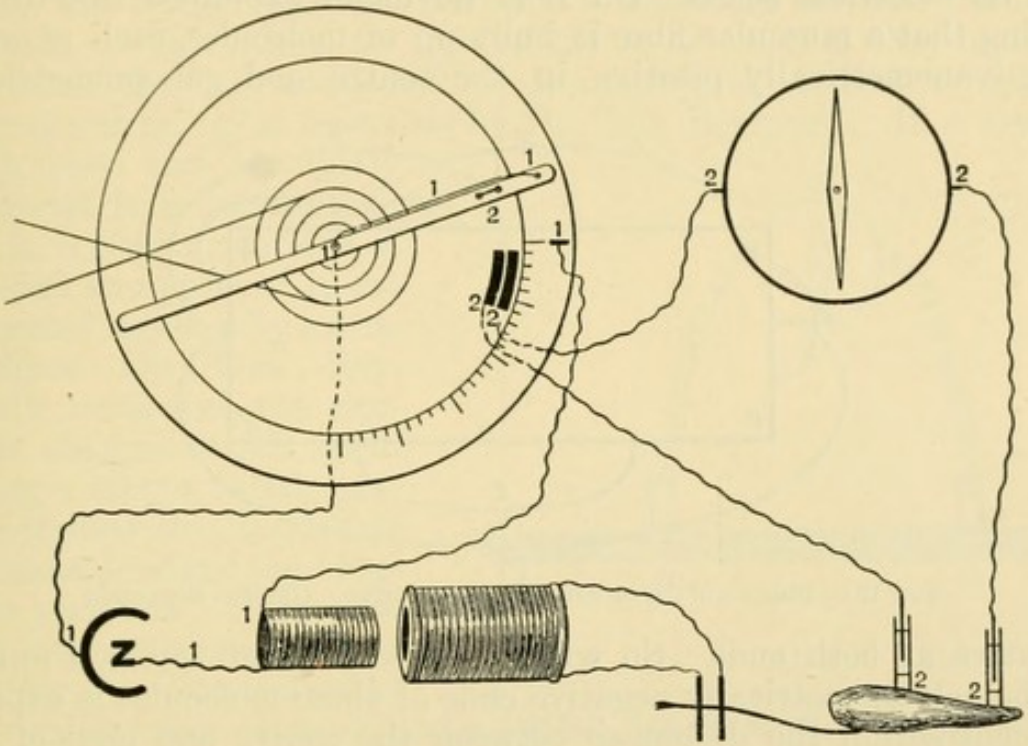


FIG. 169.—Scheme of a Rheotome. (Waller.)

simultaneously the electrical condition of the muscle is tapped off at the moment of excitation; if the galvanometer contact is closed $\frac{1}{100}$, $\frac{2}{100}$, $\frac{3}{100}$, etc. second after excitation, the electrical condition of the muscle at that particular instant is ascertained. By a number of experiments with different intervals between the making of the two contacts, one ascertains how long after the excitation the change in the electrical condition of the muscle takes place.

We can now pass on to a consideration of results.

In muscles that are removed from the body, it is found that on leading off two parts of their surface to a galvanometer, the galvanometer needle generally swings. The most marked result is obtained with a piece of muscle in which the fibres run parallel to one another, and the longitudinal surface is connected with one of the cut ends by a wire (2 in fig. 170).

On the course of the wire a galvanometer indicates that a current flows from the centre to the cut end outside the muscle, and from the cut end to the centre inside the muscle. If, now, the muscle is

thrown into tetanic contraction, the needle returns more or less completely to the position of rest.

Du Bois Reymond, who first described these facts, called the first current the *current of rest*, and the second current, the *current of action;* the change in direction is indicated by the expression *negative variation;* this means that the current of action is in the opposite direction to the current of rest, and therefore lessens or neutralises it. The word negative is therefore used in its arithmetical, not its electrical sense. Du Bois Reymond explained this by supposing that a muscular fibre is built up of molecules, each of which is galvanometrically positive in the centre and galvanometrically

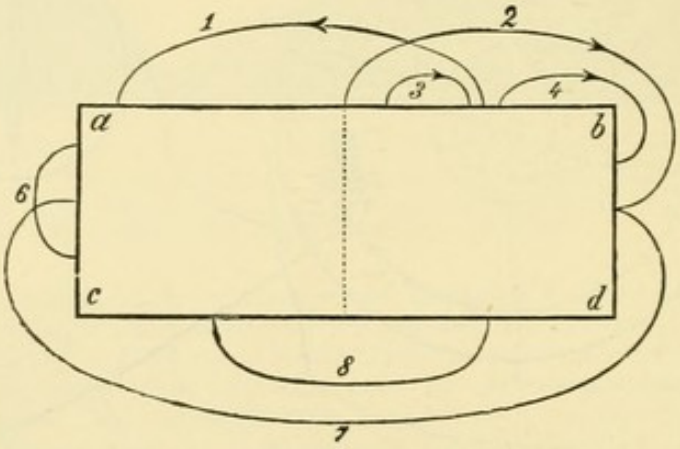


FIG. 170.—Diagram of the currents in a muscle prism. (Du Bois Reymond.)

negative at both ends. So when a muscle is cut across, a number of the galvanometrically negative ends of these molecules is exposed. On contraction the difference between the centre and ends of each molecule is lessened, and the resultant effect on the whole muscle (made up of such molecules) is similar.

In the foregoing sentence I have employed the rather cumbrous adjectives, *galvanometrically positive* and *galvanometrically negative*, instead of the terms positive and negative which are usually employed by physiologists.

If we take a Daniell cell and connect it to a galvanometer, the zinc, as we have seen, is the electro-positive element, and the copper the electro-negative element, but the ends of the wires which connect these metals to the galvanometer have the reverse names; the kathode or negative pole is connected to the zinc or positive metal; the anode or positive pole is connected to the copper or negative metal. The current enters the galvanometer by the anode, and leaves it on its way back to the zinc by the kathode. Therefore, although the copper is electro-negative, it may be spoken of as galvanometrically positive, and the zinc though electro-positive, as galvanometrically negative.

If we apply this to a muscle, we have seen that the current flows (in the wire that connects the uninjured longitudinal surface to the cut end) from the longitudinal surface to the cut end; the longitudinal surface thus corresponds to the copper of the Daniell cell, and is therefore electro-negative, though galvanometrically positive; similarly the cut end corresponds to the zinc, and is electro-positive though galvanometrically negative.

The omission of the qualifying prefix to positive and negative has led to a good deal of confusion in physiological writings. A physicist uses the terms positive and

negative as meaning electro-positive and electro-negative respectively, and as Dr Waller has pointed out, it is time that physiologists adopted the same nomenclature. In what now follows, I propose to adopt Dr Waller's suggestion.

There is no doubt about the facts as described by Du Bois Reymond. We now adopt, however, an entirely different view of their meaning: in causing this revolution of ideas the principal part has been played by Hermann. Hermann showed that the so-called current of rest does not exist; it is really a current produced by injury, and is now generally called a *demarcation current:* the more the ends of the muscle are injured the more positive they become; and when they are connected to the uninjured centre, a current naturally is set up as described by Du Bois Reymond. If a muscle is at rest and absolutely uninjured it is iso-electric; that is, it gives no current at all when two parts of it are connected together by a wire.

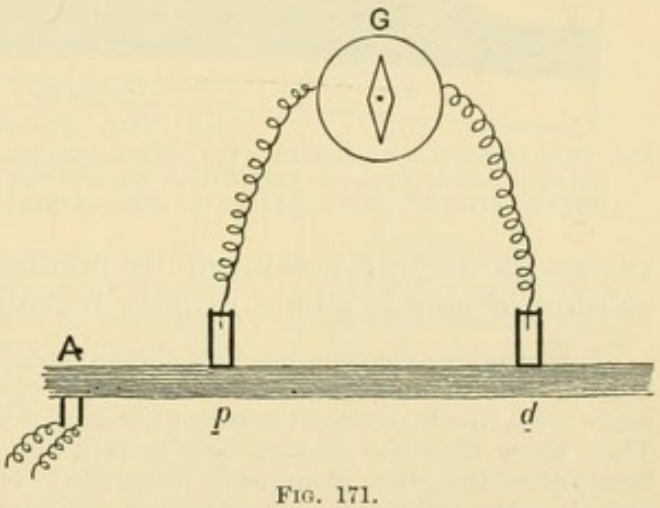


FIG. 171.

Since Du Bois Reymond's researches, the electrical changes which occur during a single twitch have been studied also, and before we can understand the "negative variation" of tetanus, it is obviously necessary to consider the electrical variation which takes place during a twitch, for tetanus is made up of a fused series of twitches.

The electrical change during a twitch is called a *diphasic variation.* The contracting part of a muscle becomes first more positive than it was before; it then rapidly returns to its previously negative condition. The increase of positivity indicates a disturbance of the stability of the tissue; the disappearance of this increased positivity is the result of a return of the muscular tissue to a state of rest. If the muscle is stimulated at one end, a wave of contraction travels along it to the other end. This muscle-wave (see p. 118) may be most readily studied in a curarised muscle, that is, in a muscle which is physiologically nerveless. The electrical variation travels at the same rate as the visible contraction, but precedes it.

Suppose two points (p) and (d) of the muscle are connected by non-polarisable electrodes to a galvanometer, and that the muscle-wave is started by a single stimulus applied at A; as soon as the wave reaches (p) this point becomes positive to (d), and therefore a current flows from (d) to (p) through the galvanometer (G). A moment later the two points are equi-potential and no current flows;

a minute fraction of a second* later this balance is upset, and now when the wave reaches the point (*d*), that point is positive to (*p*), and the galvanometer needle moves in the opposite direction.

The electrical variations may also be investigated by the capillary electrometer; the mercury moves first in one direction, and then in the other. The deep black curve in the next figure (fig. 172)

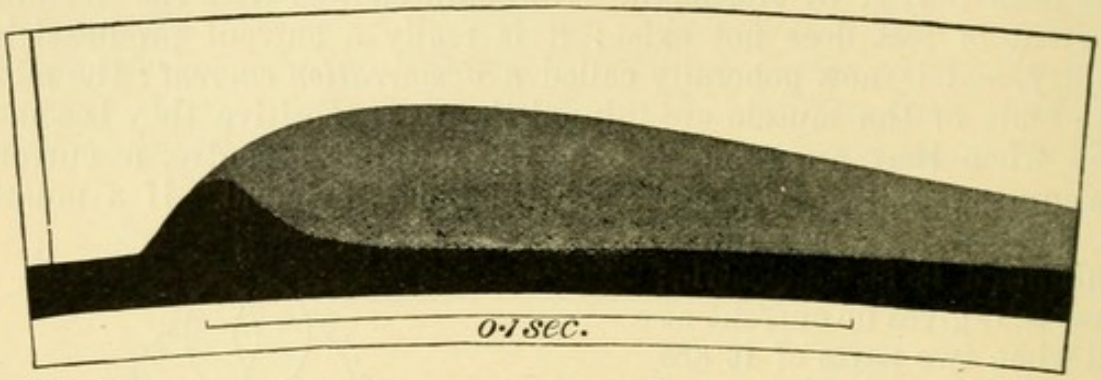


FIG. 172.—Diphasic curve (black) of the normal sartorius. The grey curve is the monophasic curve of the same muscle when one electrometer contact was placed on the injured end. The two photographic curves are placed one over the other so that the beginnings coincide. (Burdon Sanderson.)

shows the record obtaining by photographing the movement of the column of mercury on a rapidly travelling photographic plate.

The capillary electrometer has the advantage of giving us the means of measuring the time of onset and duration of the electrical disturbance, and experiments made with this instrument confirm the earlier experiments made with the rheotome. They show that the change only lasts a few thousandths of a second, and is over long before the other changes in form, etc., are completed. Sir J. Burdon Sanderson gives the following numbers from experiments with the frog's gastrocnemius. When the muscle was excited through its nerve the electrical response began $\frac{4}{1000}$ and the change of form $\frac{8}{1000}$ second after the stimulation; the second phase of the electrical response began $\frac{11}{1000}$ second after excitation. When the muscle was directly excited, the latent period was much shorter, the change in form beginning $\frac{4}{1000}$ and the electrical change in less than $\frac{1}{1000}$ second after excitation.

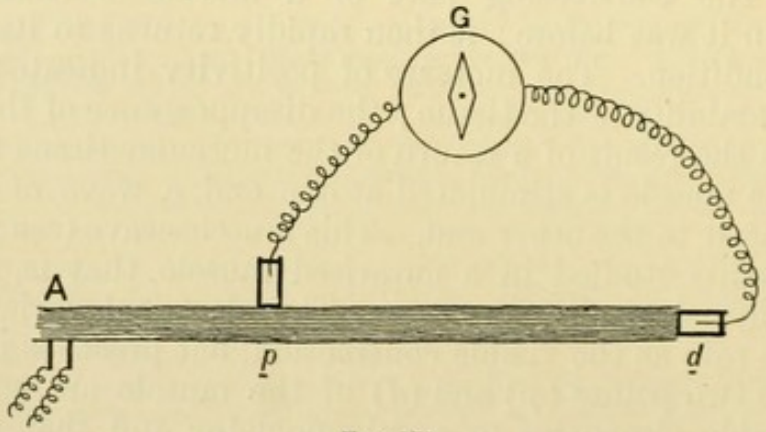


FIG. 173.

If, however, instead of examining the electrical change in the muscle in the manner depicted in fig. 171, one electrode is placed on

* The time will vary with the distance between (*p*) and (*d*).

the uninjured surface and the other on the cut end (see fig. 173), the electrical response is a different one.

Under these circumstances, the electrical change is a *monophasic variation*, for when the muscle-wave reaches (*d*), this part of the muscle, owing to its injured state, does not respond to the excitatory condition, and the electrical response is also extinguished.

The grey curve in fig. 172 is the graphic record of the change as revealed by the capillary electrometer. It will be seen that the ascending limb of the curve is identical in the two cases, but that the second phase is absent. From the point at which the diphasic curve approaches its culmination the injury curve diverges from it, continuing to ascend; the line soon after becomes horizontal, and then begins slowly to decline. This long tail denotes only the gradual disappearance of polarisation of the mercury meniscus.

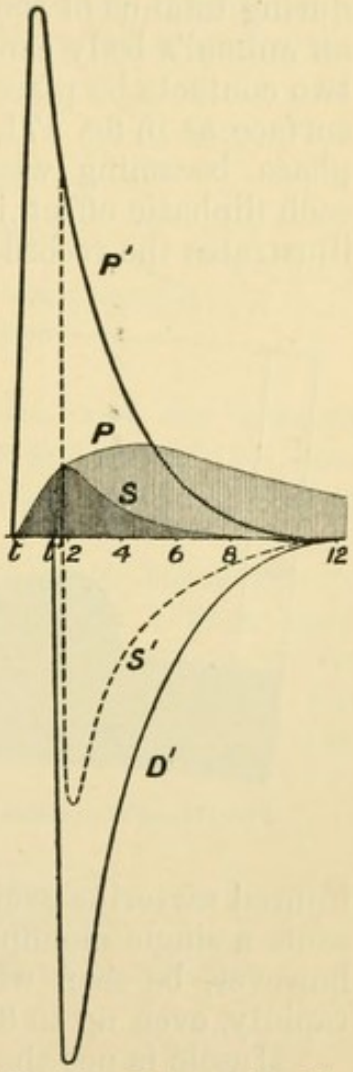


FIG. 174.—Interpretation diagram. (Burdon Sanderson.)

The meaning of such photographic records becomes clear by testing the electrometer with known differences of potential, and from such data it is possible to construct what may be called an interpretation diagram (fig. 174). The horizontal line is that of equipotentiality of the two surfaces of contact (*p*) and (*d*). The curve P′ expresses the relative positivity of the surface (*p*); the curve D′, the corresponding relative positivity of the surface (*d*). S′ is a curve of which the ordinates are the algebraic sums of the corresponding ordinates of P′ and D′. S is the photographic curve which expresses S′; P is the photographic curve which expresses P′ (monophasic variation). The numbers under the horizontal line indicate hundredths of a second; the distance *t t′* expresses the time taken by the wave in its progress from (*p*) to (*d*).

From these considerations we can now pass to study what occurs when the muscle enters into tetanus. The simplest case is that which was first observed by Du Bois Reymond. He placed his non-polarisable electrodes in the positions indicated in fig. 173, one (*p*) on the comparatively uninjured surface, the other (*d*) on the devitalised cut end. He sent in the tetanising series of shocks at A. The electrical response is under these circumstances a summation of the individual electrical responses evoked by instantaneous stimuli; and the monophasic character of the single response explains easily what occurs during tetanus; the centre of the muscle becomes more positive than it was before, and so the electrical difference of potential between the centre and the injured end is lessened. But with regard

to uninjured muscle the problem is not so easy. It is at first sight difficult to see why the summed effects of a series of diphasic variations should take the direction of the first phase, as was found to be the case by Du Bois Reymond in experiments with the frog's gastrocnemius. One would have anticipated that "negative" variation in the arithmetical sense would be absent altogether, and this is the case in absolutely normal muscles; Hermann has shown that it is so during tetanus of the human forearm. But a muscle removed from an animal's body cannot be considered absolutely normal, and if the two contacts be placed on the comparatively uninjured longitudinal surface, as in fig. 171, a negative variation is observed, each excitatory phase becoming weaker as it progresses, and the second phase of each diphasic effect is weaker than the first. The following figure illustrates the record obtained by the capillary electrometer from an

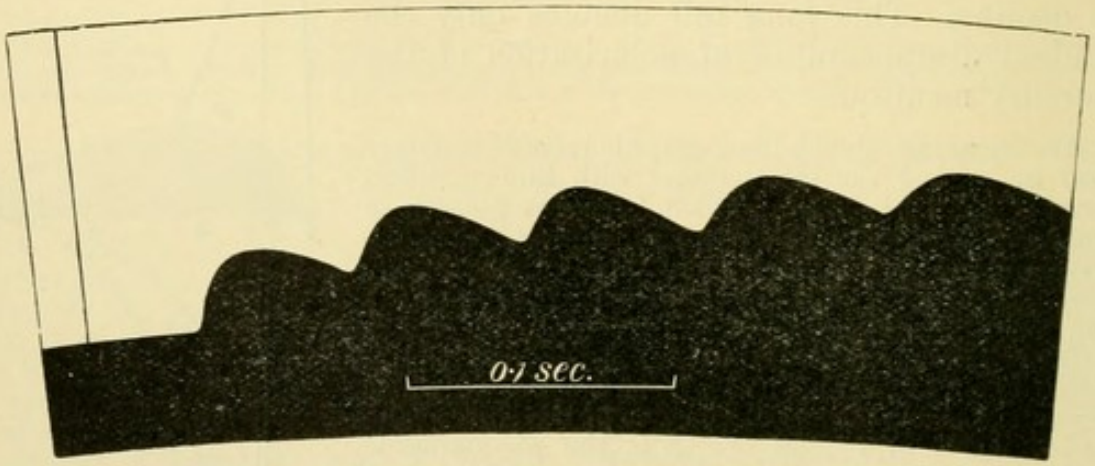


FIG. 175.—Electrometer record of injured sartorius during tetanus. (Burdon Sanderson.)

injured sartorius excited 14 times a second; each oscillation represents a single monophasic variation. The individual oscillations can, however, be seen when the excitations follow one another more rapidly, even up to 80 or 100 per second.

Muscle is not the only tissue which exhibits electrical phenomena. A nerve which is uninjured is iso-electric; injury causes a demarcation current; activity is accompanied with a similar diphasic wave travelling along the nerve simultaneously with the nervous impulse. The activity of secreting glands, vegetable tissues, retina, etc., is accompanied with somewhat similar electrical changes, which we shall study in detail later.

But the most prominent exhibition of animal electricity is seen in the electric organs of electric fishes. In some of these fishes the electric organ is modified muscle, in which a series, as it were, of hypertrophied end-plates correspond to the plates in a voltaic pile. In other fishes the electric organ is composed of modified skin glands.

But in each case the electric discharge is the principal phenomenon that accompanies activity.

The Rheoscopic Frog.

The electrical changes in muscle can be detected not only by the galvanometer and electrometer, but also by what is known as the *physiological rheoscope;* this consists of an ordinary muscle-nerve preparation from a fresh and vigorous frog. The nerve is stimulated

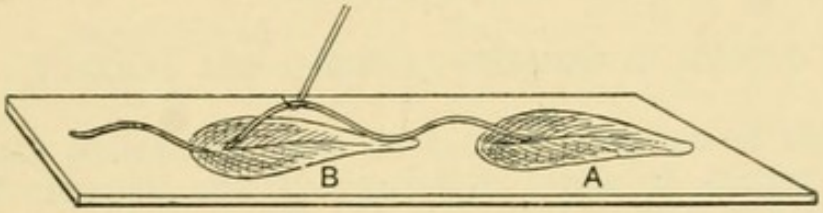


FIG. 176.—Galvani's experiment without metals.

by the electrical changes occurring in muscles, and the nervous impulse so generated causes a contraction of the muscles of the rheoscopic preparation. The following are the principal experiments that can be shown in this way:—

1. *Contraction without metals.* If the nerve of a nerve-muscle preparation A is dropped upon another muscle B (fig. 176) or upon its own muscle, it will be stimulated by the injury current of the muscle on which it is dropped, and this leads to a contraction of the muscle (A) which it supplies. The experiment succeeds best if the

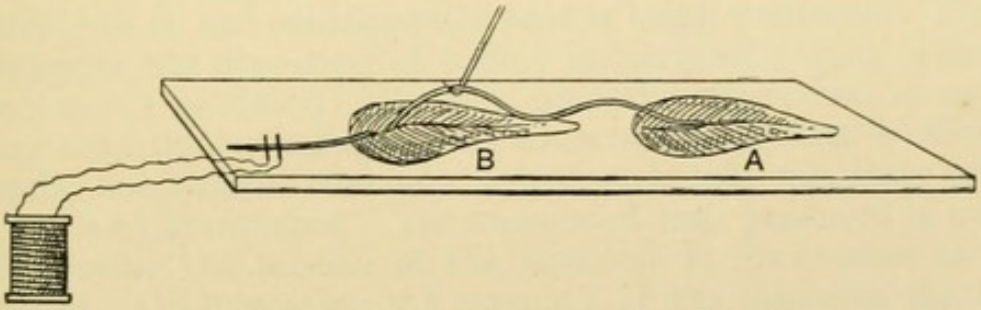


FIG. 177.—Secondary contraction. (After Waller.)

nerve is dropped across a longitudinal surface and a freshly made transverse section.

2. *Secondary contraction.* This is caused by the current of action. If, while the nerve of A is resting on the muscle B (fig. 177), the latter is made to contract by the stimulation of its nerve, the nerve of A is stimulated by the electrical variation which accompanies the contraction of the muscle B, and so a contraction of muscle A is produced. This is called *secondary contraction.* It may be either a secondary twitch or secondary tetanus,

according as to whether the muscle B is made to contract singly or tetanically.

3. *Secondary contraction from the heart.* If an excised but still beating frog's heart is used instead of muscle B, and the nerve of A laid across it, each heart's beat, accompanied as it is by an electrical variation, will stimulate the nerve and cause a twitch in the rheoscopic muscle A.

CHAPTER XIII

THERMAL AND CHEMICAL CHANGES IN MUSCLE

In muscular contraction there is a transformation of the potential energy of chemical affinity into other forms of energy, especially molar motion and heat. Heat is a form of motion in which there is movement of molecules; in molar motion there is movement of masses. The fact that when a blacksmith hammers a piece of iron it becomes hot is a familiar illustration of the transformation of one mode of movement into the other. Heat is measured in heat-units or calories. One calorie is the energy required to raise the temperature of 1 gramme of water from 0° to 1° C.; and this in terms of work is equal to 425·5 gramme-metres, that is, the energy required to raise the weight of 425·5 grammes to the height of 1 metre.

A muscle when uncontracted is nevertheless not at absolute rest. We have already seen that it possesses tonus or tone; it also possesses what we may call chemical tone; that is, chemical changes are occurring in it, and consequently heat is being produced. But when it contracts, the liberation of energy is increased; work is done, and more heat is produced; the heat produced represents more of the energy than the work done. The more resistance that is offered to a muscular contraction, the more is the work done relatively increased and the heat diminished. The amount of heat produced is increased by increasing the tension of the muscle. It diminishes as fatigue comes on. On increasing the strength of the stimulus the amount of heat increases faster, proportionately, than the work performed.

If work is done by a few large contractions, more heat is produced than if the same work is done by a larger number of smaller contractions; that is, more chemical decomposition occurs, and fatigue ensues more rapidly in the first case. This fact is within the personal experience of everyone. If one ascends a tower, the work done is the raising of the weight of one's body to the top of the tower. If the staircase in the tower has a gentle slope, each step being low, far less fatigue is experienced than if one ascended to the same height by a smaller number of steeper steps.

On a cold day one keeps oneself warm by muscular exercise; this common fact is confirmed by more accurate experiments on isolated muscles, the heat produced being sufficient to raise temporarily the temperature of the muscle. This can be shown in large animals by inserting a thermometer between the thigh muscles and stimulating the spinal cord. The rise of temperature may amount to several degrees.

In the case of frog's muscles, Helmholtz found that, after tetanising them for two or three minutes, the temperature rises 0·14° to 0·18° C.; and for each single twitch Heidenhain gives a rise of temperature of from 0·001° to 0·005° C.

For the detection of such small rises in temperature, a *thermopile*, and not a thermometer, is employed.

A thermopile consists of a junction of two different metals; the metals are connected by wires to a galvanometer. If the junction is heated an electrical current passes round the circuit, and is detected by the galvanometer. The metals usually employed are

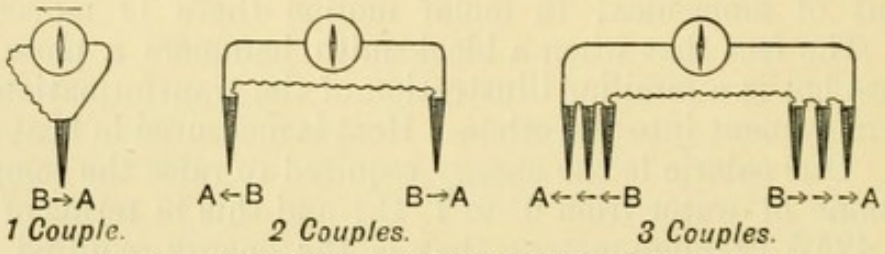


FIG. 178.—Scheme of thermo-electric couples. (After Waller.)

iron and German silver, or antimony and bismuth. If the number of couples in the circuit is increased, each is affected in the same way, and thus the electrical current is increased through the galvanometer. The arrangement is shown in the fig. 178, which also indicates the direction of the currents produced, the metals employed being antimony and bismuth. By using 16 couples of this kind Helmholtz was able to detect a change of $\frac{1}{4000}$ of a degree Centigrade.

Within certain limits, the strength of the current is directly proportional to the rise of temperature at the junction.

If two couples are in circuit, as shown in the second diagram, and they are heated equally, no current will pass through the galvanometer, the current through one couple being opposed by the current through the other. But if the two couples are heated unequally, the direction of swing of the galvanometer needle indicates which is the warmer. To apply this to the frog's gastrocnemius, plunge several needle-shaped couples (diagram 3) into a frog's gastrocnemius of one side and the same number of couples into the gastrocnemius of the other side, and then excite first one then the other sciatic nerve; a deflection of the galvanometer will be observed first in one, then in the other direction, indicating the production of heat first on one side, then on the other.

Chemical Changes in Muscles.

The chemical changes which are normally occurring in a resting muscle are much increased when it contracts. Waste products of oxidation are discharged, and the most abundant of these is carbonic acid. Sarco-lactic acid is also produced, and the alkaline reaction of a normal muscle is replaced by an acid one. The muscles of animals hunted to death are acid; the acid reaction to litmus paper of a frog's gastrocnemius can be readily shown after it has been tetanised for 10 to 15 minutes.

When a muscle contracts, the quantity of oxygen consumed is increased, and at the same time there is a corresponding increase in the discharge of carbonic acid. This will be illustrated by numerical data when later we are studying tissue respiration, and the way in which the blood gases may be obtained and analysed (Chapter XXIV.)

For a certain time after its removal from the body, an excised muscle can be made to contract and give off oxidation products like carbonic acid in an atmosphere containing no oxygen at all. The oxygen used is thus stored up in the muscle previously. The oxygen is not, however, present in the free state, for no oxygen can be detected in the gases obtained from muscles by means of an air-pump. Excised muscles, however, must be regarded as partially asphyxiated, for their individual fibres are largely cut off from that ready supply of oxygen which normally reaches them by the blood. During life (and the living condition can be imitated by placing an excised muscle in an atmosphere of pure oxygen) the muscular substance breaks down into a number of somewhat simpler bodies; one of these is carbonic acid. The others, however, or some of them, are at once built up again with the inclusion of oxygen and some carbon-containing substance, perhaps sugar, into living material. The muscle, therefore, does not contain any of the bye-products of its own metabolism. In excised muscle, when the oxygen supply is deficient the bye-products accumulate, as a result of which very striking alterations take place. (1) The reaction of the muscle changes and the phenomena of fatigue and functional death set in. (2) The proteins become coagulated, and this is the physical basis of *rigor mortis*.

There are other chemical changes in the muscle when it contracts, for instance, a change of glycogen into sugar. The question whether nitrogenous waste is increased during muscular activity is a much debated one, and we shall return to it when we are studying the urine. What is certain is that the increased consumption of carbon (possibly in large measure derived from the carbohydrate stored in the muscle) is a much more marked and immediate feature than an increase in the consumption of nitrogen.

Fatigue.

If the nerve of a nerve-muscle preparation is continually stimulated, the muscular contractions become more prolonged (see p. 117), smaller in extent, and finally cease altogether.

The muscle is said to be fatigued: this is due to the consumption of the substances available for the supply of energy in the muscle, but more particularly to the accumulation of waste products of contraction; of these, sarco-lactic acid is probably an important one. Fatigue may be artificially induced in a muscle by feeding it on a weak solution of lactic acid, and then removed by washing out the muscle with salt solution containing a minute trace of an alkali. If the muscle is left to itself in the body, the blood-stream washes away the accumulation of acid products, and fatigue passes off.

The question next presents itself, where is the seat of fatigue? Is it in the nerve, the muscle, or the end-plates? If, after fatigue has ensued and excitation of the nerve of the preparation produces no more contractions, the muscle is itself stimulated, it contracts; this shows it is still irritable, and, therefore, not to any great extent the seat of fatigue.

If an animal is poisoned with curare, and it is kept alive by artificial respiration, excitation of a motor nerve produces no contraction of the muscles it supplies. If one goes on stimulating the nerve for many hours, until the effect of the curare has disappeared, the block at the end-plates* is removed and the muscles contract: the seat of exhaustion is therefore not in the nerves.

By a process of exclusion it has thus been localised in the nerve-endings.

When the muscle is fatigued in the intact body, there is, however, another factor to be considered beyond the mere local poisoning of the end-plates. This is the effect of the products of contraction passing into the circulation and poisoning the central nervous system. It is a matter of common experience that one's mental state influences markedly the onset of fatigue and the amount of muscular work one can do. This aspect of the question has been specially studied by Waller and by Mosso. Mosso devised an instrument called the *ergograph*, which is a modification of Waller's *dynamograph* invented many years previously. The arm, hand, and all the fingers but one are fixed in a suitable holder; the free finger repeatedly lifts a weight over a pulley, and the height to which it is raised is registered by a marker on a blackened surface.

By the use of this and similar instruments it has been shown that the state of the brain and central nervous system generally is a

* Another convenient block which is sometimes used is to throw a constant current into the nerve between the point of excitation and the muscles. This prevents the nerve impulses from reaching the muscles.

most important factor in fatigue, and that the fatigue products produced in the muscles during work cause most of their injurious effects by acting on the central nervous system and diminishing its power of sending out impulses.

One of the most striking of Mosso's experiments illustrates in a very forcible manner the fact that the central nervous system is more easily fatigued than the nerve-endings in muscle. A person goes on lifting the weight until, under the influence of the will, he is unable to raise it any more. If then without waiting for fatigue to pass off, the nerves going to the finger muscles are stimulated artificially by induction shocks, they once more enter into vigorous contraction.

Mosso has also shown that the introduction of the blood of a fatigued animal into the circulation of a normal one will give rise in the latter to all the symptoms of fatigue. The blood of the fatigued animal contains the products of activity of its muscles, but still remains alkaline; the poisonous substance cannot therefore be free lactic acid; and lactates do not produce the effect. Lactic acid is doubtless one only of the products of muscular activity; we have at present no accurate knowledge of the chemical nature of the others.

The statement that nerves are not fatiguable, does not mean that the nerve fibres undergo no metabolic changes when transmitting a nerve impulse, but that the change is so slight, and the possibilities of repair so great, that fatigue in the usual acceptation of the term cannot be demonstrated. Waller made the interesting but tentative suggestion that the medullary sheath is a great factor in repair, or, in his own words, "the active grey axis both lays down and uses up its own fatty sheath, and it is inexhaustible not because there is little or no expenditure, but because there is an ample re-supply."

A year or two after these words were written, Miss Sowton, at Dr Waller's suggestion, undertook a piece of work in order to test the truth of this hypothesis. If the absence of fatigue is due to the presence of the fatty sheath, fatigue ought to be demonstrable in nerve-fibres in which the fatty sheath is absent. She selected the olfactory nerve of the pike as the non-medullated nerve with which to try the experiment, and her results confirmed Dr Waller's expectation; the galvanometric replies of the nerve became somewhat feebler after repeated stimulation.

It appeared to me advisable to test the question in another way. The splenic nerves seemed to be the most convenient large bundles of non-medullated fibres for the purpose. Dr T. G. Brodie was associated with me in carrying out the investigation. A dog is anæsthetised, the abdomen opened, the spleen exposed, and the splenic nerves which lie by the side of the main splenic artery are laid bare. It is quite easy to dissect out a length of nerve sufficient for the experiment (1½ to 2 inches). The nerve is then cut as far from the spleen as possible, and the spleen is enclosed in an air oncometer connected to the bellows volume recorder invented by Dr Brodie. On stimulating the nerve with a weak faradic current the organ contracts, and the recording lever falls. The diminution of the size of the spleen is quite visible to the naked eye, however, without the use of any apparatus. The next thing to do is to put a block on the course of the nerve, which will prevent the nerve impulses from reaching the spleen. Here we met with some difficulty. Curare and atropine are both ineffective: the constant current has a great disadvantage; non-medullated nerves are so much affected that very feeble constant currents will completely block the transmission of impulses, and not only that, but the nerve remains blocked after the current is removed. After the current has been allowed to flow for two minutes the nerve remains impassable to nerve

impulses for an hour or more, and then slowly recovers. If, therefore, faradic excitation of the nerve is kept up all this time and fails to excite the contraction of the spleen after the removal of the constant current, it is impossible to say whether

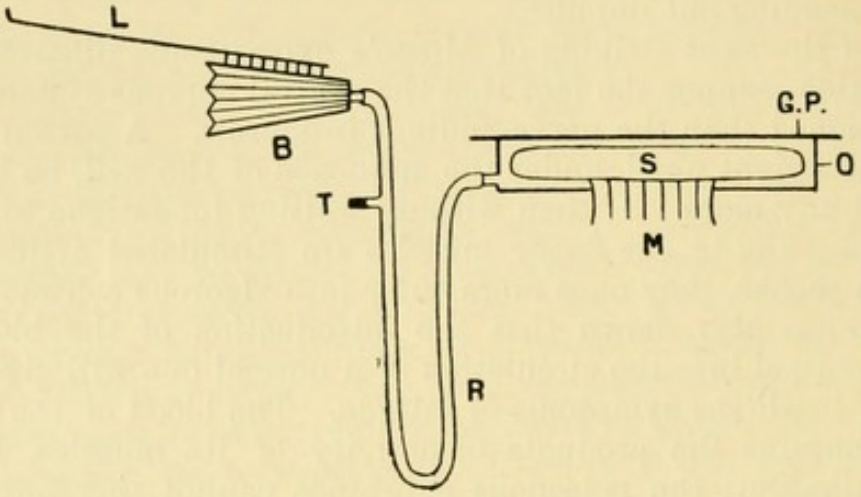


FIG. 179.—Apparatus for obtaining splenic curves. S, spleen in oncometer O, which is made of gutta-percha, and covered with a glass plate (G.P.) luted on with vaseline. M is the splenic mesentery containing vessels and nerves; this passes through a slit in the base of the oncometer which is made air-tight with vaseline. The oncometer is connected to the flexible bellows (B) by the india-rubber tube (R), the side tube (T) being closed during an experiment by a piece of glass rod. The recording lever (L) writes on a revolving drum.

this is due to fatigue of the nerve-fibres on the proximal side of the block, or whether it may not be due to the fact that the block created by the constant current is still effective.

Our best results were obtained by using cold instead of a constant current as our blocking agent.

Fig. 179 is an outline drawing of the apparatus used, and fig. 180 shows the arrangement adopted in connection with the nerve. The nerve (N) rests on a metal tube (T) through which water can be kept flowing. E is the situation of the electrodes. If the nerve is excited, the spleen contracts, and the recording lever (in fig. 179) falls. If now brine at 0 to 2° C. is kept flowing through T, the nerve impulses are blocked by the cold, and cannot reach the spleen. Immediately the cold brine is replaced by warm water at 30° C., the nerve again becomes passable by nerve impulses, and the spleen contracts once more.

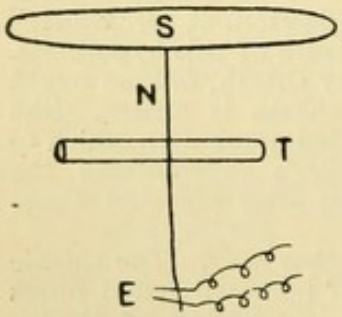


FIG. 180.—Arrangement of apparatus in connection with the splenic nerve. S is the spleen, and N the main bundle of nerves. The nerve rests on the metal tube (T) through which fluid at the required temperature is kept flowing, and on the electrodes (E) which come from the secondary coil of an inductorium.

If while the fluid in T is kept at the low temperature mentioned, the nerve is being excited with strong induction shocks all the time, the spleen remains irresponsive; the nerve impulses are able to reach T but not to pass it. If then warm water is passed through T, and the block produced by the cold is thus removed, and the spleen continues to be irresponsive, we have a proof that the piece of nerve between E and T has been fatigued. But our experiments have shown us that non-medullated nerve is just as difficult to fatigue as medullated nerve. Even after six hours' continuous excitation the nerve is just as excitable as it was at the start, and a full splenic contraction is obtained when the cold block is removed.

We have made similar experiments with vaso-motor nerves, such as the cervical sympathetic nerve in the rabbit, the splanchnic nerve of the dog, and the sciatic nerve in a curarised dog, and have obtained corresponding results. This confirms

the work previously published by Eve. Eve excited the cervical sympathetic for twelve hours, and found no loss of excitability at the end of that time. Eve stimulated the nerve below the upper cervical ganglion, and the main object of his work was to ascertain whether any histological evidence of fatigue could be found in the cells of the ganglion. The only change he could find there was a somewhat diffuse staining of the cells by methylene blue, which he attributes to the formation of acid substances in the cells. A blue stain of similar appearance may be induced in the motor cells of the spinal cord, after exhaustion is produced in them by giving strychnine. In such experiments the spinal cord becomes as a rule distinctly acid to litmus paper. Max Verworn has more recently employed strychnine as a means of producing fatigue. He considers that the only specific effect of this alkaloid is increase of reflex activity, and he attributes the subsequent paralysis to vascular conditions and the accumulation of fatigue products, among which he places carbon dioxide in the first rank. Eve, on the contrary, did not find that carbonic acid alone produces the effects.

We must conclude from such experiments that Dr Waller's theory is unproved, and that while fatigue is demonstrable in nerve-cells, it has never yet been shown to occur in nerve-fibres of either the medullated or non-medullated variety.

In carrying out these experiments we noticed that though no functional fatigue can be demonstrated, there is noticeable, especially in vaso-motor nerves, a phenomenon which Howell terms *stimulation fatigue;* this means that the actual spot of nerve stimulated becomes after a time less excitable, and finally, inexcitable, though it will still transmit impulses, if the excitation is applied above the spot originally stimulated. We think that the use of the term "fatigue" in this connection is a mistake; the prolonged electrical excitation causes injurious polarisation (due to electrolytic changes) of the nerve, which renders it less excitable. This view has been confirmed by Prof. Gotch by means of experiments with the capillary electrometer. This so-called "stimulation fatigue" was not excluded in Miss Sowton's experiments, and will possibly explain her results. The splenic nerves, curiously enough, do not exhibit this phenomenon in any marked degree, and so were peculiarly well adapted to test the question of functional fatigue. On *à priori* grounds we should hardly expect non-medullated nerves to be peculiarly susceptible of real fatigue, when one considers how many of them, like the vaso-constrictors, are in constant action throughout life.

Rigor Mortis.

After death, the muscles gradually lose their irritability and pass into a contracted condition. This affects all the muscles of the body, and usually fixes it in the natural posture of equilibrium or rest. The general stiffening thus produced constitutes *rigor mortis* or *post-mortem* rigidity.

The cause of rigor is the coagulation of the muscle-plasma, which is more fully described in the next section. This coagulation results in the formation of *myosin*, and is gradual in onset. Simultaneously the muscles (a) *become shortened and opaque*, (b) *heat is evolved*, (c) *they give off carbonic acid*, and (d) *become acid in reaction;* this is due in part to the formation of sarco-lactic acid, and in part to the formation of acid phosphates.

After a varying interval, the rigor passes off, and the muscles are once more relaxed. This sometimes occurs too quickly to be caused by putrefaction, and the suggestion that in such cases at any rate such relaxation is due to a ferment-action is very plausible. It is known that a pepsin-like or proteolytic ferment is present in muscle,

as in many other animal tissues, kidney, spleen, etc. (Hedin), and that such ferments act best in an acid medium. The conditions for the solution of the coagulated myosin are therefore present, as the reaction of rigored muscle is acid.

Order of Occurrence.—The muscles are not affected simultaneously by rigor mortis. It affects the neck and lower jaw first; next, the upper extremities, extending from above downwards; and lastly, reaches the lower limbs; in some rare instances it affects the lower extremities before, or simultaneously with, the upper extremities. It usually ceases in the order in which it begins: first at the head, then in the upper extremities, and lastly in the lower extremities. It seldom commences earlier than ten minutes, or later than seven hours after death; and its duration is greater in proportion to the lateness of its accession.

The occurrence of rigor mortis is not prevented by the previous existence of paralysis in a part, provided the paralysis has not been attended with very imperfect nutrition of the muscular tissue.

In some cases of sudden death from lightning, violent injuries, or paroxysms of passion, rigor mortis has been said not to occur at all; but this is not always the case. It may, indeed, be doubted whether there is really a complete absence of the post-mortem rigidity in any such cases; for the experiments of Brown-Séquard make it probable that the rigidity may supervene immediately after death, and then pass away with such rapidity as to be scarcely observable.

Chemical Composition of Muscle.

The phenomena of rigor mortis will be more intelligible if we consider the chemical composition of muscle.

The connective tissue of muscle resembles connective tissue elsewhere; the gelatin and fat obtained in analyses of muscle are derived from this tissue. The sarcolemma is composed of a substance which resembles elastin in its solubilities.

The contractile substance within the muscular fibres is, during life, of semi-liquid consistency, and contains a large percentage of proteins and smaller quantities of extractives and inorganic salts. By the use of a press this substance can be squeezed out of perfectly fresh muscles, and it is then called the *muscle-plasma.*

After death, muscle-plasma, like blood-plasma, coagulates (thus causing the stiffening known as *rigor mortis*). The solid clot corresponding to the fibrin from blood-plasma is called *myosin*, and the liquid residue is called the *muscle-serum.*

Pursuing the analogy further, it is found that the coagulation of both muscle-plasma and blood-plasma can be prevented by cold, by strong solutions of neutral salts, and by potassium oxalate, which precipitates, as the insoluble oxalate of calcium, the lime salts essential for the coagulation process. In both cases the clotting is

produced by the action of a ferment developed after death. In both cases the precursor of the solid clot is a protein of the globulin class which previously existed in solution.

Fibrin in the blood-clot is formed from the previously soluble fibrinogen of the blood-plasma. Myosin in the muscle-clot is formed from the previously soluble *myosinogen* * of the muscle-plasma. When the blood-clot contracts it squeezes out blood-serum; when the muscle-clot contracts it squeezes out muscle-serum. The muscle-serum contains small quantities of albuminous material, together with the extractives and salts of the muscle. The origin of the sarco-lactic acid is a controversial question: some believe it originates from the carbohydrate (glycogen and sugar); others think it comes from the protein molecules in the muscle.

The general composition of muscular tissue is the following:—

Water	75	per cent.
Solids	25	,,
Proteins	18	,,
Gelatin, Fat	2 to 5	,,
Extractives	0·5	,,
Inorganic salts	1 to 2	,,

The proteins, as already stated, chiefly pass into the clot: very little is found in the muscle-serum.

The extractives comprise a large number of organic substances, all present in small quantities, some of which are nitrogenous, like creatine, creatinine, xanthine, and hypoxanthine: the rest are non-nitrogenous—namely, fats, glycogen, sugar, inosite, and the variety of lactic acid known as sarco-lactic acid. The inorganic salts are chiefly salts of potassium, especially potassium phosphate.

The condition of dead muscle reminds one somewhat of contracted muscle. Indeed, the similarity is so striking that Hermann has propounded the idea that contracted muscle is muscle on the road to death, the differences between the two being of degree only. He considers that, on contraction, a hypothetical material termed *inogen* is broken up into carbonic acid, sarco-lactic acid, and myosin; on death the same change occurs, only to a much more marked extent.

This idea is a far-fetched one, but it is a useful reminder of the similarities of the two cases. In chemical condition, contracted and dead muscle are alike, so far as the formation of acid products is concerned; there is, however, no evidence of any formation of a muscle-clot (myosin) during the contraction of living muscle, as there is in dead muscle. Then heat is produced in both cases, and in both cases also the muscle is electro-positive to uncontracted muscle.

* For further details see small text at the end of this chapter.

Here, however, the analogy must end: for living contracted muscle is irritable, dead muscle is not. Living contracted muscle is more extensible than uncontracted muscle; muscle in *rigor mortis* is not so (see fig. 156, p. 128). The contraction of living muscle is favoured by feeding it with a solution of dextrose, while the process of *rigor* is hindered by the same solution. (F. S. Lee.)

Our correct knowledge of the proteins of muscle and of the phenomena of *rigor mortis* date from the year 1864, when Kühne obtained muscle-plasma by subjecting frozen frog's muscle to strong pressure. A good many years later I was successful in repeating these experiments with mammalian muscle. By fractional heat coagulation, and by their varying solubilities in neutral salts, I was able to separate four different proteins in the muscle-plasma.

1. A globulin precipitable by heat at 47° C. This is analogous to the cell-globulin found in most protoplasmic structures. I gave it the name *paramyosinogen*.

2. A proteid with many of the characters of a globulin, coagulable by heat at 56° C.; and this I termed *myosinogen*.

3. A globulin (*myo-globulin*), precipitable by heat at 63° C.

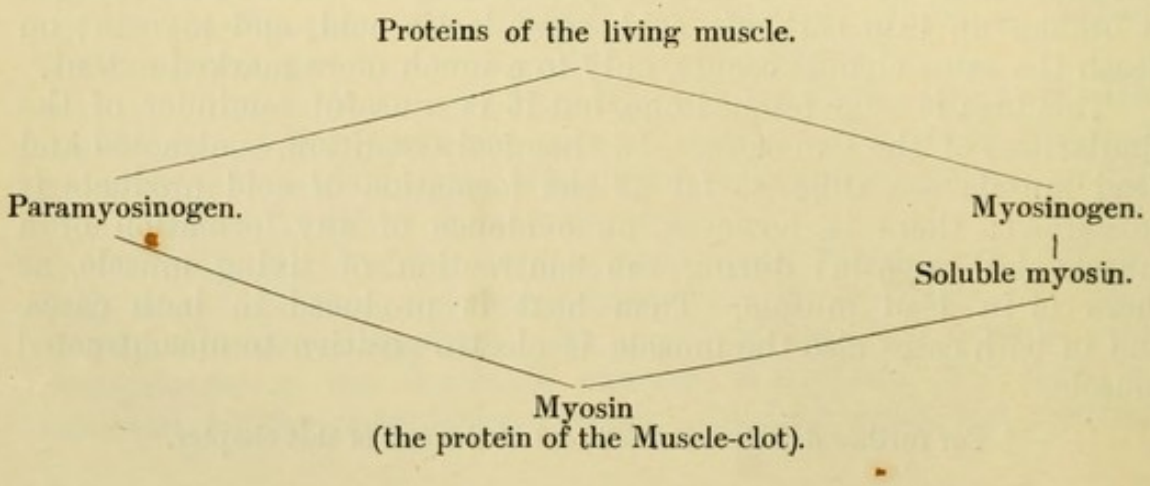
4. An albumin similar in its properties to serum albumin is also present; but this and the myo-globulin only occur in quite small amounts.

In addition to these, there is a small quantity of nuclei-protein from the nuclei, and in the red muscles hæmoglobin is present; the normal pigment of the so-called pale muscles is termed *myo-hæmatin* by MacMunn, and this is doubtless a derivative of hæmoglobin.

The two most abundant and important proteins are the first two in the list, namely, paramyosinogen and myosinogen. They occur in the proportion of about 1 to 4, and both enter into the formation of the muscle-clot (myosin). The myo-globulin is probably derived from the adherent connective tissue and the albumin from adherent blood and lymph.

In 1895 v. Fürth took up the subject. On the main question we are in substantial agreement, namely, that in the muscle-plasma there are the two proteins just alluded to, and that these both contribute to the formation of the muscle-clot. The main points of difference between us are in the names of the proteins. He uses physiological saline solution to extract the muscle-plasma, and this extract coagulates spontaneously on standing; he is doubtful whether a specific myosin-ferment brings about the change. Paramyosinogen he terms *myosin*, and this passes directly into the clotted condition; but myosinogen, called *myogen* by v. Fürth, first passes into a soluble condition (coagulable by heat at the remarkably low temperature of 40° C.) before it clots: the soluble stage he calls *soluble myogen-fibrin*; a better name is *soluble myosin*.

We may put this in a diagrammatic way as follows:—



V. Fürth also calls attention to some characters of myosinogen which separate it from the typical globulins; *e.g.*, it is not precipitable by dialysing the salts away from its solutions. It may be therefore called an *atypical* globulin.

In mammalian muscle, soluble myosin is only found as a stage in the process of *rigor mortis*, but in the muscles of the frog and other amphibia it is present as such in the living muscle.

The muscle-plasma from fishes' muscle contains another protein termed *myoprotein* by v. Fürth. It is precipitable by dialysis, but not coagulable by heat.

Brodie, and later, Vernon, did some interesting experiments on *heat rigor*. When a muscle is heated above a certain temperature it becomes contracted and stiff, losing its irritability completely. This is due to the coagulation of the muscle proteins. If a tracing is taken of the contraction, it is found to occur in a series of steps: the first step in the shortening occurs at the coagulation temperature of the paramyosinogen (47°-50° C.), and if the heating is continued, a second shortening occurs at 56° C., the coagulation temperature of myosinogen. If, however, a frog's muscle is used, there are three steps, namely, at 40° (coagulation temperature of soluble myosin), 47°, and 56°. This work of Brodie's is especially valuable because it teaches us that the proteins in muscle-plasma, or in saline extracts of muscle, are present also in the actual muscle-substance. He also made clear another important point, namely, that the irritability of the muscle is lost after the *first* step in the shortening has occurred. In other words, in order to destroy the vitality of muscular tissue, it is not necessary to raise the temperature sufficiently high to coagulate all its proteins, but that when one of the muscular proteins has been coagulated, the living substance as such is destroyed; the proteins of muscle cannot therefore be regarded as independent units; the unit is protoplasm, and if one of its essential constituents is destroyed, protoplasm as such ceases to live.

Hans Przibram has attempted to classify the animal kingdom on the basis of the muscle-proteins; his conclusions are based on the examination of only thirty species of animals, and may require revision in the future, but such as they are, they are as follows:—

Invertebrates: para-myosinogen present; myosinogen absent.

Vertebrates: para-myosinogen and myosinogen both present.

Fishes: in addition to these two principal proteids, soluble myosin and myoprotein (in large quantities) occur.

Amphibians: like fishes, except that myoprotein is only present in traces.

Reptiles, birds, mammals: myoprotein is absent, and soluble myosin is only present when *rigor mortis* commences.

Steyrer has recently stated that on prolonged tetanisation (in rabbits' muscle) the amount of paramyosinogen diminishes, but when degeneration occurs after the motor nerves are cut, the amount of this protein increases. Such results must, however, be accepted with caution until more satisfactory methods than those at present in use are adopted for the estimation of the muscle-proteins.

CHAPTER XIV

COMPARISON OF VOLUNTARY AND INVOLUNTARY MUSCLE

THE main difference between voluntary and involuntary muscle is the difference expressed in their names. Voluntary muscle is under the control of that portion of the central nervous system the activity of which is accompanied by volition. Involuntary muscle, on the other hand, is, as a rule, also under the control of the central nervous system, but of a portion of the central nervous system the activity of which is independent of volition. There appear, however, to be exceptions to this rule, and the involuntary muscle executes its contractions independently of nervous control; that is to say, it is sometimes in the truest sense of the term really involuntary. This is very markedly seen in the developing heart of the embryo, which begins to beat before any nerve-fibres have grown into it from the central nervous system.

Another characteristic of involuntary muscle is a tendency to regular alternate periods of rest and activity, or *rhythmicality*. This is best exemplified in the heart, but it is also seen in the lymphatic vessels, especially the lymph hearts of the frog, and the mesenteric lymphatic vessels (lacteals) of many animals. It is seen in the veins of the bat's wing, and in the muscular tissue of the spleen, stomach, intestine, bladder, and other parts.

A third characteristic of involuntary muscle is *peristalsis*. If any point of a tube of smooth muscle such as the small intestine is stimulated, a ring-like constriction is produced at this point. After lasting some time at this spot it slowly passes along the tube at the rate of 20 to 30 millimetres per second. This advancing peristaltic wave normally takes place in only one direction, and so serves to drive on the contents of the tube.

Involuntary muscle nearly always contains numerous plexuses of non-medullated nerve-fibres with ganglion cells; so that much discussion has taken place on the question whether the phenomena of rhythmicality and peristalsis are properties of the muscular tissue itself or of the nerves mixed with it. The evidence available (namely,

that portions of muscular tissue entirely free from nerves act in the same way as those that possess nerves) indicates that it is the muscular rather than the nervous tissues that possess these properties; though it can hardly be doubted that under normal conditions the contraction of involuntary muscle is influenced and controlled by nervous agency.

As instances of nerveless involuntary muscles which possess the property of rhythmical action, we may take the ventricle apex of the frog's or tortoise's heart. If this is cut off and fed with a suitable nutritive fluid at considerable pressure it will beat rhythmically (Gaskell). The apparatus by which this may be demonstrated is described at the end of Chapter XX. The middle third of the ureter is another instance of muscular tissue free from nerves, but which nevertheless executes peristaltic movements. Perhaps, however, the most striking example is that of the fœtal heart which begins to beat directly it is formed, long before any nerves have grown into it.

The artificial stimuli employed for involuntary are the same as those used for voluntary muscle; single induction shocks are, however, often ineffectual to produce contraction, but the make, and to a less extent the break, of a constant current will act as a stimulus.

The faradic current is a good stimulus, but it never throws involuntary muscle into tetanus; in the heart, strong stimulation will sometimes effect a partial fusion of the beats, but never complete tetanus. The rate of stimulation makes no difference; in fact, very often a rapid rate of stimulation calls forth less rapidly occurring contractions than a slow rate.

A stimulus strong enough to produce a contraction in the heart elicits a maximum contraction ("all or nothing" Waller); the phenomenon known as the *staircase* (see p. 117) is generally better marked in the case of the heart than in that of voluntary muscle.

The contraction of smooth muscle is so sluggish that the various stages of latent period, shortening and relaxation, can be followed with the eye; the latent period often exceeds half a second in duration. It does not obey the "all or nothing" law.

The normal contraction of voluntary muscle is a kind of tetanus (see p. 121); the normal contraction of cardiac and plain muscle is a much prolonged single contraction. A very valuable piece of evidence in this direction is seen in the experiment on the heart with the physiological rheoscope (see p. 145). Each time the heart contracts the rheoscopic preparation executes a single twitch, not a tetanus. This is an indication that the electrical change is a single one, and not a succession of changes such as occurs in tetanus.

When this electrical change is examined with the electrometer, it is seen that it is a diphasic one as in voluntary muscle; but in a slowly contracting tissue like the heart-muscle the two phases are

separated by a prolonged period of equipotentiality, and thus they are rendered more distinct. The illustrations already given (figs. 167 and 168) show this fact graphically.

When the heart is beating sluggishly in the rheoscopic experiment above referred to, the separation of the two phases of the electrical change will sometimes cause two twitches in the muscle-nerve preparation. Bayliss and Starling describe the ventricular contraction of the mammalian heart as being accompanied by a triphasic electrical variation; this is due to the contraction at the base outlasting that at the apex; if, therefore, base and apex are led off to the electrometer, the first phase is due to increased positivity at the base, the second to that at the apex; this quickly subsides, but the increased positivity at the base which still continues accounts for the third excursion of the mercury.

But though involuntary muscle cannot be thrown into tetanus, it has the property of entering into a condition of sustained contraction called *tonus*. We shall have to consider this question again in connection with the plain muscular tissue of the arterioles.

Involuntary muscle when it contracts undergoes thermal and chemical changes similar to those we have dealt with in the case of the voluntary muscles.

Involuntary muscle is usually supplied with two sets of nerves, one of which (accelerator) increases and the other of which (inhibitory) decreases its activity. The nerve-endings in involuntary muscle require a much larger dose of curare to affect them than the end-plates in voluntary muscle.

The phenomena of *rigor mortis* in involuntary muscle have not been so fully studied as in the case of voluntary muscle. It has, however, been shown that the chemical composition of involuntary muscle differs in no noteworthy manner from that of voluntary muscle, and on death the muscle becomes acid; such products as carbonic acid and sarco-lactic acid are formed. In the heart, stomach, uterus, and rectum, *post-mortem* rigidity has been noted, and it probably occurs in all varieties of plain muscle.

Swale Vincent has shown that the characteristic proteins (paramyosinogen and myosinogen) occur in both striped and unstriped muscle, and the heat rigor curves of involuntary muscle are practically identical with those obtained by Brodie (see p. 157). He is inclined to think that the two proteins are formed by the breaking down of a compound protein which in living muscle mainly coagulates at 47° C. This view is taken by Stewart in reference to striped muscle also, but has been very seriously questioned by v. Fürth. The most striking chemical difference between unstriped and striped muscle is seen in the amount of nucleo-protein which they contain. Plain muscle contains six to eight times the amount found in voluntary muscle; cardiac muscle contains an intermediate quantity.

CHAPTER XV

PHYSIOLOGY OF NERVE

MANY points relating to the physiology of nerve have been already studied in connection with muscle. But there still remain further questions upon which we have hardly touched as yet.

Classification of Nerves.

The nerve-fibres which form the conducting portions of the nervous system may be classified into three main groups, according to the direction in which they normally conduct nerve impulses. These three classes are:—

1. Efferent nerve-fibres.
2. Afferent nerve-fibres.
3. Inter-central nerve-fibres.

1. **Efferent** or *centrifugal* nerves are those which conduct impulses from the central nervous system (brain and spinal cord) to other parts of the body. When, for instance, there is a wish to move the hand, the impulse starts in the brain, and travels a certain distance down the spinal cord; it leaves the spinal cord by one or more of the spinal nerves, and so reaches the muscles of the hand which are thrown into contraction. Such nerves are called *motor*, but all efferent nerves are not motor; some cause secretion instead of movement, and others may cause a stoppage of movement, etc. A list of the classes of efferent nerves is as follows:—

a. Motor.
b. Accelerator.
c. Inhibitory.
d. Secretory.
e. Electrical.
f. Trophic.

a. *Motor* nerves. Some of these go to voluntary muscles; others to involuntary muscles, such as the vaso-motor nerves which supply the muscular tissue in the walls of arteries.

b. *Accelerator* nerves are those which produce an increase in the rate of rhythmical action. An instance of these is seen in the sympathetic nerves that supply the heart.

c. *Inhibitory* nerves are those which cause a slowing in the rate of rhythmical action, or it may be its complete cessation. Inhibitory nerves are found supplying many kinds of involuntary muscle; a very typical instance is found in the inhibitory fibres of the heart which are contained within the trunk of the vagus nerve.*

d. *Secretory* nerves are found supplying many secreting glands, such as the salivary glands, gastric glands, and sweat glands. The impulse which travels down a secretory nerve stimulates secretion in the gland it supplies.

e. *Electrical* nerves are found in the few fishes which possess electrical organs. The impulse which travels down these nerves causes the electrical organ to be thrown into activity.

f. *Trophic* nerves are those which control the nutrition of the part they supply.

2. **Afferent** or *centripetal* nerves are those which conduct impulses in the reverse direction, namely, from all parts of the body to the central nervous system. When one feels pain in the finger, the nerves of the finger are stimulated, an impulse travels up the nerves to the spinal cord, and then to the brain. The mental process set up in the brain is called a sensation; the sensation, however, is referred to the end of the nerve where the impulse started, and the sensation of pain does not appear to occur in the brain, but in the finger. This is an instance of a sensory nerve; and the terms afferent and sensory may often be used synonymously. The nerves of sensation may be grouped as follows:—

a. The nerves of special sense; such as, of sight, hearing, taste, smell, and touch.

b. The nerves of general sensibility; that is, of a vague kind of sensation not referable to any of the special senses; as an instance, we may take the vague feelings of comfort or discomfort in the interior of the body.

c. Nerves of pain. It is a moot point whether these are anatomically distinct from the others, but there is some evidence that this is the case (see more fully Chapter LII.).

The words "sensory" and "afferent," however, are not quite synonymous. Just as we may have efferent impulses leaving the

* The question has been much debated whether voluntary muscle is provided with inhibitory nerves; they do, however, appear to be present in certain nerves supplying the muscles of the claws of lobsters and similar crustaceans.

brain for the heart or blood-vessels of which we have no conscious knowledge, so also afferent impulses may travel to the central nervous system which excite no conscious feelings. The afferent nerve-tracts to the cerebellum form a very good instance of these.

Then, too, the excitation of many afferent nerves will excite what are called reflex actions. We are very often conscious of the sensations that form the cause of a reflex action, but we do not necessarily have such sensations. Many reflex actions, for instance, occur during sleep; many may be executed by the spinal cord even after it has been severed from the brain, and so the brain cannot be aware of what is occurring.

A reflex action is an action which is the result of an afferent impulse. Thus a speck of dust falls into the eye, and causes movements of the eyelids to get rid of the offending object. The dust excites the sensory nerve-endings in the conjunctiva, an impulse travels to the centre of this nerve in the brain, and from the brain a reflected impulse travels to the muscles of the eyelid. As an instance of a reflex action in which secretion is concerned, take the watering of the mouth which occurs when food is seen or smelt. The nerves of sight or smell convey an afferent impulse to the brain, which reflects, down the secretory nerves, an impulse which excites the salivary glands to activity.

These, however, are instances of reflex action which are accompanied with conscious sensation, but like all pure reflex actions are not under the control of the will.

An instance of a reflex action not accompanied with consciousness is seen in a man with his spinal cord cut across or crushed, so that any communication between his brain and his legs is impossible. He cannot move his legs voluntarily, and is unconscious of any feelings in them. Yet when the soles of his feet are tickled he draws his legs up, the centre of reflex action being in the grey matter of the lower region of the spinal cord.

For a reflex action, three things are necessary: (1) an afferent nerve, (2) a nerve-centre consisting of nerve-cells to receive the afferent impulse and send out an efferent impulse, and (3) an efferent nerve along which the efferent impulse may travel. If the reflex action is a movement, the afferent nerve is called *excito-motor;* if it is a secretion, the afferent nerve is called *excito-secretory;* and similarly, afferent nerves may also be *excito-accelerator, excito-inhibitory,* etc.

3. **Intercentral** nerve-fibres are those which connect nerve-centres together; they connect different parts of brain, and of the cord to one another, and we shall find in our study of the nerve-centres that they are complex in their arrangement.

Investigation of the Functions of a Nerve.

There are always two main experiments by which the function of a nerve may be ascertained. The first is *section*, the second is *stimulation*.

Section consists in cutting the nerve and observing the loss of function that ensues. Thus, if a motor nerve is cut, motion of the muscles it supplies can no longer be produced by activity of the nerve-centre; the muscle is paralysed. If a sensory nerve is cut, the result is loss of sensation in the part it comes from.

Stimulation of the cut nerve is the opposite experiment. When a nerve is cut across, one piece of it is still connected with the brain or spinal cord; this is called the *central end;* the other piece, called the *peripheral end,* is still connected with some peripheral part of the body. Both the central and the peripheral end should be stimulated; this is usually done by means of induction shocks. In the case of a motor nerve, stimulation of the central end produces no result; stimulation of the peripheral end produces a nervous impulse which excites the muscles to contract. In the case of a sensory nerve, stimulation of the peripheral end has no result, but stimulation of the central end causes a sensation, usually a painful one, and reflex actions, which are the result of the sensation.

When a nerve is cut across, there are other results than the loss of function just mentioned; for even though the nerve is still left within the body with a normal supply of blood, it becomes less and less irritable, till at last it ceases to respond to stimuli altogether. This diminution of excitability starts from the point of section and travels to the periphery, but is temporarily preceded by a wave of increased excitability travelling in the same direction (Ritter-Valli law).

This loss of excitability of nerve is accompanied with degenerative changes which are of so great importance as to demand a separate section.

Degeneration of Nerve.

Suppose a nerve is cut right across, the piece of the nerve left in connection with the brain or spinal cord remains healthy both in structure and functions; but the peripheral piece of the nerve loses its functions and undergoes what is generally called, after the discoverer of the process, *Wallerian degeneration.* A nerve is made up of nerve-fibres, and each nerve-fibre is essentially a branch of a nerve-cell; when the nerve is cut, the axis cylinders in the peripheral portion are separated from the cells of which they are branches and from which they have grown. These separated portions of the axis cylinders die, and the medullary sheath of each undergoes a gradual

process of disintegration into droplets of myelin, which are ultimately absorbed and removed by the lymphatics. At the same time there is a multiplication of the nuclei of the primitive sheath. This degenerative process commences two or three days after the section has been made. In the case of the non-medullated fibres, there is no medullary sheath to exhibit the disintegrative changes just alluded to; and the

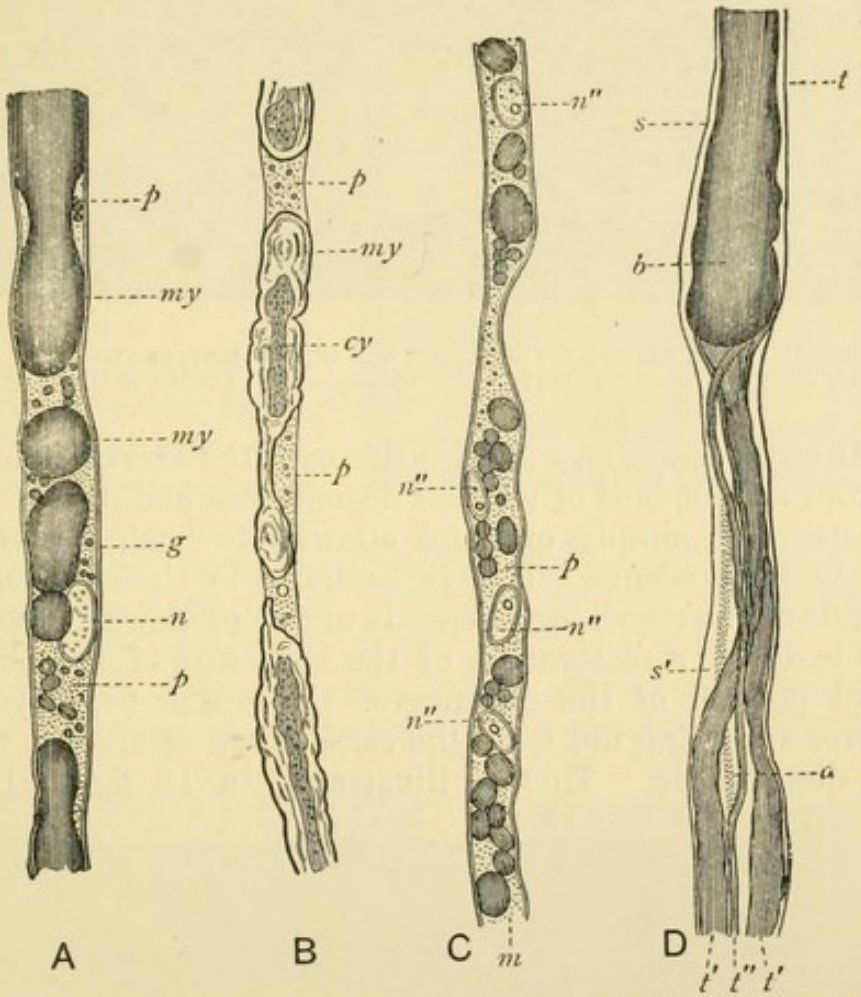


FIG. 181.—Degeneration and regeneration of nerve-fibres. A, nerve-fibre, fifty hours after operation *my*, medullary sheath breaking up into myelin drops. *p*, granular protoplasm replacing myelin. *n*, nucleus. *g*, primitive sheath. B, nerve-fibre after four days. *cy*, axis cylinder partly broken up and enclosed in portions of myelin. C, a more advanced stage in which the medullary sheath has almost disappeared. Numerous nuclei, *n''*, are seen. D, commencing regeneration; several fibres (*t'*, *t''*) have sprouted from the somewhat bulbous cut end (*b*) of the nerve-fibre. *a*, an axis cylinder which has not yet acquired its medullary sheath. *s*, *s'*, primitive sheath of the original fibre. (Ranvier.)

nuclei of the sheath do not multiply; there is simply death of the axis cylinder. The degeneration occurs simultaneously throughout the whole extent of the nerve; it does not start from the section and travel to the periphery. Ranvier's original diagram is reproduced in fig. 181. Figs. 182 and 183 are photo-micrographs from actual specimens.

A great amount of attention has been directed to this process of degeneration, because it has formed a valuable method of research in

tracing nervous tracts, and ascertaining the nerve-cells from which they originate. It must not, however, be regarded as an isolated phenomenon in physiology; it is only an illustration of the universal

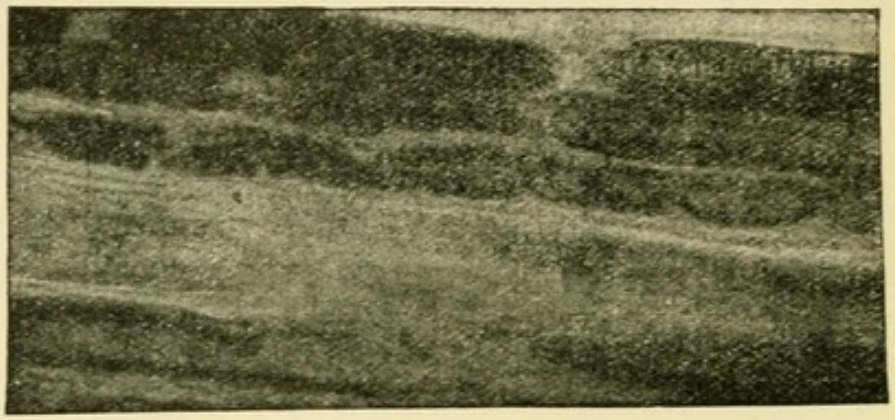


FIG. 182.—Nerve-fibres from sciatic nerve of cat, four days after the nerve had been cut. This shows an early stage of the degenerative process. 600 diameters. (Mott and Halliburton.)

truth that any portion of a cell (in this case the axis cylinder process) cut off from the nucleus of the cell degenerates and dies.

If a nerve is simply cut, and allowed to heal, regeneration of function in time occurs. This is hastened by the surgeon suturing the cut ends of the nerve together. It must not, however, be supposed that this is due to a restoration of the structure of the fibres in the peripheral portion of the cut nerve. It is due to very fine new nerve-fibres sprouting out from the central end of the cut nerve, and growing distalwards. This is illustrated in D, fig. 181. When

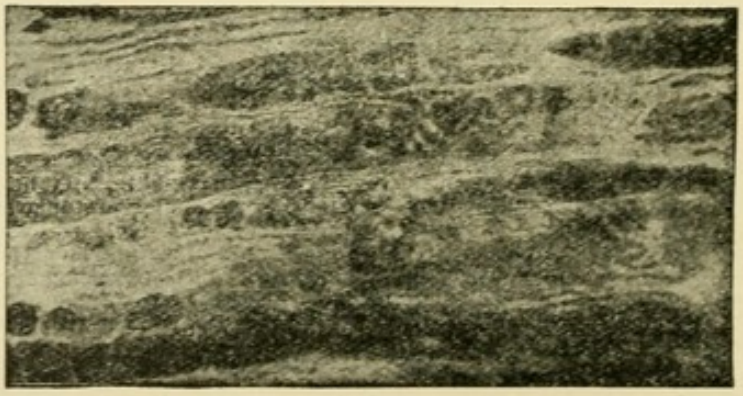


FIG. 183.—These are fibres from the sciatic nerve of another cat, ten days after the nerve had been cut. This shows the breaking-up of the medullary sheath in a marked way, and the intense black colour the myelin droplets take with osmic acid. 600 diameters. (Mott and Halliburton.)

regeneration does not take place, the central ends of the cut fibres and the cells from which they originate undergo slow atrophic changes (*disuse atrophy*).

The view expressed by the earlier workers on nerve regeneration

that the new fibres grow from the central stump of the cut nerves has been recently questioned. Some believe that regeneration may occur in the peripheral structures. It certainly is the case that the neurilemmal cells exhibit a great deal of activity; they multiply (fig. 184); at a later stage they exhibit a phagocytic action in the removal of the degenerated fat (fig. 185); and later still they become elongated and spindle-shaped; they then join together as though they were forming new nerve-fibres (fig. 186). But the elongating and contiguous cells are really only forming a new sheath or basis into which the axis cylinder ultimately grows. Howell and Huber, who have recently investigated this question, have arrived at the conclusion that the peri-



FIG. 184.—Single fibre from a degenerating nerve, eight days after the nerve was cut, stained so as to show the division of a neurilemmal nucleus into two. 870 diameters. (Mott and Halliburton.)

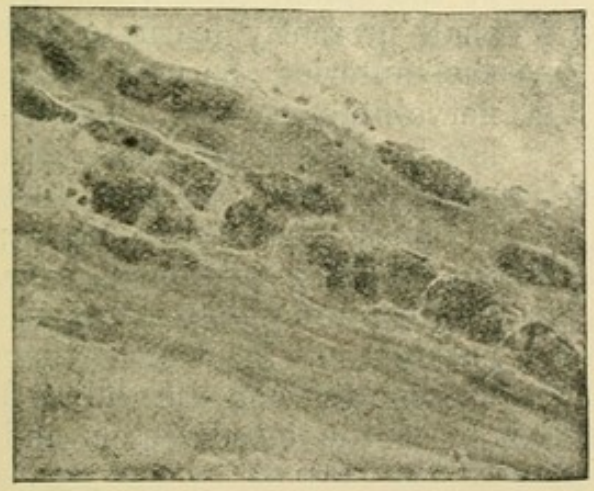


FIG. 185.—Degenerated nerve, twenty-seven days after the nerve had been cut. The numerous neurilemmal cells, perhaps aided by phagocytes from the exterior contain within them fatty particles which stain black with osmic acid. They are doubtless active in removing the degenerated myelin. 450 diameters. (Mott and Halliburton.)

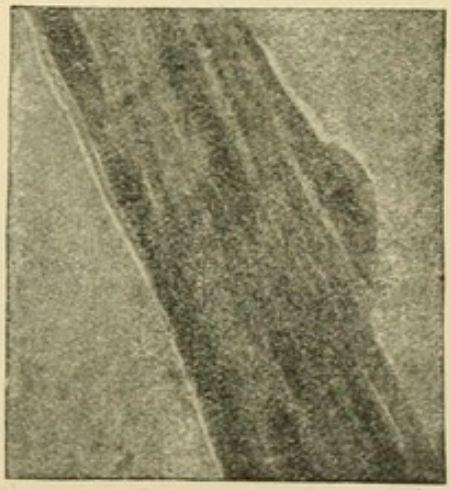


FIG. 186.—Degenerated nerve forty-four days after section. The elongation of the neurilemmal cells to form what look like new fibres is well shown. 500 diameters. (Mott and Halliburton.)

pheral structures are active in preparing the scaffolding, but that the axis cylinder, the essential portion of a nerve-fibre, has an

exclusively central origin. This view I thoroughly endorse. Mott and I have also shown that when the regenerated fibres are again cut, degeneration takes place in the peripheral direction only, and this is a strong piece of evidence that growth had not started from the periphery centralwards, for the direction of nutritive control is always the direction of growth.

The manifest activity of the neurilemmal cells is probably largely nutritive rather than formative, but is nevertheless of great importance, for, in situations like the central nervous system, where the neurilemma does not exist, regeneration does not occur.

Functions of the Roots of the Spinal Nerves.

The general truths enunciated in the two preceding sections are well illustrated by the experiments made to determine the functions of the roots of the spinal nerves. Each spinal nerve originates from the spinal cord by two roots. One of these is called the *anterior* or *ventral* root: it consists of nerve-fibres which originate from the large multipolar cells in that portion of the grey matter in the interior of the spinal cord which we shall presently learn to call the anterior horn. These nerve-fibres are all medullated; the large ones join up with the posterior root to form the spinal nerve; the small nerve-fibres leave the root and pass to the sympathetic chain, which then distributes non-medullated fibres to the involuntary muscular fibres of the blood-vessels and viscera.

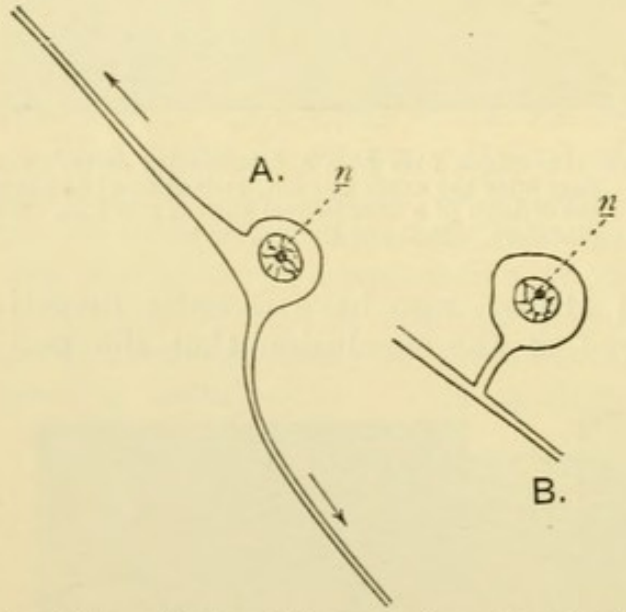


FIG. 187.—A, Bipolar cell from spinal ganglion of a 4½ weeks embryo. n, nucleus; the arrows indicate the direction in which the nerve processes grow, one to the spinal cord, the other to the periphery. B, a cell from the spinal ganglion of the adult; the two processes have coalesced to form a T-shaped junction. (Diagrammatic.)

The other root, *the posterior* or *dorsal* root, has upon it a collection of nerve-cells forming the spinal ganglion. Each nerve-cell is enclosed within a nucleated sheath of connective tissue origin, and it is from these nerve-cells that the fibres of the posterior roots grow. In the embryo, each nerve-cell has two processes (fig. 187), one of which grows to the spinal cord, where it terminates by branching around the multipolar cells of the grey matter; the other

process grows outwards to the periphery. In the adult mammal (not in fishes) the two processes coalesce in the first part of their course, forming a *T-shaped junction.*

The first experiments on the functions of the spinal nerve-roots were performed in this country by Sir Charles Bell (1811), and in France by Magendie (1822). These observers found that on section of the anterior roots there resulted paralysis of the muscles supplied by the nerves; on section of the posterior roots there was loss of sensation. These experiments clearly pointed to the conclusion that the anterior roots contain the efferent (motor) fibres; and the posterior roots the afferent (sensory) fibres. This conclusion was confirmed by the experiment of stimulation. Stimulation of the peripheral end of the cut anterior root caused muscular movement; of the central end, no effect. Stimulation of the central end of the cut posterior root caused pain and reflex movements; of the peripheral end, no effect.

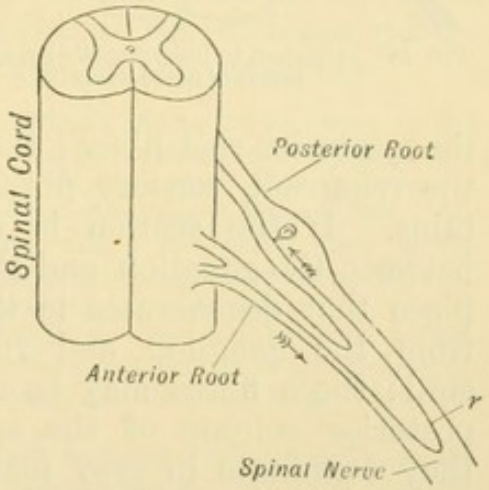


FIG. 188.—Diagram to illustrate recurrent sensibility.

Recurrent sensibility.—One of the statements just made requires a slight modification; namely, excitation of the peripheral end of a divided anterior root will evoke pain and reflex movements, as well as direct movements; that is to say, the anterior root, though composed mainly of motor fibres, contains a few sensory fibres coming probably from the membranes of the spinal cord, and then running into the posterior root with the rest of the sensory fibres. They often, however, run down the mixed nerve a considerable distance before returning to the posterior roots.

The diagram on this page (fig. 188) illustrates the course of one of these recurrent fibres (r); the arrows represent the direction in which it conveys impulses.

Degeneration of roots.—The facts in connection with this subject were made out by Waller (1850), and may be best understood by referring to the next diagram (fig. 189).

A represents a section of the mixed nerve beyond the union of the roots; the whole nerve beyond the section degenerates, and is shaded black.

B represents the result of section of the anterior root; only the anterior root-fibres degenerate; the sensory fibres of the posterior root remain intact. The small medullated nerve-fibres (not shown in the diagram) also degenerate as far as the ganglion cells of the

sympathetic system with which they communicate. The recurrent sensory fibres in this root do not degenerate with the others, but are found degenerated in the part of the anterior root attached to the spinal cord.

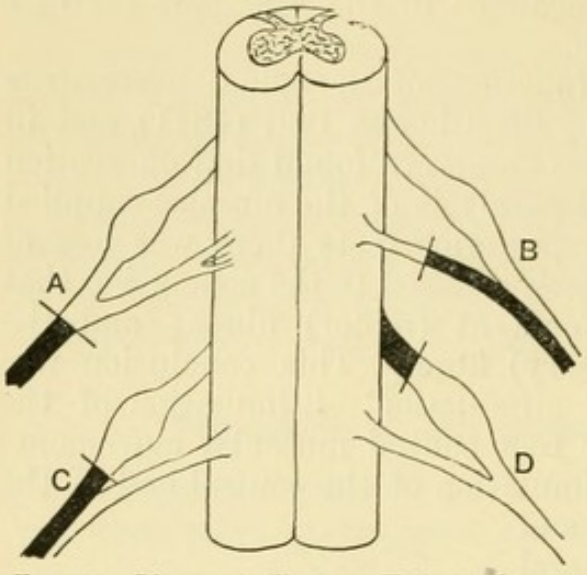


FIG. 189.—Diagram to illustrate Wallerian degeneration of nerve-roots.

Section of the posterior root always produces the same physiological effect (loss of sensation)* wherever the section is made, but the degeneration effect is different according as the section is made on the proximal or distal side of the ganglion. If the section is made beyond the ganglion, the degeneration occurs as shown in C beyond the section in the peripheral portion of the posterior root-fibres; the anterior root remains intact except for the recurrent sensory fibres which it contains. If the section is made as in D, between the ganglion and the cord, the only piece that degenerates is the piece severed from the ganglion and running into the cord; these fibres may be traced up in the posterior column of the spinal cord until they terminate in grey matter, which they do at different levels. The whole of the sensory fibres including the recurrent ones which are still attached to the ganglion remain histologically healthy.

The accompanying figure (fig. 190) is one of the original illustrations made by Dr Waller, and I am indebted to the present Dr Waller for permission to reproduce it.

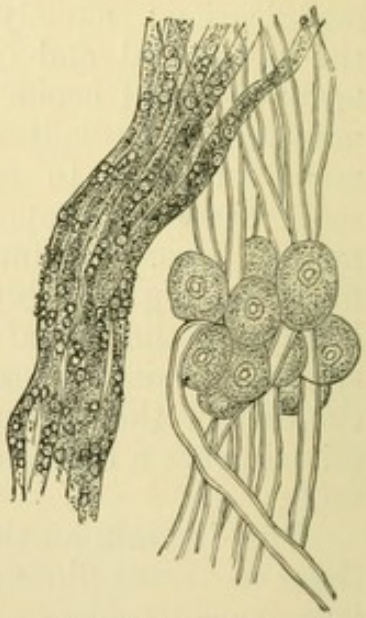


FIG. 190.—Groups of fibres from the anterior and posterior roots several days after section of both roots close to the cord; the anterior fibres are degenerated; the posterior, being still in connection with the nerve-cells from which they grew, are normal.

These facts of degeneration teach us, what we also learn from the study of embryology, that the nerve-fibres of the anterior root are connected to the nerve-cells within the spinal cord, while the posterior root-fibres are connected to the cells of the spinal ganglia; or, to put it another way, the trophic centres which

* In order to obtain any appreciable loss of motion or sensation, it is necessary to divide several roots (anterior or posterior as the case may be), as there is a good deal of overlapping in the peripheral distribution of the fibres.

control the nutrition of the fibres are situated within the cord for the anterior roots, and within the spinal ganglia for the posterior roots.

Changes in a Nerve during Activity.

When a nerve is stimulated, the change produced in it is called a nervous impulse; this change travels along the nerve, and the propagation of some change is evident from the effects which follow: sensation, movement, secretion, etc.; but in the nerve itself very little change can be detected. There is no change in form; the most delicate thermo-piles have failed to detect any production of heat, and we are almost completely ignorant of any chemical changes. The only alteration which can be readily detected as evidence of this molecular change in a nerve is the electrical one. Healthy nerve is iso-electric, but during the passage of a nervous impulse along it there is a very rapid diphasic variation, which travels at the same rate as the nervous impulse. This is similar to the diphasic change in muscle, and can be detected and measured in the same way.

Waller regards the current of action of any excitable tissue as an index of the magnitude of action, and records the movement of the galvanometer by photographing the excursion of the spot of light on a moving photographic plate. He has in this way obtained records from muscle, nerve, retina, skin, plant tissues, etc. He points out that the only available index of action within the nerve itself is the electrical sign of activity, whereas in muscle the mechanical action can be compared with its accompanying electrical changes. The amount of contraction *in a muscle* caused by excitation of its nerve is only a very rough, or even a fallacious, indication of the excitability *of the nerve*, because the nerve is connected to the muscle by motor end-plates, and these, as we have already seen, are fatigued long before the nerve shows any sign of fatigue.

Using this method, Waller has obtained a number of interesting results on the variation in nerve action produced by drugs and other agents. He finds that the effect of carbonic acid is to cause a diminution, and finally disappearance of the galvanometric response; when this gas is replaced by air the nerve recovers, and the action-currents increase. Ether acts similarly; but with chloroform recovery is difficult to obtain. Small doses of carbonic acid increase the action-currents, and Waller considers that the staircase effect in muscle (p. 117), and the similar progressive increase noted in the action-currents of nerve as the result of repeated stimulation are due to the evolution of this gas during activity.

This hypothesis has been recently confirmed by Bæyer and Fröhlich. They have shown that peripheral nerves participate in respiratory exchanges, using up oxygen and producing carbonic acid in measurable amounts. In the absence of oxygen, stimulation ceases after some hours to evoke the activity of a nerve, but on re-admission of the gas recovery is almost instantaneous. The store of oxygen so obtained will again keep up nervous activity for a considerable time even although no fresh oxygen is supplied. This illustrates the great power nerve has in repairing itself and in storing oxygen.

There can be no doubt that the existence of the electrical variation is as a rule the index of the excitatory alteration in a nerve. But in the present state of our knowledge we are not justified in assuming that it gives an absolutely faithful record. The electrical variation can be detected in a nerve for many days after its removal from the body. Although the electrical change is a concomitant of the real excitatory process, the former may be therefore perceptible when other evidence of the existence of the latter fails. Moreover, Gotch and Burch have obtained further evidence of the dissociation of the electrical response from the excitatory process. In the frog's sciatic nerve, it is possible with two stimuli in rapid suc-

cession to obtain only one electrical response near the seat of excitation which has been cooled, while two such responses occur in a more peripheral warmer region.

Excitability and conductivity.—It is necessary to distinguish between these two properties of nerve. Changes in excitability, and in the power of conducting nerve impulses, do not necessarily go together, as shown in the following experiment :— The nerve of a frog's leg is led through a glass tube, the ends of which are sealed with clay, care being taken that the nerve is not compressed. The tube is provided with an inlet and outlet, so that gases may be passed through it. Two pairs of electrodes are arranged, so that the nerve can be stimulated either within or outside the little gas chamber. If carbon dioxide or ether vapour is passed through the tube, both excitability and conductivity are in time abolished, but excitability disappears first; at this stage, if the nerve is stimulated by an induction shock inside the tube, the muscle does not respond, but on stimulating the nerve at the end distant from the muscle and outside the tube, the muscle contracts. The nerve, therefore, is not excitable, though it will conduct impulses. At a later stage shocks administered by either pair of electrodes provoke no contraction. When the poisonous vapour is replaced by air, the nerve recovers, and conductivity returns before excitability. If alcohol vapour is used conductivity is stated to vanish before excitability.

Gotch has shown that cold applied to a nerve acts very much like carbonic acid. Intense cold will cause disappearance of both excitability and conductivity; but cold of such a degree which abolishes the excitability of the nerve to induction shocks, increases its excitability to the constant current, and also to mechanical and thermal stimuli.

Velocity of a Nerve Impulse.

This has been measured in motor nerves as follows: a muscle-nerve preparation is made with as long a nerve as possible; the nerve is stimulated first as near to the muscle, and then as far from the muscle, as possible. The moment of stimulation and the moment of commencing contraction is measured by taking muscle tracings on a rapidly moving surface in the usual way, with a time-tracing beneath. The contraction ensues later, when the nerve is stimulated at a distance from the muscle, than in the other case, and the difference in the two cases gives the time occupied in the passage of the impulse along the piece of nerve, the length of which can be easily measured.

A similar experiment can be performed on man by means of the transmission myograph (see p. 122). If a tracing of the contraction of the thumb muscles is taken, the two stimuli may be successively applied through the moistened skin, first at the brachial plexus below the clavicle; and secondly, at the median nerve at the bend of the elbow.

Another method, largely employed by Bernstein, is to take the electrical change as the indication of the impulse. The rheotome is the instrument used. If fig. 169 (p. 139) is referred to, and a long nerve substituted for the muscle-nerve preparation, the stimulus is applied at one end, and the change in the electrical condition of the nerve is recorded by the galvanometer, which is connected to the other end of the nerve. The time measurement is effected by the adjustment of the rheotome, which must be such as to tap off the electrical change at the moment it occurs.

The rate of the transmission of nervous impulses discovered by these methods is, in a frog's motor nerve, 28 to 30 metres a second; in human motor nerves, 33 metres a second; in sensory nerves, 30 to 33 metres a second.

Direction of a Nerve Impulse.

Nerve impulses are conducted normally in only one direction: in efferent nerves from, in afferent nerves to, the nerve-centres. But there are some experiments which point to the conduction occurring under certain circumstances in both directions.

Thus, in the rheotome experiment just described, if the nerve is stimulated in the middle instead of at one end, the electrical change (the evidence of an impulse) is found to be conducted towards both ends of the nerve.

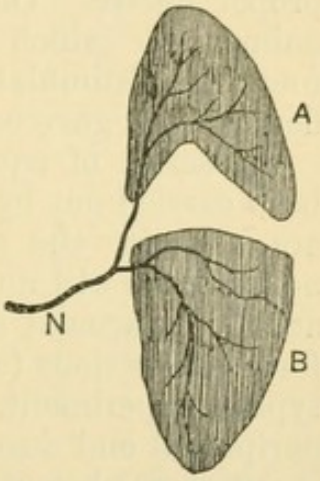


FIG. 191.—Gracilis of frog. (After Waller.)

Kühne's gracilis experiment proves the same point. The gracilis muscle of the frog (fig. 191) is in two portions, with a tendinous intersection, and supplied by nerve-fibres that branch into two bundles; excitation strictly limited to one of these bundles, after division of the tendinous intersection, causes both portions of the muscle to contract.

Another striking experiment of the same kind can be performed with the nerve that supplies the electrical organ of Malapterurus. This nerve consists of a single axis cylinder and its branches; stimulation of its posterior free end causes the "discharge" of the electrical organ, although the nervous impulse normally travels in the opposite direction.

Crossing of Nerves.

Some experiments designed to prove the possibility of nervous conduction in both directions were performed many years ago by Paul Bert. He grafted the tip of a rat's tail either to the back of the same rat, or to the nose of another. When union had been effected, the tail was amputated near its base. After a time, irritation of the end of the trunk-like appendage on the back or nose of the rat gave rise to sensation. The impulse thus passed from base to tip, instead of from tip to base, as formerly. This experiment does not, however, prove the point at all; for all the original nerve-fibres in the tail must have degenerated, and the restoration of sensation was due to new fibres, which had grown into the tail. Exactly the same objection holds to another series of experiments, in which the

motor and sensory nerves of the tongue were divided and united crosswise. Restoration of both movement and sensation does occur, but is owing to new nerve-fibres growing out from the central stumps of the cut nerves.

Though these experiments do not prove what they were intended to, they are of considerable interest in themselves. Dr R. Kennedy has recently carried out a very careful piece of work on this question of nerve crossing. He cut in a dog's thigh the nerves supplying the flexor and the extensor muscles, and sutured them together crosswise. Regeneration of structure and restoration of function occurred equally quickly, as in those cases in which the central ends had been united to the peripheral ends of their own proper nerves. On examining the cortex of the brain in those animals in which nerve-crossing had been accomplished, it was found that stimulation of the region which in a normal animal gave flexion, now gave extension of the limb, and *vice versâ*.

A series of equally important experiments have more recently been carried out by Langley, in which he shows that the same facts are true for the nerves that supply involuntary muscle. These nerve-fibres will under certain experimental conditions terminate by arborising around other nerve-cells than those which they normally form connections (synapses)* with. It will be sufficient to give one typical experiment. If the vagus nerve is cut across in the neck, its peripheral end degenerates downwards; if the cervical sympathetic is cut across below the superior cervical ganglion, its peripheral end degenerates upwards, as far as the ganglion. If subsequently the central end of the cut vagus is united to the peripheral end of the cut sympathetic, in the course of some weeks the vagus fibres grow into the sympathetic and form synapses around the cells of the superior cervical ganglion, and stimulation of the united nerve now produces such effects as are usually obtained when the cervical sympathetic is irritated; for instance, dilatation of the pupil, raising of the upper eyelid, and constriction of blood-vessels of the head and neck. (See accompanying diagram, fig. 192.)

Such experiments as these are important because they teach us that though the action of nerves may be so different in different cases (some being motor, some inhibitory, some secretory, some sensory, etc.), after all what occurs in the nerve trunk itself is always the same; the difference of action is due to difference either in the origin or distribution of the nerve-fibres. If we remember the familiar illustration in which nerve trunks are compared to telegraph wires, we may be helped in realising this. The destination of a certain group of telegraph wires may be altered, and the

* The meaning of the term "synapse" is fully explained in Chapter XVII. (p. 198).

alteration may produce different consequences at different places; the electric change, however, in the wires would be the same in all cases. So the nerve impulse going along a nerve is always the same sort of molecular disturbance; if it is made as in the experiment just described, to go by a wrong channel, it produces just the same

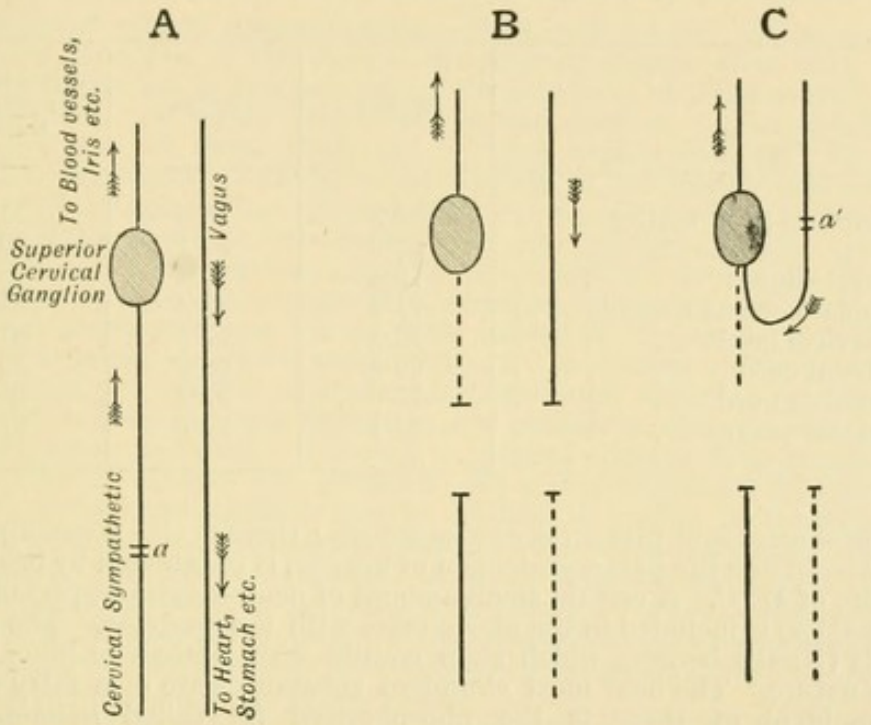


FIG. 192.—Diagram to illustrate Langley's experiment on vagus and cervical sympathetic nerves. In A, the two nerves are shown intact; the direction of the impulses they normally carry is shown by arrows, and the names of some of the parts they supply are mentioned. In B, both nerves are cut through. The degenerated portions are represented by discontinuous lines. In C, the union described in the text has been accomplished, and stimulation at the point a' now produces the same results as were in the intact nerves (A) produced by stimulation at a.

results as though the impulse had reached its destination by the usual channel.

Chemistry of Nervous Tissues.

The following table gives some typical analyses of the solids of nervous tissues, but these tissues also contain a large amount of water; this is present in larger

Portion of Nervous System.	Proteins.	Lecithin.	Cholesterin and Fat.	Cerebrin.	Neurokeratin.	Other Organic matters.	Salts.
Grey matter of Brain . .	55	17	19	0·5	6·7		1·5
White matter of Brain . .	25	10	52	9·5	3·3		0·6
Spinal Cord	23	75·1					1·1
Human Sciatic Nerve . .	36	32	12	11	3	4	—

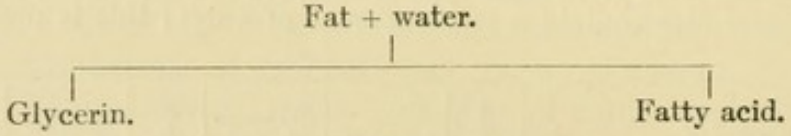
amount (83 per cent.) in grey matter than in white matter (70 per cent.); in early than in adult life; in the brain than in the spinal cord; in the spinal cord than in nerves.

One should next note the high percentage of protein. In grey matter, where the cells are prominent structures, this is most marked, and of the solids, protein material here comprises more than half of the total. The following are some of my analyses which give the mean of a number of observations on the nervous tissues of human beings, monkeys, dogs, and cats:

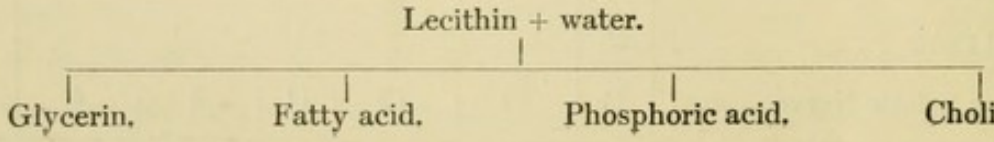
	Water.	Solids.	Percentage of Proteins in Solids.
Cerebral grey matter . .	83·5	16·5	51
,, white ,, . .	69·9	30·1	33
Cerebellum	79·8	20·2	42
Spinal cord as a whole .	71·6	28·4	31
Cervical cord . . .	72·5	27·5	31
Dorsal cord . . .	69·8	30·2	28
Lumbar cord . . .	72·6	27·4	33
Sciatic nerves . . .	65·1	34·9	29

The most abundant protein is *nucleo-protein*; there is also a certain amount of *globulin*, which, like the paramyosinogen of muscle, is coagulated by heat at the low temperature of 47° C. A certain small amount of neurokeratin (especially abundant in white matter) is included in the above table with the proteins. The granules in nerve cells (Nissl's bodies), which stain readily with methylene blue, are nucleo-protein in nature. The next most abundant substances are of a fatty nature; the most prominent of these is the phosphorised fat called *lecithin*. *Protagon* (which crystallises out on cooling a hot alcoholic extract of brain or other nervous structures) and *Kephalin* are other phosphorised fats of uncertain composition. *Cerebrin* is a term which probably includes several substances, which are nitrogenous glucosides; they yield on hydrolysis the sugar called galactose. They are sometimes called cerebrosides. The crystalline monatomic alcohol *cholesterin* is also a fairly abundant constituent of nervous structures, especially of the white substance of Schwann. Finally, there are smaller quantities of other extractives and a small proportion of mineral salts (about 1 per cent. of the solids).

In connection with the substances just enumerated, it is necessary to enter a little more fully into the composition of lecithin. An ordinary fat contains the elements carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, and when it takes up water it is split or hydrolysed into its constituent parts, glycerin and fatty acid.



Lecithin ($C_{42}H_{84}NPO_9$) contains not only carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, but nitrogen and phosphorus as well. When it is hydrolysed, it yields not only glycerin and a fatty acid, but also phosphoric acid, and a nitrogenous base termed choline.



Fresh nervous tissues are alkaline, but, like most other living structures, they turn acid after death. The change is particularly rapid in grey matter. The acidity is due to lactic acid.

Very little is known of the chemical changes nervous tissues undergo during activity. We know that oxygen is very essential, especially for the activity of grey matter; cerebral anæmia is rapidly followed by loss of consciousness and death. We have already seen that similar respiratory exchanges, though less in amount, occur in peripheral nerves (see p. 171).

Chemistry of nerve degeneration.—Mott and I have shown that in the disease General Paralysis of the Insane, the marked degeneration that occurs in the brain is accompanied by the passing of the products of degeneration into the cerebro-spinal fluid. Of these, nucleo-protein and choline—a decomposition product of the lecithin—are those which can be most readily detected. Choline can also be found in the blood. But this is not peculiar to the disease just mentioned, for in various other degenerative nervous diseases (combined sclerosis, disseminated sclerosis, meningitis, alcoholic neuritis, beri-beri, etc.) choline can also be detected in these situations. The tests employed to detect choline are mainly three: (1) a chemical test, namely, the obtaining of the characteristic yellow octahedral crystals of the platinum double salt from the alcoholic extract of the cerebro-spinal fluid or blood. This test is not absolutely trustworthy, for potassium and ammonium salts may give crystals very similar in appearance, although different in composition; (2) this test is free from any such objection, and consists in adding a strong solution of iodine to the suspected fluid; if choline is present characteristic brown crystals of the periodide of choline are obtained; (3) a physiological test, namely, the lowering of arterial blood-pressure (partly cardiac in origin, and partly due to dilatation of peripheral vessels) which a saline solution of the residue of the alcoholic extract produces: this fall is abolished, or even replaced by a rise of arterial pressure, if the animal has been poisoned with atropine. Such tests have already been shown to be of diagnostic value in the distinction between organic and so-called functional diseases of the nervous system. The chemical tests can frequently be obtained with 10 c.c. of fluid, or even less.

A similar condition can be produced artificially in animals by a division of large nerve trunks; and is most marked in those animals in which the degenerative process is at its height as tested histologically by the Marchi reaction.* A series of cats was taken, both sciatic nerves divided, and the animals subsequently killed at intervals varying from 1 to 106 days. The nerves remain practically normal as long as they remain irritable, that is up to about 3 days after the operation. They then show a progressive increase in the percentage of water, and a progressive decrease in the percentage of phosphorus until degeneration is complete. When regeneration occurs, the nerves return approximately to their previous chemical condition. When the Marchi reaction disappears in the later stages of degeneration, the non-phosphorised fat has been absorbed. This absorption occurs earlier in the peripheral nerves than in the central nervous system.

Further, it has been found that in spinal cords in which a unilateral degeneration of the pyramidal tract has been produced by a lesion in the opposite hemisphere, there is a similar increase of water and diminution of phosphorus on the degenerated side.

The following table shows these main results in the experiments on cats just described.

The figures relate to the peripheral portions of the nerves. Noll has shown that the phosphorised material also diminishes somewhat in the central ends of cut nerves due to "disuse atrophy."

---

* The Marchi reaction is the black staining that the medullary sheath of degenerated nerve-fibres shows when, after being hardened in Müller's fluid, they are treated with Marchi's reagent, a mixture of Müller's fluid and osmic acid. Healthy nerve-fibres are not affected by the reagent, but normal adipose tissue is blackened like degenerated myelin. The osmic acid reaction is due to fats like olein, which belong to the acrylic series.

Cat's sciatic nerves.				Condition of blood.	Condition of nerves.
	Water.	Solids.	Percentage of phosphorus in solids.		
Normal	65·1	34·9	1·1	Minimal traces of choline present.	Nerves irritable and histologically healthy.
1 to 3 days after section	64·5	35·5	0·9		
4 to 6 ,,	69·3	30·7	0·9	Choline more abundant.	Irritability lost; degeneration beginning.
8 ,,	68·2	31·8	0·5	Choline abundant.	Degeneration well shown by Marchi reaction.
10 ,,	70·7	29·3	0·3		
13 ,,	71·3	28·7	0·2		
25 to 27 ,,	72·1	27·9	traces	Choline much less.	Marchi reaction still seen, but absorption of degenerated fat has set in.
29 ,,	72·5	27·5	0		
44 ,,	72·6	27·4	0	Choline almost disappeared.	Absorption of fat practically complete.
100 to 106 ,,	66·2	3·8	0·9	Choline almost disappeared.	Return of function, nerves regenerated.

Heat contraction of nerve.—A nerve, when heated, shortens; this shortening occurs in a series of steps which, as in the case of muscle, take place at the coagulation temperatures of the proteins present. The first step in the shortening occurs in the frog at about 40°, in the mammal at about 47°, and in the bird at about 52° C. The nerve is killed at the same temperatures.

Cerebro-spinal fluid.—This plays the part of the lymph of the central nervous system, but differs considerably from all other forms of lymph. It is a very watery fluid, containing, besides some inorganic salts similar to those of the blood, a trace of protein matter (globulin) and a small amount of sugar. It contains the merest trace of choline; but this is not devoid of significance, for this fact taken in conjunction with another—namely, that physiological saline solution will extract from perfectly fresh nervous matter a small quantity of choline—shows us that lecithin and protagon are not stable substances, but are constantly breaking down and building themselves up afresh; in fact, undergoing the process called metabolism. This is most marked in the most active region of the brain—viz., the grey matter.

Potassium salts in nervous tissues.—These, as in muscle, are stated to be the most abundant salts. Macallum uses for the micro-chemical detection of potassium an acid solution of cobalt nitrite, and precipitates *in situ* the yellow hexanitrate of cobalt and potassium, which is turned black on the addition of ammonium sulphide. His principal results are:—potassium is found in cell protoplasm, but more abundantly in intercellular material; in striped muscle it is limited to the dark bands, and in pancreatic cells to the granular zone. It is not discoverable in any nuclei, nor in nerve-cells, but in nerve-fibres is found in patches external to the axis cylinder. Macdonald points out that these are spots which have been injured, and it is apparently only on injury that the potassium is liberated in a form which renders it detectable by Macallum's reagent. Macdonald attributes many of the phenomena of nervous action to electrolytic changes in the potassium salts of the nerve-fibres, and which are present in large amounts.

CHAPTER XVI

ELECTROTONUS

When a constant current is thrown into a nerve, there is an excitation which leads to a nervous impulse, and this produces a contraction of the muscle at the end of the nerve. Similarly, there is another contraction when the current is taken out. While the current is flowing through the nerve, the muscle is quiescent. But while the current is flowing there are changes in the nerve, both as regards its electrical condition and its excitability. These changes are summed up in the expression *electrotonus.*

In the investigation of this subject the instruments employed are the same as those already described, with the addition of two others that it will be convenient to describe before passing on to the study of electrotonus itself. These are the reverser or commutator, and the rheochord.

Pohl's commutator is the form of reverser generally employed. It consists of a block of ebonite provided with six pools of mercury,

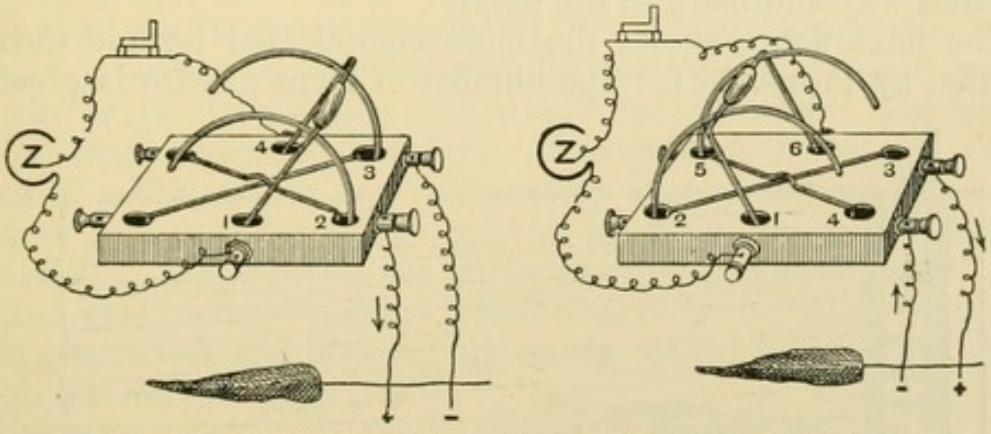


Fig. 193.—Pohl's Commutator, with cross wires. (After Waller.)

each of which is provided with a binding screw. The corner pools are connected by diagonal cross wires, and by a cradle consisting of an insulating handle fixed to two arcs of copper wire which can be tilted so that the two middle pools can be brought into communication with either of the two lateral pairs of pools. Fig. 193 shows how, by

altering the position of the cradle, the direction of the current from one electrode to the other is reversed. The numbers 1, 2, 3, etc., indicate the path of the current in the two cases.

Sometimes the reverser is used without the cross wires for a different purpose. The battery wires are connected as before with the middle mercury pools. Each lateral pair of pools is connected by wires to a pair of electrodes. The two pairs of electrodes may be applied to two portions of a nerve, or to two different nerves, and by tilting the cradle to right or left the current can be sent through one or the other pair of electrodes.

The rheochord is an instrument by means of which the strength of a constant current passed through a nerve may be varied. It consists of a long wire (*r*, *r*, *r*) of high resistance stretched on a board. This

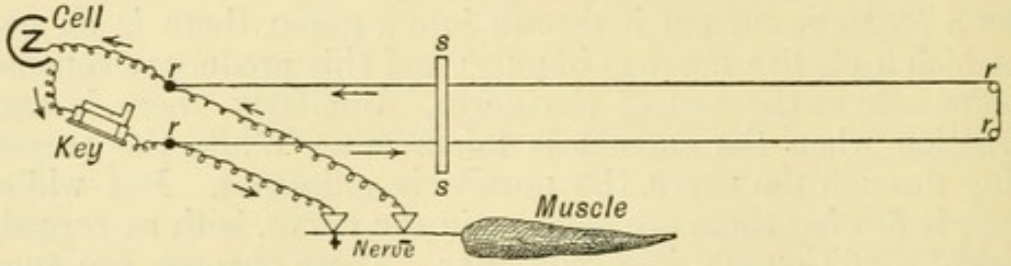


Fig. 194.—Simple Rheochord.

is placed as a bridge on the course of the battery current. (See fig. 194.) The current is thus divided into two parts: one part through the bridge, the other through the nerve, which is laid across the two non-polarisable electrodes at the ends of the wires. The resistance through the bridge is varied by the position of the slider (*s s*). The farther the slider is from the battery end of the instrument the longer is the bridge, and the higher its resistance, so that less current goes that way and more to the nerve.

The next figure shows the more complicated form of rheochord invented by Poggendorf. The number of turns of wire is greater, so

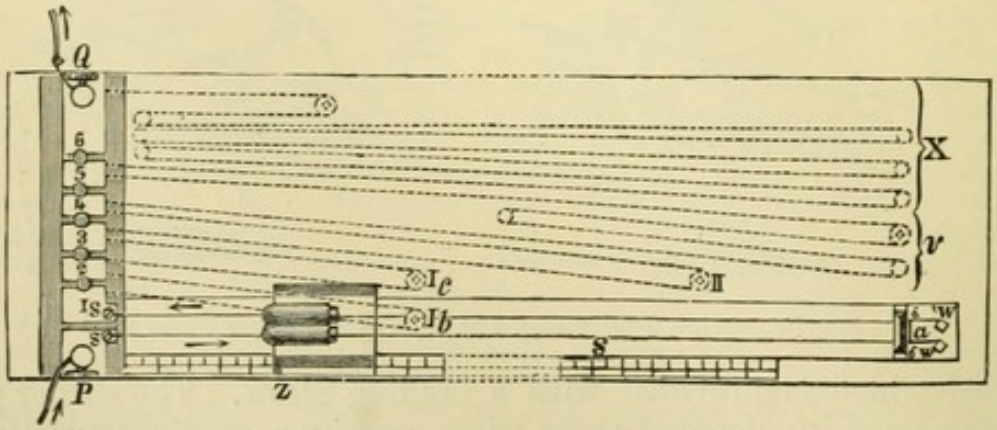


Fig. 195.—Poggendorf's Rheochord. (M'Kendrick.)

that the resistance can be varied to a much greater extent than in the simpler form of the instrument.

The term "electrotonus" includes two sets of changes in the nerve; first an electrical change, and secondly changes in excitability and conductivity. We will take the electrical change first.

Electrotonic currents.—The constant current is passed through the nerve from a battery, non-polarisable electrodes being used; it is called the polarising current. If portions of the nerve beyond the electrodes are connected ("led off") as in the diagram (fig. 196) by non-polarisable electrodes to galvanometers, a current will in each case be indicated by the swing of the galvanometer needles. The electrotonic current in the neighbourhood of the negative pole or kathode is called the *katelectrotonic current;* and that in the neighbourhood of the anode is called the *anelectrotonic current.* In both cases the electrotonic current has the same direction as the polarising current. These currents are dependent on the physical integrity of medullated

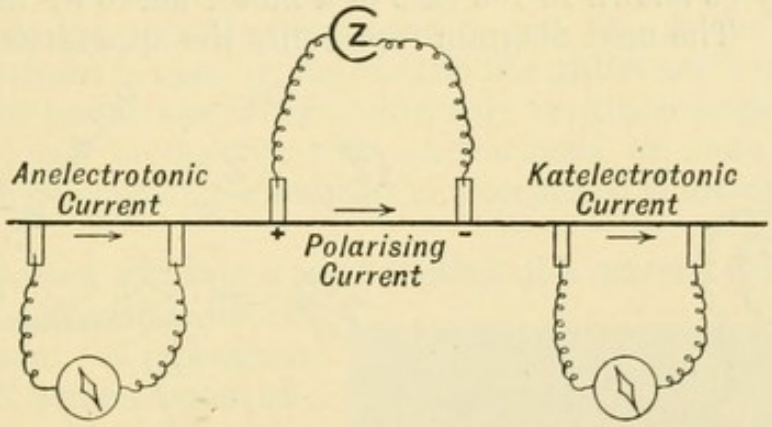


FIG. 196.—Electrotonic currents.

nerve; they are not found in muscle, tendon, or non-medullated nerve; they are absent or diminished in dead or degenerated nerve. They can, however, be very successfully imitated in a model made of zinc wire encased in cotton soaked with salt solution. The electrotonic currents must be carefully distinguished from the normal current of action, which is a momentary change rapidly propagated with a nervous impulse which may be produced by any method of stimulation. The electrotonic currents are produced only by an electrical (polarising) current; they vary in intensity with the polarising current, and last as long as the polarising current passes through the nerve.

After the polarising current is removed, after-electrotonic currents occur in different directions in the three regions tested.

(*a*) In the intrapolar region, the after-current is opposite in direction to the original polarising current; unless the polarising current is strong and of short duration, when it is in the same direction.

(*b*) In the katelectrotonic region, the after-current has the same direction as the katelectrotonic current.

(*c*) In the anelectrotonic region, the after-current has at first the same, then the opposite direction to the anelectrotonic current.

The experiment known as the *paradoxical contraction* depends upon electrotonic currents. The sciatic nerve of the frog divides in the lower part of the thigh into two parts. If one division is cut across, and its central end stimulated *electrically* (the spinal cord having been previously destroyed), the muscles supplied by the other branch contract; the nerve-fibres in this branch having been stimulated by the electrotonic variation in the divided branch.*

Electrotonic alterations of excitability and conductivity.—When a constant current is passed through a nerve, the excitability and conductivity of the nerve are increased in the region of the kathode, and diminished in the region of the anode. When the current is taken out these properties are temporarily increased in the neighbourhood of the anode, and diminished in that of the kathode.

This may be shown in the case of a motor nerve by the following experiment. The next diagram represents the apparatus used.

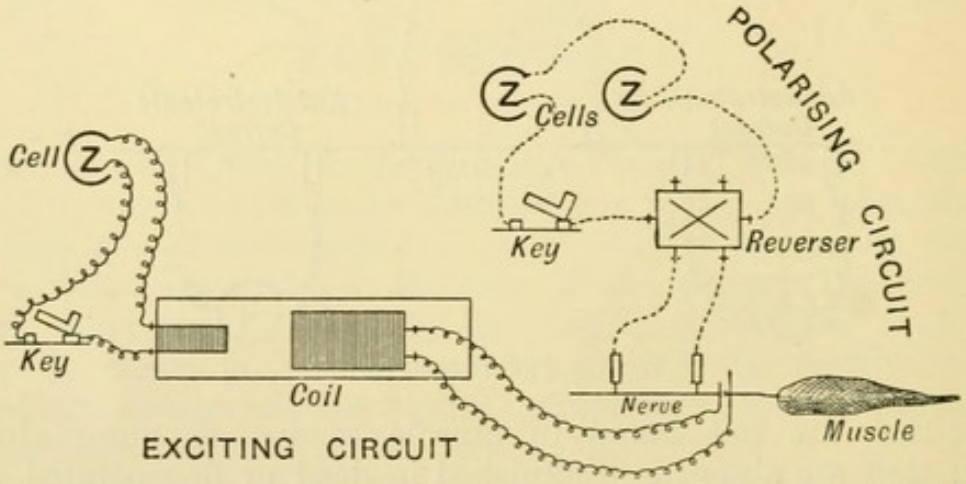


FIG. 197.—Diagram of apparatus used in testing electrotonic alterations of excitability.

An exciting circuit for single induction shocks is arranged in the usual way, the exciting electrodes being placed on the nerve near the muscle. A polarising circuit is also arranged, and includes a battery, key, and reverser; the current is passed into the nerve by means of non-polarisable electrodes. When the polarising current is thrown into the nerve, or taken out, a contraction of the muscle occurs, but these contractions may be disregarded for the present.

The exciting circuit is arranged with the secondary coil so far from the primary that the muscle responds to break only, and the tracing

* This experiment must be carefully distinguished from Kühne's gracilis experiment described on p. 173. In the gracilis experiment the nerve-fibres themselves *branch*, and any form of stimulation applied to one branch will cause contraction of both halves of the muscle. In the paradoxical contraction, the bundles of nerve-fibres are merely bound *side by side* in the sciatic trunk; there is therefore no possibility of conduction of a nerve impulse in both directions; the stimulus, moreover, must be an electrical one.

may be recorded on a stationary blackened cylinder. The cylinder is moved on a short distance, and this is repeated. The height of the lines drawn may be taken as a measure of the excitability of the nerve. The polarising current is then thrown in, in a *descending* direction (*i.e.*, towards the muscle); the kathode is thus the non-polarisable electrode near to the exciting electrodes. While the polarising current is flowing, take some more tracings by breaking the exciting current. The increase in the excitability of the nerve is shown by the much larger contractions of the muscle; probably a contraction will be obtained now at both make and break of the exciting current. After removing the polarising current, the contractions obtained by exciting the nerve will be for a short time smaller than the normal, but soon return to their original size.

Exactly the reverse occurs when the polarising current is *ascending, i.e.*, from the muscle towards the spinal cord. The non-polarisable electrode near the exciting electrodes is now the anode. While the polarising current is passing, the excitability of the nerve is diminished so that induction shocks which previously produced contractions of a certain size, now produce smaller contractions, or none at all. On removing the polarising current, the after-effect is increase of excitability.

The following figure is a reproduction of a tracing from an actual experiment. The after-effects are not shown. N represents a series of contractions obtained when the nerve is normal, K when it is katelectrotonic, A when it is anelectrotonic.

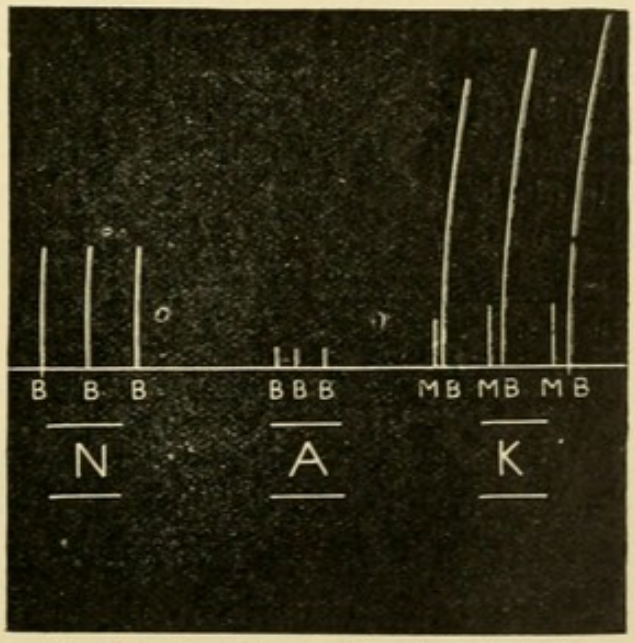


FIG. 198.—Electrotonus. M, make. B, break.

Exactly similar results are obtained if one uses mechanical stimuli, such as hammering the nerve, instead of induction shocks. The same is true for chemical stimuli. If the exciting electrodes are removed, and salt sprinkled on the nerve near the muscle, the latter soon begins to quiver; its contractions are increased by throwing in a descending and diminished by an ascending polarising current.

The increase in irritability is called **katelectrotonus**, and the decrease is called **anelectrotonus**. The accompanying diagram (fig. 199) shows how the effect is most intense at the points (*a k*) where

the electrodes are applied, and extends in gradually diminishing intensity on each side of them. Between the electrodes the increase shades off into the decrease, and it is evident that there must be a *neutral point* where there is neither increase nor decrease of irritability. The position of this neutral point is found to vary with the intensity

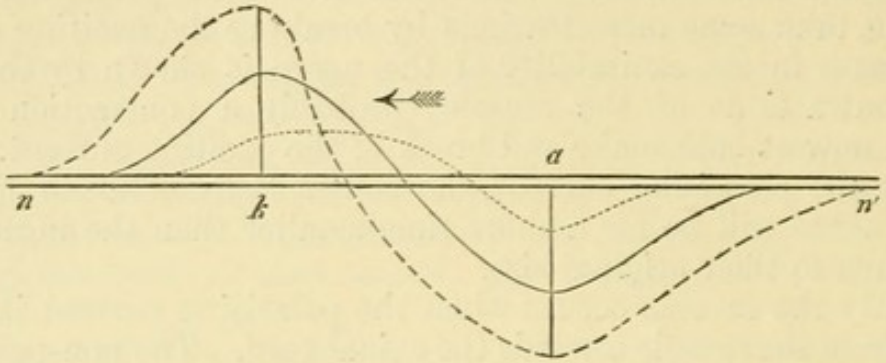


FIG. 199.—Diagram illustrating the effects of various intensities of the polarising current. n, n', nerve; a, anode; k, kathode; the curves above indicate increase, and those below decrease of irritability, and when the current is small the increase and decrease are both small, with the neutral point near a, and as the current is increased in strength, the changes in irritability are greater, and the neutral point approaches k.

of the polarising current—when the current is weak the point is nearer the anode, when strong nearer the kathode.

Pflüger's law of contraction.—The constant current sometimes causes a contraction both at make and break, sometimes at make only, sometimes at break only. The difference depends on the strength and direction of the current; and follows from the electrotonic changes of excitability and conductivity we have been studying. Increase of excitability acts as a stimulus; so that at the make the kathode is the stimulating electrode, and at the break the anode is the stimulating electrode.

The facts may be demonstrated in the following way (fig. 200):

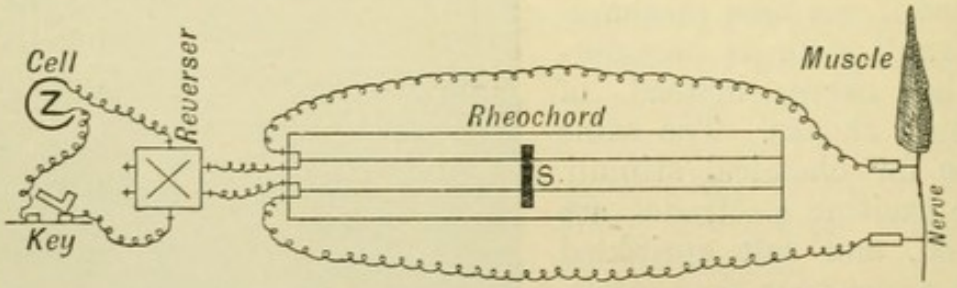


FIG. 200.—Arrangement of apparatus for demonstrating Pflüger's law.

from a battery lead the wires to the middle screws of a reverser (with cross wires), interposing a key; from one pair of end screws of the reverser lead wires to the binding screws of the rheochord; from these same screws of the rheochord the non-polarisable electrodes lead to the nerve of a nerve-muscle preparation. The strength of the current is varied by the slider S. The nearer S is to the binding screws the

less is the resistance in the rheochord circuit, and the less the current through the nerve. With a weak current, a contraction occurs at make only, but more readily, *i.e.* with a weaker current, when its direction is descending, *i.e.* towards the muscle. With a stronger current (ascending or descending) contraction occurs both at make and break. With a very strong current (six Groves), the contraction occurs only at make with a descending current; and only at break with an ascending current.

The contractions produced in the muscle of a nerve-muscle preparation by a constant current have been arranged in a table which is known as Pflüger's **Law of Contraction**.

Strength of Current used.	Descending Current.		Ascending Current.	
	Make.	Break.	Make.	Break.
Weak . . .	Yes.	No.	Yes.	No.
Moderate . .	Yes.	Yes.	Yes.	Yes.
Strong . . .	Yes.	No.	No.	Yes.

The increase of irritability at the kathode when the current is made is greater, and so more potent to produce a contraction than the rise of irritability at the anode when the current is broken; and so with weak currents the only effect is a contraction at the make. But when the strength of the current is increased the rise of excitability is in all cases sufficient to provoke a contraction (moderate effect in above table). The alteration in conductivity is not sufficient to prevent the impulses being propagated to the muscle.

With strong currents the case is a little more complicated, because here the diminution of conductivity is so great that certain regions of the nerve become impassable by nerve impulses. When the current has an ascending direction, the impulse at the break is started at the anode, and as this is next to the muscle there is no hindrance to the propagation of the impulse, but at the make the impulse started at the kathode is blocked by the extreme lowering of conductivity at the anode. When the current is descending the kathode is near the muscle, and so the impulse at make reaches the muscle without hindrance; but at the break, the impulse started at the anode has to traverse a region of nerve, the conductivity of which is so lessened that the excitation is not propagated to the muscle.

G. N. Stewart has stated in opposition to the foregoing statements that at the make conductivity is most lowered at the kathode, and at the break at the anode. In other words, conductivity and excitability vary in opposite directions. His results have, however, not been accepted by other physiologists, and are due to a complex set of excitatory and polarisation changes produced by the galvanometric

methods he adopted. Gotch's much more trustworthy experiments with the electrometer are directly opposed to those of Stewart. The following simple experiment devised by Gotch appears to be quite conclusive that conductivity like excitability is lessened at the anode when the current is made. Three non-polarisable electrodes are employed (fig. 201), the current is first closed from A_2 to K, and the time which intervenes before the muscle contracts is measured; it is then closed from A_1 to K, and the time again measured. In both cases, excitation occurs at K, but the time of response in the second case (A_1 to K) is longer, because in that case the nerve impulse has to traverse a region of nerve at A_1 in which the power of conduction is lessened.

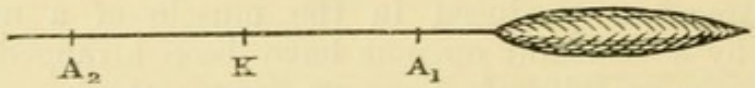


FIG. 201.—Diagram to illustrate Gotch's experiment with triple electrodes.

Sometimes (when the preparation is specially irritable) instead of a simple contraction a tetanus occurs at the make or break of the constant current. This is due to chemical (electrolytic) changes produced by the current, and is liable to occur at the break of a strong ascending current which has been passing for some time into the preparation, or at the make of a strong descending current; both being conditions which increase the excitability of the piece of nerve nearest to the muscle; this is called **Ritter's tetanus**, and may be stopped in the first case by throwing in the current in the same direction, or in the second case by throwing in a current in the opposite direction, *i.e.*, by conditions which lessen the irritability of this piece of nerve.

The same general laws hold for muscle as well as for nerve, but are more difficult to demonstrate; the main fact, however, that the kathode is the stimulating electrode at the make, and the anode at the break, may be shown by the following experiment: if a curarised, that is, a physiologically nerveless muscle, is arranged, as in the experiment, for demonstrating the muscle-wave (see fig. 149, p. 119), and a non-polarisable electrode placed at each end, the muscle-wave at the make of a constant current starts at the kathode and at the break at the anode.

An induced current in the secondary circuit of an inductorium may be regarded as a current of such short duration that the opening and closing are fused in their effects. This is true for all induction currents, whether produced by the make or break of the primary circuit. The kathode will always be the more effective in causing contraction.

RESPONSE OF HUMAN MUSCLES AND NERVES TO ELECTRICAL STIMULATION.

Perhaps the most important outcome of this study of the response of muscle and nerve to electrical stimulation is its application to the

muscles and nerves of the human body, because here it forms a most valuable method of diagnosis in cases of disease.

In the normal state, nerves can be stimulated either by induction shocks, or by the make and break of a constant current. In the case of the motor nerves this is shown by the contraction of the muscles they supply; and in the case of the sensory nerves by the sensations that are produced. In the case of the sensory nerves, the sensation produced by the constant current is most intense at the instant of make and break, or when the strength of the current is changed in the direction either of diminution or increase; but there is a slight sensation due doubtless to the electrotonic alterations in excitability which we have been studying, during the whole time that the current is passing.

When the nutrition of the nerves is impaired, much stronger currents of both the induced and constant kinds are necessary to evoke muscular contractions than in the normal state. When the nerves are completely *degenerated* (as, for instance, when they are cut off from the spinal cord, or when the cells in the cord from which they originate are themselves degenerated, as in infantile paralysis) no muscular contraction can be obtained on stimulating the nerves even with the strongest currents.

The changes in the excitability of the muscles are less simple, because in them there are two excitable structures, the terminations of the nerves, and the muscular fibres themselves. Of these, the nerve-fibres are the more sensitive to induction currents, and the faradic stimulation of a muscle under normal circumstances is by means of these motor nerve-endings. Thus we find that its excitability corresponds in degree to that of the motor nerve supplying it. The muscular fibres are, even in the normal state, less sensitive to faradism (that is, a succession of induction shocks) than the nerve, because they are incapable of ready response to stimuli so very short in duration as are the shocks of which a faradic current consists. The proof of this consists in the fact that under the influence of curare, which renders the muscle practically nerveless, the muscle requires a much stronger faradic current to stimulate it than in the normal state. When the nerve is degenerated, the make or break of the constant current stimulates the muscle as readily as in the normal state; but the contraction is propagated more slowly than that which occurs when the nerve-fibres are intact, and is due to the stimulation of the muscular fibres themselves. The fact that, under normal circumstances, the contraction which is caused by the constant current is as quick as that produced by an induction shock, is ground for believing that in health the constant, like the induced current, causes the muscle to contract chiefly by exciting the motor nerves within it.

When the motor nerve is degenerated, and will not respond to any form of electrical stimulation, the muscle also loses all its power of response to induction shocks. The nerve-degeneration is accompanied by changes in the nutrition of the muscular fibres, as is evidenced by their rapid wasting, and any power of response to faradism they possessed in the normal state is lost. But the response to the constant current remains, and is indeed more ready than in health, doubtless in consequence of nutritive changes which develop what the older pathologists called, truly enough, "irritable weakness." There is, moreover, a qualitative as well as a quantitative change. In health the first contraction to occur on gradually increasing the strength of the current is at the negative pole, when the circuit is closed (see Pflüger's law), and a stronger current is required before closure-contraction occurs at the positive pole. But in the morbid state we are discussing, closure-contraction may occur at the positive pole as readily as at the negative pole. This condition is called the "*Reaction of Degeneration.*"

Suppose a patient comes before one with muscular paralysis. This may be due to disease of the nerves, of the cells of the spinal cord, or of the brain. If the paralysis is due to brain disease, the muscles will be slightly wasted owing to disuse, but the electrical irritability of the muscles and nerves will be normal, as they are still in connection with the nerve-cells of the spinal cord that control their nutrition. But if the paralysis is due to disease either of the spinal cord or of the nerves, this nutritive influence can no longer be exercised over the nerves or muscles. The nerves will degenerate; the muscles waste rapidly; the irritability of the nerves to both forms of electrical stimulation will be lost; the muscles will not respond to the faradic current, but in relation to the constant current they will exhibit what we have called the "reaction of degeneration."

This illustrates the value of the electrical method as a means of diagnosis, that is, of finding out what is the matter with a patient. It is also a valuable means of treatment; by making the muscles contract artificially, their nutrition is kept up until restoration of the nerves or nerve-centres is brought about. Another illustration will indicate that the facts regarding electrotonic variation of excitability are true for sensory as well as for motor nerves; in a case of neuralgia, relief will often be obtained by passing a constant current through the nerve; but the pole applied to the nerve must be the anode which produces diminution of excitability, not the kathode which produces the reverse.

Waller has pointed out that Pflüger's law of contraction, as formulated for frogs' muscles and nerves, is true for human muscles and nerves in the main, but there are certain discrepancies. These arise from the method necessarily employed in man being different from those used with a muscle-nerve preparation. In a muscle-nerve preparation the nerve is dissected out, the two electrodes placed on

it, and the current has of necessity to traverse the piece of nerve between the two electrodes. In man, the current is applied by means of electrodes or rheophores which consist of metal discs covered with wash leather, and soaked in brine. One of these is placed on the moistened skin over the nerve, and the other on some indifferent point, such as the back. The current finds its way from one electrode to the other, not necessarily through the nerves to any great extent (though it will be concentrated at the nerve as it leaves the anode or reaches the kathode), but diffuses widely through the body, seeking the paths of least resistance. Thus it is impossible to get pure anodic or kathodic effects. If the anode is applied over the nerve, the current enters by a series of points (polar zone), and leaves by a second series of points (peripolar zone). The second series of points is very close to the first, as the current leaves the nerve as soon as possible, seeking less resistant paths. The polar zone will be in the condition of anelectrotonus, the peripolar in that of katelectrotonus, so that although the former effect will predominate, the points being more concentrated, the latter effect may prevent a pure anelectrotonic effect being observed (fig. 202).

Pflüger's law of contraction according to which excitation occurs at the kathode on the make of a constant current, and at the anode on the break, holds good for all excitable tissues. The excitation at the break is probably really due to the make of a polarisation current having its kathode at the former anode, and is therefore fundamentally of the same nature as the make contraction ; or, in general

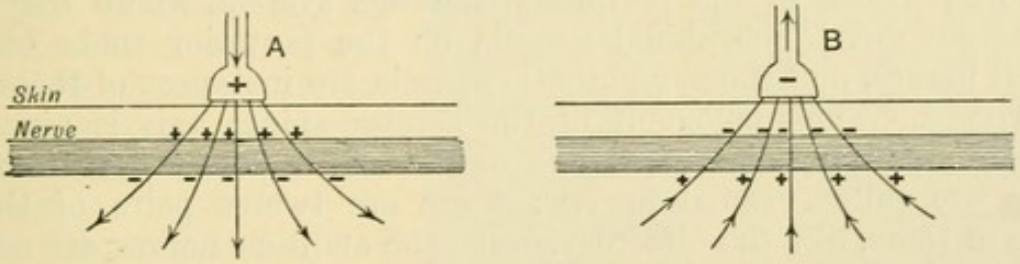


FIG. 202.—Electrodes applied to the skin over a nerve-trunk. In A the polar area is anelectrotonic, and the peripolar katelectrotonic. The former condition, therefore, preponderates, since the current is more concentrated. In B the conditions are reversed, the polar zone corresponding here to the kathode. (After Waller.)

terms, excitation occurs only at the place where a current leaves the excitable tissue. No doubt the effect is determined by the electrolytic changes occurring at the point of entry and exit of the current ; the development of kat-ions must therefore be the chemical change that results in excitation. It is difficult to imagine that in a degenerated muscle there should be a reversal of such a fundamental law, and that excitation should be associated with the development of an-ions. Yet this is supposed to occur in the qualitative change known as the "reaction of degeneration." Page May has investigated this question afresh, and finds that the reversal of the law is only apparent, not real, and is due to the imperfect method which clinical observers must necessarily employ when testing the electrical reaction of muscles through the skin. By the use of appropriate electrodes on the degenerated muscles of animals, it is possible to detect the source of error. Let us substitute a muscle for a nerve in the diagrams of fig. 202 ; the current enters a few fibres at the anode, then spreads in all directions, and leaves the muscle by a number of diffused kathodic points. If the muscle is degenerated, its excitability is high, and the ready response at the anode when the current is made does not really occur at the actual anode, but in the neighbouring and more widespread peripolar kathodes. In other words, degenerated muscle obeys the general law of excitable tissues, and excitation occurs only at the situation where the current leaves the muscle. At the actual anode there is relaxation or absence of effect ; this is obviously not observable through the human skin because the change is very limited in extent ; it can be actually seen in the exposed muscles of an animal.

CHAPTER XVII

NERVE-CENTRES

THE nerve-centres consist of the brain and spinal cord; they are characterised by containing nerve-cells, from which the nerve-fibres of the nerves originate. Small collections of nerve-cells are found also in portions of the peripheral nervous system, where they are called *ganglia*. The spinal ganglia on the posterior roots of the spinal nerves, and the sympathetic ganglia are instances of these.

The general arrangement of the cerebro-spinal axis is given in the accompanying diagram. The nerves which take origin from the brain are called cranial nerves; there are twelve pairs of these; some of them, like the olfactory, optic, and auditory nerves, are nerves of special sense; others supply the region of the head with motor and sensory fibres. One pair (the tenth), called the pneumogastric or vagus nerves, are mainly distributed to the viscera of the thorax and abdomen, and a part of another pair (the eleventh), called the spinal accessory nerves, unites with the vagus prior to such distribution. We shall in our subsequent study of the heart, lungs, stomach and other organs have frequently to allude to these nerves. The first two pairs of cranial nerves (the olfactory and the optic) arise from the cerebrum. The remaining ten pairs are connected with the district of grey matter called the floor of the fourth ventricle or its immediate neighbourhood; this tract of grey matter is situated at the lower part of the brain where it joins the spinal cord; this portion of the brain is called the *Bulb* or *Medulla oblongata*.

The spinal nerves are arranged in pairs, 31 in number. Their general structure and functions we have already studied (pp. 168-170).

The more intimate structure of the brain and spinal cord we shall consider at length in subsequent chapters. For the present we shall deal with some of the general aspects of the nerve-centres, both as regards structure and function.

The brain and spinal cord consist of two kinds of tissue, easily distinguishable by the naked eye. They are called respectively *white matter* and *grey matter*.

White matter is composed of medullated nerve-fibres, which differ in structure from the medullated fibres of nerve by having no primitive sheath (neurilemma).

Grey matter is the true central material so far as regards function; that is to say, it is the part which receives and sends out nervous impulses; it is characterised by containing the bodies of the nerve-cells.

In the brain the grey matter is chiefly situated on the surface, forming what is called the *cortex;* the white matter and certain subsidiary masses of grey matter are in the interior.

In the spinal cord, the grey matter is in the interior, the white matter outside.

In both grey and white matter the nerve-cells and nerve-fibres are supported by a peculiar tissue which is called *neuroglia.* It is composed of cells and fibres, the latter being prolonged from the cells. Some of the fibres are radially arranged. They start from the outer ends of the ciliated epithelium cells that line the central canal of the spinal cord and the ventricles of the brain, and diverge constantly branching towards the surface of the organ, where they end by slight enlargements attached to

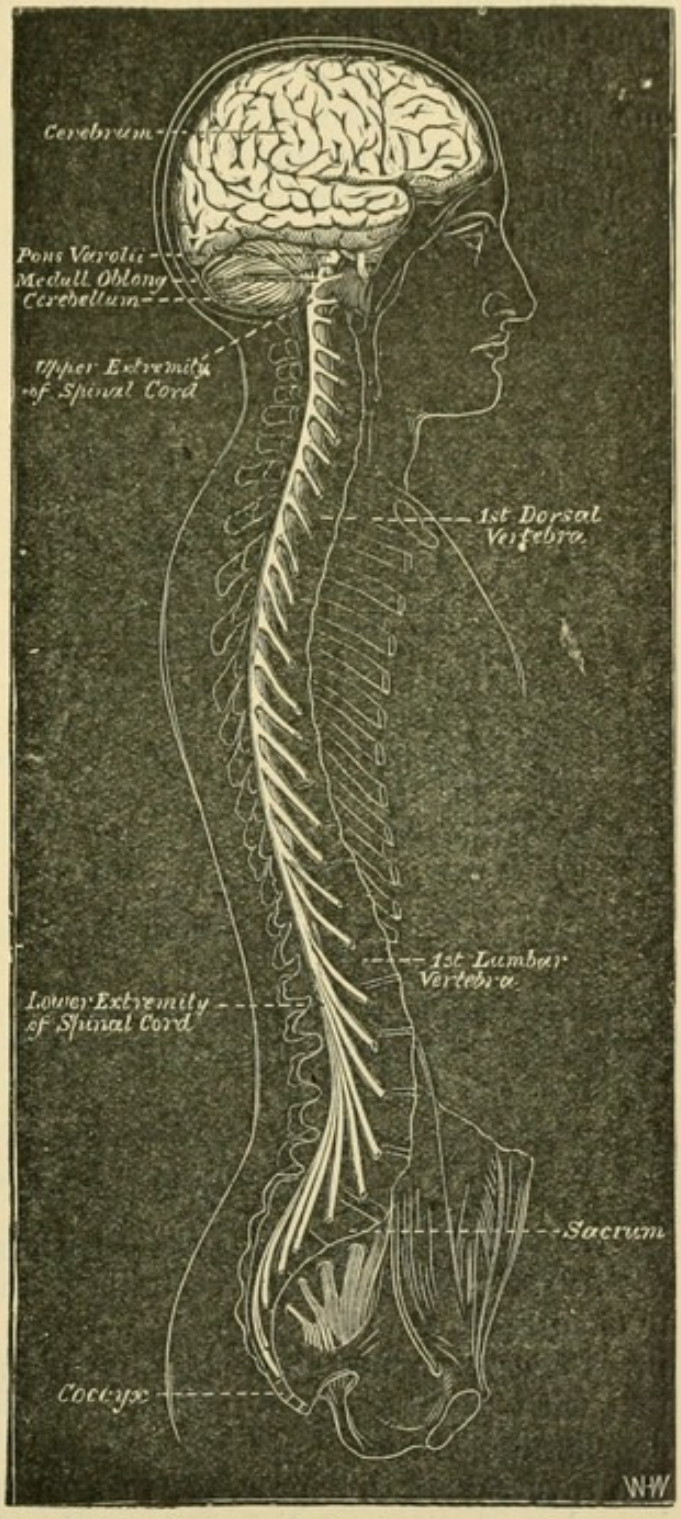


FIG. 203.—View of the cerebro-spinal axis of the nervous system. The right half of the cranium and trunk of the body has been removed by a vertical section; the membranes of the brain and spinal cord have also been removed, and the roots and first part of the fifth and ninth cranial, and of all the spinal nerves of the right side, have been dissected out and laid separately on the wall of the skull and on the several vertebræ opposite to the place of their natural exit from the cranio-spinal cavity. (After Bourgery.)

the pia mater. The other fibres of the tissue are cell processes of the neuroglia or glia cells proper, or spider cells as they are sometimes termed (see fig. 204).

Neuroglia is thus a connective tissue in function, but it is not one in origin. Like the rest of the nervous system, it originates from the outermost layer of the embryo, the epiblast. All true connective tissues are mesoblastic.

Chemically, it is very different from connective tissues. It consists of an insoluble material called *neuro-keratin*, or nerve-horn, similar to the horny substance, keratin, which is found in the surface layers of the epidermis.

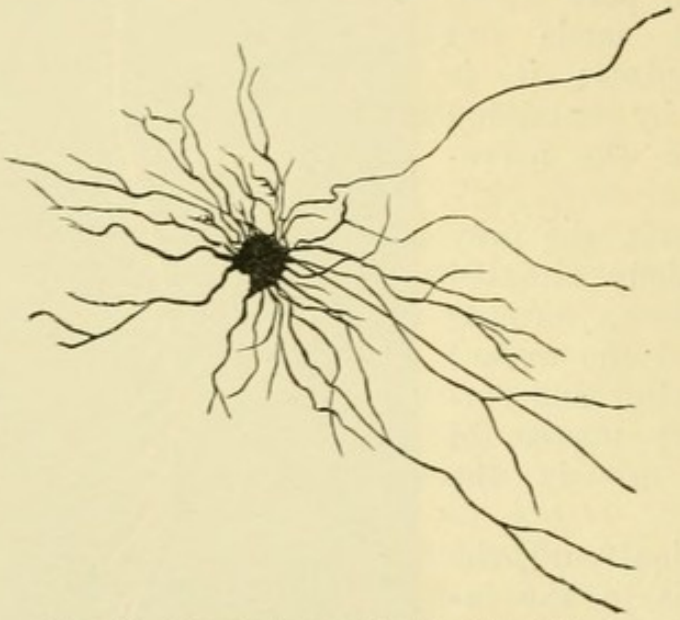


FIG. 204.—Branched neuroglia-cell. (After Stöhr.)

Structure of Nerve-Cells.

Nerve-cells differ a good deal both in shape and size.

In the early embryonic condition, the future nerve-cell is a small nucleated mass of protoplasm without processes. As development progresses branches grow, and by this means it is brought into contact with the branches of other nerve-cells. When the nerve-cells degenerate, as they do in some cases of brain and cord disease, there is a reversal of this process; just as in a dying tree the terminal branches, those most distant from the seat of nutrition, are the first to wither, so it is in the degenerating nerve-cell. If one traces the structure of nerve-cells throughout the zoological series, there is also seen an increase in their complexity, and the number of points of contact, produced by an increase in the number and complexity of the branches, multiplies (fig. 205).

The simplest nerve-cells known are termed *bipolar*. In the lower animals the two processes come off from the opposite ends of the cells; the cell, in other words, appears as a nucleated enlargement on the course of a nerve-fibre. Fig. 206 (A) shows one of these nerve-cells from the Gasserian ganglion of the pike. The cells of the Gasserian and spinal ganglia in the mammalian embryo are also bipolar, but as development progresses, the two branches become fused for a considerable distance, so that in the fully formed animal each cell appears to be *unipolar*. This is shown in a more diagrammatic way in fig. 187, p. 168. The bifurcation of the nerve-fibre is

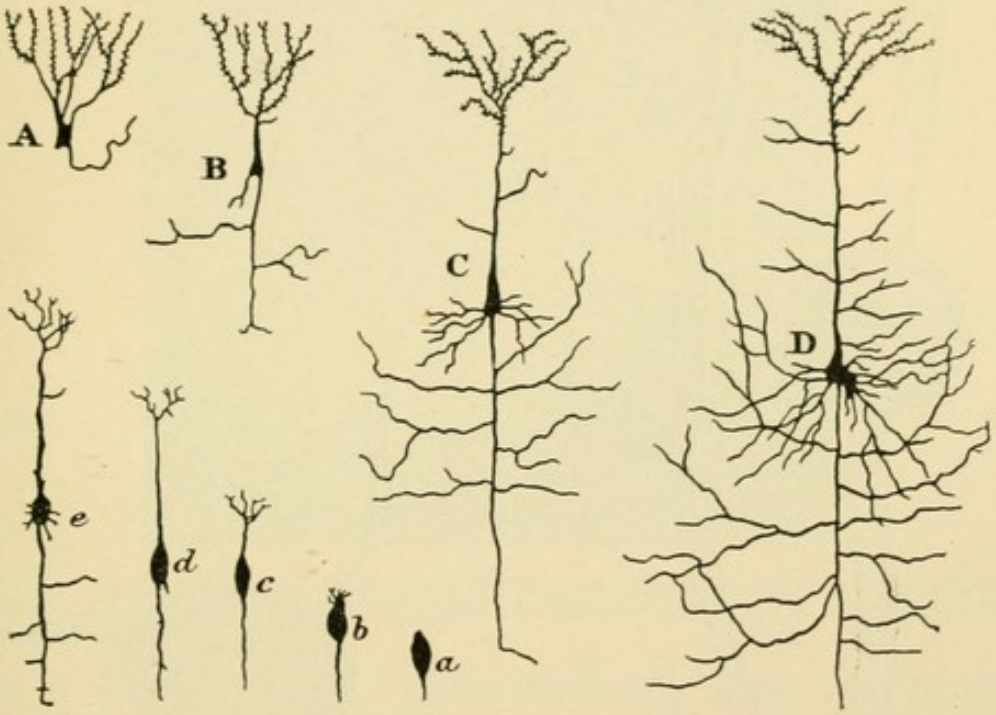


FIG. 205.—Diagram after Ramon y Cajal to show the ontogenetic (or embryological) and phylogenetic (*i.e.* in the animal series) development of a neuron. A, cerebral cell of frog; B, newt; C, mouse; D, man. As the place in the zoological series rises, the neuron increases in complexity and in the number of points of contact; this is produced partly by an increase of the dendrons, partly by an increase in the side branches or collaterals of the axon. *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*, show the early stages in the development of a similar cell in the human embryo; the first branch of the cell to appear (in *a*) is the axon; the dendrons are later outgrowths. The reversal of this process takes place in primary degeneration.

spoken of as a T-shaped junction. As will be seen in fig. 206 (C), the nerve process has a convoluted course on the surface of the cell before it bifurcates. In these ganglia it should be also noted that each cell is enclosed within a connective tissue sheath, and the nuclei seen are those of the connective tissue corpuscles.

In the sympathetic ganglia, the cells may have a similar structure, and here also the nucleated sheath is seen. In some cases, however, when there appear to be two fibres connected to a cell, one of them is really derived from another cell, and is passing to end in a ramification which envelopes the ganglion cell; it may sometimes be coiled spirally around the issuing nerve-fibre.

The majority of nerve-cells found in the body are *multipolar*. Here the cell becomes angular or stellate. Fig. 207 shows the usual form of cell present in sympathetic ganglia. From the angles of the cell, branches originate; the majority of these branches divide and subdivide until each ends in an arborescence of fine twigs or fibrils;

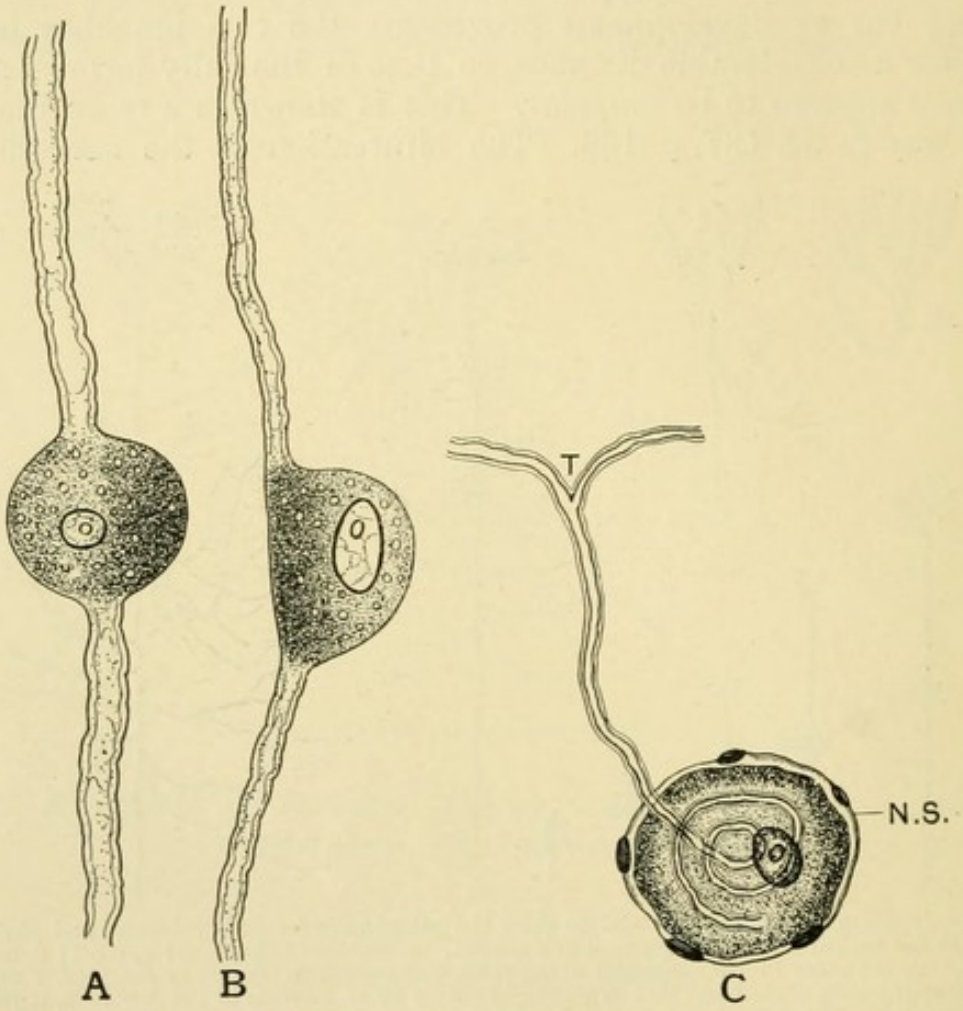


FIG. 206.—Bipolar nerve-cells. A. From the Gasserian ganglion of the pike (after Bidder). B. From a spinal ganglion of a 4½ weeks' human embryo (after His). C. Adult condition of the mammalian spinal ganglion cell: N. S. nucleated sheath; only the nuclei seen in profile are represented. T. is the T-shaped junction (after Retzius).

but one process, and one process only, of each cell becomes the axis cylinder of a nerve-fibre.

Passing next to the central nervous system, we here again find the multipolar cell is the principal kind present.

The next figure (fig. 208) shows one of the typical multipolar cells of the spinal cord. Here again, only one process (*a*) becomes the axis cylinder of a nerve-fibre, and the others break up into arborisations of fibrils. The cells have a finely fibrillar structure, and the fibrils can be traced into the axis cylinder process and the other branches of the cell. Between the fibrils the protoplasm of the cell

contains a number of angular or spindle-shaped masses, which have a great affinity of basic aniline dyes like methylene blue. They are

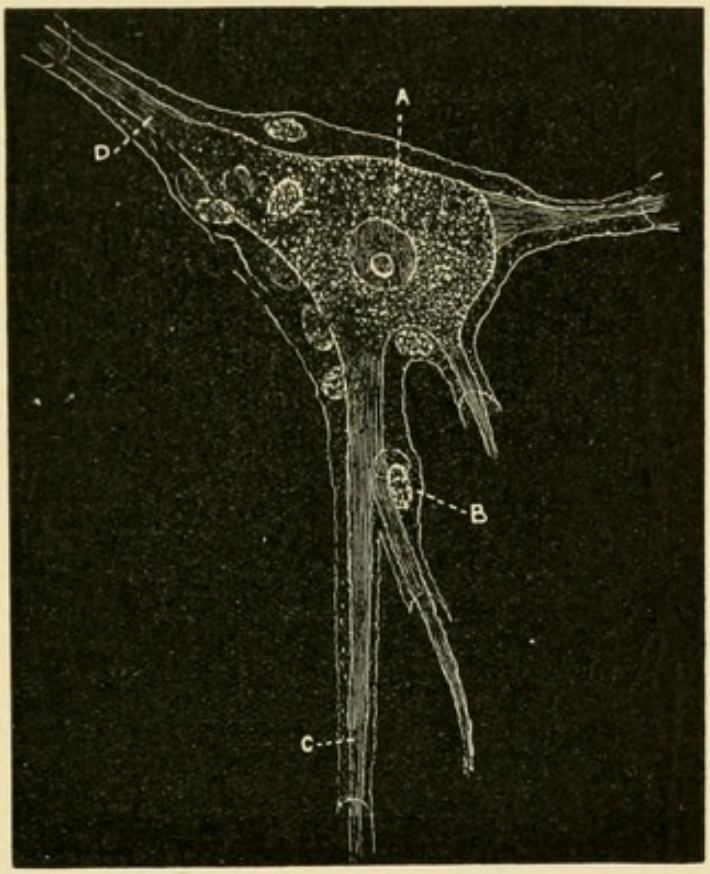


FIG. 207.—An isolated sympathetic ganglion cell of man, showing sheath with nucleated cell lining, B. A. Ganglion cell, with nucleus and nucleolus. C. Branched process. D. Axis cylinder process (Key and Retzius.) × 750.

known as *Nissl's granules*. These nerve-cells often contain, especially in the adult, granules of pigment, usually yellow, the nature of which has not been determined.

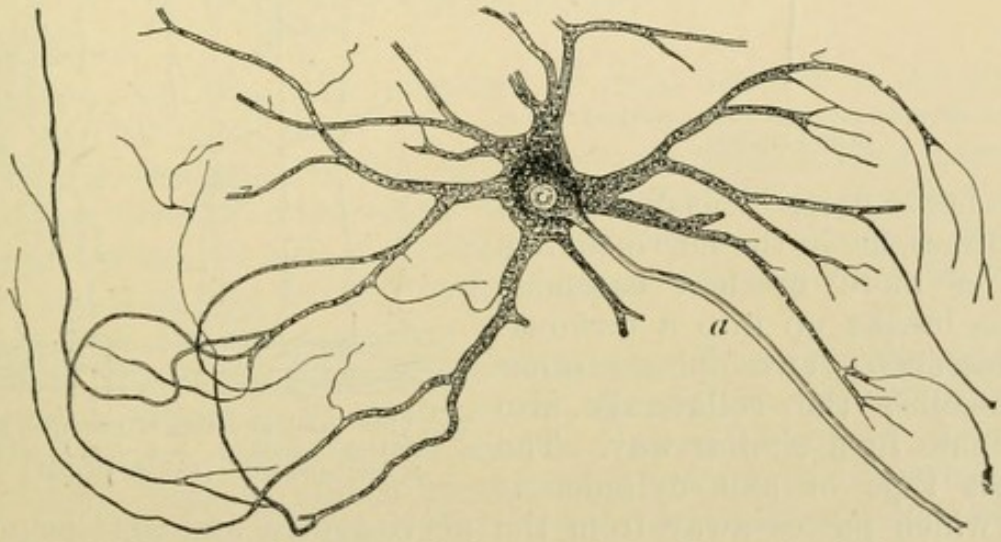


FIG. 208.—Multipolar nerve-cell from anterior horn of spinal cord; *a*, axis cylinder process. (Max Schultze.)

In preparations made by Golgi's chromate of silver method, the cells and their processes are stained an intense black by a deposit of silver. The various structures in the cells (nucleus, granules, fibrils, etc.), are not visible in such preparations, but the great advantage of the method is that it enables one to follow the branches to their finest ramifications. It is thus found that the axis cylinder process is not unbranched, as represented in fig. 208, but invariably gives off side-branches, which are called *collaterals;* these pass into the adjacent nerve-tissue. The axis cylinder then acquires the sheaths, and thus is converted

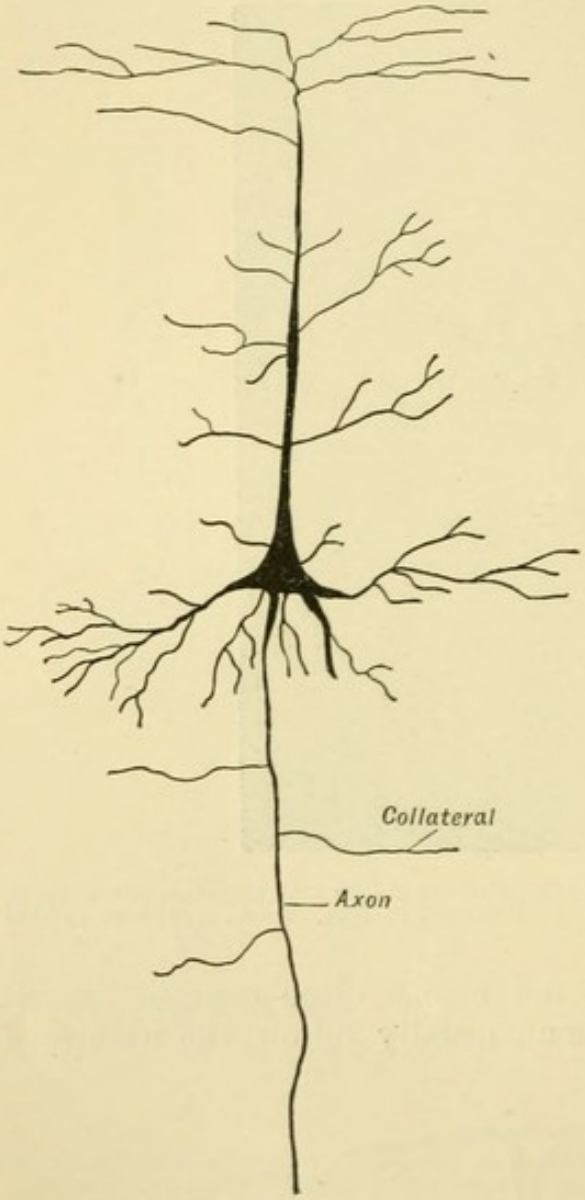


FIG. 209.—Pyramidal cell of human cerebral cortex. Golgi's method.

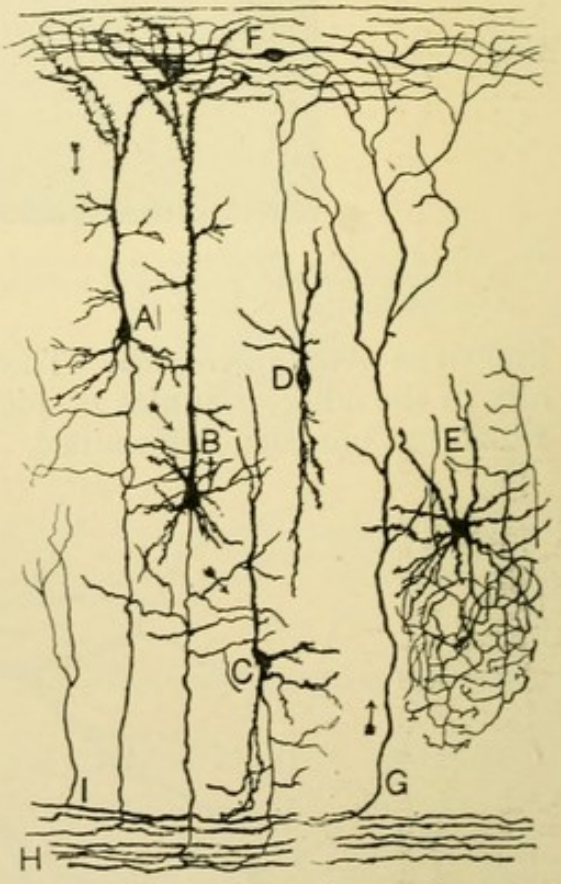


FIG. 210.—Cerebral cortex of mammal, prepared by Golgi's method. A, B, C, D, F, nerve-cells; E, neuroglia-cell. (Ramon y Cajal.)

into a nerve-fibre. This nerve-fibre sometimes, as in the nerve-centres after a more or less extended course, breaks up into a terminal arborescence enveloping other nerve-cells; the collaterals also terminate in a similar way. The longest type of axis cylinder is that which passes away from the nerve-centre, and gets bound up with other similarly sheathed axis cylinders to form a nerve; but

all ultimately terminate in an arborescence of fibrils in various end organs (end-plates, muscle spindles, etc.).

In the grey matter of the cerebrum the nerve-cells are various in shape and size, but the most characteristic cells are pyramidal in shape. They are especially large and numerous in what are called the motor areas of the brain. The apex of the cell is directed to the surface; the apical process is long and tapering, and finally breaks up into fibrils that lie parallel to the surface of the brain (*tangential fibres*). From the lower angles and other parts branching processes

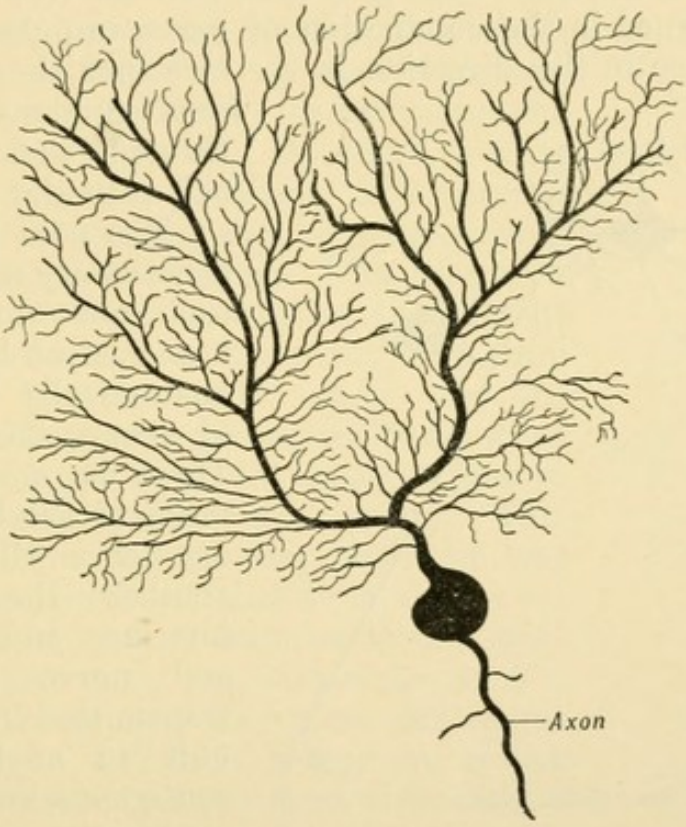


FIG. 211.—Cell of Purkinje from the human cerebellum. Golgi's method. (After Szymonowicz.)

originate; the axis cylinder comes off from the base of the pyramid. (See figs. 209, 210).

The grey matter of the cerebellum contains a large number of small nerve-cells, and one layer of large cells. These are flask-shaped, and are called the *cells of Purkinje*. The neck of the flask breaks up into branches, and the axis cylinder process comes off from the base of the flask (fig. 211).

The whole nervous system consists of nerve-cells and their branches, supported by neuroglia in the central nervous system, and by connective tissue in the nerves. Some of the processes of a nerve-cell break up almost immediately into smaller branches ending in arborescences of fine twigs; these branches, which used to be

called protoplasmic processes, are now termed *dendrons*. One branch becomes the long axis cylinder of a nerve-fibre, but it also ultimately terminates in an arborisation; it is called the *axis cylinder process*, or, more briefly, the *axon*. The term *neuron* or *neurone* is applied to the complete *nerve-unit*, that is, the body of the cell, and all its branches. Some observers have supposed that the axis cylinder process is the only one that conducts nerve impulses, the dendrons being rootlets which suck up nutriment for the nerve-cell. This view has not, however, been accepted; the dendrons may be nutritive, but there is no doubt that they also, like the rest of the nerve-unit, are concerned in the conduction of nerve impulses. A strong piece of evidence in this direction is the fact that the fibrils of the axis cylinder may be traced through the body of the cell into the dendrons.

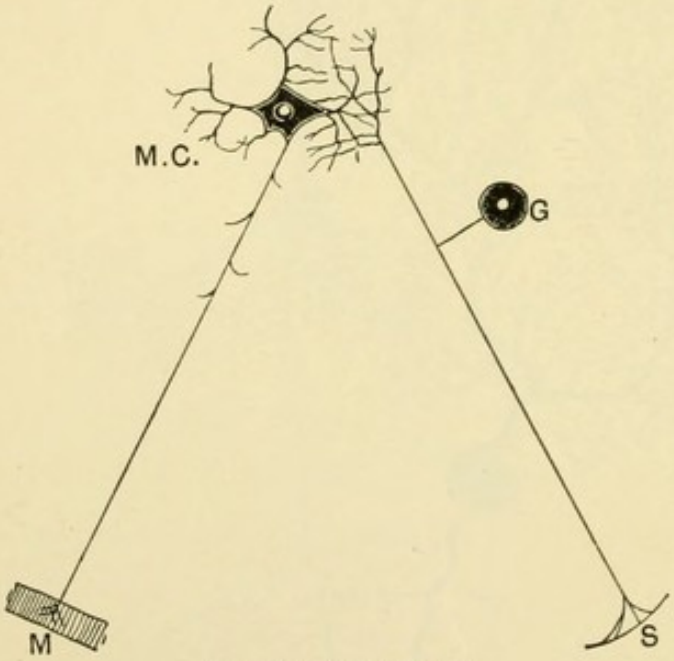


FIG. 212.—Reflex action.

The next idea which it is necessary to grasp is, that each nerve-unit (cell *plus* branches of both kinds) is anatomically independent of every other nerve-unit. There is no true anastomosis of the branches from one nerve-cell with those of another; the arborisations interlace and intermingle, and nerve impulses are transmitted from one nerve-unit to another, through contiguous, but not through continuous structures. A convenient expression for the intermingling of arborisations is *synapse* (literally, a clasping).

Fig. 212 is a diagram of the nervous path in a reflex action. Excitation occurs at S, the skin or other sensory surface, and the impulse is transmitted by the sensory nerve-fibre to the nerve-centre, where it ends not in a cell-body, but by arborising around one or more cell-bodies and their dendrons. The only cell-body in actual continuity with the sensory nerve-fibre is the one in the spinal ganglion (G) from which it grew.

The terminal arborisation of the sensory nerve-fibre merely interlaces with the dendrons of the motor nerve-cell; yet simply by this synapse, the motor nerve-cell (M C) is affected and sends an impulse by its axis cylinder process to the muscle (M).

A very rough illustration which may help one in realising this

may be taken as follows: Suppose two trees standing side by side; their stems will represent the axis cylinders; their branches the dendrons. If the trees are close together the branches of one will intermingle with those of the other: there is no actual branch from the one which becomes continuous with any branch of the other; but yet if the stem of one is vigorously shaken, the close intermixture of the branches will affect the other so that it also moves.

Another very important general idea which we must next get hold of, is that a nervous impulse does not necessarily travel along the same nerve-fibre all the way, but there is what we may term a *system of relays*. The nervous system is very often compared to a telegraphic system throughout a country. The telegraph offices represent the nerve-centres, the afferent nerve-fibres correspond to the wires that carry the messages to the central offices, and the efferent nerve-fibres are represented by the wires that convey messages from the central offices to more or less distant parts of the country. This illustration will serve us very well for our present purpose, provided that it is always remembered that a nervous impulse is not electricity. Suppose, now, one wishes to send a message from the metropolis, which will represent the brain, to a distant house, say in the Highlands of Scotland. There is no wire straight from London to that house, but the message ultimately reaches the house; one wire takes the message to Edinburgh; another wire carries it on to the telegraph station in the town nearest to the house in question; and the last part of the journey is accomplished by a messenger on foot or horseback. There are at least two relays on the journey.

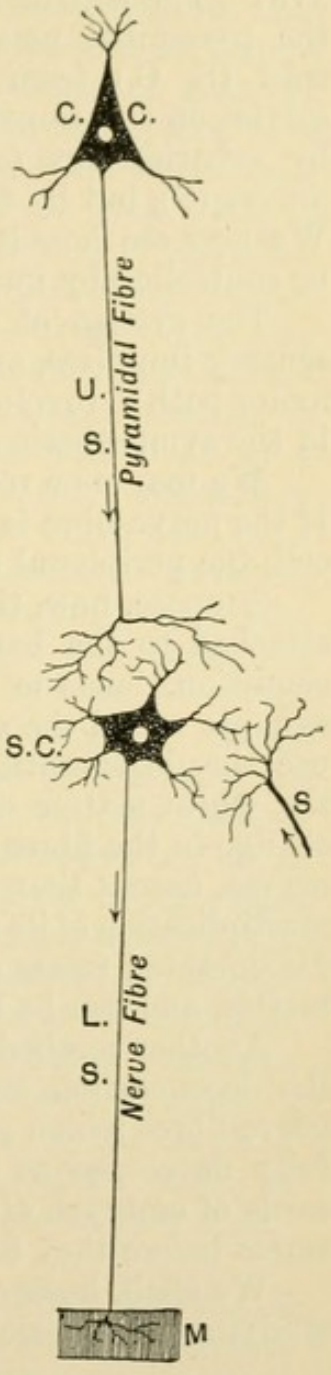


FIG. 213.—Diagram of an element of the motor path. U.S., upper segment; L.S., lower segment; C.C., cell of cerebral cortex; S.C., cell of spinal cord, in anterior cornu; M., the muscle; S., path from sensory nerve-roots. (After Gowers.)

It is just the same with the nervous system. Suppose one wishes to move the arm; the impulse starts in the nerve-cells of the brain, but there are no fibres that go straight from the brain to the muscles of the arm. The impulse travels down the spinal cord, by what are called pyramidal fibres, which form synapses with the nerve-cells of the spinal cord, and

from these cells, fresh nerve-fibres pass on the impulse to the arm-muscles. This is shown in the accompanying diagram (fig. 213). The cell of the cerebral grey matter is represented by C. C., the pyramidal nerve-fibre arborises around the cell of the spinal cord (S. C.) from which the motor nerve-fibre arises, and which carries on the impulse. The spinal cord cells are thus surrounded by arborisations (synapses) derived not only from the sensory nerves (S), but by fibres from the upper part of the nervous system. We now see how it is possible that reflex actions in the cord may be controlled by impulses from the brain.

The system of relays is still more complicated in the case of sensory impulses, as we shall see later on; the same is true for the motor path to involuntary muscle, accessory cell-stations being situated in the sympathetic ganglia.

We may now return for a moment to the subject of degeneration. If the nerve-fibre is cut off from its connection with the spinal nerve-cell, the peripheral end degenerates as far as the muscle.

Suppose, now, the pyramidal fibre were cut across, the piece still attached to the brain-cell would remain in a comparatively normal condition, but the peripheral end would degenerate as far as the synapse round the spinal cell (S. C.), but not beyond. We can thus use the degeneration method to trace out tracts of nerve-fibres in the white matter of the central nervous system. The histological change in the fibres is here the same as that already described in the nerves, except that, as there is no primitive sheath, there can be no multiplication of its nuclei; there is instead an over-growth of neuroglia. Degenerated tracts consequently stain differently from healthy white matter, and can be by this means easily traced.

Another method of research which leads to the same results as the degeneration method is called the embryological method. The nerve-fibres which grow from different groups of nerve-cells become fully developed at different dates, and so, by examining brains and cords of embryos of different ages, one is able to make out individual tracts before they have blended in the general mass of white matter.

We shall, however, return to this subject when later on we are studying the physiology of the central nervous system in detail.

The Significance of Nissl's Granules.

If portions of the brain or spinal cord are fixed in absolute alcohol, and sections obtained from the hardened pieces are stained by means of methylene blue, the nerve-cells exhibit a characteristic appearance. The nucleus and nucleolus take up the blue stain, but the total amount of chromatin present in the nucleus is not large, except in embryonic nerve-cells; throughout the cell body a number of angular-

shaped masses, which are termed *Nissl's granules*, are also stained blue. These extend some distance into the dendrons, but not into the axon. The substance of which they are composed is termed *chromatoplasm*, or *chromophilic material*. The existence of granules in cells which have an affinity for basic dyes like methylene blue is not at all common; the granules in the majority of the white blood corpuscles, for instance, have an affinity for acid dyes. Microchemical methods have shown that the main constituent of the Nissl granules is an iron-containing nucleo-protein. The name *kinetoplasm* has been given to it by Marinesco in order to express the idea that it forms a source of energy to the cell. It can hardly be denied that the substance of which the granules are composed, forming as it does so large a proportion of the cell-contents, and made of a material in which nuclein forms an important constituent, is intimately related to the nutritional condition of the neuron. Some have even compared it to the granular material, which is present in secreting cells; in these cells before secretion occurs, the granules accumulate, and during the act of secretion they are discharged and converted into constituents of the secretion. It is stated by some observers that the Nissl granules are used up during the discharge of energy from nerve-cells, and it certainly is the case that if the cells are examined after an epileptic fit, in which there has been a very massive discharge of impulses, the Nissl granules have disappeared, or at least broken up into fine dust-like particles, so that the cell presents a more uniform blue staining (see fig. 214). It is, however, doubtful whether this is due to a transformation associated with intense activity, or whether it may not be caused by venosity of the blood. The cells are very sensitive to altered vascular conditions; anæmia, for instance, produces a similar change accompanied with swelling of the cell, and swelling and in extreme cases extrusion of the nucleus. High fever (hyperpyrexia) causes a very similar change, which is doubtless associated with the coagulation of the proteins of the cell-protoplasm by the high temperature.

Since attention has been directed towards the Nissl granules, a literature which has become alarmingly vast during the last few years has sprung up in relation to them. This is quite easy to understand, for neurologists have by this sensitive test been able to identify changes in the cells which could not be detected by the previous methods of staining. Thus the cells have been examined in various diseases, and after being subjected to the action of various poisons. In a new subject of this kind there is, as would be expected, considerable divergence of views, and even the fundamental question has not yet been answered satisfactorily whether the Nissl granules are present as such in the living cell, or whether they are artifacts produced by the fixative action of strong alcohol. The fact that they cannot be

demonstrated when the cells are stained by the injection of methylene blue into the circulation before the animal is killed is a very strong piece of evidence in favour of the latter view. But, whichever view is correct, the method is a valuable one, and Nissl's views on this question appear to be indisputable: they are briefly as follows:— Healthy cells fixed and stained in a constant manner will appear the same under constant optical conditions, and the appearances then seen form the equivalent of such healthy cells during life. It follows that if the cells prepared by the same method and examined under the same conditions show a difference from the equivalent or symbol of healthy cells, the difference is the measure of some change that has occurred during life.

Chromatolysis is the term applied to designate the disappearance

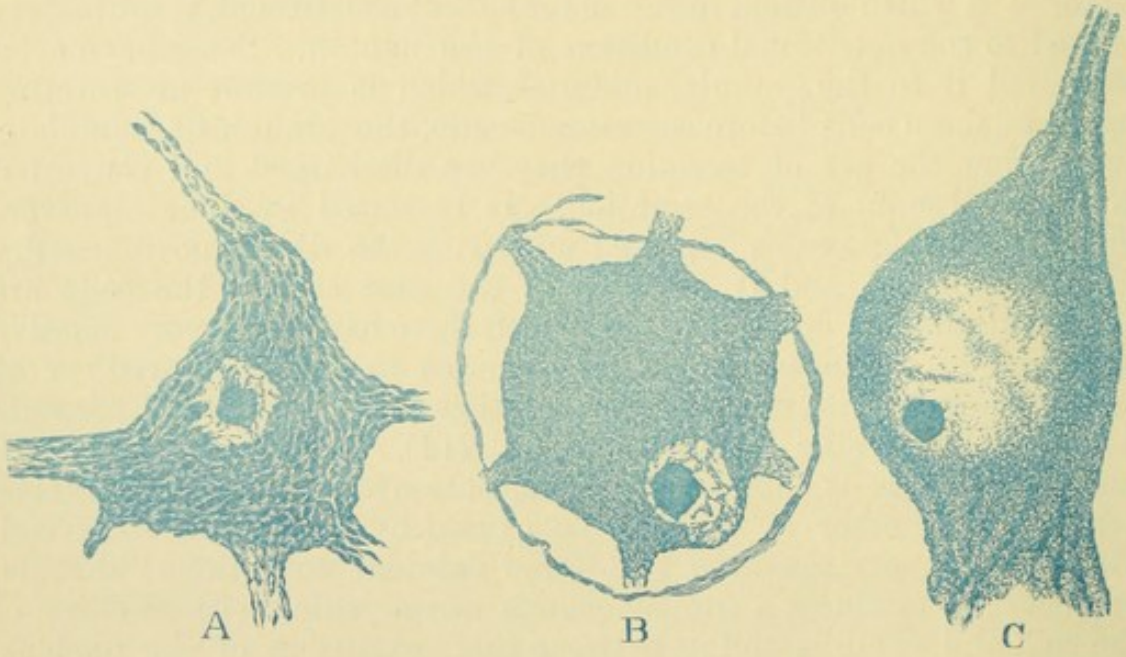


FIG. 214.—Nissl's granules. A. Normal pyramidal cell of human cerebral cortex. B. Swollen œdematous pyramidal cell from a case of status epilepticus. Notice diffuse staining, and absence of Nissl's granules; the nucleus is enlarged and eccentric. The lymph space around the cell is dilated. C. Pyramidal cell of dog after ligature of vessels going to brain and consequent anæmia. Notice great swelling of the nucleus, and advanced chromatolysis, most marked at the periphery of the cell. 700 diameters. (After Mott.)

or disintegration of the Nissl granules. The process generally begins at the periphery of the cell and in the dendrons, but in advanced cases the whole cell may be affected. We have already alluded to the fact that chromatolysis occurs in various abnormal states, and the diminution of the chromophilic nucleo-protein indicates a diminution of the vital interaction of the highly phosphorised nucleus with the surrounding cell protoplasm. Chromatolysis alone is not indicative of cell destruction, and a cell may recover its function afterwards. The integrity of the nucleus and of the fibrils between which the Nissl substance lies is much more important to the actual vitality of the cell.

When a nerve-fibre is cut across, the distal segment undergoes Wallerian degeneration; this is an acute change. But the nerve-cell and the piece of the nerve-fibre still attached to it do not remain unaffected. If regeneration of the fibre, and restoration of function takes place, no change is observable. But if regeneration does not occur (and it never takes place in the central nervous system), the cell and its processes undergo a slow chronic wasting; one of the earliest signs of this *disuse atrophy* is chromatolysis. Warrington has recently stated a still more interesting fact, namely, that section of the posterior roots causes chromatolysis in the anterior horn cells of the same side; this indicates that the loss of sensory stimuli produces a depression of the activity and metabolic functions of the spinal motor cells. We shall see later on that this accords quite well with the physiological effects observed under these conditions.

Classification of Nerve-cells according to their Function.

In addition to the anatomical classification of the nerve-cells already given, Schäfer separates them into four chief classes on a physiological basis:—

1. Afferent or sensory root cells.
2. Efferent root cells.
3. Intermediary cells.
4. Distributing cells.

1. *Afferent root cells.*—Originally such cells are situated at the periphery, and are connected with a process or afferent fibre which passes to and arborises among the nerve-cells of the central nervous system. This primitive condition is well seen in the earthworm, and persists in the olfactory cells of all vertebrates.

As evolution progresses, the peripheral cell sinks below the integument, leaving a process at the surface; this is seen in the worm Nereis (see fig. 215). Ultimately the body of the cell approaches close to the central nervous system, in the spinal ganglion of the posterior root, and the peripheral sensory nerve-fibre is correspondingly longer.

The afferent root cells, such as those of the spinal ganglia and the corresponding ganglia of the cranial nerves, are peculiar in possessing no dendrons.

2. *Efferent root cells.*—The anterior horn cells of the spinal cord are instances of these; their axons go directly to muscle fibres.

3. *Intermediary cells.*—These receive impulses from afferent cells, and transmit them either directly, or indirectly through other intermediary cells to efferent cells. The majority of the cells of the brain and cord come under this heading; they serve the purposes of

association and co-ordination, and form the basis of psychical phenomena.

4. *Distributing cells.*—These are the cells of the sympathetic ganglia; they are situated outside the central nervous system; they receive impulses from efferent cells in the central nervous system, and distribute them to involuntary muscles and secreting glands.

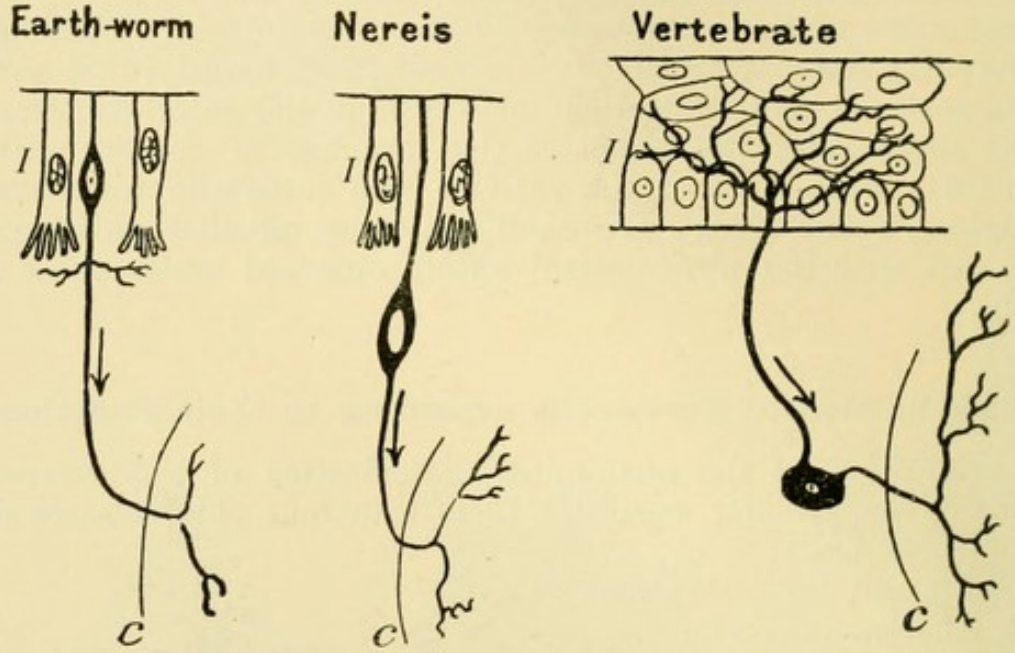


FIG. 215.—Diagram to illustrate the primitive conditions of the afferent nerve-cell, and the manner in which it becomes altered in the process of evolution. (After Retzius.) I, integument; C, central nervous system; the arrows show the direction in which the impulse passes.

The Law of Axipetal Conduction.

A general law has been laid down by van Gehuchten and Cajal, that all nerve impulses are axipetal, that is, they pass towards the attachment of the axon, by which they leave the body of the cell. In other words, the direction of an impulse is towards the body of the cell in the dendrons, and away from it in the axon. When we further consider that every nervous pathway is formed of a chain of cells, and that the impulse always takes the "forward direction," we see that there is what we may compare to a valved action which permits the passage of impulses in one direction only. The synapses are the situations of these so-called valves.

On the onward propagation of a nerve impulse through a chain of neurons, its passage is delayed at each synapse, hence there is additional "lost time" at each of these blocks. The relative number of the blocks furnishes a key to the differences found in reaction time for different reflexes and psychical processes. This we may illustrate by two examples, one taken from the frog, the other from man.

1. If a frog's posterior root is stimulated, the time lost in the spinal cord when the gastrocnemius of the same side contracts is 0·008 sec.; if the opposite gastrocnemius contracts, the additional lost time is 0·004 sec. If we assume that in the latter case, two extra synapses have to be jumped, the delay at each is 0·002 sec.

2. In the case of the eye and ear in man the total length of the pathway to the brain is approximately the same, and so the reaction times might be expected to be equal; but this is not the case; the reaction time in response to a sudden sound is 0·150 sec., in response to a sudden flash of light 0·195 sec. The greater delay in response to a visual stimulus directly corresponds to the greater number of synapses through which it has to travel (see later, in the structure of the visual and auditory mechanisms).

The valved condition of nervous paths also explains another difficulty. We have seen in p. 173 that under certain circumstances a nervous impulse will travel in both directions along a nerve. Yet when we stimulate the motor fibres in an anterior spinal root, the only effect is a contraction of muscles; there is no effect propagated backwards in the spinal cord. No doubt a nervous impulse does travel backwards to the anterior horn cells, but it is there extinguished, it cannot jump the synapses backwards, and there is no negative variation to be detected in a galvanometer connected to the pyramidal tracts in the cord.

The law of axipetal conduction is no doubt true for the majority of neurons. But there is at any rate one very striking exception, namely, in the typical afferent root cells; here the impulse passes to the body of the cell by one axon from the periphery, and away from it to the spinal cord by the other. To say, as some do, that the peripheral process is really a dendron because it conducts impulses centrifugally is simply arguing in a circle.

CHAPTER XVIII

THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM

THE circulatory system consists of the *heart*, the *arteries*, or vessels that carry the blood from the heart to other parts of the body, the *veins*, or vessels that carry the blood back to the heart again, and the *capillaries*, a network of minute tubes which connect the terminations of the smallest arteries to the commencements of the smallest veins. We shall also have to consider in connection with the circulatory system, (1) the *lymphatics*, which are vessels that convey back the lymph (the fluid which exudes through the thin walls of the blood-capillaries) to the large veins near to their entrance into the heart, and (2) the large lymph spaces contained in the *serous membranes*.

The Heart.

This is the great central pump of the circulatory system. It lies in the chest between the right and left lungs (fig. 216), and is enclosed in a covering called the *pericardium*. The pericardium is an instance of a serous membrane. Like all serous membranes it consists of two layers; each consists of fibrous tissue containing elastic fibres; one layer envelopes the heart and forms its outer covering or *epicardium*; this is the *visceral* layer of the pericardium; the other layer of the pericardium, called its *parietal* layer, is situated at some little distance from the heart, being attached below to the diaphragm, the partition between the thorax and the abdomen. The visceral and parietal layers are continuous for a short distance along the great vessels at the base of the heart, and so form a closed sac. This sac is lined by endothelium; in health it contains just enough lymph (pericardial fluid) to lubricate the two surfaces and enable them to glide over each other smoothly during the movements of the heart. The presence of elastic fibres in the epicardium enables it to follow without hindrance the changing shape of the heart itself; but the parietal layer of the pericardium appears to be inextensible, and so it limits the dilatation of the heart.

The pericardium is a comparatively simple serous membrane, because the organ it encloses is a single one of simple external form. All serous membranes

are of similar structure; thus the *pleura* which encloses the lung, and the *peritoneum* which encloses the abdominal viscera differ from it only in anatomical arrangement. The great complexity of the peritoneum is due to its enclosing so many organs. Every serous membrane consists of a visceral layer applied to the organ or organs it encloses; and a parietal layer continuous with this in contiguity with the parietes or body-walls.

The Chambers of the Heart.—The interior of the heart is divided by a longitudinal partition into two chief cavities—right and left. Each of these chambers is again subdivided transversely into an upper and a lower portion, called respectively, auricle and ventricle, which freely communicate one with the other; the aperture of communication, however, is guarded by valves, so disposed as to allow blood to pass freely from the auricle into the ventricle, but not in the opposite direction. There are thus four cavities in the heart—the auricle and ventricle of one side being quite separate from those of the other (figs. 217, 218).

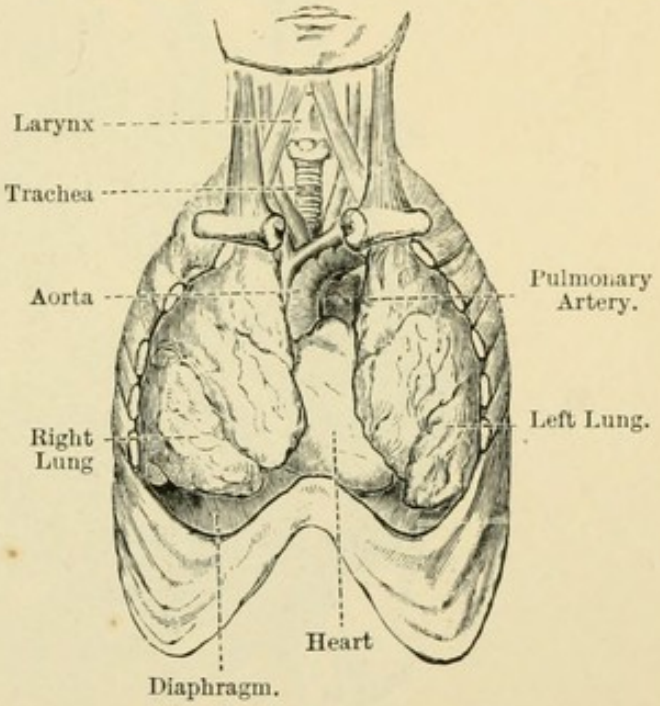


FIG. 216.—View of heart and lungs *in situ*. The front portion of the chest-wall and the outer or *parietal* layers of the pleuræ and pericardium have been removed. The lungs are partly collapsed.

The right auricle is situated at the right part of the base of the heart in front. It is a thin walled cavity of quadrilateral shape, prolonged at one corner into a tongue-shaped portion, the right auricular *appendix*, which slightly overlaps the exit of the aorta, from the heart.

The interior is smooth, being lined with the general lining of the heart, the *endocardium*, and into it open the superior and inferior venæ cavæ, or great veins, which convey the blood from all parts of the body to the heart. The opening of the inferior cava is protected and partly covered by a membrane called the *Eustachian valve*. In the posterior wall of the auricle is a slight depression called the *fossa ovalis*, which corresponds to an opening between the right and left auricles which exists in fœtal life. The coronary *sinus*, or the dilated portion of the left coronary vein, also opens into this chamber.

The right ventricle occupies the chief part of the anterior surface of the heart, as well as a small part of the posterior surface; it forms the right margin of the heart. It takes no part in the formation of the apex. On section its cavity, in consequence of the encroachment

upon it of the septum ventriculorum, is crescentic (fig. 219); into it are two openings, the auriculo-ventricular at the base and the opening of the pulmonary artery also at the base, but more to the left; both orifices are guarded by valves, the former called *tricuspid* and the

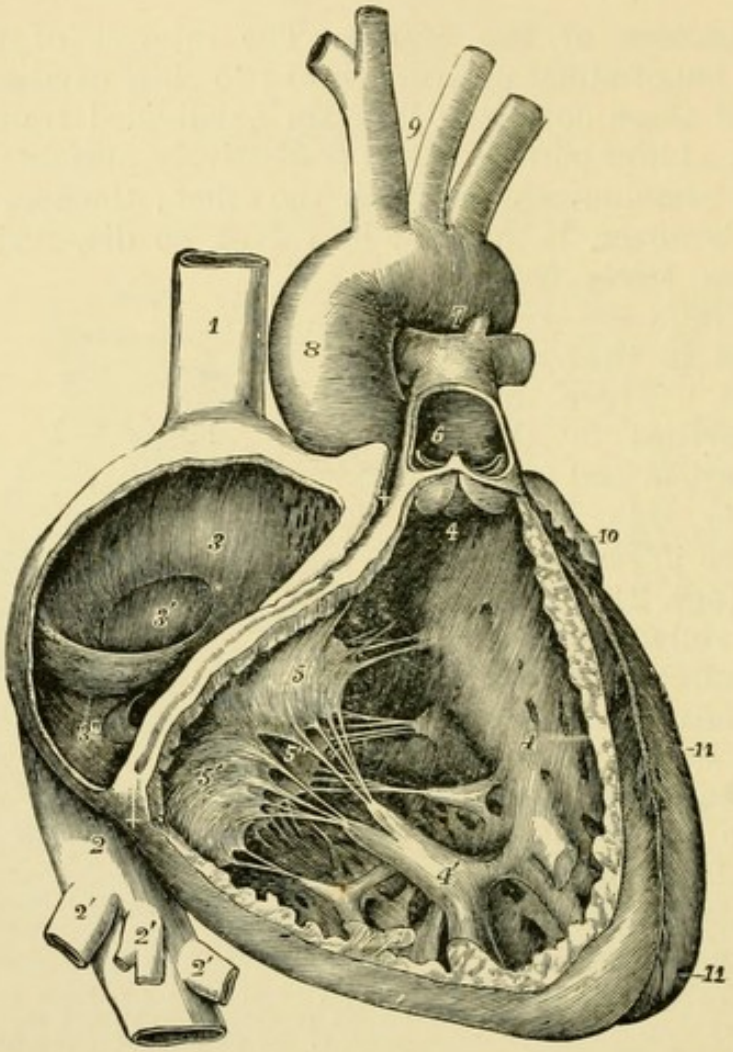


FIG. 217.—The right auricle and ventricle opened, and a part of their right and anterior walls removed, so as to show their interior. ½.—1, superior vena cava; 2, inferior vena cava; 2', hepatic veins cut short; 3, right auricle; 3', placed in the fossa ovalis, below which is the Eustachian valve; 3'', is placed close to the aperture of the coronary vein; + +, placed in the auriculo-ventricular groove, where a narrow portion of the adjacent walls of the auricle and ventricle has been preserved; 4, 4, cavity of the right ventricle, the upper figure is immediately below the semilunar valves; 4', large columna carnea or musculus papillaris; 5, 5', 5'', tricuspid valve; 6, placed in the interior of the pulmonary artery, a part of the anterior wall of that vessel having been removed, and a narrow portion of it preserved at its commencement, where the semilunar valves are attached; 7, concavity of the aortic arch close to the cord of the ductus arteriosus; 8, ascending part or sinus of the arch covered at its commencement by the auricular appendix and pulmonary artery; 9, placed between the innominate and left carotid arteries; 10, appendix of the left auricle; 11, 11, the outside of the left ventricle, the lower figure near the apex. (Allen Thomson.)

latter *semilunar*. In this ventricle are also the projections of the muscular tissue called *columnæ carneæ* (described at length, p. 212).

The left auricle is situated at the left and posterior part of the base of the heart, and is best seen from behind. It is quadrilateral, and receives on either side two pulmonary veins. The auricular

appendix is the only part of the auricle seen from the front, and corresponds with that on the right side, but is thicker, and the

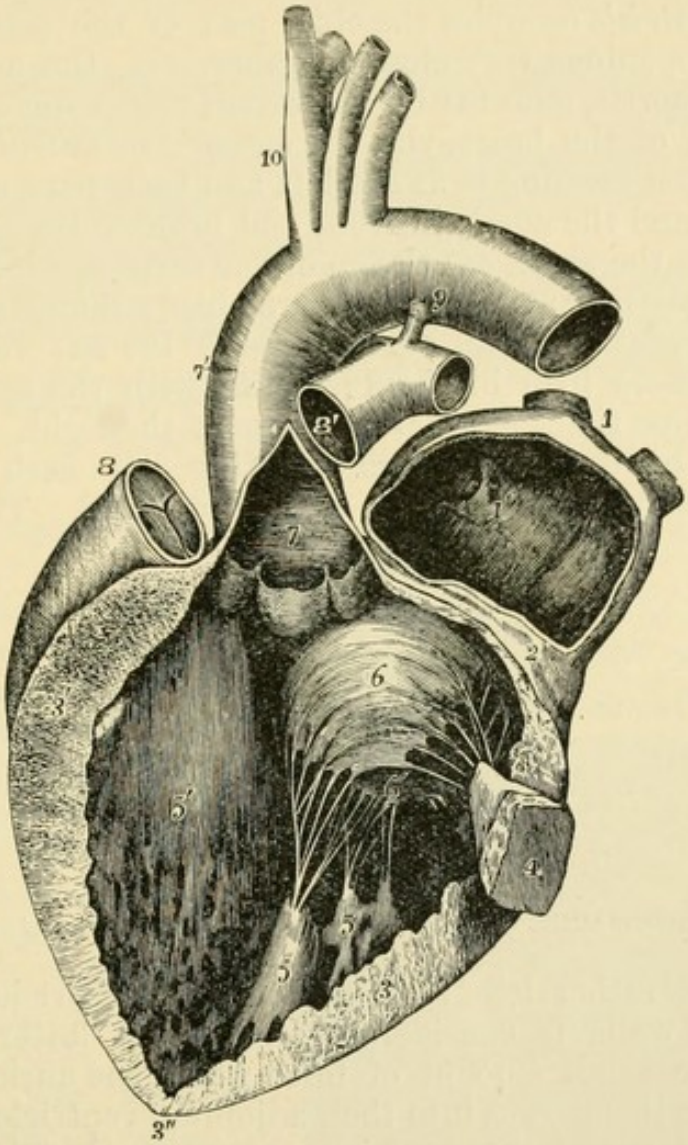


FIG. 218.—The left auricle and ventricle opened and a part of their anterior and left walls removed. ½. —The pulmonary artery has been divided at its commencement; the opening into the left ventricle is carried a short distance into the aorta between two of the segments of the semilunar valves; and the left part of the auricle with its appendix has been removed. The right auricle is out of view. 1, the two right pulmonary veins cut short; their openings are seen within the auricle; 1′, placed within the cavity of the auricle on the left side of the septum and on the part which forms the remains of the valve of the foramen ovale, of which the crescentic fold is seen towards the left hand of 1′; 2, a narrow portion of the wall of the auricle and ventricle preserved round the auriculo-ventricular orifice; 3, 3′, the cut surface of the walls of the ventricle, seen to become very much thinner towards 3″, at the apex; 4, a small part of the anterior wall of the left ventricle which has been preserved with the principal anterior columna carnea or musculus papillaris attached to it; 5, 5, musculi papillares; 5′, the left side of the septum, between the two ventricles, within the cavity of the left ventricle; 6, 6′, the mitral valve; 7, placed in the interior of the aorta, near its commencement and above the three segments of its semilunar valve which are hanging loosely together; 7′, the exterior of the great aortic sinus; 8, the root of the pulmonary artery and its semilunar valves; 8′, the separated portion of the pulmonary artery remaining attached to the aorta by 9, the cord of the ductus arteriosus; 10, the arteries rising from the summit of the aortic arch. (Allen Thomson.)

interior is smoother. The left auricle is only slightly thicker than the right. The left auriculo-ventricular orifice is oval, and a little

smaller than that on the right side. There is a depression on the septum between the auricles, which is a vestige of the foramen between them, that exists in fœtal life.

The left ventricle occupies the chief part of the posterior surface. In it are two openings very close together, viz., the auriculo-ventricular and the aortic, guarded by the valves corresponding to those of the right side of the heart, viz., the *bicuspid* or *mitral* and the *semilunar*. The first opening is at the left and back part of the base of the ventricle, and the aortic in front and towards the right. In this ventricle, as in the right, are the columnæ carneæ, which are smaller but more closely reticulated. They are chiefly found near the apex and along the posterior wall. The walls of the left ventricle, which are nearly half an inch in thickness, are, with the exception of the apex, about three times as thick as those of the right.

Capacity of the Chambers.—During life each ventricle is capable of containing about three ounces of blood. The capacity of

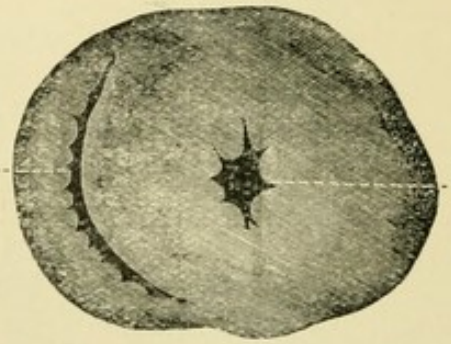


FIG. 219.—Transverse section of bullock's heart in a state of cadaveric rigidity. (Dalton.)

the auricles is rather less than that of the ventricles: the thickness of their walls is considerably less. The latter condition is adapted to the small amount of force which the auricles require in order to empty themselves into their adjoining ventricles; the former to the circumstance of the ventricles being partly filled with blood before the auricles contract.

Size and Weight of the Heart.—The heart is about 5 inches long (about 12·6 cm.), 3½ inches (8 cm.) greatest width, and 2½ inches (6·3 cm.) in its extreme thickness. The average weight of the heart in the adult is from 9 to 10 ounces (about 300 grms.); its weight gradually increases throughout life till middle age; it diminishes in old age.

Structure.—The walls of the heart are constructed almost entirely of layers of muscular fibres (figs. 113 and 220); but a ring of connective tissue, to which some of the muscular fibres are attached, is inserted between each auricle and ventricle, and forms the boundary of the *auriculo-ventricular* opening. Fibrous tissue also exists at the origins of the pulmonary artery and aorta.

The muscular fibres of each auricle are in part continuous with those of the other, and partly separate; and the same remark holds true for the ventricles. Some muscular fibres also pass across

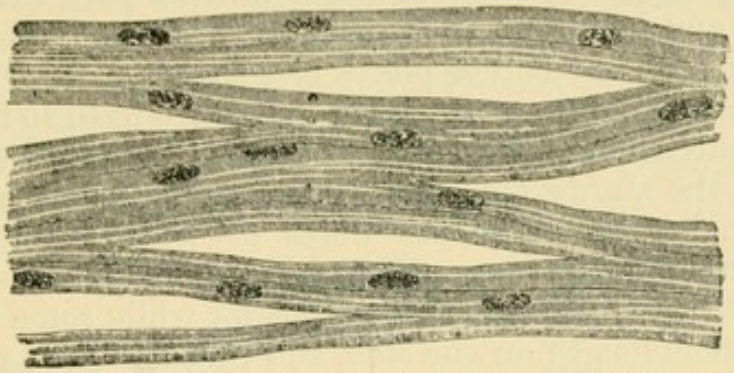


FIG. 220.—Network of muscular fibres from the heart of a pig. The nuclei are well shown. × 450. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

the tendinous ring which separates each auricle from the corresponding ventricle.

Endocardium.—As the heart is clothed on the outside by the epicardium, so its cavities are lined by a smooth membrane, the *endocardium*, which is directly continuous with the internal lining of the arteries and veins. The endocardium is composed of connective tissue with a large admixture of elastic fibres; its inner surface is covered by endothelium. Here and there muscular fibres are sometimes found in the tissue of the endocardium.

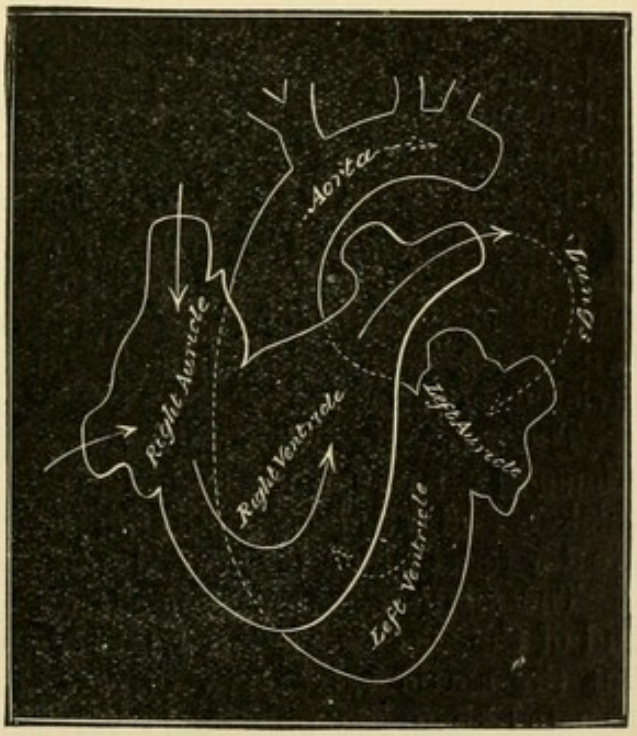


FIG. 221.—Diagram of the circulation through the heart. (Dalton.)

Valves. — The arrangement of the heart's valves is such that the blood can pass only in one direction (fig. 221).

The *tricuspid* valve (5, fig. 217) presents *three* principal cusps or subdivisions, and the mitral or *bicuspid* valve has *two* such portions (6, fig. 218). But in both valves there is between each two principal portions a smaller one: so that more properly, the tricuspid may be described as consisting of six, and the mitral of four, portions. Each portion is of triangular form. Its base is continuous with the bases of the neighbouring portions, so as to form an annular membrane

around the auriculo-ventricular opening, and is fixed to a tendinous ring which encircles the orifice between the auricle and ventricle, and receives the insertions of the muscular fibres of both. In each principal cusp may be distinguished a central part, extending from base to apex, and including about half its width. It is thicker and much tougher than the border pieces or edges.

While the bases of the cusps of the valves are fixed to the tendinous rings, their ventricular surface and borders are fastened by slender tendinous fibres, the *chordæ tendineæ*, to the internal surface of the walls of the ventricles, the muscular fibres of which project into the ventricular cavity in the form of bundles or columns—the *columnæ carneæ*. These columns are not all alike, for while some are attached along their whole length on one side, and by their extremities, others are attached only by their extremities; and a third set, to which the name *musculi papillares* has been given, are attached to the wall of the ventricle by one extremity only, the other projecting, papilla-like, into the cavity of the ventricle (5, fig. 218), and having attached to it chordæ tendineæ. Of the tendinous cords, besides those which pass to the margins of the valves, there are some of especial strength, which pass to the edges of the middle and thicker portions of the cusps before referred to. The ends of these cords are spread out in the substance of the valve, giving its middle piece its peculiar strength and toughness; and from the sides numerous other more slender and branching cords are given off, which are attached all over the ventricular surface of the adjacent border-pieces of the principal portions of the valves, as well as to those smaller portions which have been mentioned as lying one between each two principal ones. Moreover, the musculi papillares are so placed that, from the summit of each, tendinous cords proceed to the adjacent halves of two of the principal divisions, and to one intermediate or smaller division, of the valve.

The preceding description applies equally to the mitral and tricuspid valve; but it should be added that the mitral is considerably thicker and stronger than the tricuspid, in accordance with the greater force which it is called upon to resist.

The *semilunar valves* guard the orifices of the pulmonary artery and of the aorta. They are nearly alike on both sides of the heart; but the aortic valves are altogether thicker and more strongly constructed than the pulmonary valves, in accordance with the greater pressure which they have to withstand. Each valve consists of three parts which are of semilunar shape, the convex margin of each being attached to a fibrous ring at the place of junction of the artery to the ventricle, and the concave or nearly straight border being free, so as to form a little pouch like a watch-pocket (7, fig. 218). In the centre of the free edge of the pouch, which contains a fine cord

of fibrous tissue, is a small fibrous nodule, the *corpus Arantii*, and from this and from the attached border fine fibres extend into every part of the mid substance of the valve, except a small lunated space just within the free edge, on each side of the corpus Arantii. Here the valve is thinnest, and composed of little more than the endocardium. Thus constructed and attached, the three semilunar pouches are placed side by side around the arterial orifice of each ventricle; they are separated by the blood passing out of the ventricle, but immediately afterwards are pressed together so as to

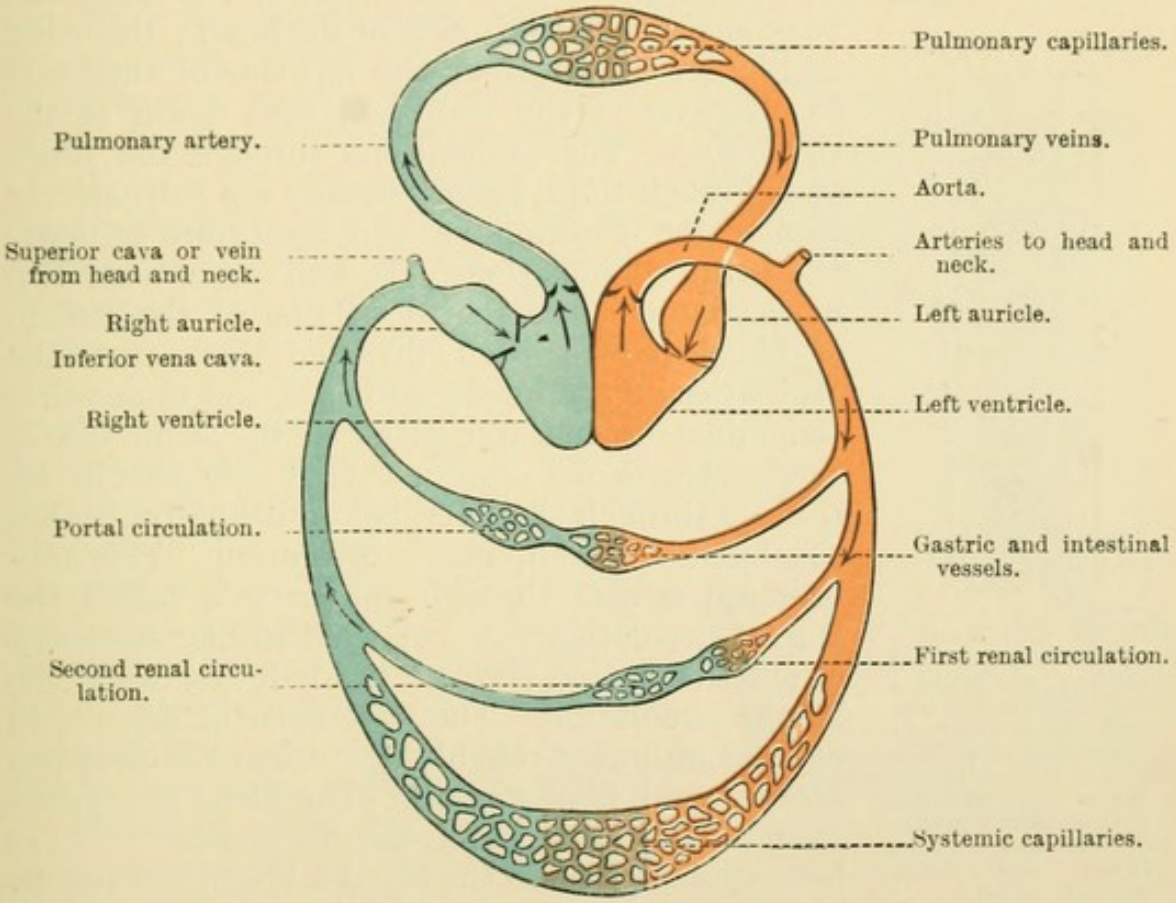


FIG. 222.—Diagram of the circulation.

prevent any return (6, fig. 217, and 7, fig. 218). Opposite each of the semilunar cusps, both in the aorta and pulmonary artery, there is a bulging outwards of the wall of the vessel: these bulgings are called the *sinuses of Valsalva*. The valves of the heart are formed of a layer of closely woven connective and elastic tissue, over which, on every part, the endocardium is reflected.

Course of the Circulation.

The blood is conveyed away from the left ventricle (as in the diagram, fig. 222) by the aorta to the *arteries*, and returned to the

right auricle by the *veins*, the arteries and veins being continuous with each other at the far end by means of the *capillaries*.

From the right auricle the blood passes to the right ventricle, then by the pulmonary artery, which divides into two, one for each lung, then through the pulmonary capillaries, and through the pulmonary veins (two from each lung) to the left auricle. From here it passes into the left ventricle, which brings us back to where we started from.

The complete circulation is thus made up of two circuits, the one, a shorter circuit from the right side of the heart to the lungs and back again to the left side of the heart; the other and larger circuit, from the left side of the heart to all parts of the body and back again to the right side. The circulations through the lungs and through the system generally are respectively named the **Pulmonary** and **Systemic** or *lesser* and *greater* circulations. It will be noticed also in the same figure that a portion of the stream of blood having been diverted once into the capillaries of the intestinal canal, and some other abdominal organs, and gathered up again into a single stream, is a second time divided in its passage through the liver, before it finally reaches the heart and completes a revolution. This subordinate stream through the liver is called the **Portal** circulation. A somewhat similar accessory circulation is that through the kidneys, called the **Renal** circulation. The difference of colours in fig. 222 indicates roughly the difference between *arterial* and *venous* blood. The blood is oxygenated in the lungs, and the formation of oxyhæmoglobin gives to the blood a bright red colour. This oxygenated or arterial blood (contained in the pulmonary veins, the left side of the heart, and systemic arteries) is in part reduced in the tissues, and the deoxygenated hæmoglobin is darker in tint than the oxyhæmoglobin; this venous blood passes by the systemic veins to the right side of the heart and pulmonary artery to the lungs, where it once more receives a fresh supply of oxygen.



FIG. 223.—Minute artery viewed in longitudinal section. *e*. Nucleated endothelial membrane, with faint nuclei in lumen, looked at from above. *i*. Elastic membrane. *m*. Muscular coat or tunica media. *a*. Tunica adventitia. (Klein and Noble Smith.) × 250.

N.B.—It should, however, be noted that the lungs, like the rest of the body, are also supplied with arterial blood, which reaches them by the bronchial arteries.

The Arteries.

The arterial system begins at the left ventricle in a single large trunk, the aorta, which almost immediately after its origin gives off

in the thorax three large branches for the supply of the head, neck, and upper extremities; it then traverses the thorax and abdomen, giving off branches, some large and some small, for the supply of the various organs and tissues it passes on its way. In the abdomen it divides into two chief branches, for the supply of the lower extremities. The arterial branches wherever given off divide and subdivide, until the calibre of each subdivision becomes very minute, and these minute vessels lead into capillaries. Arteries are, as a rule, placed in situations protected from pressure and other dangers, and are, with few exceptions, straight in their course, and frequently communicate (anastomose or inosculate) with other arteries. The branches are usually given off at an acute angle, and the sum of the sectional areas of the branches of an artery generally exceeds that of the parent trunk; and as the distance from the origin is increased, the area of the combined branches is increased also. After death, arteries are usually found dilated (not collapsed as the veins are) and empty, and it was to this fact that their name (ἀρτηρία, the windpipe) was given them, as the ancients believed that they conveyed air to the various parts of the body. As regards the arterial system of the lungs, the pulmonary artery is distributed much as the arteries belonging to the general systemic circulation.

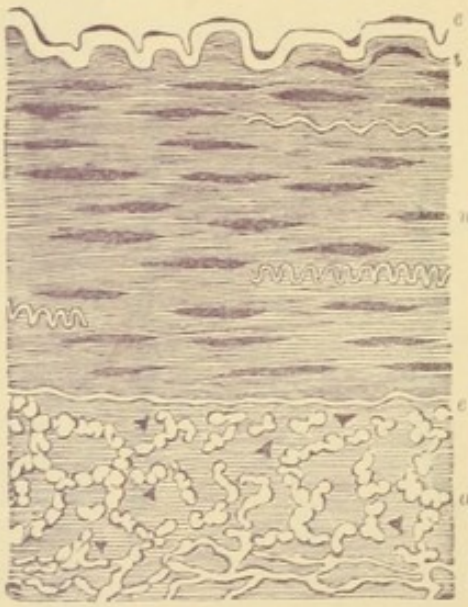


FIG. 224.—Transverse section through a large branch of the inferior mesenteric artery of a pig. *e*, endothelial membrane; *i*, tunica elastica interna, no subendothelial layer is seen; *m*, muscular tunica media, containing only a few wavy elastic fibres; *e*, *e*, tunica elastica externa, dividing the media from the connective-tissue adventitia, *a*. (Klein and Noble Smith.) × 350.

Structure.—The wall of an artery is composed of the following three coats:—

(*a*) The *external coat* or *tunica adventitia* (figs. 223 and 224, *a*), the strongest part of the wall of the artery, is formed of areolar tissue, with which is mingled throughout a network of elastic fibres. At the inner part of this outer coat the elastic network forms, in some arteries, so distinct a layer as to be sometimes called the *external elastic coat* (fig. 224, *e*).

(*b*) The *middle coat* (fig. 224, *m*) is composed of both muscular and elastic fibres, with a certain proportion of areolar tissue. In the larger arteries (fig. 226) its thickness is comparatively as well as absolutely much greater than in the small ones; it constitutes the greater part of the arterial wall. The muscular fibres are unstriped (fig. 225), and are arranged for the most part transversely to the

long axis of the artery; while the elastic element, taking also a transverse direction, is disposed in the form of closely interwoven and branching fibres, which intersect in all parts the layers of muscular fibres. In arteries of various sizes there is a difference in the proportion of the muscular and elastic element, elastic tissue preponderating in the largest arteries, and unstriped muscle in those of medium and small size.

(*c*) The *internal coat* is formed by a layer of elastic tissue, called the *fenestrated membrane of Henle.* Its inner surface is lined with a delicate layer of elongated endothelial cells (fig. 224, *e*), which make it smooth, so that the blood may flow with the smallest possible amount of resistance from friction. Immediately external to the endothelial lining of the artery is fine connective tissue (*sub-endothelial layer*) with branched corpuscles. Thus the internal coat consists of three parts, (*a*) an endothelial lining, (*b*) the sub-endothelial layer, and (*c*) elastic layer.

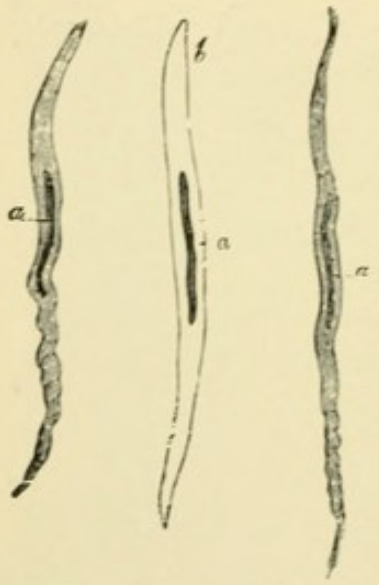


FIG. 225.—Muscular fibre-cells from human arteries, magnified 350 diameters. (Kölliker.) *a*. Nucleus. *b*. A fibre-cell treated with acetic acid.

Vasa Vasorum.—The walls of the arteries are, like other parts of the body, supplied with little arteries, ending in capillaries and veins, which, branching throughout the external coat, extend for some distance into the middle, but do not reach the internal coat. These nutrient vessels are called *vasa vasorum.*

Nerves.—Most of the arteries are surrounded by a plexus of sympathetic nerves, which twine around the vessel very much like ivy round a tree. They terminate in a plexus between the muscular fibres (fig. 227).

The Veins.

The venous system begins in small vessels which are slightly larger than the capillaries from which they spring. These vessels are gathered up into larger and larger trunks until they terminate (as regards the systemic circulation) in the two venæ cavæ and the coronary veins, which enter the right auricle, and (as regards the pulmonary circulation) in four pulmonary veins, which enter the left auricle. The total capacity of the veins diminishes as they approach the heart; but, as a rule, their capacity is two or three times that of the corresponding arteries. The pulmonary veins, however, are an exception to this rule, as they do not exceed in capacity the pulmonary arteries. The veins are found after death more or less

collapsed, owing to their want of elasticity. They are usually distributed in a superficial and a deep set which communicate frequently in their course.

Structure.—In structure the coats of veins bear a general resemblance to those of arteries (fig. 228). Thus, they possess outer, middle, and internal coats.

(*a*) The *outer* coat is constructed of areolar tissue like that of the arteries, but it is thicker. In some veins it contains muscular fibres, which are arranged longitudinally.



FIG. 226.—Transverse section of aorta through internal and about half the middle coat.

(*b*) The *middle* coat is considerably thinner than that of the arteries; it contains circular unstriped muscular fibres, mingled with a few elastic fibres and a large proportion of white fibrous tissue. In the large veins, near the heart, namely, the *venæ cavæ* and pulmonary veins, the middle coat is replaced, for some distance from the heart, by circularly arranged striped muscular fibres, continuous with those of the auricles. The veins of bones, and of the central nervous system and its membranes have no muscular tissue.

(*c*) The *internal* coat of veins has a very thin fenestrated membrane, which may be absent in the smaller veins. The

endothelium is made up of cells elongated in the direction of the vessel, but wider than in the arteries.

Valves.—The chief influence which the veins have in the circulation is effected with the help of the valves, contained in all veins subject to local pressure from the muscles between or near which they run. The general construction of these valves is similar to that of the semilunar valves of the aorta and pulmonary artery, already described; but their free margins are turned in the opposite direction, *i.e.*, *towards* the heart, so as to prevent any movement of blood backward. They are commonly placed in pairs, at various distances in different veins, but almost uniformly in each (fig. 229). In the smaller veins single valves are often met with; and three or four are sometimes placed together, or near one another, in the largest veins, such as the subclavian, at their junction with the jugular veins. The valves are semilunar; the unattached edge is in some examples concave, in others straight. They are composed of an outgrowth of the subendothelial tissue covered with endothelium. Their situation in the superficial veins of the forearm is readily discovered by pressing along their surface, in the direction opposite to the venous current, *i.e.*, from the elbow towards the wrist; when little swellings (fig. 229, c) appear in the position of each pair of valves. These swellings at once disappear when the pressure is removed.

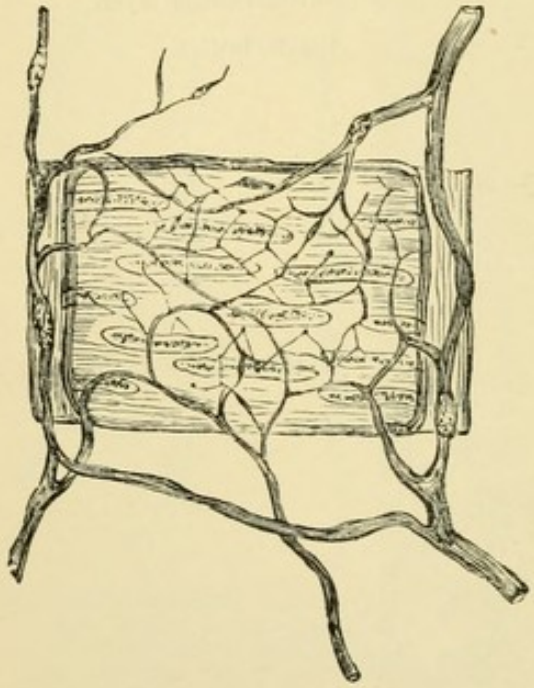


FIG. 227.—Ramification of nerves and termination in the muscular coat of a small artery of the frog. (Arnold.)

Valves are not equally numerous in all veins, and in many they are absent altogether. They are most numerous in the veins of the extremities, and more so in those of the leg than the arm. They are commonly *absent* in veins of less than a line in diameter, and, as a general rule, there are few or none in those which are not subject to muscular pressure. Among those veins which have no valves may be mentioned the superior and inferior vena cava, the pulmonary veins, the veins in the interior of the cranium and vertebral column, the veins of bone, and the umbilical vein. The valves of the portal tributaries are very inefficient.

Lymphatics of Arteries and Veins.—Lymphatic spaces are present

in the coats of both arteries and veins. In the external coat of large vessels they form a plexus of more or less tubular vessels. In smaller vessels they appear as spaces lined by endothelium. Sometimes, as in the arteries of the omentum, mesentery, and membranes of the brain, in the pulmonary, hepatic, and splenic arteries, the spaces are continuous with vessels which distinctly ensheath them—*perivascular lymphatics* (fig. 231).

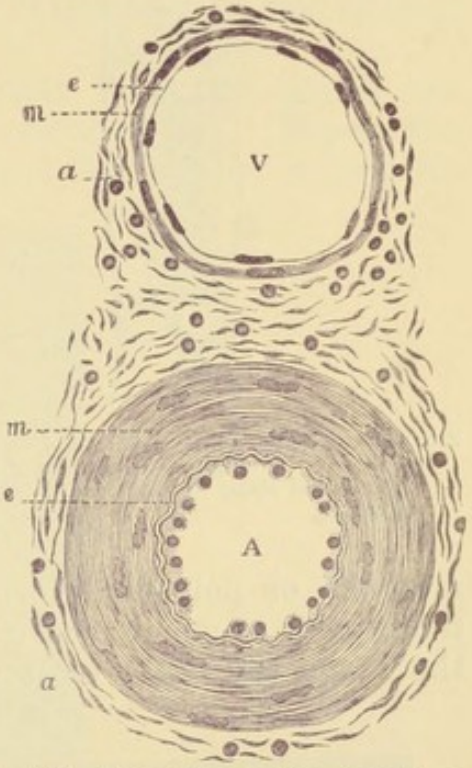


FIG. 228.—Transverse section through a small artery and vein of the mucous membrane of a child's epiglottis; the artery is thick-walled and the vein thin-walled. A. Artery, the letter is placed in the lumen of the vessel, *e*. Endothelial cells with nuclei clearly visible; these cells appear very thick from the contracted state of the vessel. Outside it a double wavy line marks the elastic layer of the tunica intima. *m*. Tunica media, consisting of unstriped muscular fibres circularly arranged; their nuclei are well seen. *a*. Part of the tunica adventitia showing bundles of connective-tissue fibre in section, with the circular nuclei of the connective-tissue corpuscles. This coat gradually merges into the surrounding connective tissue. V. In the lumen of the vein. The other letters indicate the same as in the artery. The muscular coat of the vein (*m*) is seen to be much thinner than that of the artery. × 350. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

The Capillaries.

In all vascular textures except some parts of the corpora cavernosa of the penis, of the uterine placenta, and of the spleen, the transmission of the blood from the minute branches of the arteries to the minute veins is affected through a network of capillaries.

Their walls are composed of endothelium—a single layer of elongated flattened and nucleated cells, so joined and dovetailed together as to form a continuous transparent membrane (fig. 232). Here and there the endothelial cells do not fit quite accurately; the space is filled up with cement material; these spots are called *pseudo-stomata*.

The *diameter* of the capillary vessels varies somewhat in the different tissues of the body, the most common size being about $\frac{1}{2000}$th of an inch (12 μ). Among the smallest may be mentioned those of the brain, and of the follicles of the mucous membrane of the intestines; among the largest, those of the skin, lungs, and especially those of the medulla of bones.

The *size* of capillaries varies necessarily in different animals in relation to the size of their blood corpuscles: thus, in the Proteus, the capillary circulation can just be discerned with the naked eye.

The *form* of the capillary network presents considerable variety

in the different tissues of the body: the varieties consist principally of modifications of two chief kinds of mesh, the rounded and the elongated. That kind in which the meshes or interspaces have a

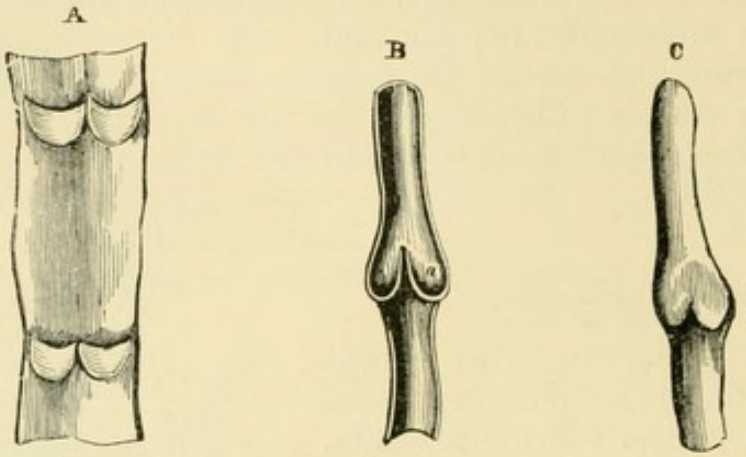


FIG. 229.—Diagram showing valves of veins. A, part of a vein laid open and spread out, with two pairs of valves. B, longitudinal section of a vein, showing the apposition of the edges of the valves in their closed state. C, portion of a distended vein, exhibiting a swelling in the situation of a pair of valves.

roundish or polygonal form is the most common, and prevails in those parts in which the capillary network is most dense, such as the lungs (fig. 233), most glands and mucous membranes, and the

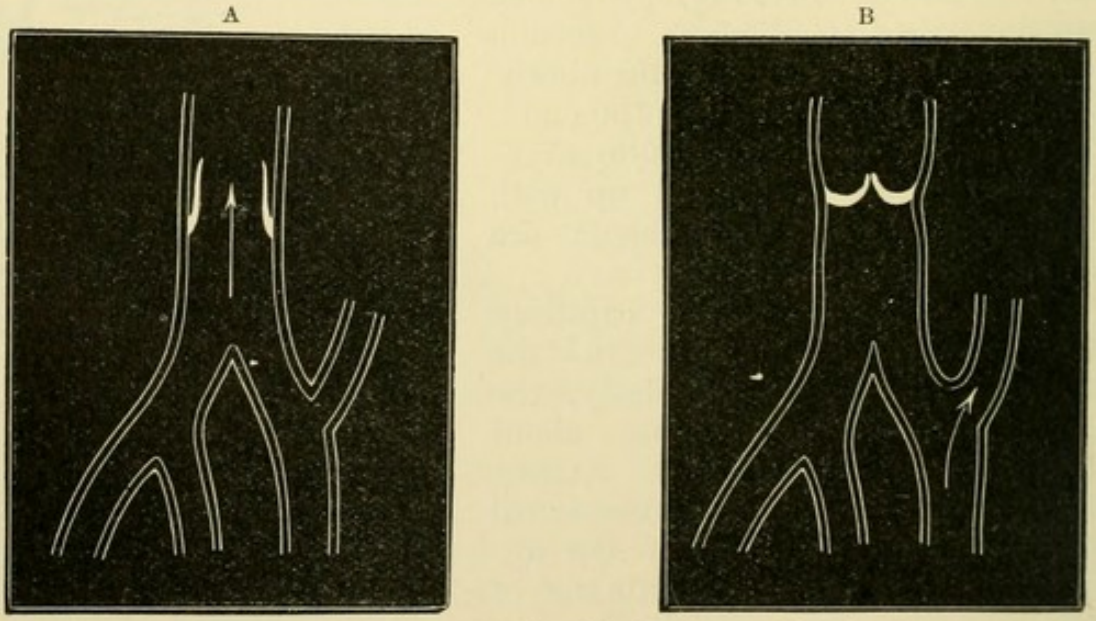


FIG. 230.—A, vein with valves open. B, with valves closed; stream of blood passing off by lateral channel. (Dalton.)

cutis. The capillary network with elongated meshes is observed in parts in which the vessels are arranged among bundles of fine tubes or fibres, as in muscles and nerves. In such parts, the meshes form parallelograms (fig. 234), the short sides of which may be from three

to eight or ten times less than the long ones; the long sides are more or less parallel to the long axis of the fibres.

The *number* of the capillaries and the *size of the meshes* in different parts determine in general the degree of *vascularity* of those parts. The capillary network is closest in the lungs and in the choroid coat of the eye.

It may be held as a general rule, that the more active the functions of an organ are, the more vascular it is. Hence the narrowness of the interspaces in all glandular organs, in mucous

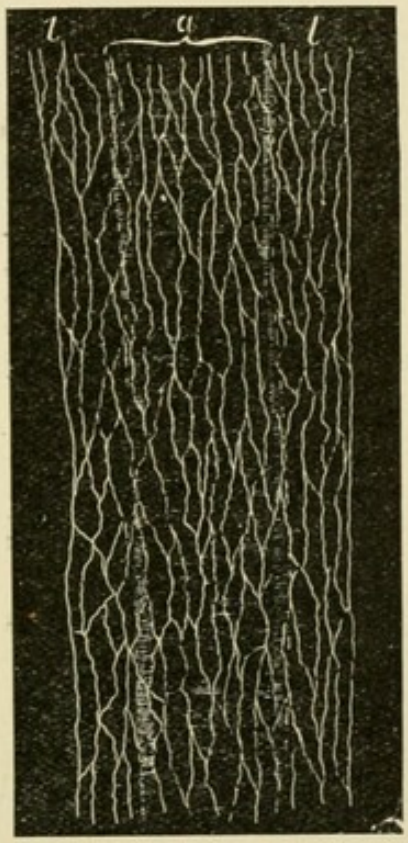


FIG. 231.—Surface view of an artery from the mesentery of a frog, ensheathed in a perivascular lymphatic vessel. *a*, the artery, with its circular muscular coat (media) indicated by broad transverse markings, with an indication of the adventitia outside. *l*, lymphatic vessel; its wall is a simple endothelial membrane. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

membranes, and in growing parts, and their much greater width in bones, ligaments, and other comparatively inactive tissues.

Lymphatic Vessels.

The blood leaves the heart by the arteries; it returns to the heart by the veins; but this last statement requires modification, for in the capillaries some of the blood-plasma escapes into the cell spaces of the tissues and nourishes the tissue-elements. This fluid, which is called *lymph*, is gathered up and carried back again into the blood by a system of vessels called *lymphatics*.

The principal vessels of the lymphatic system are, in structure, like small thin-walled veins, provided with numerous valves. The beaded appearance of the lymphatic vessels shown in figs. 236 and

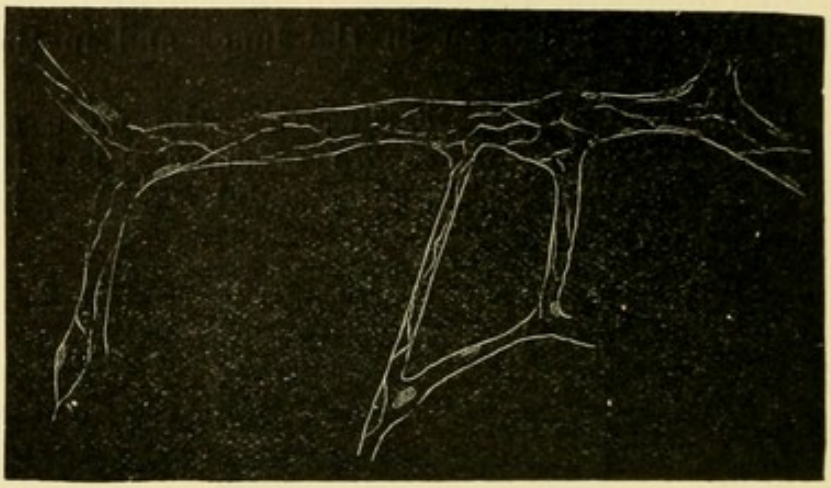


FIG. 232.—Capillary blood-vessels from the omentum of rabbit, showing the nucleated endothelial membrane of which they are composed. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

237 is due to the presence of these valves. They commence in fine microscopic *lymph-capillaries*, in the organs and tissues of the body, and they end in two trunks which open into the large veins near the

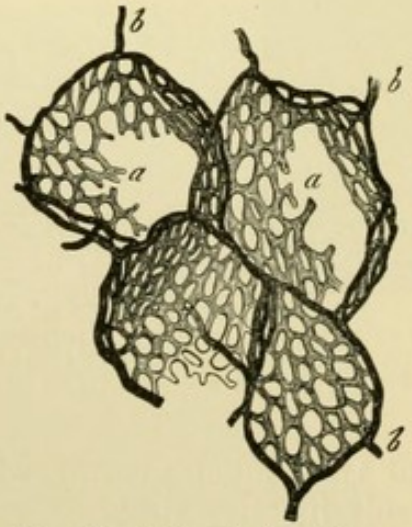


FIG. 233.—Network of capillary vessels of the air-cells of the horse's lung magnified. *a*, *a*, capillaries proceeding from *b*, *b*, terminal branches of the pulmonary artery. (Frey.)



FIG. 234.—Injected capillary vessels of muscle seen with a low magnifying power. (Sharpey.)

heart (fig. 235). The fluid which they contain, unlike the blood, passes only in one direction, namely, from the fine branches to the trunk, and so to the large veins, on entering which it is mingled with the stream of blood. In fig. 235 the greater part of the contents of

the lymphatic system of vessels will be seen to pass through a comparatively large trunk called the *thoracic duct*, which finally empties its contents into the blood-stream, at the junction of the internal jugular and subclavian veins of the left side. There is a smaller duct on the right side. The lymphatic vessels of the intestinal canal are called *lacteals*, because during digestion (especially of a meal containing fat) the fluid contained in them resembles milk in appear-

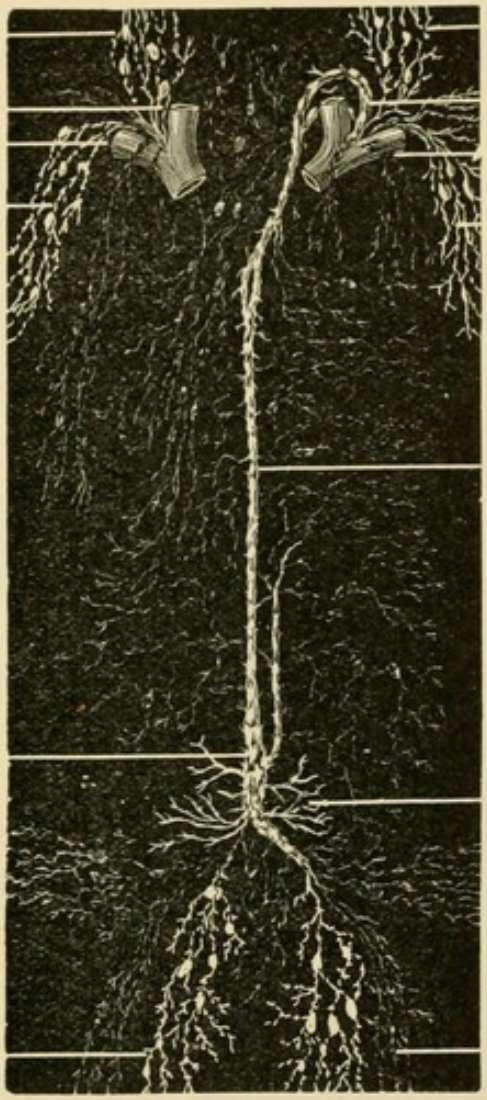


FIG. 235.—Diagram of the principal groups of lymphatic vessels. (From Quain.)

ance; and the *lymph* in the lacteals during the period of digestion is called *chyle*. Chyle is lymph containing finely divided fat-globules. In some parts of its course the lymph-stream passes through *lymphatic glands*, to be described later on.

Origin of Lymph Capillaries.—The lymphatic capillaries commence most commonly either (*a*) in closely-meshed networks, or (*b*) in irregular lacunar spaces between the various structures of which the different organs are composed. In serous membranes, such as the

mesentery, they occur as a connected system of very irregular branched spaces partly occupied by connective-tissue corpuscles, and

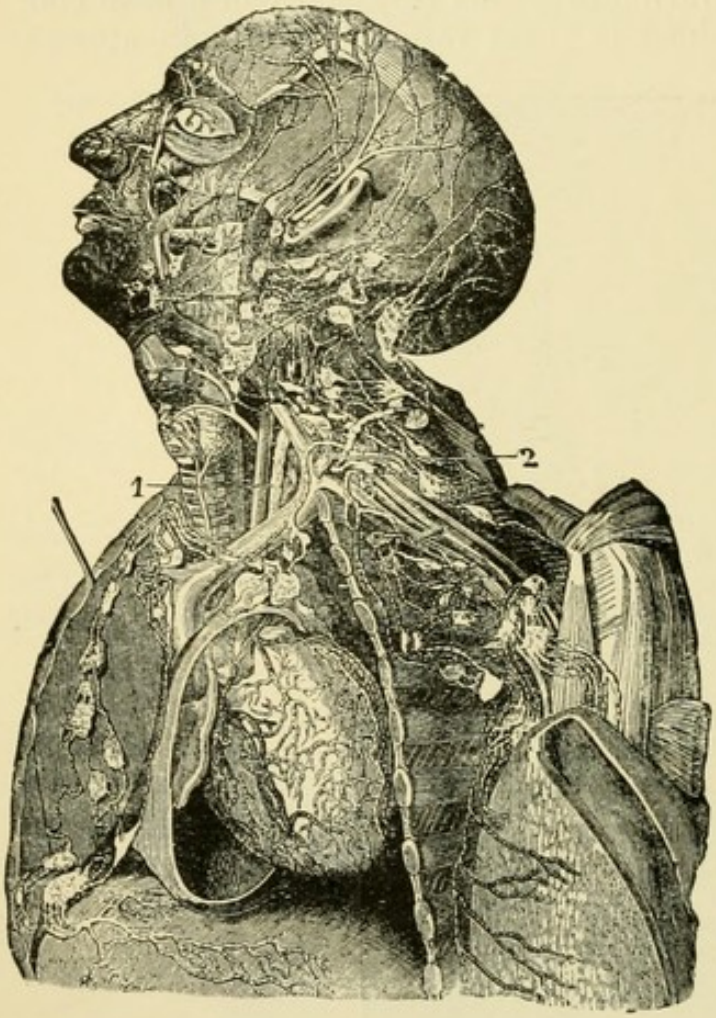


FIG. 236.—Lymphatic vessels of the head and neck and the upper part of the trunk (Mascagni). $\frac{1}{8}$.—The chest and pericardium have been opened on the left side, and the left mamma detached and thrown outwards over the left arm, so as to expose a great part of its deep surface. The principal lymphatic vessels and glands are shown on the side of the head and face and in the neck, axilla, and mediastinum. Between the left internal jugular vein and the common carotid artery, the upper ascending part of the thoracic duct marked 1, and above this, and descending to 2, the arch and last part of the duct. The termination of the upper lymphatics of the diaphragm in the mediastinal glands, as well as the cardiac and the deep mammary lymphatics, is also shown.



FIG. 237.—Superficial lymphatics of the forearm and palm of the hand. $\frac{1}{4}$.—5. Two small glands at the bend of the arm. 6. Radial lymphatic vessels. 7. Ulnar lymphatic vessels. 8, 8'. Palmar arch of lymphatics. 9, 9'. Outer and inner sets of vessels. *b*. Cephalic vein. *d*. Radial vein. *e*. Median vein. *f*. Ulnar vein. The lymphatics are represented as lying on the deep fascia. (Mascagni.)

in these and other varieties of connective tissue, the cell spaces communicate freely with regular lymphatic vessels. In many cases,

though they are formed mostly by the chinks and crannies between the parts which may happen to form the framework of the organ in which they exist, they are lined by a distinct layer of endothelium.

The lacteals offer an illustration of another mode of origin, namely, as blind dilated extremities in the villi of the small intestine (see fig. 38, p. 27).

Structure of Lymph Capillaries.—The structure of lymphatic capillaries is very similar to that of blood capillaries; their walls consist of a single layer of elongated endothelial cells with sinuous outline, which cohere along their edges to form a delicate membrane.

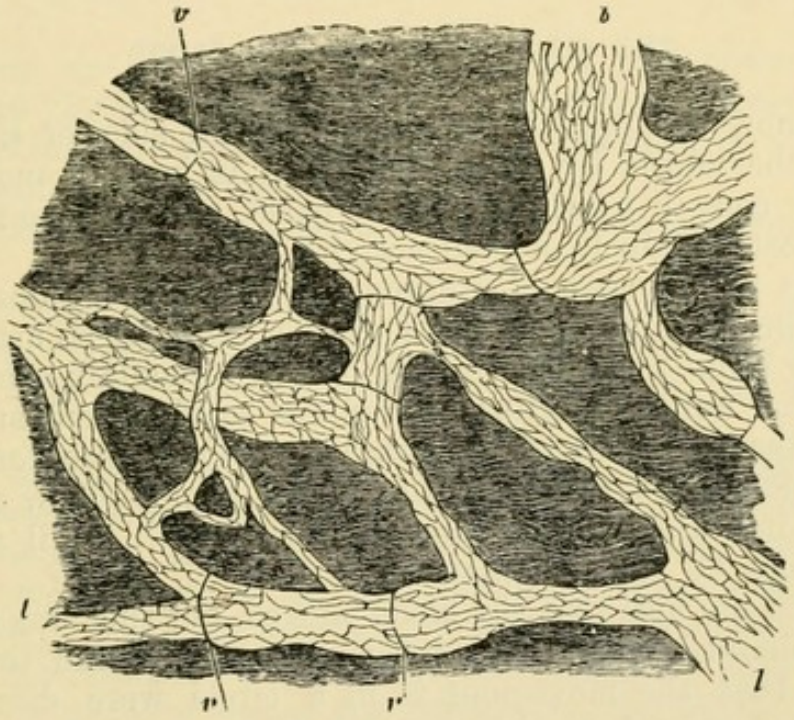


FIG. 238.—Lymphatics of central tendon of rabbit's diaphragm, stained with silver nitrate. The shaded background is composed of bundles of white fibres, between which the lymphatics lie. *l*, Lymphatics lined by long narrow endothelial cells, and showing *v* valves at frequent intervals. (Schofield.)

They differ from blood capillaries mainly in their larger and very variable calibre, and in their numerous communications with the spaces of the lymph-canalicular system.

In certain parts of the body, *stomata* exist, by which lymphatic capillaries directly communicate with parts formerly supposed to be closed cavities. They have been found in the pleura, and in other serous membranes; a serous cavity thus forms a large lymph-sinus or widening out of the lymph-capillary system with which it directly communicates.

A very typical plexus of lymphatic capillaries is seen in the central tendon of the diaphragm. Fig. 238 represents the appearance presented after staining with silver nitrate.

CHAPTER XIX

THE CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD

We have now to approach the physiological side of the subject, and study the means by which the blood is kept in movement, so that it may convey nutriment to all parts, and remove from those parts the waste products of their activity.

Previous to the time of Harvey, the vaguest notions prevailed regarding the use and movements of the blood. The arteries were supposed by some to contain air, by others to contain a more subtle essence called animal spirits; the animal spirits were supposed to start from the ventricles of the brain, and they were controlled by the soul which was situated in the pineal gland. How the animal spirits got into the arteries was an anatomical detail which was bridged across by the imagination.

There was an idea that the blood moved, but this was considered to be a haphazard, to-and-fro movement, and confined to the veins. The proofs that the movement is in a circle were discovered by William Harvey, and to this eminent discoverer also belongs the credit of pointing out the methods by which every physiological problem must be studied. In the first place there must be correct anatomical knowledge, and in the second there must be experiment, by which deductions from structure can be tested; moreover, this second method is by far the more important of the two. Harvey's proofs of the circulation came under both these heads. The structural or anatomical facts upon which he relied were the following:—

1. The existence of two distinct sets of tubes in connection with the heart, namely, the arteries and the veins.

2. The existence in the heart and also in the veins, of valves which would only allow the passage of the blood in one direction.

His experimental facts were the following:—

3. That the blood spurts with great force and in a jerky manner from an artery opened during life, each jerk corresponding with a beat of the heart.

4. That if the large veins near the heart are tied, the heart becomes pale, flaccid, and bloodless, and on removal of the ligature the blood again flows into the heart.

5. If the aorta is tied, the heart becomes distended with blood, and cannot empty itself until the ligature is removed.

6. The preceding experiments were performed on animals, but by the following experiment he showed that the circulation is a fact in man also; if a ligature is drawn tightly round a limb, no blood can enter it, and it becomes pale and cold. If the ligature is somewhat relaxed so that blood can enter but cannot leave the limb, it becomes swollen. If the ligature is removed, the limb soon regains its normal appearance.

7. Harvey also drew attention to the fact that there is general constitutional disturbance resulting from the introduction of a poison at a single point, and that this can only be explained by a movement of the circulating fluid all over the body.

Since Harvey's time many other proofs have accumulated; for instance:—

8. If an artery is wounded, hæmorrhage may be stopped by pressure applied between the heart and the wound; but in the case of a wound in a vein, the pressure must be applied beyond the seat of injury.

9. If a substance which, like ferrocyanide of potassium, can be readily detected, is injected at a certain point into a blood-vessel, it will after the lapse of a short interval have entirely traversed the circulation and be found in the blood collected from the same point.

10. Perhaps the most satisfactory proof of the circulation is one now within the reach of every student, though beyond that of Harvey. It consists in actually seeing the passage of the blood from small arteries through capillaries into veins in the transparent parts of animals, such as the tail of a tadpole or the web of a frog's foot. Harvey could not follow this part of the circulation, for he had no lenses sufficiently powerful to enable him to see it. Harvey's idea of the circulation here was that the arteries carried the blood to the tissues, which he considered to be of the nature of a sponge, and the veins collected the blood again, much in the same way as drainage pipes would collect the water of a swamp. The discovery that the ends of the arteries are connected to the commencements of veins by a definite system of small tubes we now call capillaries, was made by Malpighi, in the year 1661. He first observed them in the tail of the tadpole, and Leeuwenhoek, seven years later, saw the circulation in the lung of the frog.

We can now proceed to study some of the principles on which the circulation depends:—

The simplest possible way in which we could represent the

circulatory system is shown in fig. 239 A. Here there is a closed ring containing fluid, and upon one point of the tube is an enlargement (H) which will correspond to the heart. It is obvious that if such a ring made of an ordinary Higginson's syringe and a tube were placed upon the table, there would be no movement of the fluid in it; in order to make the fluid move there must be a difference of pressure between different parts of the fluid, and this difference of pressure is caused in the fluid by the pressure on it of the heart walls. If, for instance, one takes the syringe in one's hand and squeezes it, one imitates a contraction of the heart: if the syringe has no valves, the fluid would pass out of each end of it in the direction of the two arrows placed outside the ring. When the pressure on the syringe is relaxed (this would correspond to the interval between the heart beats), the fluid would return into the heart again in the direction of the two arrows placed inside the ring.

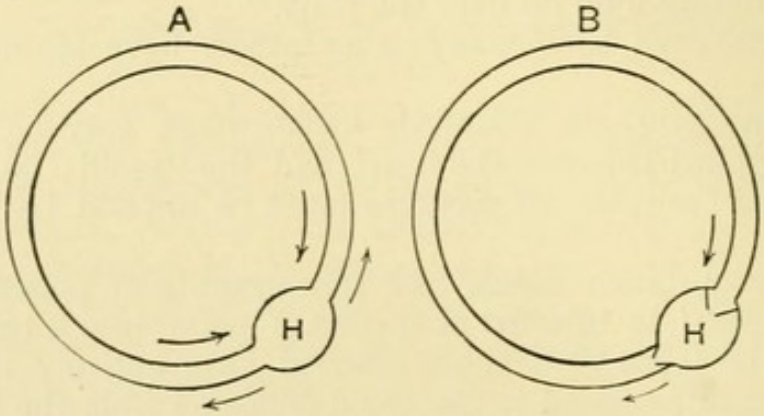


FIG. 239.—Simple schema of the circulation.

This, however, would be merely a to-and-fro movement, not a circulation. Fig. 239 B shows how this to-and-fro movement could, by the presence of valves, be converted into a circulation; when the heart contracts the fluid could pass only in the direction of the outer arrow; when the heart relaxes it could pass only in the direction of the inner arrow; the direction of both arrows is the same, and so if the contraction and relaxation of the heart are repeated often enough the fluid will move round and round within the tubular ring.

The main factor in the circulation is difference of pressure. In general terms fluid flows from where the pressure is high to where it is lower. This difference of pressure is produced in the first instance by the contraction of the heart, but we shall find in our study of the vessels that some of this pressure is stored up in the elastic arterial walls, and keeps up the circulation during the periods that the heart is resting.

Coming to different groups in the animal kingdom we may take the crayfish or the lobster as instances of animals which possess a

hæmolymph system, that is, there is no distinction between blood and lymph. The heart pumps the circulating fluid along a system of vessels which distribute it over the body; there are no capillaries, and the hæmolymph is discharged into the tissue spaces; it is thence drained into channels which convey it to the gills, and after it is aërated there in a set of irregular vessels, it is returned to the pericardium. It is sucked from the pericardium into the heart during diastole, through five small orifices in the cardiac wall; during systole these are closed by valves. In these animals the rate of flow of hæmolymph is necessarily slow.

In worms, the circulatory system is almost as simple as in the schema just described; the heart is a long contractile tube provided with valves, which contracts peristaltically and presses the blood forwards into the aorta at its anterior end; this divides into arteries for the supply of the body; the blood passes through these to capillaries, and is collected by veins which converge to one or two main trunks that enter the heart at its posterior end.

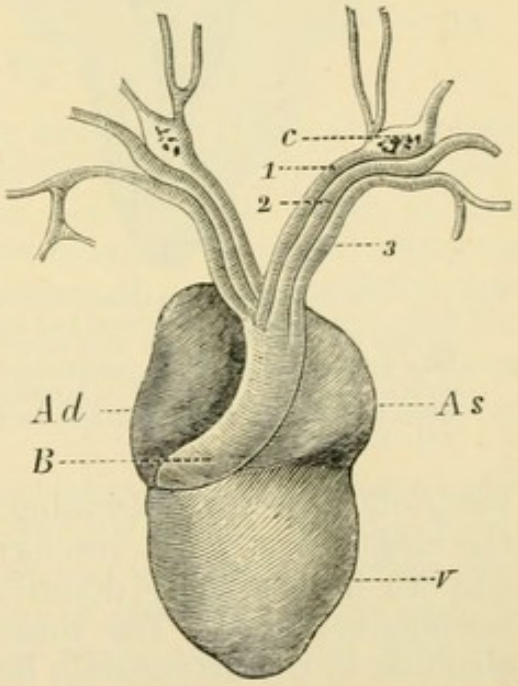


FIG. 240.—The heart of a frog (Rana esculenta) from the front. *V*, ventricle; *Ad*, right auricle; *As*, left auricle; *B*, bulbus arteriosus, dividing into right and left aortæ. (Ecker.)

In fishes, the heart is divided into a number of chambers placed in single file, one in front of the other; the most posterior which receives the veins is called the sinus venosus; this contracts and forces the blood into the next chamber, called the auricle; this forces the blood into the next cavity, that of the ventricle, and last of all is the aortic bulb. From the bulb, branches pass to the gills, where they break up into capillaries, and the blood is aërated: it then once more enters larger vessels which unite to form the dorsal aorta, whence the blood is distributed by arteries to all parts of the body; here it enters the systemic capillaries, then the veins which enter the sinus (whence we started) by a few large trunks.

Taking the frog as an instance of an amphibian, we find the heart more complex, and the simple peristaltic action of the heart muscle as we have described it in the hearts of worm and fish, becomes correspondingly modified. There is only one ventricle, but there are two auricles, right and left.

The ventricle contains mixed blood, since it receives arterial blood from the left auricle (which is the smaller of the two), and venous blood from the right auricle; the right auricle receives the venous blood from the sinus, which in turn receives it from the systemic veins. The left auricle, as in man, receives the blood from the pulmonary veins.

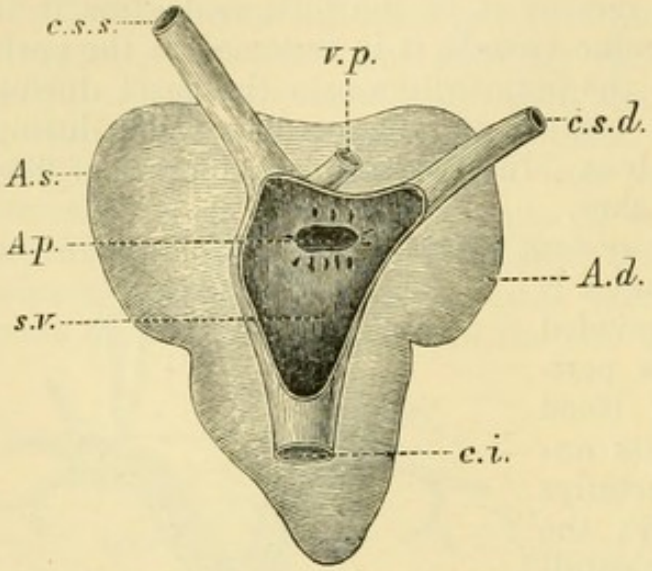


FIG. 241.—The heart of a frog (Rana esculenta) from the back. *s.v.*, sinus venosus opened; *c.s.s.*, left vena cava superior; *c.s.d.*, right vena cava superior; *c.i.*, vena cava inferior; *v.p.*, vena pulmonalis; *A.d.*, right auricle; *A.s.*, left auricle; *A.p.*, opening of communication between the right auricle and the sinus venosus. $\times 2\frac{1}{2}$—3. (Ecker.)

When the ventricle contracts, it forces the blood onward into the aortic bulb which divides into branches on each side for the supply of the head (fig. 240, 1), lungs and skin (fig. 240, 3), and the third branch (fig. 240, 2), unites with its fellow of the opposite side to form the dorsal aorta for the supply of the rest of the body.

Passing from the amphibians to the reptiles, we find the division of the ventricle into two beginning, but it is not complete till we reach the birds. The heart reaches its fullest development in mammals, and we have already described the human as an example of the mammalian heart. The sinus venosus is not present as a distinct chamber in the mammalian heart (except in a very early fœtal stage), but is represented by that portion of the right auricle at which the large veins enter.

CHAPTER XX

PHYSIOLOGY OF THE HEART

The Cardiac Cycle.

THE series of changes that occur in the heart constitutes the *cardiac cycle.* This must be distinguished from the course of the circulation. The term cycle indicates that if one observes the heart at any particular moment, the heart from that moment onwards undergoes certain changes until it once more assumes the same condition that it had at the moment when the observation commenced, when the cycle is again repeated, and so on. This series of changes consists of alternate contraction and relaxation. Contraction is known as **systole**, and relaxation as **diastole**.

The contraction of the two auricles takes place simultaneously, and constitutes the *auricular systole;* this is followed by the simultaneous contraction of the two ventricles, *ventricular systole,* and that by a period during which the whole of the heart is in a state of relaxation or *diastole;* then the cycle again commences with the auricular systole.

Taking 72 as the average number of heart beats per minute, each cycle will occupy $\frac{1}{72}$ of a minute, or a little more than 0·8 of a second. This may be approximately distributed in the following way:—

Auricular systole	about 0·1	+	Auricular diastole	0·7	= 0·8
Ventricular systole	,, 0·3	+	Ventricular diastole	0·5	= 0·8
Total systole	,, 0·4	+	Joint diastole	0·4	= 0·8

If the speed of the heart is quickened, the time occupied by each cycle is diminished, but the diminution affects chiefly the diastole. These different parts of the cycle must next be studied in detail.

The Auricular Diastole.—During this time, the blood from the large veins is flowing into the auricles, the pressure in the veins though very low being greater than that in the empty auricles. The blood expands the auricles, and during the last part of the auricular

diastole it passes on into the ventricles. The dilatation of the auricles is assisted by the elastic traction of the lungs. The lungs being in a closed cavity, the thorax, and being distended with air, are in virtue of their elasticity always tending to recoil and squeeze the air out of their interior; in so doing they drag upon any other organ with which their surface is in contact: this elastic traction will be greatest when the lungs are most distended, that is during inspiration, and will be more felt by the thin-walled auricles than by the thick-walled ventricles of the heart.

The Auricular Systole is sudden and very rapid; by contracting, the auricles empty themselves into the ventricles. The contraction commences at the entrance of the great veins, and is thence propagated towards the auriculo-ventricular opening. The reason why the blood does not pass backwards into the veins, but onward into the ventricles, is again a question of pressure; the pressure in the relaxed ventricles, which is so small as to exert a suction action on the auricular blood, is less than in the veins. Moreover, the auriculo-ventricular orifice is large and widely dilated, whereas the mouths of the veins are constricted by the contraction of their muscular coats. Though there is no regurgitation of the blood backwards into the veins, there is a stagnation of the flow of blood onwards to the auricles. The veins have no valves at their entrance into the auricles, except the coronary vein which does possess a valve; there are valves, however, at the junction of the subclavian and internal jugular veins.

Ventricular Diastole; during the last part of the auricular diastole and the whole of the auricular systole, the ventricles have been relaxed and then filled with blood. The dilatation of the ventricles is chiefly brought about in virtue of their elasticity; this is particularly evident in the left ventricle with its thick muscular coat. It is equal to 23 mm. of mercury, and is quite independent of the elastic traction of the lungs, which, however, in the case of the thinner-walled right ventricle comes into play.

The Ventricular Systole; this is the contraction of the ventricles, and it occupies more time than the auricular systole; when it occurs the auriculo-ventricular valves are closed and prevent regurgitation into the auricles, and when the force of the systole is greatest, and the pressure within the ventricles exceeds that in the large arteries which originate from them, the semilunar valves are opened, and the ventricles empty themselves, the left into the aorta, the right into the pulmonary artery. Each ventricle ejects about 3 ounces of blood with each contraction; the left in virtue of its thicker walls acts much more forcibly than the right. The greater force of the left ventricle is necessary, as it has to overcome the resistance of the small vessels all over the body; whereas the right

ventricle has only to overcome peripheral resistance in the pulmonary district.

The shape of both ventricles during systole has been described as undergoing an alteration, the diameters in the plane of the base being diminished, and the length of the ventricles slightly lessened. The whole heart, moreover, moves towards the right and forwards, twisting on its long axis and exposing more of the left ventricle anteriorly than when it is at rest. These movements, which were first described by Harvey, have been since Harvey's time believed to be the cause of the cardiac impulse or apex beat which is to be felt in the fifth intercostal space about three inches from the middle line. It has, however, been shown by Haycraft that these changes only occur when the chest walls are open. When the heart contracts in a closed thorax it undergoes no rotation, and the contraction is concentric, that is, equal in all directions. The diminution of the heart's volume which occurs in systole cannot be the cause of the apex beat; it would rather tend to draw the chest wall inwards than push it outwards.

The apex beat is caused by two changes in the physical condition of the heart. In the first place, on systole the heart becomes hard and tense, and secondly, its attachment to the aorta becomes rigid instead of being flexible as it is in diastole. Thus, in systole, the heart becomes rigidly fixed to the aorta, and, as this vessel is curved, it tends to open out into a straight line, but is prevented by the counter-resistance at the two ends of the arch. These are (*a*) the resistance of the chest wall against the heart, and (*b*) that of the vertebræ and ribs against the thoracic aorta. The pressure of the heart against the chest wall is confined to a small area, situated in the fifth intercostal space, because the heart surface is much more curved than the internal thoracic wall. The forward movement this pressure causes is the apex beat. It must be noted that this movement is not over the actual apex of the heart, but is communicated from an area on the anterior cardiac surface.

Action of the Valves of the Heart.

1. *The Auriculo-Ventricular.*—The distension of the ventricles with blood continues throughout the whole period of their diastole. The auriculo-ventricular valves are gradually brought into place by some of the blood getting behind the cusps and floating them up; by the time that the diastole is complete, the valves are in apposition, and they are firmly closed by the reflux current caused by the systole of the ventricles. The diminution in the size of the auriculo-ventricular rings which occurs during systole, renders the auriculo-ventricular valves competent to close these openings. The margins of the cusps of the valves are still more secured in apposition with one another, by the simultaneous contraction of the musculi papillares, whose chordæ tendineæ have a special mode of attachment for this object. The cusps of the auriculo-ventricular valves meet not by their edges only, but by the opposed surfaces of their thin outer borders.

The musculi papillares prevent the auriculo-ventricular valves from being everted into the auricle. For the chordæ tendineæ might allow the valves to be pressed back into the auricle, were it not that when the wall of the ventricle is brought by its contraction nearer to the auriculo-ventricular orifice, the musculi papillares more than compensate for this by their own contraction; they hold the cords

tight, and, by pulling down the valves, add slightly to the force with which the blood is expelled.

These statements apply equally to the auriculo-ventricular valves on both sides of the heart; the closure of both is generally complete every time the ventricles contract. But in some circumstances the tricuspid valve does not completely close, and a certain quantity of blood is forced back into the auricle. This has been called its *safety-valve action.* The circumstances in which it usually happens are those in which the vessels of the lung are already completely full when the right ventricle contracts, as, *e.g.*, in certain pulmonary diseases, and in very active muscular exertion. In these cases, the tricuspid valve does not completely close, and the regurgitation of the blood may be indicated by a pulsation in the jugular veins synchronous with that in the carotid arteries.

2. *The Semilunar Valves.*—The commencement of the ventricular systole precedes the opening of the aortic valves by a fraction of a second, as is proved by examining records of the intraventricular and aortic pressure curves taken simultaneously. The first result of the contraction of the ventricles is the closure of the auriculo-ventricular valves, and as soon as this has been effected the intraventricular pressure begins to rise. It quickly reaches a point at which it equals the aortic pressure, and then exceeds it, and as soon as this pressure difference has been established the aortic valves are opened and blood flows from the ventricle into the aorta. The valves are kept open as long as the intraventricular pressure exceeds the aortic, but as soon as the heart has emptied itself, the ventricle begins to relax, its internal pressure consequently begins to fall, and an instant is quickly reached at which it is exceeded by the aortic. The blood, therefore, tends to flow back from the aorta, and in so doing fills up the pockets of the semilunar valves, which have always remained partly filled, and brings them together with a sharp movement. The movements of the valves are therefore effected by the occurrence of differences of pressure upon their two faces. When they meet they completely close the orifice, because their inner edges, which are thinner than the rest of the valves, are brought into apposition and held so by the high pressure acting on their aortic surfaces only.

The Sounds of the Heart.

When the ear is placed over the region of the heart, two *sounds* may be heard at every beat of the heart, which follow in quick succession, and are succeeded by a *pause* or period of silence. The *first* or *systolic* sound is dull and prolonged; its commencement coincides with the impulse of the heart against the chest wall, and just precedes the pulse at the wrist. The *second* or *diastolic* sound

is shorter and sharper, with a somewhat flapping character, and follows close after the arterial pulse. The periods of time occupied respectively by the two sounds taken together and by the pause, are nearly equal. Thus, according to Walshe, if the cardiac cycle be divided into tenths, the first sound occupies $\frac{4}{10}$; the second sound, $\frac{2}{10}$; the first pause (almost imperceptible), $\frac{1}{10}$; and the second pause, $\frac{3}{10}$. The sounds are often but somewhat inaptly compared to the syllables, *lŭbb—dŭp*.

The events which correspond, in point of time, with the *first* sound, are (1) the contraction of the ventricles, (2) the first part of the dilatation of the auricles, (3) the tension of the auriculo-ventricular valves, (4) the opening of the semilunar valves, and (5) the propulsion of blood into the arteries. The sound is succeeded, in about one-thirtieth of a second, by the pulsation of the facial arteries, and in about one-sixth of a second, by the pulsation of the arteries at the wrist. The *second* sound, in point of time, immediately follows the cessation of the ventricular contraction, and corresponds with (*a*) the tension of the semilunar valves, (*b*) the continued dilatation of the auricles, (*c*) the commencing dilatation of the ventricles, and (*d*) the opening of the auriculo-ventricular valves. The *pause* immediately follows the second sound, and corresponds *in its first part* with the completed distension of the auricles, and *in its second* with their contraction, and the completed distension of the ventricles; the auriculo-ventricular valves are open, and the arterial valves closed during the whole of the pause.

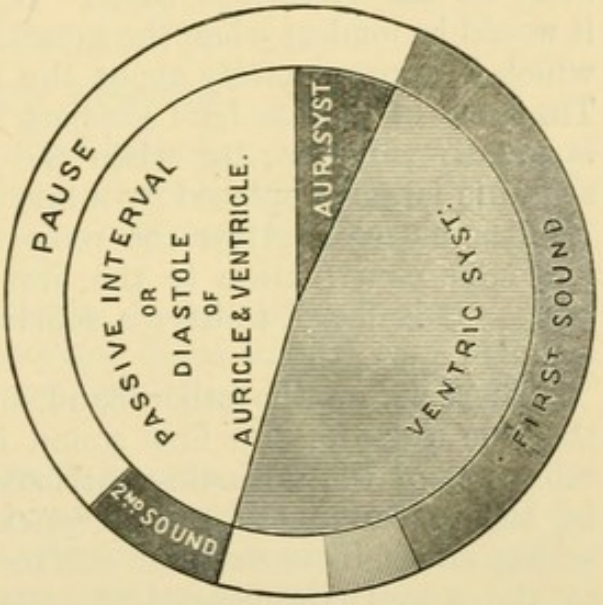


FIG. 242.—Scheme of cardiac cycle. The inner circle shows the events which occur within the heart; the outer the relation of the sounds and pauses to these events. (Sharpey and Gairdner.)

Causes.—The exact cause of the first sound of the heart is a matter of discussion. Two factors probably enter into it, viz., first, the *vibration of the auriculo-ventricular valves and the chordæ tendineæ*. This vibration is produced by the increased intraventricular pressure set up when the ventricular systole commences, which puts the valves on the stretch. It is not unlikely, too, that the vibration of the ventricular walls themselves, and of the aorta and pulmonary artery, all of which parts are suddenly put into a state of tension at the moment of ventricular contraction, may have some part in

producing the first sound. Secondly, *the muscular sound* produced by contraction of the mass of muscular fibres which forms the ventricle. Looking upon the contraction of the heart as a single contraction and not as a series of contractions or tetanus, it is at first sight difficult to see why there should be any muscular sound at all when the heart contracts, as a single muscular contraction does not produce sound. It has been suggested, however, that it arises from the repeated unequal tension produced when the wave of muscular contraction passes along the very intricately arranged fibres of the ventricular walls. Many regard the valvular element is the more important of the two factors, because the sound is loudest at first, when the vibration of the valves commences, and fades away as the vibrations cease. If the sound was mainly muscular, it would be loudest when the muscular contraction was most powerful, which is approximately about the middle of the ventricular systole. The facts of disease lend support to the theory that the first sound is mainly valvular; for when the valves are incompetent, the first sound is largely replaced by a murmur due to regurgitation of blood into the auricle. After the removal of the heart from the body, the muscular contribution to the first sound is audible, but it is very faint. It is stated to have a somewhat lower pitch than the valvular sound.

There is, on the other hand, much to be said against the view that the cause of the first sound is entirely or even largely due to vibration of the auriculo-ventricular valves. Any sound produced by the valves must be very quickly damped by the high pressure acting on their ventricular surfaces only. The sustained character of the sound (throughout practically the whole of the ventricular systole) is on the other hand exactly what is to be expected if it is of muscular origin. The argument that the extent to which the muscle sound contributes to the production of the first sound can be judged from the sound heard in an isolated and empty heart is quite fallacious, since under these conditions the muscle is contracting against no resistance.

The cause of the *second* sound is more simple than that of the first. It is entirely due to the vibration consequent on the sudden stretching of the semilunar valves when they are pressed down across the orifices of the aorta and pulmonary artery. The influence of these valves in producing the sound was first demonstrated by Hope, who experimented with the hearts of calves. In these experiments two delicate curved needles were inserted, one into the aorta, and another into the pulmonary artery, below the line of attachment of the semilunar valves, and, after being carried upwards about half an inch, were brought out again through the coats of the respective vessels, so that in each vessel one valve was included between the

arterial walls and the wire. Upon applying the stethoscope to the vessels, after such an operation, the second sound ceased to be audible. Disease of these valves, when sufficient to interfere with their efficient action, also demonstrates the same fact by modifying the second sound or destroying its distinctness.

The contraction of the auricles is inaudible.

The first sound is heard most distinctly at the apex beat in the fifth interspace; the second sound is best heard over the second *right* costal cartilage—that is, the place where the aorta lies nearest to the surface. The pulmonary and aortic valves generally close simultaneously. In some cases, however, the aortic may close slightly before the pulmonary valves, giving rise to a "reduplicated second sound." The pulmonary contribution to this sound is best heard over the second *left* cartilage.

The Coronary Arteries.

The coronary arteries are the first branches of the aorta; they originate from the sinuses of Valsalva, and are destined for the supply of the heart itself; the entrance of the coronary vein, into the right auricle, we have already seen (p. 207).

Ligature of the coronary arteries causes almost immediate death; the heart, deprived of its normal blood-supply, beats irregularly, goes into fibrillary twitchings, and then ceases to contract altogether.

In fatty degeneration of the heart in man, sudden death is by no means infrequent. This is in many cases due to a growth in thickness of the walls of the coronary arteries called atheroma, which progresses until the lumen of these arteries is obliterated, and the man dies almost as if they had been ligatured.

Self-steering Action of the Heart.—This expression was originated by Brücke. He supposed that the semilunar valves closed the orifices of the coronary arteries during the systole of the heart. Unlike all the other arteries of the body, the coronary arteries would therefore fill only during diastole, and this increased fulness of the vessels in the heart walls during diastole would assist the ventricle to dilate. This, however, is incorrect; the valves do not cover the mouths of the arteries; and at the beginning of systole the velocity and pressure in the coronary arteries increase; but later on during systole the ventricular wall is so strongly contracted that the muscular tension becomes greater than the coronary pressure, and so the coronary arteries and their branches are compressed, and the blood driven back into the aorta; the coronary arteries are then again filled with the commencing diastole. Self-steering action of the heart therefore exists, but it is brought about in a different way from what Brücke supposed.

Cardiographs.

A cardiograph is an instrument for obtaining a graphic record of the heart's movements. In animals the heart may be exposed,

and levers placed in connection with its various parts may be employed to write on a revolving blackened surface.

A simple instrument for the frog's heart is the following:—

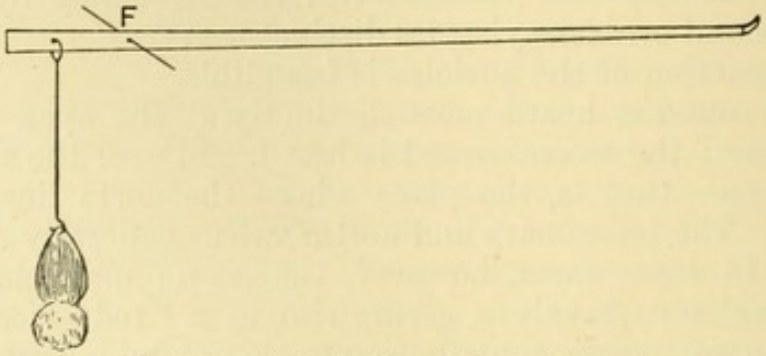


FIG. 243.—Simple Cardiograph for frog's heart.

The sternum of the frog having been removed, the pericardium opened, and the frænum (a small band from the back of the heart to the pericardium) divided, the heart is pulled through the opening, a minute hook placed in its apex, and this is fixed by a silk thread to a lever pivoted at F as in the figure. The cardiac wave of contraction starts at the sinus, this is followed by the auricular systole, and that by the ventricular systole and pause. This is recorded as in the next figure (fig. 244) by movements of the writing point at the end of the long arm of the lever. Such apparatus is, however, not applicable to the human heart, and all the various forms of cardiograph devised for this purpose are modifications of Marey's tambours. One of those most frequently used is depicted in the next two diagrams.

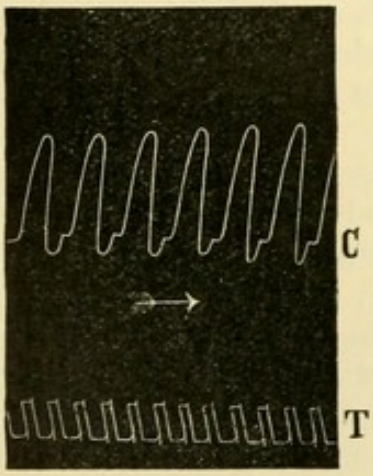


FIG. 244.—Cardiogram of frog's heart. C, showing auricular, followed by ventricular beat; T, time in half seconds.

It (fig. 245) consists of a cup-shaped metal box over the open front of which is stretched an elastic india rubber membrane, upon which is fixed a small knob of hard wood or ivory. This knob, however, may be attached, as in the figure, to the side of the box by means of a spring, and may be made to act upon a metal disc attached to the elastic membrane.

The knob is for application to the chest-wall over the apex beat. The box or tambour communicates by means of an air-tight tube with the interior of a second tambour, in connection with which is a long and light lever. The shock of the heart's impulse being communicated to the ivory knob and through it to the first tambour, the effect is at once transmitted by the column of air in the elastic tube to the interior of the second tambour, also closed, and through the elastic and movable lid of the latter to the lever, which is placed in connection with a registering apparatus, which consists of a cylinder covered with smoked paper, revolving with a definite velocity. The point of the lever writes upon the paper, and a tracing of the heart's impulse or **cardiogram** is thus obtained.

Fig. 247 represents a typical tracing obtained in this way. The

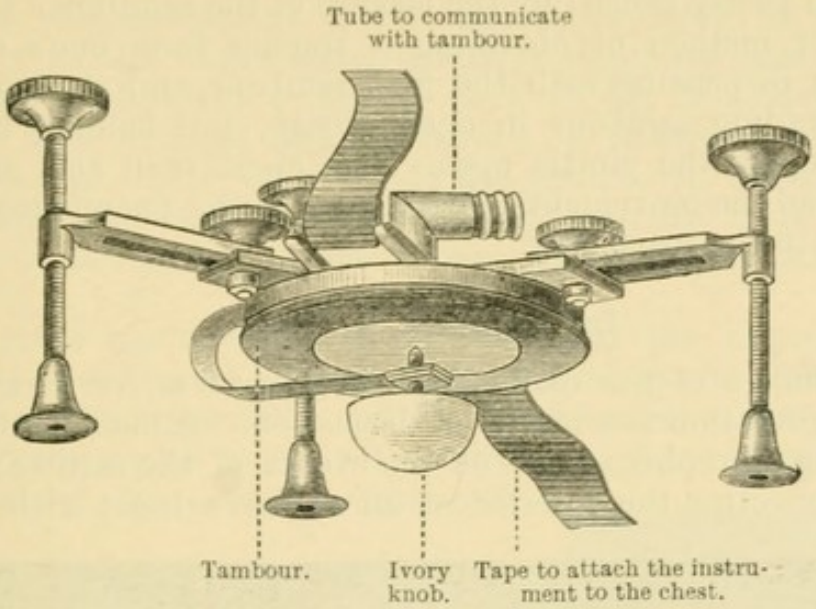


FIG. 245.—Cardiograph. (Sanderson's.)

first small rise of the lever is caused by the auricular, the second

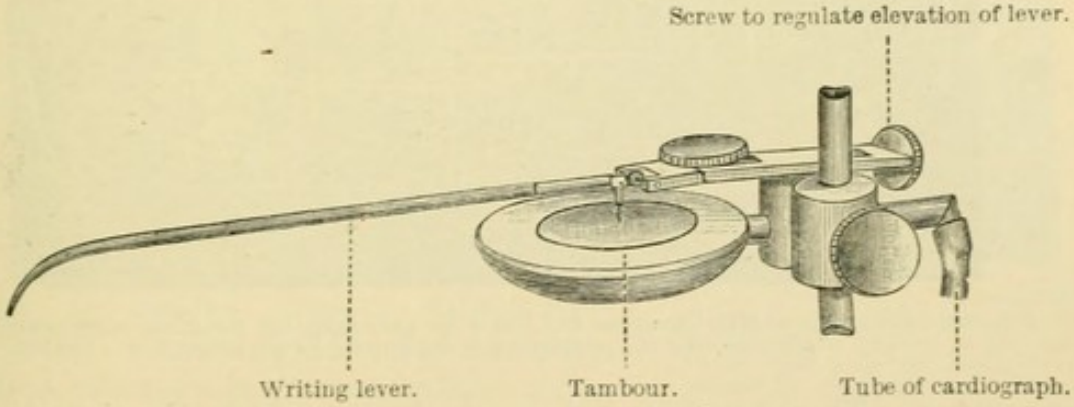


FIG. 246.—Marey's Tambour, to which the movement of the column of air in the first tambour is conducted by a tube, and from which it is communicated by the lever to a revolving cylinder, so that the tracing of the movement of the impulse beat is obtained.

larger rise by the ventricular systole; the downstroke represents the

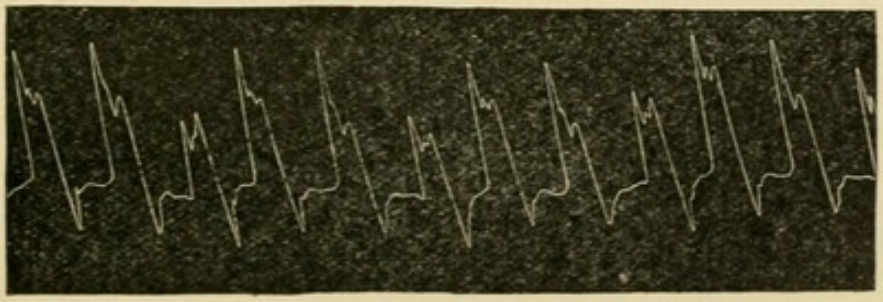


FIG. 247.—Cardiogram from human heart. The variations in the individual beats are due to the influence of the respiratory movements on the heart. To be read from left to right.

pause, the tremors at the commencement of which are partly instrumental and partly caused by the closure of the semilunar valves.

Another method of obtaining a tracing from one's own heart consists in dispensing with the first tambour, and placing the tube of the recording tambour in one's mouth, and holding the breath though keeping the glottis open. The chest then acts as the first tambour, and the movements of the lever (cardio-pneumatogram) may be written in the usual way.

Intracardiac Pressure.

The tracings of the cardiograph are, however, very variable, and their interpretation is a matter of discussion. A much better method of obtaining a graphic record of the events of the cardiac cycle consists in connecting the interior of an animal's heart with recording

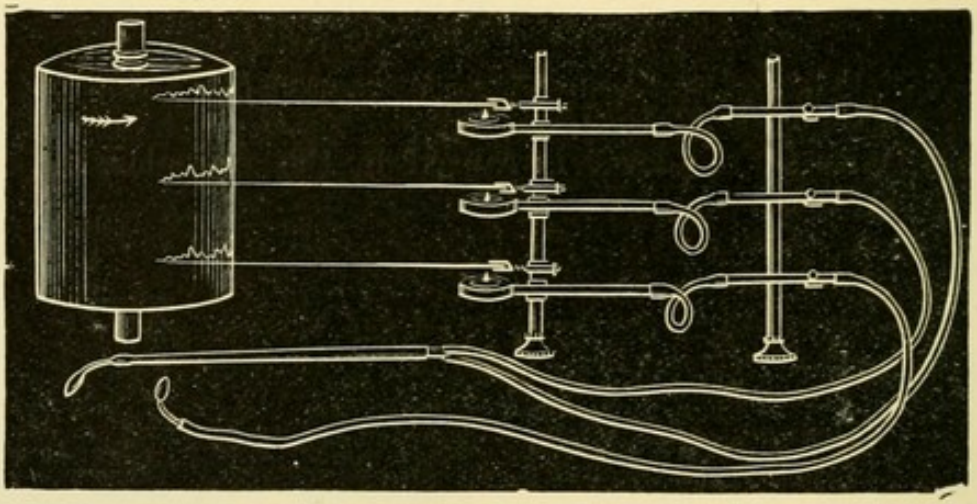


FIG. 248.—Apparatus of MM. Chauveau and Marey for estimating the variations of endocardiac pressure, and the production of the impulse of the heart.

apparatus. There are several methods by which the intracardiac pressure may be recorded.

By placing two small indiarubber air-bags or *cardiac sounds* down the jugular vein into the interior respectively of the right auricle and the right ventricle, and a third in an intercostal space in front of the heart of a living animal (horse), and placing these bags, by means of long narrow tubes, in communication with three tambours with levers, arranged one over the others in connection with a registering apparatus (fig. 248), Chauveau and Marey were able to record and measure the variations of the intracardiac pressure and the comparative duration of the contractions of the auricles and ventricles. By means of the same apparatus, the synchronism of the impulse with the contraction of the ventricles is also shown.

In the tracing (fig. 249), the intervals between the vertical lines represent periods of a tenth of a second. The parts on which any

given vertical line falls represent simultaneous events. It will be seen that the contraction of the auricle, indicated by the marked curve at A in the first tracing, causes a slight increase of pressure in the ventricle, which is shown at A′ in the second tracing, and produces also a slight impulse, which is indicated by A″ in the third tracing. The closure of the semilunar valves causes a momentarily increased pressure in the ventricle at D′, affects the pressure in the auricle D, and is also shown in the tracing of the impulse D″.*

The large curve of the ventricular and the impulse tracings, between A′ and D′, and A″ and D″, are caused by the ventricular contraction; while the smaller undulations, between B and C, B′ and C′, B″ and C″, are caused by the vibrations consequent on the tightening and closure of the auriculo-ventricular valves.

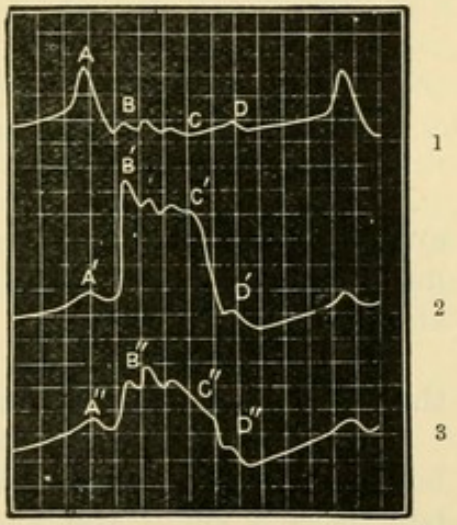


FIG. 249.—Tracings of (1), Intra-auricular, and (2), Intra-ventricular pressure, and (3), of the impulse of the heart; to be read from left to right; obtained by Chauveau and Marey's apparatus.

Much objection has, however, been taken to this method of investigation. First, because it does not admit of both positive and negative pressure being recorded. Secondly, because the method is only applicable to large animals, such as the horse. Thirdly, because the intraventricular changes of pressure are communicated to the recording tambour by a long elastic column of air; and fourthly, because the tambour arrangement has a tendency to record inertia vibrations. Rolleston reinvestigated the subject with a more suitable but rather complicated apparatus. The principle of the method consisted in placing the cavity of a heart-chamber in communication with a recording apparatus by means of a tube containing saline solution. His recording apparatus consisted of a lever connected to a piston; the upward and downward movements of the piston-rod were due to the varying pressures exerted on the blood by the contraction and dilatation of the heart; the rise and fall of the lever were controlled by the resistance to torsion of a steel ribbon to which it was attached. The following figure (fig. 250) shows the kind of tracing he obtained. He found:—

1. That there is no distinct and separate auricular contraction marked in the curves obtained from either right or left ventricles,

* There can be no doubt that the point D which Marey considered to coincide with the closure of the semilunar valves does not really do so. The closure occurs much earlier (E in fig. 252).

the auricular and ventricular rises of pressure being merged into one continuous rise.

2. That the auriculo-ventricular valves are closed before any great rise of intraventricular pressure above that which results from the auricular systole occurs (*a*, fig. 250). The closure of this valve does not produce any notch or wave.

3. That the semilunar valves open at the point in the ventricular

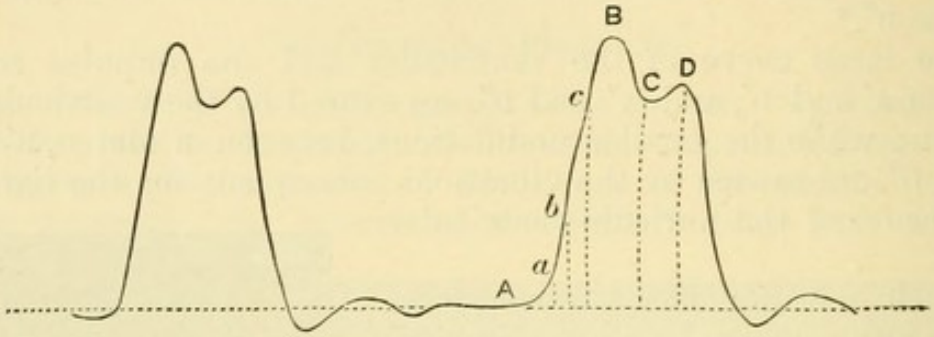


FIG. 250.—Curve from left ventricle obtained by Rolleston's apparatus; the abscissa shows atmospheric pressure.

systole, situated (at *c*) about or a little above the junction of the middle and upper third of the ascending line (A B), and the closure about the shoulder (D).

4. That the minimum pressure in the ventricle may fall below that of the atmosphere, but that the amount varies considerably.

Another method of overcoming the imperfections of Marey's tambour is by the use of Hürthle's manometer (fig. 244). In this the tambour is very small, the membrane is made of thick rubber, and the

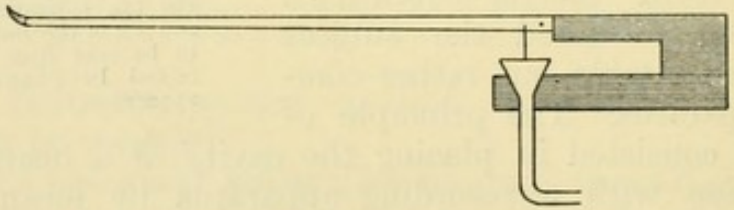


FIG. 251.—Hürthle's Manometer.

whole, including the tube that connects it to the heart, is filled with a strong saline solution (saturated solution of sodium sulphate).

The tracing obtained by this instrument, when connected with the interior of the ventricle, is represented in the next figure.

The auricular systole causes a small rise of pressure A B; it lasts about ·05 second. It is immediately followed by the ventricular contraction, which lasts from B to D. From B to C the ventricle is getting up pressure, so that at C it equals the aortic pressure. This takes ·02 to ·04 second. Just beyond C the aortic valves open, and blood is driven into the aorta; the outflow lasts from C to D (·2

second). At D the ventricle relaxes. The flat part of the curve is spoken of as the *systolic plateau*, and according to the state of the heart and the peripheral resistance may present a gradual ascent or descent; it occupies about ·18 second. Almost immediately after the

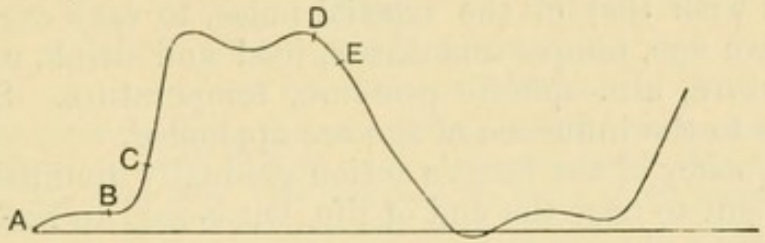


FIG. 252.—Curve of intraventricular pressure. (After Hürthle.)

relaxation begins the intraventricular pressure falls below the aortic, so that the aortic valves close near the upper part of the descent at E.

The amount of pressure in the heart is measured by a manometer, which is connected to the heart by a tube containing a valve. This was first used by Goltz and Gaule. If the valve permits fluid to go only from the heart, the manometer will indicate the maximum pressure ever attained during the cycle. If it is turned the other way, it will indicate the minimum pressure. The following are some of the measurements taken from the dog's heart in terms of millimetres of mercury:—

	Maximum pressure.	Minimum pressure.
Left ventricle . . .	140 mm.	− 30 to 40 mm.
Right ventricle . . .	60 mm.	− 15 mm.
Right auricle	20 mm.	− 7 to 8 mm.

By a negative (−) pressure one means that the mercury is sucked up in the limb of the manometer towards the heart.

Another valuable instrument introduced by Hürthle is called the differential manometer. In this instrument, two cannulæ are brought into connection with tambours (A and B) which work on points of a lever at equal distances from and on

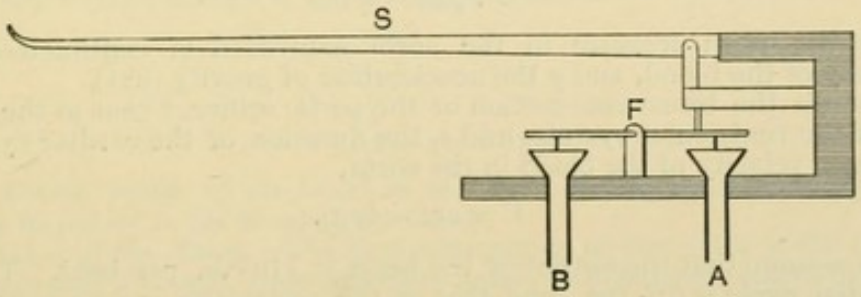


FIG. 253.—Diagram of Hürthle's differential Manometer.

opposite sides of its fulcrum (F). The lever sets in motion a writing style (S). This instrument enables us to determine the relations of the pressure changes in any two cavities. For instance, suppose A is connected to the left ventricle, and B to the aorta; when the pressure in the ventricle is greater than that in the aorta, the writing style will be raised; when the pressure in the aorta is greater than that in the ventricle, the style will fall; when the two pressures are equal, it will be in the zero position.

Frequency of the Heart's Action.

The heart of a healthy adult man contracts about 72 times in a minute; but many circumstances cause this rate, which of course corresponds with that of the arterial pulse, to vary even in health. The chief are age, temperament, sex, food and drink, exercise, time of day, posture, atmospheric pressure, temperature. Some figures in reference to the influence of age are appended.

The frequency of the heart's action gradually diminishes from the commencement to near the end of life, but is said to rise again somewhat in extreme old age, thus:—

Before birth the average number of pulsations per minute is	150	About the seventh year	from 90 to 85
Just after birth	from 140 to 130	About the fourteenth year	,, 85 to 80
During the first year	,, 130 to 115	In adult age	,, 80 to 70
During the second year	,, 115 to 100	In old age	,, 70 to 60
During the third year	,, 100 to 90	In decrepitude	,, 75 to 65

In health there is observed a nearly uniform relation between the frequency of the beats of the heart and of the respirations; the proportion being, on an average, 1 respiration to 3 or 4 beats. The same relation is generally maintained in the cases in which the action of the heart is naturally accelerated, as after food or exercise; but in disease this relation may cease.

Work of the Heart.

Waller compares the work performed by the heart in the day to that done by an able-bodied labourer working hard for two hours. The heart's work consists in discharging blood against pressure, and in imparting velocity to it. Thus, if V represents the output of the heart per beat measured in cubic centimetres, and P the mean pressure in the aorta, m the mass of the blood, and v the velocity imparted to it; the work W is given by the equation:—

$$W = VP + \tfrac{1}{2}\, mv^2$$
$$= Vgdh + \tfrac{1}{2}\, mv^2$$

where h is the mean pressure in the aorta expressed in centimetres of blood, d the density of the blood, and g the acceleration of gravity (981).

If now a is the transverse section of the aortic orifice, b that of the aorta, t the duration of the ventricular systole, and t_1 the duration of the cardiac cycle, then, if v_1 is the mean velocity of the blood in the aorta,

$$V = avt = bv_1t_1.$$

Let us assume that the output of the heart is 110 c.c. per beat. The duration of the cardiac cycle is 0·8 sec., and that of the ventricular systole is 0·3 sec. The diameter of the aorta is about 3 cms. and that of the aortic orifice 2·6 cms. Remembering that the radius in each case is half the diameter, we have:—

$$110 = \pi(1{\cdot}3)^2 \times 0{\cdot}3 \times v = \pi(1{\cdot}5)^2 \times 0{\cdot}8 \times v_1$$

Therefore $v = 86{\cdot}03$, and $v_1 = 19{\cdot}45$ cms. per second.

That is, the velocity of the blood as it is discharged from the heart is about 4·5 times greater than the mean velocity of the blood in the aorta.

If H represents the mean intraventricular pressure during the time blood is

being discharged into the aorta, measured in cms. of blood, and h the mean aortic pressure over the same time, then :—

$$v^2 = 2g(H - h).$$

Or
$$H = h + \frac{v^2}{2g}$$
$$= h + \frac{(86{\cdot}03)^2}{2 \times 981}$$
$$= h + 3{\cdot}77 \text{ cms. of blood.}$$

That is, the mean intraventricular pressure during the time the semilunar valves are open is only 3·77 *cms. of blood or* 0·28 *cms. of mercury higher than the mean aortic pressure during the same time. We may take the mean aortic pressure during the duration of systole as approximately* 12 *cms. of mercury or* 156 *cms. of blood, if we take the density of mercury as being* 13 *times that of the blood.*

Now if $E\rho$ represents the total potential energy created by the heart per beat, then,

$$E\rho = VgdH.$$

A part of this energy, $E\kappa$, is converted into kinetic energy since velocity is imparted to the blood. This amount is given by the formula :—

$$E\kappa = \tfrac{1}{2}Vdv^2.$$

From these two formulæ

$$E\rho = 110 \times g \times 1{\cdot}05 \times (156 + 3{\cdot}77) \text{ ergs}$$

or
$$= 110 \times 1{\cdot}05 \times (159{\cdot}77) \text{ grm. cms.}$$
$$= 18453{\cdot}4 \text{ grm. cms.}$$

Again
$$\frac{E\rho}{E\kappa} = \frac{VgdH}{\frac{1}{2}\,Vdv^2}$$
$$= \frac{2gH}{v^2}$$
$$= \frac{H}{H - h}$$
$$= \frac{159{\cdot}77}{3{\cdot}77}$$
$$= 40 \text{ approximately.}$$

That is, $\frac{1}{40}$ *of the total energy of the heart's beat is used in imparting velocity to the blood.*

When the blood reaches the aorta its velocity is gradually checked, *i.e.*, some of the kinetic energy imparted to it by the heart is reconverted into energy of pressure. The remaining kinetic energy is given by the equation :—

$$E\kappa^1 = \tfrac{1}{2}\,mv_1^2$$
$$= \frac{Vdv_1^2}{2g}$$
$$= 22{\cdot}275 \text{ grm. cms.}$$

Hence, the kinetic energy of the blood in the aorta is only approximately $\frac{1}{800}$ *of the total energy imparted to the blood by the heart.*

The Output of the Heart.—The first estimations of the work of the heart, made by Volkmann and Vierordt, gave numbers nearly double those stated in the preceding paragraph. Recent research has shown that their estimate of the output of the heart was excessive. Direct measurements of the heart's output have been made by Stolnikow and Tigerstedt. The former cut off by ligature the whole of the systemic circulation in the dog, and then measured the amount of blood passing through the simplified circulation which consisted only of the pulmonary and coronary vessels by means of a graduated cylinder interposed on the course of the vessels (see fig. 254). Tigerstedt made his observations by means of a Stromuhr (see next chapter) inserted into the aorta. Severe operative measures of this kind, however, interfere with the circulation a good deal.

Gréhant and Quinquand, and Zuntz adopted an indirect method based on the comparison of the amount of oxygen absorbed in the lungs with the amount added to the blood in its passage through the pulmonary circulation.

G. N. Stewart has introduced an ingenious method, the principle of which is the following:—A solution of an innocuous substance, which can be easily recognised and estimated, is allowed to flow for a definite time and at a uniform rate into the heart; the substance selected was sodium chloride. This mingles with the blood and passes into the circulation. At a convenient point of the vascular system, a sample of blood is drawn off just before the injection, and an equal amount during the passage of the salt; the quantity of the sodium chloride solution which must be added to the first sample in order that it may contain as much as the second sample is determined. This determination gives the extent to which the salt solution has been mixed with the blood in the heart, and knowing the quantity of the solution which has run into the heart, the output in a given time can be calculated.

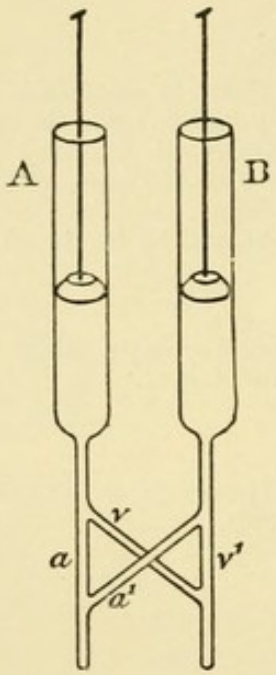


FIG. 254.—Stolnikow's apparatus. A and B are two cylinders fitted with floats provided with writing-points at their upper ends. The tube from the lower end of each bifurcates into two, a and v from A; a' and v' from B. a and a are united together and enter the right carotid artery; v and v' unite and are inserted into the superior vena cava. The remaining branches of the aorta and the inferior vena cava are tied. B is first filled with defibrinated blood, which passes down v' into the right auricle, thence to the right ventricle, lungs (where it is oxygenated), and then enters the left side of the heart; the left ventricle expels it by the tube a into A, so that the float in A rises while that in B falls. As soon as B is empty the tubes v and a' which were previously clamped are released, and v' and a are clamped instead. The left ventricle now expels its blood by the tube a' into the cylinder B; simultaneously A empties itself through v into the right side of the heart. Zigzag lines are thus traced by the writing-points on the top of the floats, and their frequency enables one to estimate the output of the left ventricle in a given time. (After Starling.)

All these experiments have been on animals. The results obtained necessarily vary with the size of the animal used, and with the rate at which the heart is beating. If the same relationship holds for man as for animals, Stewart calculates that in a man weighing 70 kilos. the output of each ventricle per second is less than 0·002 of the body weight, *i.e.*, about 105 grammes of blood per second, or 87 grammes (about 80 c.c.) per heart beat with a pulse rate of 72. Zuntz obtained rather smaller numbers by his method.

An instrument called the *cardiometer* was invented by Roy for registering the output of the heart. His instrument was made of metal, and oil was used as the transmitting medium in its interior. A simple modification of this applicable to the heart of a small mammal like a cat has been devised by Barnard. It consists of an indiarubber tennis ball with a circular orifice cut in one side of it large enough to admit the heart; a glass tube is securely fixed into a small opening on the opposite side of the ball. The animal is anæsthetised, and its thorax opened. The animal is kept alive by artificial respiration. The pericardium is then opened by a crucial incision, the heart is slipped into the ball; the pericardium overlaps the outside of the ball, and the apparatus is rendered air-tight by smearing the edges of the hole with vaseline. The four corners of the pericardium are then tightly tied by ligatures round the glass tube just mentioned. This tube is connected by a stout indiarubber tube to a Marey's tambour or a piston-recorder, the writing-point of which is applied to a moving blackened cylinder. When the heart contracts, air will be withdrawn from the

tambour to the cardiometer; when the heart expands, the air will move in the reverse direction. These movements are written by the end of the lever of the tambour, and variations in the excursions of this lever correspond with variations in the amount of blood expelled from or drawn into the heart with systole and diastole respectively. By calibrating the instrument the actual volume of the blood expelled can be ascertained.

Innervation of the Heart.

The nerves of the heart, which under normal circumstances control its movements, are:—

1. Cardiac branches of the vagus (inhibitory fibres).
2. Cardiac branches of the sympathetic (augmentor and accelerator fibres).

These pass to the heart and terminate in certain collections of ganglion cells in its wall; from these cells fresh fibres are distributed among the muscular fibres. In addition to these nerves, which are efferent, we have to mention:—

3. The sensory or afferent nerves of the heart, the best known of which is called the *depressor* nerve. This nerve, starting from the cardiac tissue, joins the vagus trunk; it passes to the bulb, especially to the vaso-motor centre. We shall therefore postpone its study until we are considering the vaso-motor nerves.

The Vagus.—The ninth, tenth, and eleventh cranial nerves arise close together from the grey matter in the floor of the fourth ventricle, and leave the bulb by a number of rootlets. These rootlets are divided by Grossmann into three groups, *a*, *b*, and *c*; there is a good deal of blending of the rootlets before they ultimately emerge from the skull, but the *a* group corresponds fairly well with the fibres of the glossopharyngeal, *b* with those of the vagus, and *c* with those of the spinal accessory. The rootlets of the tenth nerve pass through two ganglia called respectively the *jugular ganglion*, and the *ganglion trunci vagi*. The fibres of the spinal accessory nerve which join the vagus are chiefly motor, especially to the larynx, but some go to the heart. The vagus gives off branches to many organs, pharynx, larynx, heart, lungs, œsophagus, and various abdominal organs. We have, however, in this place only to deal with its cardiac fibres. It has been known since the experiments of the Brothers Weber in 1845 that stimulation of one or both vagi produces slowing or stoppage of the beats of the heart. It has since been shown that in all vertebrate animals, this is the normal result of vagus stimulation; the phenomenon is called *inhibition*, and the nerve-fibres *cardio-inhibitory*. Section of one vagus produces slight acceleration of the heart; this result is better marked when both vagi are divided. This shows that the restraining influence of the vagus is being continuously exercised; it is, however, found that the amount of vagus control so exercised varies a good deal in different animals. The most potent artificial stimulus

which can be applied to the vagus nerve to produce inhibition of the heart is a rapidly interrupted induction current; severe mechanical stimuli have a slight effect, but chemical and thermal stimuli are ineffective.

A certain amount of confusion has arisen as to the effect of vagus

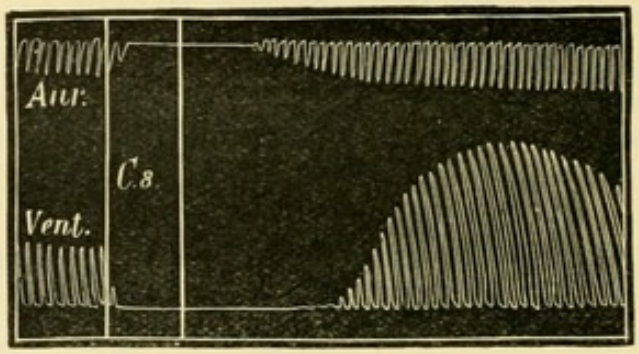


FIG. 255.—Tracing showing the actions of the vagus on the heart. *Aur.*, auricular; *Vent.*, ventricular tracing. The part between the perpendicular lines indicates the period of vagus stimulation. *C.8* indicates that the secondary coil was 8 *c.m.* from the primary. The part of the tracing to the left shows the regular contractions of moderate height before stimulation. During stimulation, and for some time after, the beats of auricle and ventricle are arrested. After they commence again they are small at first, but soon acquire a much greater amplitude than before the application of the stimulus. (From Brunton, after Gaskell.)

stimulation, because so many experiments have been made on the frog. In this animal the sympathetic fibres join the vagus after it leaves the skull, and so what is usually called the vagus in this animal should more properly be termed the *vago-sympathetic.* It will readily be understood that by stimulating a mixed nerve, one obtains an intermixture of effects. If, however, one stimulates the intracranial vagus before the sympathetic blends with it, a pure inhibitory

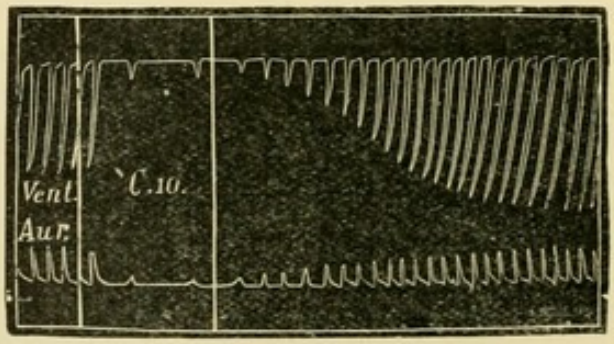


FIG. 256.—Tracing showing diminished amplitude and slowing of the pulsations of the auricle and ventricle without complete stoppage during stimulation of the vagus. (From Brunton, after Gaskell.)

effect is obtained. Figs. 255 and 256 show the common effect of stimulating the mixed trunk; the inhibitory effect is usually manifested first, and this is followed by the augmentor effect due to sympathetic action. But it is by no means infrequent to obtain the phenomena in the reverse order. It is often stated that the right

nerve contains more inhibitory fibres than the left, but this is by no means a constant rule. One can always obtain good inhibition if the stimulus is applied to the wall of the sinus; here one stimulates the post-ganglionic fibres which originate from the nerve-cells in the sinus ganglion around which the vagi terminate.

The effect of the stimulus is not immediately seen; one or more beats may occur before stoppage of the heart takes place, and slight stimulation may produce only slowing and not complete stoppage of the heart (fig. 256). The stoppage may be due either to prolongation of the diastole, as is usually the case, or to diminution of the systole. Vagus stimulation lessens the conductivity of the cardiac tissue, but it does not abolish the irritability of the heart-muscle, since mechanical stimulation may bring out a beat during the stand-still caused by vagus stimulation. The inhibition of the beats varies in duration, but if the stimulation is a prolonged one, the beats reappear before the current is shut off. This is known as "vagus escape," and occurs in all animals; it is probably due to fatigue of the vagal endings.

The Sympathetic.—The influence of the sympathetic is the reverse of that of the vagus. Stimulation of the sympathetic produces acceleration of the heart-beats, and according to most observers, section of the nerve produces no slowing. Hence the nerve is not in constant action like the vagus. The acceleration produced by stimulation of the sympathetic fibres is accompanied by increased force, and so the action of the nerve is also termed *augmentor*. It is probable that the augmentor fibres are distinct from the accelerator fibres, because in mammals one or two of the small nerves leaving the stellate ganglion on stimulation produce augmentation without acceleration.

The fibres of the sympathetic system which influence the heart-beat in the frog, leave the spinal cord by the anterior root of the third spinal nerve, and pass by the ramus communicans to the third sympathetic ganglion, then to the second sympathetic ganglion, then by the annulus of Vieussens (round the subclavian artery) to the first sympathetic ganglion, and finally in the main trunk of the sympathetic, to near the exit of the vagus from the cranium, where it joins that nerve and runs down to the heart within its sheath, forming the joint vago-sympathetic trunk. These fibres are indicated by the dark line in fig. 257. The fibres of the sympathetic seen running up into the skull are for the supply of blood-vessels there. It should be noted that the frog has no spinal accessory nerve.

In the mammal the sympathetic fibres leave the cord by the second and third dorsal nerves, and possibly by anterior roots of two or more lower nerves; they pass by the rami communicantes to the ganglion stellatum, or first thoracic ganglion, and thence by the

annulus of Vieussens to the inferior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic; fibres from the annulus, or from the inferior cervical ganglion, proceed to the heart (see fig. 258).

In man, the cardiac branches of the sympathetic travel to the heart from the annulus of Vieussens and cervical sympathetic in superior, middle, and lower bundles of fibres. These pass into the cardiac plexus, and surrounding the coronary vessels ultimately reach the heart. They probably contain vaso-motor fibres for these vessels, as well as the more important fibres for the heart itself.

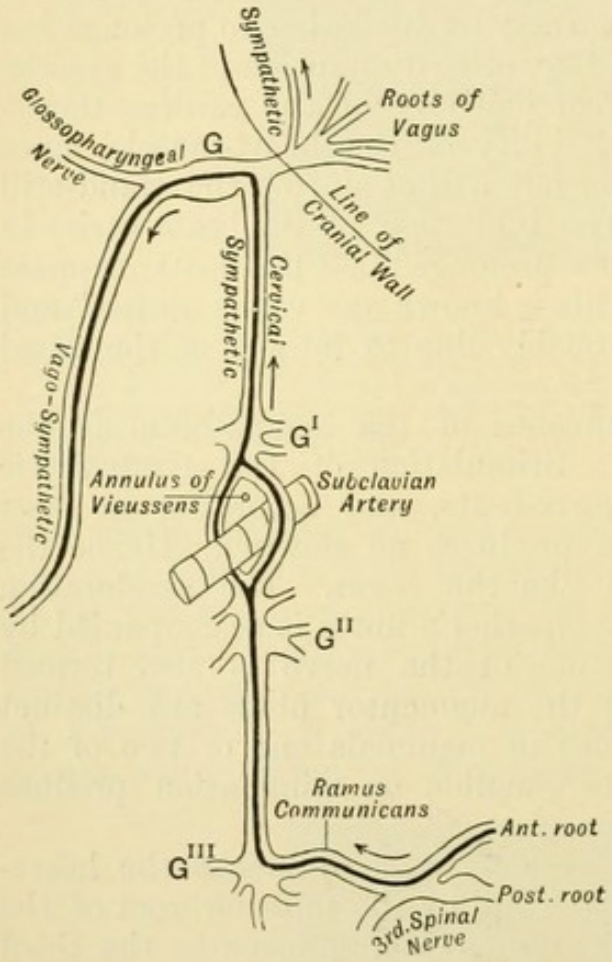


FIG. 257.—Heart nerves of frog. (Diagrammatic.)

By stimulating each rootlet in his three groups, Grossmann found the cardio-inhibitory fibres in the lower two or three rootlets of group *b* and the upper rootlet of group *c*. There are probably differences in different animals. In the cat and dog Cadman finds that the rootlets in the *a* group are respiratory and afferent inhibitory, and that all the efferent inhibitory fibres are in group *c*.

The inhibitory fibres are medullated, and only measure 2μ to 3μ in diameter; they pass to the heart and have their cell-stations in the ganglia of that organ. The sympathetic fibres, on the other hand, reach the heart as non-medullated fibres; they have their cell-stations in the sympathetic (inferior cervical and first thoracic) ganglia. The augmentor and accelerator centres in the central nervous system have not yet been accurately localised.

Influence of Drugs.—The question of the action of drugs on the heart forms a large branch of pharmacology. We shall be content here with mentioning two only, as they are largely used for experimental purposes by physiologists. *Atropine* produces considerable augmentation of the heart-beats by paralysing the inhibitory mechanism. *Muscarine* (obtained from poisonous fungi) produces marked slowing, and in larger doses temporary stoppage of the heart. Its effect is a prolonged inhibition, and can be removed by the action of atropine. The action of atropine cannot, however, be easily antagonised by muscarine; a large dose is necessary. That these drugs act on the nerves, and not the muscular substance of the heart, is shown by the fact that in the hearts of early embryos, so

early that no nerves have yet grown to the heart, these drugs have little or no effect. (Pickering.)

Reflex Inhibition.—Thus there is no doubt that the vagi nerves are simply the media of an inhibitory or restraining influence over the action of the heart, which is conveyed through them from the centre in the medulla oblongata, which is always in operation. The restraining influence of the centre in the medulla may be reflexly *increased* by stimulation of many afferent nerves, particularly those from the nasal mucous membrane, the larynx, and the lungs. A blow on the abdomen causes inhibition and fainting; a blow on the larynx, even a moderate one, will kill. There is no comparison between the ease with which stimulation of the laryngeal or pulmonary fibres produces inhibition, as compared to the difficulty of obtaining inhibition from the alimentary tract. Chloroform vapour * and tobacco smoke in some people and animals, by acting on the terminations of the vagi or their branches in the respiratory system, may also produce reflex inhibition of the heart. Some very remarkable facts concerning the readiness by which reflex inhibition of the fish's heart may be produced were made out by M'William; any irritation of the tail, gills, mucous membrane of mouth and pharynx, or of the parietal peritoneum, causes the heart to stop beating.

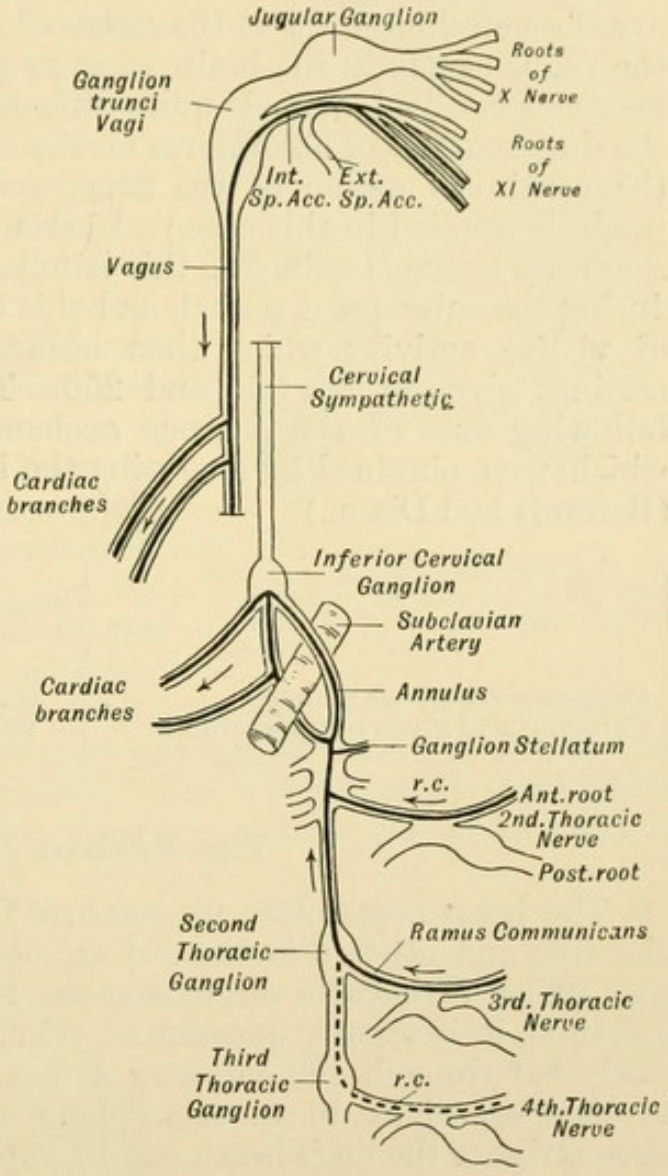


FIG. 258.—Heart nerves of mammal. (Diagrammatic.)

In connection with the subject of reflex inhibition, it may be mentioned in conclusion that though we have no voluntary control

* Embley, however, considers that the usual cause of sudden death during the early stages of chloroform narcosis is the direct action of the drug on the vagus centre. In animals, cutting the vagi immediately sets the heart going again.

over the heart's movements, yet cerebral excitement will produce an effect on the rate of the heart, as in certain emotional conditions.

Gaseous exchanges during Inhibition.—The mammalian heart is more difficult to stop by stimulation of the vagus than the frog's heart; commonly it is only slowed, and the amplitude of the beat reduced, yet it is most important for the student of medicine to recollect that vagus inhibition may have far-reaching results. An overdose of chloroform at the onset of anæsthesia may so stimulate the vagus centre in the brain so as to produce heart-stoppage which may end fatally. (This is quite different to the stoppage caused by the direct action of chloroform on the cardiac tissue as the result of the continued action of the drug, and the word inhibition is not properly applied in this case.) In true inhibition, the metabolism of the heart tissue is reduced: this is followed by increased metabolism during the subsequent period, and this corresponds with the increase of visible activity which then occurs and which is seen in the tracings given in figs. 255 and 256. This is well illustrated by the following data of the gaseous exchanges in the heart of the cat, which were obtained by analysing the blood in the coronary vessels. (Barcroft and Dixon.)

	Normal Heart.	During Vagus Inhibition.	After Vagus Inhibition.
Oxygen used up per minute . .	0·21 c.c.	0·13 c.c.	0·34 c.c.
Carbonic acid given out per minute .	0·45 c.c.	0·07 c.c.	0·22 c.c.

The Excised Heart.

The heart beats after its removal from the body; in the case of the frog and other cold-blooded animals, this will go on for hours, and under favourable circumstances for days. In the case of the mammal, it is more a question of minutes unless the heart is artificially fed through the coronary artery with arterial blood. If this is done, especially in an atmosphere of oxygen, the dog's heart, or even strips of the dog's heart, can be kept beating for hours. (Porter.) Ringer's salt solution (see p. 256), if well oxygenated, will also keep an excised mammal's heart beating for hours, especially if a little dextrose is added to the solution. (Locke.)

At one time the rhythm was supposed to originate from the intrinsic nervous system of the heart; but we now know that the power of rhythmical peristalsis resides in the muscular tissue itself, though normally during life it is controlled and regulated by the nerves that supply it (see p. 159).

The intracardiac nerves have been chiefly studied in the frog; the

two vago-sympathetic nerves terminate in various groups of ganglion cells; of these the most important are *Remak's ganglion*, situated at the junction of the sinus with the right auricle; and *Bidder's ganglion*, at the junction of the auricles and ventricle. A third collection of ganglion cells (*von Bezold's ganglion*) is situated in the inter-auricular septum. From the ganglion cells, fibres spread out over the walls of the sinus, auricles, and upper part of the ventricle. Remak's ganglion used to be called the local inhibitory centre of the heart; it is really the cell-station of the inhibitory fibres, and stimulation of the heart at the sino-auricular junction is the most certain way of obtaining stoppage of the heart. Bidder's ganglion was called the local accelerator centre for a corresponding reason.

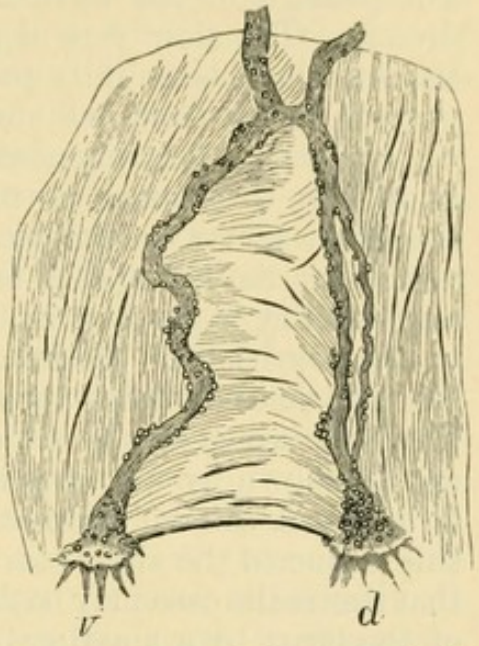


FIG. 259.—Course of the nerves in the auricular partition wall of the heart of a frog. *d*, dorsal branch; *v*, ventral branch. (Ecker.)

The accompanying figures show the vagal terminations in Remak's ganglion (fig. 259), some isolated nerve-cells from this ganglion (fig. 260); and fig. 261 is a rough diagram to indicate the positions of the two principal ganglia.

Conduction in the Heart.—The question has been discussed whether the wave of contraction is propagated along the heart-wall by nervous or muscular connection. The slow rate of propagation of the wave points to the link being a muscular one, and it will be

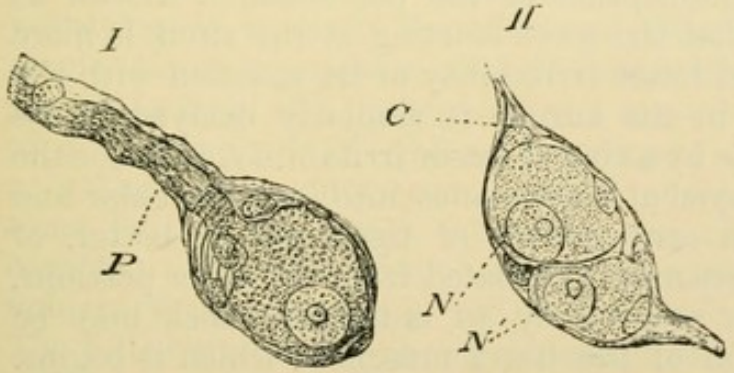


FIG. 260.—Isolated nerve-cells from the frog's heart. I. Usual form. II. Twin cell. *C*, capsule; *N*, nucleus; *N'*, nucleolus; *P*, process. (From Ecker.)

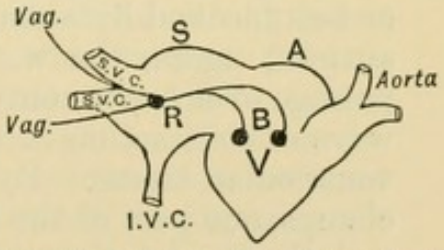


FIG. 261.—Diagram of ganglia in frog's heart. R. Remak's, B, Bidder's ganglion; S, sinus; A, right auricle; V, ventricle.

remembered that histology lends support to this view, the muscular fibres being connected to each other by intercellular bridges of protoplasm (see p. 87). An experimental proof of the same view is the following: if a strip of the heart wall is taken and a number of

cuts going nearly completely across it, be made first from one side, then from the other, all the nerves must be cut through at least once, and the only remaining tissue not severed is muscular, yet the strip still continues to beat; in other words, the propagation is *myodromic*. The passage of the wave from one chamber to another is also myodromic. The slow rate of propagation indicates that this is so, and the view has been fully proved by the discovery of muscular fibres passing across from one chamber to the next.

Blocking.—This phenomenon has been chiefly studied by Gaskell. It appears that under normal conditions the wave of contraction in the heart starts at the sinus, and travels over the auricles to the ventricle; the irritability of the muscle and the power of rhythmic contractility is greatest in the sinus, less in the auricles, and still less in the ventricles. Under ordinary conditions the apical portion of the ventricles exhibits very slight power of spontaneous contraction. The importance of the sinus as the starting-point of the peristalsis can be shown by warming it. If a frog's heart is warmed by bathing it in warm salt solution at about body temperature, it beats faster; this is due to the sinus starting a larger number of peristaltic waves; that this is the case may be demonstrated by warming localised portions of the heart by a small galvano-cautery; if the sinus is warmed the heart beats faster, but if the auricles or ventricles are warmed there is no alteration in the heart's rate. The sinus in the frog's heart, and that portion of the right auricle in the mammal's heart which corresponds to the sinus, is always the last portion of the heart to cease beating on death, or after removal from the body (*ultima moriens*, Harvey). This is an additional proof of the superior rhythmical power which it possesses.

But to continue our description of the phenomenon known as blocking; it is supposed that the wave starting at the sinus is more or less blocked by a ring of lower irritability at its junction with the auricle; again, the wave in the auricle is similarly delayed in its passage over to the ventricle by a ring of lesser irritability, and thus the wave of contraction is delayed at its entrance into both auricular and ventricular tissue. By an arrangement of ligatures, or, better, of clamps, one part of the heart may be isolated from the other portions, and the contraction when aroused by an induction shock may be made to stop in the portion of the heart muscle in which it begins. It is not unlikely that the contraction of one portion of the heart acts as a stimulus to the next portion, and that clamps and ligatures prevent this normal propagation of stimuli. It must not, however, be thought that the wave of contraction is incapable of passing over the heart in any other direction than from the sinus onwards; for it has been shown that by the application of appropriate stimuli at appropriate instants, the natural sequence of beats may be reversed, and the con-

traction starting at the arterial part of the ventricle may pass to the auricles and then to the sinus.

If Gaskell's clamps or ligatures are not applied sufficiently tight one often sees partial blocking, a few waves get through but not all; in the experiment described on the preceding page, in which the heart wall is left connected with other parts by a small portion of undivided muscular tissue, the effect is much the same, the wave is only able to pass the block every second or third beat.

The Stannius Experiment.—This consists in applying a tight ligature to the heart between the sinus and the right auricle; the sinus continues to beat, but the rest of the heart is quiescent. The quiescent parts of the heart may be made to contract in response to mechanical or electrical stimulation. If a second ligature is applied to the junction of the auricles with the ventricle, the ventricle begins to beat again; the auricles may also beat, but they usually do not. According to Gaskell, the effect of the first ligature is simply an example of blocking; it is, however, difficult to wholly accept this view, for if instead of applying a ligature at the sino-auricular junction, the heart wall is simply cut through at this spot, the auricles and ventricle are not thereby always rendered quiescent. It appears probable, therefore, that there is some truth in the older view that the ligature acts as a stimulus irritating the vagal terminations in Remak's ganglion, and so eliciting a condition of prolonged inhibition; this, however, passes off after a variable time, and the auricles and ventricle once more beat rhythmically. It is impossible to explain the effect of the second Stannius ligature except on the hypothesis that it acts as a stimulus, and there is no *à priori* reason why the two ligatures should act in opposite ways.

The fact that the Stannius heart is quiescent has enabled physiologists to study the effects of stimuli upon heart muscle. A single stimulus produces a single contraction, which has a long latent period, is slow, and propagated as a wave over the heart at the rate of $\frac{2}{5}$ to $\frac{3}{5}$ inch, or 10—15 mm. a second. A second stimulus causes a rather larger contraction, a third one larger still, and so on for some four or five beats, when the size of the contraction becomes constant. This *staircase* phenomenon, as it is called, is also seen in voluntary muscle (see p. 117), but it is more marked in the heart. The following tracing shows the result of an actual experiment:—

There are, however, more marked differences than this between voluntary and heart muscle. The first of these is, that the amount of contraction does not vary with the strength of the stimulation. A stimulus strong enough to produce a contraction at all brings out as big a beat as the strongest. The second is, that the heart muscle has a long *refractory* period; that is to say, after the application of a stimulus, a second stimulus will not cause a second contraction

until after the lapse of a certain interval called the *refractory period.* The refractory period lasts as long as the contraction period. The third difference depends on the second, and consists in the fact that the heart muscle can never be thrown into complete tetanus by a rapid

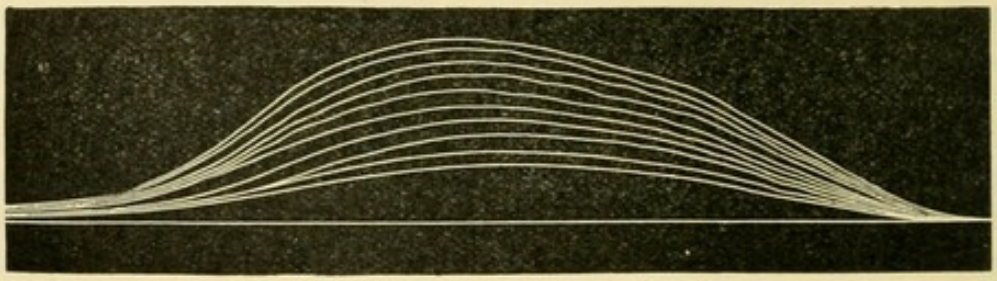


FIG. 262.—Staircase from frog's heart. This was obtained from a Stannius preparation; an induction shock being sent into it with every revolution of the cylinder (rapid rate). The contractions became larger with every beat. To be read from right to left.

series of stimulations; with a strong current there is a partial fusion of the beats, but this is entirely independent of the rate of faradisation. Indeed, as a rule, the heart responds by fewer beats to a rapid than to a slow rate of stimulation.

In spite of these differences there are many and important resemblances between heart muscle and voluntary muscle.

The thermal and chemical changes are similar; there is a using-up of oxygen and a production of carbonic acid and sarco-lactic acid. The using-up of oxygen was well illustrated by an experiment of Yeo's. He passed a weak solution of oxy-hæmoglobin through an excised beating frog's heart, and found that after it had passed through the heart, the solution became less oxygenated and venous in colour.

The electrical changes are also similar, and have already been dwelt upon in Chapters XII. and XIV.

Instruments for Studying the Excised Heart.

If a frog's heart is simply excised and allowed to remain without being fed, it ceases to beat after a time varying from a few minutes to an hour or so; but if it is fed with a nutritive fluid, it will continue to beat for many hours. A very good nutritive fluid is defibrinated blood diluted with twice its volume of physiological saline solution. Ringer has, however, shown that nearly as good results are obtained with physiological saline solution to which minute quantities of calcium and potassium salts have been added; in other words, the inorganic salts of the blood will maintain cardiac activity for a time without the addition of any organic material. Howell has shown that such an inorganic mixture is especially efficacious in throwing

the sinus or venous end of the heart into rhythmical action. The normal stimulus for the starting of the heart-beat is therefore to be sought in the mineral constituents of the blood. These mineral constituents in solutions are broken up into their constituent ions; and of these the sodium ions are the most potent in producing rhythmical activity. (Loeb.)

The fluid is passed through the heart by means of a perfusion cannula (fig. 263). The heart is tied on to the end of the cannula; the fluid enters by one and leaves by the other tube. Numerous instruments have been devised for obtaining graphic records of the heart's movements under these circumstances, but we shall be content with describing a few of the best. They have been much used in the investigation of the effects of drugs on the heart, and the results obtained have been of much service to physicians.

(1) The heart having been securely tied on to the perfusion cannula, the circulating fluid is passed through it. One stem of the cannula is then attached by the small side branch on the left in fig. 263 by a tube containing salt solution to a small mercurial manometer, provided with a float, on the top of which is a writing style. The apparatus is arranged so that the movements of the mercury can be

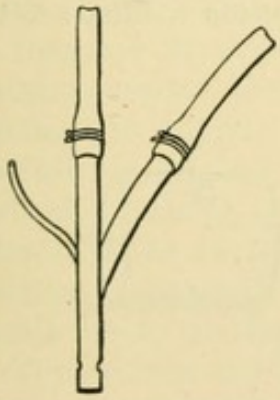


FIG. 263.—Kronecker's Perfusion Cannula, for supplying fluids to the interior of the frog's heart.

It consists of a double tube, one outside the other. The inner tube branches out to the right; thus, when the ventricle is tied to the outer tube of the cannula, a current of liquid can be made to pass into the heart by one tube and out through the other.

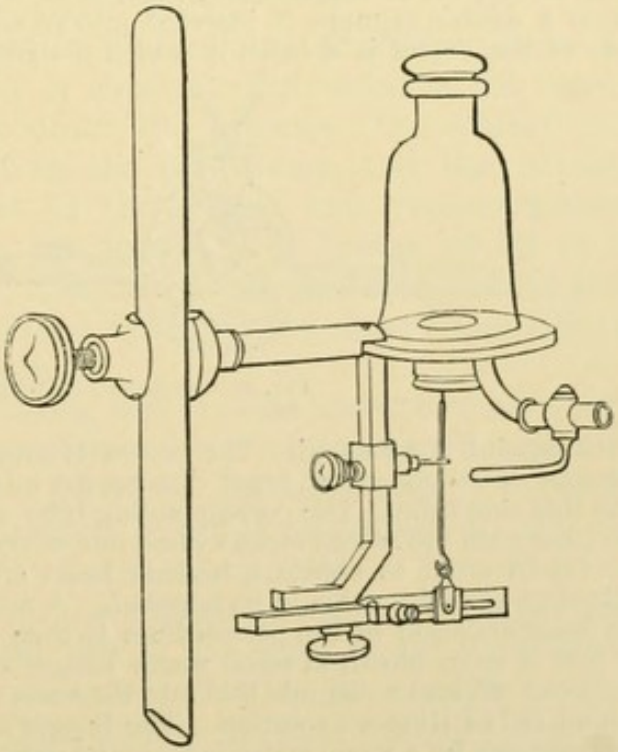


FIG. 264.—Roy's Tonometer.

recorded by the float and the writing style on a slowly revolving drum. The movements of the mercury are due to changes in the intracardiac pressure.

(2) *Roy's Tonometer* (fig. 264): A small bell-jar, open above, but provided with a firmly fitting stopper, in which is fixed a double cannula, is adjustable by a smoothly ground base upon a circular brass plate, about 2 to 3 inches in diameter. The junction is made complete by greasing the base with lard. In the plate, which is fixed to a stand adjustable on an upright, are two holes, one in the centre, a large

one about one-third of an inch in diameter, to which is fixed below a brass grooved collar, about half an inch deep; the other hole is the opening into a pipe provided with a stop-cock. The opening provided with the collar is closed at the lower part with a membrane, which is closely tied by means of a ligature around the groove at the lower edge of the collar. To this membrane a piece of cork is fastened by sealing-wax, from which passes a wire, which is attached to a lever (cut short in the diagram) fixed on a stage below the apparatus.

When using the apparatus, the bell-jar is filled with olive-oil. The heart of a large frog is prepared and the cannula fixed in the stopper is firmly tied into it; the tubes of the cannula communicate with the reservoir of circulating fluid on the one hand, and with a vessel to receive it after it has run through the heart on the other. The cannula with heart attached is passed into the oil, and the stopper firmly secured. Every time the heart enlarges, the membrane is pressed down; every time the heart contracts the membrane is pulled up; the lever follows and magnifies these movements. The lever is adjusted to a convenient elevation and allowed to write on a moving drum. After a short time the heart may stop beating; but two wires are arranged, the one in the cannula, the other projecting from the plate in such a way that the heart can be moved against them by shifting the position of the bell-jar a little. The wires act as electrodes, and can be made to communicate with an induction apparatus, so that induction shocks can be sent into the heart to produce contractions. After a time the heart ceases to beat altogether; and before doing so it becomes irregular. A frequent form of irregularity seen consists of groups of contractions each showing a staircase, separated by long intervals of quiescence (Luciani's Groups).

(3) *Schäfer's Heart-plethysmograph.*—The principle of this apparatus is the same as Roy's. A diagrammatic sketch of it is given in fig. 265. The heart, tied on to a double cannula, is inserted into an air-tight vessel containing oil. On one side of the vessel is a tube, in which a lightly moving piston is fitted; to this a

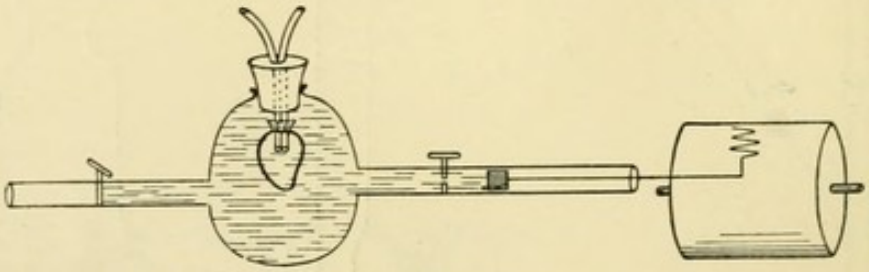


FIG. 265.—Schäfer's Heart-plethysmograph.

writing-point is attached. The piston is moved backwards and forwards by the changes of volume in the heart causing the oil to alternately recede from and pass into this side tube. The corresponding tube on the other side can be opened and the tube with the piston closed when one wishes to cease recording the movements.

(4) In order to obtain a beating heart after excising it from a mammal, the following procedure should be adopted. A rabbit is killed by bleeding or pithing; the heart enclosed in the pericardium is then quickly cut out, and gently kneaded to free it from blood, in some warm Ringer's solution. The pericardium is then dissected off, and a cannula tied into the aorta; this is connected to a burette which is kept full of Ringer's solution. The Ringer's solution must be maintained at body temperature, by a warm water jacket, and must be well oxygenated by letting oxygen bubble through it. The fluid is then allowed to flow, and it enters the coronary arteries, and escapes from the right auricle, which should be freely opened. Under these circumstances the heart will continue to beat for many hours, especially if a little dextrose is added to the circulating fluid. A graphic record may be obtained by putting a small hook into the apex, and attaching this by a thread to a recording lever beneath it. A very good illustration of the usefulness of the method for demonstrating the action of drugs consists in adding a small amount of chloroform to the circulating fluid, and one notices its immediate depressant effect; on the other hand, a minute dose of adrenaline markedly increases the rate and force of the heart.

CHAPTER XXI

THE CIRCULATION IN THE BLOOD-VESSELS

THE movement of the blood from the heart through the arteries, capillaries, and veins back to the heart again, depends on a number of physical factors; and in the consideration of this important subject we shall have to take into account the general laws which regulate the movement of fluids in tubes, as well as their special application to the flow of the blood in the blood-vessels.

The contraction of the heart is the primary propelling force, and the increase of pressure which is thus communicated to the blood it contains causes that blood to enter the arteries; the arterial blood pressure is higher than that in the capillaries, and the capillary pressure is higher than that in the veins; the venous pressure gradually falls as we approach the heart; it is lowest of all in the heart cavities during diastole; fluid moves in the direction of lower pressure, hence the flow of blood is from the heart through the vessels back to the heart again.

The vessels are not rigid tubes, but possess marked elasticity; it is owing to this that the intermittent force of the heart is modified in such a way that the stream of blood in the capillaries is a constant one, and under normal circumstances exhibits no pulsation; the *pulse* is one of the main characters of the arterial flow. A further complication is due to the fact that the vessels through which the blood flows are of varying calibre, and this is the main factor in determining its velocity. Every time an artery divides, the united sectional area of its branches is greater than that of the parent artery, although, of course, each of the individual branches is of smaller calibre. The total bed of the stream is thus becoming greater, until when we reach the capillaries the bed is increased suddenly and enormously, being several hundred times greater than that of the aorta from which they all ultimately spring. In the case of the veins the same is true in the reverse direction; the sectional area of a vein is less than that of the total sectional area of its tributaries; hence as we

approach the heart the total bed of the stream is becoming continually smaller, but never so small as in the corresponding arteries; a vein is always twice the size, often more than twice the size of the corresponding artery. Velocity of flow varies inversely with the bed of the stream, the velocity is therefore greatest in the aorta, slows down in the small arteries, and becomes slowest of all in the capillaries where the total bed is widest; we may compare the combined capillaries to a vast lake into which the arterial river flows. On leaving the capillaries, the blood, in traversing the veins once more, becomes accelerated because the bed of the stream becomes narrower, but its speed in a vein is only about half that in the corresponding artery because the bed is twice as great.

In connection with the variation in the bed of the stream we must also consider the question of resistance. If the increase in sectional area took place without division of the stream into numerous branches, the main effect would be to lower resistance to the flow of fluid; but the friction-lowering effect of increased area is much more than counterbalanced by the increased surface of the numerous branches, and there is increased friction on this account. The resistance of the capillaries would be large even for a stream of water, and when we consider that the blood is much more viscid than water, we see the effect must be much greater. The resistance to the flow of fluid along a small tube is in inverse proportion to the fourth power of the diameter, *i.e.*, if the diameter of the tube is halved, the resistance is increased sixteen-fold. Between the arteries and the capillaries are the small arteries or *arterioles;* these vessels are always in a state of moderate or tonic constriction; they may roughly be compared to narrow inlets into the wide capillary lake. The main resistance to the passage of blood through the tissues is situated in the arterioles, and not in the capillaries; this is usually spoken of as the *peripheral resistance,* and it is variable by alterations in the calibre of the arterioles, their muscular tissue being under the control of nerves which are termed *vaso-motor.*

The main resistance is in the arterioles and not in the capillaries for the following reason: each individual capillary is small, and its resistance therefore great, but their number is so immense, and the total bed so large that the resultant resistance offered is comparatively small. This is well brought out by a comparison of the velocity in the two cases; in the arterioles the velocity has to be high in order to supply with blood the large capillary areas springing from them; in the capillaries, as we have already seen, the velocity is low.

After this general account of the main features of the circulation, we can now pass to a detailed description of the various points raised.

Use of the Elasticity of the Vessels.

If a pump is connected to a rigid tube, such as a glass tube, filled with water, and a certain amount of water is forced into the tube, an exactly equal amount of water is driven out from the open end. During the intervals of pumping the flow ceases, accurately at the instant the inflow stops. If in the next place the open orifice is constricted and the pumping continued as before, the outflow is still restricted to the time during which water is being driven into the tube. The only difference is that a greater force of pumping will be required if the pump is to empty itself in the same time as before, and the force required will increase in proportion to the degree of constriction of the orifice, until with a fairly considerable constriction the force required will be enormous.

If the rigid tube is replaced by an elastic one with a wide free opening, the outflow will again be intermittent but not quite restricted to the time of the pumping. This latter difference is because the elastic wall of the tube will stretch a little at each output of the pump, and this continues after the pump has ceased to discharge, and will then recover, at the same time driving out the extra small amount of fluid it contained, after the pump has ceased to act. The flow will thus be intermittent, but the outflow will last for a short time longer than the inflow. This persistence will increase with the resistance of the tube, with the velocity of the inflow, and lastly with the mass of the column of fluid lying in the tube. If now the orifice be diminished, the duration of the outflow will begin to increase still further, and, as the constriction is increased more and more, will gradually extend over the diastolic period of the pumping. The amount of work required to drive the fixed volume of fluid through the constricted orifice is the same with a rigid and with an elastic tube. In the former case, however, the duration of the outflow is of necessity the same as that of the inflow, whereas in the second case this time is prolonged. Consequently the rate of working in the first case must exceed that in the second in proportion to this difference of time, or the maximum pressure set up in the former case is far greater than in the latter. If the constriction of the orifice of the elastic tube is still further increased, a point is at last reached at which the outflow lasts throughout the whole cycle of the pump, and here therefore the energy imparted to the fluid by the pump is converted into a pressure energy represented by the tension of the elastic walls of the tube, and this energy is given out again after the fluid has ceased to enter the tube and is just sufficient to exactly drive out the stored fluid during the resting period. If the constriction be carried still further, the tube will not be able to empty itself during the diastolic period, and when the second inflow begins,

some of the fluid will be still distending the tube, *i.e.*, the pressure will not have fallen to zero. With the second inflow the maximum pressure reached will be higher than before, but still the force acting throughout the whole of the cycle may not be sufficient to empty the tube to the extent found at the commencement of that inflow, and we may find a further volume of fluid retained within the tube, and the pressure just before the next inflow still higher than in the preceding instance. This summation will continue, until at last a point is reached at which the mean pressure during a complete cycle will be just sufficient to drive out exactly the same volume of fluid as is sent in at each pumping. When this point is reached, the pressure will simply oscillate about this mean position, and the outflow from the tube will therefore be continuous, but not necessarily constant. If we still further constrict the orifice, the result is that the mean pressure will rise still further, and the outflow will be of a less remittent character. The latter because the input of the same volume of fluid into the distended tube will produce less marked fluctuations in the driving pressure, since at the end of diastole the pressure still driving the fluid will be high and not nearly zero, as in the former instance. If the constriction is sufficiently increased, a point will ultimately be reached at which the outflow will become not only continuous but also constant. The degree of constriction necessary to produce this effect will depend upon the distensibility of the elastic tube. The more distensible this is, the earlier will this stage be reached, and the lower will be the mean pressure. This is the condition we find in the circulatory system.

Let us now apply this to the body.

At each beat the left ventricle forces about three ounces of blood into the already full arterial system. The arteries are elastic tubes, and the amount of elastic tissue is greatest in the large arteries. The first effect of the extra three ounces is to distend the aorta still further; the elastic recoil of the walls drives on another portion of blood, which distends the next section of the arterial wall, and this distension is transmitted as a wave along the arteries, but with gradually diminishing force as the total arterial stream becomes larger. This wave constitutes the pulse-wave. Between the strokes of the pump, or, in other words, during the periods of diastole, the arteries drive the blood on and so return to their original size. The flow, therefore, does not cease during the heart's inactivity, so that although the force of the heart is an intermittent one, the flow through the capillaries and the veins beyond is a constant one, all trace of pulsation having disappeared. The peripheral resistance which keeps up the blood-pressure in the arteries, and like the constriction at the end of our india-rubber tube, assists in the conversion of the intermittent into a continuous and constant stream, is to be

found in the arterioles or small arteries, just before the blood passes into what we have termed the vast capillary lake. These small arteries with their relative excess of muscular tissue, are in health always in a state of moderate tonic contraction.

The large arteries contain a considerable amount of muscular as well as elastic tissue. This co-operates with the elastic tissue in adapting the calibre of the vessels to the quantity of blood they contain. For the amount of blood in the vessels is never quite constant, and were elastic tissue only present, the pressure exercised by the walls of the containing vessels on the contained blood would be sometimes very small, sometimes too great. The presence of a contractile element, however, provides for a certain uniformity in the amount of pressure exercised. There is no reason to suppose that the muscular coat assists in propelling the onward current of blood, except in virtue of the fact that muscular tissue is elastic, and therefore co-operates in the large arteries with the elastic tissue in keeping up the constant flow in the way already described.

The contractility of the arterial walls fulfils a useful purpose in checking hæmorrhage should a small vessel be cut, as it assists in the closure of the cut end, and this in conjunction with the coagulation of the blood arrests the escape of blood.

Blood-pressure.

The circulation of the blood depends on the existence of different degrees of pressure in different parts of the circulatory system; there is a diminution of pressure from the heart onwards through arteries, capillaries, and veins, back to the heart again.

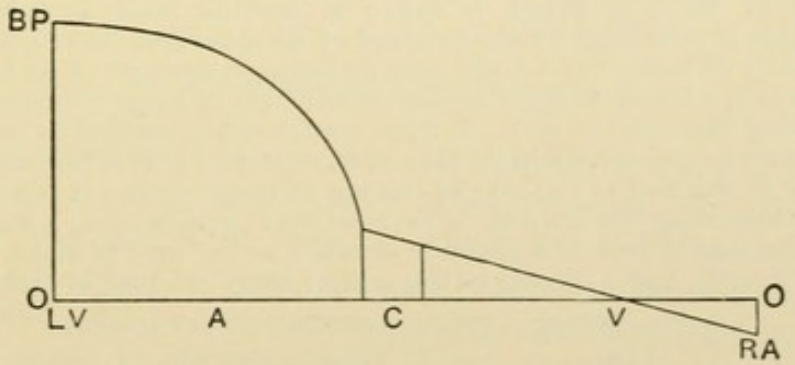


FIG. 266.—Height of blood-pressure (BP) in LV, left ventricle. A, arteries; C, capillaries; V, veins; RA, right auricle; OO, line of no pressure. (After Starling.)

Fig. 266 represents roughly the fall of pressure along the systemic vascular system.

It falls slowly in the great arteries; at the end of the arterial system it falls suddenly and extensively in the course of the arterioles; it again falls gradually through the capillaries and veins till in the large veins near the heart it is negative. Such a diagram

of blood-pressure is thus very different from one of velocity; the velocity like the pressure falls from the arteries to the capillaries, but unlike it, rises again in the veins.

We must now study the methods by which blood-pressure is measured and recorded, and the main causes that produce variations in its amount.

In order that we may understand the methods that are used for this purpose, it will be first necessary for us to consider some of the general laws of fluid pressure, and then to study the methods that are employed in an artificial schema of the circulation.

Fluid pressure is a different thing from the pressure of a solid, and is exercised equally in all directions. If a cylindrical vessel, placed vertically, is filled with a cylinder of ice, the pressure of the ice will be exercised on the bottom of the cylinder, but not on its sides. When the ice melts, the water presses on the sides also, and if a hole is made in the cylinder below the level of the upper surface of the water, the water will flow out of the hole, and the force with which it escapes will be proportional to the depth of the hole beneath the surface. If we take a square centimetre as the unit of area, the actual pressure excited on it is $h \times d \times g$, where h is the height of the free surface above the level where we are measuring the pressure, d its density, and g the acceleration of gravity (981). Suppose a gramme of water to flow out, we may consider that this gramme has fallen through a height or *head* h in centimetres from the free surface to the opening; it comes practically from the top, because it is there that the liquid disappears from inside the vessel. In falling the height h, it gives out hg ergs of work.

The unit of force is called a *dyne*: a moving body is said to possess *momentum*: this is measured by the product of its mass and its velocity; thus the effective quantity of motion of a body may be large on account of its having a large mass (for instance, a heavy waggon rolling down a hill), or large velocity (for instance, a bullet speeding through the air). A force continuously applied to a moving mass produces a continuous increase in its rate of movement; this is termed *acceleration*, and force may be defined as the rate of change of momentum; it can be measured, therefore, by observing the amount of momentum it generates in a measured time, and dividing by that time. If a gramme is taken as the unit of mass, a centimetre as the unit of length, and a second as the unit of time, the unit of force

$$= \frac{\text{momentum}}{\text{Time.}} = \frac{\text{gramme-centimetre per second}}{\text{Time in seconds.}}$$

= gramme-centimetre per second, per second = 1 dyne.

The unit which corresponds to the dyne in the measurement of work is called an *erg*, that is, the work done in lifting a gramme weight through the height of one centimetre; the weight of a gramme is 981 dynes, and the work done in lifting it one centimetre is 981 ergs.

The kinetic energy of a body moving with velocity v is $\frac{1}{2} \times$ mass $\times v^2$, or for one gramme $\frac{1}{2}v^2$; hence if all the work that liquid can do is spent in giving kinetic energy to it, the velocity with which it will

flow out is given by putting the kinetic energy = work done. In other terms:—

$$\tfrac{1}{2}v^2 = gh\,;\ \text{hence } v = \sqrt{2gh} \text{ or } h = \frac{v^2}{2g}$$

A liquid, however, has not necessarily a free surface, but may be completely enclosed, as is the water in a system of hydraulic pressure mains, or the blood in the circulatory system. The pressure in such a system at any point may be measured by inserting at that point a vertical tube at right angles to the blood-vessel; the blood would rise in it to a point, and would form a free surface a certain distance up this tube; the head h in the above calculation must be reckoned

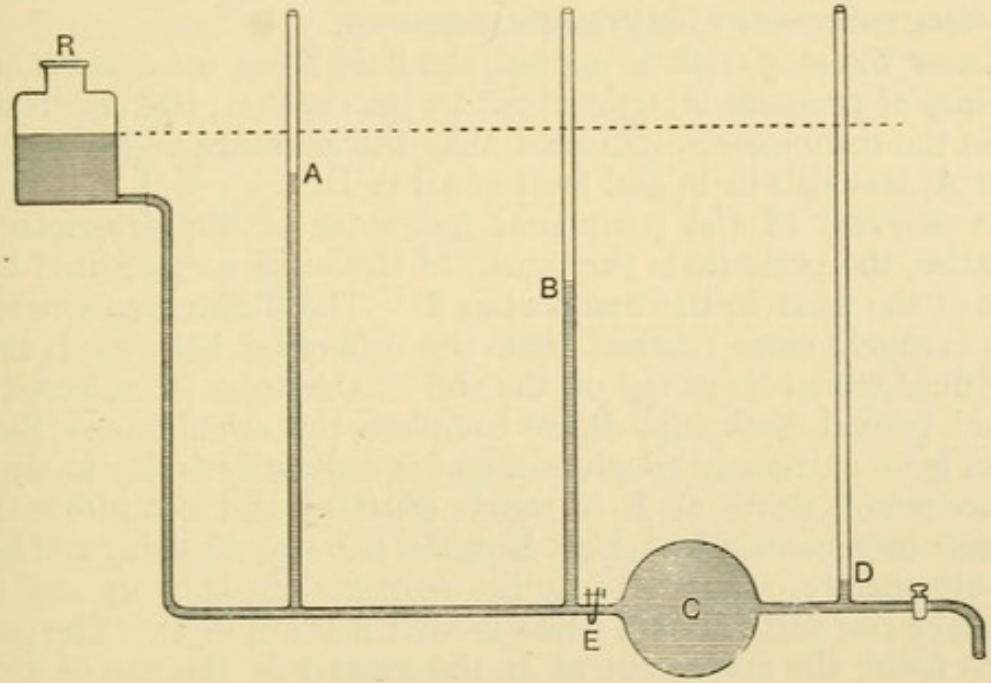


FIG. 267.—Schema to illustrate blood-pressure.

from this free surface downwards. If, instead of using a tube of fine bore for this purpose, we employ a wider tube, say of ten times greater area, the height or head to which the fluid rises will be the same as in the narrow tube, though naturally the actual weight of fluid supported will be ten times greater; but the weight per unit of area is the same in both cases. When, therefore, we measure the pressure of fluid in terms of the *height* of a column of fluid, like mercury, which it will balance, we really mean that the force of the blood is equal to the weight of the mercury it supports *per unit of area*, and this will naturally be proportional to the height of the column.

Let us next consider the simple case of a fluid flowing from a reservoir, R (fig. 267), along a tube, which we will imagine is open at the other end.

In the course of the tube we will suppose three upright glass tubes (A, B, and D) are inserted at equal distances. Between B and D there is a bladder, which may be divided into a number of channels by packing it with tow to represent the capillaries, and between B and C, a clip E, which can be tightened or loosened at will, and which will roughly represent the peripheral resistance produced by the arterioles. The far end of the tube is provided with a stop-cock. If this stop-cock is closed there will naturally be no flow of fluid, and the fluid will rise to equal heights indicated by the dotted line in all the upright tubes. This shows that the pressure in all parts of the tube is the same. The upright tubes which measure the lateral pressure exerted by the fluid on the wall of the main tube, are called *pizometers, manometers,* or *pressure measurers.*

If now the stop-cock is opened, the fluid flows on account of the difference of pressure brought about by gravitation; the height of the fluid in the manometers indicates that the pressure is greatest in R, less in A, less still in B, and least of all in D.

On account of the peripheral resistance of the arterioles and capillaries, the pressure is very small in the veins, as indicated by the height of the fluid in the manometer D. The difference between D and B is much more marked than the difference between B and A. If the fluid which flows out of the end of the tube is collected in a jug and poured back into R, we complete the circulation. But the schema is an extremely rough one, and is especially faulty in that the pressure which starts at R is nearly constant and not intermittent. This may be remedied by taking R in the hand, and raising and lowering it alternately. The fluid in the manometers bobs up and down with every rise and fall of R: this is least marked in D. The greater and the faster the movement of R, the greater is the rise of arterial pressure. This is a rough illustration of the fact that increase in the force and frequency of the heart's beat causes a rise of arterial pressure.

Again, if more fluid is poured into R, there is a corresponding rise in fluid in the manometers. This illustrates the rise of pressure produced by an increase in the contents of the vascular system.

And this schema, rough though it is, also serves to illustrate the third important factor in the maintenance of the blood-pressure, namely, the peripheral resistance. This is done by means of the clip E; if the clip is tightened, one imitates increased constriction of the arterioles; if it is loosened, one imitates dilatation of the arterioles. If it is closed entirely, the fluid in A and B rises to the same level as that in R; the pressure of R is not felt at all by C and D, which empty themselves, and the flow ceases. If the clip E is only tightened so as not to be quite closed, the arterial pressure (in A and B) rises,

and the venous pressure (in D) falls; if the clip is freely opened, the arterial pressure falls, and the venous pressure rises.

These same facts can be demonstrated by a more perfect circulation schema, such as is represented in fig. 268.

The heart (H) is represented by a Higginson's syringe, which is worked with the hand; the tube from it represents the arterial system, the clip E the resistance of the arterioles; C is the capillary lake, from which the vein (larger than the artery) leads back to the heart H. A and B are two manometers which respectively indicate arterial and venous pressures. Only in place of straight tubes mercurial manometers are used. Each of these is a U-tube about half filled with mercury, and united to the artery or vein by a tube containing fluid. If the mercury in the two limbs of the U is at the same level,

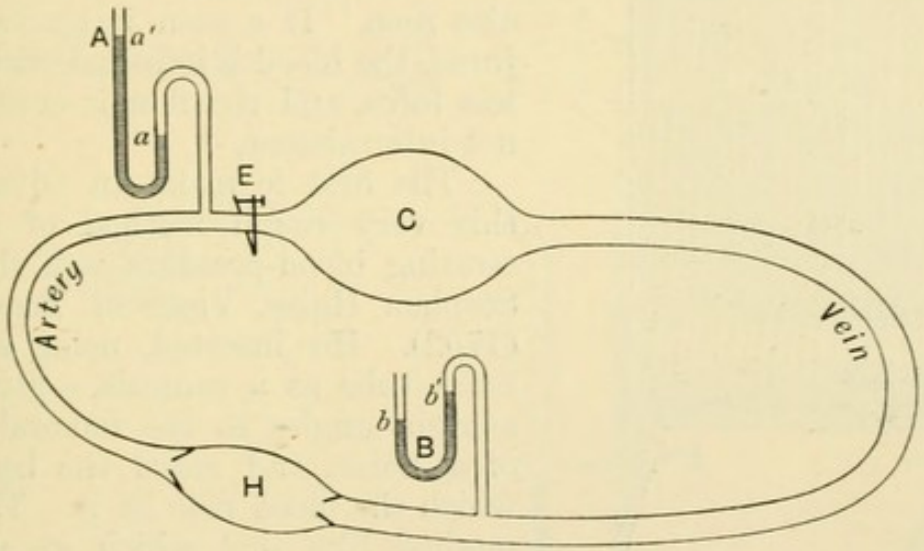


FIG. 268.—Schema of the circulation.

the pressure of the fluid in connection with one limb is exactly equal to that exerted by the atmospheric pressure on the other. The mercury, however, is pushed up in the far limb of the manometer connected to the artery, the pressure there being greater than that of the atmosphere; this is therefore called *positive pressure*, and the total amount of pressure is measured by the difference between the levels *a* and *a'*. The manometer B attached to the vein, however, indicates a *negative pressure* (*b b'*), that is a pressure less than that of the atmosphere, so that the mercury in the limb nearest the vein is sucked up.

Anderson Stuart's *kymoscope* (fig. 269) is a more complete schema. It consists of a long leaden tube filled with fluid, the two ends of which are connected by an india-rubber tube on which is a valved syringe to represent the heart. On the course of the tube are a large number of open-mouthed upright manometers which indicate the pressure when the syringe is worked, and confer on the tube the elasticity

necessary to cause the disappearance of the pulse in the middle region which represents the capillaries. The long leaden tube is twisted round a cylinder, so that the manometers are placed closely side by side.

We can now pass on to the methods adopted in the investigations of blood-pressure in animals.

The fact that the blood exerts considerable pressure on the arterial walls may be readily shown by puncturing any artery; the blood is propelled with great force through the opening, and the jet rises to a considerable height; in the case of a small artery, where the pressure is lower, the jet is not so high as in a large artery: the jerky character of the outflow due to the intermittent action of the heart is also seen. If a vein is similarly injured, the blood is expelled with much less force, and the flow is continuous, not intermittent.

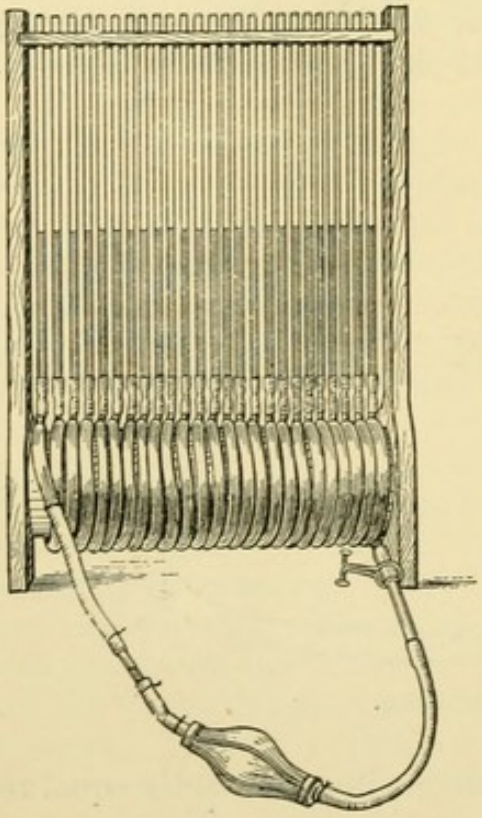


FIG. 269.—Anderson Stuart's Kymoscope.

The first to make an advance on this very rough method of demonstrating blood-pressure was the Rev. Stephen Hales, Vicar of Teddington (1702). He inserted, using a small brass tube as a cannula, a glass tube at right angles to the femoral artery of a horse, and noted the height to which the blood rose in it. This is a method like that which we used in the first schema described (fig. 267). The blood rose to the height of about 8 feet, and having reached its highest point, it oscillated with the heart-beats, each cardiac systole causing a rise, each diastole a fall. Hales also noted a general rise during each inspiration. The method taught Hales these primary truths in connection with arterial pressure, but it possesses many disadvantages; in the first place, the blood in the glass tube very soon clots, and in the second place, a column of liquid eight feet high is an inconvenient one to work with.

The first of these disadvantages was overcome to a great extent by Vierordt, who attached a tube filled with saturated solution of sodium carbonate to the artery, and the blood-pressure was measured by the height of the column of this saline solution which the blood would support.

The second disadvantage was overcome by Poiseuille, who intro-

duced the heavy liquid, mercury, as the substance on which the blood exerted its pressure; and the U-shaped mercurial manometer was connected to the artery by a tube filled with sodium carbonate solution to delay clotting.

The study of blood-pressure cannot, however, be considered to have been in a satisfactory condition until the introduction by Carl Ludwig of the *Kymograph;* that is to say, Poiseuille's *hæmodynamometer* was combined with apparatus for obtaining a graphic record of the oscillations of the mercury. The name *kymograph* or *wave-writer*, we shall see immediately, is a very suitable one.

A skeleton sketch of the apparatus is given in fig. 270.

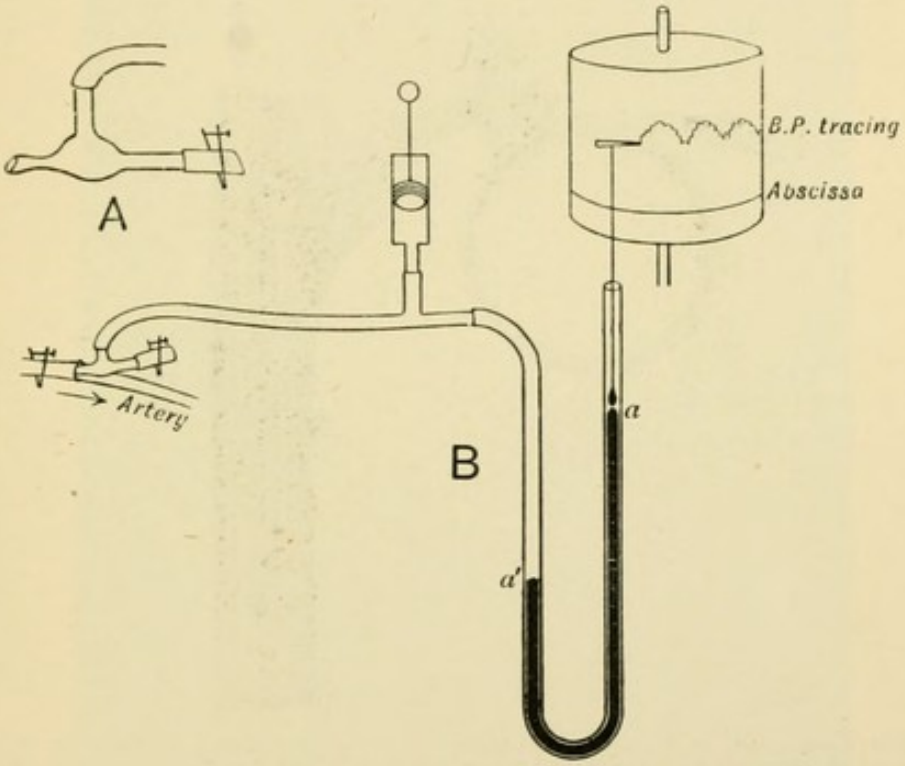


FIG. 270.—Diagram of mercurial Kymograph.

The artery is exposed and clamped, so that no hæmorrhage occurs; it is then opened, and a glass cannula is inserted and firmly tied in. The form of cannula usually employed (François Franck's) is shown on a larger scale at A; the narrow part with the neck in it is tied into the artery towards the heart; the cross piece of the T is united to the manometer; the third limb is provided with a short piece of indiarubber tubing which is kept closed by a clip and only opened on emergencies, such as to clear out a clot with a feather should one form in the cannula during the progress of an experiment.

The tube by means of which the cannula is united to the manometer is not an elastic one, but is made of flexible metal, so that none

of the arterial force may be wasted in expanding it. The tube, cannula, and proximal limb of the manometer are all filled with a saturated solution of sodium carbonate, sodium sulphate, or other salt which will mix with blood and delay its clotting. Before the clip is removed from the artery, the pressure is first got up by a syringe (or pressure bottle containing the same saline solution suspended at a good height above the apparatus and connected to it by a tube), so that the mercury rises in the distal limb to a height greater than that of the anticipated blood-pressure; this prevents blood passing into the cannula when the arterial clip is removed.

In the distal limb of the U-tube, floating on the surface of the

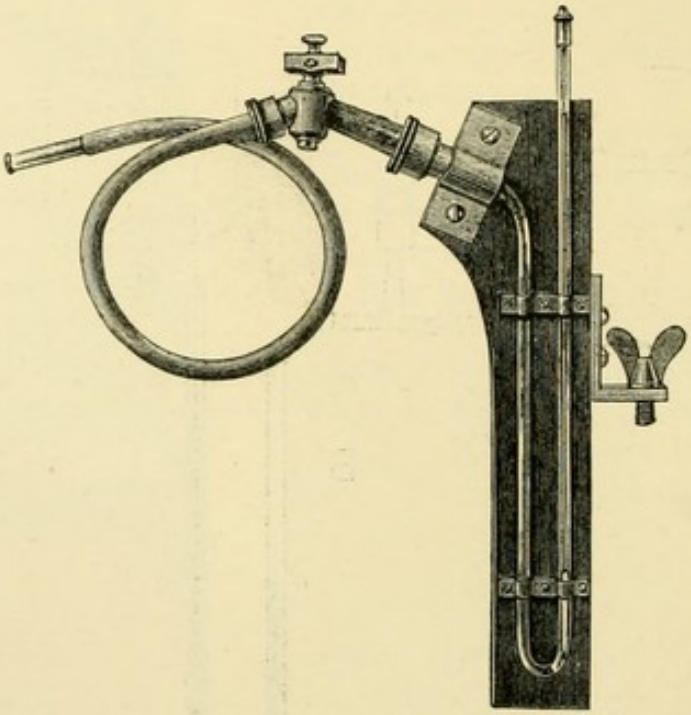


FIG. 271.—The manometer of Ludwig's Kymograph. It is also shown in fig. 272, D, C, E. The mercury which partially fills the tube supports a float in the form of a piston, nearly filling the tube; a wire is fixed to the float, and the writing style or pen fixed to the wire is guided by passing through the brass cap of the tube; the pressure is communicated to the mercury by means of a flexible metal tube filled with fluid.

mercury, is an ivory float, from which a long steel wire extends upwards, and terminates in a writing-point. The writing-point may be a stiff piece of parchment or a bristle which writes on a moving surface covered with smoked paper, or a small brush kept full of ink which writes on a long strip of white paper made to travel by clock-work in front of it. When the two limbs of the mercury are at rest, the writing-point inscribes a base line or abscissa on the travelling surface; when the pressure is got up by the syringe it writes a line at a higher level. When the arterial clip is removed it writes waves as shown in the diagram (fig. 270), the large waves corresponding to respiration (the rise of pressure in most animals accompanying

inspiration),* the smaller ones to the individual heart-beats. The blood-pressure is really twice as great as that indicated by the height of the tracing above the abscissa, because if the manometer is of equal bore throughout, the mercury falls in one limb the same distance that it rises in the other; the true pressure is measured by the difference of level between *a* and *a'* (fig. 270).

Fig. 271 shows a more complete view of the manometer, and

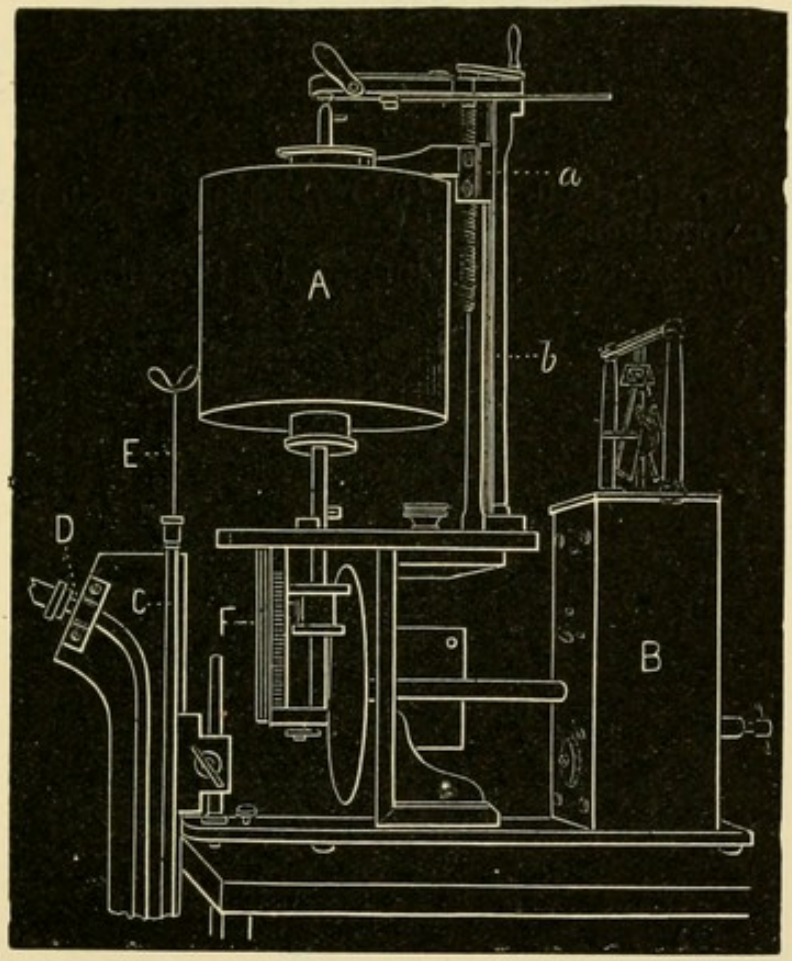


FIG. 272.—Diagram of mercurial Kymograph. A, Revolving cylinder, worked by a clockwork arrangement contained in the box (B), the speed being regulated by a fan above the box; the cylinder is supported by an upright (*b*), and is capable of being raised or lowered by a screw (*a*), by a handle attached to it; D, C, E, represent the mercurial manometer, which is shown on a larger scale in fig. 271.

fig. 272 is a diagram of the arrangement by means of which it is made into a kymograph.

Fig. 273 shows a typical normal arterial blood-pressure tracing on a larger scale.

In taking a tracing of *venous blood-pressure*, the pressure is so low and corresponds to so few millimetres of mercury, that a saline solution is usually employed instead of mercury. If the vein which

* The explanation of the respiratory curves on the tracing is postponed till after we have studied Respiration.

is investigated is near the heart, a venous pulse is exhibited on the tracing, with small waves as before corresponding to heart-beats, and

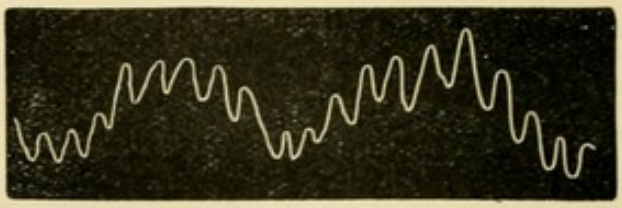


FIG. 273.—Normal tracing, somewhat magnified, of arterial pressure in the rabbit obtained with the mercurial kymograph. The smaller undulations correspond with the heart-beats, the larger curves with the respiratory movements. The abscissa or base line, which on this scale would be several inches below the tracing, is not shown. (Burdon-Sanderson.)

larger waves to respiration, only the respiratory rise in pressure now accompanies expiration.

The *capillary pressure* is estimated by the amount of pressure

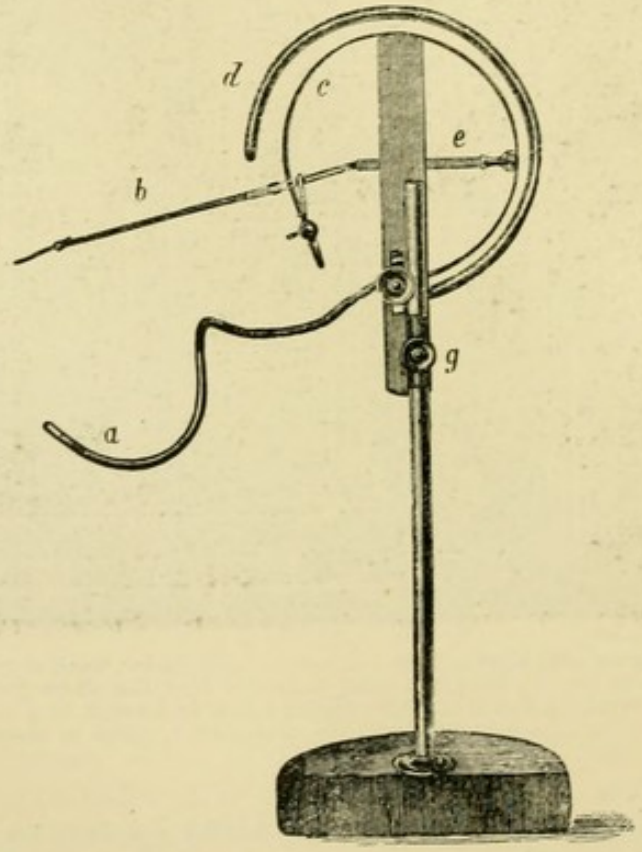


FIG. 274.—A form of Fick's Spring Kymograph. *a*, Tube to be connected with artery; *c*, hollow spring, the movement of which moves *b*, the writing lever; *e*, screw to regulate height of *b*; *d*, outside protective spring; *g*, screw to fix on the upright of the support.

necessary to blanch the skin; this has been done in animals and men (v. Kries, Roy and Brown).

Other manometers are often employed instead of the mercurial one. Fick's is one of these. The blood-vessel is connected as before with the manometer, and the pressure got up by the use of a syringe

(which is seen in fig. 275, *g*), before the clip is removed from the artery. The manometer itself is a hollow C-shaped spring filled with liquid; this opens with increase, and closes with decrease of pressure, and the movements of the spring are communicated to a lever provided with a writing-point.

Hürthle's manometer (see p. 242) is also very much used. The advantage of these forms of manometer is that the character and

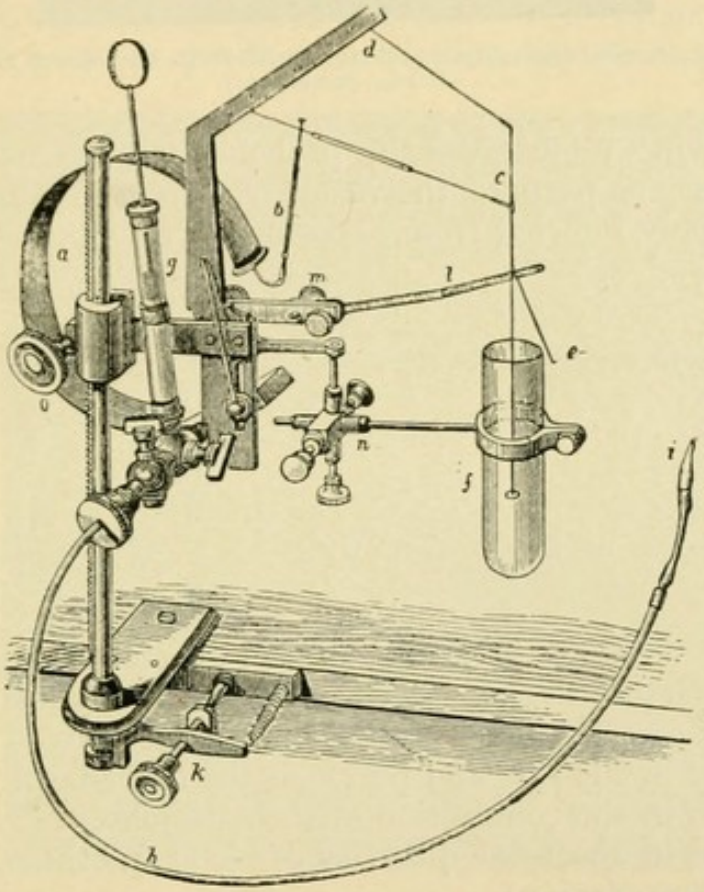


FIG. 275.—Fick's Kymograph, improved by Hering (after M'Kendrick). *a*, Hollow spring filled with alcohol, bearing lever arrangement *b*, *d*, *c*, to which is attached the marker *e*; the rod *c* passes downwards into the tube *f*, containing castor oil, which offers resistance to the oscillations of *c*; *g*, syringe for filling the leaden tube *h* with saturated sulphate of sodium solution, and to apply sufficient pressure as to prevent the blood from passing into the tube *h* at *i*, the cannula inserted into the vessel; *l*, abscissa-marker, which can be applied to the moving surface by turning the screw *m*; *k*, screw for adjusting the whole apparatus to the moving surface; *o*, screw for elevating or depressing the Kymograph by a rack-and-pinion movement; *n*, screw for adjusting the position of the tube *f*.

extent of each pressure change is much better seen. In a mercury manometer the inertia is so great that it cannot respond to the very rapid variations in pressure which occur within an artery during each cardiac cycle. If Fick's or Hürthle's manometer is employed, and the surface travels sufficiently fast, these can be recorded (see fig. 276). These instruments, though useful for recording the complete changes in pressure, require calibration: that is, the extent of movement that corresponds to *known* pressures must be ascertained by

actual experiment. They teach us that the highest pressure reached during systole may be twice or thrice the lowest attained during diastole.

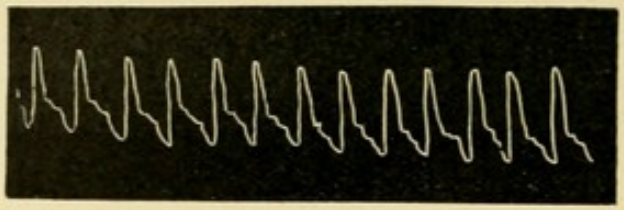


FIG. 276.—Normal arterial tracing obtained with Fick's Kymograph in the dog. (Burdon-Sanderson.)

The following table gives the probable average height of blood-pressure in various parts of the vascular system in man. They have been very largely inferred from experiments on animals:—

Large arteries (*e.g.* carotid) .	+ 140 mm. (about 6 inches) mercury.			
Medium arteries (*e.g.* radial) .	+ 110 mm. mercury.			
Capillaries . . .	+ 15 to +	20	„	„
Small veins of arm . . .	+	9	„	„
Portal vein	+	10	„	„
Inferior vena cava . . .	+	3	„	„
Large veins of neck	from 0 to −	8	„	„

(Starling.)

These pressures are, however, subject to considerable variations; the principal factors that cause variation are the following:—

Increase of *arterial* blood-pressure is produced by—

1. Increase in the rate and power of the heart-beat.
2. Increase in the contraction of the arterioles.
3. Increase in the total quantity of blood (plethora, after a meal, after transfusion).

Decrease in the *arterial* blood-pressure is produced by—

1. Decrease in the rate and force of the heart-beat.
2. Decrease in the contraction of the arterioles.
3. Decrease in the quantity of blood (*e.g.* after hæmorrhage).

The above is true for general arterial pressure; but if we are investigating local arterial pressure in any organ, the increase or decrease in the size of the arterioles of other areas may make its effect felt in the special area under investigation.

Venous pressure varies directly with the volume of the blood; in the arteries the effect of increase of fluid is slight and temporary, owing to the rapid adaptability of the peripheral resistance; the excess of fluid collects in and distends the easily dilatable venous reservoir. With regard to the first and second factors in the foregoing table, venous pressure varies in the opposite way to arterial pressure.

It is easy to understand how this is; when the *rate* of the heart increases, the total volume of blood discharged into the aorta per second is increased; similarly, an increase in the *force* of the beat also results in an increase in the cardiac output, and in both cases a more rapid and complete emptying of the auricle is produced. This is felt throughout the whole of the pulmonary circulation, and the accelerated flow therefore causes a fall in the venous pressure. If, however, the rise of pressure is due to a contraction of the arterioles, a stage may be reached in which the heart is no longer able to overcome the high pressure produced. It then fails to empty itself, and

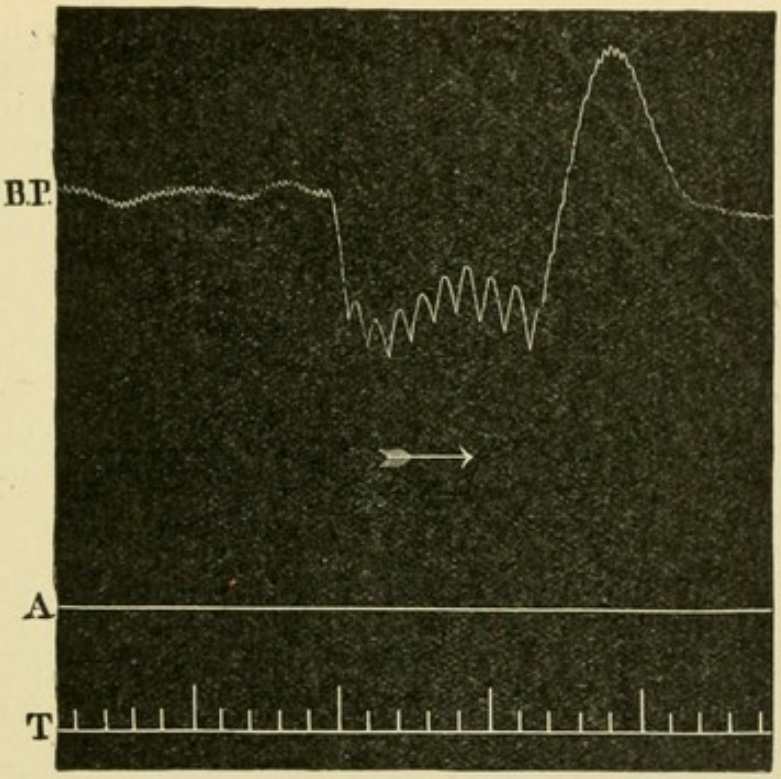


FIG. 277.—Effect of weak stimulation of the peripheral end of vagus on arterial blood-pressure (carotid of rabbit). BP, Blood-pressure; A, abscissa or base line; T, time in seconds. Note fall of blood-pressure and slow heart-beats.

the blood is dammed up on the venous side, *i.e.* the venous pressure rises.

With regard to the arterioles, contraction means a rise in arterial pressure, because while the amount sent into the arteries remains the same the outflow is cut down. More blood is therefore retained in them; they become more distended and the pressure rises. The first effect of this upon the venous pressure will be to diminish it, because if more blood is retained in the arteries there is less for the veins and capillaries. Also the rate of flow into the veins is at first decreased, and the venous pressure therefore falls. Moreover, the heart usually responds to a rise in pressure by increasing its force and rate, and consequently more blood is taken from the veins near

the heart. For both reasons, then, the venous pressure will fall, but that fall is limited, as pointed out above, to such an increase only as the heart is capable of overcoming successfully.

Capillary pressure is increased by—

1. Dilatation of the arterioles; the blood-pressure of the large arteries is then more readily propagated into them.

2. The size of the arterioles remaining the same, increase of arterial pressure from any other cause will produce a rise of capillary pressure.

3. By narrowing the veins leading from the capillary area; complete closure of the veins may quadruple the capillary pressure. This leads secondarily to an increased formation of lymph (dropsy); as when a tumour presses on the veins coming from the legs.

4. Any circumstance that leads to increased pressure in the veins will act similarly; this is illustrated by the effects produced by gravity on the circulation, as in alterations of posture.

Capillary pressure is decreased by the opposite conditions.

Capillary pressure is much more influenced by changes in the venous pressure, than by changes in the arterial pressure, since there is between the arteries and capillaries the variable and usually unknown peripheral resistance of the arterioles.

Effect of gravity on the circulation.—The main effect of gravity is that the veins are filled with blood in the part which is placed down. Thus, if an animal is placed suddenly with its legs hanging down, less blood will go to the heart, and the blood-pressure in the arteries will fall temporarily in consequence. This hydrostatic effect of gravity is soon overcome by an increased constriction of the vessels of the splanchnic area, when the vaso-motor mechanism is working normally. The efficient action of the "respiratory pump" is also of importance in counteracting gravity.

A very striking illustration of the effect of gravity on the circulation can be demonstrated on the eel. The animal is anæsthetised, and a small window is made in the body wall to expose the heart. If the animal is then suspended tail downwards, the beating heart is seen to be empty of blood; all the blood accumulates in the tail and lower part of the body; the animal has no "respiratory pump," such as a mammal possesses, to overcome the effects of gravity. If, however, the animal, still with its tail downwards, be suspended in a tall vessel of water, the pressure of the water outside its body enables it to overcome the hydrostatic effect of gravitation, and the heart-cavities once more fill with blood during every diastole. Another experiment originally performed by Salathe, can be demonstrated on a "hutch" rabbit. If the animal is held by the ears with its legs hanging down, it soon becomes unconscious, and if left in that position for about half an hour it will die. This is due to anæmia of the

brain; the blood accumulates in the very pendulous abdomen which such domesticated animals acquire, and the vaso-motor mechanism of the splanchnic area is deficient in tone, and cannot be set into such vigorous action as is necessary to overcome the bad effects of gravity. Consciousness is, however, soon restored if the animal is placed in a horizontal position, or if while it is still hanging vertically the abdomen is squeezed or bandaged. A wild rabbit, on the other hand, suffers no inconvenience from a vertical position; it is a more healthy animal in every respect; its abdomen is not pendulous, and its vaso-motor power is intact. (Leonard Hill.)

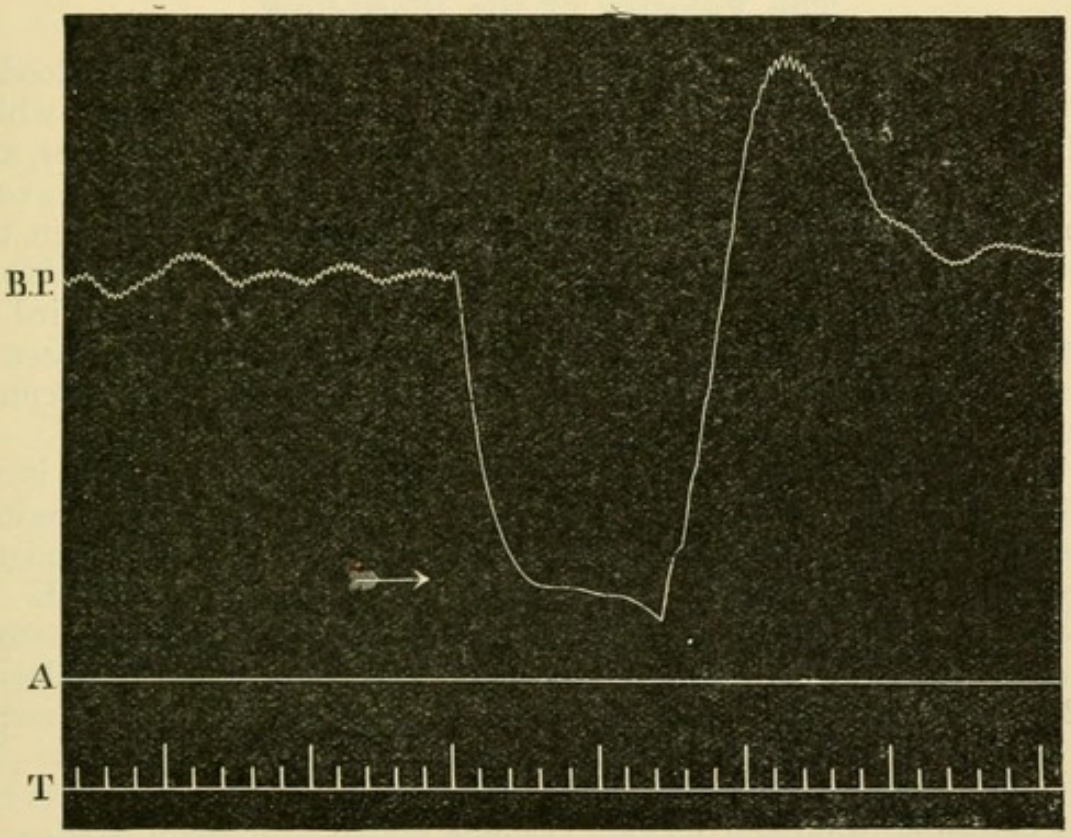


FIG. 278.—Effect of strong stimulation of the peripheral end of vagus on arterial blood-pressure (carotid of rabbit). Note stoppage of heart and fall of blood-pressure nearly to zero; after the recommencement of the heart, the blood-pressure rises, as in fig. 277, above the normal for a short time.

The pressure in the Pulmonary Circulation varies from $\frac{1}{3}$ to $\frac{1}{8}$ (mean $\frac{1}{6}$) of that in the systemic vessels.

The influence of the Cardiac Nerves on blood-pressure. The importance of the heart's action in the maintenance of blood-pressure is well shown by the effect that stimulation of the *vagus* nerve has on the blood-pressure curve. If the vagus of an animal is exposed and cut through, and the peripheral end stimulated, the result is that the heart is slowed or stopped; the arterial blood-pressure consequently falls; the fall is especially sudden and great if the heart is completely stopped. There is a rise in venous pressure. The effect

on arterial pressure is shown in the two accompanying tracings; fig. 277 representing the effect of partial, and fig. 278 of complete stoppage of the heart; in both cases the animal used was a rabbit, and the artery the carotid.

On stimulating the cardiac *sympathetic* (accelerator and augmentor fibres) the increased action of the heart causes a rise of arterial pressure.

The effects of stimulating the central end of the vagus and other nerves cannot be understood until we have studied the vaso-motor nervous system.

The Velocity of the Blood-flow.

We have already seen that the velocity of the current of blood is inversely proportional to the sectional area of the bed through which it flows. The flow is, therefore, swiftest in the aorta and arteries, and slowest in the capillaries. In very round numbers, the rate is about a foot per second in the aorta, and about an inch per minute in the capillaries. The capacity of the veins is about twice or thrice that of the arteries; so the velocity in the veins is from a half to a third of that in the corresponding arteries. The rate in the veins increases as we approach the heart, as the total sectional area of the venous trunks becomes less and less.

The question of velocity is one of great importance, for it is on velocity that the actual amount of blood supplying the tissues mainly depends. In the capillaries the rate can be measured by direct microscopic investigation of the transparent portions of animals. E. H. Weber and Valentin were among the earliest to make these measurements in the frog, and the mean of their estimates gives the velocity as 25 mms. per minute in the systemic capillaries. In warm-blooded animals the velocity is somewhat greater; in the dog it is $\frac{1}{50}$ to $\frac{1}{100}$ inch (0·5 to 0·75 mm.) per second. It must be remembered that the total length of capillary vessels through which any given portion of blood has to pass probably does not exceed from $\frac{1}{50}$ to $\frac{1}{30}$ inch (0·5 mm.), and therefore the time required for each quantity of blood to traverse its own appointed portion of the general capillary system will scarcely amount to a second. It is during this time that the blood does its duties in reference to nutrition.

In the larger vessels direct observations of this kind are not possible, and it is necessary to have recourse to some instrumental method.

Volkmann was the first to make more or less accurate measurements by introducing a long U-shaped glass tube into the course of an artery. A diagram of this *hæmodromometer*, as it was termed, is shown in the accompanying diagram (fig. 279); this is filled with salt solution, and provided with a stop-cock *a*; this tap is so arranged

that the blood can flow straight across from one section of the artery to the other; then at a given instant it is turned into the position shown in the diagram, and the blood has to traverse the long U-tube, and the time that it takes to traverse the tube, the length of which is known, is accurately observed. If the sectional area of the tube is the same as that of the artery, the velocity is obtained without further correction; but the difficulty of obtaining glass tubes with the exact calibre of every blood-vessel which one desires to experiment with led to the abandonment of this method, and Ludwig's *Stromuhr* (literally stream-clock) took its place. This consists of a U-shaped glass tube dilated at *a* and *a'*, the ends of which, *h* and *i*,

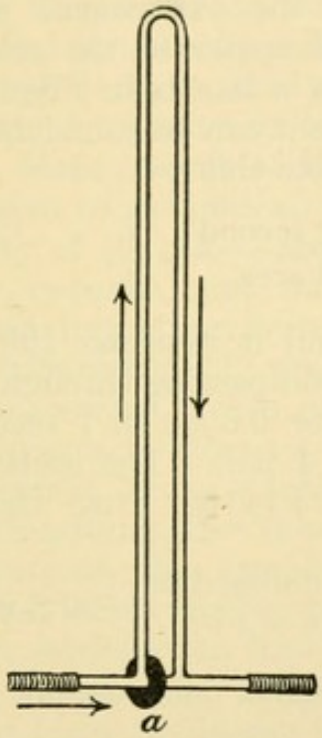


FIG. 279.—Volkmann's Hæmodromometer.

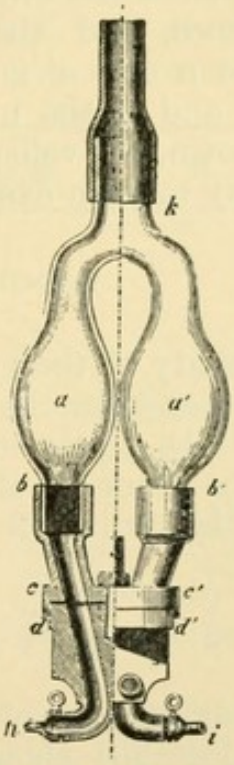


FIG. 280.—Ludwig's Stromuhr.

are of known calibre. The bulbs can be filled by a common opening at *k*. The instrument is so contrived that at *b* and *b'*, the glass part is firmly fixed into metal cylinders, attached to a circular horizontal table *c c'*, capable of horizontal movement on a similar table *d d'*, about the vertical axis marked in the figure by a dotted line. The openings in *c c'*, when the instrument is in position, as in fig. 280, corresponds exactly with those in *d d'*; but if *c c'* is turned at right angles to its present position, there is no communication between *h* and *a* and *i* and *a'*, but *h* communicates directly with *i*; and if turned through two right angles *c'* communicates with *d*, and *c* with *d'*, and there is no direct communication between *h* and *i*. The experiment is performed in the following way:—The artery to be investigated

is divided and connected with two cannulæ and tubes which fit it accurately with h and i; h is the central end, and i the peripheral; the bulb a is filled with olive oil up to a point rather lower than k, and a' and the remainder of a is filled with defibrinated blood; the tube on k is then carefully clamped; the tubes d and d' are also filled with defibrinated blood. When everything is ready, the blood is allowed to flow into a through h, thus driving the oil over into a' and displacing the defibrinated blood through i into the peripheral end of the artery; a' is then full of oil; when the blood reaches the former level of the oil in a, the disc $c\,c'$ is turned rapidly through two right angles, and the blood flowing through d into a' again displaces the oil, which is driven into a. This is repeated several times, and the duration of the experiment noted. The capacity of a and a' is known; the diameter of the artery is then measured, and as the number of times a has been filled in a given time is known, the velocity of the current can be calculated.

We may take an example to illustrate this:—

$$\text{Velocity} = \frac{\text{volume per second}}{\text{sectional area}} = \frac{V}{S}.$$

If the capacity of the bulb is 5 c.c., and it required 100 seconds to fill it 10 times, then the amount of blood passing through the instrument would be 50 c.c. in 100 seconds, or 0·5 c.c. in 1 second. Next, suppose the diameter of the artery is 4 mm. The sectional area is πr^2; r is the radius (2 mm.), and $\pi = 3{\cdot}1416$. From these data we get

$$\text{Velocity} = \frac{V}{S} = \frac{0{\cdot}5 \text{ c.c.}}{3{\cdot}1416 \times 2^2} = \frac{500 \text{ cubic millimetres}}{3{\cdot}1416 \times 4} = 39{\cdot}8 \text{ mm. per sec.}$$

Many modifications of Ludwig's original instrument have been devised. Fig. 281 shows Tigerstedt's.

The tubes A and B are placed in connection with the two ends of the cut artery as before; there is also a turn-table arrangement at F, by means of which the two upper tubes C and D may be connected as in the figure; or by twisting it through two right angles, D can be made to communicate with A, and C with B. In place of the two bulbs of Ludwig's instrument there is a glass cylinder H which contains a metal ball E. The whole instrument is washed out with oil to delay clotting, and filled with defibrinated blood. As soon as blood is allowed to flow from the artery, the ball E is driven over by the current till it reaches the other end of the cylinder; the instrument is then rapidly rotated through two right angles, and once more the ball is driven to the opposite end. This is repeated several times, and the number of revolutions during a given period is noted. The capacity of the cylinder *minus* that of the ball is ascertained,

and the velocity is calculated by the same formula as that already given.

The Stromuhr has one advantage over the hæmodromometer, in that it enables one to note changes in *mean* velocity during the course of an experiment. The mean velocity varies very greatly even during a short experiment. Thus, in the carotid artery of a dog, the velocity of the stream varied from 350 to 730 mm. per second in the course of eighty seconds; in the same artery of the rabbit the variations were still more extensive (94 to 226 mm. per second—Dogiel).

Other instruments have been devised which give the variations in the velocity during the phases of the heart-beat; and some of these lend themselves to the graphic method, and give tracings of what is called the *velocity pulse*. Before we can understand these, it is necessary first to study the relationship of velocity to blood-pressure. Mere records of blood-pressure give us no indication of the velocity of the blood-stream; the latter depends, not on the absolute amount of pressure, but on the differences of pressure between successive points of the vascular system. When a fluid is in movement along a tube the forces maintaining the flow are two in number, the one *hydro-kinetic*, the other *hydro-static*. Thus, if we consider the flow from one point in the tube to another (say, for example, at 1 cm. distance), the force producing the flow are (1) the kinetic energy possessed by the blood when it enters the first spot (*i.e.* $\frac{mv^2}{2}$ dynes or $\frac{mv^2}{2g}$ gramme-centimetres); and (2) the difference between the two lateral pressures at the two points in question. The important point to remember with respect to the part the pressure plays, is that the actual value of the lateral pressure does not matter, but that the resulting velocity, so far as pressure is concerned, depends only upon the fall of pressure between the two points. Therefore, the measurement to be determined is the rate of fall of pressure, or, as it is usually expressed, the *pressure gradient*. The steeper this gradient is, the more rapid is the flow. Thus, if an artery is suddenly cut across, the blood will spurt out at a far greater velocity than it possessed when flowing along the intact artery,

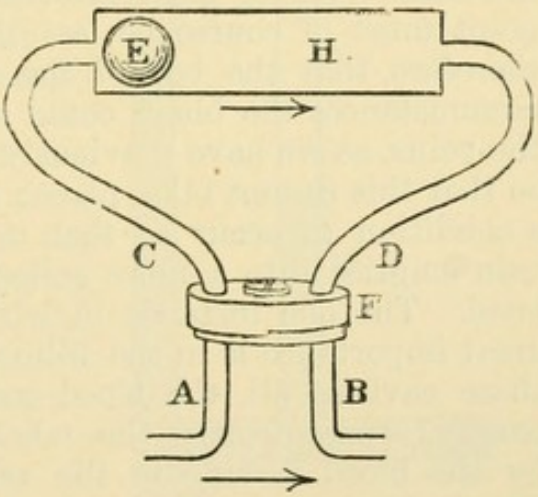


FIG. 281.—Tigerstedt's Stromuhr.

because the pressure gradient has been enormously increased in steepness. If, on the other hand, we suddenly cut across a vein along which the blood had been flowing at the same pace as in the intact artery first investigated, the flow will not be markedly accelerated, because the change in pressure gradient has not been increased to nearly so great an extent.

Again, the flow along a vein is just as rapid as along an artery of the same size, for although the actual pressure in the vein is much less, the pressure gradient is just as steep.

The influence of the kinetic factor is also of great importance in the consideration of the flow of blood along the arteries and veins. In the first place, it is obviously possible for the blood to flow from one point to another at a higher pressure if the kinetic energy at the first point is more than enough to compensate for the pressure increase. Under such circumstances the velocity at the second point must of course be less than that at the first. This implies, therefore, that the bed of the stream has widened, and under such circumstances the blood could actually flow *uphill*. In the case of the veins, as we have previously seen, the bed continuously narrows, so that this cannot take place; still it is possible to conceive such a condition to occur as that in which the blood from a well-filled vein empties into a more collapsed larger vein situated at a higher level. The one instance in which this effect is produced and is of great importance is in the filling of the auricles and ventricles. As these cavities fill, the blood comes to rest and so loses all kinetic energy; consequently the whole of the kinetic energy possessed by the blood flowing in the veins is converted into static energy, that is, into a pressure-head; in this way the cavities are distended to a much higher pressure than that in the great veins. The acute distension of the right auricle which follows any sudden failure of the right ventricle is brought about chiefly in this way.

It is usual to speak of the lateral pressure of the blood on the vessel wall as the *pressure-head*, and of the kinetic energy measured in terms of a pressure as the *velocity-head*. We could then say that the velocity between any two points is determined by the difference between the two pressure-heads *plus* the velocity-head at the first point. One method of recording the velocity-head is by the use of a tube (Pitot's tube) shaped as in the accompanying figure (fig. 282). The blood is made to enter at A, and leave through B; in the same straight line as A is a tube C, and a second tube D is placed at right angles to the tube B. If the tubes C and D are placed vertically and were sufficiently long, the blood would flow up C until it reached a height which would balance the pressure-head *plus* the velocity-head; in D it would only reach a height sufficient to balance

the pressure-head; the difference in height between the two would therefore give the velocity-head. As the tubes would in this way be inconveniently long, it is better to use short tubes connected at the top by glass or rubber-tubing. The air contained will be compressed, and the two pressure-heads will balance one another, so that the difference in height will again represent the velocity-head; the velocity will be directly proportional to the square root of this velocity-head. This is the principle of one of the best instruments we possess for determining velocity, namely, Cybulski's photo-hæmatochometer. The meniscus of the fluid in each tube is photographed on a moving sensitive plate, and in this way a graphic record is obtained of the changes in velocity at times corresponding to different parts of the cardiac cycle. If one wishes to determine the velocity in absolute measures, the instrument must be previously calibrated by passing through it fluids flowing at known rates. It will be sufficient to give the results of one experiment; in the carotid artery during the ventricular systole the flow was at the rate of 238-248 mm. per second; during the diastole it sank to 127-156; in the femoral artery of the same animal, these numbers were 356 and 177 respectively.

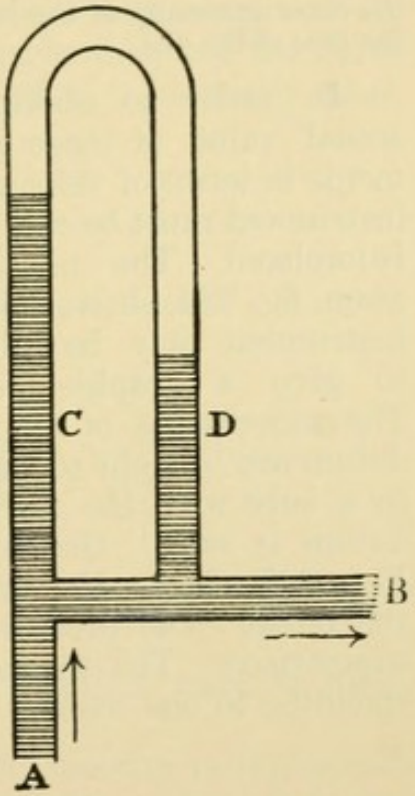


FIG. 282.—Diagram to illustrate the principle of Pitot's Tube and Cybulski's Photo-hæmatochometer.

To determine the pressure gradient in arteries, simultaneous measurements of the lateral pressures in two vessels at different distances from the heart must be recorded.

It has been found that the diastolic pressures in the crural and carotid are practically identical, but that the maximum systolic pressure is actually higher in the crural than in the carotid; in the dog the difference may amount to as much as 60 mm. mercury. This difference is partly to be explained in that the carotid arises from the aorta at a right angle, and therefore gives the true pressure-head, while the crural, to a considerable extent, faces the stream, and therefore gives both pressure-head and velocity-head.

Unfortunately, at present no really satisfactory measurements are at hand from which the pressure gradient can be determined.

Cybulski's instrument is not the only one we possess for obtaining records of the velocity-pulse. Vierordt invented a hæmo-tachometer, employing the principle of the hydrometric pendulum; his instrument

was improved by Chauveau. Chauveau's instrument is shown in fig. 283.

It consists of a thin brass tube, *a*, in one side of which is a small perforation closed by thin vulcanised indiarubber. Passing through the rubber is a fine lever, one end of which, slightly flattened, extends into the *lumen* of the tube, while the other moves over the face of a dial. The tube is inserted into the interior of an artery, and ligatures applied to fix it, so that the "*velocity pulse*," *i.e.*, the change of velocity with each heart-beat, may be indicated by the movement of the outer extremity of the lever on the face of the dial.

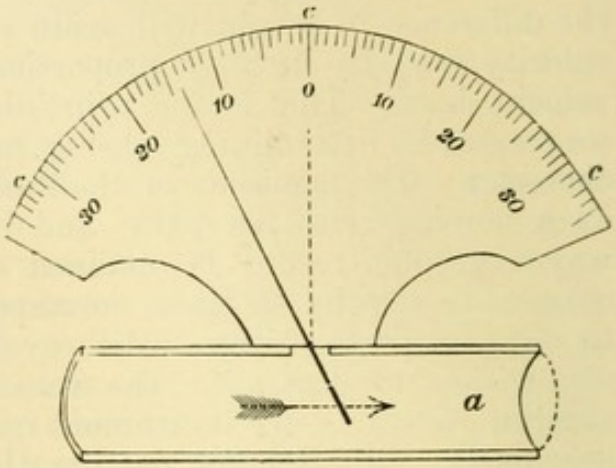


FIG. 283.—Diagram of Chauveau's Dromograph. *a*, Brass tube for introduction into the lumen of the artery, and containing an index needle, which passes through the elastic membrane in its side, and moves by the impulse of the blood current; *c*, graduated scale, for measuring the extent of the oscillations of the needle.

In order to obtain the actual value of these movements in terms of velocity, the instrument must be calibrated beforehand. The next diagram, fig. 284, shows how the instrument may be adapted to give a graphic record. The movements of the pendulum are brought to bear upon a tambour B, which communicates by a tube with the recording tambour C. If the mass of the pendulum is small, the accuracy of the instrument is considerable. Fig. 285 shows the tracing obtained from the carotid artery of the horse. The pressure curve is placed below it for purpose of comparison. The tracing shows the effects during the time corresponding to one cardiac cycle. On both curves the upstroke is the

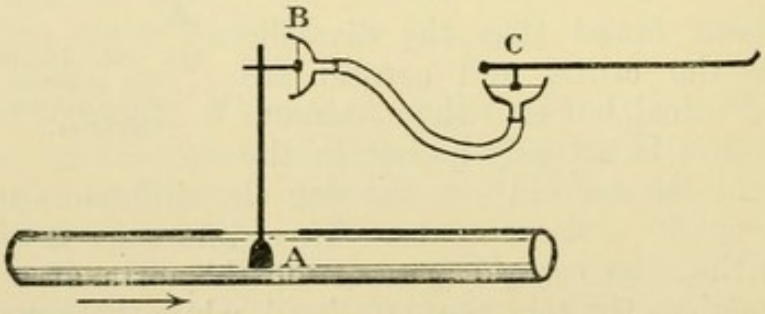


FIG. 284.—Chauveau's Dromograph connected with tambours to give a graphic record.

effect of the ventricular systole; this terminates at the apex of the first small curve (between the vertical lines 3 and 4) on the downstroke of the pressure curve, the rest of the downstroke until the commencement of the next systole (line 5) corresponds with the ventricular diastole. Beyond the line 4 is a larger secondary wave, which is known as the dicrotic wave; the smaller post-dicrotic waves

are due to elastic vibrations. We shall be studying all these points more in detail when we come to the pulse. When we compare the two curves together we note that the velocity curve reaches its maximum before the pressure curve; this is because, as the arteries become overfilled, the heart cannot maintain the initial velocity of output. The blood is thus forced along the arteries; then comes the diastole, and the recoil of the elastic arteries not only forces the blood onwards, but also produces a back-swing against the closed aortic valves; this produces the notch before the dicrotic wave; the blood is reflected from the aortic valves, once more producing a positive wave (the dicrotic wave). This affects both speed and pressure. It will be noticed that during the dicrotic notch the pressure falls comparatively little, but in the velocity curve the fall is considerable, and the curve sinks below the base line *oo*. This negative effect is naturally much

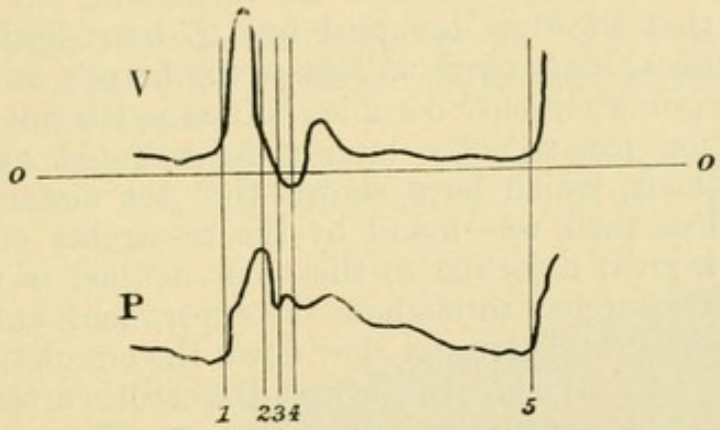


FIG. 285.—Velocity curve (V), and pressure curve (P) from the carotid artery of the horse; *oo*, abscissa of velocity curve; 1, 2, 3, 4 show simultaneous points on both curves. (Chauveau and Marey.)

more marked in the aorta and its first large branches than in situations further from the heart.

In actual values Chauveau found that the velocity in the horse's carotid reached 520 mm. per second during systole; it sank to 220 at the time of the dicrotic wave, and to 150 during diastole.

The effect on the blood-flow of functional activity or vaso-motor changes has also been observed. Thus Lortet found that the carotid flow is five or six times greater when the horse is actively masticating than when it is at rest. After section of the cervical sympathetic, the lessening of the peripheral resistance raised the velocity from 540 to 750 mm. per second.

The Time of a Complete Circulation.

Among the earliest investigators of the question how long an entire circulation takes, was Hering. He injected a solution of potassium ferrocyanide into the central end of a divided jugular vein, and collected the blood either from the other end of the same

vein, or from the corresponding vein of the other side. The substance injected is one that can be readily detected by a chemical test (the prussian blue reaction). Vierordt improved this method by collecting the blood as it flowed out, in a rotating disc divided into a number of compartments. The blood was tested in each compartment, and the ferrocyanide discovered in one which in the case of the horse received the blood about half a minute after the injection had been made. The experiment was performed in a large number of animals, and the following were a few of the results obtained:—

In the horse	. . . .	31 seconds.
„ dog	. . . .	16 „
„ cat	. . . .	6·5 „
„ fowl	. . . .	5 „

At first sight these numbers show no agreement, but in each case it was found that the time occupied was 27 heart-beats. The dog's heart, for instance, beats twice as fast as the horse's, and so the time of the entire circulation only occupies half as much time.

The question has recently been re-investigated by Stewart by improved methods, which have shown that the circulation time is considerably less than was found by the researches of Hering and Vierordt. The great objection to the older method is the fact that hæmorrhage is occurring throughout the experiment, and this would materially weaken the heart and slow down the circulation. Stewart has employed two methods. In the first, the carotid artery is exposed, and non-polarisable electrodes applied to it. These are placed in circuit with a cell, a galvanometer and one arm of a Wheatstone's bridge. After the resistances in the bridge have been balanced, and the galvanometer needle brought to rest, a small quantity of strong sodium chloride solution is injected into the opposite jugular vein. As soon as the salt reaches the carotid artery, the resistance of the blood is altered, the balance of the Wheatstone's bridge is upset, and the galvanometer needle moves. The period between the injection and the swing of the needle is accurately noted.

The second method used is even simpler, and gives practically the same results; a solution of methylene blue is injected into the jugular vein. The carotid artery on the opposite side is exposed, placed upon a sheet of white paper, and strongly illuminated. The time is noted between the injection and the moment when the blue colour is seen to appear in the artery. Stewart has applied these methods also for determining the time occupied by the passage of blood through various districts of the circulation; the longest circulation times were found in the kidney, the portal system, and the lower limbs. He calculates that the total circulation time in man is about 15 seconds.

None of these methods, however, give the true time of the entire circulation; they give merely the shortest possible time in which any particle of blood can travel through the shortest pathway. The blood that travels in the axial current, or which takes a broad pathway through wide capillaries, will arrive far more speedily at its destination than that which creeps through tortuous or constricted vessels. The direct observations of Tigerstedt on the output of the left ventricle show that the circulation time of the whole blood is at least five times as long as the period arrived at by the Hering method. It is therefore fallacious to use the circulation times arrived at by Hering's or Stewart's methods as a basis for calculating the total amount of the blood in the body.

The Pulse.

This is the most characteristic feature of the arterial flow. It is the response of the arterial wall to the changes in lateral pressure caused by each heart-beat.

A physician usually feels the pulse in the radial artery, since this is near the surface, and supported by bone. It is a most valuable

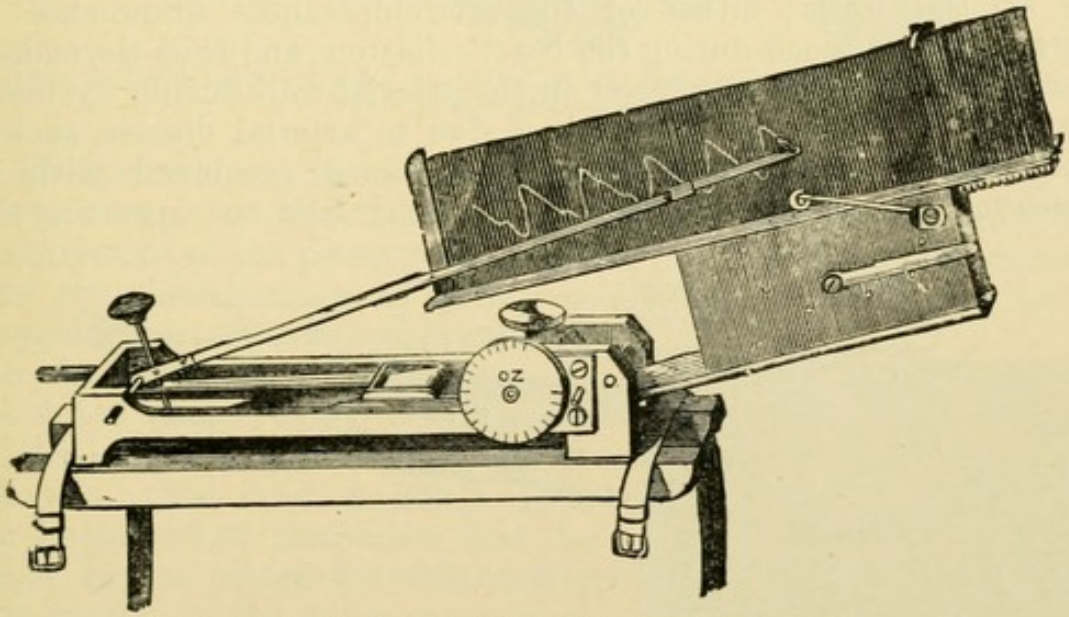


FIG. 286.—Marey's Sphygmograph, modified by Mahomed.

indication of the condition of the patient's heart and vessels. It is necessary in feeling a pulse to note the following points:—

1. *Its frequency;* that is the number of pulse-beats per minute. This gives the rate of the heart-beats.
2. *Its strength;* whether it is a strong, bounding pulse, or a feeble beat; this indicates the force with which the heart is beating.

3. *Its regularity or irregularity;* irregularity may occur owing to irregular cardiac action either in force or in rhythm.
4. *Its tension;* that is the force necessary to obliterate it. This gives an indication of the state of the arterial walls and the peripheral resistance.

In disease there are certain variations in the pulse, of which we shall mention only two; namely, the *intermittent pulse*, due to the

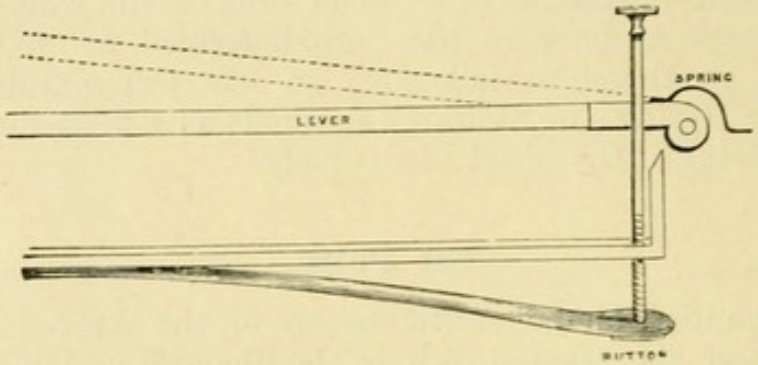


FIG. 287.—Diagram of the lever of the Sphygmograph.

heart missing a beat every now and then; and the *water hammer* pulse, due either to aortic regurgitation or to a loss of elasticity of the arterial walls; either of these circumstances diminishes the onward flow of blood during the heart's diastole, and thus the suddenness of the impact of the blood on the arterial wall during systole is increased. When this condition is due to arterial disease, such as atheroma or calcification, this sudden pulse, combined with the decreased extensibility of the arteries, may lead to rupture of the

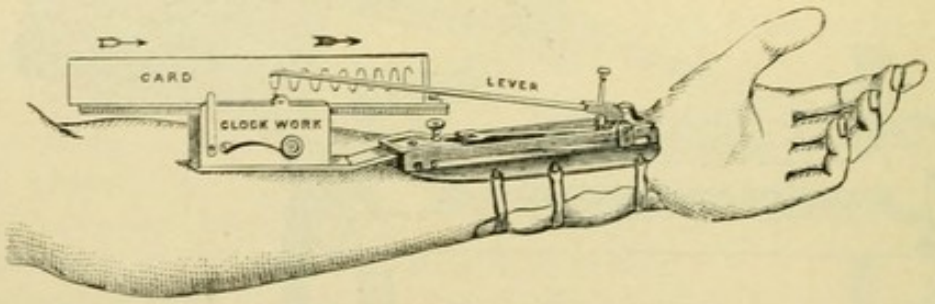


FIG. 288.—The Sphygmograph applied to the arm.

walls, and this is especially serious if it occurs in the arteries of the brain (one cause of apoplexy).

In order to study the pulse more fully, it is necessary to obtain a graphic record of the pulse-beat, and this is accomplished by the use of an instrument called the **sphygmograph**. This instrument consists of a series of levers, at one end of which is a button placed over the artery; the other end is provided with a writing-point to inscribe the magnified record of the arterial movement on a travelling surface.

The instruments most frequently used are those of Marey, one of the numerous modifications of which is represented in figures 286, 287, and 288, and of Dudgeon (fig. 289).

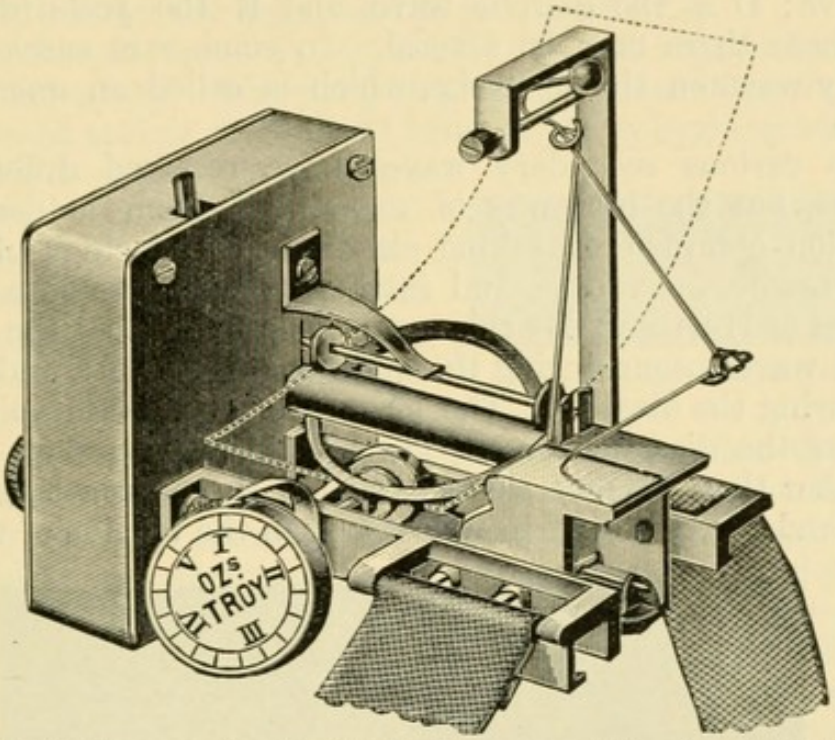


FIG. 289.—Dudgeon's Sphygmograph. The dotted outline represents the piece of blackened paper on which the sphygmogram is written.

Each instrument is provided with an arrangement by which the pressure can be adjusted so as to obtain the best record. The measurement of the pressure is, however, rough, and both instruments have the disadvantage of giving oscillations of their own to the sphygmogram; this is specially noticeable in Dudgeon's sphygmograph. But these defects may be overcome by the use of some form of sphygmometer. (See later, p. 292.) It is also important to remember that the pad or button placed upon the artery rests partly on the venæ comites, so that not only arterial tension but any turgidity arising from venous congestion, will affect the height and form of the sphygmographic record.

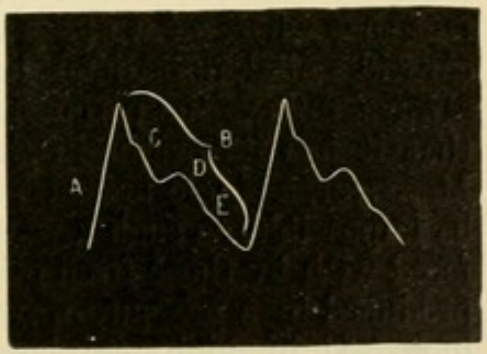


FIG. 290.—Diagram of pulse-tracing. A, upstroke; B, downstroke; C, pre-dicrotic wave; D, dicrotic; E, post-dicrotic wave.

Fig. 290 represents a typical sphygmographic tracing obtained from the radial artery. It consists of an upstroke due to the expansion of the artery, and a downstroke due to its retraction. The descent is more gradual than the upstroke, because the elastic recoil acts more constantly and steadily

than the heart-beat. On the descent are several secondary (katacrotic) elevations.

A is the *primary*, or *percussion* wave; C is the *pre-dicrotic*, or *tidal* wave; D is the *dicrotic* wave, and E the *post-dicrotic* wave, and of these there may be several. In some rare cases there is a secondary wave on the upstroke, which is called an *anacrotic* wave (fig. 291).

These various secondary waves have received different interpretations, but the best way of explaining them is derived from information obtained by taking simultaneous tracings of the pulse, aortic pressure, apex beat, and intraventricular pressure, as in the researches of Hürthle. By this means it is found that the percussion and tidal waves occur during the systole of the heart, and the other waves during the diastole. The closure of the aortic valves occurs just before the dicrotic wave. The secondary waves on the downstroke other than the dicrotic are due to the elastic tension of the arteries, and are increased in number when the tension of the arteries



FIG. 291.—Anacrotic pulse.

is greatest. Some of the post-dicrotic waves are also doubtless instrumental in origin. The dicrotic wave has a different origin. It was at one time thought that this wave was due to a wave of pressure reflected from the periphery, but this view is at once excluded by the fact that wherever we take the pulse-tracing, whether from the aorta, carotid, radial, dorsalis pedis, or elsewhere, this secondary elevation always follows the percussion wave after the same interval, showing that it has its origin in the commencement of the arterial system. Moreover, a single pressure-wave reflected from the periphery would be impossible, as such a wave reflected from one part would be interfered with by those from other parts; moreover, a dicrotic elevation produced by a pressure-wave reflected from the periphery, would be increased by high peripheral resistance, and not diminished as is actually the case.

The primary cause of the dicrotic wave is the closure of the semilunar valves; as already explained when we were considering the velocity pulse (p. 285), the inflow of blood into the aorta suddenly ceases, and the blood is driven back against the closed aortic doors by the elastic recoil of the aorta; the wave rebounds from these and is propagated through the arterial system as the dicrotic

elevation. The production of the dicrotic wave is favoured by a low blood-pressure when the heart is beating forcibly, as in fever. Such a pulse is called a dicrotic pulse (fig. 292), and the second beat can be easily felt by the finger on the radial artery.

The percussion wave is produced by the ventricular systole expanding the artery. The sharp top at its summit is due to the sudden upward spring of the light lever of the sphygmograph. If it were possible to obtain a true record of what really occurs, we should doubtless have a tracing as shown by the continuous line in the accompanying figure (fig. 293). The apex of the tidal wave, B, marks the end of the ventricular systole.

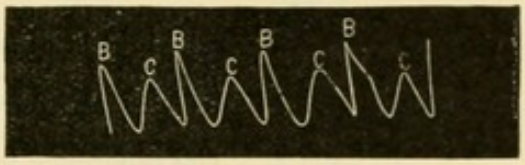


FIG. 292.—Dicrotic pulse.

In our study of intra-cardiac pressure, we saw that the systolic plateau sometimes has an ascending, sometimes a descending, slope (see p. 243); we now come to the explanation of this fact. If after the first sudden rise of pressure in the aorta the peripheral resistance is low, and the blood can be driven on from the aorta more rapidly than it is thrown in, the plateau will sink. If, on the other hand, the peripheral resistance is high, the aortic pressure will rise as long as the blood is flowing in, and we get an ascending systolic plateau and an anacrotic pulse. Thus an anacrotic pulse is seen in Bright's disease, where the peripheral resistance is very high.

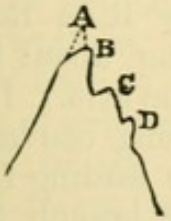


FIG. 293. — Diagram of pulse-tracing; A, percussion; B, tidal; C, dicrotic; and D, post-dicrotic waves.

If a long pulse-tracing is taken, the effect of the respiration can be seen causing an increase of pressure, and a slight acceleration of the heart's beats during inspiration.

The main waves of the pulse can be demonstrated without the use of any instrument at all by allowing the blood to spurt from a cut artery on to the surface of a large sheet of white paper travelling past it. We thus obtain what is very appropriately called a *hæmautograph* (fig. 294).

A distinction must be drawn between the pulse as felt at any one spot in the course of an artery, and the pulse-wave which is propagated throughout the arterial system. This wave of expansion travels along the arteries, and is started by the propulsion of the contents of the left ventricle into the already full arterial system. The more distant the artery from the heart, the longer the interval that elapses between the ventricular beat and the arrival of the pulse-wave. Thus it is felt in the carotid earlier than in the radial artery, and is still later in the dorsal artery of the foot. The difference of time is, however, very slight; it is only a minute frac-

tion of a second; the wave travels at the rate of from 5 to 10 metres a second, that is twenty to thirty times the rate of the blood current.

The Rate of Propagation of the Pulse-Wave.—The method of ascertaining this may be illustrated by the use of a long elastic tube into which fluid is forced by the sudden stroke of a pump. If a series of levers are placed along the tube at measured distances those nearest the pump will rise first, those farthest from it last. If these are arranged to write on a revolving cylinder under one another, this will be shown graphically, and the time interval between their movements can be measured by a time tracing. The same principle is applied to the arteries of the body; a series of Marey's tambours are applied to the heart and to various arteries at known distances from the heart; their levers are arranged to write immediately under one another, as in fig. 248. The difference in time between the commencement of their upstrokes is measured by a time tracing in the usual way.



FIG. 294.—Hæmautograph, to be read from right to left.

The tracing taken with a sphygmograph is that of the pressure pulse; we may regard it as a blood-pressure tracing without a base line. The actual measurement of the blood-pressure in the human subject cannot obviously be effected by the apparatus employed on animals, and numerous instruments have been invented for the purpose which may be applied to the vessels without any dissection.

These instruments are termed *sphygmometers*, and the best of them are modifications of one originally introduced by Riva Rocci. C. J. Martin's pattern consists of a four-sided elastic bag about four and a half inches wide, and long enough to encircle the arm. It is wrapped round the arm, and outside of it a cuff of strong canvas is firmly strapped. Air is forced into the bag by a tube leading from a ball syringe; this tube is also connected by a side branch to a mercury manometer. As one continues to pump and distend the bag, the pulse beats are transmitted to the mercury which is seen to rise in the manometer and oscillate with the pulse beats. As the pressure rises the oscillations become more pronounced, and at a certain point they exhibit more a greater excursion than they do at any other height; beyond this point of *maximal pulsation*, the oscillations diminish in amplitude, and as the distension of the bag is increased still more, the pressure is at last reached, when it is sufficient to obliterate the pulse, and the oscillations of the mercurial column cease, and the pulse is no longer to be felt at the wrist. The pressure necessary to do this is equal to the *systolic pressure*, and the height of the mercurial column should be noted when the pulse just disappears. The point of maximal pulsation gives a reading of the *diastolic pressure*. The systolic pressure is more easily read than the diastolic pressure, for it is by no means easy to judge accurately where the pulsations are greatest. Moreover, the amount of systolic

pressure gives one more useful information of the condition of the circulation than does the diastolic pressure.

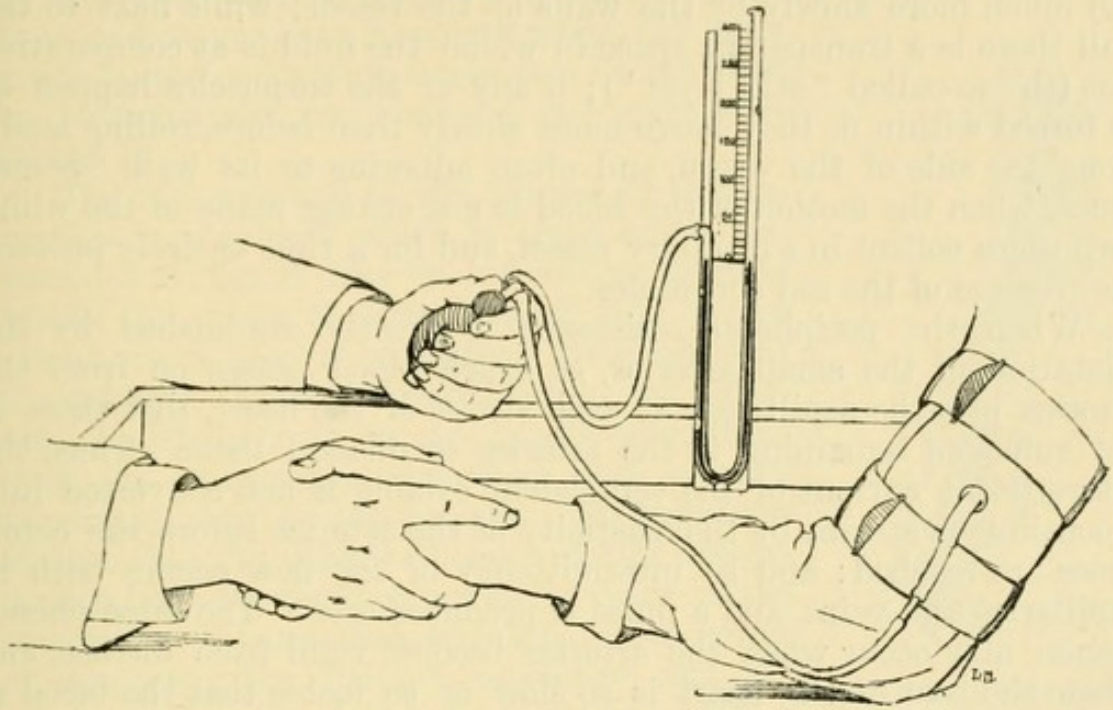


Fig. 295.—Martin's Sphygmometer (made by Hawskley, 357 Oxford Street).

The normal pressure in the radial artery of healthy young adults is 110 to 120 mm. Hg. It appears to be as constant as the body temperature. In the recumbent posture the pressure is slightly lower than in the erect position. This relation is reversed in conditions of exhaustion. During muscular exertion the pressure is raised, while in the subsequent period of rest it is subnormal. Mental work raises the pressure; during rest and sleep it is lowered. The taking of food produces no noteworthy effect. In disease there are naturally variations in different directions, and the study of these has already yielded valuable results.

The Capillary Flow.

When the capillary circulation is examined in any transparent part of a living animal by means of the microscope the blood is seen to flow with a constant equable motion; the red blood-corpuscles move along, mostly in single file, and bend in various ways to accommodate themselves to the tortuous course of the capillary, but instantly recover their normal outline on reaching a wider vessel.

At the circumference of the stream in the larger capillaries, and in the small arteries and veins, there is a layer of blood-plasma in contact with the walls of the vessel, and adhering to them, which moves more slowly than the blood in the centre. Anyone who has rowed on a river will know that the swiftest current is in the

middle of the stream. The red corpuscles occupy the middle of the stream and move with comparative rapidity; the colourless corpuscles run much more slowly by the walls of the vessel; while next to the wall there is a transparent space in which the fluid is at comparative rest (the so-called "still layer"); if any of the corpuscles happen to be forced within it, they move more slowly than before, rolling lazily along the side of the vessel, and often adhering to its wall. Sometimes, when the motion of the blood is not strong, many of the white corpuscles collect in a capillary vessel, and for a time entirely prevent the passage of the red corpuscles.

When the peripheral resistance is greatly diminished by the dilatation of the small arteries, so much blood passes on from the arteries into the capillaries at each stroke of the heart, that there is not sufficient remaining in the arteries to distend them. Thus, the intermittent current of the ventricular systole is not converted into a continuous stream by the elasticity of the arteries before the capillaries are reached; and so intermittency of the flow occurs both in capillaries and veins, and a pulse is produced there. The same phenomenon may occur when the arteries become rigid from disease, and when the beat of the heart is so slow or so feeble that the blood at each cardiac systole has time to pass on to the capillaries before the next stroke occurs; the amount of blood sent out at each stroke is then insufficient to properly distend the elastic arteries.

It was formerly supposed that the occurrence of any transudation from the interior of the capillaries into the midst of the surrounding tissues was confined, in the absence of injury, strictly to the fluid part of the blood; in other words, that the corpuscles could not escape from the circulating stream, unless the wall of the containing blood-vessel was ruptured. Augustus Waller affirmed, in 1846, that he had seen blood-corpuscles, both red and white, pass bodily through the wall of the capillary vessel in which they were contained; and that, as no opening could be seen before their escape, so none could be observed afterwards—so rapidly was the part healed. But these observations did not attract much notice until the phenomenon was rediscovered by Cohnheim in 1867.

Cohnheim's experiment was performed in the following manner: A frog is curarised; and the abdomen having been opened, a portion of small intestine is drawn out, and its transparent mesentery spread out under a microscope. After a variable time, occupied by dilatation, following contraction of the minute vessels and accompanying quickening of the blood-stream, there ensues a retardation of the current, and blood-corpuscles begin to make their way through the capillaries and small vessels.

Diapedesis, or emigration of the white corpuscles, occurs to a small extent in health. But it is much increased in inflammation, and may

go on so as to form a large collection of leucocytes (*i.e.* white corpuscles) outside the vessels.

The emigration of red corpuscles is only seen in inflammation, and is a passive process; it occurs when the holes made by the emigrating leucocytes do not close up immediately, and so the red corpuscles escape too.

The real meaning of the process of inflammation is a subject which is being much discussed now, but it may be interesting to state briefly the views of Metschnikoff, who has in recent years been a prominent investigator of the subject. Even if these views do not represent the whole truth, it can hardly be doubted that the phenomena described play a very important part in the process. Metschnikoff teaches that the vascular phenomena of inflammation have for their object an increase in the emigration of leucocytes, which have the power of devouring the irritant substance, and removing the tissues killed by the lesion. They are therefore called *phagocytes* (devouring or scavenging corpuscles). It may be that the microbic influence, or the influence of the chemical poisons they produce, is too powerful for the leucocytes; then they are destroyed, and the dead leucocytes become pus corpuscles; but if the leucocytes are successful in destroying the foreign body, micro-organisms, and disintegrated tissues, they disappear, wandering back to the blood-vessels, and the lost tissue is replaced by a regeneration of the surrounding tissues.*

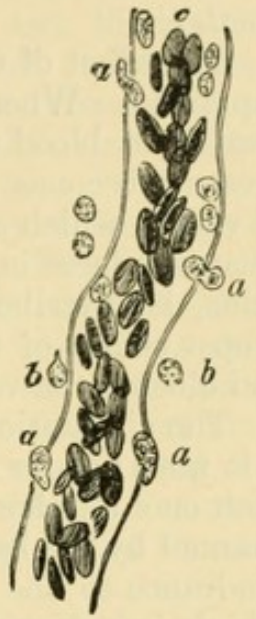


FIG. 296.—A large capillary from the frog's mesentery eight hours after irritation had been set up, showing emigration of leucocytes. *a*, Cells in the act of traversing the capillary wall; *b*, some already escaped. (Frey.)

The circulation through the capillaries must, of necessity, be largely influenced by that which occurs in the vessels on either side of them in the arteries or the veins; their intermediate position causes them to feel at once any alteration in the size, rate, or pressure of the arterial, and more especially of the venous blood-stream. The apparent contraction of the capillaries, on the application of certain irritating substances, and during fear, and their dilatation in blushing, may be referred primarily to the action of the small arteries.

The Venous Flow.

The blood-current in the veins is maintained primarily by the *vis a tergo*, that is, the force behind, which is the blood-pressure

* This question is closely related to that of immunity, which is discussed in the chapter on the Blood (Chapter XXVI).

transmitted from the heart and arteries; but very effectual assistance to the flow is afforded by the action of the muscles capable of pressing on the veins with valves, as well as by the suction action of the heart, and the aspiratory action of the thorax (*vis a fronte*).

The effect of muscular pressure upon the circulation may be thus explained. When pressure is applied to any part of a vein and the current of blood in it is obstructed, the portion behind the seat of pressure becomes swollen and distended as far back as the next pair of valves, which are in consequence closed (fig. 230, B, p. 220). Thus, whatever force is exercised by the pressure of the muscles on the veins, is distributed partly in pressing the blood onwards in the proper course of the circulation, and partly in pressing it backwards and closing the valves behind.

The circulation might lose as much as it gains by such an action, if it were not for the numerous communications which the veins make with one another; through these, the closing up of the venous channel by the backward pressure is prevented from being any serious hindrance to the circulation, since the blood, the onward course of which is arrested by the closed valves, can at once pass through some anastomosing channel, and proceed on its way by another vein. Thus, the effect of muscular pressure upon veins which have valves, is turned almost entirely to the advantage of the circulation.

In the web of the bat's wing, the veins are furnished with valves, and possess the remarkable property of *rhythmical contraction and dilatation*, whereby the current of blood within them is distinctly accelerated (Wharton Jones). The contraction occurs, on an average, about ten times in a minute; the existence of valves prevents regurgitation, so the entire effect of the contractions is auxiliary to the onward current of blood. Analogous phenomena have been observed in other animals.

A venous pulse is observed under the conditions previously described (p. 294), when the arterioles are dilated so that the arterial pulse passes through the capillaries to the veins.

A venous pulse is also seen in the superior and inferior vena cava near to their entrance into the heart; this corresponds to variations of the pressure in the right auricle. When the ventricle is contracting there is a slow rise due to the fact that the blood cannot get into the ventricle, and so distends the auricle; a second short, sharp elevation of pressure is produced by the auricular systole. Alterations of venous pressure are also produced in the great veins by the respiratory movements, the pressure sinking during inspiration, and rising during expiration.

The Vaso-Motor Nervous System.

The vaso-motor nervous system consists of the vaso-motor centre situated in the bulb, of certain subsidiary vaso-motor centres in the spinal cord, and of vaso-motor nerves, which are of two kinds—(*a*) those the stimulation of which causes constriction of the vessels; these are called *vaso-constrictor nerves;* (*b*) those the stimulation of which causes dilatation of the vessels; these are called *vaso-dilator nerves.*

The following names are associated with the history of the subject. The muscular structure of arteries was first described by Henle in 1841; in 1852 Brown Séquard made a study of the vaso-constrictor, or, as he termed them, tonic nerves. The vaso-motor centre was discovered by Schiff (1855), and more accurately localised by Ludwig (1871). The dilator nerves were also discovered by Schiff; at first they were termed paretic nerves. Other names which must be mentioned in connection with the subject are those of Claude Bernard, Heidenhain, and, in more recent years, Gaskell, Langley, and Ramon y Cajal.

The nerves supply the muscular tissue in the walls of the blood-vessels and regulate their calibre, but exert their most important action in the vessels which contain relatively the greatest amount of muscular tissue, namely, the small arteries or arterioles.

Under ordinary circumstances, the arterioles are maintained in a state of moderate or tonic contraction, and this constitutes the peripheral resistance, the use of which is to keep up the arterial pressure, which must be high enough to force the blood through the capillaries and veins in a continuous stream back to the heart.

Another function which is served by this muscular tissue is to regulate the amount of blood which flows through the capillaries of any organ in proportion to its needs. During digestion, for instance, it is necessary that the digestive organs should be supplied with a large quantity of blood: for this purpose the arterioles of the splanchnic area are relaxed, and there is a vast amount of blood in this area, and therefore a correspondingly small amount in other areas, such as the skin; this accounts for the sensation of chilliness experienced after a full meal. The skin vessels form another good example; one of the most important uses of the skin is to get rid of the heat of the body in such a way that the body temperature shall remain constant; when excess of heat is produced there is also an increase in the loss of heat; the skin vessels are then dilated, and so more blood is exposed on the surface, and thus an increase in the radiation of heat from the surface is brought about. On the other hand, when it is necessary that the heat produced should be kept in the body, the loss of heat is diminished by a constriction of the skin vessels,

as in cold weather. The alteration of the calibre of the vessels is brought about by the action of the vaso-motor nervous system on the muscular tissue of the arterioles.

There are certain organs of the body in which the necessity for alterations in their blood-supply does not exist. Such organs are the lungs and the brain. It is in the vessels of these organs that the influence of vaso-motor nerves is at a minimum. The pulmonary vessels are stated by Bradford and Dean to be supplied by nerves which leave the cord in the upper thoracic region; but on stimulating these the rise of pressure produced is extremely small; it is very doubtful if the fibres in question are really vaso-constrictors; the small rise observed may be partly or even wholly due to the acceleration of the heart, which is another result of stimulating these nerve-roots.

The *vaso-motor centre* lies in the grey matter of the floor of the fourth ventricle; it is a few millimetres in length, reaching from the upper part of the floor to within about 4 mm. of the calamus scriptorius. The position of this centre has been discovered by the following means: when it is destroyed the tone of the small vessels is no longer kept up, and in consequence there is a great and universal fall in arterial blood-pressure; when it is stimulated there is an increase in the constriction of the arterioles all over the body, and therefore a rise of arterial blood-pressure. Its upper and lower limits have been accurately determined in the following way: a series of animals is taken, and the central nervous system divided in a different place in each; the cerebrum and cerebellum may be cut off without affecting blood-pressure, the vaso-motor centre must therefore be below these; if the section is made just above the medulla, the blood-pressure still remains high, and it is not till the upper limit of the centre is passed that the blood-pressure falls. Similarly, in another series of animals, if the cervical cord is cut through, and the animal kept alive by artificial respiration, there is an enormous fall of pressure due to the influence of the centre being removed from the vessels; in other experiments the section is made higher and higher, and the same result noted, until at last the lower limit of the centre is passed, and the fall of pressure is less and less marked the higher one goes there, until in the animal in which the section is made at the upper boundary of the centre the blood-pressure is not affected at all, and the centre can be influenced reflexly by the stimulation of afferent nerves, the pressor and depressor nerves, which we shall be considering immediately.

After the destruction of the vaso-motor centre in the bulb, there is a fall of pressure. If the animal is kept alive, the vessels after a time recover their tone, and the arterial pressure rises; it rises still more on stimulating the central end of a sensory nerve; this is due

to the existence of subsidiary vaso-motor centres in the spinal cord; for on the subsequent destruction of the spinal cord the vessels again lose their tone and the blood-pressure sinks.

The vaso-motor path is down the lateral column of the spinal cord, and the fibres terminate by arborising around the cells in the grey matter of the subsidiary vaso-motor centres, the anatomical position of which is uncertain, though it is probably in the cells of the intermedio-lateral tract. From these cells fresh axis-cylinder processes originate, which pass out as the small medullated nerve-fibres in the anterior roots of the spinal nerves.

The *vaso-constrictor* nerves for the whole body leave the spinal cord by the anterior roots of the spinal nerves from the second thoracic to the second lumbar, both inclusive. They leave the roots by the white rami communicantes, and pass into the ganglia of the sympathetic chain, which lies on each side along the front of the vertebral column. The ganglia on this chain (the lateral ganglia of Gaskell) may also be called the chain of vaso-motor ganglia, because here are situated cell stations on the course of the vaso-constrictor nerves for the head, trunk and limbs. That is to say, the small medullated nerve-fibres terminate by arborising around the cells of these ganglia, and a fresh relay of axis-cylinder processes from these cells carry on the impulses.

The next figure (fig. 297) represents diagrammatically how this occurs. The sheaths of the fibres are not represented.

The cell station of any particular fibre is not necessarily situated in the first ganglion to which it passes; the fibres of the white ramus communicans of the second thoracic do not, for instance, all have their cell stations in the corresponding thoracic ganglion, but may pass upwards or downwards in the chain to a more or less distant ganglion before they terminate by arborising around a cell or cells.

The vaso-constrictor nerves, however, have all cell stations somewhere in the sympathetic system, and the new axis-cylinders that arise from the cells of the ganglia differ from those which terminate there in the circumstance that they do not possess a medullary sheath, but they are pale, grey, or non-medullated fibres. Those which are destined for the supply of the vessels of the head and neck pass into the ganglion stellatum or first thoracic ganglion, thence through the annulus of Vieussens to the inferior cervical ganglion, and thence along the sympathetic trunk to their destination. Their cell station is in the superior cervical ganglion.

Those for the body wall and limbs pass back from the sympathetic ganglia to the spinal nerves by the grey rami communicantes, and are distributed with the other spinal nerve-fibres. The cell stations for the upper limb fibres are in the ganglion stellatum, and for the lower limb fibres in the lower lumbar and upper sacral ganglia.

Those for the interior of the body pass into the various plexuses of sympathetic nerves in the thorax and abdomen, and are distributed to the vessels of the thoracic and abdominal viscera. This set includes

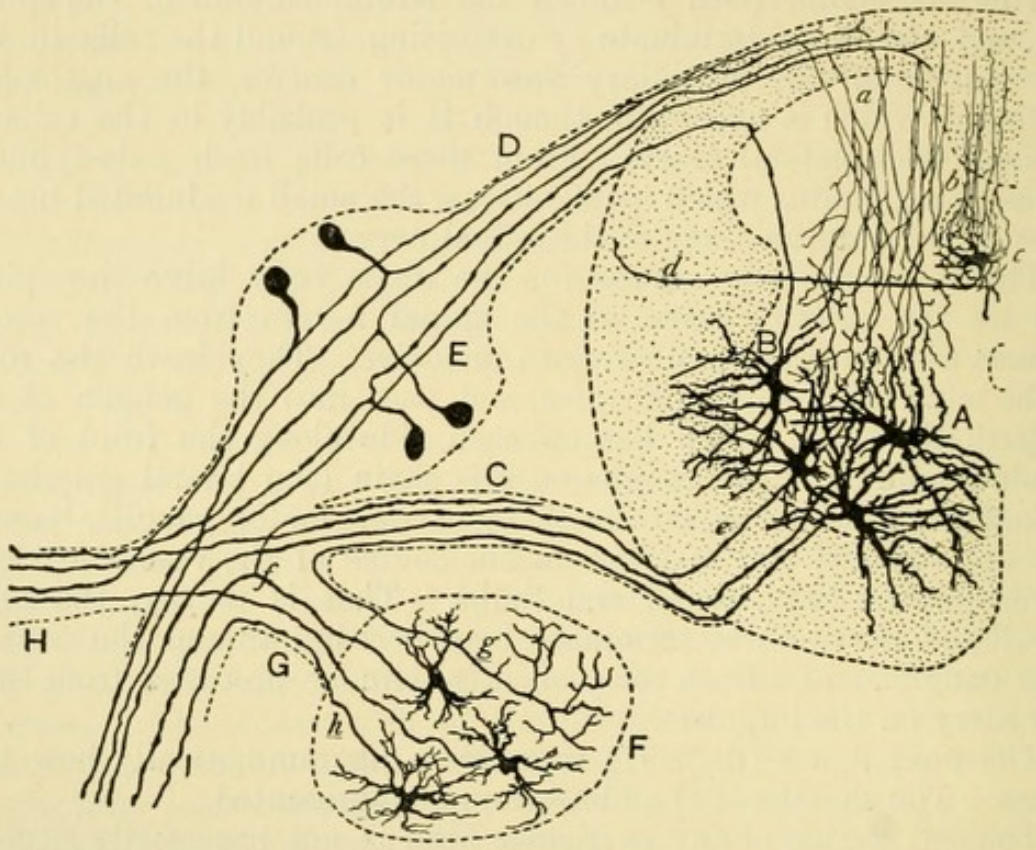


FIG. 297.—Transverse section through half the spinal cord, showing the ganglia. A, anterior cornual cells; B, axis-cylinder process of one of these going to posterior root; C, anterior (motor) root; D, posterior (sensory) root; E, spinal ganglion on posterior root; F, sympathetic ganglion; G, ramus communicans; H, posterior branch of spinal nerve; I, anterior branch of spinal nerve; *a*, long collaterals from posterior root fibres reaching to anterior horn; *b*, short collaterals passing to Clarke's column; *c*, cell in Clark's column sending an axis-cylinder (*d*) process to the direct cerebellar tract; *e*, fibre of the anterior root; *f*, axis-cylinder from sympathetic ganglion cell, dividing into two branches, one to the periphery, the other towards the cord; *g*, fibre of the anterior root terminating by an arborisation in the sympathetic ganglion; *h*, sympathetic fibre passing to periphery. (Ramon y Cajal.)

the most important vaso-motor nerves of the body, the splanchnics. Their cell stations are situated in the various ganglia of the abdominal plexuses.

The *vaso-dilator* nerves in part accompany those just described, but they are not limited to the outflow from the second thoracic to the second lumbar. Thus, the nervi erigentes originate as white rami communicantes from the second and third sacral nerves, and the chorda tympani, another good example of a vaso-dilator nerve, is a branch of the seventh cranial nerve. Bayliss has also shown that the posterior root fibres may act as vaso-dilators (see p. 303).

All vaso-motor nerves, whether they are constrictor or dilator, differ very markedly from the spinal nerve-fibres which are distributed to voluntary muscles in being ganglionated; that is, in having

cell stations or positions of relay on their course from the central nervous system to the muscular fibres they supply.

The existence of cell stations between the central nervous system and the muscular fibres is not confined to the nerves of blood-vessels, but is found also in the nerves which supply the heart and other viscera.

Moreover, the nerves which supply the voluntary muscles are motor in function; inhibitory fibres to the voluntary muscles of vertebrates do not exist. But in the case of the involuntary muscles there are usually the two sets of nerve-fibres with opposite functions.

In the case of the heart, we have an accelerator set which course through the sympathetic, and an inhibitory set which course through the vagus.

In the case of the vessels, we have an accelerator set, which we have hitherto called vaso-constrictors, and an inhibitory set we have been calling vaso-dilators.

In the case of the other contractile viscera, we have also viscero-accelerator and viscero-inhibitory, which respectively hasten and lessen their peristaltic movements.

Adopting Gaskell's nomenclature, we may further term the accelerator groups of nerves *katabolic*, as they increase the activity of the muscles they supply, bringing about an increase of wear and tear, and an increase in the discharge of waste material. The inhibitory nerves, on the other hand, are *anabolic*, as they produce a condition of rest in the tissues they supply, and so give an opportunity for repair or constructive metabolism.

The distribution of the vaso-motor nerves and the viscero-motor nerves has been within recent years very thoroughly worked out by Langley. The nerves of the various viscera we shall take with the individual organs. In all these cases, there is a cell station somewhere in the sympathetic system, and only one for each nerve-fibre. The *preganglionic fibres* (*i.e.*, the fibres from the spinal cord to the sympathetic cell station) are usually medullated; the *postganglionic fibres* (*i.e.*, those that leave the ganglion) are usually non-medullated. But this histological distinction, so much emphasised by Gaskell, is not without exceptions, and the localisation of cell stations is made with far greater certainty by Langley's nicotine method. Nicotine in small doses paralyses nerve-cells,* but not nerve-fibres; if the drug is injected into an animal, stimulation of the anterior nerve-roots produces no movements of the involuntary

* It is still a matter of uncertainty whether this drug acts upon the nerve-cells themselves, or the terminal arborisations (synapses) of the nerve-fibres that surround them. Before the paralytic effect of nicotine comes on, it excites the nerve-cells, and thus in the case of the blood-vessels causes a general constriction of the arterioles and a rise of arterial pressure.

muscles, because the paralysed cell stations on the course of the nerve-fibres act as blocks to the propagation of the impulses. If the nicotine is applied locally by painting it over one or more ganglia, there will be a block in those fibres only which have their cell stations in those particular ganglia. Thus, in the lateral chain of ganglia we find the cells on the course of the pilo-motor nerves (*i.e.*, to the muscles of the hairs), of the vaso-constrictors of the head, limbs, and body walls, and possibly of the splenic nerves. In the collateral ganglia (*i.e.*, cœliac, mesenteric, etc.) are found, amongst others, the cells on the course of the splanchnic nerves, of the nerves to sweat glands, of the cardiac accelerators, and of the inhibitory fibres of the alimentary canal; while in the terminal ganglia are placed, among others, the cells on the course of the cardiac inhibitory nerves, of the motor fibres to the lower part of the intestine and bladder, and of the inhibitory fibres to the external genital organs.

We may now ask what is the object that is served by the existence of ganglia on the course of these nerves. It appears to be a means of distributing nerve-fibres to a vast area of muscular tissue by means of a comparatively small number of nerve-fibres that leave the central nervous system; for each fibre that leaves the central nervous system arborises around a number of cells, and thus the impulse it carries is transferred to a large number of new axis-cylinder processes.

In some cases, it is true, a single nerve-fibre will divide into multitudinous branches to accomplish the same object (as in the supply of the electric organ of Malapterurus, the fibres to the millions of its subdivisions all originating from a single axis-cylinder), but the usual way appears to be a combination of this method with that of subsidiary cell-stations.

At one time a ganglion was supposed to be the normal centre for reflex action. The submaxillary ganglion was the battle-field in which this question was fought out in Claud Bernard's time. In the later researches of Langley and Anderson, the only instances where such a thing seemed possible were the following:—When all the nervous connections of the inferior mesenteric ganglion are divided except the hypogastric nerves, stimulation of the central end of one hypogastric causes contraction of the bladder, the efferent path to which is the other hypogastric nerve. In addition, they observed an apparent reflex excitation of the nerve supplying the erector muscles of the hairs (pilo-motor nerves) through other sympathetic ganglia. In neither case is the action truly reflex, but is caused by the stimulation of the central ends of motor-fibres which issue from the spinal cord, and which after passing through the ganglion send branches down each hypogastric nerve. The experiment is in fact similar to Kühne's gracilis experiment (p. 173).

It certainly is the case that under normal circumstances, the centres for reflex action are in the central nervous system. But there do appear to be some conditions in which it is possible for ganglia to assume this function. The recovery of vaso-motor tone, and of tone in certain viscera after destruction of extensive tracts of the spinal cord, or the persistence of peristaltic action in the intestine after cutting through all its nerves, are cases in point. (See further, under Intestinal Movements, and Spinal Visceral Reflexes).

The observations of W. M. Bayliss on the vaso-dilator nerves of dogs are of considerable interest. He could find no vaso-dilator fibres to the hind limb in the abdominal sympathetic chain; but the only fibres excitation of which produced vascular dilatation there, are contained in the posterior roots. He also found fibres in the posterior roots of the 12th and 13th thoracic nerves, which act as vaso-dilators of the small intestine. Not only is vaso-dilatation the result of mechanical, electrical, or thermal stimulation of these roots, but experiments are adduced which show

that in normal reflexes, such as occur when the depressor nerve is stimulated, the dilator impulses travel by the same route. This raises the question whether the posterior roots contain true efferent fibres. The facts of degeneration show that they do not. Bayliss is therefore driven to the conclusion that the same nerve terminations in the periphery serve both to take up sensory impressions, and to convey inhibitory impulses to the muscular structures in which they end. In other words, we have here another example which may be added to those previously mentioned (p. 173), that nerve-fibres may convey impulses in both directions. The term *antidromic* is used by Bayliss to express the fact that impulses may travel in the reverse direction to that in which they usually pass.

The Vaso-motor centre can be excited directly, as by induction currents; the result is an increase of arterial blood-pressure owing to an increase of the contraction of the peripheral arterioles.

It can also be excited by the action of *poisons* in the blood which circulates through it; thus, strophanthus or digitalis causes a marked rise of general arterial pressure due to the constriction of the peripheral vessels brought about by impulses from the centre.

It is also excited by venous blood, as in *asphyxia;* the rise of blood-pressure which occurs during the first part of asphyxia is due to constriction of peripheral vessels; the fall during the last stage of asphyxia is largely due to heart failure. We shall study asphyxia more at length in connection with respiration. During the period of decreased pressure, waves are often observed on the blood-pressure curve which arise from a slow rhythmic action of the vaso-motor centre. The centre alternately sends out stronger and weaker constrictor impulses. They are known as the *Traube-Hering* waves, and are much slower in their rhythm than the waves on the tracing which are due to respiration. They are not peculiar to asphyxia, but are frequently seen in tracings from normal animals. Fig. 298 represents a tracing obtained from a dog under the influence of an anæsthetic. This tracing shows the three sets of waves, first the oscillations due to the heart-beats, next in size those due to the respiratory movements, which in their turn are superposed on the prolonged Traube-Hering waves.

The Vaso-motor centre may be excited reflexly.—The afferent impulses to the vaso-motor centre may be divided into **pressor** and **depressor.**

Most sensory nerves are *pressor* nerves. The sciatic or the vagus nerves may be taken as instances; when they are divided and their central ends stimulated, the result is a rise of blood-pressure due to the stimulation of the vaso-motor centre, and a consequent constriction of the arterioles all over the body, but especially in the splanchnic area. Fig. 299 shows the result of such an experiment. It is necessary in performing such an experiment to administer curare as well as an anæsthetic to the animal, in order to obviate reflex muscular struggles, which would themselves produce a rise in arterial pressure.

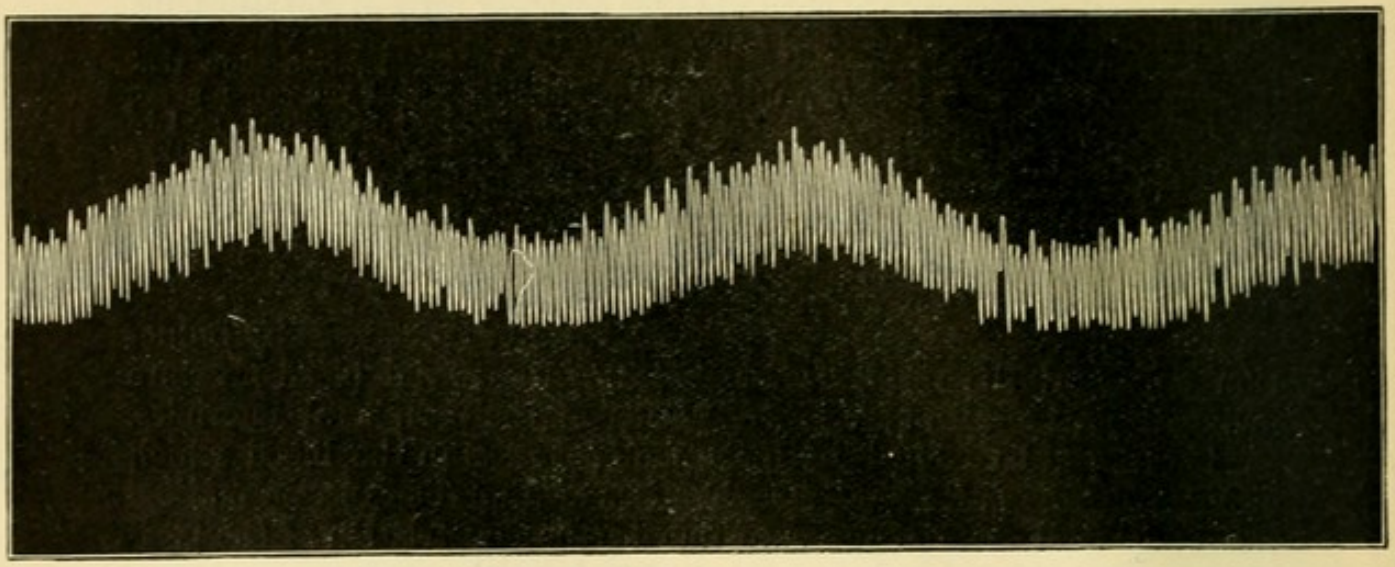


FIG. 298.—Arterial blood-pressure tracing from dog showing Traube-Hering waves. (Sherrington.)

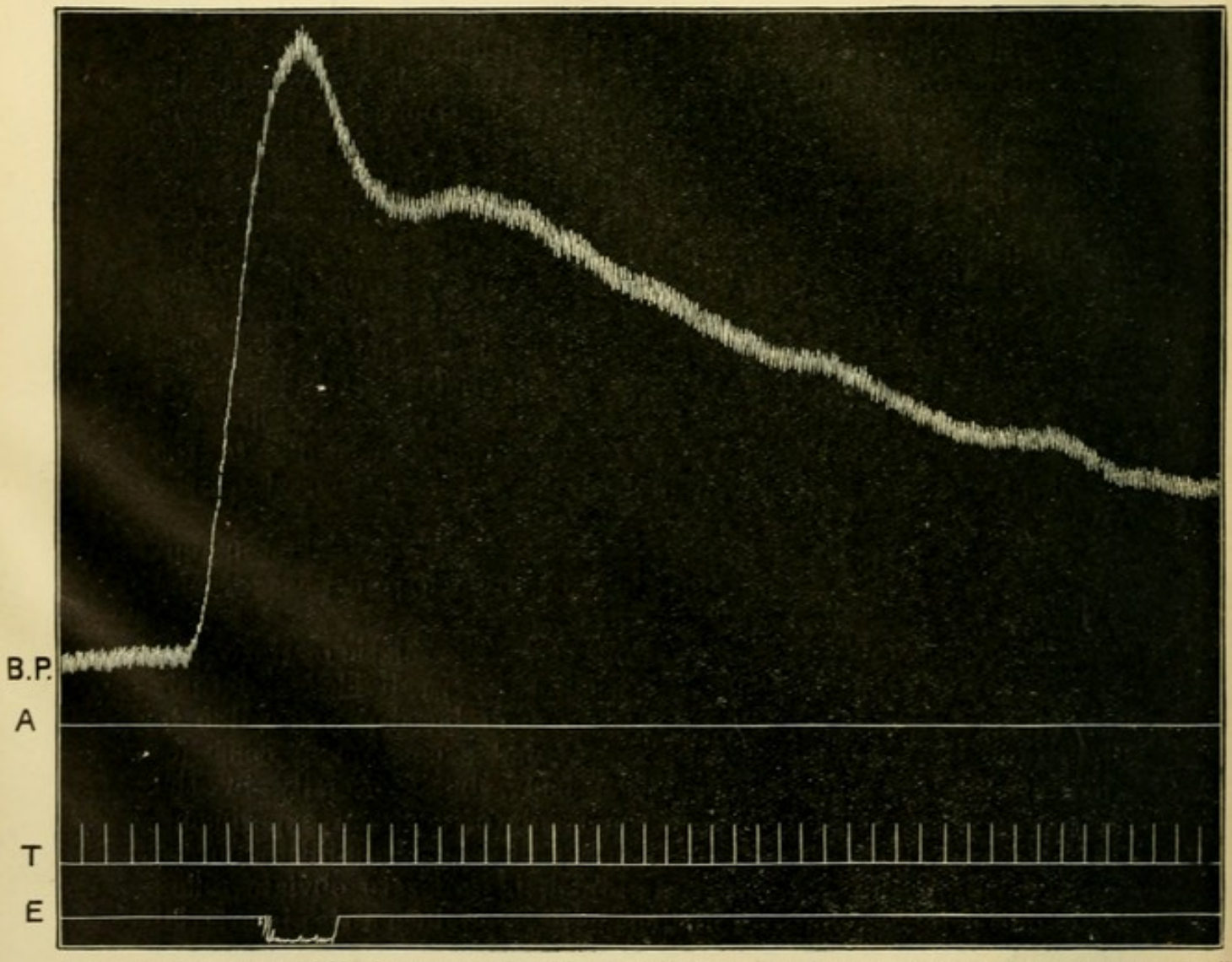


FIG. 299.—Rise in arterial blood-pressure produced by stimulating the central end of a sensory nerve (external popliteal) in a cat under the influence of morphine and curare. BP, blood-pressure; A, abscissa or base line; T, time intervals of 5 seconds; E, signal line, the lowering of which indicates the period of stimulation of the nerve. The size of the figure is slightly reduced in reproduction. (Sherrington.)

Many sensory nerves also contain *depressor* fibres which produce the opposite effect. The most marked bundle of these is known as *the depressor nerve.* In most animals this is bound up in the trunk of the vagus; but in some, like the rabbit, cat, and horse, the nerve runs up as a separate branch from the heart (or, according to some recent observations, from the commencement of the aorta), and joins the vagus or its superior laryngeal branch, and ultimately reaches the vaso-motor centre. When this nerve is stimulated (the vagi having been previously divided to prevent reflex inhibition of the heart), a marked fall of arterial blood-pressure is produced (see fig. 300). Stimulation of this nerve affects the vaso-motor centre in such a way that the normal constrictor impulses that pass down the vaso-constrictor nerves are inhibited. The fall of pressure is very slight after section of the splanchnic nerves, showing that the splanchnic area is the part of the body most affected. The normal function of this nerve is to adapt the peripheral resistance to the heart's action: if the constriction of the arterioles is too high for the heart to overcome, an impulse by this nerve to the vaso-motor centre produces reflexly a lessening of the peripheral resistance.

N.B.—The term depressor should be carefully distinguished from inhibitory; stimulation of the peripheral end of the vagus produces a fall of blood-pressure due to inhibition (slowing or stoppage) of the heart (see figs. 277 and 278); stimulation of the central end of the depressor nerve produces a lowering of blood-pressure for a different reason, namely, a reflex relaxation of the splanchnic arterioles.

Experiments on Vaso-motor nerves.—The experiments on the vaso-motor nerves are similar to those performed on other nerves when one wishes to ascertain their functions. They consist of section and excitation.

Section of a vaso-constrictor nerve, such as the splanchnic, causes a loss of normal arterial tone, and consequently the part supplied by the nerve becomes flushed with blood. Stimulation of the peripheral end causes the vessels to contract and the part to become comparatively pale and bloodless. This can be very readily demonstrated on the ear of the rabbit. This is a classical experiment associated with the name of Claude Bernard. Division of the cervical sympathetic produces an increased redness of the side of the head, and looking at the ear, the transparency of which enables one to follow the phenomena easily, the central artery with its branches is seen to become larger, and many small branches not previously visible come into view. The ear feels hotter, though this effect soon passes off as the exposure of a large quantity of blood to the air causes a rapid loss of heat. On stimulating the peripheral end of the cut nerve, the ear resumes its normal condition, and then becomes paler than usual owing to excessive constriction of the vessels.

The first part of the experiment, the dilatation following section,

can be demonstrated in a very simple way, by pressing the thumb-nail forcibly on the nerve where it lies by the side of the central artery of the ear.

Section of a vaso-dilator nerve, such as the chorda tympani, produces no effect on the vessels, but stimulation of its peripheral end

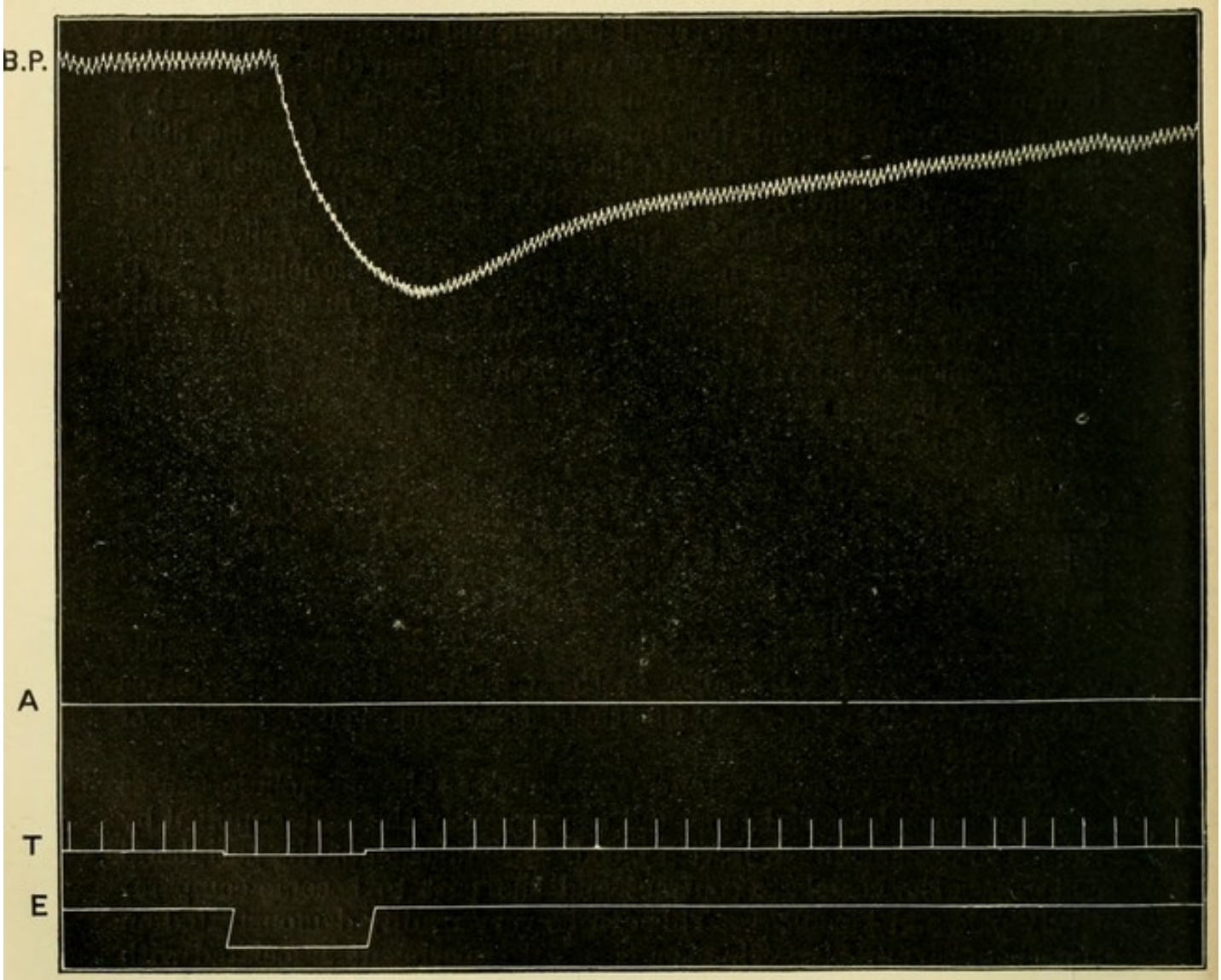


FIG. 300.—Tracing of arterial blood-pressure showing the effect of stimulating the central end of the Depressor nerve in a cat. The letters prefixed to the various lines have the same meaning as in fig. 299. (Sherrington.)

causes great enlargement of all the arterioles, so that the submaxillary gland and the neighbouring parts supplied by the nerve become red and gorged with blood, and the pulse is propagated through to the veins; the circulation through the capillaries is so rapid that the blood loses very little of its oxygen, and is therefore arterial in colour in the veins. Another effect, free secretion of saliva, we shall study in connection with that subject.

Other examples of vaso-dilator nerves are the nervi erigentes to

the erectile tissue of the penis, etc., and of the lingual nerve to the vessels of the tongue.

It is, however, probable that all the vessels of the body receive both constrictor and dilator nerves. But the presence of the latter is difficult to determine unless they are present in excess; if they are not, stimulation affects the constrictors most. The effect of section is also inconclusive; for if a mixed nerve is cut, the only effect observed is a dilatation due to removal of the tonic constrictor influence.

To solve this difficult problem, three methods are in use:—

1. *The method of degeneration.*—If the sciatic nerve is cut, the vessels of the limb dilate. This passes off in a day or two. If the peripheral end of the nerve is then stimulated, the vessels are dilated, as the constrictor fibres degenerate earliest, and so one gets a result due to the stimulation of the still intact dilator fibres.

2. *The method of slowly interrupted shocks.*—If a mixed nerve is stimulated with the usual rapidly interrupted faradic current, the effect is constriction; but if the induction shocks are sent in at long intervals (*e.g.*, at intervals of a second), vaso-dilator effects are obtained. This can be readily demonstrated on the kidney vessels by stimulation of the anterior root of the eleventh thoracic nerve in the two ways just indicated.

By studying the rate of flow of the blood through the submaxillary gland, in which the vaso-constrictor and dilator fibres run separate courses, it has been shown that if both sets of fibres are simultaneously excited, constriction is produced during the stimulation, while marked dilatation follows after the stimulation has ceased. Excitation of the constrictors alone is not followed by dilatation. These results explain the mode of action of slowly interrupted shocks, for with each there will only be a very slight constriction, while the dilator effects which run a much slower course will be summed up to produce a marked effect.

3. *The influence of temperature.*—Exposure to a low temperature depresses the constrictors more than the dilators. If the leg is placed in ice-cold water, stimulation of the sciatic, even if it has only been recently divided, produces a flushing of the skin with blood.

Plethysmography.

The action of vaso-motor nerves can be studied in another way than by the use of various forms of manometer, which is the only method we have considered so far. The second method, which is often used together with the manometer, consists in the use of an instrument which records variations in the volume of any limb, or organ of an animal. Such an instrument is called a **plethysmograph.** One of these instruments applied to the human arm is shown in the accompanying figure (fig. 301).

Every time the arm expands with every heart's systole, a little of the fluid in the plethysmograph is expelled and raises the lever. Variations in volume due to respiration are also seen in the tracing. An air plethysmograph connected to a sensitive recorder gives equally good results.

The same instrument in a modified form applied to such organs as the spleen and kidney is generally called an **oncometer**, and the recording part of the apparatus, the **oncograph.** These instruments we owe to Roy, and the next two figures represent respectively sections of the kidney oncometer and oncograph.

An oncometer consists of a metal capsule, of shape suitable to enclose the organ: its two halves are jointed together, and fit accurately except at one opening which is left for the vessels of the organ. A delicate membrane is attached to the rim of each half, the

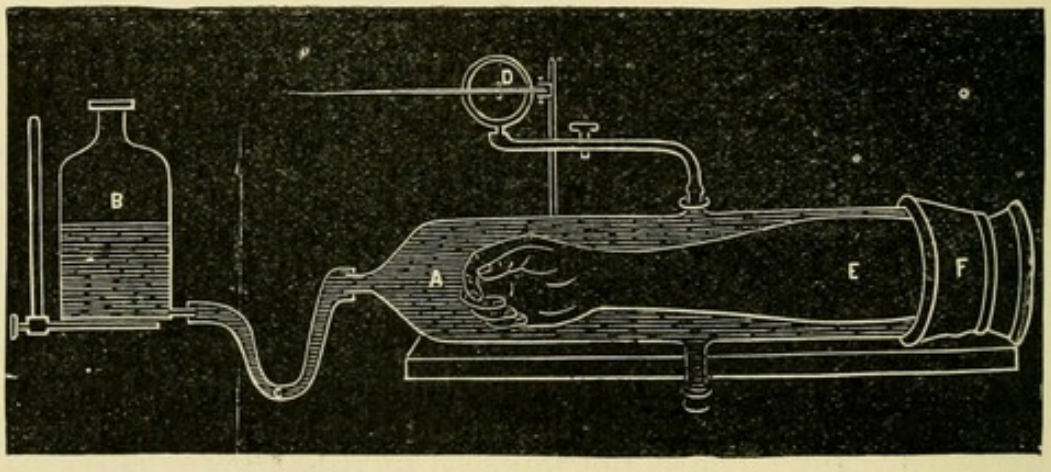


FIG. 301.—Plethysmograph. By means of this apparatus, the alteration in volume of the arm, E, which is enclosed in a glass tube, A, filled with fluid, the opening through which it passes being firmly closed by a thick gutta-percha band, F, is communicated to the lever, D, and registered by a recording apparatus. The fluid in A communicates with that in B, the upper limit of which is above that in A. The chief alterations in volume are due to alteration in the blood contained in the arm. When the volume is increased, fluid passes out of the glass cylinder, and the lever, D, also is raised, and when a decrease takes place the fluid returns again from B to A. It will therefore be evident that the apparatus is capable of recording alterations of the volume of blood in the arm.

space between which and the metal is filled with warm oil. The tube from the oncometer is connected to the oil-containing cavity of the oncograph by a tube also containing oil. An increase in the volume of the organ squeezes the oil out of the oncometer into the oncograph, and so produces a rise of the oncograph piston and lever; a contraction of the organ produces a fall of the lever.

Very good results are obtained by using saline solution instead of oil; and Schafer has shown in connection with the spleen that a spleen box of simple shape covered with a glass plate, made air-tight with vaseline, and communicating by a tube with a Marey's tambour, gives a far more delicate record of the splenic alterations of volume than the oil oncometer. Similar air oncometers are now used in the investigation of many organs.

If now we are investigating the action of the anterior root of eleventh thoracic nerve on the vessels of the kidney, a tracing is taken

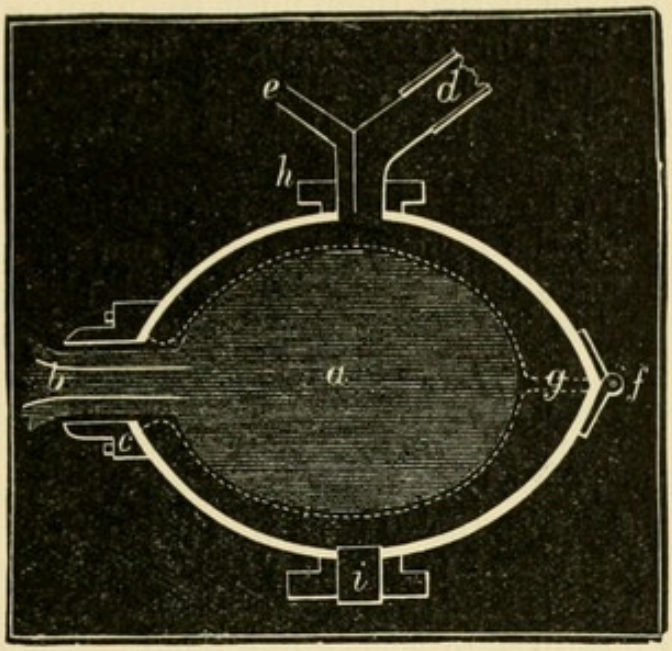


FIG. 302.—Diagram of Roy's Oncometer. *a*, represents the kidney enclosed in a metal box, which opens by hinge *f*; *b*, the renal vessels and duct. Surrounding the kidney are two chambers formed by membranes, the edges of which are firmly fixed by being clamped between the outside metal capsule, and one (not represented in the figure) inside, the two being firmly screwed together by screws at *h*, and below. The membranous chamber below is filled with a varying amount of warm oil, according to the size of the kidney experimented with, through the opening, then closed with the plug *i*. After the kidney has been enclosed in the capsule, the membranous chamber above is filled with warm oil through the tube *e*, which is then closed by a tap (not represented in the diagram); the tube *d* communicates with a recording apparatus, and any alteration in the volume of the kidney is communicated by the oil in the tube to the chamber *d* of the Oncograph, fig. 303.

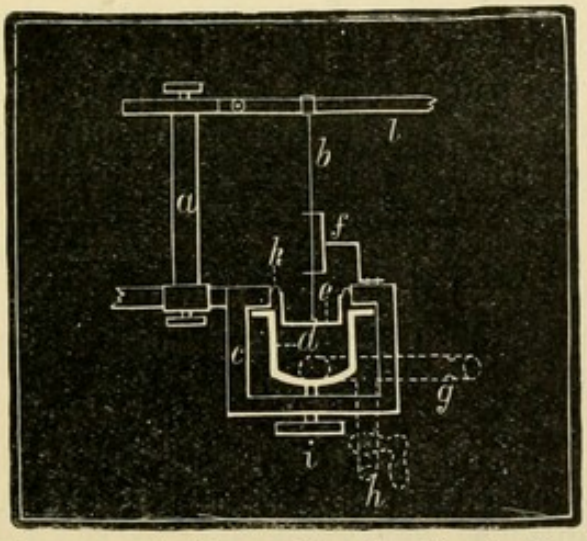


FIG. 303.—Roy's Oncograph, or apparatus for recording alterations in the volume of the kidney, etc., as shown by the oncometer—*a*, upright, supporting recording lever *l*, which is raised or lowered by needle *b*, which works through *f*, and which is attached to the piston *e*, working in the chamber *d*, with which the tube from the oncometer communicates. The oil is prevented from being squeezed out as the piston descends by a membrane, which is clamped between the ring-shaped surfaces of cylinder by the screw *i* working upwards; the tube *h* is for filling the instrument.

simultaneously of the arterial blood-pressure in the carotid, and of the volume of the kidney by the oncometer. On stimulating the

nerve rapidly, there is a slight rise of arterial pressure, but a large fall of the oncograph lever, showing that the kidney has diminished in volume. It is evident that there must be an active contraction of the arterioles of the kidney, causing it to diminish in size, for the blood-pressure tracing (which is taken as a control to be sure the changes are not otherwise produced) shows that there is no failure of the heart's activity to account for it.

We shall return to the subject of the oncometer in connection with the spleen and the kidney. We may, however, say in passing what a very important experimental method plethysmography is becoming. Since the introduction of air oncometers, the method is remarkably easy to apply, and it is now part of the routine practice of physiologists, when they are investigating the action of a drug, or of a nerve, on any organ, to record its volume changes by the plethysmographic method. Thus, the salivary glands, lobes of the liver or lung, the limbs, the kidney, spleen, a coil of intestine, etc., can all be easily enclosed in an appropriately shaped gutta-percha box, covered with a glass plate made air-tight with vaseline. There are always two openings to such a box, one to allow the vessels and nerves to enter (leakage of air around these is prevented by packing with cotton-wool soaked in vaseline); the other opening is filled up with a piece of glass tubing which is connected by an indiarubber tube to the recording apparatus. The most delicate of the volume recorders is the bellows-recorder of Brodie (see p. 152) and the piston recorder of Hürthle; a Marey's tambour is not so sensitive, and, moreover, it is a recorder of pressure rather than of volume only.

Of all the oncometers, I am inclined to believe that the intestinal oncometer is the most instructive, because the coil of intestine under observation gives a truer record of what is occurring in that important area called the splanchnic area, than any other abdominal organ.

Pathological Conditions.

The vaso-motor nervous system is influenced to some extent by conditions of the cerebrum, some emotions, such as fear, causing pallor (vaso-constriction), and others causing blushing (vaso-dilatation).

It is almost impossible to over-estimate the importance of the study of vaso-motor phenomena as a means of explaining certain pathological conditions; our knowledge of the processes concerned in *inflammation* is a case in point.

Disorders of the vessels due to vaso-motor disturbances are generally called *angio-neuroses.* Of these we may mention the following:—

Tache cérebrale is due to abnormal sensitiveness of the vascular nerves; drawing the finger-nail across the skin causes an immediate

wheal, or at least a red mark that lasts a considerable time. At one time this was considered characteristic of affections of the cerebral meninges like tubercular meningitis, and was consequently called the "meningeal streak." It, however, occurs in a variety of pathological conditions of the nervous system, both cerebral and spinal.

In certain conditions which lead to *angina pectoris* the pain in the heart is in part due to its being unable to overcome an immense peripheral resistance, and the condition is relieved by the administration of drugs like amyl-nitrite or nitro-glycerin, which relax the vessels and cause universal blushing.

Raynaud's disease is one in which there is a localised constriction of the vessels which is so effectual as to entirely cut off the blood supply to the capillary areas beyond, and if this lasts any considerable time may lead to gangrene of the parts in question.

Local Peculiarities of the Circulation.

The most remarkable peculiarities attending the circulation of blood through different organs are observed in the cases of the *brain*, *erectile organs*, *lungs*, *liver*, *spleen*, and *kidneys*.

In the Brain.—The brain must always be supplied with blood, for otherwise immediate loss of consciousness would follow. Hence, to render accidental obliteration almost impossible, four large arteries are supplied to the brain, and these anastomose together in the circle of Willis. The two vertebral arteries are, moreover, protected in bony canals. Two of the brain arteries can be tied in monkeys, and three or even all four in dogs, without the production of serious symptoms. In the last case enough blood reaches the brain by branches from the superior intercostal arteries to the anterior spinal artery. The sudden obliteration of one carotid artery in man may in some cases produce epileptiform spasms; the sudden occlusion of both occasions loss of consciousness. Uniformity of supply is further ensured by the arrangement of the vessels in the pia mater, in which, previous to their distribution to the substance of the brain, the large arteries break up and divide into innumerable minute branches ending in capillaries, which, after frequent communication with one another, enter the brain and carry into nearly every part of it uniform and equable streams of blood. The arteries are enveloped in a special lymphatic sheath. The arrangement of the veins within the cranium is also peculiar. The large venous trunks or sinuses are formed so as to be scarcely capable of change of size; and composed, as they are, of the tough tissue of the dura mater, and, in some instances, bounded on one side by the bony cranium, they are not compressible by any force which the fulness of the arteries might exercise through the substance of the brain; nor do they admit of distension when the flow of venous blood from the brain is obstructed. No valves are placed between the vertebral veins and the vena cava; the vertebral veins anastomose with the cerebral sinuses. Hence on squeezing the thorax and abdomen, venous blood can be pressed from those parts out of any opening made into the longitudinal sinus. Expiration acts in the same way; it raises the cerebral venous pressure; if the skull wall is defective the brain expands owing to the distension of its capillaries during the expiratory act. The exposed brain also expands with each systole of the heart. Owing to the fact that the brain lies enclosed in the cranium, the arterial pulse is transmitted through the brain substance to the cerebral veins, and so the blood issues from these in pulses.

Since the brain is enclosed in the rigid cranium the volume of blood in the cerebral vessels cannot alter unless the volume of the other cranial contents alters in the opposite sense.

These conditions of the brain and skull led Monro and Kellie many years ago to advance the opinion that the quantity of blood in the brain must be the same at

all times. This doctrine has been frequently disputed, and many have advanced the theory that increase or diminution of the blood is accompanied with simultaneous diminution or increase of the cerebro-spinal fluid, so that the contents of the cranium are kept uniform in volume. But the recent work of Leonard Hill has shown that the Monro-Kellie doctrine is in the main true. Histological evidence has recently been obtained of the existence of nerve plexuses round the pial arteries. The arteries are muscular, and the nerves therefore are most probably vaso-motor in function. Experimental evidence so far, however, has not established that the action of these nerves is a marked one*; the cerebral circulation passively follows the slightest changes in aortic and, more especially, vena cava pressure, and no active vaso-motor change has been conclusively proved. The velocity of blood-flow through the brain is thus influenced markedly by the condition of the vessels of the splanchnic area. If the tone of the skeletal muscles and that of the vessels be suddenly inhibited by fear, or temporarily destroyed by shock, the blood will drop owing to its weight into the dilated and supported vessels in the most dependent parts of the body. The flow of blood through the brain will, under these conditions, cease, that is to say, so long as the body is in the erect posture. Thus, to restore a fainting person the head must be lowered between the knees. Muscular exercise, by returning blood to the heart from the veins of the lower parts of the body, conduces to the maintenance of an efficient cerebral circulation.

It is not the volume of the blood but the velocity of flow which is altered in the brain by changes in the general circulation. The brain with its circulating blood almost entirely fills the cranial cavity in the living animal; that is, there is no more cerebro-spinal fluid there than is sufficient to moisten the membranes. Cerebro-spinal fluid escapes into the veins at any pressure above the cerebral venous pressure; the tension of this fluid and the pressure in the veins are therefore always the same. The fluid probably transudes from the vascular fringes of the choroid plexuses in the ventricles of the brain, and is absorbed by the pial veins. There is not enough of this absorbable fluid present to allow of more than a slight increase of the volume of blood in the brain. If the aortic pressure rises and the vena cava pressure remains constant the conditions in the brain are as follows :—

More blood in the arteries, less in the veins, increased velocity of flow.

While if the aortic pressure remains constant and the vena cava pressure rises, the conditions are :—

Less blood in the arteries, more in the veins, diminished velocity of flow.

The brain presses against the cranial wall with a pressure equal to that in the cerebral capillaries. A foreign body introduced within the cranium, such as a blood-clot or depressed bone, produces local anæmia of the brain, by occupying the room of the blood. So soon as the capillaries are thus obliterated the pressure is raised to arterial pressure. This local increase of cerebral tension cannot be transmitted by the cerebro-spinal fluid, because this fluid can never be retained in the meningeal spaces at a tension higher than that of the cerebral veins, but is immediately re-absorbed. The anatomical arrangements of the tentorium cerebelli and the falciform ligaments are such as to largely prevent the transmission through the brain-substance of a local increase of pressure. There is complete pressure discontinuity between the cranial and vertebral cavities. The serious results that follow cerebral compression are primarily due to obliteration of the blood-vessels, and consequent anæmia of the brain. A very small foreign body will, if situated in the region of the bulb, produce the gravest symptoms. For the centres which control the vascular and respiratory systems are rendered anæmic thereby. The cerebral hemispheres may, on the other hand, be compressed to a large extent without causing a fatal result. The major symptoms of compression arise as soon as any local increase of pressure is transmitted to the bulb and causes anæmia there.

In Erectile Structures.—The instances of greatest variation in the quantity of blood contained, at different times, in the same organs, are found in certain

* The only experimental evidence yet adduced as to the functional activity of these nerves is contained in the work of Ferrier and Brodie. They perfused defibrinated blood through a recently excised brain, and found that the addition of adrenalin to the blood always produced constriction of the vessels and a lessened blood flow.

structures which, under ordinary circumstances, are soft and flaccid, but, at certain times, receive an unusually large quantity of blood, become distended and swollen by it, and pass into the state which has been termed *erection*. Such structures are the *corpora cavernosa* and *corpus spongiosum* of the penis in the male, and the *clitoris* in the female; and, to a less degree, the *nipple* of the mammary gland in both sexes. The corpus cavernosum penis, which is the best example of an erectile structure, has an external fibrous membrane or sheath; and from the inner surface of the latter are prolonged numerous fine lamellæ which divide its cavity into small compartments. Within these is situated the plexus of veins upon which the peculiar erectile property of the organ mainly depends. It consists of short veins which very closely interlace and anastomose with each other in all directions, and admit of great variations of size, collapsing in the passive state of the organ, but capable of an amount of dilatation which exceeds beyond comparison that of the arteries and veins which convey the blood to and from them. The strong fibrous tissue lying in the intervals of the venous plexuses, and the external fibrous membrane or sheath with which it is connected, limit the distension of the vessels, and during the state of erection, give to the penis its condition of tension and firmness. The same general condition of vessels exists in the corpus spongiosum urethræ, but around the urethra the fibrous tissue is much weaker than around the body of the penis, and around the glans there is none. The venous blood is returned from the plexuses by comparatively small veins. For all these veins one condition is the same; namely, that they are liable to the pressure of muscles when they leave the penis. The muscles chiefly concerned in this action are the erector penis and accelerator urinæ. Erection results from the distension of the venous plexuses with blood. The principal exciting cause in the erection of the penis is nervous irritation, originating in the part itself, and derived reflexly from the brain and spinal cord. The nervous influence is communicated to the penis by the pudic nerves, which ramify in its vascular tissue; and after their division the penis is no longer capable of erection.

Erection is not complete, nor maintained for any time except when, together with the influx of blood, the muscles mentioned contract, and by compressing the veins, stop the efflux of blood, or prevent it from being as great as the influx.

The circulation in the Lungs, Liver, Spleen and Kidneys will be described in our study of those organs.

CHAPTER XXII

LYMPH AND LYMPHATIC GLANDS

As the blood circulates through the capillary blood-vessels, some of its liquid constituents exude through the thin walls of these vessels, carrying nutriment to the tissue elements. This exudation is called *lymph;* it receives from the tissues the products of their activity, and is collected by the lymph channels, which converge to the thoracic duct—the main lymphatic vessel—and thus the lymph once more re-enters the blood-stream near to the entrance of the large systemic veins into the right auricle.

Lymph is a fluid, which comes into much more intimate relationship with metabolic processes in the tissues than the blood; in fact, there is only one situation—the spleen—where the blood comes into actual contact with the elements—that is, cells, fibres, etc.—of a tissue.

Composition of Lymph.

Lymph is alkaline; its specific gravity is about 1015, and after it leaves the vessels it clots, forming a colourless coagulum of fibrin. It is like blood-plasma in composition, only diluted so far as its protein constituents are concerned. This is due to the fact that proteins do not pass readily through membranes. The proteins present are called *fibrinogen, serum globulin,* and *serum albumin;* these we shall study with the blood-plasma. The salts are similar to those of blood-plasma, and are present in the same proportions. The waste products, like carbonic acid and urea, are more abundant in lymph than in blood. The amount of solids dissolved in lymph is about 6 per cent., more than half of which is protein in nature.

When examined with the microscope the transparent lymph is found to contain colourless corpuscles, which are called *lymphocytes;* these are cells with large nuclei and comparatively little protoplasm. They pass with the lymph into the blood, where they undergo growth, and become converted into certain varieties of *leucocytes.*

All the lymphatics pass at some point of their course through lymphatic glands, which are the factories of these corpuscles. Lymphocytes also pass into the lymph stream wherever lymphoid tissue is found, as in the tonsils, thymus, Malpighian bodies of the spleen, Peyer's patches, and the solitary glands of the intestine. The lymph that leaves these tissues is richer in lymph-cells than that which enters them.

When lymph is collected from the thoracic duct after a meal containing fat, it is found to be milky. This is due to the presence in the lymph of minutely subdivided fat particles absorbed from the interior of the alimentary canal. The lymph is then called *chyle*. The fat particles constitute what used to be called the *molecular basis* of chyle. If the abdomen is opened during the process of fat absorption, the lymphatics are seen as white lines, due to their containing this milky fluid. They are consequently called *lacteals*.

The structure and arrangement of the lymphatic vessels are given in Chapter XVIII., and we have now to study the structure of

The Lymphatic Glands.

Lymphatic glands are round or oval bodies varying in size from a hemp-seed to a bean, interposed in the course of the lymphatic vessels, and through which the lymph passes in its course to be discharged into the blood-vessels. They are found in great numbers in the mesentery, and along the great vessels of the abdomen, thorax, and neck; in the axilla and groin; a few in the popliteal space, but not further down the leg, and in the arm as far as the elbow.

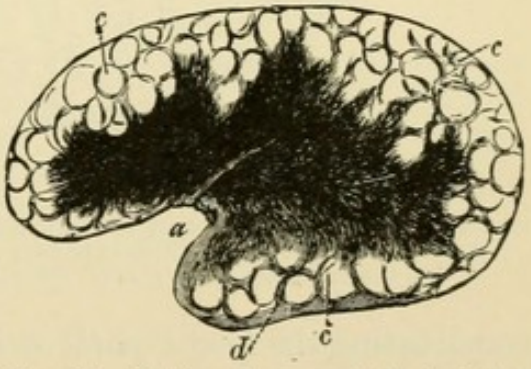


Fig. 304.—Section of a mesenteric gland from the ox, slightly magnified. *a*, Hilus; *b* (in the central part of the figure), medullary substance; *c*, cortical substance with indistinct alveoli; *d*, capsule. (Kölliker.)

A lymphatic gland is covered externally by a capsule of connective-tissue, generally containing some unstriped muscle. At the inner side of the gland, which is somewhat concave (*hilus*), (fig. 304), the capsule sends inwards processes called *trabeculæ* in which the blood-vessels are contained, and these join with other processes prolonged from the inner surface of the part of the capsule covering the convex or outer part of the gland; they have a structure similar to that of the capsule, and entering the gland from all sides, and freely communicating, form a fibrous scaffolding. The interior of the gland is seen on section, even when examined with the naked eye, to be made up of two parts, an outer or *cortical*, which is light coloured,

and an inner or *medullary* portion of redder appearance (figs. 304, 305). In the outer part, or cortex, of the gland (fig. 305), the intervals between the trabeculæ are large and regular; they are termed *alveoli;* whilst in the more central or medullary part is a finer meshwork formed by an irregular anastomosis of the trabecular processes. Within the alveoli of the cortex and in the meshwork formed by the trabeculæ in the medulla, is contained lymphoid tissue; this occupies the central part of each alveolus; but at the periphery, surrounding the central portion and immediately next the capsule and trabeculæ, is a more open meshwork of retiform tissue

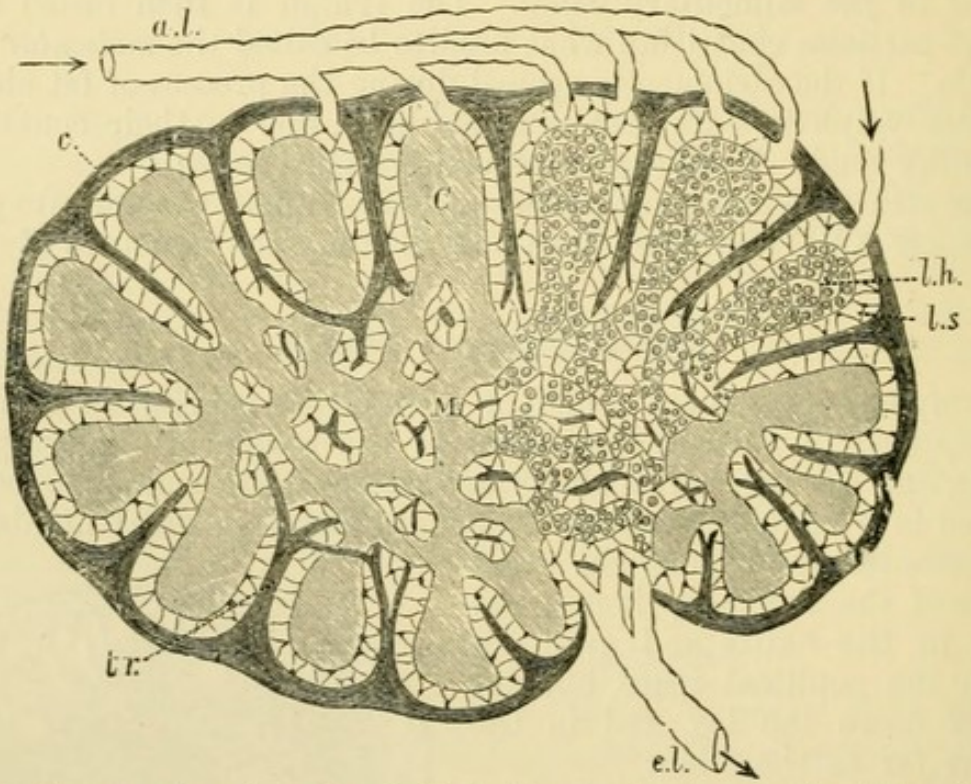


FIG. 305.—Diagrammatic section of lymphatic gland. *a.l.*, afferent; *e.l.*, efferent lymphatics; *C*, cortical substance; *l.h.*, lymphoid tissue; *l.s.*, lymph-path; *c.*, fibrous capsule sending in trabeculæ *tr.* into the substance of the gland. (Sharpey.)

constituting the *lymph-path*, and containing but few lymph-corpuscles. At the inner part of the alveolus, the central mass divides into two or more smaller rounded or cord-like masses which, joining with those from the other alveoli, form a much closer arrangement than in the cortex; spaces (fig. 306, *b*) are left within those anastomosing cords, in which are found portions of the trabecular meshwork and the continuation of the lymph-path.

The lymph enters the gland by several afferent vessels, which pierce the capsule and open into the lymph-path; at the same time they lay aside all their coats except the endothelial lining, which is continuous with the lining of the lymph-path. The *efferent* vessels begin in the medullary part of the gland, and are continuous with

the lymph-path here as the afferent vessels are with the cortical portion.

The efferent vessels leave the gland at the *hilus*, and either at once, or very soon after, join together to form a single vessel.

Blood-vessels which enter and leave the gland at the hilus are freely distributed to the trabecular and lymphoid tissues.

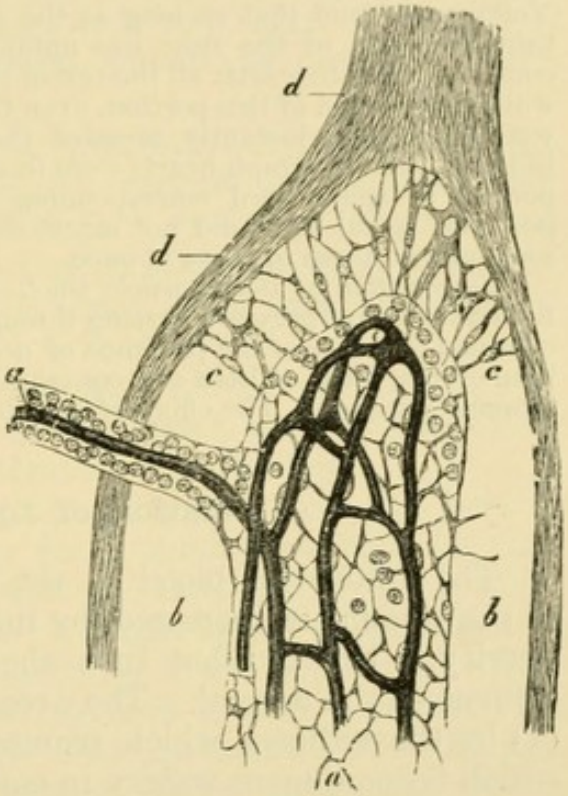


FIG. 306.—A small portion of medullary substance from a mesenteric gland of the ox. *d*, *d*, trabeculæ; *a*, part of a cord of lymphoid tissue from which all but a few of the lymph-corpuscles have been washed out to show its supporting meshwork of retiform tissue and its capillary blood-vessels (which have been injected, and are dark in the figure); *b*, *b*, lymph-path, of which the retiform tissue is represented only at *c*, *c*. × 300. (Kölliker.)

The Lymph Flow.

The flow of the lymph towards the point of its discharge into the veins is brought about by several agencies. With the help of the valvular mechanism all occasional pressure on the exterior of the lymphatic and lacteal vessels propels the lymph onward; thus muscular and other external pressure accelerates the flow of the lymph as it does that of the blood in the veins. The action of the muscular fibres of the small intestine, and the layer of unstriped muscle present in each intestinal villus, assist in propelling the chyle; in the small intestine of a mouse, the chyle has been seen moving with intermittent propulsions that correspond with the peristaltic movements of the intestine. But, for the general propulsion of the lymph and chyle, it is probable that, together with the *vis a tergo* resulting from external pressure, some of the force is derived from the contractility of the vessel's own walls. The respiratory movements, also, favour the current of lymph through the thoracic duct as they do the current of blood in the thoracic veins.

Lymph-Hearts.—In amphibia, reptiles and some birds, an important auxiliary to the movement of the lymph and chyle is supplied in certain muscular sacs, named *lymph-hearts*, and it has been shown that the caudal heart of the eel is a lymph-heart also. The number and positions of these organs vary. In frogs and toads, there are usually four, two anterior and two posterior. Into each of these cavities several lymphatics open, the orifices of the vessels being guarded by valves, which prevent the retrograde passage of the lymph. From each heart a single vessel proceeds, and conveys the lymph directly into the venous system. Blood is prevented from passing into the lymphatic heart by a valve at its orifice.

The muscular coat of these hearts is of variable thickness; in some cases it can only be discovered by means of the microscope; but in every case it is composed of striped fibres. The contractions of the hearts are rhythmical, occurring about sixty times in a minute. The pulsations of the cervical pair are not always synchronous with those of the pair in the ischiatic region, and even the corresponding sacs of opposite sides are not always synchronous in their action.

Unlike the contractions of the blood-heart, those of the lymph-heart appear to be directly dependent upon a certain limited portion of the spinal cord. For Volkmann found that so long as the portion of spinal cord corresponding to the third vertebra of the frog was uninjured, the cervical pair of lymphatic hearts continued pulsating after all the rest of the spinal cord and the brain were destroyed; while destruction of this portion, even though all other parts of the nervous centres were uninjured, instantly arrested the hearts' movements. The posterior, or ischiatic, pair of lymph-hearts were found to be governed, in like manner, by the portion of spinal cord corresponding to the eighth vertebra. Division of the posterior spinal roots did not arrest the movements; but division of the anterior roots caused them to cease at once.

Innervation of the Thoracic Duct.—By determining the rate of outflow of a fluid at constant pressure passing through the thoracic duct, Camus and Gley have obtained evidence of the presence of nerves, causing both dilatation and constriction of the duct. These are contained in the sympathetic chain below the first thoracic ganglion. The effect of stimulation is principally dilatation.

Relation of Lymph and Blood.

The volume of blood in the body remains remarkably constant. If the amount is increased by injection of fluids, at first its specific gravity is lessened, but in a short time, often in a few minutes, it returns to the normal. The excess of fluid is got rid of in two ways: (1) by the kidneys, which secrete profusely; and (2) by the tissues, which become more watery in consequence. After the renal arteries are ligatured, and the kidney is consequently thrown out of action, the excess of water passes only into the tissues.

On the other hand, a deficiency of blood (for instance, after hæmorrhage) is soon remedied by a transfer of water from the tissues to the blood through the intermediation of the lymph.

In severe hæmorrhage life has often been saved by injection of saline solution into the vessels, or by transfusion from another person. The transfer of the blood of another animal to the human vascular system is usually dangerous, especially if the blood has been defibrinated, for the serum of one animal is usually poisonous to another, producing various changes, of which a breakdown of the corpuscles (hæmolysis) is the most constant sign.

Formation of Lymph.

Carl Ludwig taught that the lymph flow is conditioned by two factors: first, differences in the pressure of the blood in the capillaries and of the fluid in the tissue spaces, giving rise to a *filtration* of fluid through the capillary walls; and secondly, chemical differences

between these two fluids, setting up *osmotic* interchanges through the wall of the blood-vessel.

The accurate meaning of these terms is explained in the section in small print at the end of this chapter.

If the lymph is produced by a simple act of filtration, then the amount of lymph must rise and sink with the value of D—d; D representing the capillary blood-pressure, and d the pressure in the tissue spaces.

In support of this mechanical theory, various workers in Ludwig's laboratory showed that increased capillary pressure due to obstruction of the venous outflow increases the amount of lymph formed; and that diminution of the pressure in the lymph spaces, by squeezing out the lymph previously contained in them, leads to an increase in the transudation.

On the other hand, there were some facts which could not be well explained by the filtration theory, among which may be mentioned the action of curare in causing an increase of lymph flow.

Heidenhain was the first to fully recognise that the laws of filtration and osmosis as applied to dead membranes may be considerably modified when the membranes are composed of living cells; and he considered that the formation of lymph is due to the selective or secretory activity of the endothelial walls of the capillaries. This so-called vital action of the endothelial cells is seen in the fact that after the injection of sugar into the blood, in a short time the percentage of sugar in the lymph becomes higher than that in the blood. There must, therefore, be some activity of the endothelial cells in picking out the sugar from the blood and passing it on to the lymph.

Heidenhain is also the inventor of the term *lymphagogues* (literally, lymph drivers). These are substances like curare, which have a specific action in causing an increased lymph flow. Heidenhain considers the majority of these act by stimulating the endothelial cells to activity. This conclusion, however, has been subjected to much criticism. In this country the question has been taken up by Starling, who has shown that the influence of vital action is not so marked as Heidenhain supposes it to be, but that most of the phenomena in connection with lymph formation can be explained by the simpler mechanical theory. Starling's views may be briefly stated as follows:—

The amount of lymph produced in any part depends on two factors:—

1. The pressure at which the blood is flowing through the capillaries. Heidenhain took the arterial pressure in his experiments as the measure of the capillary pressure; Starling points out, very

justly, that this is incorrect, as there is between the arteries and the capillaries the peripheral resistance in the arterioles.

2. The permeability of the capillary wall. This varies enormously in different regions; it is greatest in the liver, so that an intracapillary pressure which would cause lymph to flow here is without effect on the production of lymph in the limbs.

The flow of lymph may therefore be increased in two ways:—

1. By increasing the intracapillary pressure. This may be done locally by ligaturing the veins of an organ; or generally by injecting a large amount of fluid into the circulation, or by the injection of such substances as sugar and salt (Heidenhain's first class of lymphagogues) into the blood. These attract water from the tissues into the blood, and thus increase the volume of the circulating fluid and raise the intracapillary pressure.

2. By increasing the permeability of the capillary wall by injuring its vitality. This may be done locally by scalding a part; or generally, by injecting certain poisonous substances, such as peptone, leech extract, decoction of mussels, etc. (Heidenhain's second class of lymphagogues). These act chiefly on the liver capillaries; curare acts chiefly on the limb capillaries.

In the light of our present knowledge on this question, it is impossible to pronounce any absolutely positive opinion. But facts appear to me to be accumulating which tell in favour of the secretion theory. If the endothelial wall were a non-living membrane, physical processes would obviously explain all the phenomena of lymph formation. But we must recognise that the endothelial cells are alive, and that like other cells they are capable of a selective action which may mask or counteract or assist the purely physical processes. If the action of poisons was simply to injure the vessel wall and increase its permeability, the amount of lymph should be proportional to the intensity of the injury; but this is not found to be the case. Heidenhain no doubt went too far when he attributed lymph formation almost exclusively to endothelial activity; and Starling has gone too far in the other direction. My own opinion is that lymph formation is mainly influenced by the physical conditions present, for the action of such thin cells as those of the capillary wall cannot be sufficiently great to entirely counteract these conditions; at the same time it is impossible to deny that there is some such action as may be described by the terms "selective" or "secretory." The question is closely related to that of absorption from the alimentary canal, and we shall find in studying that subject that there is a similar difference of opinion, and that recently published researches confirm the theory of selective activity of the absorptive epithelium.

Osmotic Phenomena.

The investigations of physical chemists during recent years have given us new conceptions of the nature of solutions, and these have important bearings on the explanation of osmotic phenomena, and so are interesting to the physiologist.

Water is the fluid in which soluble materials are usually dissolved, and at ordinary temperatures it is a fluid the molecules of which are in constant movement; the hotter the water the more active are the movements of its molecules, until when at last it is converted into steam, the molecular movements become much more energetic. Perfectly pure water consists of molecules with the formula H_2O, and these molecules undergo practically no dissociation into their constituent ions, and it is for this reason that pure water is not a conductor of electricity.

If a substance like sugar is dissolved in the water, the solution still remains incapable of conducting an electrical current. The sugar molecules in solution are still sugar molecules; they do not undergo dissociation.

But if a substance like salt is dissolved in the water, the solution is then capable of conducting electrical currents, and the same is true for most acids, bases, and salts. These substances do undergo dissociation, and the simpler materials into which they are broken up in the water are called *ions*. Thus, if sodium chloride is dissolved in water a certain number of its molecules become dissociated into sodium ions, which are charged with positive electricity, and chlorine ions, which are charged with negative electricity. Similarly a solution of hydrochloric acid in water contains free hydrogen ions and free chlorine ions. Sulphuric acid is decomposed into hydrogen ions and ions of SO_4. The term ion is thus not equivalent to atom, for an ion may be a group of atoms, like SO_4, in the example just given.

Further, in the case of hydrochloric acid, the negative charge of the chlorine ion is equal to the positive charge of the hydrogen ion; but in the case of the sulphuric acid, the negative charge of the SO_4 ion is equal to the positive charge of two hydrogen ions. We can thus speak of monovalent, divalent, trivalent, etc., ions.

Ions positively charged are called *kat-ions* because they move towards the kathode or negative pole; those which are negatively charged are called *an-ions* because they move towards the anode or positive pole. The following are some examples of each class:—

Kat-ions.	Monovalent:—H, Na, K, NH_4, etc.
	Divalent:—Ca, Ba, Fe (in ferrous salts), etc.
	Trivalent:—Al, Bi, Sb, Fe (in ferric salts), etc.
An-ions.	Monovalent:—Cl, Br, I, OH, NO_3, etc.
	Divalent:—S, Se, SO_4, etc.

Roughly speaking, the greater the dilution the more nearly complete is the dissociation, and in a very dilute solution of such a substance as sodium chloride we may consider that the number of ions is double the number of molecules of the salt present.

The ions liberated by the act of dissociation are, as we have seen, charged with electricity, and when an electrical current is led into such a solution, it is conducted through the solution by the movement of the ions. Substances which exhibit the property of dissociation are known as electrolytes.

The liquids of the body contain electrolytes in solution, and it is owing to this fact that they are able to conduct electrical currents.

This conception of electrolytes which we owe to Arrhenius is extremely important in view of the question of osmotic pressure, because the act of dissociation increases the number of particles moving in the solution, and so increases the osmotic pressure, for in this relation an ion plays the same part as a molecule.

Another physiological aspect of the subject is seen in a study of the actions of mineral salts in solution on living organisms and parts of organisms. Many years ago Ringer showed that contractile tissues (heart, cilia, etc.) continue to manifest their activity in certain saline solutions. We have already seen (p. 256) that Howell considers the cause of rhythmical action in the heart is the presence of these inorganic substances in the blood or lymph which bathes it.

Loeb and his fellow-workers have confirmed these statements, but interpret them now as ionic action. Contractile tissues will not contract in pure solutions of non-electrolytes (such as sugar, urea, albumin). But different contractile tissues differ in the nature of the ions which are most favourable stimuli. Thus cardiac muscle, cilia, amœboid movement, karyokinesis, cell division, are all alike in requiring a proper adjustment of ions in their surroundings if they are to continue to act, but the proportions must be different in individual cases. Ions affecting the rhythmical contractions may be divided into three classes: (1) Those which produce such contractions; of these the most efficacious is Na. (2) Those which retard or inhibit rhythmical contractions; for instance, Ca and K. (3) Those which act catalytically, that is, they accelerate the action of Na, though they do not themselves produce rhythmical contractions directly: for instance, H and OH. In spite of the antagonistic effect of Ca, a certain minimal amount of it must be present if contractions are to continue for any length of time. Ions produce rhythmical contraction only because they affect either the physical condition of the colloidal substances (protein, etc.) in protoplasm, or the rapidity of chemical processes.

Loeb has even gone so far as to consider that the process of fertilisation is mainly ionic action. He denies that the nuclein in the head of the spermatozoon is essential, but asserts that all the spermatozoon does is to act as the stimulus in the due adjustment of the proportions of the surrounding ions. He supports this view by numerous experiments on ova, in which, without the presence of spermatozoa, he has produced larvæ (generally imperfect ones, it is true) by merely altering the saline constituents of the fluid that bathes them. Whether such a sweeping and almost revolutionary notion will stand the test of further verification must be left to the future. So also must the equally important idea that the basis of a nerve-impulse is electrolytic action.

Gramme-molecular Solutions.—From the point of view of osmotic pressure a convenient unit is the gramme-molecule. A gramme-molecule of any substance is the quantity in grammes of that substance equal to its molecular weight. A gramme-molecular solution is one which contains a gramme-molecule of the substance per litre. Thus a gramme-molecular solution of sodium chloride is one which contains 58·5 grammes of sodium chloride (Na = 23·05 : Cl = 35·45) in a litre. A gramme-molecular solution of grape sugar ($C_6H_{12}O_6$) is one which contains 179·58 grammes of grape sugar in a litre. A gramme-molecule of hydrogen (H_2) is 2 grammes by weight of hydrogen, and if this was compressed to the volume of a litre, it would be comparable to a gramme-molecular solution. It therefore follows that a litre containing 2 grammes of hydrogen contains the same number of molecules of hydrogen in it as a litre of a solution containing 58·5 grammes of sodium chloride, or one containing 179·58 grammes of grape sugar, has in it of salt or sugar molecules respectively. To put it another way, the heavier the weight of a molecule of any substance, the more of that substance must be dissolved in the litre to obtain its gramme-molecular solution. Or still another way: if solutions of various substances are made all of the same strength per cent., the solutions of the materials of small molecular weight will contain more molecules of those materials than the solutions of the materials which have heavy molecules. We shall see that the calculation of osmotic pressure depends upon these facts.

Diffusion, Dialysis, Osmosis.—If two gases are brought together within a closed space, a homogeneous mixture of the two is soon obtained. This is due to the movements of the gaseous molecules within the confining space, and the process is called *diffusion*. In a similar way diffusion will effect in time a homogeneous mixture of two liquids or solutions. If water is carefully poured on to the surface of a solution of salt, the salt or its ions will soon be equally distributed throughout the whole. If a solution of albumin or any other *colloidal* substance is used instead of salt in the experiment, diffusion will be found to occur much more slowly. If, instead of pouring the water on to the surface of a solution of salt or sugar, the two are separated by a membrane made of such a material as parchment paper, a similar diffusion will occur, though more slowly than in cases where the membrane is absent. In time, the water on each side of the membrane will contain the same quantity of sugar or salt. Substances which pass through such membranes are called *crystalloids*. Substances which have such large molecules (starch, pro-

tein, etc.) that they will not pass through such membranes are called *colloids*. Diffusion of substances in solution which have to deal with an intervening membrane is usually called *dialysis*. The process of *filtration* (*i.e.*, the passage of materials through the pores of a membrane under the influence of mechanical pressure) may be excluded in such experiments by placing the membrane (M) vertically as shown in the diagram (fig. 307), and the two fluids A and B on each side of it. Diffusion through a membrane is not limited to the molecules of water, but it may occur also in the molecules of certain substances dissolved in the water. But very few or no membranes are equally permeable to water and to molecules of the substances dissolved in the water. If in the accompanying diagram the compartment A is filled with pure water, and B with a sodium chloride solution, the liquids in the two compartments will ultimately be found to be equal in bulk as they were at the start, and each will be a solution of salt of half the original strength of that in the compartment B. But at first the volume of the liquid in compartment B increases, because more water molecules pass into it from A than salt molecules pass from B to A. The term *osmosis* is generally limited to the stream of water molecules passing through a membrane, while the term *dialysis* is applied to the passage of the molecules in solution in the water. The osmotic stream of water is especially important, and in connection with this it is necessary to explain the term *osmotic pressure*. At first, then, osmosis (the diffusion of water) is more rapid than the dialysis (the diffusion of the salt molecules or ions). The older explanation of this was that salt attracted the water, but we now express the fact differently by saying that the salt in solution exerts a certain osmotic pressure: the result of the osmotic pressure is that more water flows from the water side to the side of the solution than in the contrary direction. The osmotic pressure varies with the amount of substance in solution, and is also altered by variations of temperature occurring more rapidly at high than at low temperatures.

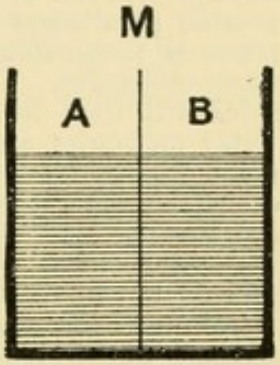


FIG. 307.

If we imagine two masses of water separated by a permeable membrane, as many water molecules will pass through from one side as from the other, and so the volumes of the two masses of water will remain unchanged. If now we imagine the membrane M is not permeable except to water, and the compartment A contains water, and the compartment B contains a solution of salt or sugar; under these circumstances water will pass through into B, and the volume of B will increase in proportion to the osmotic pressure of the sugar or salt in solution in B, but no molecules of sugar or salt can get through into A from B, so the volume of fluid in A will continue to decrease, until at last a limit is reached. The determination of this limit, as measured by the height of a column of fluid or mercury which it will support, will give us a measurement of the osmotic pressure.

If a bladder containing strong salt solution is placed in a vessel of distilled water, water passes into the bladder by osmosis, so that the bladder is swollen, and a manometer connected with its interior will show a rise of pressure (osmotic pressure). But the total rise of pressure cannot be measured in this way for two reasons: (1) because the salt diffuses out as the water diffuses in; and (2) because the membrane of the bladder leaks; that is, permits of filtration when the pressure within it has attained a certain height.

It is therefore necessary to use a membrane which will not allow salt to pass out either by dialysis or filtration, though it will let the water pass in. Such membranes are called *semipermeable* membranes, and one of the best of these is ferrocyanide of copper. This may be made by taking a cell of porous earthenware and washing it out first with copper sulphate and then with potassium ferrocyanide. An insoluble precipitate of copper ferrocyanide is thus deposited in the pores of the earthenware.

If such a cell is arranged as in fig. 308, and filled with a 1 per cent. solution of sodium chloride, water diffuses in, till the pressure registered by the manometer reaches the enormous height of 5000 mm. of mercury. If the pressure in the cell

is increased beyond this artificially, water will be pressed through the semi-permeable walls of the cell and the solution will become more concentrated.

In other words, in order to make a solution of sodium chloride of greater concentration than 1 per cent., a pressure greater than 5000 mm. of mercury must be employed. The osmotic pressure exerted by a 2 per cent. solution would be twice as great.

Though it is theoretically possible to measure osmotic pressure by a manometer in this direct way, practically it is hardly ever done, and some of the indirect methods of measurement described later are used instead. The reason for this is that it has been found difficult to construct a membrane which is absolutely semi-permeable; they are nearly all permeable in some degree to the molecules of the dissolved crystalloid. In course of time, therefore, the dissolved crystalloid will be equally distributed on both sides of the membrane, and osmosis of water will cease to be apparent, since it will be equal in both directions.

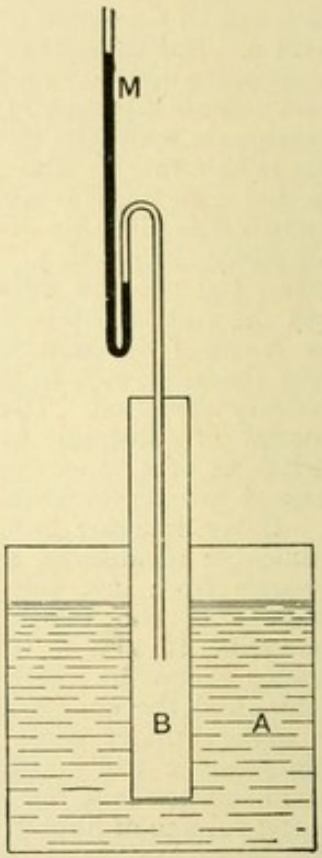


FIG. 308.—A, outer vessel, containing distilled water; B, inner semi-permeable vessel, containing 1 per cent. salt solution; M, mercurial manometer. (After Starling.)

Many explanations of the nature of osmotic pressure have been brought forward, but none is perfectly satisfactory. The following simple explanation is perhaps the best, and may be rendered most intelligible by an illustration. Suppose we have a solution of sugar separated by a semi-permeable membrane from water; that is, the membrane is permeable to water molecules, but not to sugar molecules. The streams of water from the two sides will then be unequal; on one side we have water molecules striking against the membrane in what we may call normal numbers, while on the other side both water molecules and sugar molecules are striking against it. On this side, therefore, the sugar molecules take up a certain amount of room, and do not allow the water molecules to get to the membrane; the membrane is, as it were, screened against the water by the sugar, therefore fewer water molecules will get through from the screened to the unscreened side than *vice versâ*. This comes to the same thing as saying that the osmotic stream of water is greater from the unscreened water side to the screened sugar side than it is in the reverse direction. The more sugar molecules that are present, the greater will be their screening action, and thus we see that the osmotic pressure is proportional to the number of sugar molecules in the solution, that is, to the concentration of the solution.

Osmotic pressure is, in fact, equal to that which the dissolved substance would exert if it occupied the same space in the form of a gas (Van't Hoff's hypothesis). The nature of the substance makes no difference; it is only the number of molecules which causes osmotic pressure to vary. The osmotic pressure, however, of substances like sodium chloride, which are electrolytes, is greater than what one would expect from the number of molecules present. This is because the molecules in solution are split into their constituent ions, and an ion plays the same part as a molecule, in questions of osmotic pressure. In dilute solutions of sodium chloride ionisation is more complete, and as the total number of ions is then nearly double the number of original molecules, the osmotic pressure is nearly double what would have been calculated from the number of molecules.

The analogy between osmotic pressure and the pressure of gases is very complete, as may be seen from the following statements:—

1. At a constant temperature osmotic pressure is proportional to the concentration of the solution (Boyle-Mariotte's law for gases).

2. With constant concentration, the osmotic pressure rises with and is proportional to the temperature (Gay-Lussac's law for gases).

3. The osmotic pressure of a solution of different substances is equal to the sum of the pressures which the individual substances would exert if they were alone in the solution (Henry-Dalton law for partial pressure of gases).

4. The osmotic pressure is independent of the nature of the substance in solution, and depends only on the number of molecules or ions in solution (Avogadro's law for gases).

Calculation of Osmotic Pressure.—We may best illustrate this by an example, and to simplify matters we will take an example in the case of a non-electrolyte such as sugar. We shall then not have to take into account any electrolytic dissociation of the molecules into ions. We will suppose we want to calculate the osmotic pressure of a 1 per cent. solution of cane sugar.

One gramme of hydrogen at atmospheric pressure and 0° C. occupies a volume of 11·2 litres; two grammes of hydrogen will therefore occupy a volume of 22·4 litres. A gramme-molecule of hydrogen—that is, 2 grammes of hydrogen—when brought to the volume of 1 litre, will exert a gas pressure equal to that of 22·4 litres compressed to 1 litre—that is, a pressure of 22·4 atmospheres. A gramme-molecular solution of cane sugar, since it contains the same number of molecules in a litre, must therefore exert an osmotic pressure of 22·4 atmospheres also. A gramme-molecular solution of cane sugar ($C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$) contains 342 grammes of cane sugar in a litre of water. A 1 per cent. solution of cane sugar contains only 10 grammes of cane sugar in a litre; hence the osmotic pressure of a 1 per cent. solution of cane sugar is $\frac{10}{342} \times 22{\cdot}4$ atmospheres, or 0·65 of an atmosphere, which in terms of a column of mercury $= 760 \times 0{\cdot}65 = 494$ mm.

It would not be possible to make such a calculation in the case of an electrolyte, because we should not know how many molecules had been ionised. In the liquids of the body, both electrolytes and non-electrolytes are present, and so a calculation is here also impossible.

We have seen that for such liquids the osmotic pressure is seldom directly measured by a manometer, because of the difficulty in obtaining perfect semi-permeable membranes; we now see that mere arithmetic often fails us; and so we come to the question to which we have been so long leading up, viz., how osmotic pressure is actually determined.

Determination of Osmotic Pressure by means of the Freezing-point.—This is the method which is almost universally employed. A very simple apparatus (Beckmann's differential thermometer) is all that is necessary. The principle on which the method depends is the following:—The freezing-point of any substance in solution in water is lower than that of water; the lowering of the freezing-point is proportional to the molecular concentration of the dissolved substance, and that, as we have seen, is proportional to the osmotic pressure.

When a gramme-molecule of any substance is dissolved in a litre of water, the freezing-point is lowered by 1·87° C., and the osmotic pressure is, as we have seen, equal to 22·4 atmospheres, that is, $22{\cdot}4 \times 760 = 17{,}024$ mm. of mercury.

We can, therefore, calculate the osmotic pressure of any solution if we know the lowering of its freezing-point in degrees Centigrade; the lowering of the freezing-point is usually expressed by the Greek letter Δ.

$$\text{Osmotic pressure} = \frac{\Delta}{1{\cdot}87} \times 17{,}024.$$

For example, a 1 per cent. solution of sugar would freeze at −0·052° C.; its osmotic pressure is therefore $\frac{{\cdot}052 \times 17{,}024}{1{\cdot}87} = 473$ mm., a number approximately equal to that we obtained by calculation.

Mammalian blood serum gives $\Delta = 0{\cdot}56°$ C. A 0·9 per cent. solution of sodium chloride has the same Δ; hence serum and a 0·9 per cent. solution of common salt have the same osmotic pressure, or are *isotonic*. The osmotic pressure of blood serum is $\frac{{\cdot}56 \times 17{,}024}{1{\cdot}87} = 5000$ mm. of mercury approximately, or a pressure of nearly 7 atmospheres.

The osmotic pressure of solutions may also be compared by observing their effect on red blood corpuscles, or on vegetable cells such as those in Tradescantia. If the solution is *hypertonic*, *i.e.*, has a greater osmotic pressure than the cell contents, the protoplasm shrinks, and loses water, or if red corpuscles are used, they become crenated; if the solution is *hypotonic*, *i.e.*, has a less osmotic pressure than the material within the cell-wall, no shrinking of the protoplasm in the vegetable cell takes place; and if red corpuscles are used they swell and liberate their pigment. *Isotonic* solutions, such as physiological salt solution, produce neither of these effects, because they have the same molecular concentration and osmotic pressure as the material within the cell-wall.

Physiological Applications.—It will at once be seen how important all these considerations are from the physiological standpoint. In the body we have aqueous solutions of various substances separated from one another by membranes. Thus we have the endothelial walls of the capillaries separating the blood from the lymph; we have the epithelial walls of the kidney tubules separating the blood and lymph from the urine; we have similar epithelium in all secreting glands; and we have the wall of the alimentary canal separating the digested food from the blood-vessels and lacteals. In such important problems, then, as lymph-formation, the formation of urine and other excretions and secretions, and absorption of food, we have to take into account the laws which regulate the movements both of water and of substances which are held in solution by the water. In the body osmosis is not the only force at work, but we have also to consider filtration, that is, the forcible passage of materials through membranes, due to differences of mechanical pressure. Further complicating these two processes we have to take into account another force, namely, the secretory or selective activity of the living cells of which the membranes in question are composed. This is sometimes called by the name *vital action*, which is an unsatisfactory and unscientific expression. The laws which regulate filtration, inbibition (or adsorption), and osmosis are fairly well known and can be experimentally verified. But we have undoubtedly some other force, or some other manifestation of force, in the case of living membranes. It probably is some physical or chemical property of living matter which has not yet been brought into line with the known chemical and physical forces which operate in the inorganic world. We cannot deny its existence, for it sometimes operates so as to neutralise the known forces of osmosis and filtration.

The more one studies the question of lymph-formation, the more convinced one becomes that mere osmosis and filtration will not explain it entirely. The basis of the action is no doubt physical, but the living cells do not behave like the dead membranes of a dialyser; they have a selective action, picking out some substances and passing them through to the lymph, while they reject others.

The question of gaseous interchanges in the lungs is another of a similar kind. Some maintain that all can be explained by the laws of diffusion of gases; others assert that the action is wholly vital. Probably those are most correct who admit a certain amount of truth in both views; the main facts are explicable on a physical basis, but there are also some puzzling data that show that the pulmonary epithelium is able to exercise some other force as well which interferes to some extent with the known physical process. Take again the case of absorption. The object of digestion is to render the food soluble and diffusible; it can hardly be supposed that this is useless; the readily diffusible substances will pass more easily through into the blood and lymph: but still, as Waymouth Reid has shown, if the living epithelium of the intestine is removed, absorption comes very nearly to a standstill, although from the purely physical standpoint removal of the thick columnar epithelium would increase the facilities for osmosis and filtration.

The osmotic pressure exerted by crystalloids is very considerable, but their ready diffusibility limits their influence on the flow of water in the body. Thus if a strong solution of salt is injected into the blood, the first effect will be the setting up of an osmotic stream from the tissues to the blood. The salt, however, would soon diffuse out into the tissues, and would now exert osmotic pressure in the opposite direction. Moreover, both effects will be but temporary, because excess of salt is soon got rid of by the excreting organs.

Osmotic Pressure of Proteins.—It has been generally assumed that proteins,

the most abundant and important constituents of the blood, exert little or no osmotic pressure. Starling, however, has claimed that they have a small osmotic pressure; if this is so, it is of importance, for proteins, unlike salt, do not diffuse readily, and their effect therefore remains as an almost permanent factor in the blood. Starling gives the osmotic pressure of the proteins of the blood-plasma as equal to 30 mm. of mercury. We should from the theoretical standpoint find it difficult to imagine that a pure protein can exert more than a minimal osmotic pressure. It is made up of such huge molecules that, even when the proteins are present to the extent of 7 or 8 per cent., as they are in blood-plasma, there are comparatively few protein molecules present, and these are in a state of colloidal solution, not true solution. Still, by means of this weak but constant pressure it is possible to explain the fact that an isotonic or even a hypertonic solution of a diffusible crystalloid may be completely absorbed from the peritoneal cavity into the blood.

The functional activity of the tissue elements is accompanied by the breaking down of their protein constituents into such simple materials as urea (and its precursors) sulphates and phosphates. These materials pass into the lymph, and increase its molecular concentration and its osmotic pressure; thus water is attracted (to use the older way of putting it) from the blood to the lymph, and so the volume of the lymph rises and its flow increases. On the other hand, as these substances accumulate in the lymph they will in time attain there a greater concentration than in the blood, and so they will diffuse towards the blood, by which they are carried to the organs of excretion.

But, again, we have a difficulty with the proteins; they are most important for the nutrition of the tissues, but they are practically indiffusible. We must provisionally assume that their presence in the lymph is due to filtration from the blood. The plasma in the capillaries is under a somewhat higher pressure than the lymph in the tissues, and this tends to squeeze the constituents of the blood, including the proteins, through the capillary walls. I have, however, already indicated that the question of lymph-formation is one of the many physiological problems which await solution by the physiologists of the future.

Waymouth Reid finds that absolutely pure proteins exert no osmotic pressure; the pressure observed is due to saline and other materials from which it is difficult to disentangle the protein.* Hæmoglobin is an exception to this rule; it exerts a small osmotic pressure and forms a true solution with water.

Dr C. J. Martin has suggested to me a way of illustrating the so-called selective action of living membranes. Suppose a number of fishes are swimming about in a tank, like moving molecules or ions in solution; across the tank is a wall which divides it into two parts; the fishes are all in one compartment of the tank. Suppose, next, the wall has in it a number of holes guarded by valves, so arranged that the fish can pass through into the second compartment, but cannot return. After a time, as the fish discover these holes, there will be an equal number of fish in both compartments; but this is not the end, for on waiting further, more fish will find their way through, and as none are able to return, they will all in time accumulate in the second compartment. It is not difficult to grasp the idea that the arrangement of molecules in a living membrane is possibly such that the orifices through which other molecules pass are valvular, and such a conception is useful if it merely serves to rob the word "vital" of its mystery.

---

* Bayliss has shown that the saline constituents found in a native protein are not mechanically mixed with it, and are also not in true chemical combination with it, but are in a condition intermediate between these two extremes, to which the term *adsorption* is applied. Many dyes used for staining fabrics and histological preparations are also adsorbed.

CHAPTER XXIII

THE DUCTLESS GLANDS

THE ductless glands form a heterogeneous group of organs, most of which are related in function or development with the circulatory system. They include the lymphatic glands, the spleen, the thymus, the thyroid, the suprarenal capsules, the pineal body, the pituitary body, and the carotid and coccygeal glands. The function of a gland that has a duct is a comparatively simple physiological problem, but the use of ductless glands has long been a puzzle to investigators. Recent research has, however, shown that most of, if not all, the ductless glands do form a secretion, and this *internal secretion*, as it is termed, leaves the gland by the venous blood or lymph, and thus is distributed and ministers to the needs of parts of the body elsewhere. Many of the glands which possess ducts and form an external secretion, form an internal secretion as well. Among these, the liver, pancreas, and kidney may be mentioned.

In many cases the internal secretion is essential for life, and removal of the gland that forms it, leads to a condition of disease culminating in death. In other cases the internal secretion is not essential, or its place is taken by that formed in similar glands in other parts of the body.

The body is a complex machine; each part of the machine has its own work to do, but must work harmoniously with other parts. Just as a watch will stop if any of its numerous wheels get broken, so the metabolic cycle will become disarranged or cease altogether if any of the links in the chain break down.

In unravelling the part which the ductless glands play in this cycle, it is at present impossible in many cases to state precisely what the particular function of each is; all one can say is, when the gland is removed or its function interfered with, that the metabolic round is broken somehow, and that this upsets the whole of the machinery of the body. The difficulty of investigating this subject is increased by the fact that it is impossible to get the internal secretion in a state of purity and examine it; it is always

mixed with, and masked by, the lymph or blood into which it is poured.

In spite of this, however, our knowledge in this branch of physiology is increasing, particularly in connection with some of these ductless glands. The methods of investigation which have been employed are the following:—

1. *Extirpation.*—The gland in question is removed, and the effect of the absence of the internal secretion noted.

2. *Disease.*—In cases where the function of the gland is in abeyance, owing to its being diseased, the symptoms are closely observed.

3. *Injection of Extracts.*—The gland is taken in a fresh condition; an extract is made of it, and this is injected into the circulation of healthy animals, and into that of those animals from which the gland has been previously removed, and the effects watched.

4. *Transplantation.*—After the gland is removed and the usual effect produced, the same gland from another animal is transplanted into the first animal, and restoration of function looked for.

The case of the lymphatic glands we have already studied; they form an internal secretion which consists of lymph-cells, and these furnish the blood with a supply of certain kinds of colourless corpuscles. Removal of lymphatic glands is not fatal, as the other lymphatic glands and other collections of lymphoid tissue that remain behind carry on the work of those that are removed.

The internal secretion theory of the ductless glands is that which is most in vogue at present. It should be mentioned, however, that there is another theory, which may be called the *auto-intoxication* theory. According to this view the gland is excretory (*i.e.*, gets rid of waste and harmful materials) rather than secretory (*i.e.*, production of something useful to the organism). When the gland is removed, the waste products therefore accumulate and produce harmful results. It is possible that as our knowledge increases, it may be found in certain cases that both these theories may be in part true.

The Spleen.

The Spleen is the largest of the ductless glands; it is situated to the left of the stomach, between it and the diaphragm. It is of a deep red colour and of variable shape. Vessels enter and leave the gland at a depression on the inner side called the *hilus*. The spleen is covered externally almost completely by a serous coat derived from the peritoneum, while within this is the proper fibrous coat or capsule of the organ. The latter is composed of connective-tissue, with a large preponderance of elastic fibres and a certain proportion of unstriated muscular tissue. Prolonged from its inner surface are fibrous processes or *trabeculæ*, containing much unstriated muscle, which enter the interior of the organ, and, dividing and anastomosing in all parts, form a supporting framework in the

interstices of which the proper substance of the spleen (*spleen-pulp*) is contained.

At the hilus of the spleen, the blood-vessels, nerves, and lymphatics enter or leave, and the fibrous coat is prolonged into the spleen substance in the form of investing sheaths for the arteries and veins, which sheaths again are continuous with the trabeculæ before referred to.

The *spleen-pulp*, which is of a dark red or reddish-brown colour,

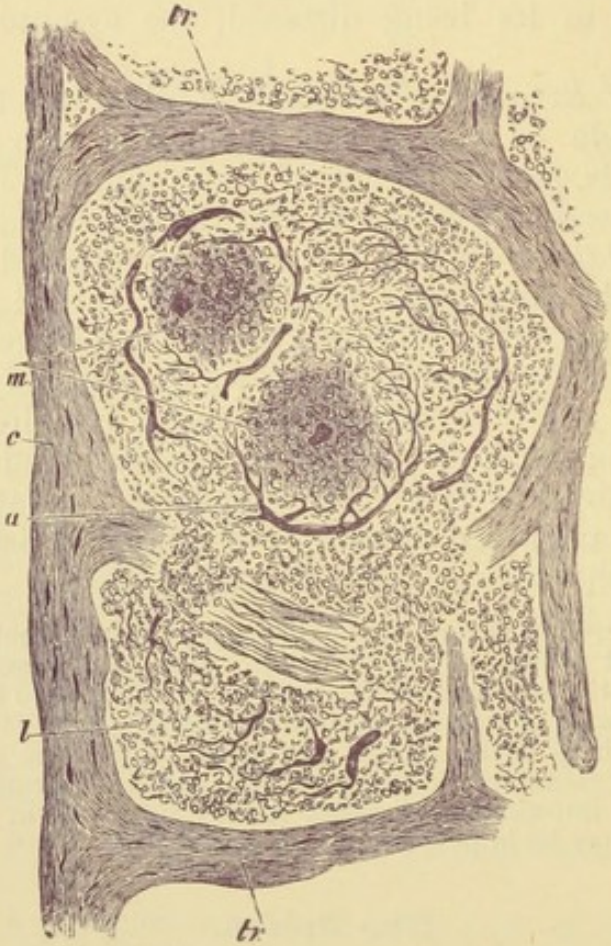


FIG. 309.—Section of injected dog's spleen. *c*, capsule; *tr*, trabeculæ; *m*, two Malpighian bodies with numerous small arteries and capillaries; *a*, artery; *l*, lymphoid tissue, consisting of closely-packed lymphoid cells supported by very delicate retiform tissue; a light space unoccupied by cells is seen all round the trabeculæ, which corresponds to the "lymph-path" in lymphatic glands. (Schofield.)

is composed chiefly of cells, imbedded in a network formed of fibres, and the branchings of large nucleated cells. The network so formed is thus very like a coarse kind of retiform tissue. The spaces of this network are only partially occupied by cells and form a freely communicating system. Of the cells some are granular corpuscles resembling the lymph-corpuscles, both in general appearance and in being able to perform amœboid movements; others are red blood-corpuscles of normal appearance or variously changed; while there

are also large cells containing either a pigment allied to the colouring matter of the blood, or rounded corpuscles like red corpuscles.

The splenic artery, after entering the spleen by its concave surface, divides and subdivides, with but little anastomosis between its branches; at the same time its branches are sheathed by the prolongations of the fibrous coat, which they, so to speak, carry into the spleen with them. The arteries soon leave the trabeculæ, and their outer coat is then replaced by one of lymphoid tissue; they end in an open brush-work of capillaries, the endothelial cells of which become continuous with those of the *rete* of the spleen-pulp. The veins begin by a similar open set of capillaries from the large blood spaces of the pulp. The veins soon pass into the trabeculæ, and ultimately unite to form the splenic vein. This arrangement readily allows lymphoid and other corpuscles to be swept into the blood-current.



FIG. 310.—Reticulum of the spleen of a cat, shown by injection with gelatine. (Cadiat.)

On the face of a section of the spleen can be usually seen readily with the naked eye, minute, scattered, rounded or oval whitish spots, mostly from $\frac{1}{30}$ to $\frac{1}{60}$ inch ($\frac{5}{6}$ to $\frac{2}{3}$ mm.) in diameter. These are the *Malpighian corpuscles* of the spleen, and are situated on the sheaths of the minute splenic arteries. They are in fact outgrowths of the outer coat of lymphoid tissue just referred to (see fig. 309). Blood capillaries traverse the Malpighian corpuscles and form a plexus in their interior. The structure of a Malpighian corpuscle of the spleen is practically identical with that of a lymphoid nodule.

The spleen has the following functions:—

(1.) The spleen, like the lymphatic glands, is engaged in *the formation of colourless blood-corpuscles.* For it is quite certain, that the blood of the splenic vein contains an unusually large proportion of white corpuscles; and in the disease termed *leucocythæmia*, in which the white corpuscles of the blood are remarkably increased in number, there is found a hypertrophied condition of the spleen, especially of the Malpighian corpuscles. The white corpuscles formed in the spleen also doubtless partly leave that organ by lymphatic vessels.

By stimulating the spleen to contract in a case of splenic leucocythæmia by means of an electric current applied over it through the skin, the number of leucocytes in the blood is almost immediately increased.

Removal of the spleen is not fatal; but after its removal there is an overgrowth of the lymphatic glands to make up for its absence.

(2.) It forms *coloured corpuscles*, at any rate, in some animals; in

these animals, cells are found in the spleen similar to those we have described in red marrow, and called *hæmatoblasts.* In these animals, if the spleen is removed, the red marrow hypertrophies.

(3.) There is reason to believe that in the spleen many of the *red corpuscles* of the blood, those probably which have discharged their office and are worn out, *undergo disintegration;* for in the coloured portions of the spleen-pulp an abundance of such corpuscles, in various stages of degeneration, are found, and in those cases of disease in which the destruction of blood-corpuscles is increased (pernicious anæmia) iron accumulates in the spleen as in the liver. It was formerly supposed that the spleen broke down the corpuscles and liberated hæmoglobin, which, passing in the blood of the splenic vein to the liver, was discharged by that organ as bile-pigment. But this is not the case; the disintegration does not proceed so far as to actually liberate hæmoglobin; there is no free hæmoglobin in the blood-plasma of the splenic vein.

(4.) The spleen participates in nitrogenous metabolism, especially in the formation of uric acid (see Uric Acid formation in Chapter XXXVII.).

(5.) Besides these direct offices, the spleen fulfils some purpose in regard to the portal circulation with which it is in close connection. From the readiness with which it admits of being distended, and from the fact that it is generally small while gastric digestion is going on, and enlarges when that act is concluded, it is supposed to act as a kind of vascular reservoir, or diverticulum to the portal system, or more particularly to the vessels of the stomach. That it may serve such purpose is also made probable by the enlargement which it undergoes in certain affections of the heart and liver, attended with obstruction to the passage of blood through the latter organ, and by its diminution when the congestion of the portal system is relieved by discharges from the bowels, or by the effusion of blood into the stomach. This mechanical influence on the circulation, however, can hardly be supposed to be more than a very subordinate function.

Influence of the Nervous System upon the Spleen.—When the spleen is enlarged after digestion, its enlargement is due to two causes: (1) a relaxation of the muscular tissue which forms so large a part of its framework; (2) a dilatation of the vessels. Both these phenomena are under control of the nervous system. It has been found by experiment that when the splenic nerves are cut the spleen enlarges, and that contraction can be brought about by stimulation of the peripheral ends of the divided nerves. If the splenic nerves are not cut, contraction is produced by (1) stimulation of the spinal cord; (2) reflexly by stimulation of the central stumps of certain divided nerves, *e.g.*, vagus and sciatic; (3) by local stimulation by an

electric current; (4) by the administration of quinine and some other drugs.

It has been shown by the oncometer (see p. 308) that the spleen undergoes rhythmical contractions and dilatations, due to the contraction and relaxation of the muscular tissue in its capsule and trabeculæ. A tracing also shows waves due to the rhythmical alterations of the general blood-pressure. Fig. 311 is a typical tracing obtained by Schäfer's air oncometer from a dog's spleen.

It shows, first, the large waves occurring about once a minute, due to the splenic systole and diastole; secondly, smaller waves on

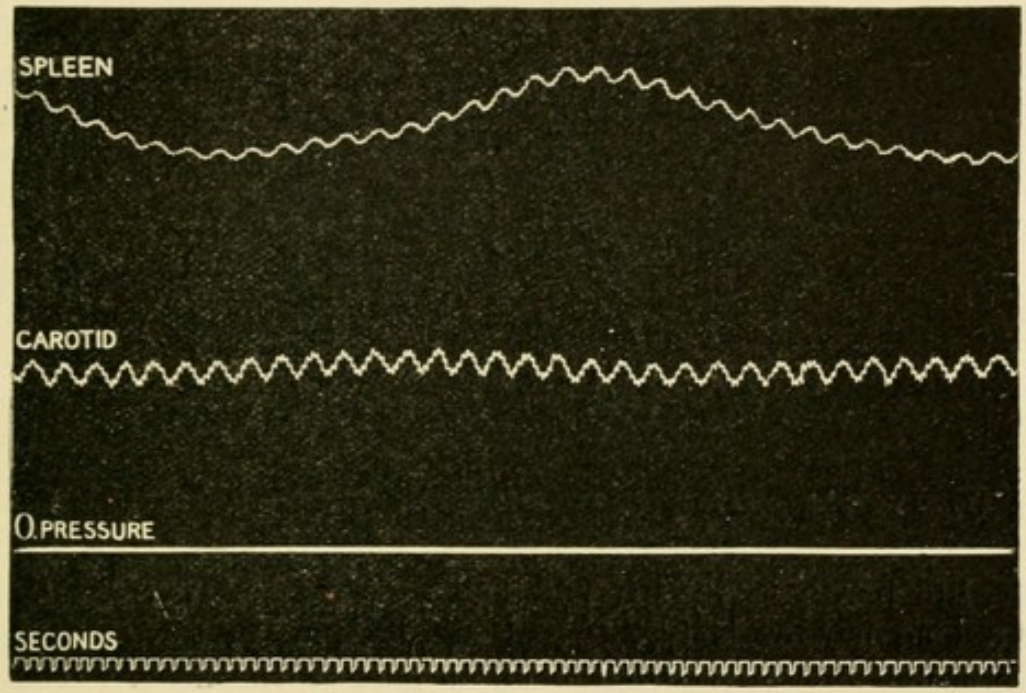


FIG. 311.—The upper tracing is the spleen record; the next is carotid blood-pressure taken with a mercurial kymograph. The straight line beneath this is the abscissa of the arterial pressure; and the lowest tracing is the time in seconds.

this, due to the effect of respiration on the blood-pressure; and on these, smaller waves still, corresponding with the individual heart-beats. The large waves due to the splenic contractility still go on after the division of all the splenic nerves. These nerve-fibres leave the spinal cord in numerous thoracic anterior roots; they have cell stations in the sympathetic chain (Schäfer) or semi-lunar ganglia (Langley).

Hæmolymph Glands.

The existence of glands which partake of the nature both of the spleen and of lymphatic glands, has long been known. They have been recently more fully investigated by T. Lewis. He finds them in most mammals, and they can be readily distinguished from ordinary lymphatic glands by their red colour. He divides them into (1) *hæmal*

glands, which are characterised by the fact that the sinuses contain blood only; the spleen is in fact a large hæmal gland; and (2) *hæmal lymphatic glands,* in which the sinuses are filled by a mixture of blood and lymph.

The Thymus.

This gland is a temporary organ; it attains its greatest size early after birth, and after the second year gradually diminishes, until in

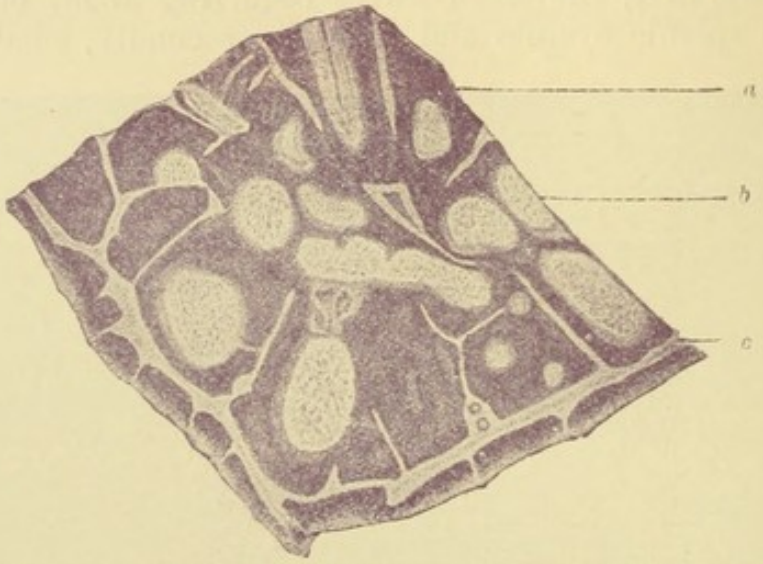


FIG. 312.—Thymus of a calf. *a*, cortex of follicle; *b*, medulla; *c*, interfollicular tissue. Magnified about twelve times. (Watney.)

adult life hardly a vestige remains. At its greatest development it is a long narrow body, situated in the front of the chest behind the sternum and partly in the lower part of the neck. It is of a reddish or greyish colour, and is distinctly lobulated.



FIG. 313.—The reticulum of the thymus. *a*, lymph cells; *b*, corpuscles of Hassall. (Cadiat.)

The gland is surrounded by a fibrous capsule, which sends in processes, forming trabeculæ, that divide the gland into lobes, and carry the blood- and lymph-vessels. The large trabeculæ branch into small ones, which divide the lobes into lobules. The lobules are further subdivided into follicles by fine connective-tissue. A follicle is polyhedral in shape, and consists of cortical and medullary portions, both of which are composed of adenoid or lymphoid tissue, but in the medullary portion the matrix is coarser, and is not so filled up with lymphoid corpuscles as in the cortex. Scattered in the lymphoid tissue of the medulla are the *concentric corpuscles of Hassall* (fig. 313), which consist of a nucleated granular centre, surrounded by flattened

nucleated epithelial cells. These are islands of epithelial cells cut off from the epithelium of the pharynx in process of development. They are not occluded blood-vessels, as was at one time supposed. They remind one somewhat of the epithelial nests seen in some varieties of cancer.

The arteries radiate from the centre of the gland. Lymph sinuses may be seen occasionally surrounding the periphery of the follicles (Klein). The nerves are very minute.

From the thymus various substances may be extracted, many of them similar to those obtained from the spleen, *e.g.*, xanthine, hypoxanthine, adenine, and leucine.

The main constituent of the cells is protein, and especially nucleo-protein. Indeed, the thymus is usually employed as the source of nucleo-protein when one wishes to inject that substance into the blood-vessels of an animal to produce experimentally intravascular clotting. It is, however, not characteristic of the thymus, but is found in all protoplasm. The method of preparation will be given later (see Coagulation of Blood).

The thymus takes part in producing the colourless corpuscles like other varieties of lymphoid tissue. In hibernating animals it exists throughout life, and as each successive period of hibernation approaches it greatly enlarges and becomes laden with fat. Hence it appears to serve for the storing-up of materials which, being reabsorbed during the inactivity of the hibernating period, may maintain the respiration and the temperature of the body in the reduced state to which they fall during that time. Some observers state that it is also a source of the red blood-corpuscles, at any rate in early life.

Removal of the thymus in the frog (in which animal it persists throughout life) produces muscular weakness, paralysis, and finally death. Intravenous injection of extracts of thymus lowers blood-pressure, though the heart may be somewhat accelerated.

The Thyroid.

The thyroid gland is situated in the neck. It consists of two lobes, one on each side of the trachea, extending upwards to the thyroid cartilage, covering its inferior cornu and part of its body; these lobes are connected across the middle line by a middle lobe or isthmus. It is highly vascular, and varies in size in different individuals.

The gland is encased in a capsule of dense areolar tissue. This sends in strong fibrous trabeculæ, which enclose the thyroid *vesicles*—which are rounded or oblong irregular sacs, consisting of a wall of thin hyaline membrane lined by a single layer of short cylindrical or cubical cells. These vesicles are filled with transparent colloid

nucleo-protein material. The colloid substance increases with age, and the cavities appear to coalesce. In the interstitial connective-tissue is a round meshed capillary plexus, and a large number of lymphatics. The nerves adhere closely to the vessels.

In the vesicles there are, in addition to the yellowish glassy colloid material, epithelium cells, colourless blood-corpuscles, and also coloured corpuscles undergoing disintegration.

It is difficult to state definitely the function of the thyroid body;

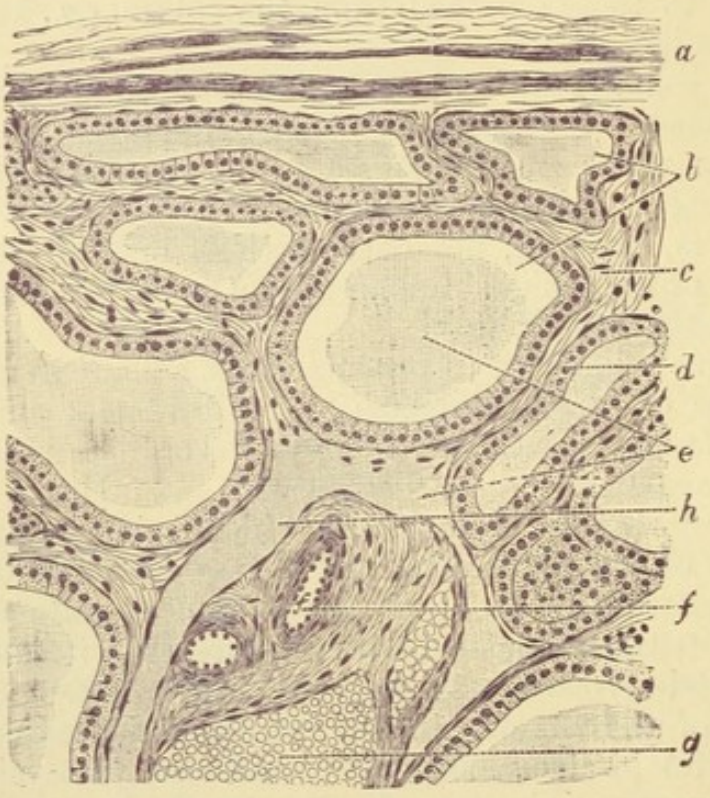


FIG. 314.—Part of a section of the human thyroid. *a*, fibrous capsule; *b*, thyroid vesicles filled with, *e*, colloid substance; *c*, supporting fibrous tissue; *d*, short columnar cells lining vesicles; *f*, arteries; *g*, veins filled with blood; *h*, lymphatic vessels filled with colloid substance. (S. K. Alcock.)

it is one of those organs of great importance in the metabolic round; and its removal or disease is followed by general disturbances. It no doubt forms an internal secretion; to this the colloid material mentioned contributes, as it is found in the lymphatic vessels of the organ.

When the gland is diseased in children and its function obliterated, a species of idiocy is produced called *cretinism.*

The same condition in adults is called *myxœdema;* the most marked symptoms of this condition are slowness, both of body and mind, usually associated with tremors and twitchings. There is also a peculiar condition of the skin leading to the overgrowth of the subcutaneous tissues, which in time is replaced by fat; the hair falls

off, the hands become spade-like; the whole body is unwieldy and clumsy like the mind.

A similar condition occurs after the thyroid is completely removed surgically; this is called *cachexia strumipriva;* this operation, which was performed previous to our knowledge of the importance of the thyroid, is not regarded as justifiable nowadays.

Lastly, in many animals removal of the thyroid produces analogous symptoms, in the overgrowth of the connective-tissues especially under the skin, and in the nervous symptoms (twitchings, convulsions, etc.).

The term Myxœdema was originally given under the erroneous idea that the swelling of the body is due to mucin. In the early stages of the disease there is a slight increase of mucin, because all new connective-tissues contain a relatively large amount of ground substance, the most abundant constituent of which, next to water, is mucin. But there is nothing characteristic about that.

The discovery of the relationships between the thyroid and these morbid conditions is especially interesting, because important practical results in their treatment have followed close on the heels of experimental investigation. The missing internal secretion of the thyroid may be replaced in these animals and patients by grafting the thyroid of another animal into the abdomen; or more simply by injecting thyroid extract subcutaneously; or even by feeding on the thyroid of other animals. This treatment, which has to be kept up for the rest of the patient's life, is entirely successful. Chemical physiologists have been diligently searching to try and discover what the active material in thyroid extract is which produces such marvellous results; the view at present held is that the efficacy of thyroid extract is due to a substance which Baumann separated from the gland, and which stands almost unique among physiological compounds by containing a large percentage of iodine in its molecule. *Thyro-iodin* or *Iodothyrin,* as this substance has been called, is present in combination with protein matter in the colloid substance.

Intravenous injection of thyroid extract in a normal animal lowers blood-pressure; but in an animal from which the thyroid has been removed it stimulates the heart and raises blood-pressure.

Parathyroids.

These are small bodies, usually four in number, situated in the neighbourhood of, or embedded in the substance of, the thyroid. They are made up of elongated groups of polyhedral cells, bound together by connective-tissue and well supplied with blood-vessels. Some observers look upon these as being even more essential to healthy life than the thyroid, but this point is most uncertain.

The view has been put forward that the thyroid supplies some-

thing which is a stimulator of metabolic processes, and that the action on the nervous system is more especially the work of the parathyroids. According to others the parathyroid tissue is only a stage in the development of thyroid tissue proper.

The Supra-renal Capsules.

These are two triangular or cocked-hat-shaped bodies, each resting by its lower border upon the upper border of the kidney.

The gland is surrounded by an outer sheath of connective-tissue,

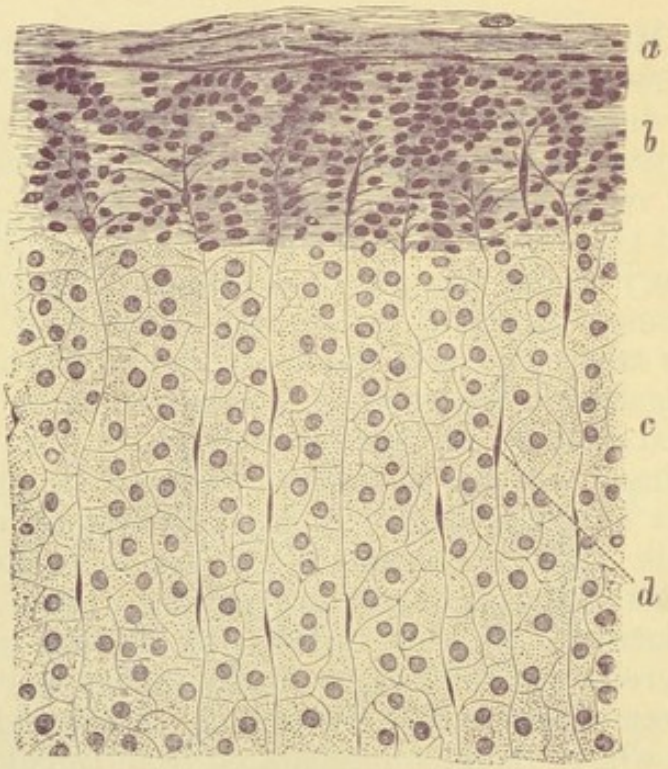


FIG. 315.—Vertical section through part of the cortical portion of supra-renal of guinea-pig. *a*, Capsule; *b*, zona glomerulosa; *c*, zona fasciculata; *d*, connective-tissue supporting the columns of the cells of the latter, and also indicating the position of the blood-vessels. (S. K. Alcock.)

which sends in fine prolongations forming the framework of the gland. The gland tissue proper consists of an outside firmer cortical portion and an inside soft, dark medullary portion.

(1.) The *cortical portion* is divided into (fig. 315) columnar groups of cells (*zona fasciculata*). Immediately under the capsule, however, the groups are more rounded (*zona glomerulosa*), while next to the medulla they have a reticular arrangement (*zona reticularis*). The cells themselves are polyhedral, each with a clear round nucleus, and often contain oil globules. The blood-vessels run in the fibrous septa between the columns, but do not penetrate between the cells.

(2.) The *medullary substance* consists of a coarse rounded or irregular meshwork of fibrous tissue, in the alveoli of which are masses of multinucleated protoplasm (fig. 316); numerous blood-

vessels; and an abundance of nerve-fibres and cells. The cells are very irregular in shape and size, poor in fat, and often branched; the nerves run through the cortical substance, and anastomose over the medullary portion.

The cells of the medulla are characterised by the presence of certain reducing substances. One of these takes a brown stain with chromic acid, and gives other colour reactions; it is, therefore, called a *chromogen*. Another is similar in many of its characters to jecorin, a lecithin-like substance also found in the liver, spleen, and other organs.

The immense importance of the supra-renal bodies was first in-

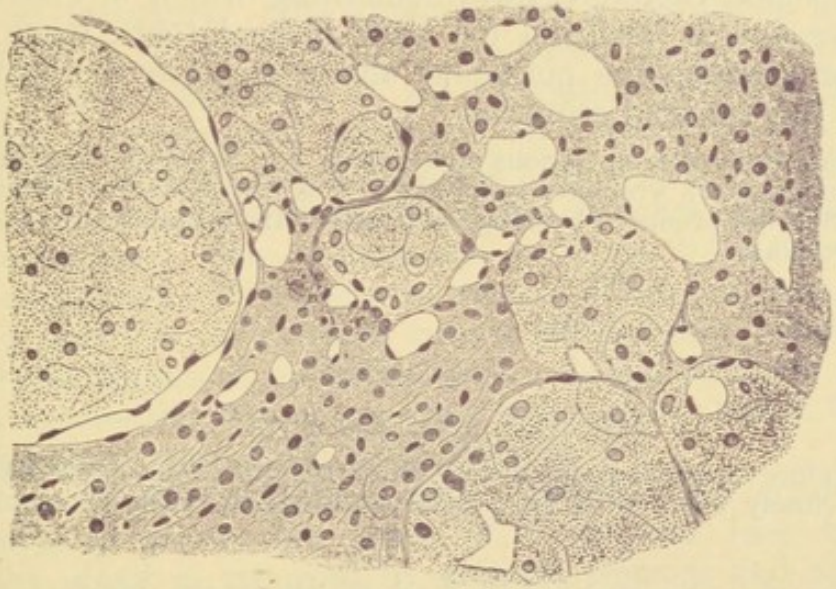


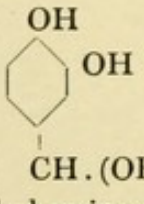
FIG. 316.—Section through a portion of the medullary part of the supra-renal of guinea-pig. The vessels are very numerous, and the fibrous stroma more distinct than in the cortex, and is, moreover, reticulated. The cells are irregular and larger, clear, and free from oil globules. (S. K. Alcock.)

dicated by Addison, who, in 1855, pointed out that the disease now known by his name is associated with pathological alterations of these glands. This was tested experimentally by Brown-Séquard, who found a few years later that removal of the supra-renals in animals is invariably and rapidly fatal. The symptoms are practically the same (although more acute) as those of Addison's disease, namely, great muscular weakness, loss of vascular tone, and nervous prostration. The pigmentation (bronzing) of the skin, however, which is a marked symptom in Addison's disease, is not seen in animals. The experiments of Brown-Séquard attracted much attention at the time they were performed, but were almost forgotten until quite recently, when they were confirmed by Abelous, Langlois, Schäfer, and others. The effects on the muscular system are the most marked results both after removal of the capsules and after injection of an extract of the glands. The effect of injecting such an extract on the voluntary muscles is to increase their tone, so that a tracing obtained from them

resembles that produced by a small dose of veratrine, namely, a prolongation of the period of relaxation. The effect on involuntary muscle is equally marked; there is an enormous rise of arterial blood-pressure due chiefly to a contraction of the arterioles. This is produced by the direct action of the extract on the muscular tissue of the arterioles, not an indirect one through the vaso-motor centre.* The active substance in the extract that produces the effect is known as *adrenaline;* it is the reducing substance alluded to above which is confined to the medulla of the capsules, and is absent in cases of Addison's disease.

The capsules, therefore, form something which is distributed to the muscles and is essential for their normal tone; when they are removed or diseased the poisonous effects seen are the result of the absence of this internal secretion.

Adrenaline has received various names from the different chemists (Abel, v. Fürth, Takamine, etc.), who have isolated it. It is very powerful; solutions of one part in a million will produce physiological effects. Its composition is shown by the following formula:—



and it is therefore a methyl-amino derivation of catechol (Pauly, Jowett). Recently compounds closely allied to it have been made synthetically (Stolz, Friedmann, Dakin).

Whether this discovery will lead to the same kind of results, as in the case of the thyroid, must be left to the future to decide. There is already some evidence to show that injection of supra-renal extract is beneficial in cases of Addison's disease. The discovery of adrenaline itself is, however, one of immense practical importance. Its action on the small blood-vessels is so powerful that quite weak solutions applied locally will arrest hæmorrhage.

There are some points of interest in the development and comparative physiology of the supra-renals. In mammals the medullary portion is developed in connection with the sympathetic, and is at first distinct and outside the cortical portion which is developed in connection with the upper part of the Wolffian body; it gradually insinuates itself within the cortex (Mitsukiri). In Elasmobranch fishes the supra-renals consist throughout life of separate portions; one, the inter-renal body, is median in position and single; this corresponds to the cortex of the mammalian supra-renal; extracts of this are inactive, and in the Teleostean fishes, where it is the sole representative of the supra-renal, it may be removed without any harm to

* Although muscular tissue is spoken of in the above description, Brodie's work shows that it is the sympathetic nerve terminals which are really affected.

the animal. The other portion of the Elasmobranch supra-renal is paired, and derived from the sympathetic ganglia. This corresponds to the medulla; it contains the same chromogen as the medulla of the mammalian supra-renal, and extracts of it have the same physiological action (S. Vincent).

The Pituitary Body.

This body is a small reddish-grey mass, occupying the sella turcica of the sphenoid bone. It consists of two lobes—a small posterior one, and an anterior larger one, somewhat resembling the thyroid in structure. The anterior lobe is developed as a tubular prolongation from the epiblast of the buccal cavity. The growth of intervening tissue soon cuts off all connection with the mouth. The alveoli are approximately spherical; they are filled with nucleated cells of various sizes and shapes not unlike ganglion cells, collected together into rounded masses, filling the vesicles, and contained in a colloid substance. The vesicles are enclosed by connective-tissue, rich in capillaries. The posterior lobe is developed from the floor of the third ventricle; it consists mainly of vascular connective tissue, and includes masses of epithelial cells. In the adult it contains no distinct nerve-cells, but it receives nerve-fibres which originate in the grey matter behind the optic chiasma.

Disease of the pituitary body produces the condition called *acromegaly*, in which the bones of limbs and face hypertrophy. When the gland is removed in animals, tremors and spasms occur like those which take place after removal of the thyroid. Death usually occurs within fourteen days. Some observers have stated that overgrowth of the pituitary occurs after excision of the thyroid. But there is no ground for the assumption that the two glands have a similar function. Acromegaly is a very different disease from myxœdema. The injection of extracts of the organs are also different. Thyroid extract produces a fall of arterial pressure. Extracts of the anterior lobe of the pituitary body are inactive; but extracts of the posterior lobe or infundibular body contain two active substances, one of which produces a rise, and the other a fall of blood-pressure. A second dose of the former of these injected soon after the first dose is inactive; and so it is not the same thing as in supra-renal extract. The chemical nature of the two substances is not known. Pituitary extracts when injected into the blood also produce diuresis (Schäfer).

The Pineal Gland.

This gland, which is a small reddish body, is placed beneath the back part of the corpus callosum, and rests upon the corpora quadrigemina. It is composed of tubes and saccules lined and some-

times filled with epithelial cells, and containing deposits of earthy salts (brain sand). These are separated by vascular connective tissue. A few small atrophied nerve-cells without axons are also seen.

In certain lizards, such as Hatteria, the pineal gland is better developed and is connected by nerve-fibres to a rudimentary third eye situated centrally on the upper surface of the head, but covered by skin.

The Coccygeal and Carotid Glands.

These so-called glands are situated, the one in front of the tip of the coccyx and the other at the point of bifurcation of the common carotid artery on each side. They are made up of a plexus of small arteries, and are enclosed and supported by a capsule of fibrous tissue. They contain also polyhedral cells collected into spheroidal clumps (carotid gland) or irregular nodules (coccygeal gland). Some of the cells of the carotid gland stain brown with chromic acid like those of the supra-renal medulla.

CHAPTER XXIV

RESPIRATION

THE respiratory apparatus consists of the lungs and of the air-passages which lead to them. In marine animals the gills fulfil the same functions as the lungs of air-breathing animals. The muscles which move the thorax and the nerves that supply them must also be included under the general heading Respiratory System; and, using this expression in the widest sense, it includes practically all the tissues of the body, since they are all concerned in the using up of oxygen and the production of waste materials, like carbonic acid.

Essentially a lung or gill is constructed of a thin membrane, one surface of which is exposed to the air or water, as the case may be, while, on the other is a network of blood-vessels—the only separation between the blood and aërating medium being the thin wall of the blood-vessels, and the fine membrane on one side of which vessels are distributed. The difference between the simplest and the most complicated respiratory membrane is one of degree only.

The lungs or gills are only the medium for the *exchange*, on the part of the blood, of carbonic acid for oxygen. They are not the seat, in any special manner, of those combustion-processes of which the production of carbonic acid is the final result. These processes occur in all parts of the body in the substance of the tissues.

The Respiratory Apparatus.

The lungs are contained in the chest or thorax, which is a closed cavity having no communication with the outside except by means of the respiratory passages. The air enters these passages through the nostrils or through the mouth, whence it passes through the larynx into the trachea or windpipe, which about the middle of the chest divides into two tubes, bronchi, one to each (right and left) lung.

The *Larynx* is the upper part of the passage, and will be described in connection with the voice.

The Trachea and Bronchi.—The trachea extends from the cricoid cartilage, which is on a level with the fifth cervical vertebra, to a

point opposite the third dorsal vertebra, where it divides into the two bronchi, one for each lung (fig. 317). It measures, on an average,

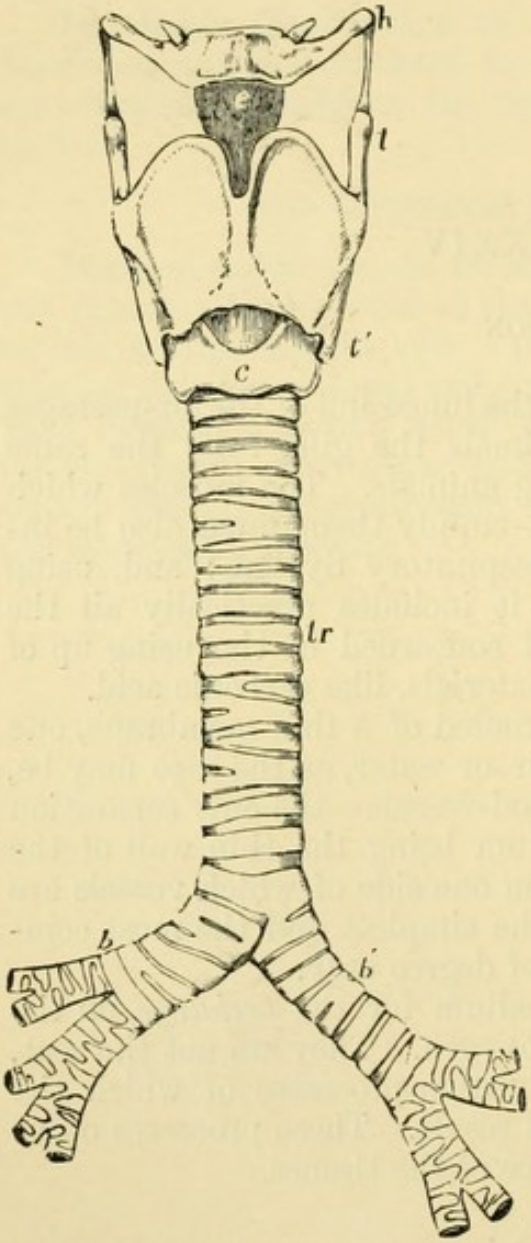


FIG. 317.—Outline showing the general form of the larynx, trachea, and bronchi, as seen from the front. *h*, The great cornu of the hyoid bone: *e*, epiglottis; *t*, superior, and *t'*, inferior cornu of the thyroid cartilage; *c*, middle of the cricoid cartilage; *tr*, the trachea, showing sixteen cartilaginous rings; *b*, the right, and *b'*, the left bronchus. (Allen Thomson.)

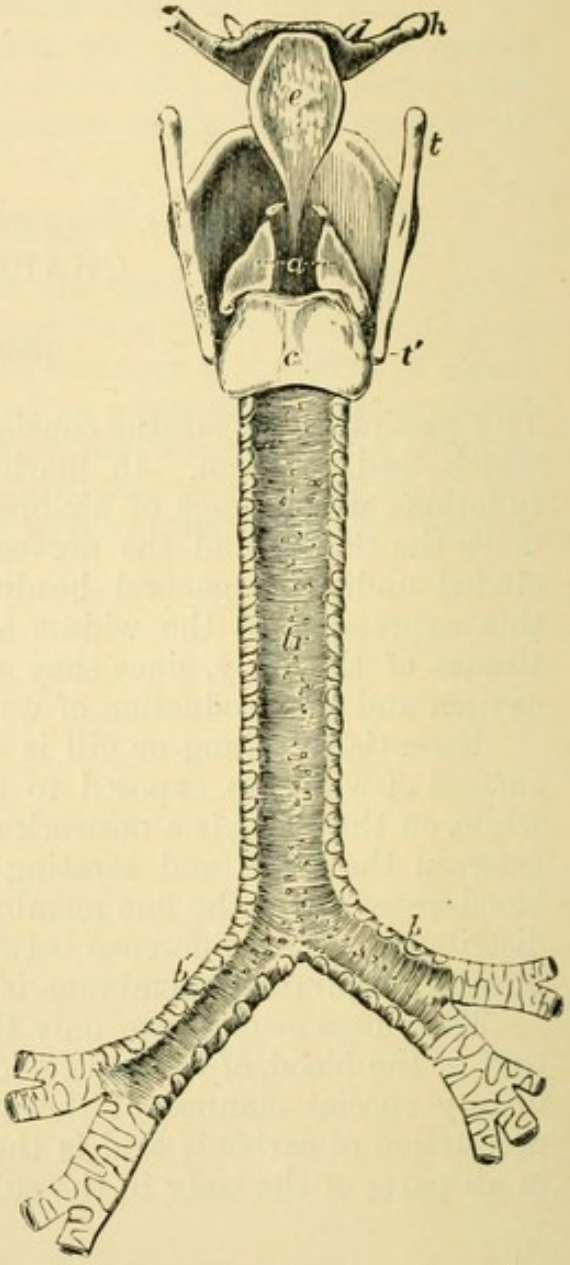


FIG. 318.—Outline showing the general form of the larynx, trachea, and bronchi, as seen from behind. *h*, Great cornu of the hyoid bone; *t*, superior, and *t'*, the inferior cornu of the thyroid cartilage; *e*, epiglottis; *a*, points to the back of both the arytenoid cartilages, which are surmounted by the cornicula; *c*, the middle ridge on the back of the cricoid cartilage; *tr*, the posterior membranous part of the trachea; *b*, *b'*, right and left bronchi. (Allen Thomson.)

four or four and a half inches in length and from three-quarters of an inch to an inch in diameter, and is essentially a tube of fibro-elastic membrane, within the layers of which are imbedded a series of cartilaginous rings, from sixteen to twenty in number. These rings ex-

tend only around the front and sides of the trachea (about two-thirds of its circumference) and are deficient behind; the interval between their posterior extremities is bridged over by a continuation of the fibrous membrane in which they are enclosed (fig. 318). The cartilages of the trachea and bronchial tubes are of the hyaline variety.

Immediately within this tube, at the back, is a layer of unstriped muscular fibres, which extends, *transversely*, between the ends of the cartilaginous rings to which they are attached, and opposite the intervals between them also; their function is to diminish, when required, the calibre of the trachea by approximating the ends of the cartilages. Outside these are a few *longitudinal* bundles of muscular tissue, which, like the preceding, are attached both to the fibrous and cartilaginous framework.

The mucous membrane consists to a great extent of loose lymphoid tissue, separated from the ciliated epithelium (fig. 322) which lines it by a homogeneous basement membrane. In the deeper part of the corium of the mucous membrane are many elastic fibres, between which lie connective-tissue corpuscles and capillary blood-vessels.

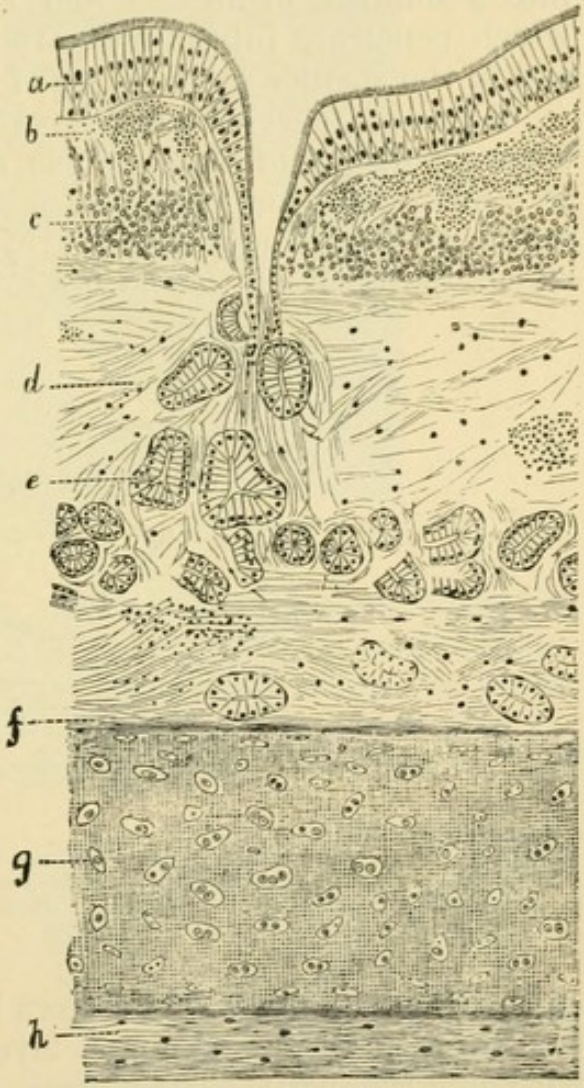


FIG. 319.—Section of the trachea. *a*, columnar ciliated epithelium; *b* and *c*, corium of the mucous membrane, containing elastic fibres cut across transversely; *d*, submucous tissue containing mucous glands, *e*, separated from the hyaline cartilage, *g*, by fine fibrous tissue, *f*; *h*, external investment of fine fibrous tissue. (S. K. Alcock.)

Numerous mucous glands are situated in the substance of the mucous membrane of the trachea; their ducts perforate the various structures which form the wall of the trachea, and open through the mucous membrane into the interior (fig. 319).

The two bronchi into which the trachea divides, of which the right is shorter, broader, and more horizontal than the left (fig. 317), resemble the trachea in structure, with the difference that in them there is a distinct layer of unstriped muscle arranged circularly beneath the mucous membrane, forming the *muscularis mucosæ*. On

entering the substance of the lungs the cartilaginous rings, although they still form only larger or smaller segments of a circle, are no longer confined to the front and sides of the tubes, but are distributed impartially to all parts of their circumference.

The bronchi divide and subdivide, in the substance of the lungs, into a number of smaller and smaller branches (bronchial tubes), which penetrate into every part of the organ, until at length they end in the smaller subdivisions of the lungs called *lobules*.

All the larger branches have walls formed of fibrous tissue, containing portions of cartilaginous rings, by which they are held open, and unstriped muscular fibres, as well as longitudinal bundles of elastic tissue. They are lined by mucous membrane the surface of which, like that of the larynx and trachea, is covered with ciliated

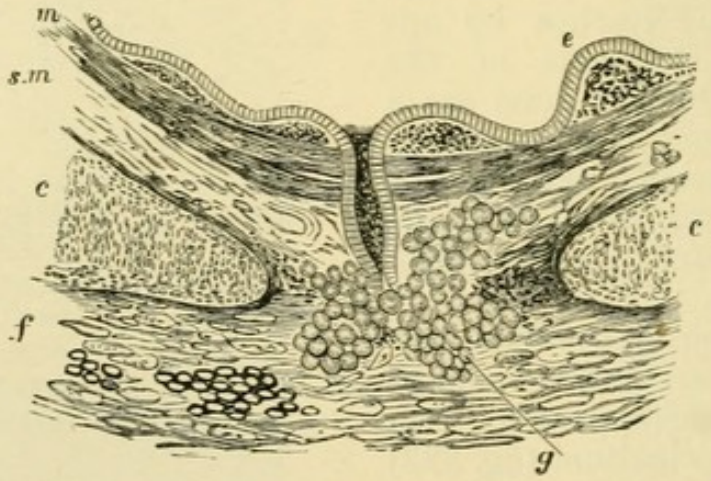


FIG. 320.—Transverse section of a bronchial tube, about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in diameter. *e*, Epithelium (ciliated) immediately beneath it is the corium of the mucous membrane, of varying thickness; *m*, muscular layer; *s.m*, submucous tissue; *f*, fibrous tissue; *c*, cartilage enclosed within the layers of fibrous tissue; *g*, mucous gland. (F. E. Schulze.)

epithelium, but the several layers become less and less distinct until the lining consists of a single layer of short columnar cells covered with cilia (fig. 320). The mucous membrane is abundantly provided with mucous glands.

As the subdivisions become smaller and smaller, and their walls thinner, the cartilaginous rings become scarcer and more irregular, until, in the smaller bronchial tubes, they are represented only by minute and scattered cartilaginous flakes. When the bronchial tubes, by successive branchings, are reduced to about $\frac{1}{40}$ of an inch (·6 mm.) in diameter they lose their cartilaginous element altogether, and their walls are formed only of a fibrous elastic membrane with circular muscular fibres; they are still lined, however, by a thin mucous membrane with ciliated epithelium, the length of the cells bearing the cilia having become so far diminished that the cells are now cubical. In the smaller bronchial tubes the muscular fibres are

relatively more abundant than in the larger ones, and form a distinct circular coat.

The Lungs and Pleuræ.—The lungs occupy the greater portion of the thorax. They are of a spongy elastic texture, and are composed

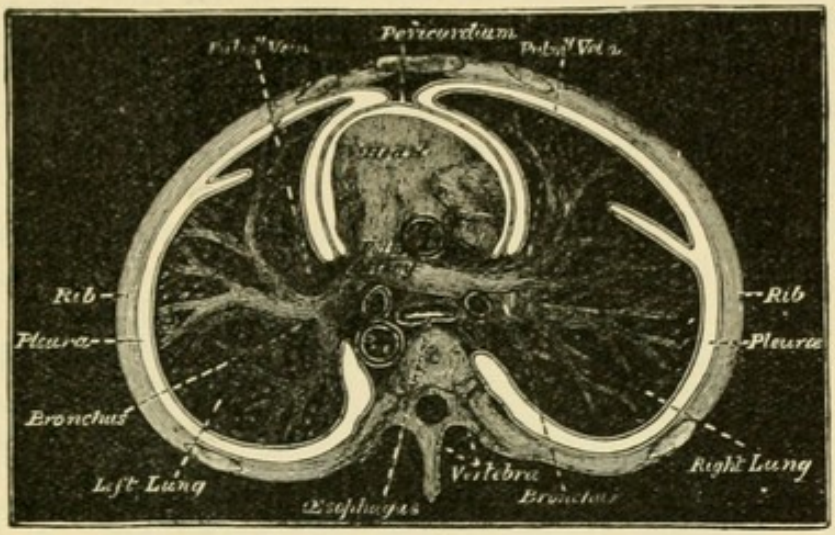


FIG. 321.—Transverse section of the chest.

of numerous minute air-sacs, and on section every here and there the air-tubes may be seen cut across. Any fragment of lung (unless from a child that has never breathed, or in cases of disease in which the lung is consolidated) floats in water; no other tissue does this.

Each lung is enveloped by a serous membrane—the *pleura*, one layer of which adheres closely to its surface, and provides it with its smooth and slippery covering, while the other adheres to the inner surface of the chest-wall. The continuity of the two layers, which form a closed sac, as in the case of other serous membranes, will be best understood by reference to fig. 321. The appearance of a space, however, between the pleura which covers the lung (*visceral* layer) and that which lines the inner surface of the chest (*parietal* layer) is inserted in the drawing only for the sake of distinctness. It does not really exist. The layers are, in health, everywhere in contact one with the other; and between them is only just so much fluid as will ensure the lungs gliding easily, in their expansion and contraction, on the inner surface of the parietal layer, which lines the chest-wall.

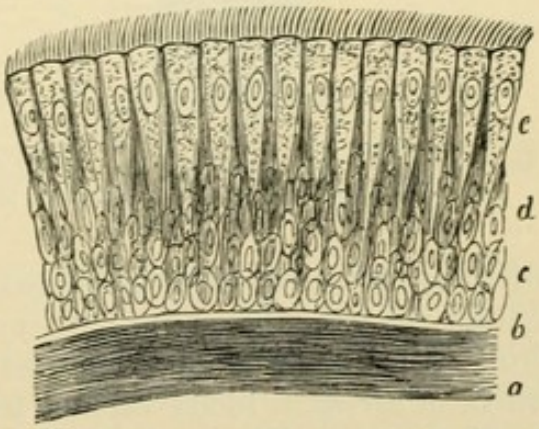


FIG. 322.—Ciliated epithelium of the human trachea. *a*, Layer of longitudinally arranged elastic fibres; *b*, basement membrane; *c*, deepest cells circular in form; *d*, intermediate elongated cells; *e*, outermost layer of cells fully developed and bearing cilia. × 350. (Kölliker.)

If, however, an opening is made so as to permit air or fluid to enter the pleural sac, the lung, in virtue of its elasticity, recoils, and a considerable space is left between it and the chest-wall. In other words, the natural elasticity of the lungs would cause them at all times to contract away from the ribs were it not that the contraction is resisted by atmospheric pressure which bears only on the *inner* surface of the air-tubes and air-sacs. On the admission of air into the pleural sac atmospheric pressure bears alike on the inner and outer surfaces of the lung, and their elastic recoil is no longer prevented.

Each lung is partially subdivided into separate portions called *lobes;* the right lung into three lobes, and the left into two. Each

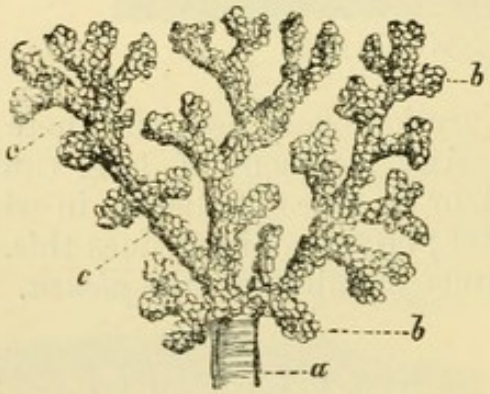


FIG. 323.—Terminal branch of a bronchial tube, with its infundibula and air-sacs, from the margin of the lung of a monkey, injected with quicksilver. *a*, Terminal bronchial twig; *b b*, infundibula and air-sacs. × 10. (F. E. Schulze.)

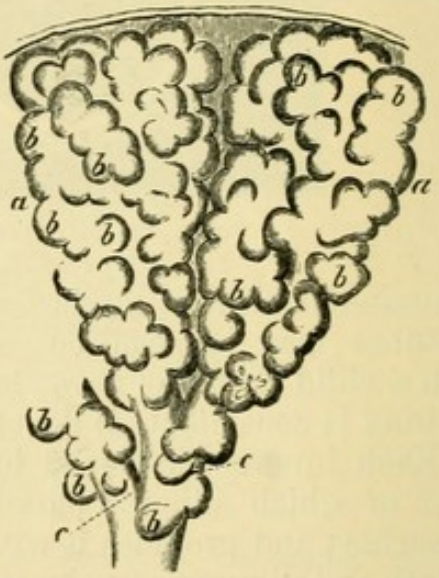


FIG. 324.—Two small infundibula or groups of air-sacs, *a a*, with air-sacs, *b b*, and the ultimate bronchial tubes, *c c*, with which the air-sacs communicate. From a new-born child. (Kölliker.)

of these lobes, again, is composed of a large number of minute parts, called *lobules.* Each pulmonary lobule may be considered to be a lung in miniature, consisting, as it does, of a branch of the bronchial tube, of air-sacs, blood-vessels, nerves, and lymphatics, with a sparing amount of areolar tissue.

On entering a lobule, the small bronchial tube, the structure of which has just been described (*a*, fig. 323), divides and subdivides; its walls at the same time become thinner and thinner, until at length they are formed only of a thin membrane of areolar, muscular, and elastic tissue, lined by a layer of pavement epithelium not provided with cilia. At the same time they are altered in shape; each of the minute terminal branches widens out funnel-wise, and its walls are pouched out irregularly into small saccular dilatations,

called *air-sacs* (fig. 323, *b*). Such a funnel-shaped terminal branch of the bronchial tube, with its group of pouches or air-sacs, is called an *infundibulum* (figs. 323, 324), and the irregular oblong space in its centre, with which the air-sacs communicate, an *intercellular passage.*

The air-sacs, or air-vesicles, may be placed singly, like recesses from the intercellular passage, but more often they are arranged in groups, or even in rows, like minute sacculated tubes; so that a short series of vesicles, all communicating with one another, open by a common orifice into the tube. The vesicles are of various forms, according to the mutual pressure to which they are subject; their

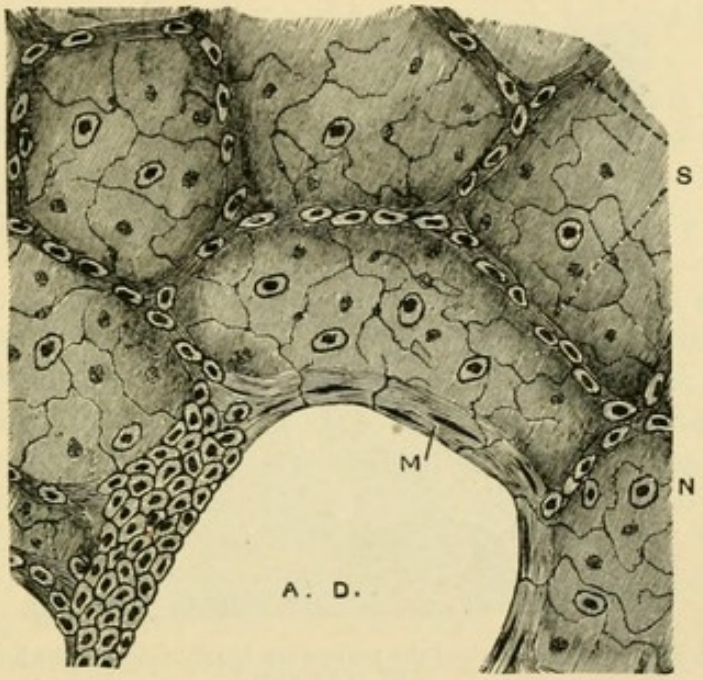


FIG. 325.—Section of lung stained with silver nitrate. A. D., alveolar duct or intercellular passage; S, alveolar septa; N, alveoli or air-sacs, lined with large flat cells, with some smaller polyhedral cells; M, plain muscular fibres surrounding the alveolar duct. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

walls are nearly in contact, and they vary from $\frac{1}{50}$th to $\frac{1}{70}$th of an inch (·5 to ·3 mm.) in diameter. Their walls are formed of fine membrane, like those of the intercellular passage; this membrane is folded on itself so as to form a sharp-edged border at each circular orifice of communication between contiguous air-vesicles, or between the vesicles and the bronchial passages. Numerous fibres of elastic tissue are spread out between contiguous air-sacs, and many of these are attached to the outer surface of the fine membrane of which each sac is composed, imparting to it additional strength and the power of recoil after distension. The vesicles are lined by a layer of pavement epithelium (fig. 325) not provided with cilia. Outside the air-vesicles a network of pulmonary capillaries is spread out so densely (fig. 326) that the interspaces or meshes are even narrower than the vessels

which are, on an average, $\frac{1}{3000}$th of an inch (8μ) in diameter. Between the air in the sacs and the blood in these vessels nothing intervenes but the thin walls of the air-sacs and of the capillaries; and the exposure of the blood to the air is the more complete, because the folds of membrane between contiguous air-sacs, and often the spaces between the walls of the same, contain only a single layer of capillaries, both sides of which are thus at once exposed to the air. The arrangement of the capillaries is shown on a larger scale in fig. 233 (p. 222).

The vesicles of adjacent lobules do not communicate; so that, when any bronchial tube is closed or obstructed, the supply of air is lost for all the sacs opening into it or its branches.

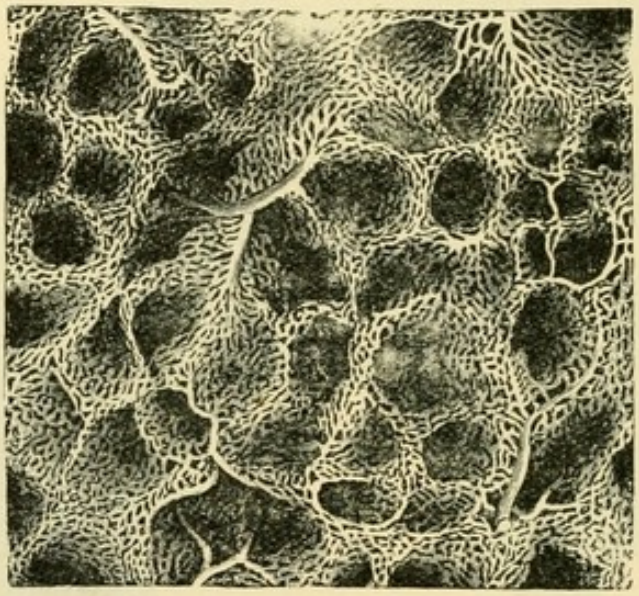


FIG. 326.—Capillary network of the pulmonary blood-vessels in the human lung. × 60. (Kölliker.)

Blood-supply.—The lungs receive blood from two sources, (*a*) the pulmonary artery, (*b*) the bronchial arteries. The former conveys *venous* blood to the lungs to be *arterialised*, and this blood takes no share in the nutrition of the pulmonary tissues through which it passes. The branches of the bronchial arteries convey arterial blood from the aorta for the nutrition of the walls of the bronchi, of the larger pulmonary vessels, of the interlobular connective-tissue, etc.; the blood of the bronchial vessels is returned chiefly through the bronchial and partly through the pulmonary veins.

Lymphatics.—The lymphatics are arranged in three sets:—1. Irregular lacunæ in the walls of the alveoli or air-sacs. The lymphatic vessels which lead from these accompany the pulmonary vessels towards the root of the lung. 2. Irregular anastomosing spaces in the walls of the bronchi. 3. Lymph-spaces in the pulmonary pleura. The lymphatic vessels from all these irregular

sinuses pass in towards the root of the lung to reach the bronchial lymphatic glands.

Nerves.—The nerves of the lung are to be traced from the anterior and posterior pulmonary plexuses, which are formed by branches of the vagus and sympathetic. The nerves follow the course of the vessels and bronchi, and in the walls of the latter many small ganglia are situated.

The Respiratory Mechanism.

Respiration consists of the alternate expansion and contraction of the thorax, by means of which air is drawn into or expelled from the lungs. These acts are called *Inspiration* and *Expiration* respectively.

For the inspiration of air into the lungs it is evident that all that is necessary is such a movement of the side-walls or floor of the chest, or of both, that the capacity of the interior shall be enlarged. By such increase of capacity there will be a diminution of the pressure of the air in the lungs, and a fresh quantity will enter through the larynx and trachea to equalise the pressure on the inside and outside of the chest.

For the expiration of air, on the other hand, it is also evident that, by an opposite movement which shall diminish the capacity of the chest, the pressure in the interior will be increased, and air will be expelled, until the pressure within and without the chest are again equal. In both cases the air passes through the trachea and larynx, whether in entering or leaving the lungs, there being no other communication with the exterior of the body; and the lung, for the same reason, remains, under all the circumstances described, closely in contact with the walls and floor of the chest. To speak of expansion of the chest, is to speak also of expansion of the lung. The movements of the lung are therefore passive, not active, and depend on the changes of shape of the closed cavity in which they are contained. A perforation of the chest-wall would mean that the lung on that side would no longer be of use; a similar injury on the other side (double pneumothorax) would cause death. If the two layers of the pleura were adherent, those portions of the lung would be expanded most where the movements of the chest are greatest. The existence of the two layers prevents this, and thus the lung is equally expanded throughout.

Inspiration.—The enlargement of the chest in inspiration is a muscular act; the effect of the action of the inspiratory muscles is an increase in the size of the chest-cavity in the vertical, and in the lateral and antero-posterior diameters. The muscles engaged in *ordinary* inspiration are the diaphragm; the external intercostals; parts of the internal intercostals; the levatores costarum; and serratus posticus superior.

The *vertical diameter* of the chest is increased by the contraction and consequent descent of the diaphragm; at rest, the diaphragm is dome-shaped with the convexity upwards; the central tendon forms a slight depression in the middle of this dome. On contraction the muscular fibres shorten, and so the convexity of the double dome is lessened. The central tendon is drawn down a certain distance, but the chief movement is at the sides. For the effective action of this muscle, its attachment to the lower ribs is kept fixed by the contraction of the quadratus lumborum. The diaphragm is supplied by the *phrenic* nerves.

The increase in the *lateral* and *antero-posterior diameters* of the chest is effected by the raising of the ribs, the upper ones being fixed by the scaleni. The greater number of the ribs are attached very obliquely to the spine and sternum.

The elevation of the ribs takes place both in front and at the sides—the hinder ends being prevented from performing any upward movement by their attachment to the spine. The movement of the front extremities of the ribs is of necessity accompanied by an upward and forward movement of the sternum to which they are attached, the movement being greater at its lower than at its upper end.

The muscles by which the ribs are raised, in *ordinary* quiet inspiration, are the *external intercostals*, and that portion of the *internal intercostals* which is situated between the costal cartilages; and these are assisted by the *levatores costarum*, and the *serratus posticus superior*.

In *extraordinary* or forced inspiration, additional muscles are pressed into service, such as the *sternomastoid*, the *serratus magnus*, the *pectorales*, and the *trapezius*. Laryngeal and face muscles also come into play.

The expansion of the chest in inspiration presents some peculiarities in different persons. In young children, it is effected chiefly by the diaphragm. The movement of the abdominal walls being here more manifest than that of any other part, it is usual to call this the *abdominal* type of respiration. In men, together with the descent of the diaphragm, and the pushing forward of the front wall of the abdomen, the chest and the sternum are subject to a wide movement in inspiration (*inferior costal* type). In women, the movement appears less extensive in the lower, and more so in the upper, part of the chest (*superior costal* type).

There are also differences in different animals. In the frog, for example, the air is forced into the lungs by the raising of the floor of the mouth, the mouth and nostrils being closed.

Expiration.—From the enlargement produced in inspiration, the chest and lungs return, in ordinary tranquil expiration, by their elasticity; the force employed by the inspiratory muscles in distending the chest and overcoming the elastic resistance of the lungs and

chest-walls, is returned as an expiratory effort when the muscles are relaxed. This elastic recoil of the chest and lungs is sufficient, in ordinary quiet breathing, to expel air from the lungs in the intervals of inspiration, and no muscular power is required. In all voluntary expiratory efforts, however, as in speaking, singing, blowing, and the like, and in many involuntary actions also, as sneezing, coughing, etc., something more than merely passive elastic power is necessary, and the proper expiratory muscles are brought into action. The chief of these are the abdominal muscles, which, by pressing on the viscera of the abdomen, push up the floor of the chest formed by the diaphragm, and by thus making pressure on the lungs, expel air from them through the trachea and larynx. All muscles, however, which depress the ribs, must act also as muscles of expiration, and therefore we must conclude that the abdominal muscles are assisted in their action by the interosseous part of the *internal intercostals*, the *triangularis sterni*, the *serratus posticus inferior*, and *quadratus lumborum*. When by the efforts of the expiratory muscles, the chest has been squeezed to less than its average size, it again, on relaxation of the muscles, returns to the normal dimensions by virtue of its elasticity. The construction of the chest-walls, therefore, admirably adapts them for recoiling against and resisting as well undue contraction as undue dilatation. In the natural condition of the parts, the lungs can never contract to the utmost, but are always more or less "on the stretch," being kept closely in contact with the inner surface of the chest walls.

Methods of recording Respiratory Movements.

The movements of respiration may be recorded graphically in several ways. One method is to introduce a tube into the trachea of an animal, and to connect this tube by some gutta-percha tubing with a T-piece introduced into the cork of a large bottle, the other end of the T having attached to it a second piece of tubing, which can remain open or can be partially or completely closed by means of a screw clamp. Into the cork is inserted a second piece of glass tubing connected with a Marey's tambour by suitable tubing. This second tube communicates any alteration of the pressure in the bottle to the tambour, and this may be made to write on a recording surface.

There are various instruments for recording the movements of the chest by application of apparatus to the exterior. Such is the **stethograph** of Burdon-Sanderson (fig. 328.) This consists of a frame formed of two parallel steel bars joined by a third at one end. At the free end of the bars is attached a leather strap, by means of which the apparatus may be suspended from the neck. Attached to the inner end of one bar is a tambour and ivory button, to the end of the other an ivory button. When in use, the apparatus is suspended with the transverse bar posteriorly, the button of the tambour is placed on the part of the chest the movement of which it is desired to record, and the other button is made to press upon the corresponding point on the other side of the chest, so that the chest is, as it were, held between a pair of callipers. The tambour is connected by tubing and a T-piece with a recording tambour and with a ball, by means of which air can be squeezed into the cavity of the tambour. When in work the tube connected with the air ball is shut off by means of a screw clamp. The movement of the chest is thus communicated to the recording tambour.

A simpler form of this apparatus consists of a thick india-rubber bag of elliptical shape about three inches long, to one end of which a rigid gutta-percha tube is

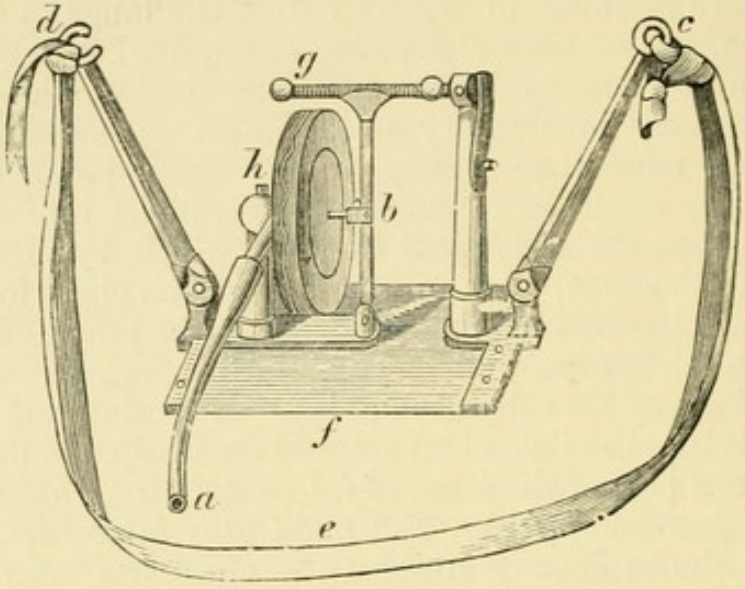


FIG. 327.—Stethograph. *h*, tambour fixed at right angles to plate of steel *f*; *c* and *d*, arms by which instrument is attached to chest by belt *e*. When the chest expands, the arms are pulled asunder, which bends the steel plate, and the tambour is affected by the pressure of *b*, which is attached to it on the one hand, and to the upright in connection with horizontal screw *g*. (Modified from Marey's instrument.)

attached. This bag may be fixed at any required place on the chest by means of a strap and buckle. By means of the gutta-percha tube the variations of the pres-

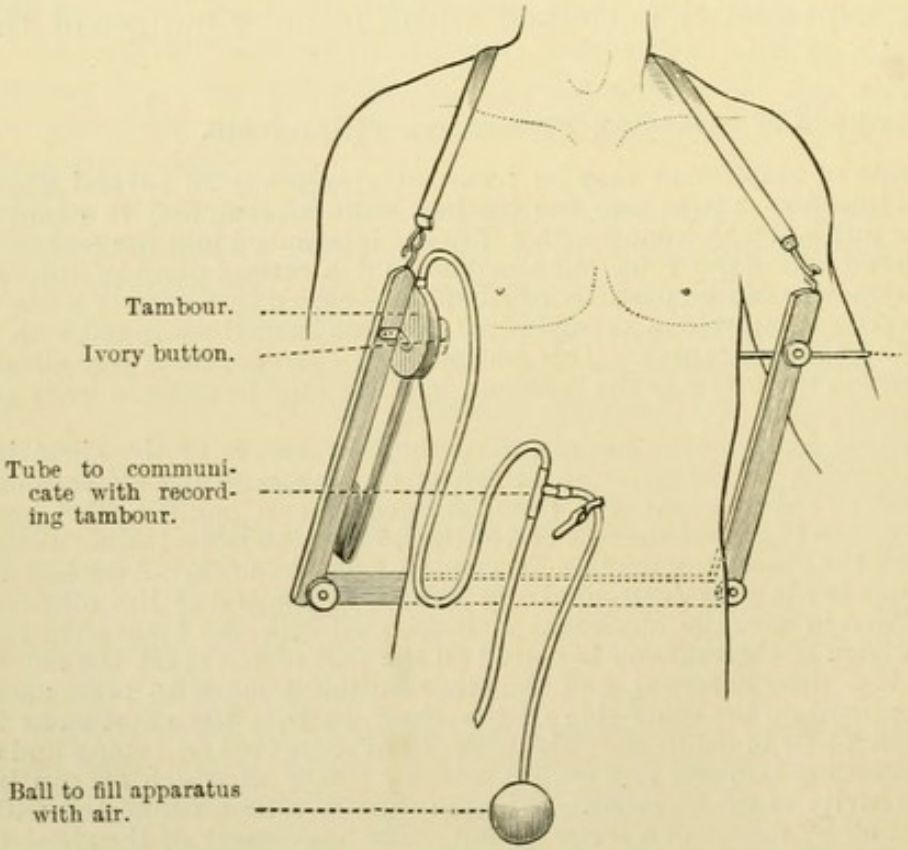


FIG. 328.—Stethograph. (Burdon-Sanderson.)

sure of air in the bag produced by the movements of the chest are communicated to a recording tambour. This apparatus is a simplified form of Marey's stethograph (fig. 327).

The variations of intrapleural pressure may be recorded by the introduction of a cannula into the pleural cavity, which is connected with a mercurial manometer.

Finally, it has been found possible in various ways to record the diaphragmatic movements by the insertion of an elastic bag connected with a tambour into the abdomen below it (**phrenograph**), by the insertion of needles into different parts of its structure, or by recording the contraction of isolated strips of the diaphragm. Such a strip attached in the rabbit to the xiphisternal cartilage may be detached, and attached by a thread to a recording lever. This method was largely used by Head; this strip serves as a sample of the diaphragm.

Fig. 329 shows a tracing obtained in this way; but in tracings taken with a

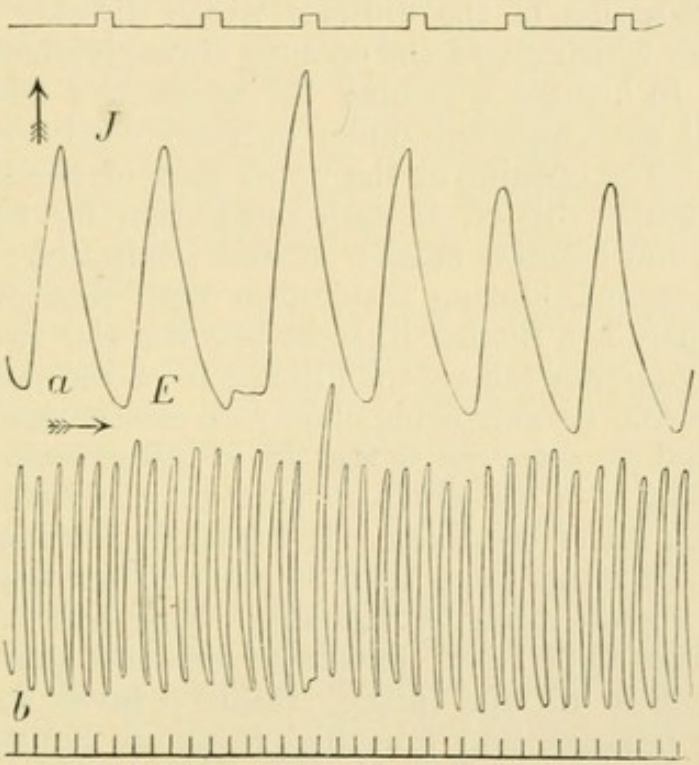


FIG. 329.—Tracing of the normal diaphragm respirations of rabbit. *a*, with quick movement of drum. *b*, with slow movement. The upstrokes represent inspiration; the downstrokes, expiration. To be read from left to right. The time tracing in each case represents seconds. (Marckwald.)

stethograph, or any of the numerous arrangements of tambours which are applied to the chest-walls of men and animals, the large up-and-down strokes due to the respiratory movements have upon them smaller waves due to heart-beats.

The acts of expansion and contraction of the chest take up a nearly equal time. The act of inspiring air, however, especially in women and children, is a little shorter than that of expelling it, and there is commonly a very slight pause between the end of expiration and the beginning of the next inspiration.

If the ear is placed in contact with the wall of the chest, or is separated from it only by a good conductor of sound or stethoscope, a faint *respiratory* or *vesicular murmur* is heard during inspiration. This sound varies somewhat in different parts—being loudest or coarsest in the neighbourhood of the trachea and large bronchi

(tracheal and bronchial breathing), and fading off into a faint sighing as the ear is placed at a distance from these (vesicular breathing). It is best heard in children, and in them a faint murmur is heard in expiration also. The cause of the vesicular murmur has received various explanations; but most observers hold that the sound is produced by the air passing through the glottis and larger tubes, and that this sound is modified in its conduction through the substance of the lung. The alterations in the normal breath sounds, and the various additions to them that occur in different diseased conditions, can only be properly studied at the bedside.

During the action of the muscles which directly draw air into the chest, those which guard the opening through which it enters are not passive. In hurried breathing the instinctive dilatation of the nostrils is well seen, although under ordinary conditions it may not be noticeable. The opening at the upper part of the larynx or rima glottidis is slightly dilated at each inspiration for the more ready passage of air, and becomes smaller at each expiration; its condition, therefore, corresponds during respiration with that of the walls of the chest. There is a further likeness between the two acts in that, under ordinary circumstances, the dilatation of the rima glottidis is a muscular act and its narrowing chiefly an elastic recoil.

Terms used to express Quantity of Air breathed.—a. *Tidal air* is the quantity of air which is habitually and almost uniformly changed in each act of breathing. In a healthy adult man it averages about 500 c.c., or rather more than 30 cubic inches, according to the recent measurements made by Haldane. This will be expanded at body temperature to 600 c.c. It will be seen that this amount of air is not sufficient to fill the lungs. Haldane gives the capacity of the upper air passages and bronchial tubes as 200 c.c., and if this estimate is correct, about a third of the tidal air is required to fill this dead space. At the end of an expiration, however, the tubes and alveoli are not empty of air, and the sudden inrush of atmospheric air during inspiration effects a complete mixture of this air with that left in the air passages; the air in the axial stream of the current will penetrate as far as the alveoli, but what is sucked into the alveoli is mainly some of the mixture from the bronchial passages, and that in turn is derived from the mixture (containing more atmospheric air in proportion) in the upper air cavities. During expiration the air which leaves the lungs will come in part from the alveoli, but the effect of the stream of outgoing air is mainly as before, to effect a thorough admixture of the air in the intermediate air passages; thus the alveolar air will become mixed with that in the bronchial tubes, and that in turn will be mixed with that in the upper air chambers. In a succession of alternate inspirations and expirations adequate ventilation is secured, but obviously the composition of the expired

air is not the same as that of alveolar air, for the latter, though it is ultimately breathed out, is diluted on its upward journey by mixture with the bronchial air, and that in its turn with the air of the upper air chambers; in other words, the expired air is alveolar air (rich in carbon dioxide) diluted with bronchial air (richer in oxygen) and with atmospheric air (still richer in oxygen). No doubt diffusion of gases occurs as well, oxygen diffusing inwards and carbon dioxide outwards, but this molecular movement is too slow to be of any real use in aërating the blood, for almost immediately the respiratory movements cease, death occurs.

b. *Complemental air* is the quantity over and above this which can be drawn into the lungs in the deepest inspiration; its amount averages 100 cubic inches, or about 1600 c.c.

c. *Reserve* or *supplemental air.*—After an ordinary expiration, such as that which expels the breathing or tidal air, a certain quantity of air, about 100 cubic inches (1600 c.c.) remains in the lungs, which may be expelled by a forcible and deeper expiration. This is termed *reserve* or *supplemental air.*

d. *Residual air* is the quantity which still remains in the lungs after the most violent expiratory effort. Its amount depends in great measure on the absolute size of the chest, but may be estimated at about 100 cubic inches, or about 1600 c.c.

The total quantity of air which passes into and out of the lungs of an adult, at rest, in 24 hours, varies from 400,000 (Marcet) to 680,000 (Hutchinson) cubic inches. This quantity, however, is increased, and may be more than doubled by exertion.

e. *Respiratory* or *Vital Capacity.*—The vital capacity of the chest is indicated by the quantity of air which a person can expel from his lungs by a forcible expiration after the deepest inspiration possible. The average capacity of an adult, at 15·4° C. (60° F.), is about 225 to 250 cubic inches, or 3500 to 4000 c.c. It is the sum of the complemental, tidal, and supplemental air.

The *respiratory* capacity, or as John Hutchinson called it, *vital* capacity, is usually measured by a modified gasometer or *spirometer*, into which the experimenter breathes,—making the most prolonged expiration possible after the deepest possible inspiration. The quantity of air which is thus expelled from the lungs is indicated by the height to which the air-chamber of the spirometer rises; and by means of a scale placed in connection with this, the number of cubic inches is read off. Haldane measures the volume of air expired by the reduction which takes place in the volume of the body when placed within a plethysmograph large enough to take a man, with the exception of his head.

The *number* of respirations in a healthy adult person usually ranges from 14 to 18 per minute. It is greater in infancy and childhood. It varies also much according to different circumstances, such as exercise or rest, health or disease, etc. Variations in the number of respirations correspond ordinarily with similar variations in the

pulsations of the heart. In health the proportion is about 1 to 4, or 1 to 5, and when the rapidity of the heart's action is increased, that of the chest movement is commonly increased also; but not in every case in equal proportion. It happens occasionally in disease, especially of the lungs or air passages, that the number of *respiratory* acts increases in quicker proportion than the beats of the *pulse;* and, in other affections, much more commonly, that the number of the pulse-beats is greater in proportion than that of the respirations.

The Force of Inspiratory and Expiratory Muscles.—The force with which the inspiratory muscles are capable of acting is greatest in individuals of the height of from five feet seven inches to five feet eight inches, and will elevate a column of nearly three inches (about 60 mm.) of mercury. Above this height the force decreases as the stature increases; so that the average of men of six feet can elevate only about two and a half inches of mercury. The force manifested in the strongest expiratory acts is, on the average, one-third greater than that exercised in inspiration. But this difference is in great measure due to the power exerted by the elastic reaction of the walls of the chest; and it is also much influenced by the disproportionate strength which the expiratory muscles attain, from their being called into use for other purposes than that of simple expiration. The force of the inspiratory act is, therefore, better adapted than that of the expiratory for testing the muscular strength of the body. (John Hutchinson.)

In ordinary quiet breathing, there is a negative pressure of only 1 mm. during inspiration, and a positive pressure of from 2 to 3 mm. mercury during expiration.

The instrument used by Hutchinson to gauge the inspiratory and expiratory power was a mercurial manometer, to which was attached a tube fitting the nostrils, and through which the inspiratory or expiratory effort was made.

The greater part of the force exerted in deep inspiration is employed in overcoming the resistance offered by the elasticity of the lungs.

In man the pressure exerted by the elasticity of the lungs alone is about 6 mm. of mercury. This is estimated by tying a manometer into the trachea of a dead subject, and observing the rise of mercury that occurs on puncture of the chest-walls. If the chest is distended beforehand so as to imitate a forcible inspiration, a much larger rise (30 mm.) of the mercury is obtained. In the body this elastic force is assisted by the contraction of the plain muscular fibres of the alveoli and bronchial tubes, the pressure of which probably does not exceed 1 or 2 mm. Hutchinson calculated that the total force to be overcome by the muscles in the act of inspiring 200 cubic inches of air is more than 450 lbs.

It is possible that the contractile power which the bronchial tubes

and air-vesicles possess, by means of their *muscular fibres*, may assist in expiration; but it is more likely that the chief purpose of this muscular tissue is to regulate and adapt, in some measure, the quantity of air admitted to the lungs, and to each part of them, according to the supply of blood: the muscular tissue also contracts upon and gradually expels collections of mucus, which may have accumulated within the tubes, and which cannot be ejected by forced expiratory efforts, owing to collapse or other morbid conditions of the portion of lung connected with the obstructed tubes (Gairdner).

The Respiratory Centre.

In the central nervous system there is a specialised small district called the *respiratory centre*. This gives out impulses which travel down the spinal cord to the centres of the spinal nerves that innervate the muscles of respiration. It also receives various afferent fibres, the most important of which are contained in the trunk of the vagus. The vagus is chiefly an afferent nerve in relation to respiration. It, however, also is in a minor degree efferent, for it supplies the muscular tissue of the lungs and bronchial tubes, and exercises a trophic influence on the lung.

The respiratory centre was discovered by Flourens; it is situated at the tip of the calamus scriptorius, and coincides in position with the sensory centre of the vagus. The existence of subsidiary respiratory centres in the spinal cord has been mooted, but the balance of experimental evidence is against their existence. Flourens found that when the respiratory centre is destroyed, respiration at once ceases, and the animal dies. He therefore called it the "vital knot" (nœud vitale).

The centre is affected not only by the afferent impulses which reach it by such nerves as the vagus, but also by those from the cerebrum; so that we have a limited amount of voluntary control over the respiratory movements.

The question has been much debated whether the activity of the respiratory centre is *automatic* or *reflex*. The word automatic is not a very happy one, but the meaning is that the rhythmic discharges proceeding from the centre depend on local changes induced by the condition of its blood supply. The word *reflex* implies that the rhythm of the centre is due to the stimulations it receives from afferent nerves. In other words, the question before us is whether we have to deal with chemical stimuli *via* the blood, or with nervous stimuli *via* afferent nerves. There is no doubt that under normal circumstances we have to deal with both kinds of stimulus, and in abnormal conditions one or the other may rise into prominence; thus the great increase of respiratory activity (*dyspnœa*) which occurs during asphyxia, is undoubtedly due to the stimulation of

the centre by the great increase of carbonic acid in the venous blood. On the other hand, the effects on respiration produced by the artificial stimulation of nerves are extremely pronounced.

It will be best to consider the two kinds of stimuli separately, and we will take the nervous stimuli first.

The Nervous Cause of Respiration.

During fœtal life, the need of the embryo for oxygen is small, and is amply met by the transference of oxygen from the maternal blood through the thin walls of the fœtal capillaries in the placenta. But when the child is born, this source of oxygen is no longer available, and the increasing venosity of the blood stimulates the respiratory centre to action, and is the essential cause of the first inspiratory efforts the new-born child makes to obtain the oxygen it requires by breathing. If the placental circulation is stopped while the child is still *in utero*, respiratory efforts are also made. But in the new-born child, the sensory nerves of the skin have also an effect, and the action of the air on its body surface is no doubt an accessory cause of the first respirations, and these may in feeble children be increased by stimulating the skin for instance by the application of cold water to it. This in fact always causes deep inspirations, even in the adult.

There are many other nerves, stimulation of which influences the respiratory act; for instance, stimulation of the central end of the splanchnics causes expiration. Stimulation of the central end of the glosso-pharyngeal causes an inhibition of the respiratory movements for a short period; this accounts for the very necessary cessation of breathing during swallowing. Stimulation of the central end of the cut superior laryngeal nerve, or of its terminations in the mucous membrane of the larynx, as when a crumb is "swallowed the wrong way," produces an increase of expiratory efforts, culminating in coughing.

These nerves, however, are none of them of such importance or are in such constant action as the vagi. Still, respiration continues after the vagi are cut. The character of the respiration becomes altered, especially if both nerves are severed; it is slower and deeper. This is due to the cessation of the impulses that normally run up the vagi to the respiratory centre. The animal, however, lives a considerable time; a warm-blooded animal usually dies after about a week or ten days from *vagus pneumonia*, due to the removal of trophic influences from the lungs. Cold-blooded animals live longer; they exhibit fatty degeneration of the heart-muscle also.

We may, however, best describe the action of the vagi by giving an account of the very systematic investigation of their functions, which was carried out by Dr Head.

His method of recording the movements was by means of that convenient slip of the diaphragm which is found in rabbits (see p. 355).

His method of dividing the vagus was by freezing it; he laid it across a copper wire, the end of which was placed in a freezing mixture. This method is free from the disadvantage which a cut with a knife or scissors possesses, namely, a stimulation at the moment of section. On dividing one vagus, respiration became slightly slower and deeper; on dividing the second nerve, this effect was much more marked.

On exciting the central end of the divided nerve, inspiratory efforts increased until at last the diaphragm came to a standstill in the inspiratory position. But if a weak stimulus was employed, the reverse was the case; the expiratory efforts increased, inspiration becoming weaker and weaker, until at last the diaphragm stopped in the position of expiration.

Most of these facts were known previously, but the interpretation of them, in the light of further experiments immediately to be described, is the following:—

That there are in the vagus two sets of fibres, one of which produces an increased activity of the inspiratory part of the respiratory centre, and the other an increased activity of the expiratory part of that centre. Stimulation of the first stops expiration and produces inspiration; stimulation of the second does the reverse.

The question now is, What is it that normally produces this alternate stimulation of the two sets of fibres? If we discover this we shall discover the prime moving cause in the alternation of the inspiratory and expiratory acts. It was sought and found in the alternate distension and contraction of the air-vesicles of the lungs where the vagus terminations are situated.

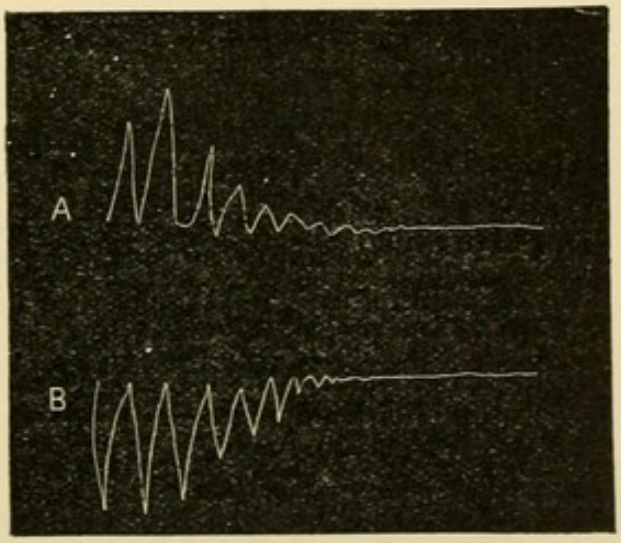


FIG. 330.—Tracings of diaphragm. The upward movements of the tracings represent inspiration; the downward movements, expiration. A, result of positive, B, of negative ventilation. (After Head.)

In one series of experiments *positive ventilation* was performed; that is, air was pumped repeatedly into the lungs, and so increased their normal distension; this was found to decrease the inspiratory contractions of the diaphragm, until at last they ceased altogether, and the diaphragm stood still in the expiratory position (fig. 330, A).

In a second series of experiments, *negative ventilation* was performed; that is, the air was pumped repeatedly out of the lungs, and a condition of collapse of the air-vesicles produced. This was found to increase the inspiratory con-

tractions of the diaphragm, expiration became less and less, and at last the diaphragm assumed the position of inspiratory standstill (fig. 330, B).

Distension of the air-vesicles, therefore, stimulates the fibres of the vagus which excite the expiratory phase of respiration; collapse stimulates those which excite the inspiratory phase.

Ordinary respiration is an alternate positive and negative ventilation, though not so excessive as in the experiments just described. Inspiration is positive ventilation, and so provides the nervous mechanism of respiration with a stimulus that leads to expiration. Expiration is a negative ventilation, and so provides the stimulus that leads to inspiration.

It is probable that of the two sets of impulses, those which are started by the inspiratory movement play a more active part in the regulation of respiration than those started by the expiratory movement. Gad explains the latter by supposing they are simply due to a cessation of the former, or, in other words, that there only exists one class of afferent fibres in the vagus concerned in respiration. This view has not, however, met with general acceptance.

Apnœa.—If positive and negative ventilation are used together rapidly and alternately at a rate quicker than the respiratory rhythm, both inspiratory and expiratory processes are inhibited, and the respiration ceases for a short time. This follows naturally from the experiments previously described. This can be done on an animal with a pair of bellows fixed to a tube in the trachea; or voluntarily by oneself taking a number of deep breaths rapidly. This condition, called *apnœa*, is not due, as at one time supposed, to over-oxygenation of the blood, but is produced reflexly. Under normal circumstances arterial blood is always fully oxygenated. It is observed if inert gases, like nitrogen or hydrogen, are used instead of air. The pause, however, is then shorter, as the blood becomes venous, and in a short time stimulates the respiratory centre to activity.

Under abnormal circumstances, namely, after division of the vagi, apnœa cannot obviously be due to such reflex action. Fredericq holds that even ordinary apnœa has a chemical rather than a nervous origin. He attributes it, however, not to over-oxygenation, but to a lessening of the carbonic acid in the blood.

The Chemical Cause of Respiration.

A consideration of apnœa thus leads us back to the study of the chemical stimuli that play their part in the respiratory process. Their importance has been recently demonstrated by Haldane and Priestley. In the first place, they introduced a new and simple method of obtaining the composition of the air in the alveoli. It consists in collecting a sample of air expired at the end of a deep

expiration following an ordinary quiet inspiration, and another similar sample following a quiet expiration; the mean of the two gives the composition of alveolar air. This is much simpler than the method formerly employed by Pflüger, which consisted in pumping off the air from an occluded portion of a dog's lung by means of a fine elastic catheter introduced *via* the trachea and bronchus. It has the further advantage that it can be applied to the human subject.

They found that, under constant atmospheric pressure, in man the alveolar air contains a nearly constant percentage of carbon dioxide in the same person. In different individuals this percentage varies somewhat, but averages 5·1 per cent. of an atmosphere in men, and 4·7 in women and children.

With varying atmospheric pressures, the percentage varies inversely as the atmospheric pressure, so that the pressure or tension of the carbon dioxide remains constant. The oxygen pressure, however, varies widely under the same conditions.

These observations and the next to be immediately described furnish the chemical key to the cause of the amount of pulmonary ventilation, and play an important part in conjunction with the respiratory nervous system in the regulation of breathing. For the respiratory centre is not only affected by the impulses reaching it by the vagi and other afferent nerves, but it is also very sensitive to any rise in the tension of carbon dioxide in the blood that supplies it. The changes in the tension of this gas in the arterial blood are normally proportional to the changes in the carbon dioxide pressure in the alveoli, and the changes in the lung alveoli are transmitted to the respiratory centre by the blood. They found that a rise 0·2 per cent. in the alveolar carbon dioxide pressure is sufficient to double the amount of alveolar ventilation during rest. During work the alveolar carbon dioxide pressure increases slightly, and the pulmonary ventilation is consequently increased.

Changes in the oxygen pressure within wide limits have no such influence; the normal chemical stimulus to respiration is, therefore, presence of an increase of carbon dioxide, and not diminution of oxygen. If these limits are exceeded, as when the oxygen pressure falls below 13 per cent. of an atmosphere, the respiratory centre begins to be excited by want of oxygen, for the alveolar carbon dioxide pressure is lower than normal under such circumstances.

We have seen that apnœa is the name given to the cessation of breathing which temporarily follows excessive ventilation of the lungs, as when one takes a number of deep breaths in rapid succession. The deep and rapid breathing clears out the carbon dioxide in the alveoli until it is so small in quantity that it is insufficient to excite the respiratory centre *viâ* the blood to action, the oxygen

pressure at the same time remaining sufficiently high not to excite the centre either. Hence breathing ceases. As already stated, the old idea that apnœa is due to over-oxygenation of the blood has been abundantly disproved; but Head and others have gone to an extreme in assuming that apnœa is purely nervous in origin. Haldane, like Fredericq, considers it is unnecessary to assume the existence of a vagus apnœa in man at all under normal circumstances. In normal breathing both nervous and chemical factors are at play; it is probably the *rhythm* of respiration which is mainly under nervous control, while the amount of ventilation (dependent chiefly on the *depth* of each respiratory act) is especially regulated by the chemical stimulus.

Special Respiratory Acts.

Coughing.—In the act of coughing there is first of all a deep inspiration, followed by an expiration; but the latter, instead of being easy and uninterrupted, as in normal breathing, is obstructed, the glottis being momentarily closed by the approximation of the vocal cords. The abdominal muscles, then strongly acting, push up the viscera against the diaphragm, and thus make pressure on the air in the lungs until its tension is sufficient to noisily open the vocal cords which oppose its outward passage. In this way considerable force is exercised, and mucus or any other matter that may need expulsion from the air passages is quickly and sharply expelled by the outstreaming current of air. The act is a reflex one, the sensory surface which is excited being the mucous membrane of the larynx, and the superior laryngeal nerve is the afferent nerve; stimulation of other parts of the respiratory mucous membrane will also produce cough, and the point of bifurcation of the trachea is specially sensitive. Other sensory surfaces may also act as the "*signal surface*" for a cough. Thus, a cold draught on the skin, or tickling the external auditory meatus, in some people will set up a cough.

The question has been discussed whether such a thing as a stomach cough exists; it has not been produced experimentally, but there is no reason why irritation of the gastric mucous membrane, supplied as it is by the vagus, should not cause the reflex act of coughing.

Sneezing.—The same remarks that apply to coughing are almost exactly applicable to the act of sneezing; but, in this instance, the blast of air, on escaping from the lungs, is directed, by an instinctive contraction of the pillars of the fauces and descent of the soft palate, chiefly through the nose, and any offending matter is thence expelled.

The "signal surface" is usually the nasal mucous membrane, but here, as in coughing, other causes (such as a bright light) will sometimes set the reflex going.

Hiccough is an involuntary sudden contraction of the diaphragm, causing an inspiration which is suddenly arrested by the closure of the glottis, causing a characteristic sound. It arises from gastric irritation.

Snoring is due to vibration of the soft palate.

Sobbing consists of a series of convulsive inspirations at the moment of which the glottis is partially closed.

Sighing and Yawning are emotional forms of inspiration, the latter associated with stretching movements of jaws and limbs. They appear to be efforts of nature to correct, by an extra deep inspiration, the venosity of the blood due to inactivity produced by ennui or grief. Their contagious character is due to sympathy.

Among abnormal disturbances of the nervous mechanism of respiration, the following diseases must be mentioned: laryngismus stridulus, asthma, and whooping-cough.

Cheyne-Stokes respiration is due to rhythmical activity of the respiratory centre. It reminds one somewhat of the Traube-Hering

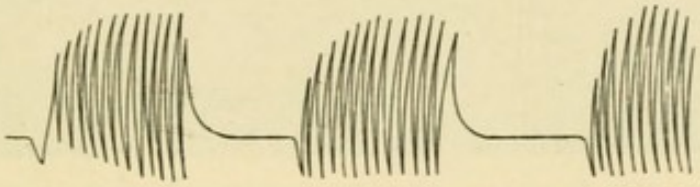


FIG. 331.—Cheyne-Stokes respiration. (After Waller.)

waves due to a similar rhythmical activity of the vaso-motor centre. It is seen in many nervous diseases and in fatty degeneration of the heart. A typical tracing of the condition is given above (fig. 331). It is seen to a slight extent during ordinary sleep, and is very marked in hibernating animals.

Pembrey and Pitts have recently taken graphic records of this condition in the hibernating dormouse, hedgehog, marmot and bat.

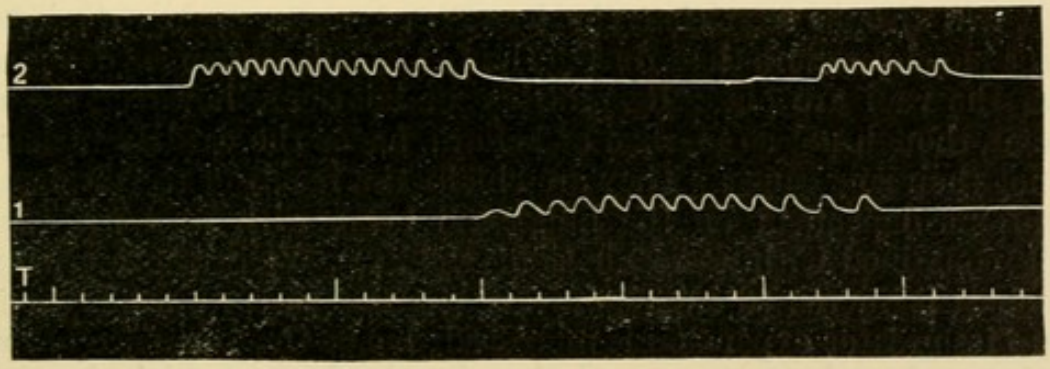


FIG. 332.—Cheyne-Stokes respiration in hibernating dormouse. The line marked T gives time in seconds. Line 1 gives the tracing of a respiratory group which occurred once every 80 seconds, the temperature of the animal being 11° C. On warming the animal to 13° C. the respiratory groups became more frequent (line 2). On warming the animal still further it awakened, and breathing, at first accompanied by shivering, became continuous. (Pembrey and Pitts.)

In some cases the respiration has the typical Cheyne-Stokes character, with a gradual waxing and waning (fig. 332). In other cases periods

of respiratory activity alternate with periods of apnœa, but all the respiratory efforts are about equal in force. (Biot's respiration.)

The Effect of Respiration on the Circulation.

The main effect of respiration on the circulation is shown in the accompanying figure. It will be noticed that the arterial pressure

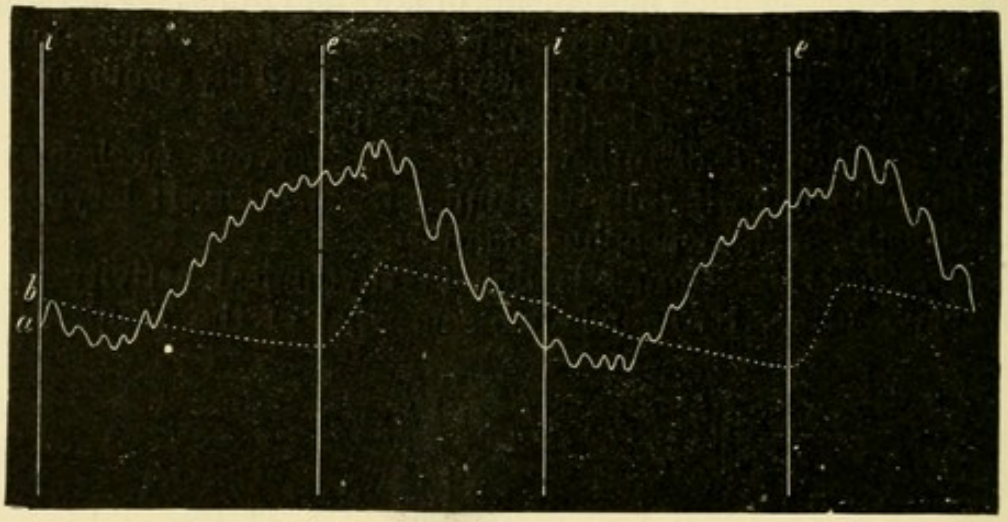


FIG. 333.—Comparison of blood-pressure curve with curve of intra-thoracic pressure. (To be read from left to right.) *a* is the curve of blood-pressure with its respiratory undulations, the slower beats on the descent being very marked; *b* is the curve of intra-thoracic pressure obtained by connecting one limb of a manometer with the pleural cavity. Inspiration begins at *i* and expiration at *e*. The intra-thoracic pressure rises very rapidly after the cessation of the inspiratory effort, and then slowly falls as the air issues from the chest; at the beginning of the inspiratory effort the fall becomes more rapid. (M. Foster.)

rises with inspiration and falls with expiration, but that the two events are not quite synchronous, the rise of pressure beginning a little later than the inspiratory act, and the fall a little later than the expiratory act.

It will also be seen that the heart beats more rapidly during the rise of blood-pressure than during the fall. This difference disappears when the vagi are cut. Respiratory undulations, however, are still present, though not so marked as before; hence the cardiac variations are not their sole cause. They are chiefly the result of the mechanical conditions dependent on the lungs and heart with its large vessels being contained within the air-tight thorax. When the capacity of the chest is increased in inspiration, the tension of the lung tissue due to its greater expansion is increased; hence the difference between the intra-pleural pressure, and that in the lungs (which is atmospheric) becomes more marked, for the difference of pressure is to be measured by the elastic force of the lung tending to produce its collapse. If the intra-thoracic pressure is measured, it is found that it varies from -5 to -7 mm. of mercury at the end of expiration to -30 at the end of a deep inspiration; that is to say, from 5 to 7 to

30 mm. less than the atmospheric pressure (760 mm. of mercury). The pressure outside the heart and large vessels is correspondingly diminished during inspiration to the same extent, and produces its main effect (distension) upon the veins because they are never fully distended, and because the pressure within them is low. This increase in the "pressure gradient" (*i.e.*, the *rate* of fall of pressure) between the *intra* and *extra* thoracic great veins results in a proportionately more rapid flow of blood into the thorax, and therefore into the right side of the heart; for within certain limits the right heart can be easily expanded more fully if a greater supply of blood is provided. Consequently, the output from the right side increases, and thus *viâ* the pulmonary circuit the inflow into the left heart is increased; in its turn, therefore, the output from the left ventricle rises, and so the aortic pressure is raised. If the aorta and its branches within the thorax were as undistended as the veins and right auricle, this effect would be counteracted, but inasmuch as the aorta and arteries are thick-walled and already fully distended, an increased inflow into them must lead to a further rise of pressure. For we may altogether neglect the change in rate of flow along these vessels due to the change in pressure gradient, not because it is insufficient in itself to produce a distinct change in the flow, if the blood were free to move easily, but because the outflow from the arteries has to take place through a high peripheral resistance, and this small pressure change is not able to exert any appreciable effect in accelerating the flow through such a high peripheral resistance. We must note, too, that the change in pressure gradient would tend to decrease the outflow, not to increase it. All these conditions are reversed when, with the expiratory act, the thorax returns to its former size, and the arterial blood-pressure falls in consequence.

The effect of inspiration on arterial blood-pressure is at first assisted by the pressure of the diaphragm as it descends on the abdominal veins, and blood is thus sent upwards into the chest by the vena cava inferior. On the other hand, this is to some extent counterbalanced by the obstruction in the passage of the blood downwards in the abdominal aorta, and upwards from the veins of the lower extremities, but again the veins are the vessels more easily influenced by moderate changes in external pressure.

We now come to the cause of the delay we have noted in the blood-pressure tracing in following the respiratory movements. One effect of the diminished intra-thoracic pressure which occurs during inspiration is an increase in the capacity of the pulmonary capillaries, and thus, though more blood is sent into the pulmonary circulation, the resulting increase in outflow is for a time delayed because the capacity of the pulmonary vessels has simultaneously become greater. As soon as this increase in capacity is satisfied, the accelerated flow

from the right heart makes itself felt on the left side with the results already explained. In some animals, such as the rabbit, the rise of blood-pressure occurs during expiration, and the fall accompanies inspiration. This is simply because the rabbit is an animal which breathes very quickly; we have seen there is a delay in the inspiratory rise of pressure; if the animal breathes quickly enough, inspiration is over and expiration has begun before the rise of pressure occurs. By making the rabbit breathe slowly (Fredericq accomplished this by cooling the medulla oblongata), the tracing obtained is similar to that which is got from an animal like a dog, which normally breathes slowly.

When the chest of an animal is freely opened, and artificial respiration performed in order to keep it alive, respiratory undulations on the arterial pressure curve are still seen, but they are in the reverse direction. These obviously cannot be produced in the mechanical way just described. The forcible inflation with air at first squeezes more blood out of the alveolar capillaries, that is, the capacity of these vessels is diminished, and this temporarily increases the quantity of blood thrown into the left ventricle, and so causes a rise of arterial pressure. But the increased intra-alveolar pressure has also been shown to lead to an increased resistance to the pulmonary circulation, and the rate of flow into the left side consequently falls; the aortic pressure therefore falls, while the pressure in the pulmonary artery rises. If the high positive intra-pulmonary air-pressure persisted, a condition would soon be reached, in which the increased blood-pressure in the pulmonary artery would lead to a greater flow, and the aortic blood-pressure would remain constant; this, however, has been shown to take a much longer time than an ordinary respiration period. Hence the main effect of inflations of the lungs at the ordinary respiration rate is to diminish the aortic blood-pressure; this rises again, for the opposite reasons, in the intervals of deflation which correspond to expiration.

If artificial respiration is performed while the thorax is not opened, a further complication arises from the fact that the increased intra-pleural pressure decreases the rate of flow of blood into the thorax, and under these conditions the blood-pressure in the pulmonary artery falls, and in consequence the fall in the aortic blood-pressure becomes more marked with each inflation than it does when the thorax is open.

The last point of detail we have to consider is the cause of the greater frequency of the heart during the inspiratory phase, a phenomenon which is evidently due to lessening of vagus action, since the inequality of the heart rate disappears when the vagi are cut. The question before us is, What is the cause of the rhythm in the activity of the vagus centre? There appear to be two factors

concerned in its causation: one is a reflex action, the other is what may be termed a central overflow. We will consider these separately.

1. *The reflex.* Stimulation of the pulmonary branches of the vagus by electrical stimuli, or of their terminations in the alveoli by certain irritating vapours like bromine, causes a reflex inhibition of the heart; great distension of the alveoli has a similar effect, but moderate distension, such as occurs in an ordinary inspiration, has the opposite reflex effect, causing the heart to beat more rapidly. The afferent fibres from the pulmonary alveoli enter the bulb by the upper set of the rootlets of the combined glossopharyngeal-vagus-spinal accessory nucleus (the *a* group, p. 247). Sometimes the rootlets of this group are three in number, sometimes two. When there are two, the lower rootlet, when there are three, the lower two rootlets, contain the fibres in question (Cadman).

2. *The overflow.* The respiratory centre exhibits alternate phases of activity, or what is termed a rhythmical action. It is in close anatomical connection with two other important centres in the bulb, namely, the cardio-inhibitory and the vaso-motor centres. Considering how closely these three centres are connected by association fibres, it is not surprising that the cells of the two latter centres should be affected by the rhythm of the cells of the respiratory centre, and the term overflow is an expression that roughly indicates what occurs. This overflow from the respiratory centre affects its two neighbours in the same way. During inspiration the activity of both the cardio-inhibitory centre and of the vaso-motor centre is diminished, hence the heart beats faster. The factor which we have termed the overflow is more important than that which we have described as the reflex.

These facts show us that the parallelism of the respiratory and arterial pressure curves is not merely the result of the mechanical conditions already described, though these are the most important. But in the normal condition with the thorax closed, and the vagi uncut, certain nervous factors come also into play. During inspiration these are:—

1. A reflex from the terminations of the vagi in the pulmonary alveoli, which produces a lessening of vagus action, and so quickening of the heart.

2. An overflow from the respiratory to the cardio-inhibitory centre, which is still more powerful in producing the same effect.

3. An overflow from the respiratory to the vaso-motor centre, which produces decreased constriction of the systemic arterioles. By itself the third nervous factor would lessen arterial pressure, but in conjunction with the other two, and in conjunction also with the mechanical conditions described, the main result is a rise of arterial pressure during inspiration.

Valsalva's Experiment.—In speaking of the effects of expiration, we have considered only ordinary quiet expiration. With forced expiration, there is considerable impediment to the circulation; this is markedly seen in what is called Valsalva's experiment. This consists in making a forced expiratory effort with the mouth and nose shut; the effects are most marked in people with an easily compressible thorax. By such an act the intrathoracic and abdominal pressures rise so greatly that the outlets of the veins of the limbs, head, and neck into the thorax are blocked. At first, the blood in the abdominal veins is drawn on into the right heart; this produces a slight rise of arterial pressure; but soon, if the effort is continued, the lungs are emptied of blood, the filling of the right heart is opposed, and the blood is dammed back in the peripheral veins, where the pressure rises to mean arterial pressure. The arterial pressure begins then to fall; but before any considerable fall occurs, the expiratory effort ceases from exhaustion of the subject of the experiment, and a deep inspiration is taken. During this inspiration, the blood delivered by the right heart is all used in the filling of the dilated and comparatively empty pulmonary vessels; thus several beats of the left ventricle become abortive, and produce no effect on the radial artery; the face blanches, and the subject becomes faint from cerebral anæmia.

Asphyxia.

Asphyxia may be produced in various ways: for example, by the prevention of the due entry of oxygen into the blood, either by direct obstruction of the trachea or other part of the respiratory passages, or by introducing instead of ordinary air a gas devoid of oxygen, or by interference with the due interchange of gases between the air and the blood.

The symptoms of asphyxia may be roughly divided into three stages: (1) the stage of exaggerated breathing; (2) the stage of convulsions; (3) the stage of exhaustion.

In the *first stage* the breathing becomes more rapid, and at the same time deeper than usual, inspiration at first being especially exaggerated and prolonged. The muscles of extraordinary inspiration are called into action, and the effort to respire is laboured and painful. This is soon followed by a similar increase in the expiratory efforts, which become excessively prolonged, being aided by all the muscles of extraordinary expiration. During this stage, which lasts a varying time from a minute upwards, according as the deprivation of oxygen is sudden or gradual, the lips become blue, the eyes are prominent, and the expression intensely anxious. The prolonged respirations are accompanied by a distinctly audible sound; the muscles attached to the chest stand out as distinct cords. This stage

includes the two conditions *hyperpnœa* (excessive breathing) and *dyspnœa* (difficult breathing), which follows later. It is due to the increasingly powerful stimulation of the respiratory centre by the increasingly venous blood.

In the *second stage*, which is not marked by any distinct line of demarcation from the first, the violent expiratory efforts become convulsive, and then give way, in men and other warm-blooded animals, to general convulsions, which arise from the further stimulation of the centres in brain and cord by venous blood. Spasms of the muscles of the body in general occur, and not of the respiratory muscles only. The convulsive stage is a short one, and lasts less than a minute.

The *third stage*, or stage of *exhaustion*. In it the respirations all but cease, the spasms give way to flaccidity of the muscles, there is insensibility, the conjunctivæ are insensitive and the pupils are widely dilated. Every now and then a prolonged sighing inspiration takes place, at longer and longer intervals, until breathing ceases altogether, and death ensues. During this stage the pulse is scarcely to be felt, but the heart may beat for some seconds after the respiration has stopped. The condition is due to the gradual paralysis of the centres by the prolonged action of the venous blood. This stage may last three minutes and upwards.

After death from asphyxia it is found in the great majority of cases that the right side of the heart, the pulmonary arteries, and the systemic veins are gorged with dark, almost black, blood, and the left side of the heart, the pulmonary veins, and the arteries are empty. The explanation of these appearances may be thus summarised: when oxygenation ceases, venous blood at first passes freely through the lungs to the left heart, and so to the great arteries. Owing to the stimulation of the vaso-motor centres by the venous blood, the arterioles, particularly those of the splanchnic area, are constricted; the arterial blood-pressure therefore rises, and the left side of the heart becomes distended. The highly venous blood passes through the arterioles, and, favoured by the laboured respiratory movements, arrives at the right side of the heart, which it fills and distends; the right side of the heart is becoming feebler at the same time, and therefore unable to effectively discharge its blood through the pulmonary circuit. Simultaneously the left ventricle is also becoming weakened, and therefore its suction action diminishes. In this way the blood is dammed back in the right heart and veins, and the left side of the heart therefore gets into the empty condition in which it is found after death. Some consider that the early onset of rigor mortis in the left ventricle may be in part a cause of its contracted and empty condition.

In the first and second stages of asphyxia, the arterial pressure

rises above the normal; this is due to the constriction of the arterioles. The fall of pressure in the last stage is mainly due to heart failure. If the vagi are not divided previously, the rise of pressure is much

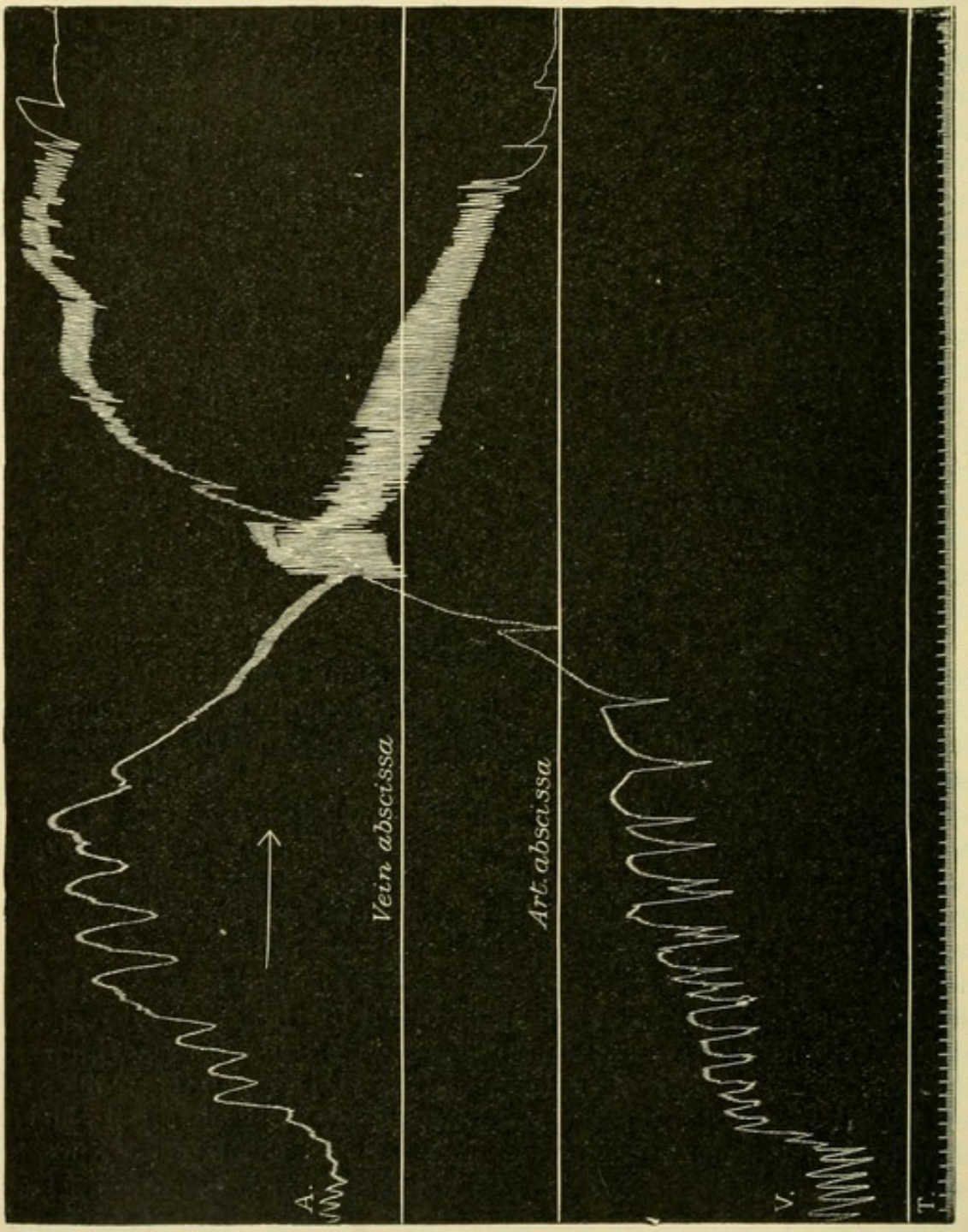


FIG. 334.—Tracing of asphyxia from a curarised cat; artificial respiration ceased at about the third time marking from the left. The upper tracing (A) is that of the arterial pressure, taken with a mercurial manometer. The lower tracing (V) which at first indicates negative pressure is that of the venous pressure taken with C. J. Martin's salt solution manometer.

less, and the heart beats very slowly: this enables the heart to last longer, and is due to excitation of the cardio-inhibitory centre by venous blood. The accompanying photograph of a tracing, which I owe to Dr C. J. Martin, shows these effects; it has been somewhat

reduced in size for purposes of reproduction. The lower tracing is that of venous pressure taken with a salt solution manometer from the jugular vein. It will be noticed that the fall of arterial pressure is accompanied with a great rise of venous pressure due to the venous congestion just described.

Effects of Breathing Gases other than the Atmosphere.

The diminution of oxygen has a less direct influence in the production of asphyxia than the increased amount of carbonic acid. Nevertheless, the fatal effect of **carbonic acid** in the blood when a due supply of oxygen is maintained, resembles rather the action of a narcotic poison than it does asphyxia.

Then, again, we must carefully distinguish the asphyxiating effect of an insufficient supply of oxygen from the directly poisonous action of such a gas as **carbonic oxide**, which is contained to a considerable amount in common coal-gas. The fatal effects often produced by this gas (as in accidents from burning charcoal stoves in small, close rooms) are due to its entering into combination with the hæmoglobin of the blood-corpuscles, and thus expelling the oxygen. Haldane has shown that animals can live in a pressure of two atmospheres of oxygen after all the hæmoglobin is taken up by carbonic oxide, for then sufficient oxygen is dissolved in the blood plasma. **Hydrogen** may take the place of nitrogen if the oxygen is in the usual proportion, with no marked ill effect. **Sulphuretted hydrogen** interferes with the oxygenation of blood. **Nitrous oxide** acts directly on the nervous system as a narcotic. Certain gases, such as **carbon dioxide** in more than a certain proportion; **sulphurous and other acid gases, ammonia, and chlorine** produce spasmodic closure of the glottis, and are irrespirable.

Alterations in the Atmospheric Pressure.

The normal condition of breathing is that the oxygen of the air breathed should be at the pressure of $\frac{1}{5}$ of the atmosphere, viz., $\frac{1}{5}$ of 760 mm. of mercury, or 152 mm., but considerable variations may occur without producing ill effects. This is due to the fact that the blood gases are mostly in a state of chemical combination, not of simple solution. Variations beyond certain limits are, however, fatal. When the tension of oxygen exceeds $3\frac{1}{2}$ atmospheres (*i.e.*, in air at a pressure of 17 atmospheres), slow but powerful poisonous (narcotic) effects are produced on all living matter. (Bert.) The excised sartorius is paralysed by about half an hour's exposure to 80 atmospheres of oxygen; and the excised frog's heart ceases to beat in about two hours under the same conditions. It is dangerous for men to work in caissons where the atmospheric pressure is greater than 4 atmospheres. Even lower pressures may be followed on "decompression" (*i.e.*, on coming out of the increased pressure), by what are called "bends," that is, pains in the joints and muscles, by paralysis, and auditory symptoms such as deafness and vertigo. The cause of such symptoms is the setting free of bubbles of nitrogen in the lymph spaces and capillaries; any oxygen set free is rapidly re-absorbed by the blood. Capillary embolism from gas bubbles in the central nervous system is the main cause of the paralysis. (Bert.) Prolonged exposure to even two atmospheres of oxygen is followed by pneumonia (Lorrain Smith), and so oxygen poisoning may be a secondary cause of the symptoms. Short shifts are essential for caisson workers, for then the body has not time to become saturated with gas at the caisson pressure. Decompression must also be gradual and slow.

A toad was but slightly effected by 5 minutes' exposure to 20 atmospheres of oxygen, but after 40 minutes on "decompression" it went into tetanic convulsions and died; the heart was distended with frothed blood; bubbles of gas were in all the lymph spaces, in the anterior chamber of the eye, and other parts. A mouse in a similar high pressure is narcotised, and on "decompression" convulsions and death ensue. (L. Hill.) Mechanical pressure by itself has little or no influence; thus frog's muscle is not injured by exposure to fluid pressure in salt solution equal

to 400 atmospheres. Crustacea are found alive on marine telegraph cables at a depth where the pressure is as great.

Turning now to diminution of pressure, we find that "mountain sickness" occurs at the height of 4800 metres, the summit of Mt. Blanc. Here the pressure of oxygen is only 11·53 per cent. of an atmosphere. The malady is increased by muscular effort, and is due to want of oxygen. In those who habitually live in high altitudes, the number of red blood-corpuscles is increased. Crocé-Spinelli, the balloonist, perished at an altitude of 8600 metres, where the tension of oxygen would be 7 per cent. of an atmosphere. His companion Tissandier recovered. In such cases muscular paralysis occurs before loss of consciousness. Higher ascents could be made by aeronauts if they breathed oxygen from a gas cylinder. (Bert.)

Chemistry of Respiration.

The intake of oxygen is the commencement, and the output of carbonic acid is the end of the series of changes known as respiration. The gaseous interchange in the lungs is called *external respiration.* The actual combustion processes take place all over the body, and constitute what is known as *internal* or *tissue-respiration.* The oxygen which goes into the blood is held there in loose combination as oxyhæmoglobin. In the tissues this substance parts with its respiratory oxygen. The oxygen does not necessarily undergo immediate union with carbon to form carbonic acid, and with hydrogen to form water, but, as in muscle (see p. 149), is held in reserve by the tissue itself. Of the ultimate products, the carbonic acid and a portion of the water find an outlet by the lungs.

Inspired and Expired Air.—The composition of the inspired or atmospheric air and the expired air may be compared in the following table:—

	Inspired air.	Expired air.
Oxygen . . .	20·96 vols. per cent.	16·03 vols. per cent.
Nitrogen . .	79 ,, ,,	79 ,, ,,
Carbonic acid .	0·04 ,, ,,	4·4 ,, ,,
Watery vapour .	variable	saturated
Temperature . .	,,	that of body (37° C.)

The nitrogen remains unchanged. The recently discovered gases argon, crypton, etc., are in the above table reckoned in with the nitrogen. They are, however, only present in minute quantities. The chief change is in the proportion of oxygen and carbonic acid. The loss of oxygen is about 5, the gain in carbonic acid about 4·5. If the inspired and expired airs are carefully measured at the same temperature and barometric pressure, the volume of expired air is thus found to be rather less than that of the inspired.* The conversion of oxygen into carbonic acid would not cause any change in the volume

* This diminution of volume will cause a slight rise in the proportionate volume of nitrogen per cent.

of the gas; for a molecule of oxygen (O_2) would give rise to a molecule of carbonic acid (CO_2) which would occupy the same volume (Avogadro's law). It must, however, be remembered that carbon is not the only element which is oxidised. Fat and proteid contain a number of atoms of hydrogen, which, during metabolism, are oxidised to form water; a small amount of oxygen is also used in the formation of urea. Carbohydrates contain sufficient oxygen in their own molecules to oxidise their hydrogen; hence the apparent loss of oxygen is least when a vegetable diet (that is, one consisting largely of starch and other carbohydrates) is taken, and greatest when much fat and proteid are eaten. The quotient $\frac{CO_2 \text{ given off}}{O_2 \text{ absorbed}}$ is called the *respiratory quotient*. Normally it is $\frac{4{\cdot}5}{5} = 0{\cdot}9$, but it varies considerably with diet as just stated.

The amount of respiratory interchange of gases is estimated by enclosing an animal in an air-tight chamber, except that there is a tube entering and another leaving it; by one tube oxygen or air can enter, and is measured by a gas-meter as it passes in. The air is drawn through the chamber, and leaves it by the other tube; this air has been altered by the respiration of the animal, and in it the carbonic acid and water are estimated; it is drawn into bottles containing a known amount of an alkali; this combines with the carbonic acid and is increased in weight: the increase in weight gives the amount of carbonic acid; the alkali used in Regnault and Reiset's apparatus was potash; Pettenkofer used baryta water; Haldane recommends soda-lime. The water is estimated in bottles containing pumice moistened with sulphuric acid.

The accompanying drawing (fig. 335) shows the essential part of

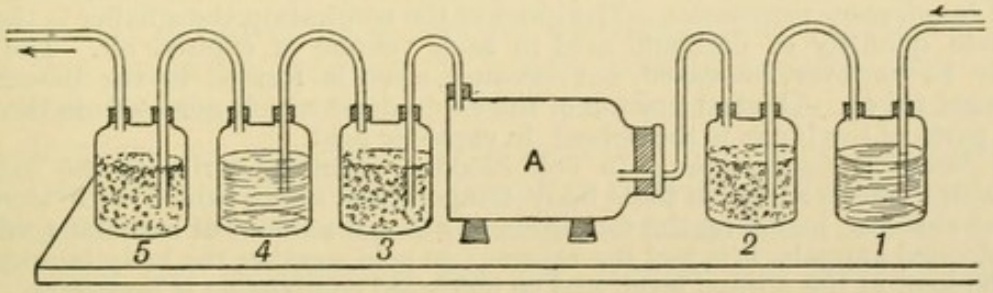


FIG. 335.—Haldane's apparatus for estimating the carbonic acid and aqueous vapour given off by an animal.

the simple but effective apparatus used by Haldane. The animal is placed in the vessel A; air is sucked through the apparatus (which must be perfectly air-tight) by a water pump at a suitable rate. The arrows indicate the direction in which the air passes. It goes first through two Woulff's bottles, 1 and 2. No. 1 contains soda-lime, which frees the air from carbonic acid; No. 2 contains pumice-stone

moistened with sulphuric acid, which frees the air from aqueous vapour. The air next reaches the animal chamber, and the animal gives off to it carbonic acid and aqueous vapour. It passes then through the three bottles, 3, 4, and 5. No. 3 contains pumice and sulphuric acid, which removes the water; No. 4 contains soda-lime, which absorbs the carbonic acid; and No. 5 contains pumice and sulphuric acid, which absorbs any water carried over from bottle 4. The increase of weight in bottle 3 at the end of a given time (*e.g.*, an hour) is the weight of water given off by the animal in that time; the increase of weight in bottles 4 and 5 weighed together gives the amount of carbonic acid produced by the animal in the same time.

Ranke gives the following numbers from experiments made on a man, who was taking a mixed diet consisting of 100 grammes of protein, 100 of fat, and 250 of carbohydrate in the twenty-four hours. The amount of oxygen absorbed in the same time was 666 grammes; of which 560 passed off as carbonic acid, 9 in urea, 19 as water formed from the hydrogen of the protein, and 78 from that of the fat.

Vierordt from a number of experiments on human beings gives the following average numbers: the amount of oxygen absorbed in the twenty-four hours, 744 grammes; this leads to the formation of 900 grammes of carbonic acid (this contains about half a pound of carbon) and 360 grammes of water.

The respiratory interchange is lessened during sleep. It is especially small in the winter sleep of hibernating animals. During hibernation the respiratory quotient sinks to 0·5, so that the animals actually gain weight from retention of oxygen.

Circumstances affecting the amount of carbonic acid excreted. (a) *Age and sex.* In males the quantity increases with growth till the age of 30; at 50 it begins to diminish again. In females the decrease begins when menstruation ceases. In females the quantity exhaled is always less than in males of the same age.

(b) *Respiratory movements.*—The quicker the respiration the smaller is the proportionate quantity of carbonic acid in each volume of expired air. The total quantity is, however, increased, not because more is formed in the tissues, but more is got rid of. The last portion of the expired air which comes from the more remote parts of the lungs is the richest in carbonic acid.

(c) *External temperature.*—In cold-blooded animals, a rise in the external temperature causes a rise in their body temperature, accompanied with increased chemical changes, including the formation of a larger amount of carbonic acid. In warm-blooded animals, it is just the reverse; in cold weather the body temperature has to be kept at the normal level, and so increased combustion is necessary.

(d) *Food.*—This produces an increase which usually comes on about an hour after a meal.

(e) *Exercise.*—Moderate exercise causes an increase of about 30 to 40 per cent. in the amount excreted. With excessive work, the increase is still greater.

Diffusion of Gases within the Lungs.—If two chambers containing a mixture of gases in unequal amount are connected together, a slow movement called diffusion takes place until the percentage amount of each gas in each chamber is the same. Let us suppose

that one chamber contains a large quantity of oxygen and a small quantity of carbonic acid; and the other a small quantity of oxygen and a large quantity of carbonic acid; the oxygen moves from the first to the second, and the carbonic acid from the second to the first chamber. The pressure of a gas is proportional to the percentage amount in which it is present in a mixture. This is true for each gas in a mixture, the presence of the others making no difference.

In the atmosphere, for instance, the total barometric pressure is 760 mm. of mercury; the amount of oxygen in the air is roughly one-fifth, and the pressure it exercises is also one-fifth of 760; the nitrogen accounts for the other four-fifths. The carbonic acid is present in such small quantities that the pressure it exercises is only a fraction of a millimetre.

In the alveolar air the carbonic acid is present in larger and the oxygen in smaller amount; and in the intermediate air passages there is an intermediate condition: hence, as in the two chambers we first considered, oxygen diffuses down to the air vesicles, and carbonic acid from them (see p. 363 for Haldane's method of obtaining the composition of alveolar air). These movements are, however, by themselves too slow to be efficient, and are assisted by the large draughts which are created in the respiratory tract by the respiratory movements of the chest.

Gases of the Blood.—From 100 volumes of blood, about 60 volumes of gas can be removed by the mercurial air-pump. The average composition of this gas in dog's blood is:—

	Arterial blood.	Venous blood.
Oxygen	20	8 to 12
Nitrogen	1 to 2	1 to 2
Carbonic acid	40	46

The nitrogen in the blood is simply dissolved from the air just as water would dissolve it; it has no physiological importance. The other two gases are present in much greater amount than can be explained by simple solution; they are, in fact, chiefly present in loose chemical combinations. Less than one volume of the oxygen and about two of carbonic acid are present in simple solution in the plasma.

Oxygen in the Blood.—The weight of gas dissolved in a liquid varies with the pressure of the gas; double the pressure and the weight of gas dissolved is doubled. The oxygen of the blood does not vary directly with oxygen pressure, for the amount of that gas in simple solution forms only a small fraction of the total present. This small amount is of course doubled by doubling the pressure, but such an increase is insignificant, the bulk of the oxygen being in chemical union with hæmoglobin. The oxygen of oxyhæmoglobin can be replaced by equivalent quantities of other gases like carbonic oxide The tension or partial pressure of

oxygen in the air of the alveoli is less than that in the atmosphere, but greater than that in venous blood; hence oxygen passes from the alveolar air into the blood plasma; the oxygen immediately combines with the hæmoglobin, and thus leaves the plasma free to absorb more oxygen; and this goes on until the hæmoglobin is entirely, or almost entirely, saturated with oxygen. The reverse change occurs in the tissues when the partial pressure of oxygen is lower than in the plasma, or in the lymph that bathes the tissue elements; the plasma parts with its oxygen to the lymph, the lymph to the tissues; the oxyhæmoglobin then undergoes dissociation to supply more oxygen to the plasma and lymph, and thus in turn to the tissues once more. This goes on until the oxyhæmoglobin loses a great portion of its store of oxygen, but even in asphyxia it does not lose all.

The following values give the tension of oxygen in percentages of an atmosphere:—

External air	20·96
Alveolar air	13 to 16
*Arterial blood	14
Tissues	0

The arrow shows the direction in which the gas passes.

When the gases are being pumped off from the blood, very little oxygen comes off till the pressure has been greatly reduced, and then, at a certain point, it is disengaged at a burst. This shows that it is not in simple solution, but is united chemically to some constituent of the blood, which is suddenly dissociated at the reduced pressure. This constituent of the blood is hæmoglobin.

The ability of the tissues to form reduction products is shown by Ehrlich's experiments with methylene blue and similar pigments. Methylene blue is more stable than oxyhæmoglobin; but if it is injected into the circulation of a living animal, and the animal killed a few minutes later, the blood is found to be dark blue, but the organs (especially those which like glandular organs are in a state of activity) are colourless. On exposure to oxygen the organs become blue. In other words, the tissues have formed a colourless reduction product from the methylene blue, and on exposure to air or oxygen this is oxidised and the blue pigment is thus regenerated.

Carbonic Acid in the Blood.—What has been said for oxygen holds good in the reverse direction for carbonic acid. Compounds are formed in the tissues where the tension of the gas is high: these pass into the lymph, then into the blood, and in the lungs they undergo dissociation, carbonic acid passing into the alveolar air, where the tension of the gas is comparatively low, though it is greater here than in the expired air. If blood is divided into plasma

* For more recent estimations of oxygen tension in arterial blood, see p. 384.

and corpuscles, it will be found that both yield carbonic acid, but the yield from the plasma is the greater. If we place blood in a vacuum it bubbles, and gives out all its gases; addition of a weak acid causes no further liberation of carbonic acid. When plasma or serum is similarly treated the gas also comes off, but about 5 per cent. of the carbonic acid is fixed—that is, it requires the addition of some stronger acid, like phosphoric acid, to displace it. Fresh red corpuscles will, however, take the place of the phosphoric acid, and thus it has been surmised that oxyhæmoglobin has the properties of an acid.

One hundred volumes of venous blood contain forty-six volumes of carbonic acid. Whether this is in solution or in chemical combination is determined by ascertaining the tension of the gas in the blood. One hundred volumes of blood plasma would dissolve more than an equal volume of the gas from an atmosphere of carbonic acid, if its solubility in plasma were equal to that in water. If, then, the carbonic acid were in a state of solution, its tension would be very high, but it proves to be only equal to about 5 per cent. of an atmosphere. This means that when venous blood is brought into an atmosphere containing 5 per cent. of carbonic acid, the blood neither gives off any carbonic acid nor takes up any from that atmosphere. Hence the remainder of the gas, 95 per cent., is in a condition of chemical combination. The chief compound appears to be sodium bicarbonate.

The carbonic acid and phosphoric acid of the blood are in a state of constant struggle for the possession of the sodium. The salts formed by these two acids depend on their relative masses. If carbonic acid is in excess, we get sodium carbonate (Na_2CO_3), and mono-sodium phosphate (NaH_2PO_4); but if the carbonic acid is diminished, the phosphoric acid obtains the greater share of sodium to form disodium phosphate (Na_2HPO_4). In this way, as soon as the amount of free carbonic acid diminishes, as in the lungs, the amount of carbonic acid in combination also decreases; whereas in the tissues, where the tension of the gas is highest, a large amount is taken up into the blood, where it forms carbonates.

The tension of the carbonic acid in the tissues is high, but one cannot give exact figures; we can measure the tension of the gas in certain secretions: in the urine it is 9, in the bile 7 per cent. The tension in the cells themselves must be higher still.

The following figures (from Fredericq) give the tension of carbonic dioxide in percentages of an atmosphere:—

Tissues	5 to 9	in dog.
Venous blood	3·8 to 5·4	
Alveolar air	2·8	
External air	0·04	



The arrow indicates the direction in which the gas passes, namely, in the direction of pressure from the tissues to the atmosphere.

In some other experiments, also on dogs, the following are the figures given:—

Arterial blood	2·8
Venous blood	5·4
Alveolar air	3·56
Expired air	2·8



It will be seen from these figures that the tension of carbonic acid in the venous blood (5·4) is higher than in the alveolar air (3·56); its passage into the alveolar air is therefore intelligible by the laws of diffusion. Diffusion, however, should cease when the tension of the gas in the blood and alveolar air are equal. But the transference goes beyond the establishment of such an equilibrium, for the tension of the gas in the blood continues to sink until it is ultimately less (2·8) than in the alveolar air.

The whole question is beset with great difficulties and contradictions. Analyses by different observers have given very different results, but if such figures as those just quoted are ultimately found to be correct, we can only explain this apparent reversal of a law of nature by supposing with Bohr that the alveolar epithelium possesses the power of excreting carbonic acid, just as the cells of secreting glands are able to select certain materials from the blood and reject others. Recent work by Bohr and Haldane has also shown that in all probability the same explanation—epithelial activity—must be called in to account for the absorption of oxygen. In the swim-bladder of fishes (which is analogous to the lungs of mammals) the oxygen is certainly far in excess of anything that can be explained by mere diffusion. The storage of oxygen, moreover, ceases when the vagus nerves which supply the swim-bladder are divided.

Tension of Gases in Fluids.—This expression so frequently used in the foregoing paragraphs demands further explanation.

The first questions which arise are, "Under what circumstances will a gas dissolved in a fluid diffuse out of the fluid into the air in contact with it?" and, "Under what circumstances will a gas diffuse out of the air into the fluid, and at what rate will it do so?"

These are questions which depend upon the physical constants of the fluid and of the atmosphere; these constants must be determined experimentally.

The following instance may be taken—100 c.c. of water charged with 80 c.c. of carbonic acid may be shaken with pure air in a closed bottle of 500 c.c. capacity at room temperature (say 14° C.). The carbonic acid will come out of the water at first, but as the shaking continues, the carbonic acid will come out more and more slowly until at last it ceases to do so. Analysis of the air and of the water in the bottle would show that the water had not parted with all its carbonic acid. It would be found that the water

contained 16 c.c. of carbonic acid dissolved in it whilst 64 c.c. had diffused out into the air.

At the end of this experiment, then, there will be in the air in the bottle 64 c.c. of carbonic acid in a space of 400 c.c. If the whole space (400 c.c.) were filled with carbonic acid, its pressure would be 760 mm. of mercury. The partial pressure of carbonic acid in the air of the bottle is therefore $760 \times \frac{64}{400} = 122$ mm. of mercury. Water, therefore, containing 16 volumes per cent. of carbonic acid is in equilibrium with an atmosphere in which the carbonic acid exerts a pressure of 122 mm. This fact is stated shortly by the phrase, "When water has a carbonic acid *tension* of 122 mm. it contains 16 per cent. of carbonic acid."

The amount of carbonic acid which would be contained in any other fluid when it was in equilibrium with an atmosphere having a carbonic acid pressure of 122 mm. would be different from that contained in water; for instance, alcohol would contain 50 per cent. of the gas.

In both fluids the *tension* of carbonic acid is the same, but the *quantities* of carbonic acid would be as stated and therefore different.

The tension of a gas in a liquid, therefore, is the pressure of that gas in an atmosphere of such a composition that the liquid would neither acquire that gas from the atmosphere nor impart that gas to it, if the liquid and the atmosphere were brought into intimate contact, as by shaking.

Measurement of tension in fluids—aërotonometer.—The measurement of the tension of gases in fluids is conducted upon the principles of the example just given. The instrument for the purpose is called an aërotonometer. The form used by Loewy consists simply of a closed bottle (fig. 336) into which the blood and the air can be put and from which they can be withdrawn by suitable means. Through the stopper of the bottle three tubes pass, A, B, and C, each of which is provided with a piece of rubber tubing and a clip. The tube A is used for introducing or expelling the blood E; C is used for introducing or expelling the air; B is connected with a flexible rubber bag D containing water inside the bottle, whilst outside a connection can be made with a syringe. A little mercury should be put into the bottle to defibrinate the blood. To determine the carbonic acid tension in blood, several bottles should be filled

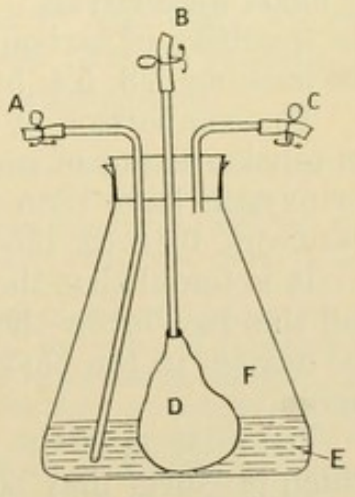


FIG. 336.—Diagram of Loewy's aërotonometer.

with gases of known composition from gasometers before the experiment. Into each bottle some blood is drawn from the animal. This is done by attaching A to a cannula in one of the animal's blood-vessels, and then when water is withdrawn from the bag D by the syringe, a corresponding amount of blood enters the aërotonometer. Each bottle is so treated, and the bottle is shaken vigorously for some time. When equilibrium has been established, the air can be taken from the air space F by attaching C to an air-analysis apparatus and forcing water into the bag D from the syringe attached to B. An example may illustrate the results which might be obtained.

Determination of carbonic acid tension of blood.

Bottle	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Initial percentage of the gas present.	6·0	5·5	5·0	4·5	4
Final percentage of gas present.	5·8	5·4	5·1	4·7	4·3

From the above figures it will be seen that the blood has acquired carbonic acid from the air in bottles I. and II., whilst the reverse has taken place in bottles III., IV., and V. The carbonic acid tension of the blood is therefore between 5·4 and 5·1 per cent.

Relation of tension to composition.—The aërotonometer may be used to determine the relation of the tension of a gas in the blood (oxygen or carbonic acid) to the quantity contained in that fluid. The example given above might be extended for this purpose in the following way. After the air has been withdrawn for analysis, it is only necessary to attach A to the blood-bulb on a mercurial blood-gas pump and, by forcing more water into B, expel a sufficient quantity of blood for analysis. If an analysis was made for each of the bottles, the quantity of carbonic acid would be determined corresponding to the tensions 5·8, 5·4, 5·1, 4·7, and 4·3 per cent. respectively.

The comparison of the quantity of carbonic acid in the blood with its tension is not of importance, but the corresponding measurements for oxygen have been carried out with great care by a number of observers, both for blood and for solutions of hæmoglobin.

It is found that the two sets of observations agree very closely, and this fact forms the most substantial evidence for our belief that the oxygen in the blood is almost entirely associated with the hæmoglobin.

The relation of the quantity of oxygen in the blood to the tension which it exerts may be conveniently set forth in a curve which is called the dissociation curve of oxyhæmoglobin, as in the following figure (fig. 337).

An example may illustrate the use to which the information, given in this curve, may be put. Suppose that one wishes to

determine the tension of oxygen in the blood leaving the pancreas. The amount of blood which comes from that organ is too small to allow of a direct determination being made. We can, however, calculate it from the following data: (1) the amount of oxygen which the blood would contain if saturated (this can be arrived at by

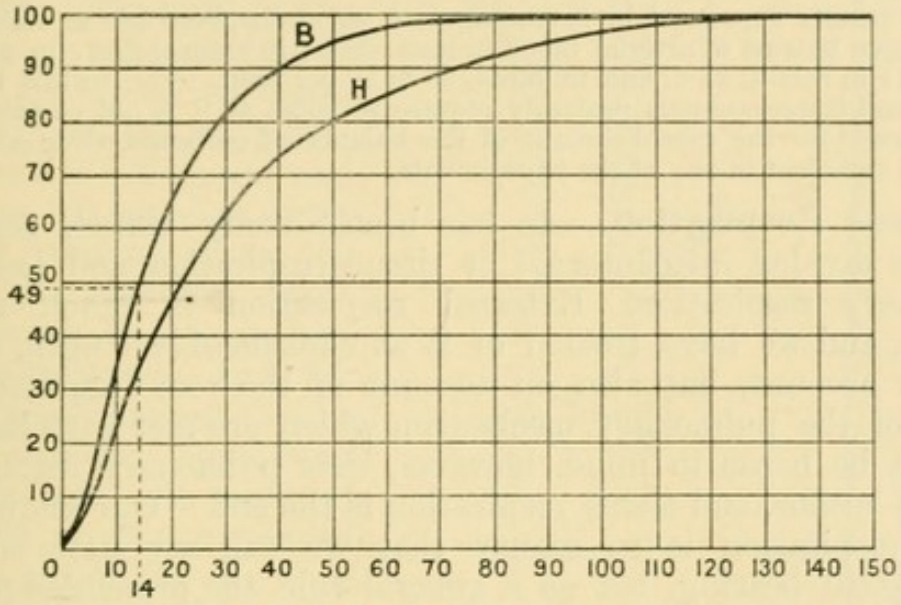


FIG. 337.—Dissociation curves of blood (B) and of a solution of hæmoglobin (H). The numbers along the base line represent pressure in millimetres of mercury; those along the ordinate represent percentages of oxygen. (Atter Bohr.)

saturating arterial blood and analysing it); (2) the amount of oxygen in the venous blood. In an actual experiment (1) was 22·0 c.c., (2) was 10·7 c.c. The percentage saturation then was $100 \times \frac{10{\cdot}7}{22{\cdot}0} = 49$ per cent. By referring to the dissociation curve (fig. 337) we see that 49 per cent. saturation corresponds to an oxygen tension of about 14 mm. of mercury or 1·8 per cent. of an atmosphere.

The Carbonic Oxide Method of Estimating the Oxygen Tension of Arterial Blood.—This method was devised by Haldane, and is considered by him and Lorrain Smith to give more trustworthy results than those obtained by the aërotonometer. If blood is exposed to a mixture of carbonic oxide and oxygen, the hæmoglobin will become saturated by these gases according to their relative tensions. If a number of experiments are performed using different percentages of carbonic oxide, the results may be expressed graphically as the curve of dissociation of carboxyhæmoglobin in air. When in place of such experiments *in vitro*, an animal is made to breathe air containing a known percentage of carbonic oxide, the comparison of the saturation of its blood with the saturation of its blood *in vitro* exposed to the same percentage of carbonic oxide in air (which has an oxygen tension of 20·9 per cent.) gives us the means of discovering the oxygen tension in the arterial blood of the lung capillaries; this will be higher or lower than that of the air according as the saturation by carbonic oxide is correspondingly lower or higher. A small animal like a mouse is made to breathe air containing a known percentage of carbonic oxide. After a sufficient time the animal is killed and the amount of carboxyhæmoglobin is determined colorimetrically in a drop of its blood.

The data thus obtained are compared with the data previously expressed in the curve of dissociation of carboxyhæmoglobin in air; it is then easy to calculate whether the oxygen tension in the blood is higher or lower than that of air. The results of the method show generally that the tension of oxygen in the arterial blood as it leaves the lungs is higher than could result from simple diffusion of the oxygen through the alveolar epithelium; in other words, the epithelial cells are capable of secreting oxygen into the blood until an oxygen-pressure is reached considerably above that in the alveolar air.

The results expressed in percentages of an atmosphere are as follows:—

Oxygen tension of arterial blood in man, 38·5; in mouse, 22·6; in dog, 21; in cat, 35·3; in rabbit, 27·6, and in birds, 30 to 50 per cent. The results in the case of man and larger animals probably require revision, as it is not certain that the time allowed for the establishment of the balance of carbonic oxide and oxygen has been sufficient in any of the experiments.

Tissue Respiration.—As has been already stated, respiration may be divided into internal or tissue respiration and external or pulmonary respiration. External respiration is much the less obscure, and we have treated of it at considerable length, not only on this account, but also on account of the very frequent impairments of the pulmonary mechanism which are met with in disease. It must be borne in mind, however, that pulmonary respiration is but the means, and tissue respiration is the end. Our knowledge of tissue respiration is so scanty that we can say little about its pathological bearing, but as a general rule, the proneness to pathological change as well as the vascularity (p. 221) is connected with the degree of metabolism of the tissue.

The following are the amounts of oxygen used per minute by one gramme of certain epithelial and muscular organs respectively.

Submaxillary gland 0·04 c.c., pancreas 0·05 c.c., kidney 0·03 c.c., heart (contracting very feebly and slowly) 0·007 c.c., muscles of leg (with spinal cord destroyed) 0·003 c.c.

Methods of studying tissue respiration.—In order to obtain data, such as the above, it is necessary (1) to analyse the blood going to the organ; (2) to analyse the blood emerging from the organ; (3) to determine the amount of blood passing through the organ in a given time, say one minute.

The analysis of blood may be performed by either of two methods: (1) the mercurial air-pump, or (2) the chemical method of expelling the oxygen and carbonic acid from the blood by means of potassium ferricyanide and phosphoric acid respectively.

The mercurial air-pump.—The extraction of the gases from the blood by means of the mercurial air-pump depends upon the fact that blood yields all the oxygen and carbonic acid which are dissolved in it when it is boiled for a sufficient length of time in a vacuum. The instrument consists essentially of the following parts (fig. 338): (1) a small bulb or tube for measuring accurately the amount of blood analysed; (2) a vacuous chamber or froth chamber. When the part of the apparatus from 2 to 4 is rendered a vacuum, the

blood is emptied from 1 into 2, and is then kept continuously boiling by means of a water-bath (C) around its lower portion; a condenser (D) packed with ice and salt surrounds the upper part. There is always a stream of aqueous vapour carrying the boiled out gases to the top of the chamber; the vapour is condensed and returns to the blood as drops of water running down the side of the chamber, while the gases are free to go into the vacuous pump. In doing so they pass through (3) the drying chamber containing sulphuric acid. So much of the gases as has expanded into the pump (4) can then be expelled by lifting the mercury bottle (A) which is connected by strong rubber tubing to the glass tube F. In the figure only the attachments of this rubber tube are shown. The mercury is prevented by a valve (V) from going backwards to the drying chamber; it expels the gases down the tube B into a eudiometer tube E in which they are collected for measurement and analysis. After boiling for a considerable time, a few exhaustions with the pump are sufficient to deliver all the gases which have been boiled off from the blood.

The total gas obtained is first measured; then the carbonic acid is removed by caustic potash, and the gas that remains then consists of

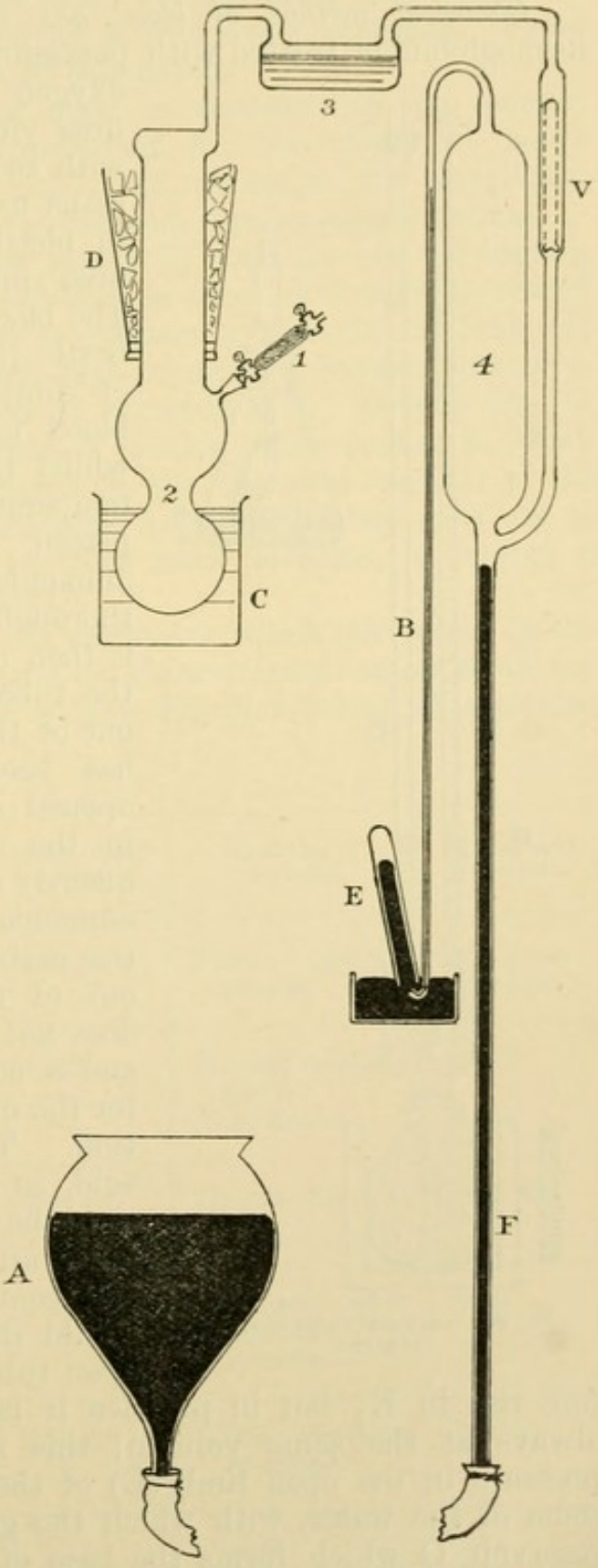


FIG. 338.—Mercurial air-pump for obtaining the gases of the blood (diagrammatic).

oxygen and nitrogen; the oxygen is then removed by pyrogallic acid, and the residual gas is nitrogen.

Chemical method of blood gas analysis.—When a solution of hæmoglobin is treated with potassium ferricyanide, it yields all its oxygen to the air on shaking, just as urea yields its nitrogen when treated with sodium hypobromite. The apparatus used for determining the oxygen in blood is very similar to a Dupré's urea apparatus (see Chapter XXXVII.). The blood (5 c.c.) is placed in the large bottle (fig. 339, A) underneath a layer of dilute ammonia solution (B). The blood is thus protected from the air whilst the apparatus becomes equal in temperature to the bath in which it is placed. The blood is shaken with the ammonia solution which lakes it thoroughly; the ferricyanide solution is then spilt into the laked blood from the tube C, and the oxygen is shaken out of the solution. When the oxygen has been determined the bottle is opened and phosphoric acid is placed in the small tube C; this is subsequently spilt into the mixture of blood, ammonia and ferricyanide; it liberates the carbonic acid which is also shaken out of the fluid. The carbonic acid does not come completely out, however, and a correction has to be introduced for the quantity which remains in solution. The gas (oxygen or carbonic acid, as the case may be) passes over into the tube D, which was previously filled up to the zero mark with water, and connected to a reservoir F; this would drive water out of F into the open tube E, and the water will therefore rise in E; but in practice it is convenient to keep the gas always at the same volume; this may be done by raising the pressure in the open limb (E) of the pressure gauge by squeezing some of the water, with which the gauge is filled, out of a rubber reservoir G which forms the base of the gauge, thus the level of the water in D is maintained at the zero mark, while that in E rises

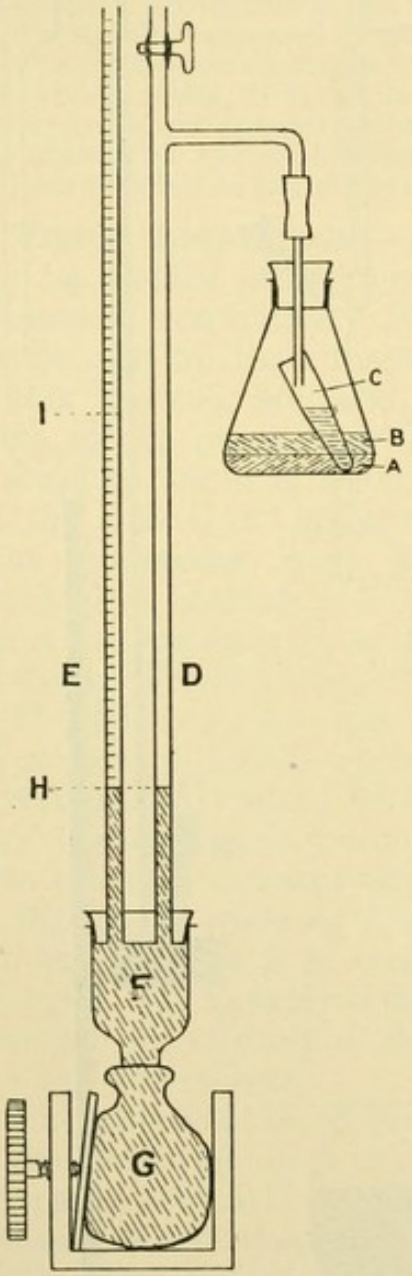


FIG. 339.—Apparatus for blood gas analysis.

from H to I. The actual measurement then is the increase of pressure (*i.e.*, the height of the column of water H I) which is necessary to keep the gas at the same volume after the oxygen or carbonic acid has been shaken off as it previously occupied. From this the quantity coming off can be calculated.

The chemical method is not quite so accurate as the vacuum pump, but it is much more convenient for the study of many problems, as it requires less blood, and, owing to its simplicity, a great number of observations can be made upon a single animal.

Changes in tissue respiration caused by activity.—In all organs, so far as is known, increased activity is associated with increased tissue respiration. The increase is commonly three to six fold. It is often more easy to demonstrate the augmented oxygen consumption than the augmented output of carbonic acid. This is due to several causes:—(1) carbonic acid is soluble in the tissues in which it is produced, and (2) any change in the chemical reaction of the tissues alters the amount of carbonic acid which they give out to the blood; if, for instance, it becomes more alkaline, it retains a greater portion of its carbonic acid.

The following table shows the variations which take place in the oxygen in-take of several organs of chloroformed animals as the result of activity, produced by widely different forms of stimulus (Barcroft).

Organ.	Condition of Rest.	Oxygen used per minute.	Condition of Activity.	Oxygen used per minute.
Muscle.	Nerves cut.	0·003 c.c.	Tonic (nerves uncut).	0·006 c.c. 0·020 c.c.
Heart.	Very slow and feeble contractions.	0·007 c.c.	Normal contractions. Very active.	0·014 0·054
Sub-maxillary gland.	Nerves cut.	0·04 c.c.	Chorda stimulation.	0·12 c.c.
Pancreas.	Not secreting.	0·05 c.c.	Secretion after injection of secretin.	0·20
Kidney.	Scanty secretion.	0·03 c.c.	After injection of diuretic.	0·07 c.c.

The relation of the oxygen taken in to the carbonic acid given

out is well shown in the following experiment performed by Zuntz on the leg of a dog.

Blood-vessel.	Gases in Blood per cent.		Remarks.
	Oxygen.	Carbon-dioxide.	
Femoral vein . . .	1·2	36·32	Muscles tonic (nerves uncut).
Carotid artery . . .	14·4	21·92	
Exchange	13·20	14·4	
Femoral vein . . .	2·85	33·16	After section of sciatic and crural nerves.
Carotid artery . . .	13·30	23·06	
Exchange	10·45	10·1	

Two points must be noted in considering the above table:—

(1) That the exchange of gases was decreased on cutting the nerves. The decrease in metabolism was greater even than the figures show, for the blood-flow through the leg was decreased.

(2) That the oxygen exchange and the carbonic acid exchange alter in about the same proportions. The ratio of the carbonic acid given out to the oxygen taken in was $\frac{14·4}{13·2}$ with the nerves intact and $\frac{10·1}{10·45}$ with the nerves cut.

Effect of reduced oxygen tension on tissue respiration.—Even when the oxygen tension in the blood is considerably reduced, the tissues still take up the same quantity of oxygen as before and give out as much, or slightly more, carbonic acid; thus, in the case of a dog, when the oxygen tension in the blood was approximately 18 mm. of mercury or one-fortieth of an atmosphere, 163 c.c. of oxygen per minute were used up by the animal, and 172 c.c. of carbonic acid were given out; normally by the same animal the oxygen consumption was 157 c.c. and the carbonic acid output 158 c.c. The reason why the tissues extract oxygen with such readiness from the blood, even when the oxygen exists in the blood at a low tension, is that there is no free oxygen in the tissues themselves (and they always thirst for it). This fact can be demonstrated in more than one way.

(1) No oxygen can he extracted from the tissues by exposing them to the vacuum of an air-pump.

(2) The tissues possess the power of reducing such substances as methylene blue, as explained on p. 378.

Ventilation.—It is necessary to allude in conclusion to this very important practical outcome of our consideration of respiration.

Some Continental observers have stated that certain noxious substances are ordinarily contained in expired air which are much more poisonous than carbonic acid, but researches in this country have failed to substantiate this. If precautions be taken by absolute cleanliness to prevent admixture of the air with exhalations from skin, teeth, and clothes, the expired air only contains one noxious substance, and that is carbonic acid.

Absolute cleanliness is, however, not the rule; and the air of rooms becomes stuffy when the amount of expired air in them is just so much as to raise the percentage of carbonic acid to 0·1 per cent. An adult gives off about 0·6 cubic feet of carbonic acid per hour, and if he is supplied with 1000 cubic feet of fresh air per hour he will add 0·6 to the 0·4 cubic feet of carbonic acid it already contains; in other words, the percentage of that gas will be raised to 0·1. An hourly supply of 2000 cubic feet of fresh air will lower the percentage of carbonic acid to 0·07, and of 3000 cubic feet to 0·06, and this is the supply which is usually recommended. In order that the air may be renewed without giving rise to draughts, each adult should be allotted sufficient space in a room, at least 1000 cubic feet.

CHAPTER XXV

THE CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF THE BODY

THE body is built up of a large number of chemical elements, which are in most instances united together into compounds.

The **elements** found in the body are carbon, nitrogen, hydrogen, oxygen, sulphur, phosphorus, fluorine, chlorine, iodine, silicon, sodium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, lithium, iron, and occasionally traces of manganese, copper, and lead.

Of these very few occur in the free state. Oxygen (to a small extent) and nitrogen are found dissolved in the blood; hydrogen is formed by putrefaction in the alimentary canal. With some few exceptions such as these, the elements enumerated above are found combined with one another to form what are called *compounds*.

The **compounds**, or, as they are frequently termed in physiology, the *proximate principles*, found in the body are divided into—

(1) Mineral or inorganic compounds.

(2) Organic compounds, or compounds of carbon.

The **inorganic compounds** present are water, various acids (such as hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice), ammonia (as in the urine), and numerous salts, such as calcium phosphate in bone, sodium chloride in blood and urine, and many others.

The **organic compounds** are more numerous; they may be subdivided into—

Nitrogenous.	*Proteins—e.g.*, albumin, myosin, casein, gelatin, etc. *Simpler nitrogenous bodies—e.g.*, lecithin, urea, creatine.
Non-nitrogenous.	*Fats—e.g.*, butter, fats of adipose tissue. *Carbohydrates—e.g.*, sugar, starch. *Simple organic bodies—e.g.*, cholesterin, lactic acids.

The subdivision of the organic proximate principles into proteins, fats, and carbohydrates forms the starting-point of chemical physiology.

Carbohydrates.

The **Carbohydrates** are found chiefly in vegetable tissues, and many of them form important foods. Some carbohydrates are, how-

ever, found in or formed by the animal organism. The most important of these are *glycogen,* or animal starch; *dextrose;* and *lactose,* or milk sugar.

The carbohydrates may be conveniently defined as compounds of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, the two last named elements being in the proportion in which they occur in water. But this definition is only a rough one, and if pushed too far would include many substances such as acetic acid, lactic acid, and inosite, which are not carbohydrates. Research has shown that the chemical constitution of the simplest carbohydrates is that of an aldehyde, or a ketone, and that the more complex carbohydrates are condensation products of the simple ones. In order, therefore, that we may understand the constitution of these substances, it is first necessary that we should understand what is meant by the terms aldehyde and ketone.

A primary alcohol is one in which the hydroxyl (OH) is attached to the last carbon atom of the chain; its end group is CH_2OH. Thus the formula for common alcohol (primary ethyl alcohol) is

$$CH_3.CH_2OH.$$

The formula for the next alcohol of the same series (primary propyl alcohol) is

$$CH_3.CH_2.CH_2OH.$$

If a primary alcohol is oxidised, the first oxidation product is called an *aldehyde;* thus ethyl alcohol yields acetic aldehyde:—

$$\underset{\text{[Ethyl alcohol.]}}{CH_3.CH_2OH} + O = \underset{\text{[Acetic aldehyde.]}}{CH_3.CHO} + H_2O.$$

The typical end-group CHO of the aldehyde is not stable, but is easily oxidisable to form the group COOH, and the compound so formed is called an acid; in this way acetic aldehyde forms acetic acid:—

$$\underset{\text{[Acetic aldehyde.]}}{CH_3.CHO} + O = \underset{\text{[Acetic acid.]}}{CH_3.COOH}.$$

The majority of the simple sugars are aldehydes of more complex alcohols than this; they are spoken of as *aldoses.* The readiness with which aldehydes are oxidisable renders them powerful reducing agents, and this furnishes us with some of the tests for the sugars.

Let us now turn to the case of the ketones. A secondary alcohol is one in which the OH group is attached to a central carbon atom; thus secondary propyl alcohol has the formula

$$CH_3.CHOH.CH_3.$$

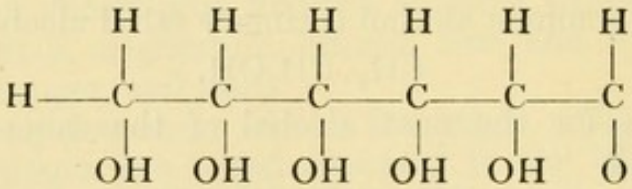
Its typical group is therefore CHOH. When this is oxidised, the first oxidation product is called a ketone, thus:—

$$\underset{\text{[Secondary propyl alcohol.]}}{CH_3.CHOH.CH_3} + O = \underset{\text{[Propyl ketone.]}}{CH_3.CO.CH_3} + H_2O.$$

It therefore contains the group CO in the middle of the chain.

Some of the sugars are ketones of more complex alcohols; these are called *ketoses.* The only one of these which is of physiological interest is levulose.

The alcohols of which we have already spoken are called *monatomic,* because they contain only one OH group. Those which contain two OH groups (like glycol) are called diatomic; those which contain three OH groups (like glycerin) are called triatomic; and so on. The hexatomic alcohols are those which contain six OH groups. Three of these hexatomic alcohols with the formula $C_6H_8(OH)_6$ are of physiological interest; they are isomerides, and their names are sorbite, mannite, and dulcite. By careful oxidation their aldehydes and ketones can be obtained; these are the simple sugars; thus, dextrose is the aldehyde of sorbite; mannose is the aldehyde of mannite; levulose is the ketone of mannite; and galactose is the aldehyde of dulcite. These sugars all have the empirical formula $C_6H_{12}O_6$. The constitutional formula for dextrose is:—



By further oxidation, the sugars yield acids with various names. If we take such a sugar as a typical specimen, we see that their general formula is

$$C_nH_{2m}O_m$$

and as a general rule $n = m$; that is, the number of oxygen and carbon atoms are equal. This number in the case of the sugars already mentioned is six. Hence they are called *hexoses.*

Sugars are known to chemists, in which this number is 3, 4, 5, 7, etc., and these are called trioses, tetroses, pentoses, heptoses, etc. The majority of these have no physiological interest. It should, however, be mentioned that a pentose has been obtained from the nucleoprotein of the pancreas, of the liver, and of yeast. If the pentoses that are found in various plants are given to an animal, they are excreted in great measure unchanged in the urine.

The hexoses are of great physiological importance. The principal ones are dextrose, levulose, and galactose. These are called *monosaccharides.*

Another important group of sugars are called *disaccharides;* these are formed by what is called condensation; that is, two molecules of monosaccharide combine together with the loss of a molecule of water, thus:—

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + C_6H_{12}O_6 = C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} + H_2O.$$

The principal members of the disaccharide group are cane-sugar, lactose, and maltose.

If more than two molecules of the monosaccharide group undergo a corresponding condensation, we get what are called *polysaccharides.*

$$nC_6H_{12}O_6 = (C_6H_{10}O_5)_n + nH_2O.$$

The principal polysaccharides are starch, glycogen, various dextrins, and cellulose. We may, therefore, arrange the important carbohydrates of the hexose family in a tabular form as follows:—

1. Monosaccharides or Glucoses, $C_6H_{12}O_6$.	2. Disaccharides, Sucroses, or Saccharoses, $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$.	3. Polysaccharides or Amyloses $(C_6H_{10}O_5)n$.
+ Dextrose. − Levulose. + Galactose.	+ Cane sugar. + Lactose. + Maltose.	+ Starch. + Glycogen. + Dextrin. Cellulose.

The + and − signs in the above list indicate that the substances to which they are prefixed are dextro- and levo-rotatory respectively as regards polarised light. The formulæ given in the table are merely empirical; the quantity n in the starch group is variable and often large. The following are the chief facts in relation to each of the principal carbohydrates.

Dextrose or Grape Sugar.—This carbohydrate is found in many fruits, honey, and in minute quantities in the blood and numerous tissues, organs, and fluids of the body. It is the form of sugar found in large quantities in the blood and urine in the disease known as *diabetes.*

Dextrose is soluble in hot and cold water and in alcohol. It is crystalline, but not so sweet as cane sugar. When heated with strong potash certain complex acids are formed which have a yellow or brown colour. This constitutes *Moore's test* for sugar. In alkaline solutions dextrose reduces salts of silver, bismuth, mercury, and copper. The reduction of cupric to cuprous salts constitutes *Trommer's test,* which is performed as follows: put a few drops of copper sulphate into a test-tube, then solution of dextrose, and then strong caustic potash. On adding the potash a precipitate is first formed which dissolves, forming a blue solution. On boiling this a yellow or red precipitate (cuprous hydrate or oxide) forms.

On boiling a solution of dextrose with an alkaline solution of picric acid, a dark red opaque solution due to reduction to picramic acid is produced.

Another important property of grape sugar is that under the influence of yeast it is converted into alcohol and carbonic acid ($C_6H_{12}O_6 = 2C_2H_6O + 2CO_2$).

Dextrose may be estimated by the fermentation test, by the polari-

meter, and by the use of Fehling's solution. The last method is the most important: it rests on the same principles as Trommer's test, and we shall study it in connection with diabetic urine.

Levulose.—When cane sugar is treated with dilute mineral acids it undergoes a process known as *inversion—i.e.*, it takes up water and is converted into equal parts of dextrose and levulose. The previously dextro-rotatory solution of cane sugar then becomes levo-rotatory, the levo-rotatory power of the levulose being greater than the dextro-rotatory power of the dextrose formed. Hence the term *inversion.* The same hydrolytic change is produced by certain ferments, such as the invert ferment of the intestinal juice.

Pure levulose can be crystallised, but so great is the difficulty of obtaining crystals of it that one of its names was *uncrystallisable sugar.* Small quantities of levulose have been found in blood, urine, and muscle. It has been recommended as an article of diet in diabetes in place of ordinary sugar; but there are no substantial grounds for believing that levulose is less harmful than other sugars in this disease. Levulose gives the same general reactions as dextrose.

Galactose is formed by the action of dilute mineral acids or of inverting ferments on lactose. It resembles dextrose in its action on polarised light, in reducing cupric salts in Trommer's test, and in being directly fermentable with yeast. When oxidised by means of nitric acid it yields an acid called *mucic acid* ($C_6H_{10}O_8$), which is only slightly soluble in water. Dextrose when treated in this way yields an isomeric acid—*i.e.*, an acid with the same empirical formula, called *saccharic acid,* which is very soluble in water.

Cane Sugar is generally distributed in the vegetable kingdom, but especially in the juices of the sugar cane, beetroot, mallow, and sugar maple. It is a substance of great importance as a food. It undergoes inversion in the alimentary canal. It is crystalline, and dextro-rotatory. With Trommer's test it gives a blue solution, but no reduction occurs in boiling. After inversion it is, of course, strongly reducing.

Inversion may be accomplished by boiling with dilute mineral acids, or by means of inverting ferments such as that occurring in the intestinal juice. It then takes up water, and is split into equal parts of dextrose and levulose.

$$\underset{\text{[Cane sugar.]}}{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}} + H_2O = \underset{\text{[Dextrose.]}}{C_6H_{12}O_6} + \underset{\text{[Levulose.]}}{C_6H_{12}O_6}.$$

With yeast, cane sugar is first inverted by means of a special soluble ferment secreted by the yeast cells, and then there is an alcoholic fermentation of the glucoses so formed.

Lactose, or Milk Sugar, occurs in milk. It is occasionally found in the urine of women in the early days of lactation, or after

weaning. It is crystallisable, dextro-rotatory, much less soluble in water than other sugars, and has only a slightly sweet taste. It gives Trommer's test, but when the reducing power is tested quantitatively by Fehling's solution it is found to be a less powerful reducing agent than dextrose, in the proportion of 7 to 10.

When hydrolysed by similar agencies as those mentioned in connection with cane sugar, it takes up water and splits into dextrose and galactose.

$$\underset{\text{[Lactose.]}}{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}} + H_2O = \underset{\text{[Dextrose.]}}{C_6H_{12}O_6} + \underset{\text{[Galactose.]}}{C_6H_{12}O_6}.$$

With yeast it is first inverted, and then alcohol is formed. This, however, occurs slowly.

The lactic acid fermentation which occurs when milk turns sour is brought about by micro-organisms, which are somewhat similar to yeast cells. Putrefactive bacteria in the intestine bring about the same result. The two stages of the lactic acid fermentation are represented in the following equations:—

$$(1.)\ \underset{\text{[Lactose.]}}{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}} + H_2O = \underset{\text{[Lactic acid.]}}{4C_3H_6O_3}.$$

$$(2.)\ \underset{\text{[Lactic acid.]}}{4C_3H_6O_3} = \underset{\text{[Butyric acid.]}}{2C_4H_8O_2} + 4CO_2 + 4H_2.$$

Maltose is the chief end product of the action of malt diastase on starch, and is also formed as an intermediate product in the action of dilute sulphuric acid on the same substance. It is the chief sugar formed from starch by the diastatic ferments contained in the saliva and pancreatic juice. It can be obtained in the form of acicular crystals, and is strongly dextro-rotatory. It gives Trommer's test; but its reducing power, as measured by Fehling's solution, is one-third less than that of dextrose. With yeast it yields alcohol.

By prolonged boiling with water, or, more readily, by boiling with a dilute mineral acid, or by means of an inverting ferment, such as occurs in the intestinal juice, it is converted into dextrose.

$$\underset{\text{[Maltose.]}}{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}} + H_2O = \underset{\text{[Dextrose.]}}{2C_6H_{12}O_6}.$$

Phenyl Hydrazine Test.—The three important reducing sugars with which we have to deal in physiology are dextrose, lactose, and maltose. They may be distinguished by their relative reducing powers on Fehling's solution, or by the characters of their osazones. The osazone is formed in each case by adding phenyl hydrazine hydrochloride, and sodium acetate, and boiling the mixture for about half an hour. In each case the osazone is deposited in the form of bright canary-coloured, needle-like crystals, usually in bunches, which differ in their crystalline form, melting-point, and solubilities. Cane sugar does not yield an osazone.

Starch is widely diffused through the vegetable kingdom. It occurs in nature in the form of microscopic grains, varying in size and appearance, according to their source. Each consists of a central spot, round which more or less concentric envelopes of starch proper or granulose alternate with layers of cellulose. Cellulose has very little digestive value, but starch is a most important food.

Starch is insoluble in cold water: it forms an opalescent solution in boiling water, which if concentrated gelatinises on cooling. Its most characteristic reaction is the blue colour it gives with iodine.

On heating starch with mineral acids, dextrose is formed. By the action of diastatic ferments, maltose is the chief end product. In both cases dextrin is an intermediate stage in the process.

Before the formation of dextrin the starch solution loses its opalescence, a substance called *soluble starch* being formed. This, like native starch, gives a blue colour with iodine. Although the molecular weight of starch is unknown, the formula for soluble starch is probably $5(C_{12}H_{20}O_{10})_{20}$. Equations that represent the formation of sugars and dextrins from this are very complex, and are at present only hypothetical.



FIG. 340.—Grains of potato starch.

Dextrin is the name given to the intermediate products in the hydrolysis of starch or glycogen, and two chief varieties are distinguished:—*erythro-dextrin*, which gives a reddish-brown colour with iodine; and *achroo-dextrin*, which does not.

It is readily soluble in water, but insoluble in alcohol and ether. It is gummy and amorphous. It does not give Trommer's test, nor does it ferment with yeast. It is dextro-rotatory. By hydrolysing agencies it is converted into glucose.

Glycogen, or animal starch, is found in liver, muscle, and white blood corpuscles. It is also abundant in all embryonic tissues.

Glycogen is a white tasteless powder, soluble in water, but it forms, like starch, an opalescent solution. It is insoluble in alcohol and ether. It is dextro-rotatory. With Trommer's test it gives a blue solution, but no reduction occurs on boiling.

With iodine it gives a reddish or port-wine colour, very similar to that given by erythro-dextrin. Dextrin may be distinguished from glycogen by (1) the fact that it gives a clear, not an opalescent, solution with water; and (2) it is not precipitated by basic lead acetate as glycogen is. It is, however, precipitated by basic lead acetate and ammonia. (3) Glycogen is precipitated by 55 per cent. of alcohol; the dextrins require 85 per cent. or more.

Cellulose.—This is the colourless material of which the cell-walls and woody fibres of plants are composed. By treatment with strong mineral acids it is, like starch, converted into glucose, but with much

greater difficulty. The various digestive ferments have little or no action on cellulose; hence the necessity of boiling starch before it is taken as food. Boiling bursts the cellulose envelopes of the starch grains, and so allows the digestive juices to get at the starch proper.

Cellulose is found in a few animals, as in the test or outer investment of the Tunicates.

[**Inosite**, formerly called muscle sugar ($C_6H_{12}O_6$), is found in muscle, kidney, liver, and other parts of the body in small quantities. It is also largely found in the vegetable kingdom. It is crystallisable, and has the same empirical formula as the glucoses. It is, however, not a sugar, and careful analysis has shown that it really belongs to the aromatic series.]

The Fats.

Fat is found in small quantities in many animal tissues. It is, however, found in large quantities in three situations, viz., marrow, adipose tissue, and milk.

The contents of the fat cells of adipose tissue are fluid during life, the normal temperature of the body (37° C., or 99° F.) being considerably above the melting-point (25° C.) of the mixture of the fats found there. These fats are three in number, and are called *palmitin*, *stearin*, and *olein*. They differ from one another in chemical composition and in certain physical characters, such as melting-point and solubilities. Olein melts at −5° C., palmitin at 45° C., and stearin at 53-66° C. It is thus olein which holds the other two dissolved at the body temperature. Fats are all soluble in hot alcohol, ether, and chloroform, but insoluble in water.

Chemical Constitution of the Fats.—The fats are compounds of fatty acids with glycerin, and may be termed *glycerides* or *glyceric ethers*.

The fatty acids form a series of acids derived from the monatomic alcohols by oxidation. Thus, to take ordinary ethyl alcohol, C_2H_6O, the first stage in oxidation is the removal of two atoms of hydrogen to form aldehyde, C_2H_4O; on further oxidation an atom of oxygen is added to form acetic acid, $C_2H_4O_2$.

A similar acid can be obtained from all the other alcohols, thus:—

From methyl	alcohol	$CH_3.HO$,	formic	acid	$H.COOH$	is obtained.
,, ethyl	,,	$C_2H_5.HO$,	acetic	,,	$CH_3.COOH$	,,
,, propyl	,,	$C_3H_7.HO$,	propionic	,,	$C_2H_5.COOH$	,,
,, butyl	,,	$C_4H_9.HO$,	butyric	,,	$C_3H_7.COOH$	,,
,, amyl	,,	$C_5H_{11}.HO$,	valeric	,,	$C_4H_9.COOH$	,,
,, hexyl	,,	$C_6H_{13}.HO$,	caproic	,,	$C_5H_{11}.COOH$	,,

and so on.

Or in general terms:—

From the alcohol with formula $C_nH_{2n+1}.HO$, the acid with

formula $C_{n-1}H_{2n-1}.COOH$ is obtained. The sixteenth term of this series has the formula $C_{15}H_{31}.COOH$, and is called **palmitic acid**; the eighteenth has the formula $C_{17}H_{35}.COOH$, and is called **stearic acid**. Each acid, as will be seen, consists of a radical, $C_{n-1}H_{2n-1}CO$, united to hydroxyl (OH). **Oleic acid**, however, is not a member of this series, but belongs to a somewhat similar series known as the *acrylic series*, of which the general formula is $C_{n-1}H_{2n-3}.COOH$. It is the eighteenth term of the series, and its formula is $C_{17}H_{33}.COOH$.

The first member of the group of alcohols from which this acrylic series of acids is obtained is called *allyl alcohol* ($CH_2:CH.CH_2OH$); the aldehyde of this is *acrolein* ($CH_2:CH.CHO$), and the formula for the acid (acrylic acid) is $CH_2:CH.COOH$. It will be noticed that two of the carbon atoms are united by two valencies, and these bodies are therefore unsaturated; they are unstable and are prone to undergo by uniting with another element a conversion into bodies in which the carbon atoms are united by only one bond. This accounts for their reducing action, and it is owing to this that the colour reactions with osmic acid and Sudan III. are due. Fat which contains any member of the acrylic series such as oleic acid blackens osmic acid, by reducing it to a lower (black) oxide. The fats palmitin and stearin do not give this reaction.

Glycerin or **Glycerol** is a triatomic alcohol, $C_3H_5(HO)_3$—*i.e.*, three atoms of hydroxyl united to a radical glyceryl (C_3H_5). The hydrogen in the hydroxyl atoms is replaceable by other organic radicals. As an example, take the radical of acetic acid called *acetyl* ($CH_3.CO$). The following formulæ represent the derivatives that can be obtained by replacing one, two, or all three hydroxyl hydrogen atoms in this way:—

$C_3H_5\begin{cases}OH\\OH\\OH\end{cases}$ [Glycerin.] $C_3H_5\begin{cases}OH\\OH\\O.CH_3.CO\end{cases}$ [Monoacetin.] $C_3H_5\begin{cases}OH\\O.CH_3.CO\\O.CH_3.CO\end{cases}$ [Diacetin.] $C_3H_5\begin{cases}O.CH_3.CO\\O.CH_3.CO\\O.CH_3.CO\end{cases}$ [Triacetin.]

Triacetin is a type of a neutral fat; stearin, palmitin, and olein ought more properly to be called *tristearin*, *tripalmitin*, and *triolein* respectively. Each consists of glycerin in which the three atoms of hydrogen in the hydroxyls are replaced by radicals of the fatty acid. This is represented in the following formulæ:—

	Acid.		*Radical.*		*Fat.*
Palmitic acid	$C_{15}H_{31}.COOH$	Palmityl	$C_{15}H_{31}.CO$	Palmitin	$C_3H_5(OC_{15}H_{31}.CO)_3$
Stearic acid	$C_{17}H_{35}.COOH$	Stearyl	$C_{17}H_{35}.CO$	Stearin	$C_3H_5(OC_{17}H_{35}.CO)_3$
Oleic acid	$C_{17}H_{33}.COOH$	Oleyl	$C_{17}H_{33}.CO$	Olein	$C_3H_5(OC_{17}H_{33}.CO)_3$

Decomposition Products of the Fats—The fats split up into the substances out of which they are built up.

Under the influence of superheated steam, mineral acids, and in the body by means of certain ferments (for instance, the fat-splitting ferment, steapsin, of the pancreatic juice), a fat combines with water and splits into glycerin and the fatty acid. The following equa-

tion represents what occurs in a fat, taking tripalmitin as an example:—

$$\underset{\text{[Tripalmitin—a fat.]}}{C_3H_5(O.C_{15}H_{31}CO)_3} + 3H_2O = \underset{\text{[Glycerin.]}}{C_3H_5(OH)_3} \; \underset{\text{[Palmitic acid—a fatty acid.]}}{3C_{15}H_{31}CO.OH}.$$

In the process of **saponification** much the same sort of reaction occurs, the final products being glycerin and a compound of the base with the fatty acid which is called a *soap*. Suppose, for instance, that potassium hydrate is used; we get—

$$\underset{\text{[Tripalmitin—a fat.]}}{C_3H_5(O.C_{15}H_{31}CO)_3} + 3KHO = \underset{\text{[Glycerin.]}}{C_3H_5(OH)_3} + \underset{\text{[Potassium palmitate—a soap.]}}{3C_{15}H_{31}CO.OK}.$$

Emulsification.—Another change that fats undergo in the body is very different from saponification. It is a physical rather than a chemical change; the fat is broken up into very small globules, such as are seen in the natural *emulsion*—milk.

Lecithin ($C_{42}H_{84}NPO_9$).—This is a very complex fat, which yields on decomposition not only glycerin and fatty acids (*stearic* and *oleic*), but phosphoric acid, and an alkaloid [$N.(CH_3)_3C_2H_6O_2$] called *choline* in addition. This substance is found to a great extent in the nervous system (see p. 176), and to a small extent in bile. Together with **cholesterin**, a crystallisable, monatomic alcohol ($C_{27}H_{45}.HO$), which we shall consider more at length in connection with the bile, it is found in small quantities in the protoplasm of all cells.

The Proteins.

The **proteins** are the most important substances that occur in animal and vegetable organisms, and *protein metabolism* is, as already noted (p. 7), the most characteristic sign of life.

They are highly complex compounds of carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, and sulphur, occurring in a solid viscous condition or in solution in nearly all parts of the body. The different members of the group present, however, great differences in their chemical and physical properties.

The proteins in the food form the source of the proteins in the body tissues, but the latter are usually different in composition from the former. The food proteins are in the process of digestion broken up into simpler substances, usually called *cleavage products*, and it is from these that the body cells reconstruct the proteins peculiar to themselves. As a result of katabolic processes in the body, the proteins are finally again broken down, carbonic acid, water, sulphuric acid (combined as sulphates), urea, and creatinine being the principal final products which are discharged in the urine and other excretions. The substances intermediate between the proteins and these final katabolites will be discussed under urine.

The following figures will convince the student how different the proteins are in elementary composition. Hoppe-Seyler many years ago gave the variations in percentage composition as follows:—

	C	H	N	S	O
From	51·5	6·9	15·2	0·3	20·9
To	54·5	7·3	17·0	2·0	23·5

Recent research has since shown that the variations are even greater than those just stated.

The same fact is brought home more vividly when the cleavage products are separated and estimated. These differ both in kind and in amount, but nearly all of them are substances which are termed *amino-acids*. Emil Fischer, to whom we owe so much of our knowledge in this direction, considers that the proteins are linkages of a greater or lesser number of these amino-acids, and there is little doubt that in the future his work will result in an actual synthesis of the protein molecule, and with that will come an accurate knowledge of its constitution.

When the protein molecule is broken down in laboratory processes, or by the digestive ferments which occur in the alimentary canal, the essential change is due to what is called *hydrolysis*; that is, the molecule unites with water and then breaks up into smaller molecules. The first cleavage products, which are called *proteoses*, retain many of the characters of the original protein, and the same is true, though to a less degree, of the *peptones*, which come next in order of formation. The peptones, in their turn, are decomposed into short linkages of amino-acids, which are called *polypeptides*, and finally the individual amino-acids are obtained separated from each other.

What we have already learnt about the fatty acids will help us in understanding what is meant by an amino-acid.

If we take acetic acid, which is one of the simplest of the fatty acids, we see that its formula is

$$CH_3 . COOH.$$

If one of the three hydrogen atoms in the CH_3 group is replaced by NH_2, we get a substance which has the formula

$$CH_2 . NH_2 . COOH.$$

The combination NH_2, which has stepped in, is called the amino-group, and the new substance now formed is called amino-acetic acid; it is also termed **glycine** or glycocoll.

We may take another example from another fatty acid. Propionic acid is $C_2H_5 . COOH$; if we replace an atom of hydrogen by the amino-group as before, we obtain $C_2H_4 . NH_2 . COOH$, which is amino-propionic acid or **alanine.**

Going a little higher in the scale, and taking caproic acid

$C_5H_{11}.COOH$, we obtain from it in an exactly similar way, $C_5H_{10}.NH_2.COOH$, which is amino-caproic acid or **leucine.**

All the three amino-acids mentioned (glycine, alanine, and leucine) are found among the final cleavage products of most proteins; but there are a good many more in addition, for instance:—

Amino-valeric acid,
Amino-succinamic acid (asparagine),
Amino-succinic acid (aspartic acid),
Amino-pyrotartaric acid (glutamic acid),
Amino-hydroxy-propionic acid (serine),

some of which are derived from fatty acids of a different series from those just enumerated.

But in all these cases there is only one replacement of an atom of hydrogen by NH_2; hence they are called *mono-amino-acids.*

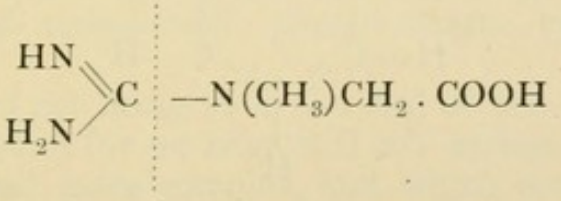
Passing to the next stage in complexity, we come to another group of amino-acids which are called *diamino*-acids; that is, fatty acids in which two hydrogen atoms are replaced by NH_2 groups. Of these we may particularly mention lysine, ornithine, arginine, and histidine.

Lysine is diamino-caproic acid. Caproic acid is $C_5H_{11}.COOH$. Mono-amino-caproic acid or leucine, we have already learnt, is $C_5H_{10}.NH_2.COOH$. Lysine or diamino-caproic acid is $C_5H_9.(NH_2)_2.COOH$.

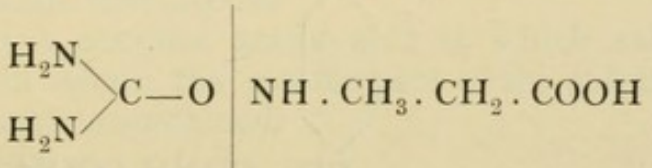
Ornithine is diamino-valeric acid, and the following formulæ will show its relationship to its parent fatty acid.

C_4H_9COOH is valeric acid.
$C_4H_7(NH_2)_2COOH$ is diamino-valeric acid or ornithine.

Arginine is a somewhat more complex substance, which contains the ornithine radical. It belongs to the same group of substances as **creatine**, another important cleavage product of the protein molecule. Creatine is methyl-guanidine acetic acid, and has the formula



On boiling it with baryta water, it takes up water (H_2O) and splits at the dotted line into urea ($CO(NH_2)_2$) and sarcosine, as shown below.



(Urea) (Sarcosine or Methyl-glycine.)

Arginine splits in a similar way, urea being split off on the left,

and ornithine instead of sarcosine on the right. Arginine is, therefore, a compound of ornithine with a urea group.

Histidine, the last member of this class, has the formula $C_6H_9N_3O_2$, and is probably also a diamino-acid, but its exact constitution has not yet been made out with certainty.

These substances we have hitherto described as acids, but they may also play the part of bases, for the introduction of a second amino-group into the fatty acid molecules confers upon them basic properties. The three substances:—

Lysine . .	$C_6H_{14}N_2O_2$
Arginine . .	$C_6H_{14}N_4O_2$
Histidine . .	$C_6H_9N_3O_2$

are in fact often called the *hexone bases,* because each of them contains 6 atoms of carbon, as the above empirical formulæ show.

But there is still an important group of amino-acids to be considered, and these are termed the *aromatic amino-acids;* that is, amino-acids united to the benzene ring, and of these we will mention three, namely, phenyl-alanine, tyrosine, and a nearly related substance called tryptophane.

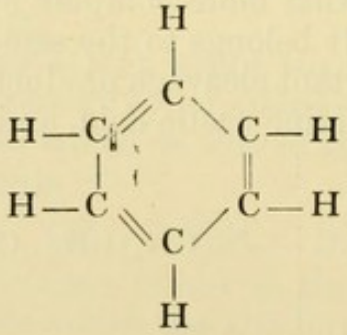
Phenyl-alanine is alanine or amino-propionic acid in which an atom of hydrogen is replaced by phenyl (C_6H_5).

Propionic acid has the formula $C_2H_5 . COOH$.

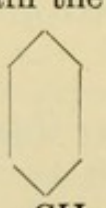
Alanine (amino-propionic acid) is $C_2H_4NH_2 . COOH$.

Phenyl-alanine is $C_2H_3 . C_6H_5 . NH_2 . COOH$.

The formula of phenyl-alanine may also be written another way. The graphic formula of benzene (C_6H_6) is:—



If the H placed lowermost in the above formula is replaced by $CH_2CH . NH_2 . COOH$, we obtain the formula of phenyl-alanine:—



$CH_2 . CHNH_2COOH$

the remainder of the benzene ring, which is unaltered, being represented as usual by a simple hexagon.

Tyrosine is a little more complicated; it is oxyphenyl-alanine; that is, instead of phenyl (C_6H_5) in the formula of phenyl-alanine, we have now oxyphenyl ($C_6H_4 . OH$); this gives us

$$C_2H_3 . (C_6H_4 . OH) NH_2 . COOH$$

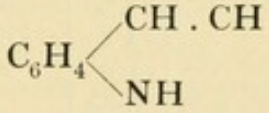
as the formula for tyrosine written one way, or



$$CH_2 . CHNH_2 . COOH$$

when written in the other way.

Tryptophane is more complex still; it is indole amino-propionic acid: that is, amino-propionic acid united to another ringed derivative called indole. Tryptophane is the portion of the protein molecule which is the parent substance of two evil-smelling products of protein decomposition called indole



and scatole or methyl indole. Tryptophane is also the radical in the protein molecule which is responsible for the colour test called the Adamkiewicz reaction.

We may summarise what we have learnt up to this point by enumerating the principal members of these three groups of amino-acids:—

1. *The mono-amino-acids:* glycine, alanine, leucine, amino-valeric acid, asparagine, aspartic acid, glutamic acid, serine.
2. *The di-amino-acids:* lysine, ornithine, arginine, and histidine.
3. *The ringed amino-acids:* phenyl-alanine, tyrosine, and tryptophane.

But this does not bring us to the end of the list of the cleavage products of proteins, for we have still left several other groups, most of which are still more complex, and which we will, therefore, be content with merely mentioning, namely:—

4. Pyrimidine bases, such as thymine and cytosine.
5. Pyrrolidine derivatives.
6. Cystine, a complex amino-acid in which sulphur is present, and in which the greater part of the sulphur of the protein molecule is combined.
7. Ammonia.

Our list now represents the principal groups of chemical nuclei united together in the protein molecule, and its length makes one

realise the complicated nature of that molecule and the difficulties which beset its investigation.

The workers in Fischer's laboratory are steadily working through the various known proteins, taking them to pieces and identifying and estimating the fragments. I do not intend to burden the readers of this book with anything more than a sample of their results, and will, therefore, only give in a brief table the results obtained with some of the cleavage products of a few proteins. The numbers given are percentages.

	Serum Albumin.	Egg Albumin.	Serum Globulin.	Caseinogen.	Gelatin.	Keratin, from horse hair.	Edestin, a globulin from hemp seed.	Zein, from maize.	Gliadin, from wheat.
Glycine . .	0	0	3·5	0	16·5	0·3	3·8	+	0·9
Leucine . .	20·0	6·1	18·7	10·5	2·1	7·1	15·5	11·2	6·0
Glutamic acid .	7·7	8·0	8·5	11·0	0·8	3·7	17·2	11·8	36·5
Tyrosine . .	2·1	1·1	2·5	4·5	0	3·2	2·1	10·1	2·4
Arginine . .	...	...	...	4·8	7·6	...	11·7	1·8	2·75
Tryptophane .	+	+	+	1·5	0	...	+	0	...
Cystine . .	2·3	0·2	0·7	0·06	...	More than 10	0·2	...	...

Such numbers, of course, are not to be committed to memory, but they are sufficient to convey to the reader the differences between the proteins. There are several blanks left, on account of no accurate estimations having yet been made. Where the sign + occurs, the substance in question has been proved to be present, but not yet determined quantitively. Among the more striking points brought out are:—

1. The absence of glycine from albumins.
2. The high percentage of glycine in gelatin.
3. The absence of tyrosine and tryptophane in gelatin.
4. The high percentage of the sulphur containing substance (cystin) in keratin.
5. The high percentage of glutamic acid in vegetable proteins.

Emil Fischer in his work has sought to make such a list complete, and month by month the details are being filled in. He has next tried to discover the way in which the amino-acids are linked together into groups; and the culmination of his work will be the discovery of the way in which such groups are linked together to form the protein molecule. The last stage he has not yet reached, but it will be interesting to see what progress he has made in ascertaining how the amino-acids are linked together into groups.

The groups he terms *peptides* or *polypeptides;* many of these have been made synthetically in his laboratory, and so the synthesis of the protein molecule is foreshadowed.

We may take as our examples of the peptides some of the simplest, and may write the formulæ of a few amino-acids as follows:—

$NH_2 . CH_2 . COOH$	Glycine
$NH_2 . CH_4 . COOH$	Alanine
$NH_2 . C_5H_{10} . COOH$	Leucine

or in general terms

$$HNH . R . COOH.$$

Two amino-acids are linked together as shown in the following formula:—

$$HNH . R . CO \boxed{OH . H} NH . R . COOH$$

What happens is that the hydroxyl (OH) of the carboxyl (COOH) group of one acid unites with one atom of the hydrogen of the next amino (HNH) group, and water is thus formed, as shown within the dotted lines: this is eliminated and the rest of the chain closes up. In this way we get a *dipeptide.* The names glycyl, alanyl, leucyl, etc., are given by Fischer to the $NH_2 . R . CO$ groups which replace the hydrogen of the next NH_2 group. Thus glycyl-glycine, glycyl-leucine, leucyl-alanine, alanyl-leucine, and numerous other combinations and permutations are obtained. If the same operation is repeated we obtain tripeptides (leucyl-glycyl-alanine, alanyl-leucyl-tyrosine, etc.); then come the tetrapeptides and so on. In the end, by coupling the chains sufficiently often and in appropriate order, Fischer has already obtained substances which give some of the reactions of peptone.

Solubilities.—The proteins are insoluble in alcohol and ether. Some are soluble in water,* others insoluble. Many of the latter are soluble in weak saline solutions. Some are insoluble, others soluble in concentrated saline solutions.

All proteins are soluble with the aid of heat in concentrated mineral acids and alkalies. Such treatment, however, decomposes as well as dissolves the protein. Proteins are also soluble in gastric and pancreatic juices; but here, again, they undergo a change, as we have already seen (p. 400).

Heat Coagulation.—Most native proteins, like white of egg, are

* The proteins are not truly soluble in water; they are in a state of *colloidal solution*, a condition intermediate between true solution and suspension. Many of their properties are due to this fact.

rendered insoluble when their solutions are heated. The temperature of heat coagulation differs in different proteins; thus myosinogen and fibrinogen coagulate at 56° C., serum albumin and serum globulin at about 75° C.

The proteins which are coagulated by heat come mainly under two classes: the *albumins* and the *globulins*. These differ in solubility; the albumins are soluble in distilled water, the true globulins require salts to hold them in solution.

Indiffusibility.—The proteins (peptones excepted) belong to the class of substances called *colloids* by Thomas Graham; that is, they pass with difficulty, or not at all, through animal membranes. In the construction of dialysers, vegetable parchment is largely used.

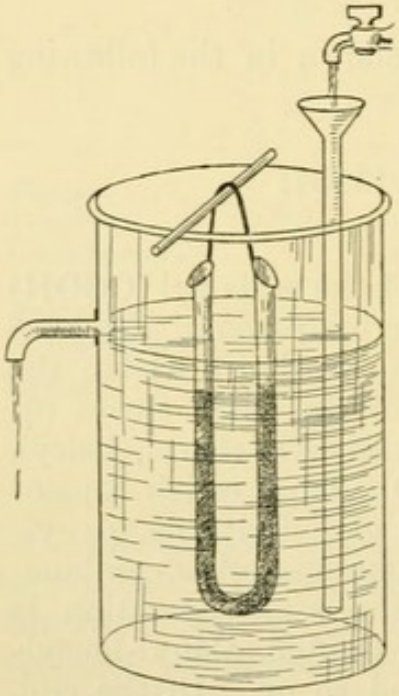


FIG. 341.—Dialyser made of a tube of parchment paper, suspended in a vessel through which water is kept flowing.

Proteins may thus be separated from diffusible (*crystalloid*) substances like salts, but the process is a tedious one. If some serum or white of egg is placed in a dialyser (fig. 341) and distilled water outside, the greater amount of the salts passes into the water through the membrane and is replaced by water; the two proteins albumin and globulin remain inside; the globulin is, however, precipitated, as the salts which previously kept it in solution are removed.

Crystallisation.—Hæmoglobin, the red pigment of the blood, is a protein substance and is crystallisable (for further details, see The Blood, Chapter XXVI.). Like other proteins it has an enormously large molecule; though crystalline, it is not, however, crystalloid in Graham's sense of that term. Blood pigment, however, is not the only crystallisable protein. Long ago crystals of protein (globulin or vitellin) were observed in the aleurone grains of many seeds, and in the somewhat similar granules occurring in the egg-yolk of some fishes and amphibians. By appropriate methods these have been separated and re-crystallised. Further, egg albumin itself has been crystallised. If a solution of white of egg is diluted with an equal volume of saturated solution of ammonium sulphate, the globulin present is precipitated and is removed by filtration. The filtrate is now allowed to remain some days at the temperature of the air, and as it becomes more concentrated from evaporation, minute spheroidal globules and finally minute needles, either aggregated or separate, make their appearance (Hofmeister). Crystallisation is more rapid

if a little acetic or sulphuric acid is added (Hopkins). Serum albumin (from some animals) has also been similarly crystallised (Gürber).

Action on Polarised Light.—All proteins are levo-rotatory, the amount of rotation varying with individual proteins. Several of the compound proteins, *e.g.*, hæmoglobin, and nucleo-proteins are dextro-rotatory, though their protein components are levo-rotatory (Gamgee).

Colour Reactions.—The principal colour reactions by which proteins are recognised are the following:—

(1) The *xantho-proteic reaction;* if a few drops of nitric acid are added to a solution of a protein such as white of egg, the result is a white precipitate; this and the surrounding liquid become yellow on boiling and are turned orange by ammonia. The preliminary white precipitate is not given by certain proteins such as peptones; but the colours are the same. The colour is due to the formation of nitro-derivatives from the aromatic portion of the protein molecule.

(2) *Millon's reaction.* Millon's reagent is a mixture of mercuric and mercurous nitrate with excess of nitric acid. This gives a white precipitate with proteins which is turned brick-red on boiling. This reaction depends on the presence in proteins of the tyrosine radical.

(3) *Copper sulphate (Rose's or Piotrowski's) test.* A trace of copper sulphate and excess of strong caustic potash give with most proteins a violet solution. Proteoses and peptones, however, give a rose-red colour instead; this same colour is given by the substance called *biuret;* hence the test is generally called the *biuret reaction.* This name does not imply that biuret is present in protein; but both protein and biuret give the reaction because they possess a common radical, probably two CONH groups linked to a carbon or nitrogen atom, or to one another.

Biuret is formed by heating solid urea; ammonia passes off and leaves biuret thus:—

$$\underset{\text{[Urea.]}}{2CON_2H_4} = \underset{\text{[Biuret.]}}{C_2O_2N_3H_5} + \underset{\text{[Ammonia.]}}{NH_3}.$$

(4) *Adamkiewicz reaction.** When a solution of protein is added to a dilute solution of formaldehyde, and then excess of commercial sulphuric acid is added, an intense violet colour is obtained. This is due to the tryptophane radical.

Precipitants of Proteins.—Solutions of most proteins are precipitated by:—

Strong acids such as nitric acid; picric acid; acetic acid and

* In the original test, glacial acetic acid was used, but it is really an impurity in this acid that gives the reaction. According to Hopkins, this impurity is glyoxylic acid; according to Rosenheim, it is formaldehyde. The presence of impurities (oxidising agents) in the sulphuric acid is also necessary.

potassium ferrocyanide; acetic acid and excess of a neutral salt such as sodium sulphate, when these are boiled with the protein solution; salts of the heavy metals such as copper sulphate, mercuric chloride, lead acetate, silver nitrate, etc.; tannin; alcohol; saturation with certain neutral salts such as ammonium sulphate.

It is necessary that the words *coagulation* and *precipitation* should in connection with proteins be carefully distinguished. The term *coagulation* is used when an insoluble protein (coagulated protein) is formed from a soluble one. This may occur:

1. When a protein is heated—*heat coagulation;*
2. Under the influence of a ferment; for instance, when a curd is formed in milk by rennet or a clot in shed blood by the fibrin ferment —*ferment coagulation;*
3. When an insoluble precipitate is produced by the addition of certain reagents (nitric acid, picric acid, tannin, etc.).

There are, however, other precipitants of proteins in which the precipitate formed is readily soluble in suitable reagents such as saline solutions, and the protein continues to show its typical reactions. Such precipitation is not coagulation. Such a precipitate is produced by saturation with ammonium sulphate. Certain proteins, called *globulins,* are more readily precipitated by such means than others. Thus, serum globulin is precipitated by half-saturation with ammonium sulphate. Full saturation with ammonium sulphate precipitates all proteins but peptone. The globulins are precipitated by certain salts such as sodium chloride and magnesium sulphate, which do not precipitate the albumins. This method of precipitation is called "salting out."

The precipitation produced by alcohol is peculiar in that after a time it becomes a coagulation. Protein freshly precipitated by alcohol is readily soluble in water or saline media; but after it has been allowed to stand some weeks under alcohol it becomes more and more insoluble. Albumins and globulins are most readily rendered insoluble by this method; proteoses and peptones are never rendered insoluble by the action of alcohol. This fact is of value in the separation of these proteins from others.

Classification of Proteins.

The knowledge of the chemistry of the proteins, which is slowly progressing under Emil Fischer's leadership, will, no doubt, in time enable us to give a classification of these substances on a strictly chemical basis. But until that time arrives, we must be content very largely with the artificial classification (on the basis of solubility and so forth) which has hitherto prevailed. The following classification must therefore be regarded as a provisional one, which while it

retains the old familiar names as far as possible, yet attempts also to incorporate some of the new ideas.

The classes of proteins then, beginning with the simplest, are as follows:—

1. Protamines.
2. Histones.
3. Albumins.
4. Globulins.
5. Sclero-proteins.
6. Phospho-proteins.
7. Conjugated proteins.
   - i. Chromo-proteins.
   - ii. Gluco-proteins.
   - iii. Nucleo-proteins.

We will take these classes one by one.

1. The Protamines.

These substances are obtainable from the heads of the spermatozoa of certain fishes, where they occur in combination with nuclein. Kossel's view that they are the simplest proteins in nature has met with general acceptance, and they give such typical protein reactions as the copper sulphate test (Rose's or Piotrowski's reaction). On hydrolytic decomposition they first yield substances of smaller molecular weight analogous to the peptones which are called *protones*, and then they split up into amino-acids. The number of resulting amino-acids is small as compared with other proteins, hence the hypothesis that they are simple proteins is confirmed. Notable among their decomposition products are the diamino-acids or hexone bases (see p. 402).

The protamines differ in their composition according to their source, and yield these products in different proportions.

Salmine (from the salmon roe) and *clupeine* (from the herring roe) appear to be identical, and have the empirical formula $C_{30}H_{57}N_{17}O_6$; its principal decomposition product is arginine, but amino-valeric acid and a small quantity of an unknown residue are also found. *Sturine* (from the sturgeon) yields the same products with lysine and histidine in addition. With one exception, the protamines yield no aromatic amino-acids. The exception is *cyclopterine* (from *Cyclopterus lumpus*); this substance is thus an important chemical link between the other protamines and the more complex members of the protein family.

2. The Histones.

These are substances which have been separated from blood corpuscles; *globin*, the protein constituent of hæmoglobin, is a well-marked instance. They yield a larger number of amino-compounds than do the protamines. They are coagulable by heat, soluble in dilute acids, and precipitable from such solutions by ammonia. The precipitability by ammonia is a property possessed by no other protein group.

3. The Albumins.

These are typical proteins, and yield the majority of the cleavage products enumerated on pp. 400-403.

They enter into colloidal solution in water, in dilute saline solutions, and in saturated solutions of sodium chloride and magnesium sulphate. They are, however, precipitated by saturating their solutions with ammonium sulphate. Their solutions are coagulated by heat usually at 70-73° C. Serum albumin, egg albumin, and lact-albumin are instances.

4. The Globulins.

The globulins give the same general tests as the albumins; they are coagulated by heat, but differ from the albumins mainly in their solubilities. This difference in solubility may be stated in tabular form as follows:—

Reagent.	Albumin.	Globulin.
Water	soluble	insoluble
Dilute saline solution	soluble	soluble
Saturated solution of magnesium sulphate or sodium chloride . . .	soluble	insoluble
Half-saturated solution of ammonium sulphate	soluble	insoluble
Saturated solution of ammonium sulphate	insoluble	insoluble

In general terms globulins are more readily salted out than albumins; they may therefore be precipitated, and thus separated from the albumins by saturation with such salts as sodium chloride, or better magnesium sulphate, or by half saturation with ammonium sulphate.

The typical globulins are also insoluble in water, and so may be precipitated by removing the salt which keeps them in solution. This may be accomplished by dialysis (see p. 406). Their temperature of heat-coagulation varies considerably. The following are the commoner globulins:—fibrinogen and serum globulin in blood, egg globulin in white of egg, paramyosinogen in muscle, and crystallin in the crystalline lens. We must also include under the same heading certain proteins which are the result of ferment coagulation on globulins, such as fibrin (see blood) and myosin (see muscle).

The most striking and real distinction between globulins and albumins is that the former on hydrolysis yield glycine, whereas the albumins do not.

5. The Sclero-proteins.

These substances form a heterogeneous group of substances, which are frequently termed *albuminoids*. The prefix sclero indicates

the skeletal origin and often insoluble nature of the members of the group. The principal proteins under this head are:—

Collagen, the substance of which the white fibres of connective tissue are composed. Some observers regard it as the anhydride of gelatin. In bone it is often called *ossein.*

Gelatin.—This substance is produced by boiling collagen with water. It possesses the peculiar property of setting into a jelly when a solution made with hot water cools. On digestion it is like ordinary proteins converted into peptone-like substances, and is readily absorbed. Though it will replace in diet a certain quantity of such proteins, acting as what is called a "protein-sparing" food, it cannot altogether take their place as a food. Animals whose sole nitrogenous food is gelatin waste rapidly. The reason for this is that gelatin contains neither the tyrosine or the tryptophane groups, and so it gives neither Millon's nor the Adamkiewicz reactions. Animals who receive a mixture of gelatin, tyrosine, and tryptophane in their diet thrive better.

Chondrin is the name given to the mixture of gelatin and mucoid which is obtained by boiling cartilage.

Elastin.—This is the substance of which the yellow or elastic fibres of connective tissue are composed. It is a very insoluble material. The sarcolemma of muscular fibres and certain basement membranes are very similar.

Keratin, or horny material, is the substance found in the surface layers of the epidermis, in hairs, nails, hoofs, and horns. It is very insoluble, and chiefly differs from most other proteins in its high percentage of sulphur. A similar substance, called *neurokeratin,* is found in neuroglia and nerve-fibres. In this connection it is interesting to note that the epidermis and the nervous system are both formed from the same layer of the embryo—the epiblast.

6. The Phospho-proteins.

Vitellin (from egg-yolk), caseinogen, the principal protein of milk, and casein, the result of the action of the rennet-ferment on caseinogen (see milk), are the chief members of this group. Among their decomposition products is a considerable quantity of phosphoric acid. They have been frequently confused with the nucleo-proteins we shall be studying immediately, and the prefix nucleo—so often applied to them—is entirely misleading, since they do not yield the products (purine bases, etc.) which are characteristic of nucleo-compounds.

7. The Conjugated Proteins.

These are compounds in which the protein molecule is united to other organic materials, which are as a rule also of complex nature.

This second constituent of the compound is usually termed a *prosthetic group.* They may be divided into the following sub-classes:—

i. Chromo-proteins.—These are compounds of protein with a pigment, which usually contains iron. They are typified by hæmoglobin and its allies, which will be fully considered under blood.

ii. Gluco-proteins.—These are compounds of protein with a carbohydrate group. This class includes the mucins and the mucoids.

The *mucins* are widely distributed and may occur in epithelial cells, or be shed out by these cells (mucus, mucous glands, goblet cells). The mucin obtained from different sources varies in composition and reactions, but they all agree in being viscid and tenacious, soluble in dilute alkalis such as lime water, and precipitable from solution by acetic acid.

The *mucoids* differ from the mucins in minor details. The term is applied to the mucin-like substances which form the chief constituent of the ground substance of connective tissues (tendo-mucoid, chondro-mucoid, etc.). Another (ovo-mucoid) is found in white of egg, and others (pseudo-mucin and para-mucin) are occasionally found in dropsical effusions, and in the fluid of ovarian cysts.

It is probable that the differences between the mucins and mucoids are due either to the nature of the carbohydrate group, or more probably to the nature of the protein to which it is united. The carbohydrate substance in the majority of cases is not sugar, but a nitrogenous substance which has a similar reducing power to sugar, and which is called *glucosamine* ($C_6H_{11}O_5NH_2$), that is, glucose in which HO is replaced by NH_2.

Pavy and others have shown that a *small* quantity of the same carbohydrate derivative can be split off from various other proteins which we have already placed among the albumins and globulins. It is, however, probable that this must not be considered a prosthetic group, but is more intimately united within the protein molecule.

iii. Nucleo-proteins.—These are compounds of protein with a complex organic acid called nucleic acid which contains phosphorus. They are found both in the nuclei and cell-protoplasm of cells. In physical character they often simulate mucin.

Nuclein is the name given to the chief constituent of cell-nuclei. It is identical with the chromatin of histologists (see p. 11).

On decomposition it yields an organic acid called nucleic acid, together with a variable but usually small amount of protein. It contains a high percentage (10-11) of phosphorus.

The nuclein obtained from the nuclei or heads of the spermatozoa consists of nucleic acid without any protein admixture. In fishes' spermatozoa, however, there is an exception to this rule, for there it is, as we have already seen, united to protamine.

The nucleo-proteins of cell protoplasm are compounds of nucleic

acid with a much larger quantity of protein, so that they usually contain only 1 per cent. or less of phosphorus. Some also contain iron, and the normal supply of iron to the body is contained in the nucleo-proteins or *hæmatogens* (Bunge) of plant or animal cells.

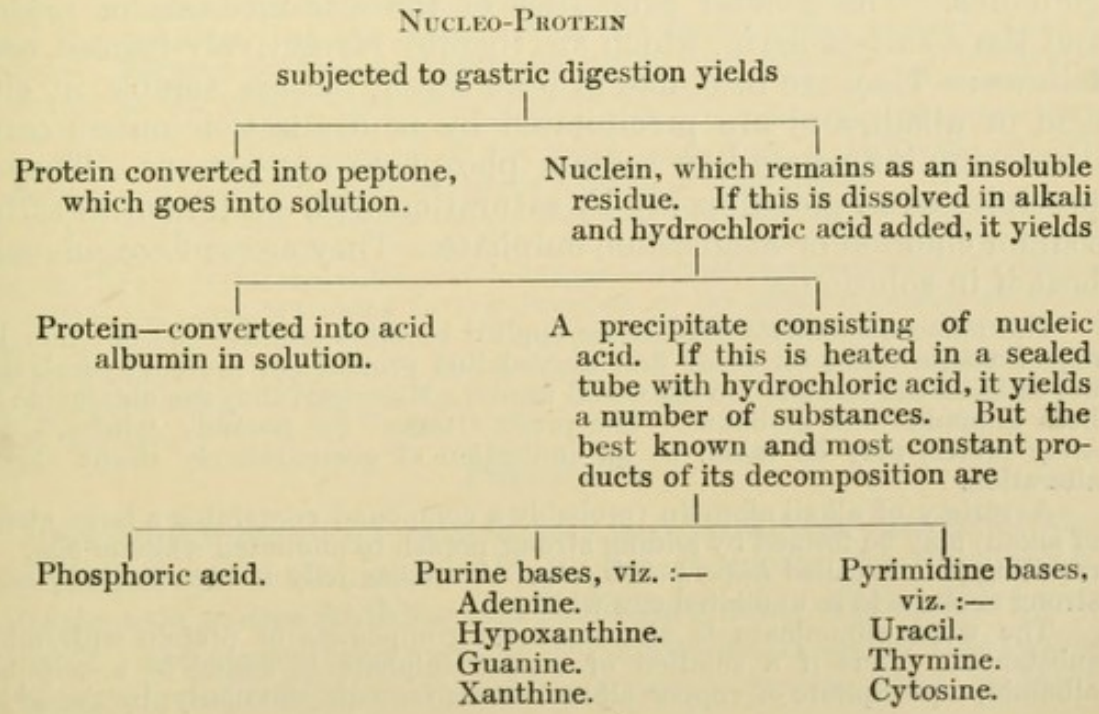
Nucleo-proteins may be prepared from cellular structures like thymus, testis, kidney, etc., by two principal methods :—

1. *Wooldridge's method.*—The organ is minced, and soaked in water for twenty-four hours. Dilute acetic acid added to the aqueous extract precipitates the nucleo-protein.

2. *Sodium chloride method.*—The minced organ is ground up in a mortar with solid sodium chloride; the resulting viscous mass is poured into excess of water, and the nucleo-protein rises in strings to the top of the water.

The solvent usually employed for a nucleo-protein, whichever method it is prepared by, is a 1 per cent. solution of sodium carbonate. The relationship of nucleo-proteins to the coagulation of the blood is described under that heading.

Nucleic acid yields, among its decomposition products, phosphoric acid, various bases of the xanthine group, and bases also of the pyrimidine group (cytosine, thymine, uracil). In some cases a carbohydrate radical is also obtained; thus a pentose is obtained from the nucleic acid of the pancreas, the liver, and yeast cells. There appear to be several nucleic acids, which vary in the relative amount they yield of their decomposition products, especially of the members of the xanthine family which are sometimes called *alloxuric* or more usually *purine* bases. The purine bases are closely allied chemically to uric acid, and we shall have to study them again in relation to that substance. The following diagrammatic way of representing the decomposition of nucleo-protein will assist the student in remembering the relationships of these substances:—



Protein-hydrolysis.

When protein material is subjected to hydrolysis, as it is when heated with mineral acid, or superheated steam, or to the action of such ferments as pepsin or trypsin in the alimentary canal, it is finally resolved into the numerous amino-acids of which it is built. But before this ultimate stage is reached, it is split into substances of progressively diminishing molecular size, which still retain many of the protein characters. The products may be classified in order of formation as follows:—

1. Meta-proteins.
2. Proteoses.
3. Peptones.
4. Polypeptides.
5. Amino-acids.

The polypeptides are linkages of two or more amino-acids, as already explained. They do not give the biuret reaction. Although most of the polypeptides at present known are products of laboratory synthesis, some have been definitely separated from the digestion of proteins, and so they must appear in our classification. The proteoses and peptones give the biuret reaction; the peptones, however, cannot be salted out of solution like the proteoses: their molecules are smaller than those of the proteoses. We shall study them more fully under digestion.

It is, however, convenient to add here a brief description of the meta-proteins. They are obtained as the first stage of hydrolysis, and also by the action of dilute acids or alkalis on either albumins or globulins. The general properties of the *acid-albumin* or *syntonin* and the *alkali-albumin*, which are thereby respectively formed, are as follows:—They are insoluble in pure water, but are soluble in either acid or alkali, and are precipitated by neutralisation unless certain disturbing influences like sodium phosphate are present. They are precipitated as globulins are by saturation with such neutral salts as sodium chloride or magnesium sulphate. They are not coagulated by heat if in solution.

The name *albuminate* used to be applied to these substances; but this is an objectionable term, for these first degradation products of protein hydrolysis are not salts, as the termination *ate* would imply. Moreover, they are obtainable from both albumins and globulins. The prefix "meta" (or possibly "infra," which some prefer) may be taken as an indication of comparatively slight chemical alteration.

A variety of alkali-albumin (probably a compound containing a large quantity of alkali) may be formed by adding strong potash to undiluted white of egg. The resulting jelly is called *Lieberkühn's jelly*. A similar jelly is obtainable by adding strong acetic acid to undiluted egg white.

The word albuminate is also used for compounds of protein with mineral substances. Thus if a solution of copper sulphate is added to a solution of albumin, a precipitate of copper albuminate is formed. Similarly, by the addition

of other salts of the heavy metals, other metallic albuminates are obtainable. The halogens (chlorine, bromine, iodine) also form albuminates in this sense, and may be used for the precipitation of proteins.

It should be noted in conclusion that the foregoing classification of proteins is mainly applicable to those of animal origin. The vegetable proteins may roughly be arranged under the same main headings, although it is doubtful if a real and complete analogy exists in all cases. The cleavage products of the vegetable proteins are in the main the same as those of the animal proteins, but the quantity of each yielded is usually different. Vegetable proteins, for instance, as a rule give a very much higher yield of glutamic acid than do those of animal origin.

Further, there are certain vegetable proteins which have hitherto been regarded as peptones, but which do not give the biuret reaction. It seems impossible at present to bring exceptional substances of this kind into any general classification, and the same is true for those curious vegetable proteins, such as gliadin from the gluten of wheat, and zein from maize, which stand apart from all other members of the group in being soluble in alcohol.

The Polarimeter.

This instrument is one by means of which the action of various substances on the plane of polarised light can be observed and measured.

Most of the carbohydrates are dextro-rotatory.

All the proteins are levo-rotatory.

There are many varieties of the instrument; these can only be properly studied in a practical class, and all one can do here is to state briefly the principles on which they are constructed.

Suppose one is shooting arrows at a fence made up of narrow vertical palings; suppose also that the arrows are flat like the laths of a Venetian blind. If the arrows are shot vertically they will pass easily through the gaps between the palings, but if they are shot horizontally they will be unable to pass through at all. This rough illustration will help us in understanding what is meant by polarised light. Ordinary light is produced by the undulations of ether occurring in all directions at right angles to the path of propagation of the wave. Polarised light is produced by undulations in one plane only; we may compare it to our flat arrows.

In a polarimeter, there is at one end of the instrument a Nicol's prism, which is made of Iceland spar. This polarises the light which passes through it; it is called the polariser. At the other end of the instrument is another called the analyser. Between the two is a tube which can be filled with fluid. If the analyser is parallel to the polariser the light will pass through to the eye of the observer. But if the analyser is at right angles to the polariser it is like the flat arrows hitting horizontally the vertical palings of the fence, and there is darkness. At intermediate angles there will be intermediate degrees of illumination.

If the analyser and polariser are parallel and the intermediate tube filled with water, the light will pass as usual, because water has no action on the plane of polarised light. But if the water contains sugar or some "optically active" substance in solution the plane is twisted in one direction or the other according as the substance is dextro- or levo-rotatory. The amount of rotation is measured by the number of angles through which the analyser has to be turned in order to obtain the full illumination. This will vary with the length of the tube and the strength of the solution.

Ferments.

The word **fermentation** was first applied to the change of sugar into alcohol and carbonic acid by means of yeast. The evolution of carbonic acid causes frothing and bubbling; hence the term "fermentation." The agent, yeast, which produces this, is called the ferment. Microscopic investigation shows that yeast is composed of minute

rapidly-growing unicellular organisms (torulæ) belonging to the fungus group of plants.

The souring of milk, the transformation of urea into ammonium carbonate in decomposing urine, and the formation of vinegar (acetic acid) from alcohol are brought about by very similar organisms. The complex series of changes known as putrefaction, which are accompanied by the formation of malodorous gases, and which are produced by the various forms of bacteria, also come into the same category.



FIG. 342.—Cells of the yeast plant in process of budding.

That the change or fermentation is produced by these organisms is shown by the fact that it occurs only when the organisms are present, and stops when they are removed or killed by a high temperature or by certain substances (carbolic acid, mercuric chloride, etc.) called antiseptics.

The "germ theory" of disease explains the infectious diseases by considering that the change in the system is of the nature of fermentation, and, like the others we have mentioned, produced by microbes; the transference of the bacteria or their spores from one person to another constitutes infection. The poisons produced by the growing bacteria appear to be either alkaloidal (ptomaines) or protein in nature. The existence of poisonous proteins is a very remarkable thing, as no marked chemical differences can be shown to exist between them and those which are not poisonous, but which are useful as foods. The

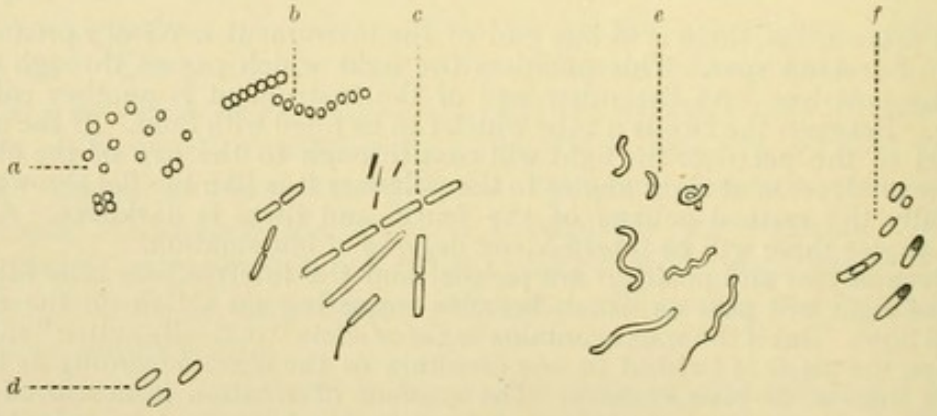


FIG. 343.—Types of micro-organisms: *a*, micrococci arranged singly; in twos, diplococci—if all the micrococci at *a* were grouped together they would be called staphylococci—and in fours, sarcinæ; *b*, micrococci in chains, streptococci; *c* and *d*, bacilli of various kinds (one is represented with a flagellum); *e*, various forms of spirilla; *f*, spores, either free or in bacilli.

most virulent poison in existence, namely, snake poison, is a protein of the proteose class.

There is another class of chemical transformations which at first sight differ very considerably from all of these. They, however, resemble these fermentations in the fact that they occur inde-

pendently of any apparent change in the agents that produce them. The agents that produce them are not living organisms, but chemical substances, the result of the activity of living cells. The change of starch into sugar by the ptyalin of the saliva is an instance.

Ferments may therefore be divided into two classes:—

1. The organised ferments—torulæ, bacteria, etc.
2. The unorganised ferments, or enzymes—such as ptyalin.

The distinction between organised ferments and enzymes is, however, more apparent than real; for the micro-organisms exert their action by enzymes which they secrete. This has long been known in connection with the invertin of yeast, and for the enzyme secreted by the micrococcus ureæ, which converts urea into ammonium carbonate. In recent years Buchner, by crushing yeast cells, succeeded in obtaining from them an enzyme which produces the alcoholic fermentation, and there is no doubt that what is true for yeast is equally true for all the organised ferments, and in many cases this has been already proved experimentally.

The unorganised ferments may be classified as follows:—

(*a*) Amylolytic—those which change amyloses (starch, glycogen) into sugars. Examples: ptyalin, diastase, amylopsin.

(*b*) Proteolytic—those which change proteins into proteoses and peptones. Examples: pepsin, trypsin.

(*c*) Steatolytic—those which split fats into fatty acids and glycerin. An example, steapsin, is found in pancreatic juice.

(*d*) Inversive — those which convert saccharoses (cane sugar, maltose, lactose) into glucose. Examples: invertin of intestinal juice and of yeast cells.

(*e*) Coagulative—those which convert soluble into insoluble proteins. Examples: rennet, fibrin ferment.

Most ferment actions are hydrolytic—*i.e.*, water is added to the material acted on, which then splits into new materials. This is seen by the following examples:—

1. Conversion of cellulose into carbonic acid and marsh gas (methane) by putrefactive organisms—

$$\underset{\text{[Cellulose.]}}{(C_6H_{10}O_5)n} + \underset{\text{[Water.]}}{nH_2O} = \underset{\text{[Carbonic acid.]}}{3nCO_2} + \underset{\text{[Methane.]}}{3nCH_4}.$$

2. Inversion of cane sugar by the unorganised ferment invertin—

$$\underset{\text{[Cane sugar.]}}{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}} + \underset{\text{[Water.]}}{H_2O} = \underset{\text{[Dextrose.]}}{C_6H_{12}O_6} + \underset{\text{[Levulose.]}}{C_6H_{12}O_6}.$$

Some enzymes, called *oxidases*, are oxygen carriers, and produce oxidation. They occur in living tissues.

A remarkable fact concerning the ferments is that the substances

they produce in time put a stop to their activity; thus, in the case of the organised ferments, the alcohol produced by yeast, the phenol, cresol, etc., produced by putrefactive organisms from proteins, first stop the growth of and ultimately kill the organisms which produce them. In the case of the enzymes also the products of their activity hinder and finally stop their action, but on the removal of these products the ferments resume work.

This fact suggested to Croft Hill the question whether ferments will act in the reverse manner to their usual action; and in the case of one ferment, at any rate, he found this to be the case. Inverting ferments, as we have just seen, usually convert a disaccharide into monosaccharides. One of these inverting ferments, called *maltase*, converts maltose into dextrose. If the ferment is allowed to act on strong solutions of dextrose, it converts a small proportion of that sugar back into maltose again. This discovery of Croft Hill's has since been confirmed by others in relation to other enzymes.

Ferments act best at a temperature of about 40° C. Their activity is stopped, but the ferments are not destroyed, by cold; it is stopped and the ferments killed by too great heat. A certain amount of moisture and oxygen is also necessary; there are, however, certain micro-organisms that act without free oxygen, and are called anaërobic in contradistinction to those which require oxygen, and are called aërobic.

The enzymes act as *catalysts*, that is to say, they are able to increase the velocity of chemical changes, which occur in their absence so slowly, that for all practical purposes they may be considered not to occur at all. The organism is thus enabled to bring about, at body temperature, many chemical reactions which would otherwise necessitate a high temperature or powerful reagents. The enzymes, however, differ from most inorganic catalysts in some of their properties: one such property is that they are destroyed by heat; the explanation of this and other differences is that the enzymes, like the proteins, are in a colloidal condition.

It is necessary to correct a notion which I find widespread among students, that in the chemical changes brought about by ferments there is a conversion of potential into actual energy (heat and kinetic energy). This is not the case in the majority of ferment actions, namely, those which are hydrolytic; the total potential energy of the products is there equal to that of the substance acted upon. This has been proved by actual experiment. Moreover, if a transformation of energy did occur, it would be incompatible with the fact that ferment action is reversible.

CHAPTER XXVI

THE BLOOD

THE blood is the fluid medium by means of which all the tissues of the body are directly or indirectly nourished; by means of it also such of the materials resulting from the metabolism of the tissues which are of no further use in the economy are carried to the excretory organs. It is a somewhat viscid fluid, and in man and in all other vertebrate animals, with the exception of two,* is red in colour. It consists of a yellowish fluid, called **plasma** or **liquor sanguinis**, in which are suspended numerous **blood corpuscles**, the majority of which are coloured, and it is to their presence that the red colour of the blood is due. In addition to the *red corpuscles*, there are a smaller number of *colourless corpuscles*, and some extremely small particles called *blood-platelets*.

Even when examined in very thin layers, blood is *opaque*, on account of the different refractive powers possessed by its two constituents, viz., the plasma and the corpuscles. On treatment with ether, water, and other reagents, however, it becomes transparent and assumes a lake colour, in consequence of the colouring matter of the corpuscles having been discharged into the plasma. The average *specific gravity* of blood at 15° C. (60° F.) varies from 1055 to 1062. A rapid and useful method of estimating the specific gravity of blood was invented by Roy. Drops of blood are taken and allowed to fall into fluids of known specific gravity. When the drop neither rises nor sinks in the fluid it is taken to be of the same specific gravity as that of the standard fluid. The *reaction* of blood is faintly alkaline and the *taste* saltish. Its *temperature* varies slightly, the average being 37·8° C. (100° F.). The blood-stream is warmed by passing through the muscles, nerve centres, and glands, but is somewhat cooled on traversing the capillaries of the skin. Recently drawn blood has a distinct *odour*, which in many cases is characteristic of the animal from which it has been taken; it may be further developed by adding to blood a mixture of equal parts of sulphuric acid and water.

* The *amphioxus* and the *leptocephalus*.

Quantity of the Blood.—The quantity of blood in an animal is usually estimated in the following manner:—A small quantity of blood is taken from an animal by venesection; it is defibrinated and measured, and used to make standard solutions of blood. The animal is then rapidly bled to death, and the blood which escapes is collected. The blood-vessels are next washed out with saline solution until the washings are no longer coloured, and these are added to the previously withdrawn blood; lastly, the whole animal is finely minced with saline solution. The fluid obtained from the mincings is carefully filtered and added to the diluted blood previously obtained, and the whole is measured. The next step in the process is the comparison of the colour of the diluted blood with that of standard solutions of blood and water of a known strength, until it is discovered to what standard solution the diluted blood corresponds. As the amount of blood in the corresponding standard solution is known, as well as the total quantity of diluted blood obtained from the animal, it is easy to calculate the absolute amount of blood which the latter contained, and to this is added the small amount which was withdrawn to make the standard solutions. This gives the total amount of blood which the animal contained. It is contrasted with the weight of the animal, previously known. The result of experiments performed in this way showed that the quantity of blood in various animals differs a good deal, but in the dog averages $\frac{1}{12}$ to $\frac{1}{14}$ of the total body-weight.

Haldane and Lorrain Smith have invented another method which has the advantage of being applicable to man. The data required are (1) the percentage of hæmoglobin in the blood, and (2) the extent to which the hæmoglobin is saturated by a *measured* amount of carbonic oxide absorbed into the blood.

The percentage of hæmoglobin is determined colorimetrically by the Gowers' or Gowers'-Haldane hæmoglobinometer (see p. 449). In the latter instrument the standard 100 per cent. of colour corresponds to a capacity of 18·5 c.c. of oxygen or carbonic oxide per 100 c.c. of blood. The subject whose blood is to be measured breathes a known volume of carbonic oxide, and a few drops of the blood are taken and the saturation of his hæmoglobin is determined colorimetrically. From this result the total capacity of the blood for carbonic oxide is calculated. The "carbonic oxide capacity" is the same as the "oxygen capacity." The volume of the blood is then calculated from the total "oxygen capacity," and the percentage capacity as determined by the hæmoglobinometer. The following is an example:—The subject's blood in a given case has, let us say, the colour of the 100 per cent. standard, and therefore has a capacity of 18·5 c.c. per 100 c.c. blood. He is then allowed to breathe 75 c.c. of carbonic oxide, and it is then found that his blood is 15 per cent. saturated. The

amount required to completely saturate his blood, or in other words his total capacity, must be $75 \times \frac{100}{15} = 500$ c.c. Since 18·5 c.c. of this total is carried by 100 c.c. of his blood, the total volume required to contain 500 c.c. is $500 \times \frac{100}{18{\cdot}5} = 2700$ c.c. The subject has therefore 2·7 litres of blood. The total weight is obtained by multiplying the volume by the specific gravity (about 1·055).

Some of the results of this method are as follows:—The mass of the blood in man is about 4·9 per cent. $\left(\frac{1}{20{\cdot}5}\right)$ of the body-weight. The corresponding ratio of the blood volume is 4·62 c.c. per 100 grammes, or $\frac{1}{21{\cdot}6.}$ In pathological conditions the numbers are different; thus in anæmia from hæmorrhage, the volume ratio is 6·5, in pernicious anæmia 8·6, in chlorosis 10·8. In other words, in various forms of anæmia the actual volume of the blood is increased, but of course the corpuscular and solid constituents are correspondingly diminished.

Coagulation of the Blood.

After the blood is shed it rapidly becomes more viscous and then sets into a firm red jelly. The jelly soon contracts and squeezes out

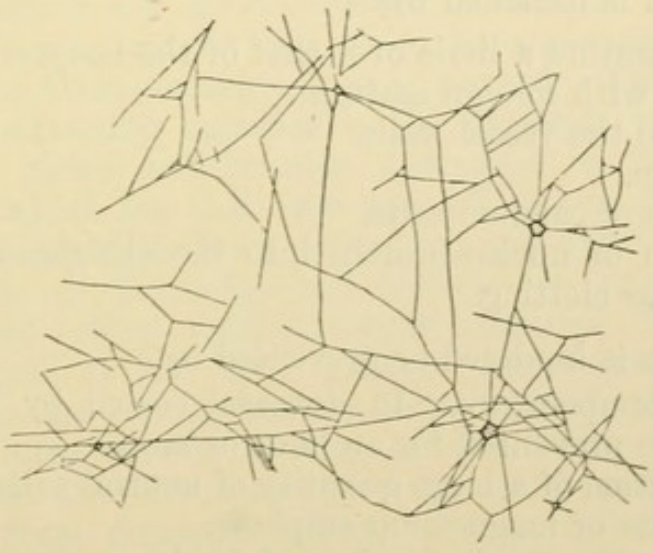
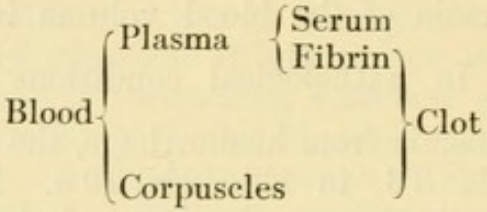


Fig. 344.—Reticulum of fibrin, from a drop of human blood, after treatment with rosanilin. The entangled corpuscles are not seen. (Ranvier.)

a straw-coloured fluid called the serum. With the microscope, filaments or fine threads are seen forming a network throughout the fluid (fig. 344), many radiating from small clumps of blood-platelets. These threads entangle the corpuscles, and so the clot is formed.

The threads are composed of a protein substance called *fibrin*, and the formation of fibrin is the essential act of coagulation. Fibrin is formed from the plasma, and may be obtained free from corpuscles when plasma is allowed to clot, the corpuscles having previously been removed by methods we shall immediately study. It may also be obtained from blood by whipping it with a bunch of twigs; the fibrin adheres to the twigs and entangles but few corpuscles; these may be removed by subsequent washing with water.

Serum is plasma *minus* the fibrin, which it forms. The relation of plasma, serum, and clot can be seen at a glance in the following scheme of the constituents of the blood:—



It may be roughly stated that in 100 parts by weight of blood 60-65 parts consist of plasma and 35-40 of corpuscles.

The *buffy coat* is seen when blood coagulates slowly, as in horse's blood. The red corpuscles sink more rapidly than the white, and the upper stratum of the clot (buffy coat) consists mainly of fibrin and white corpuscles.

Coagulation is hastened by—

1. A temperature a little over that of the body.
2. Contact with foreign matter.
3. Injury to the vessel walls.
4. Agitation.
5. Addition of calcium salts.
6. Injection of nucleo-protein into the circulation causes intravascular clotting.

Coagulation is hindered or prevented by—

1. A low temperature. In a vessel cooled by ice, coagulation may be prevented for an hour or more.
2. The addition of a large quantity of neutral salts such as sodium sulphate or magnesium sulphate.
3. Addition of a soluble oxalate, fluoride, or citrate.
4. Injection of commercial peptone (which consists chiefly of proteoses) into the circulation of the living animal.
5. Addition of leech extract to the blood, or injection of leech extract into the circulation while the animal is alive.
6. Contact with the living vascular walls.
7. Contact with oil.

The cause of the coagulation of the blood may be briefly stated as follows:—

When blood is within the vessels, one of the constituents of the plasma, a protein of the globulin class, called *fibrinogen*, exists in a soluble form. When the blood is shed, the fibrinogen molecule is altered in such a way that it gives rise to the comparatively insoluble material *fibrin*.

The statement has been made that the fibrinogen molecule is split into two parts; one part is a globulin (fibrino-globulin), which remains in solution; the other and larger part is the insoluble substance fibrin. It is, however, doubtful if this really represents what occurs, for recent work seems to show that the fibrino-globulin is not a product of fibrinogen, but exists in the blood-plasma beforehand. At any rate, whether this is so or not, the fact remains that fibrin is the important product and the only one which need concern us.

The next question is, What causes the transformation of fibrinogen into fibrin? and the answer to that is, that the change is due to the activity of an enzyme which is called *fibrin-ferment* or *thrombin*.

This ferment does not exist in healthy blood contained in healthy blood-vessels, but is formed by the disintegration of the blood-platelets and colourless corpuscles which occurs when the blood leaves the blood-vessels or comes into contact with foreign matter. Hence the blood does not coagulate during life. But it will be said, disintegration of the blood-corpuscles occurs during life, why, then, does the blood not coagulate? The reason is, that although the formed elements do disintegrate in the living blood, such a phenomenon takes place very slowly and gradually, so that there can never, under normal circumstances, be any massive liberation of fibrin-ferment, and further, that there are agencies at work to neutralise the fibrin-ferment as it is formed. The most noteworthy of these neutralising agencies is the presence in the blood of an antiferment called *antithrombin*, analogous to the antipepsin and antitrypsin which we shall see are efficacious in preventing the stomach and intestines from undergoing self-digestion.

Thrombin or fibrin-ferment belongs to the class of nucleo-proteins, and other nucleo-proteins obtained from most of the cellular organs of the body produce intravascular clotting when injected into the circulation of a living animal. In certain diseased conditions, intravascular clotting or thrombosis sometimes occurs. This must be due either to the entrance of nucleo-protein into the circulation from diseased tissues, or to a failure of the body to produce sufficient antithrombin to neutralise its effect, or to both of these conditions together.

Thrombin is believed to originate chiefly from the blood-platelets and in part from the leucocytes. Birds' blood clots very slowly, and the absence of blood-platelets in this variety of blood will, in part, account for this. Lymph, which contains colourless corpuscles,

but no platelets, also clots in time, so in this case the colourless corpuscles must be the source of the ferment. One should, however, be careful in speaking of the disintegration of leucocytes to remember that the word disintegration does not mean complete breakdown leading to disappearance; the colourless corpuscles do not appreciably diminish in number when the blood clots, but what occurs is a shedding out from the surviving leucocytes of certain products, among which fibrin-ferment is one.

We have now traced fibrin formation, the essential cause of blood-clotting, to the activity of thrombin; it is next necessary to allude to what has been discovered in relation to the origin of thrombin. Like other ferments, it is preceded by a mother-substance or zymogen. This zymogen is called prothrombin or *thrombogen*, and there appear to be two necessary agents concerned in the conversion of thrombogen into thrombin; one of these is the action of *calcium salts*, the other is the presence of an activating agent (analogous to the enterokinase, which activates pancreatic juice) called *thrombokinase*. The exact rôle played by each is still a matter of speculation, but we may learn a good deal by studying a little more in detail some of the methods already enumerated for preventing the blood from coagulating.

The part played by calcium salts is well illustrated by the fact that coagulation is prevented by the decalcification of the blood. This can be accomplished by the addition of a small amount of a soluble oxalate or fluoride to the blood immediately it is shed. The calcium of the blood plasma is then immediately precipitated as insoluble calcium oxalate or fluoride, and is thus not available for the transformation of thrombogen into thrombin. The addition of the oxalate or fluoride must be rapidly performed, otherwise time will be given for the conversion of thrombogen into thrombin, and thrombin, when formed, will act upon fibrinogen whether the calcium has been removed or not. In other words, calcium is only necessary for the formation of fibrin-ferment, and not for the action of fibrin-ferment on fibrinogen. Fibrin is thus not a compound of calcium and fibrinogen.

The action of a soluble citrate is also, in a certain sense, a decalcifying action, for although calcium citrate is a soluble salt, it does not ionise in solution so as to liberate the free calcium ions which are essential for thrombin formation.

Oxalated blood (or oxalated plasma) will clot when the calcium is once more restored by the addition of a small amount of calcium chloride, but such addition to fluoride plasma will not induce clotting; in this case, thrombin itself must be added. In some way sodium fluoride interferes with the formation of thrombin, probably by preventing the liberation of thrombokinase from the corpuscular elements of the blood. The latter are certainly very well preserved.

The second activating agent, however, thrombokinase, is not only liberated from the blood-corpuscles, but it is also obtained from many other tissues. If a hæmorrhage takes place under ordinary circumstances the blood as it flows from the wound passes over the muscles and skin that have been cut, and rapidly clots owing to the thrombokinase supplied by those tissues. If blood is obtained by drawing it off through a perfectly clean cannula into a clean vessel without allowing it to touch the tissues, it remains unclotted for a long time; in the case of birds' blood this time may extend to many days; but the addition of a small piece of a tissue such as muscle, or of an extract of such a tissue, produces almost immediate clotting. If a solution of fibrinogen is prepared and calcium added it will not clot; if thrombin or a fluid such as serum which contains thrombin is added it will clot. It will not clot if birds' plasma obtained as above is added to it; nor if tissue extract is added to it; but if both are added it will. In other words, the thrombogen of the birds' plasma *plus* the thrombokinase of the tissue extract have the same effect as thrombin.

The next point to consider is why blood obtained after the previous injection of proteoses (or commercial peptone) into the circulation does not clot. It certainly contains calcium salts, and probably both thrombogen and thrombokinase, for it can be made to clot without the addition of either, for instance by dilution, or the passage of a stream of carbon dioxide through it. There must be something in peptone blood which antagonises the action of thrombin. This something is an excess of antithrombin. Peptone will not hinder blood-coagulation, or only very slightly if it is added to the blood after it is shed. The antithrombin must therefore have been added to the blood while it was circulating in the body. We can even go further than this, and say what part of the body it is which is concerned in the production of antithrombin. It is the liver; for if the liver is shut off from the circulation, peptone is ineffective in its action. The converse experiment confirms this conclusion, for if a solution of peptone is artificially perfused through an excised surviving liver, a substance is formed which has the power of hindering or preventing the coagulation of shed blood. Peptone blood is very poor in leucocytes; the cause of their disappearance is not clear.

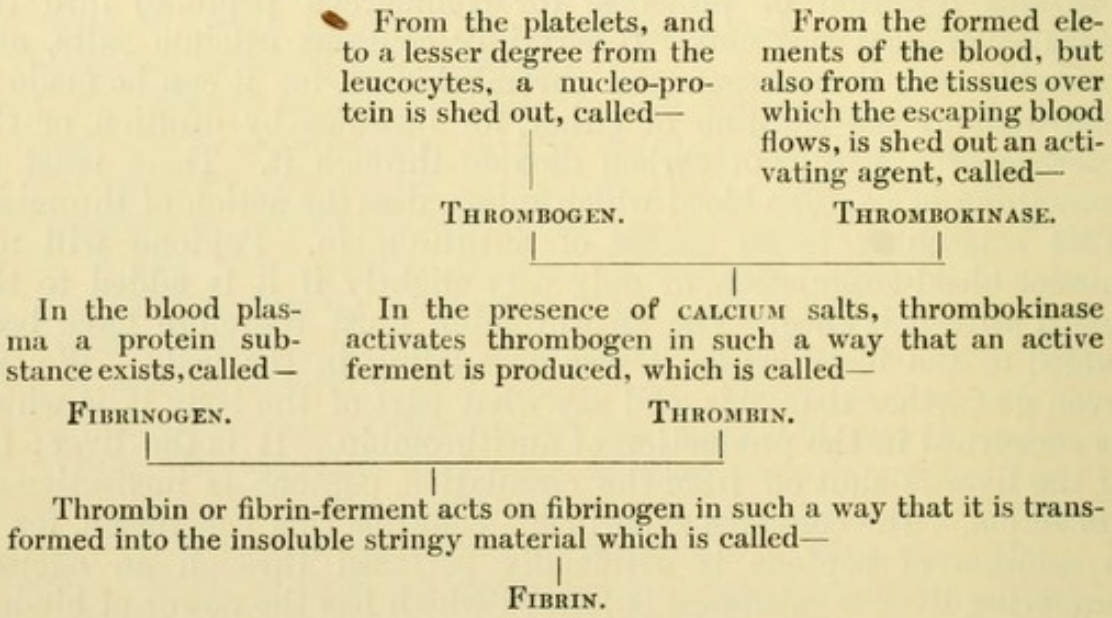
We are thus justified in two conclusions:—

(1) That the antithrombin (normally present in healthy blood in sufficient quantities to prevent intravascular clotting) is formed in the liver.

(2) That commercial peptone, in virtue of the proteoses it contains, stimulates this action to such an extraordinary degree that the accumulation of antithrombin in the blood becomes so great that the blood does not clot even after it is shed.

We will conclude by considering only one more of the hindrances to coagulation, and that by no means the least interesting. The leech lives by sucking the blood of other animals; from the leech's point of view it is therefore necessary that the blood should flow freely and not clot. The glands at the head end of the leech, often spoken of roughly as its salivary glands, secrete something which hinders the blood from coagulating, and everyone knows by experience, who has been treated by leeches, how difficult it is to prevent a leech-bite from bleeding after the leech has been removed; complete cleansing is necessary to wash away the leech's secretion from the wound. Now if an extract of leeches' heads is made with salt solution and filtered, that fluid will prevent coagulation whether it is injected into the blood stream or added to shed blood. The substance in question is believed to be antithrombin itself. Blood so obtained can be made to clot by the addition of thrombin or such a fluid as serum that contains thrombin in sufficient amount.

We may summarise our present knowledge of the causes of coagulation in the following tabular way:—



The Plasma and Serum.

The liquid in which the corpuscles float may be obtained by employing one or other of the methods already described for preventing the blood from coagulating. The corpuscles, being heavy, sink, and the supernatant plasma can then be removed by a pipette or siphon, or more thoroughly by the use of a centrifugal machine (see fig. 345).

On counteracting the influence which has prevented the blood from coagulating, the plasma then itself coagulates. Thus plasma obtained by the use of cold clots on warming gently; plasma which

has been decalcified by the action of a soluble oxalate clots on the addition of a calcium salt; plasma obtained by the use of a strong solution of neutral salt coagulates when this is diluted by the addition of water, the addition of fibrin-ferment being necessary in most cases; where coagulation occurs without the addition of fibrin-ferment no doubt some is present from the partial disintegration of the corpuscles

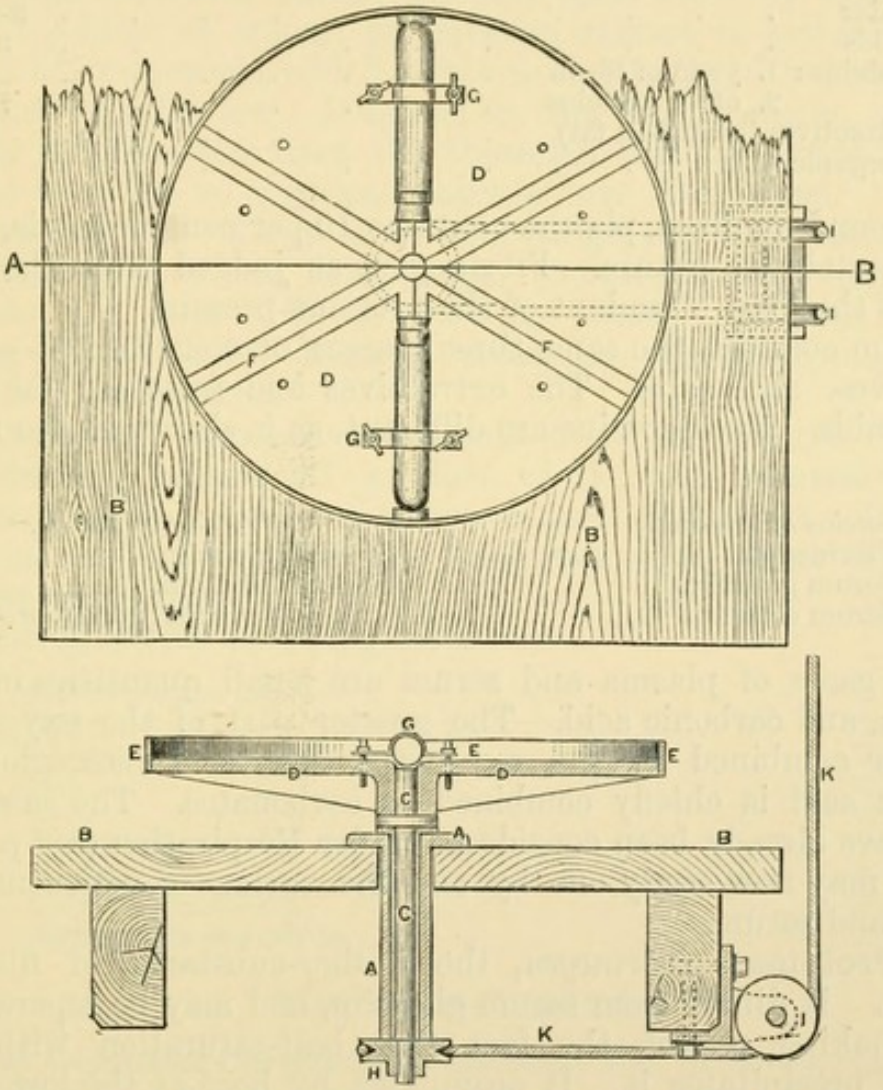


FIG. 345.—Plan and section of centrifugal machine. A, an iron socket secured to top of table B; C, a steel spindle carrying the turntable D, and turning freely in A; E, a flange round turntable D; F F, shallow grooves on face of D in which the test-tubes are fixed by clamps G G; H, a pulley fixed to end of spindle C, and turned by the cord K; I I are two guide pulleys for cord K. The upper part of the figure is a surface view of the rotating turntable. (Gamgee.)

which has already occurred. Pericardial and hydrocele fluids resemble pure plasma very closely in composition. As a rule, however, they contain few or no white corpuscles, and do not clot spontaneously, but after the addition of fibrin-ferment, or liquids such as serum that contain fibrin-ferment, they always yield fibrin.

Pure plasma may be obtained from horse's veins by what is known as the "living test-tube" experiment. If the jugular vein is ligatured

in two places so as to include a quantity of blood within it, then removed from the animal and hung in a cool place, the blood will not clot for many hours. The corpuscles settle, and the supernatant plasma can be removed with a pipette.

The plasma is alkaline, yellowish in tint, and its specific gravity is about 1026 to 1029. 1000 parts of plasma contain :—

Water	902·90
Solids	97·10
Proteins : 1. yield of fibrin	4·05
2. other proteins	78·84
Extractives (including fat)	5·66
Inorganic salts	8·55

In round numbers, plasma contains 10 per cent. of solids, of which 8 are protein in nature. Fibrinogen, as judged from the yield of fibrin, is the least abundant of the proteins present.

Serum contains the same three classes of constituents—proteins, extractives, and salts. The extractives and salts are the same in both liquids. The proteins are different, as is shown in the following table :—

Proteins of Plasma.	*Proteins of Serum.*
Fibrinogen.	Serum globulin.
Serum globulin.	Serum albumin.
Serum albumin.	Fibrin-ferment (nucleo-protein).

The gases of plasma and serum are small quantities of oxygen, nitrogen, and carbonic acid. The greater part of the oxygen of the blood is combined in the red corpuscles with hæmoglobin; the carbonic acid is chiefly combined as carbonates. The gases of the blood have already been considered under Respiration (see p. 377).

We may now study one by one the various constituents of the plasma and serum.

A. **Proteins.**—*Fibrinogen,* the mother-substance of fibrin, is a globulin. It differs from serum globulin, and may be separated from it by making use of the fact that half-saturation with sodium chloride precipitates it. It coagulates by heat at the low temperature of 56° C.

Serum globulin and serum albumin.—These substances exhibit the usual differences already described between albumins and globulins (p. 410). Both are coagulated by heat at a little over 70° C. They may be separated by dialysis or the use of neutral salts.* The readiest way to separate them is to add to the serum an equal volume of saturated solution of ammonium sulphate. This is equivalent to semi-saturation, and it precipitates the globulin. If magnesium

* The globulin of the serum precipitated by "salting out" really consists of two proteins, one of which is precipitated by dialysis (euglobulin), and the other is not (pseudo-globulin).

sulphate is used as a precipitant of the globulin it must be added in the form of crystals, and the mixture well shaken to ensure complete saturation.

Fibrin-ferment.—Schmidt's method of preparing it is to take serum and add excess of alcohol. This precipitates all the proteins, fibrin-ferment included. After some weeks the alcohol is poured off; the serum globulin and serum albumin have been by this means rendered insoluble in water; an aqueous extract is, however, found to contain fibrin-ferment, which is not so easily coagulated by alcohol as the other proteins are. Prepared in this way, however, it differs in some of its properties from the thrombin that is formed in shed blood, and to which no chemical reagents have been added.

B. **Extractives.**—These are non-nitrogenous and nitrogenous. The non-nitrogenous are fats, soaps, cholesterin, and sugar; the nitrogenous are urea (0·02 to 0·04 per cent.), and still smaller quantities of uric acid, creatine, creatinine, xanthine, and hypoxanthine and amino-acids.

C. **Salts.**—The most abundant salt is sodium chloride; it constitutes between 60 and 90 per cent. of the total mineral matter. Potassium chloride is present in much smaller amount. It constitutes about 4 per cent. of the total ash. The other salts are phosphates and sulphates.

Schmidt gives the following table:—

1000 parts of plasma yield—	
Mineral matter	8·550
Chlorine	3·640
SO_3	0·115
P_2O_5	0·191
Potassium	0·323
Sodium	3·341
Calcium phosphate	0·311
Magnesium phosphate	0·222

The Blood-Corpuscles.

Red or Coloured Corpuscles.—Human red blood-corpuscles are circular biconcave discs with rounded edges, $\frac{1}{3200}$ inch in diameter (7μ to 8μ) and $\frac{1}{12000}$ inch, or about 2μ, in thickness. When viewed singly they appear of a pale yellowish tinge; the deep red colour which they give to the blood is observable in them only when they are seen *en masse*.

According to Rollett they are composed of a transparent filmy framework infiltrated in all parts by the red pigment *hæmoglobin*. This *stroma* is elastic, so that as the corpuscles circulate, they admit of change in form, and recover their natural shape as soon as they escape from compression. According to this theory, the consistency of the peripheral part of the stroma is greater than that of the central portions; the outer layer thus plays the part of a membrane in the processes of osmosis that occur when water or salt solutions are added to the corpuscles. This view of Rollett has been questioned, particularly by Schäfer, who regards the

red corpuscles as composed of a colourless envelope enclosing a solution of hæmoglobin. The presence of a membrane on the exterior of the corpuscle is undoubted, and can be clearly distinguished by a good microscope in the larger corpuscles of amphibia. It is, however, difficult to explain the elasticity of the corpuscles, and the central position of the nucleus in nucleated red corpuscles, unless we also assume that delicate fibres pass across the interior of the corpuscles.

Mammalian red corpuscles have no nuclei; the unequal refraction of transmitted light gives the appearance of a central spot, darker or brighter than the border, according as it is viewed in or out of focus. Their specific gravity is about 1088.

The corpuscles of all mammals, with the exception of the camel tribe, are circular and biconcave. They are generally very nearly

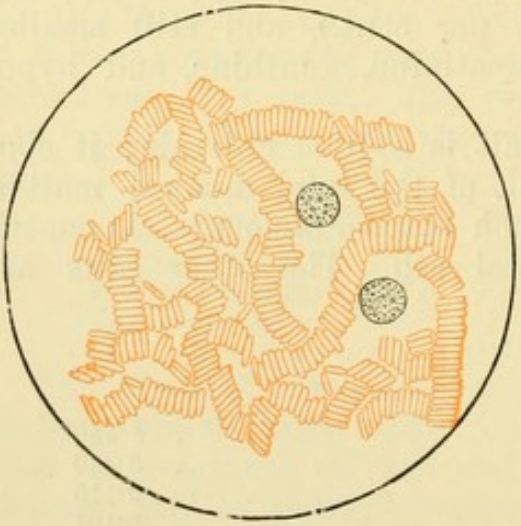


FIG. 346.—Red corpuscles in rouleaux. The white corpuscles are uncoloured.

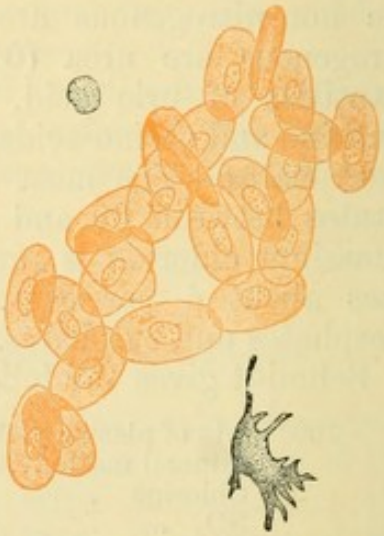


FIG. 347.—Corpuscles of the frog. The central mass consists of nucleated coloured corpuscles. The other corpuscles are two varieties of the colourless form.

the size of human red corpuscles. They are smallest in the deer tribe and largest in the elephant. In the camelidæ they are biconvex. In all mammals the corpuscles are non-nucleated, and in all other vertebrates (birds, reptiles, amphibia, and fishes) the corpuscles are oval, biconvex, and nucleated (fig. 348) and larger than in mammals. They are largest of all in certain amphibians (*amphiuma*, *proteus*).

The red corpuscles are not all alike, for in almost every specimen of blood may be also observed a certain number of corpuscles smaller than the rest. They are termed *microcytes*, or *hæmatoblasts*, and are probably immature corpuscles.

A property of the red corpuscles, which is exaggerated in inflammatory blood, is a tendency to adhere together in rolls or columns (rouleaux), like piles of coins. These rolls quickly fasten together

by their ends, and cluster; so that, when the blood is spread out thinly on a glass they form an irregular network (fig. 346).

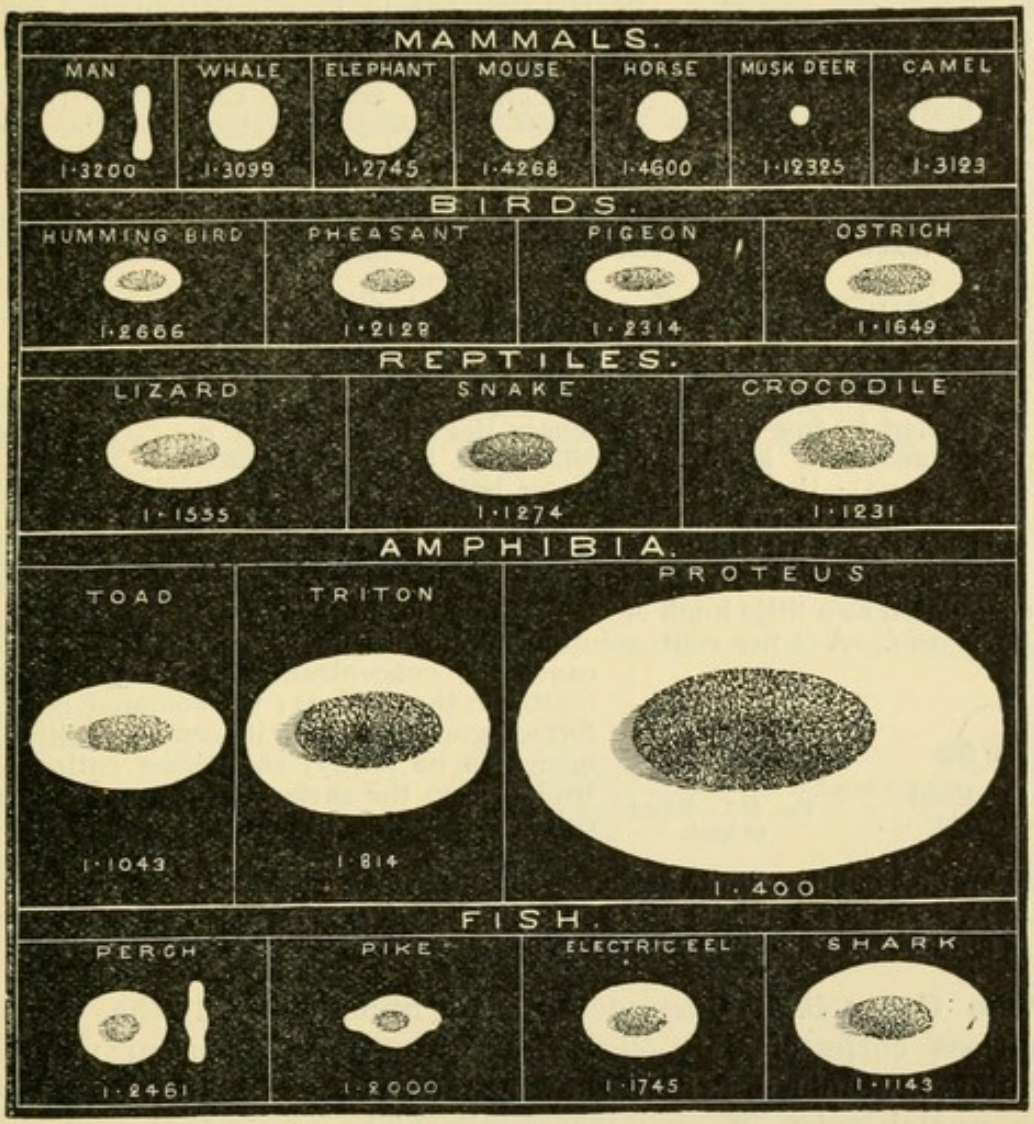


FIG. 348.—The above illustration is somewhat altered from a drawing by Gulliver, in the Proceed. Zool. Society, and exhibits the typical characters of the red blood-cells in the main divisions of the Vertebrata. The fractions are those of an inch, and represent the average diameter. In the case of the oval cells, only the long diameter is here given. It is remarkable, that although the size of the red blood-cells varies so much in the different classes of the vertebrate kingdom, that of the white corpuscles remains comparatively uniform, and thus they are, in some animals, larger, in others smaller, than the red corpuscles.

Action of Reagents.—Considerable light has been thrown on the physical and chemical constitution of red blood-cells by studying the effects produced by mechanical means and by various reagents; the following is a brief summary of these reactions:—

Water.—When water is added gradually to frog's blood, the oval disc-shaped corpuscles become spherical, and gradually discharge their hæmoglobin, a pale, transparent stroma or envelope being left behind: human red blood-cells swell, change from a discoidal to a spheroidal form, and discharge their pigment, becoming quite transparent and all but invisible. This effect is due to osmosis.

Physiological saline solution causes no effect on the red corpuscles beyond preventing them running into rouleaux. If a stronger salt solution is used, the corpuscles shrink and become crenated (fig. 349) owing to osmosis of water outwards.

Dilute acetic acid causes the nucleus of the red blood-cells in the frog to become more clearly defined; if the action is prolonged, the nucleus becomes strongly granulated, and all the colouring matter seems to be concentrated in it, the surrounding cell-substance and outline of the cell becoming almost invisible; after a time the cells lose their colour altogether. The cells in the figure (fig. 350) represent the successive stages of the change. A similar loss of colour occurs in the red corpuscles of human blood, which, however, from the absence of nuclei, seem to disappear entirely.



Fig. 349.—Effect of saline solution (crenation).

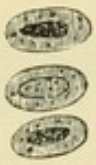


Fig. 350.—Effect of acetic acid.

Dilute alkalis cause the red blood-cells to dissolve slowly, and finally to disappear.

Chloroform, *ether*, and other reagents that dissolve fats dissolve the fatty substance (lecithin, etc.) of the membrane that surrounds the corpuscles, and so produce laking of the blood.

Tannic acid.—When a 2 per cent. fresh solution of tannic acid is applied to frog's blood it causes the appearance of a sharply-defined little knob, projecting from the free surface (*Roberts' macula*): the colouring matter becomes at the same time concentrated in the nucleus, which grows more distinct (fig. 351). A somewhat similar effect is produced on the human red blood-corpuscle, the colouring matter being discharged and coagulated as a little knob of hæmatin on the surface of the corpuscle.

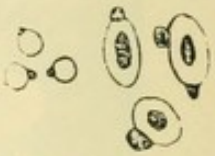


Fig. 351.—Effect of tannin.

Boric acid.—A 2 per cent. solution applied to nucleated red blood-cells will cause the concentration of all the colouring matter in the nucleus; the coloured body thus formed gradually quits its central position, and comes to be partly, sometimes entirely, protruded from the surface of the now colourless cell (fig. 353). When applied to the non-nucleated mammalian corpuscle its effect merely resembles that of other dilute acids.

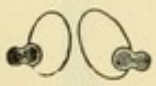


Fig. 352.—Effect of boric acid.



Fig. 353.—Effect of heat.

Heat.—The effect of heat up to 50°—60° C. (120°—140° F.) is to cause the formation of a number of bud-like processes.

The Colourless Corpuscles.—In human blood the white or colourless corpuscles or *leucocytes* are nearly spherical masses of granular protoplasm when they are at rest. In all cases one or more nuclei exist in each corpuscle. The size of the corpuscles varies considerably, but averages $\frac{1}{2500}$ of an inch (10μ) in diameter.

In health, the proportion of white to red corpuscles, which, taking an average, is about 1 to 500 or 600, varies considerably even in the course of the same day. The variations appear to depend chiefly on the amount and probably also on the kind of food taken; the number of leucocytes is generally increased by a meal, and diminished by fasting. Also in young persons, during pregnancy, and after great loss of blood, there is a larger proportion of colourless blood-corpuscles. In old age, on the other hand, their proportion is diminished.

There are four principal varieties of colourless corpuscles found in human blood:—

1. *Poly-morpho-nuclear cells.*—These contain several nuclei united by fine threads of chromatin. Their protoplasm is filled with fine granules, which are termed *oxyphile* on account of their affinity for

acid dyes like eosin. These are the most important leucocytes, constituting from 60 to 70 per cent. of the total.

2. *Eosinophile cells.*—These are not so actively amœboid as the first variety. Their nucleus is simple or lobed. Their protoplasmic granules are large, and are much more deeply stained by eosin than the fine granules of the first variety. They comprise about 5 per cent. of the total leucocytes.

3. *Lymphocytes.*—These have a large spherical nucleus and a limited amount of clear protoplasm around it. Transitional forms between them and the next variety are also found. They constitute from 15 to 30 per cent. of the total.

4. *Hyaline cells.*—These differ from the last by having more protoplasm around the nucleus. The protoplasm is amœboid, and is clear. It, however, stains slightly with methylene blue, and this is perhaps due to the presence of fine basophile granules.

The nuclei of all these varieties are basophile, *i.e.*, they have a strong affinity for basic aniline dyes like methylene blue. Cells, with large basophile granules, are very rare in healthy human blood.

Amœboid Movement.—The remarkable property of the colourless corpuscles of spontaneously changing their shape was first demonstrated by Wharton Jones in the blood of the skate.

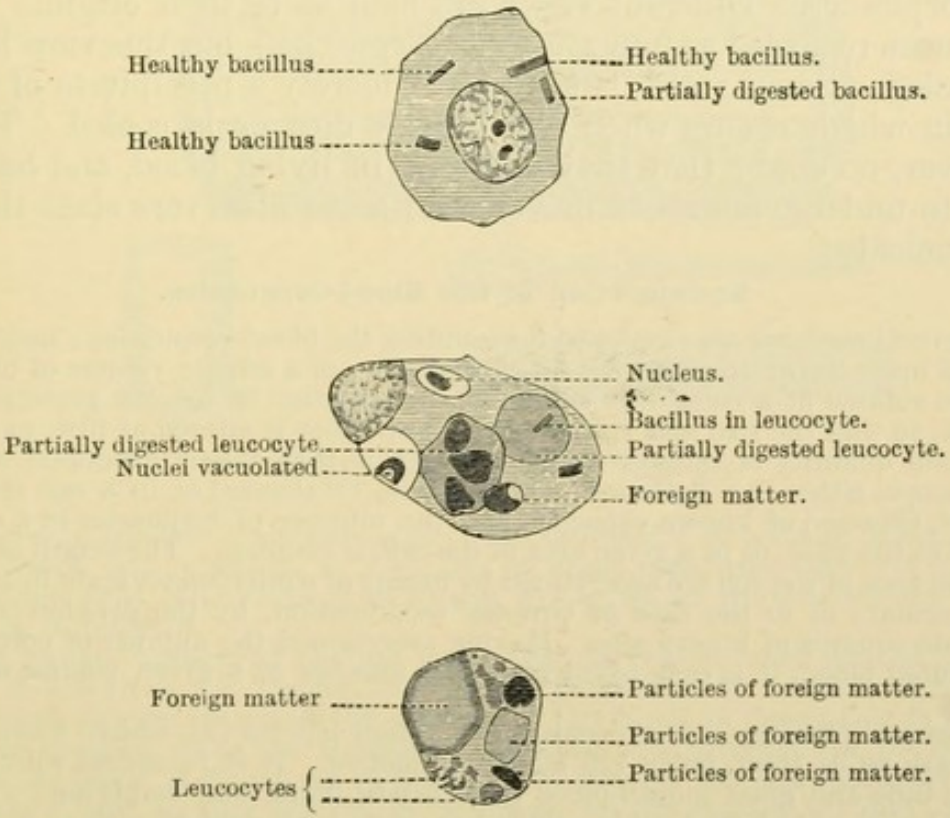


FIG. 354.—Macrophages containing bacilli and other structures undergoing digestion. (Ruffer.)

The full consideration of amœboid movement is given on p. 12.

An interesting variety of amœboid movement is that which leads to the ingestion of foreign particles. This gives to the leucocytes their power of taking in and digesting bacilli (*phagocytosis*). The multinucleated, finely granular corpuscles are the most vigorous phagocytes. Fig. 354 illustrates this; the cells represented, however, are not leucocytes, but the large amœboid cells found in connective tissues, especially in inflamed parts.

The process of *emigration* of the leucocytes is described on p. 294.

Action of Reagents on the colourless corpuscles.—*Water* causes the corpuscles to swell and their nuclei to become apparent. *Acetic acid* (1 per cent.) has a similar action; it also causes the granules to aggregate round the nucleus. *Dilute alkalis* produce swelling and bursting of the corpuscles.

The Blood-Platelets.

Besides the two principal varieties of blood-corpuscles, a third kind has been described under the name blood-platelets (*Blut-plätchen*). These are colourless disc-shaped or irregular bodies, much smaller than red corpuscles. Different views are held as to their origin. At first they were regarded as immature red corpuscles; but this view has been discarded. Some state that they are merely a precipitate of nucleoprotein which occurs when the plasma dies or is cooled. There is, however, no doubt that they do occur in living blood, and have been seen to undergo amœboid movement; some observers state that they are nucleated.

Enumeration of the Blood-Corpuscles.

Several methods are employed for counting the blood-corpuscles; most of them depend upon the same principle, *i.e.*, the dilution of a minute volume of blood with a given volume of a colourless saline solution similar in specific gravity to blood plasma, so that the size and shape of the corpuscles is altered as little as possible. A minute quantity of the well-mixed solution is then taken, examined under the microscope, either in a flattened capillary tube (Malassez) or in a cell (Hayem & Nachet, Gowers) of known capacity, and the number of corpuscles in a measured length of the tube, or in a given area of the cell, is counted. The length of the tube and the area of the cell are ascertained by means of a micrometer scale in the microscope ocular; or in the case of Gowers' modification, by the division of the cell area into squares of known size. Having ascertained the number of corpuscles in the diluted blood, it is easy to calculate the number in a given volume of normal blood.

Gowers' *Hæmacytometer* consists of a small pipette (A), which, when filled up to a mark on its stem, holds 995 cubic millimetres. It is furnished with an indiarubber tube and glass mouth-piece to facilitate filling and emptying; a capillary tube (B) marked to hold 5 cubic millimetres, and also furnished with an indiarubber tube and mouth-piece; a small glass jar (D) in which the dilution of the blood is performed; a glass stirrer (E) for mixing the blood and salt solution thoroughly; (F) a needle, the length of which can be regulated by a screw; a brass stage plate (C) carrying a glass slide, on which is a cell one-fifth of a millimetre deep, and the bottom of which is divided into one-tenth millimetre squares. On the top of the cell a cover-slip rests. A standard saline solution of sodium sulphate, or similar

salt, of specific gravity 1025, is made, and 995 cubic millimetres are measured by means of the pipette into the glass jar, and with this 5 cubic millimetres of blood, obtained by pricking the finger with the needle, and measured in the capillary pipette (B) are thoroughly mixed by the glass stirring-rod. A drop of this diluted blood is then placed in the cell and covered with a cover-slip, which is fixed in position by means of the two lateral springs. The layer of diluted blood between the slide and cover-glass is one-fifth of a millimetre thick. The preparation is then examined under a microscope with a power of about 400 diameters, and focussed until the lines dividing the cell into squares are visible.

After a short delay, the red corpuscles which have sunk to the bottom of the cell, and are resting on the squares, are counted in ten squares, and the number of white corpuscles noted. By adding together the numbers counted in ten (one-tenth millimetre) squares, and, as the blood has been diluted, multiplying by ten thousand, the number of corpuscles in one cubic millimetre of blood is obtained.

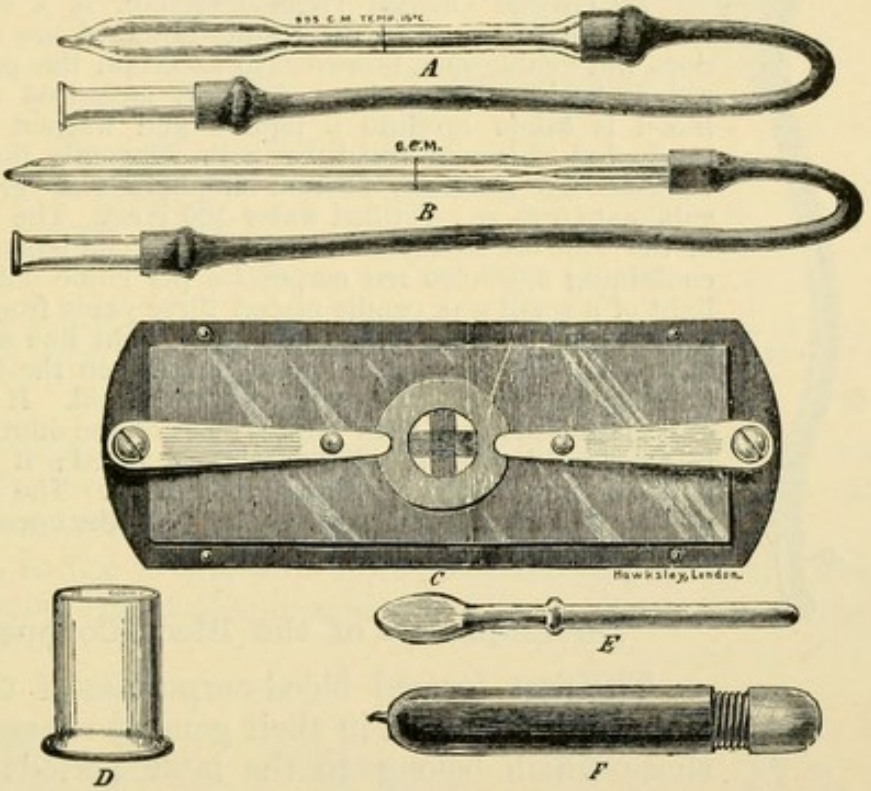


FIG. 355.—Hæmacytometer. (Gowers.)

The average number of corpuscles per cubic millimetre of healthy blood, according to Vierordt and Welcker, is 5,000,000 in adult men, and 4,500,000 in women; this corresponds to an average of 50 and 45 corpuscles respectively per square of Gowers' instrument.

A hæmacytometer of another form, and one that is much used at the present time, is known as the Thoma-Zeiss hæmacytometer. It consists of a carefully graduated pipette, in which the dilution of the blood is done; this is so formed that the capillary stem has a capacity equalling one-hundredth of the bulb above it. If the blood is drawn up in the capillary tube to the line marked 1 (fig. 357) the saline solution may afterwards be drawn up the stem to the line 101; in this way we have 101 parts, of which the blood forms 1. As the contents of the stem can be displaced unmixed we shall have in the mixture the proper dilution. The blood and the saline solution are well mixed by shaking the pipette, in the bulb of which is contained a small glass bead for the purpose of aiding the mixing. The other part of the instrument consists of a glass slide (fig. 356) upon which is mounted a covered disc, *m*, accurately ruled so as to present one square millimetre

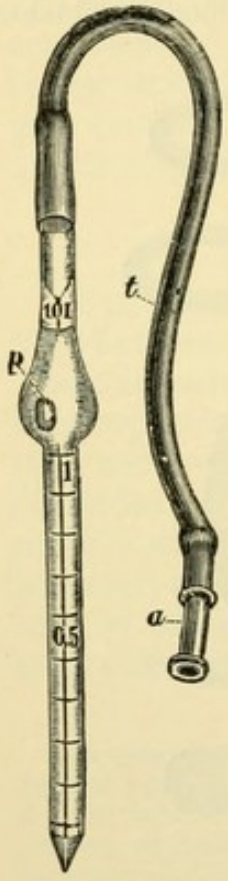
divided into 400 squares of one-twentieth of a millimetre each. The micrometer thus made is surrounded by another annular cell, *c*, which has such a height as to make the cell project exactly one-tenth millimetre beyond *m*. If a drop of the

Fig. 356.



diluted blood is placed upon *m*, and *c* is covered with a perfectly flat cover-glass, the volume of the diluted blood above each of the squares of the micrometer, *i.e.*, above each $\frac{1}{400}$, will be $\frac{1}{4000}$ of a cubic millimetre. An average of ten or more squares is then taken, and this number multiplied by 4000 $\times$ 100 gives the number of corpuscles in a cubic millimetre of undiluted blood.

Fig. 357.



Figs. 356 and 357.—Thoma-Zeiss Hæmacytometer.

Dr George Oliver's Hæmacytometer is a much easier instrument to use, and the results obtained are accurate; it does not enable one, however, to ascertain the proportion of red and white corpuscles. A small measured quantity of blood is taken up into a pipette and washed out into a graduated flattened test-tube with Hayem's fluid (sodium chloride 0·5 gramme, sodium sulphate 0·25 gr., corrosive sublimate 0·25 gr., distilled water 100 c.c.). The graduations of the tube are so adjusted that with normal blood (*i.e.*, blood containing 5,000,000 red corpuscles per cubic millimetre) the light of a small wax candle placed three yards from the eye in a dark room, is just visible as a thin bright line when looked at through the tube held edgeways between the fingers, and filled up to the 100 mark with Hayem's fluid. If the number of corpuscles is less than normal, less of the diluting solution is required before the light is transmitted; if more than normal, more of the solution is necessary. The graduations of the tube correspond to percentages of the normal standard which is taken as 100.

Development of the Blood-Corpuscles.

The first formed blood-corpuscles of the human embryo differ much in their general characters from those which belong to the later periods of intra-uterine, and to all periods of extra-uterine, life. Their manner of origin is at first very simple.

Surrounding the early embryo is a circular area, called the vascular area, in which the first rudiments of the blood-vessels and blood-corpuscles are developed. Here the nucleated embryonic cells of the mesoblast, from which the blood-vessels and corpuscles are to be formed, send out processes in various directions, and these, joining together, form an irregular meshwork. The nuclei increase in number, and collect chiefly in the larger masses of protoplasm, but partly also in the processes. These nuclei gather around them a certain amount of the protoplasm, and, becoming coloured, form the red blood-corpuscles. The protoplasm of the cells and their branched network in which these corpuscles lie then become hollowed out into a system of canals enclosing fluid, in which

the red nucleated corpuscles float. The corpuscles at first are from about $\frac{1}{2500}$ to $\frac{1}{1500}$ of an inch (10μ to 16μ) in diameter, mostly spherical, and with granular contents, and a well-marked nucleus. Their nuclei, which are about $\frac{1}{5000}$ of an inch (5μ) in diameter, are central and circular.



FIG. 358.—Part of the network of developing blood-vessels in the vascular area of a guinea-pig. *bl*, blood-corpuscles becoming free in an enlarged and hollowed-out part of the network; *a*, process of protoplasm. (E. A. Schäfer.)

The corpuscles then strongly resemble the colourless corpuscles of the fully developed blood, but are coloured. They are capable of amœboid movement and multiply by division.

When, in the progress of embryonic development, the liver begins to be formed, the multiplication of blood-cells in the whole mass of

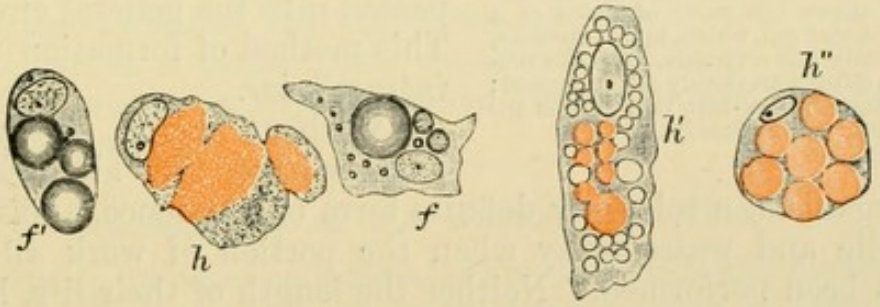


FIG. 359.—Development of red corpuscles in connective tissue cells. From the subcutaneous tissue of a new-born rat. *h*, a cell containing hæmoglobin in a diffused form in the protoplasm; *h'*, one containing coloured globules of varying size and vacuoles; *h''*, a cell filled with coloured globules of nearly uniform size; *f*, *f*, developing fat cells. (E. A. Schäfer.)

blood ceases, and new blood-cells are produced by this organ, and also by the lymphatic glands, thymus and spleen. These are at first colourless and nucleated, but afterwards acquire the ordinary blood-tinge, and resemble very much those of the first set. They also multiply by division. In whichever way produced, however, whether from the original formative cells of the embryo, or by the liver and the

other organs mentioned above, these coloured nucleated cells begin very early in fœtal life to be mingled with coloured *non*-nucleated corpuscles resembling those of the adult, and at about the fourth or fifth month of embryonic existence are completely replaced by them.

During fœtal life, and possibly in some animals, *e.g.* the rat, which are born in an immature condition, for some little time after birth, the blood discs have been stated by Schäfer to arise in the connective tissue cells in the following way. Small globules, of varying size, of colouring matter arise in the protoplasm of the cells (fig. 359); the cells themselves become branched, and their branches join the branches of similar cells. The cells next become vacuolated, and the red globules are free in a cavity filled with fluid (fig. 360); by the extension of the cavity of the cells into their processes anastomosing vessels are produced, which ultimately join with the previously existing vessels, and the globules, now having the size and appearance of the ordinary red corpuscles, are passed into the general circulation. This method of formation is called *intracellular*.

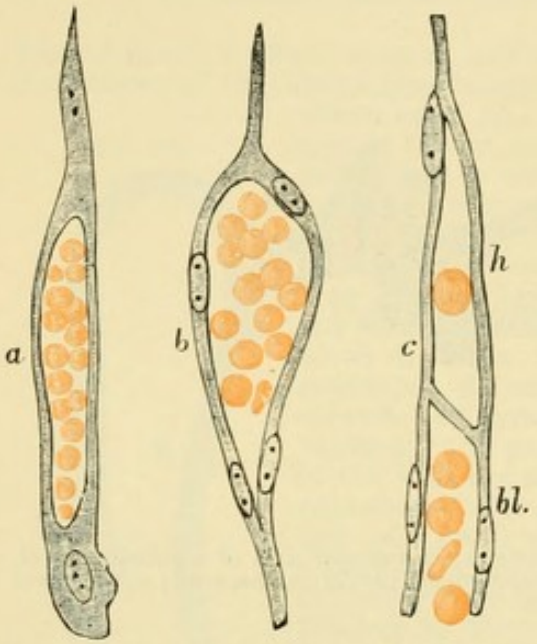


FIG. 360.—Further development of blood-corpuscles in connective tissue cells and transformation of the latter into capillary blood-vessels. *a*, an elongated cell with a cavity in the protoplasm occupied by fluid and by blood-corpuscles which are still globular; *b*, a hollow cell, the nucleus of which has multiplied. The new nuclei are arranged around the wall of the cavity, the corpuscles in which have now become discoid; *c*, shows the mode of union of a "hæmapoietic" cell, which, in this instance, contains only one corpuscle, with the prolongation (*bl*) of a previously existing vessel; *a* and *c*, from the new-born rat: *b*, from the fœtal sheep. (E. A. Schäfer.)

Without doubt, the red corpuscles have, like all other parts of the organism, a tolerably definite term of existence, and in a like manner die and waste away when the portion of work allotted to them has been performed. Neither the length of their life, however, nor the fashion of their decay, has been yet wholly made out. A



FIG. 361.—Coloured nucleated corpuscles, from the red marrow of the guinea-pig. (E. A. Schäfer.)

certain number of the coloured corpuscles undergo disintegration in the liver and spleen; corpuscles in various degrees of degeneration have been observed in both these organs.

This being so, it is necessary that the red corpuscles should be constantly replenished throughout life. But after the early fœtal stage is passed, they originate, not from connective tissues in general, but in one special form of connective tissue, namely, the red marrow of bones. It is possible that in some animals the spleen, which contains cells very similar to those of the marrow, may participate in their formation. In the red marrow, they arise from immature nucleated cells (*normoblasts* or *erythroblasts*); the nucleus is not discharged, but is absorbed within the cell, and this is the explanation that some observers give of the biconcave form of the red disc. Sometimes immature nucleated red cells may make their way from the marrow into the circulation; and the free nuclei of these cells are sometimes found in the blood; they never, when once they have entered the blood, develop into discs, and are filtered out of the blood by the spleen.

Origin of the White Corpuscles.—The lymphocytes are formed in the lymphoid tissue of the lymphatic glands, tonsils, and other parts where this tissue is present. They enter the blood stream by the thoracic duct, and grow larger, the proportion of protoplasm to nucleus increasing as they become mature.

The hyaline leucocyte is, according to some, a variety of mature lymphocyte; according to others, it, like all the rest of the leucocytes, originates from immature forms in the red marrow, which are called *myelocytes*. The leucocytes proper, as distinguished from the lymphocytes, do not grow larger in the blood stream, but rather have a tendency to shrink in size with age.

If immature myelocytes escape from the marrow into the circulating blood, they undergo no further development there, and like the immature nucleated red corpuscles, are filtered off by the spleen. This, of course, is a pathological condition, and leads to the swelling of the spleen, which is such a marked feature in the disease known as splenic leukæmia.

Chemistry of the Blood-Corpuscles.

The white blood-corpuscles.—Our chemical knowledge of the white corpuscles is small. Their nucleus consists of nuclein, their cell protoplasm yields proteins belonging to the globulin and nucleo-protein groups. The nucleo-protein is the zymogen of thrombin (see p. 426). The protoplasm of these cells often contains small quantities of fat and glycogen.

The red blood-corpuscles.—1000 parts of red corpuscles contain:—

Water		688	parts.
Solids	Organic	303·88	,,
	Inorganic	8·12	,,

One hundred parts of the dry organic matter contain—

Protein	5 to 12 parts.
Hæmoglobin	86 to 94 „
Lecithin	1·8 „
Cholesterin	0·1 „

The protein present appears to be identical with the nucleo-protein of white corpuscles. The mineral matter consists chiefly of chlorides of potassium and sodium, and phosphates of calcium and magnesium. In man potassium chloride is more abundant than sodium chloride; this, however, does not hold good for all animals.

Hæmoglobin and Oxyhæmoglobin.—The pigment is by far the most abundant and important of the constituents of the red corpuscles. It is a conjugated protein, a compound of protein with the iron-containing pigment called hæmatin.

It exists in the blood in two conditions: in arterial blood it is combined loosely with oxygen, is of a bright red colour, and is called oxyhæmoglobin; the other condition is the deoxygenated or reduced hæmoglobin (better called simply hæmoglobin). This is found in the blood after asphyxia. It also occurs in all venous blood—that is, blood which is returning to the heart after it has supplied the tissues with oxygen. Venous blood, however, always contains a considerable quantity of oxyhæmoglobin also. Hæmoglobin is the oxygen-carrier of the body, and it may be called a respiratory pigment.*

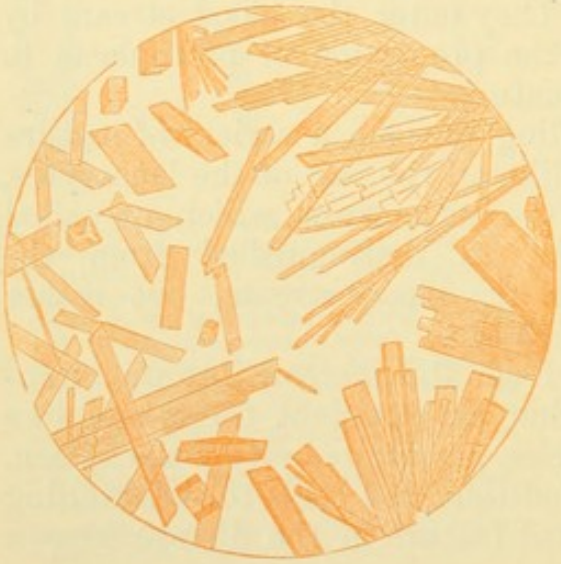


FIG. 362.—Crystals of oxyhæmoglobin—prismatic, from human blood.

Crystals of oxyhæmoglobin† may be obtained with readiness from the blood of such animals as the rat, guinea-pig, or dog; with difficulty from other animals, such as man, ape, and most of the common mammals. The following methods are the best:—

1. Mix a drop of defibrinated blood of the rat on a slide with a drop of water; put on a cover-glass; in a few minutes the corpuscles

* In the blood of invertebrate animals hæmoglobin is sometimes found, but usually in the plasma, not in special corpuscles. Sometimes it is replaced by other respiratory pigments, such as the green one, chlorocruorin, found in certain worms, and the blue one, hæmocyanin, found in many molluscs and crustacea. Chlorocruorin contains iron; hæmocyanin contains copper.

† Crystals of hæmoglobin can also be obtained by carrying out the crystallisation in an atmosphere free from oxygen.

are rendered colourless, and then the oxyhæmoglobin crystallises out from the solution so formed.

2. Microscopical specimens may also be made by Stein's method, which consists in using Canada balsam instead of water in the foregoing experiment.

3. On a larger scale, crystals may be obtained by mixing the blood with one-sixteenth of its volume of ether; the corpuscles dissolve, and the blood assumes a *laky* appearance. After a period varying from a few minutes to days, abundant crystals are deposited.

In nearly all animals the crystals are rhombic prisms (fig. 362); but in the guinea-pig they are rhombic tetrahedra, or four-sided pyramids (fig. 363); in the squirrel and hamster, hexagonal plates (fig. 364).

The crystals contain a varying amount of water of crystallisation;

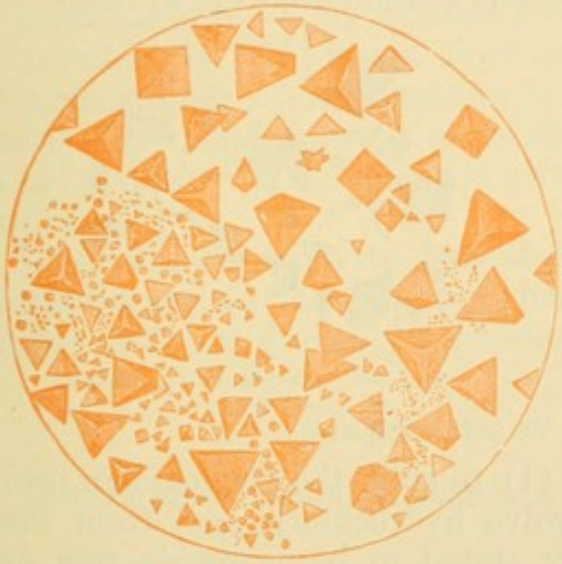


FIG. 363.—Oxyhæmoglobin crystals—tetrahedral, from blood of the guinea-pig.

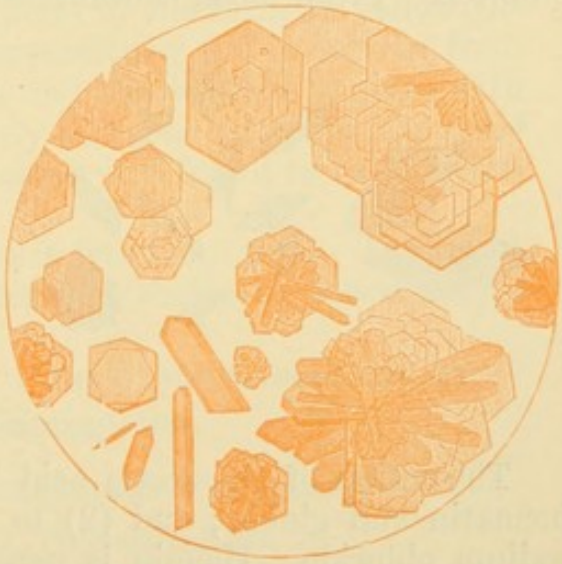


FIG. 364.—Hexagonal oxyhæmoglobin crystals, from blood of squirrel. (After Funke.)

this probably explains their different crystalline form and solubilities. Several observers have analysed hæmoglobin. They find carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, oxygen, sulphur, and iron. The percentage of iron is 0·4. On adding an acid or alkali to hæmoglobin, it is broken up into two parts—a brown pigment called *hæmatin*, which contains all the iron of the original substance, and a protein called *globin*.

Hæmatin is not crystallisable; it has the formula $C_{32}H_{30}N_4FeO_3$ (Nencki and Sieber); its constitutional formula is, however, not known. Hæmatin presents different spectroscopic appearances in acid and alkaline solutions (see accompanying plate). On decomposition it yields pyrrol derivatives.

Globin is coagulable by heat, soluble in dilute acids, and precipitable from such solutions by ammonia. It belongs to the class of proteins called histones (see p. 409).

Hæmochromogen is sometimes called reduced hæmatin; it may be formed by adding a reducing agent such as ammonium sulphide to an alkaline solution of hæmatin. Its absorption spectrum, shown on the accompanying plate (No. 8), forms the best spectroscopic test for blood pigment; the suspected pigment is dissolved in potash, and ammonium sulphide added. Very dilute specimens show the absorption bands, especially the one midway between D and E.

Hæmin is of great importance, as the obtaining of this substance forms the best chemical test for blood. Hæmin crystals may be prepared for microscopical examination by boiling a fragment of dried blood with a drop of glacial acetic acid on a slide; on cooling, triclinic plates and prisms of a dark brown colour, often in star-shaped clusters and with rounded angles (fig. 365), separate out. In the case of an old blood stain it is necessary to add a crystal of sodium chloride. Fresh blood contains sufficient sodium chloride in itself.

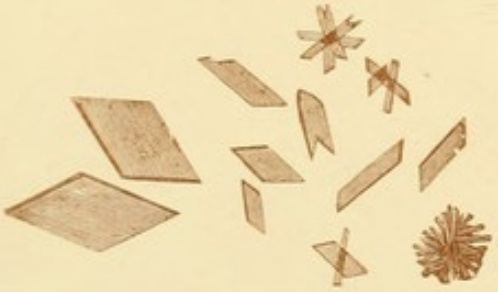


FIG. 365.—Hæmin crystals. (Frey.)

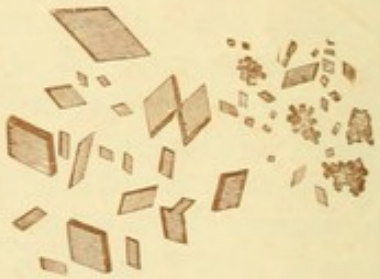


FIG. 366.—Hæmatoidin crystals. (Frey.)

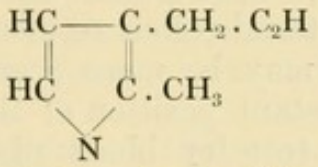
The action of the acetic acid is (1) to split the hæmoglobin into hæmatin and globin; and (2) to evolve hydrochloric acid from the sodium chloride. Hæmin is usually stated to be a combination of hæmatin with hydrochloric acid. Hæmin may be prepared in other ways, but if prepared with the use of acetic acid, Nencki and Zaleski have shown that it also contains an acetyl group, and ascribe to it the empirical formula, $C_{34}H_{33}O_4N_4ClFe$. The chlorine and acetyl are both attached to the iron atom.

Hæmatoporphyrin is iron-free hæmatin; it may be prepared by mixing blood with strong sulphuric acid; the iron is taken out as ferrous sulphate. It is also found sometimes in nature; it occurs in certain invertebrate pigments, and may also be found in certain forms of pathological urine. Even normal urine contains traces of it. It presents different spectroscopic appearances according as it is dissolved in acid or alkaline media. The absorption spectrum figured (No. 9) is that of acid hæmatoporphyrin.

If oxyhæmoglobin is treated with dilute acids the result is a formation of hæmatin and globin, but if strong sulphuric acid is employed the iron is removed from the hæmatin and so hæmatoporphyrin is obtained. The stability of the iron

in the molecule is due to the presence of oxygen, for with the reduced pigment, hæmatoporphyrin is obtained even when dilute acids are employed. Pure hæmatoporphyrin can once more be converted into hæmatin (that is, the iron can be replaced) by warming a solution in dilute ammonia and adding a little Stokes' fluid, and a few drops of a reducing agent like hydrazine hydrate. If cuprammonium solution is used instead of Stokes' fluid in this experiment, a copper compound of hæmatoporphyrin is obtained, which is identical with *turacin*, the bright red copper-containing pigment found in the plumage of the plantain-eating birds. (Laidlaw.)

Hæmopyrrol is a substance obtained by reduction from hæmatoporphyrin. It is methyl-propyl pyrrol, and its formula is :—



There is a near relationship between hæmoglobin and chlorophyll, for the same substance is obtained from phylloporphyrin, a derivative of chlorophyll.

Hæmatoidin.—This substance is found in the form of yellowish-red crystals (fig. 366) in old blood extravasations, and is derived from the hæmoglobin. Its crystalline form and the reaction it gives with fuming nitric acid shows it to be closely allied to *bilirubin*, the chief colouring matter of the bile, and on analysis it is found to be identical with it.

Like hæmatoporphyrin, hæmatoidin is free from iron. These two substances are not identical (*e.g.*, hæmatoidin shows no spectroscopic bands); they are probably isomeric.

Compounds of Hæmoglobin.

Hæmoglobin forms at least four compounds with gases :—

With oxygen	1. Oxyhæmoglobin. 2. Methæmoglobin.
With carbonic oxide	3. Carbonic oxide hæmoglobin.
With nitric oxide	4. Nitric oxide hæmoglobin.

These compounds have similar crystalline forms; they each probably consist of a molecule of hæmoglobin combined with one of the gas in question. They part with the combined gas somewhat readily; they are arranged in order of stability in the above list, the least stable first.

Oxyhæmoglobin is the compound that exists in arterial blood. Many of its properties have been already mentioned. The oxygen linked to the hæmoglobin, which is removed by the tissues through which the blood circulates, may be called the *respiratory oxygen* of hæmoglobin. The processes that occur in the lungs and tissues, resulting in the oxygenation and de-oxygenation respectively of the hæmoglobin, may be imitated outside the body, using either blood or pure solutions of hæmoglobin. The respiratory oxygen can be removed, for example, in the Torricellian vacuum of a mercurial air-

pump, or by passing a neutral gas such as hydrogen through the blood, or by the use of reducing agents such as ammonium sulphide and Stokes' reagent.* One gramme of hæmoglobin will combine with 1·34 c.c. of oxygen.

If any of these methods for reducing oxyhæmoglobin is used, the bright red (arterial) colour of oxyhæmoglobin changes to the purplish (venous) tint of hæmoglobin. On once more allowing oxygen to come into contact with the hæmoglobin, as by shaking the solution with the air, the bright arterial colour returns.

These colour-changes may be more accurately studied with the spectroscope, and the constant position of the absorption bands seen constitutes an important test for blood pigment. It will be first necessary to describe briefly the instrument used.

The Spectroscope.—When a ray of white light is passed through a prism, it is refracted or bent at each surface of the prism; the whole ray is, however, not equally bent, but it is split into its constituent colours, which may be allowed to fall on a screen. The band of colours beginning with the red, passing through orange, yellow, green, blue, and ending with violet, is called a *spectrum:* this is seen in nature in the rainbow. It may be obtained artificially by the glass prism or prisms of a spectroscope.

The spectrum of sunlight is interrupted by numerous dark lines crossing it vertically, called Frauenhofer's lines. These are perfectly constant in position and serve as landmarks in the spectrum. The more prominent are A, B, and C, in the red; D, in the yellow; E, *b*, and F, in the green; G and H, in the violet. These lines are due to certain volatile substances in the solar atmosphere. If the light from burning sodium or its compounds is examined spectroscopically, it will be found to give a bright yellow line, or, rather, two bright yellow lines very close together. Potassium gives two bright red lines and one violet line; and the other elements, when incandescent, give characteristic lines, but none so simple as sodium. If now the flame of a lamp is examined, it will be found to give a continuous spectrum like that of sunlight in the arrangement of its colours, but unlike it in the absence of dark lines; but if the light from the lamp is made to pass through sodium vapour before it reaches the spectroscope, the bright yellow light will be found absent, and in its place a dark line, or, rather, two dark lines very close together, occupying the same position as the two bright lines of the sodium spectrum. The sodium vapour thus absorbs the same rays as those which it itself produces at a higher temperature. Thus the D line, as we term it in the solar spectrum, is due to the presence of sodium vapour in the

* Stokes' reagent must always be freshly prepared; it is a solution of ferrous sulphate to which a little tartaric acid has been added, and then ammonia till the reaction is alkaline.

solar atmosphere. The other dark lines are similarly accounted for by other elements.

The large form of spectroscope (fig. 367) consists of a tube A, called the collimator, with a slit at the end S, and a convex lens at the end L. The latter makes the rays of light passing through the slit from the source of light, parallel: they fall on the prism P, and then the spectrum so formed is focussed by the telescope T.

A third tube, not shown in the figure, carries a small transparent scale of wave-lengths, as in accurate observations the position of any point in the spectrum is given in the terms of the corresponding wave-lengths.

If we now interpose between the source of light and the slit S a piece of coloured glass (H in fig. 367), or a solution of a coloured substance contained in a vessel with parallel sides (the hæmatoscope

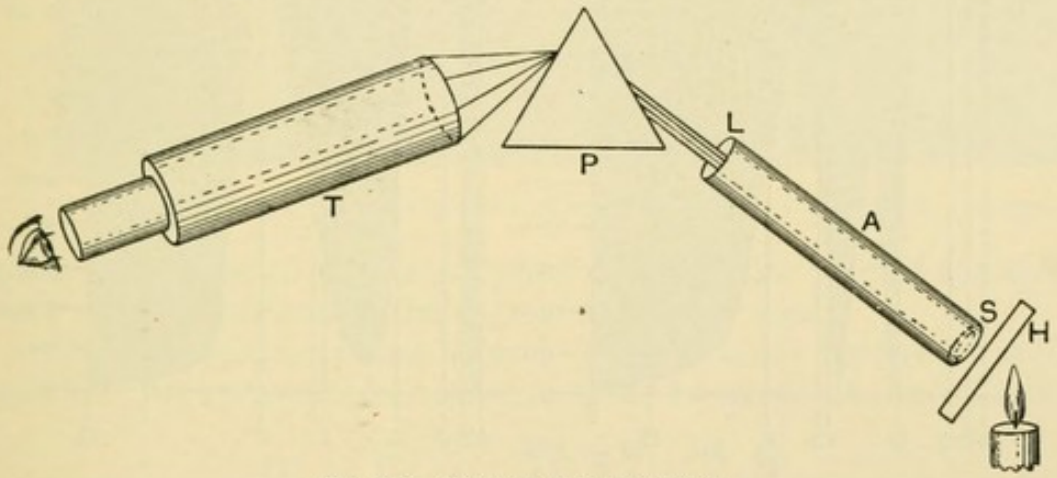


FIG. 367.—Diagram of Spectroscope.

of Herrmann), the spectrum is found to be no longer continuous, but is interrupted by a number of dark shadows, or *absorption bands* corresponding to the light absorbed by the coloured medium. Thus a solution of oxyhæmoglobin of a certain strength gives two bands between the D and E lines; hæmoglobin gives only one; and other red solutions, though to the naked eye similar to oxyhæmoglobin, will give characteristic bands in other positions.

A convenient form of small spectroscope is the *direct vision spectroscope*, in which, by an arrangement of alternating prisms of crown and flint glass, the spectrum is observed by the eye in the same line as the tube furnished with the slit—indeed, slit and prisms are both contained in the same tube.

In the examination of the spectrum of small coloured objects a combination of the microscope and direct vision spectroscope, called the *micro-spectroscope*, is used.

The next figure illustrates a method of representing absorption spectra diagrammatically. The solution was examined in a layer 1

centimetre thick. The base line has on it at the proper distances the chief Frauenhofer lines, and along the right-hand edges are percentages of the amount of oxyhæmoglobin present in I, of hæmoglobin in II. The width of the shadings at each level represents the position and amount of absorption corresponding to the percentages.

The characteristic spectrum of oxyhæmoglobin, as it actually appears through the spectroscope, is seen in the accompanying coloured plate (spectrum 2). There are two distinct absorption bands between the D and E lines; the one nearest to D (the α band) is narrower, darker, and has better-defined edges than the other (the β band). As will be seen on looking at fig. 368, a solution

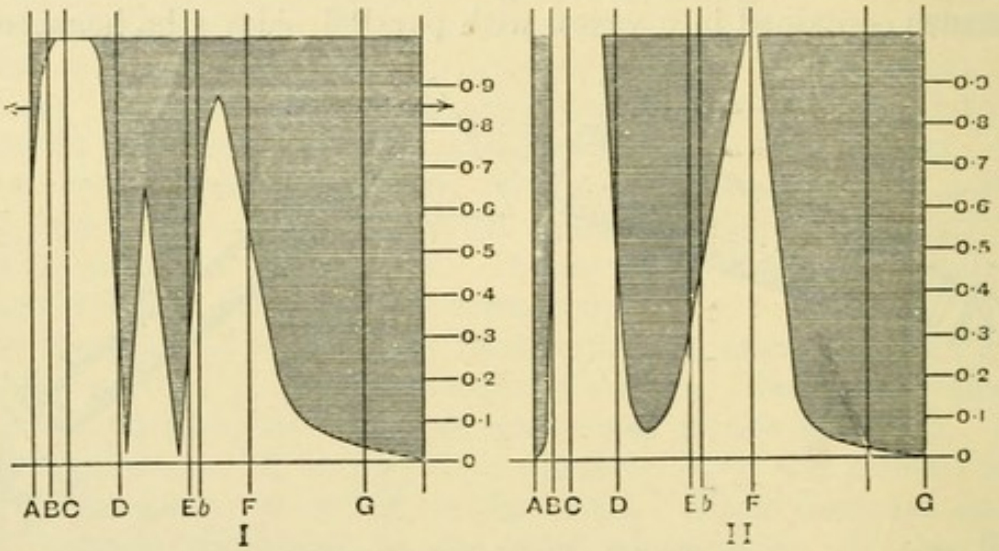


FIG. 368.—Graphic representations of the amount of absorption of light by solution of (I) oxyhæmoglobin, (II) of hæmoglobin, of different strengths. The shading indicates the amount of absorption of the spectrum; the figures on the right border express percentages. (Rollett.)

of oxyhæmoglobin of concentration greater than 0·65 per cent. and less than 0·85 per cent. (examined in a cell of the usual thickness of 1 centimetre) gives one thick band overlapping both D and E, and a stronger solution only lets the red light through between C and D. A solution which gives the two characteristic bands must therefore be a dilute one. The one band (γ band) of hæmoglobin (spectrum 3) is not so well defined as the α or β bands. On dilution it fades rapidly; so that in a solution of such strength that both bands of oxyhæmoglobin would be quite distinct, the single band of hæmoglobin has disappeared from view. The oxyhæmoglobin bands can be distinguished in a solution which contains only one part of the pigment to 10,000 of water, and even in more dilute solutions which seem to be colourless the α band is still visible.

Hæmoglobin and its compounds also show absorption bands in the ultra-violet portion of the spectrum. This portion of the spectrum

is not visible to the eye, but can be rendered visible by allowing the spectrum to fall on a fluorescent screen, or on a sensitive photographic

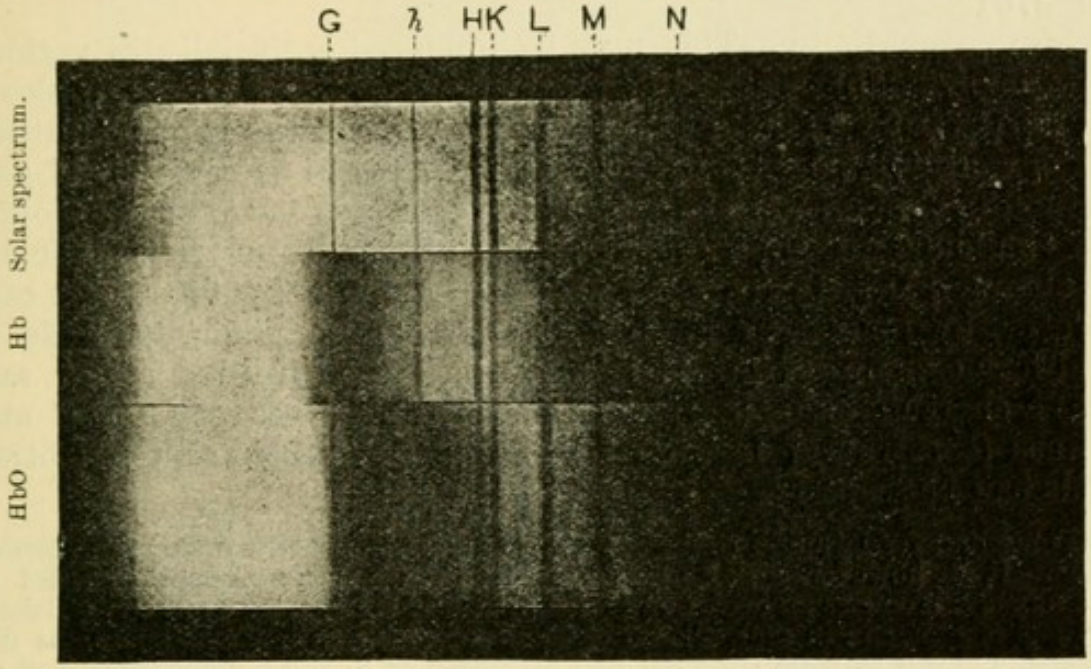


FIG. 369.—The photographic spectrum of hæmoglobin and oxyhæmoglobin. (Gamgee.)

plate. In order to show absorption bands in this part of the spectrum very dilute solutions of the pigment must be used.

Oxyhæmoglobin shows a band (Soret's band) between the lines G and H. In hæmoglobin, carbonic oxide hæmoglobin, and nitric oxide

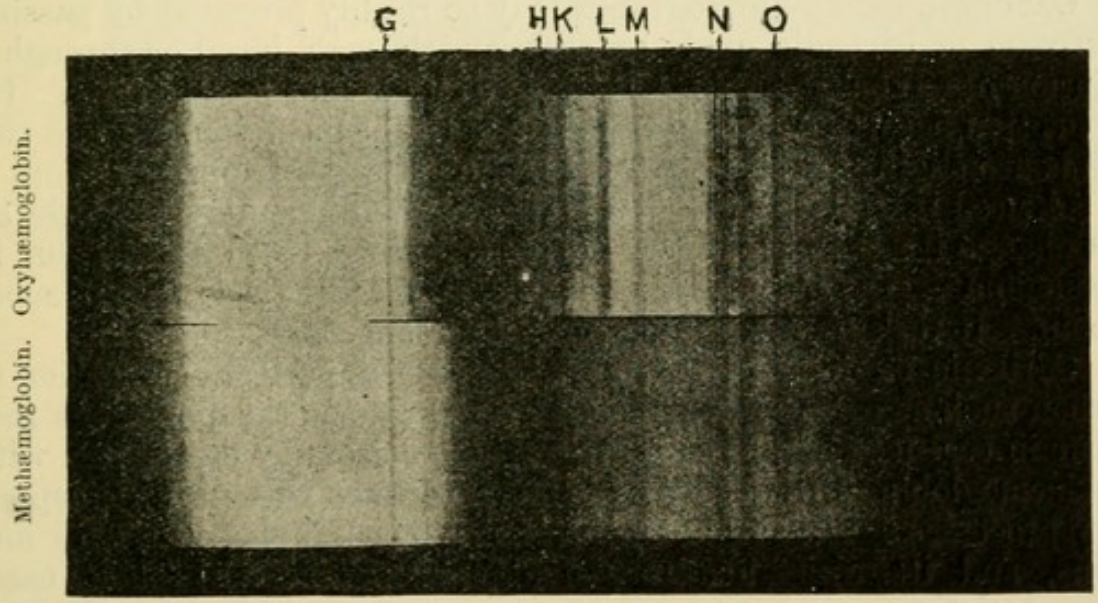


FIG. 370.—The photographic spectrum of oxyhæmoglobin and methæmoglobin. (Gamgee.)

hæmoglobin, this band is rather nearer G. Methæmoglobin and hæmatoporphyrin show similar bands.

We owe most of our knowledge of the "photographic spectrum"

to Prof. Gamgee, through whose kindness I am enabled to present reproductions of two of his numerous photographs (figs. 369 and 370).

Methæmoglobin.—This may be produced artificially in various ways, as by adding potassium ferricyanide or amyl nitrite to blood, and as it also may occur in certain diseased conditions in the urine, it is of considerable practical importance. It can be crystallised, and is found to contain the same amount of oxygen as oxyhæmoglobin, only combined in a different way. The oxygen is not removable by the air-pump, nor by a stream of neutral gas like hydrogen. It can, however, by reducing agents like ammonium sulphide, be made to yield hæmoglobin. Methæmoglobin is of a brownish-red colour, and gives a characteristic absorption band in the red between the C and D lines (spectrum 7 in coloured plate). In dilute solutions other bands can be seen.

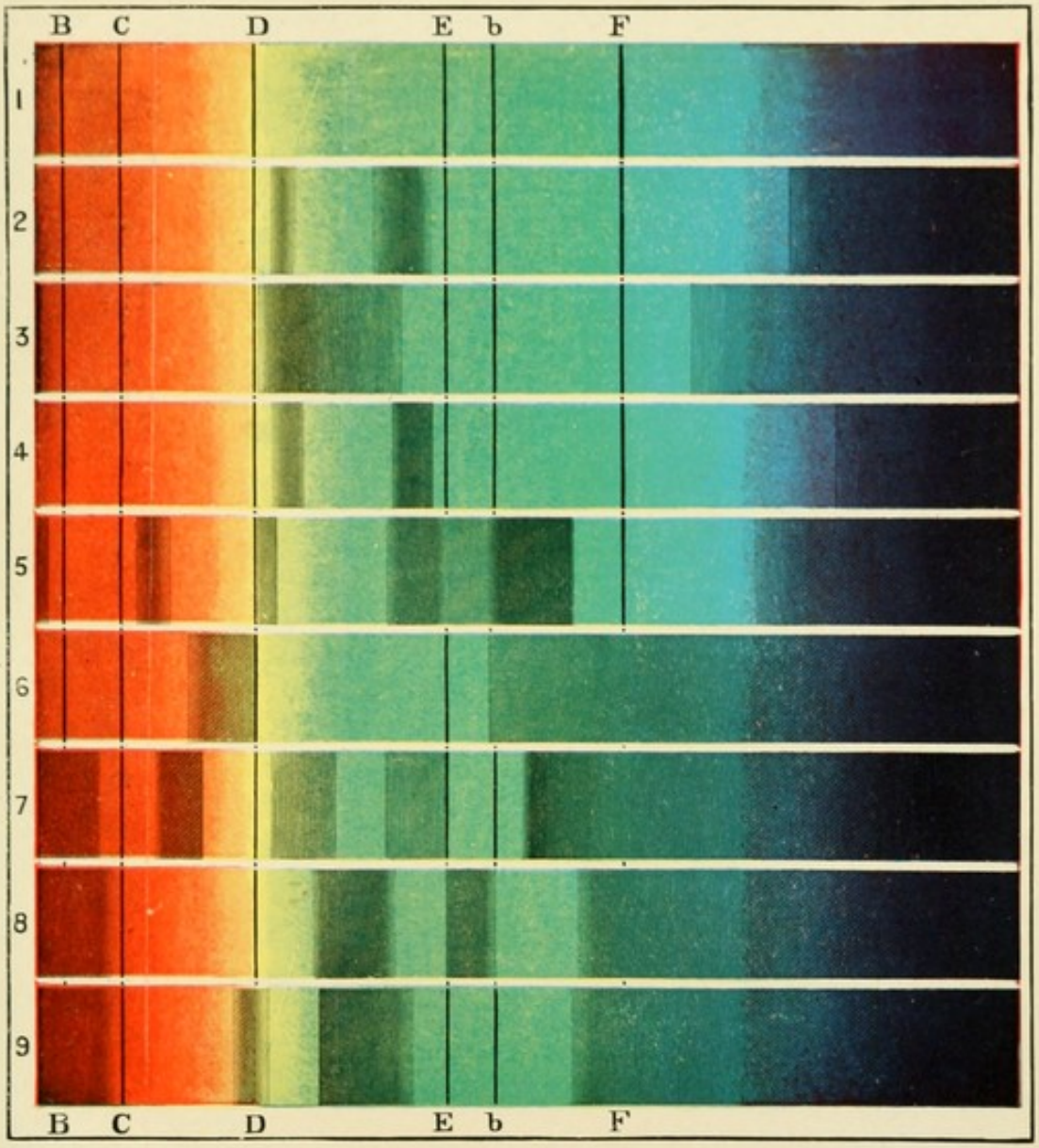
Potassium ferricyanide is the most convenient reagent for making methæmoglobin. It is, however, necessary to mention that it produces another effect as well, namely, it causes an evolution of gas, if the blood has been previously laked. This gas is oxygen; in fact, all the oxygen combined as oxyhæmoglobin is discharged, and this may be collected and measured as in the method described on p. 386. This discharge of oxygen from oxyhæmoglobin is at first sight puzzling, because, as just stated, methæmoglobin contains the same amount of oxygen that is present in oxyhæmoglobin. What occurs is that after the oxygen is discharged from oxyhæmoglobin, an equal quantity of oxygen, due to the oxidising action of the reagents added, takes its place; this new oxygen, however, is combined in some way different from that which was previously united to the hæmoglobin. (Haldane.)

Carbonic oxide hæmoglobin may be readily prepared by passing a stream of carbonic oxide or coal gas through blood or through a solution of oxyhæmoglobin. It has a peculiar cherry-red colour. Its absorption spectrum is very like that of oxyhæmoglobin, but the two bands are slightly nearer the violet end of the spectrum (spectrum 4 in coloured plate). Reducing agents, such as ammonium sulphide, do not change it; the gas is more firmly combined than the oxygen in hæmoglobin. CO-hæmoglobin forms crystals like those of oxyhæmoglobin. It resists putrefaction for a very long time.

Carbonic oxide is given off during the imperfect combustion of carbon such as occurs in charcoal stoves or during the explosions that occur in coal-mines; it acts as a powerful poison, by combining with the hæmoglobin of the blood, and thus interferes with normal respiratory processes. The bright colour of the blood in both arteries and veins, and its resistance to reducing-agents, are in such cases characteristic.

Nitric Oxide Hæmoglobin.—When ammonia is added to blood, and then a stream of nitric oxide passed through it, this compound is formed. It may be obtained in crystals isomorphous with oxy- and CO-hæmoglobin. It also has a similar spectrum. It is even

BLOOD-SPECTRA COMPARED WITH SOLAR SPECTRUM.



1. Solar spectrum.
2. Spectrum of dilute solution of oxyhæmoglobin.
3. „ „ hæmoglobin.
4. „ „ carbonic oxide hæmoglobin.
5. „ „ acid hæmatin in ethereal solution.
6. „ „ alkaline hæmatin.
7. „ „ methæmoglobin.
8. „ „ hæmochromogen.
9. „ „ acid hæmatoporphyrin.

[*To face page* 448.

more stable than CO-hæmoglobin ; it has no practical interest, but is of theoretical importance as completing the series.

Estimation of Hæmoglobin.—The most exact method is by the estimation of the amount of iron (dry hæmoglobin containing ·42 per cent. of iron) in the ash of a given specimen of blood, but as this is a somewhat complicated process, various colorimetric methods have been proposed which, though not so exact, have the advantage of simplicity.

Gowers' Hæmoglobinometer.—The apparatus (fig. 371) consists of two glass tubes of the same size. One contains glycerin jelly tinted with carmine to a standard colour—viz., that of normal blood diluted 100 times with distilled water. The finger is pricked and 20 cubic millimetres of blood are measured out by the capillary pipette, B. This is blown out into the other tube and diluted with distilled water, added drop by drop from the pipette stopper of the bottle, A, until the tint of the diluted blood reaches the standard colour. This tube is graduated into 100 parts. If the tint of the diluted blood is the same as the standard when the tube is

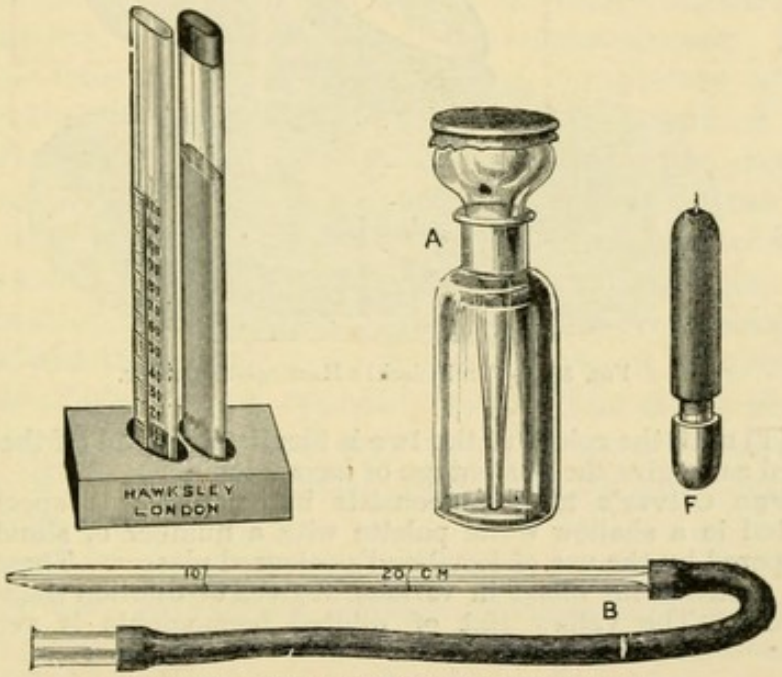


Fig. 371.—Hæmoglobinometer of Dr Gowers.

filled up to the graduation 100, the quantity of oxyhæmoglobin in the blood is normal. If it has to be diluted more largely, the oxyhæmoglobin is in excess ; if to a smaller extent, it is less than normal. If the blood has, for instance, to be diluted up to the graduation 50, the amount of hæmoglobin is only half what it ought to be—50 per cent. of the normal—and so for other percentages.

Haldane's Modification of Gowers' Instrument is the one most frequently used now, and gives very accurate results. Instead of tinted gelatin, the standard of comparison is a sealed tube filled with a solution of carbonic oxide hæmoglobin. This keeps unchanged for years. A stream of coal gas is passed through the blood to be examined. This converts all the hæmoglobin present into carbonic oxide hæmoglobin ; this is then diluted with water to match the standard.

Von Fleischl's Hæmometer.—The apparatus (fig. 372) consists of a stand bearing a white reflecting surface (S) and a platform. Under the platform is a slot carrying a glass wedge stained red (K) and moved by a wheel (R). On the platform is a small cylindrical vessel divided vertically into two compartments, a and a'.

Fill with a pipette the compartment a' over the wedge with distilled water. Fill about a quarter of the other compartment (a) with distilled water.

Prick the finger and fill the short capillary pipette provided with the instru-

ment with blood. Dissolve this in the water in compartment *a*, and fill it up with distilled water.

Having arranged the reflector (S) to throw *artificial* light vertically through both compartments, look down through them, and move the wedge of glass by the

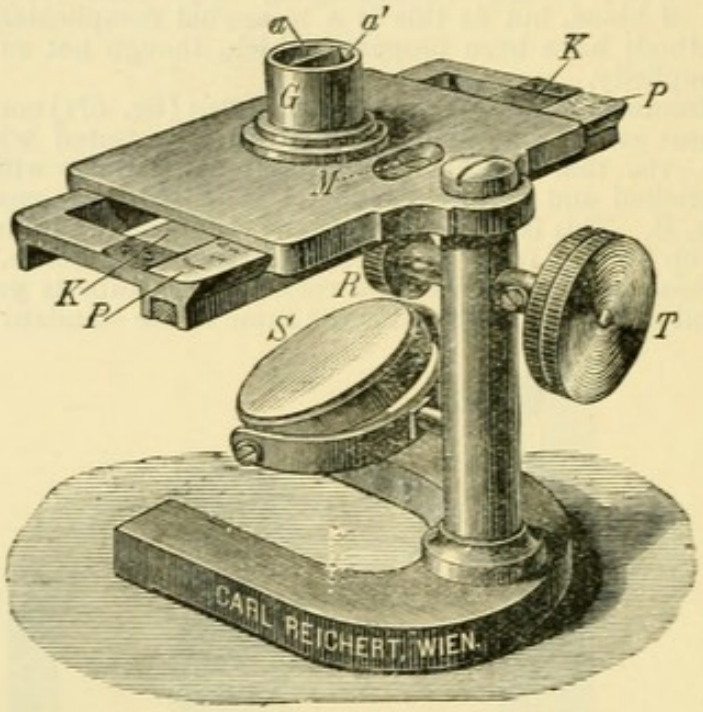


FIG. 372.—Von Fleischl's Hæmoglobinometer.

milled head (T) until the colour of the two is identical. Read off the scale, which is so constructed as to give the percentage of hæmoglobin.

Dr George Oliver's Method consists in comparing a specimen of blood suitably diluted in a shallow white palette with a number of standard tests very carefully prepared by the use of Lovibond's coloured glasses. These standards are much better matches for blood in various degrees of dilution than in most colorimetric methods. The yellow tint of diluted hæmoglobin is very successfully imitated.

Tests for Blood.—These may be gathered from preceding descriptions. Briefly, they are microscopic, spectroscopic, and chemical. The best chemical test is the formation of hæmin crystals. The old test with tincture of guaiacum and hydrogen peroxide, the blood causing the red tincture to become green, is very untrustworthy (unless performed with somewhat elaborate precautions), as it is also given by many other organic substances.

In medico-legal cases it is often necessary to ascertain whether or not a red fluid or stain upon clothing is or is not blood. In any such case it is advisable not to rely upon one test only, but to try every means of detection at one's disposal. To discover whether it is blood or not is by no means a difficult problem, but to distinguish human blood from that of the common mammals is possible only by the "biological" test described at the end of the next section.

Immunity.

The chemical defences of the body against injury and disease are numerous. The property that the blood possesses of coagulating is a defence against hæmorrhage; the acid of the gastric juice is a great protection against harmful bacteria introduced with food. Bacterial activity in urine is inhibited by the acidity of that secretion.

Far more important and widespread in its effects than any of the foregoing is the bactericidal (*i.e.* bacteria killing) action of the blood and lymph; a study of this question has led to many interesting results especially in connection with the problem of immunity. This subject is one of great importance.

It is a familiar fact that one attack of many infective maladies protects us against another attack of the same disease. The person is said to be *immune* either partially or completely against that disease. Vaccination produces in a patient an attack of cowpox or vaccinia. This disease is either closely related to smallpox, or maybe it is smallpox modified and rendered less malignant by passing through the body of a calf. At any rate, an attack of vaccinia renders a person immune to smallpox, or variola, for a certain number of years. Vaccination is an instance of what is called *protective inoculation*, which is now practised with more or less success in reference to other diseases, such as plague and typhoid fever. The study of immunity has also rendered possible what may be called *curative inoculation*, or the injection of antitoxic material as a cure for diphtheria, tetanus, snake poisoning, etc.

The leucocytes or phagocytes destroy bacteria by feeding on them; but the fluid part of the blood is often antagonistic to bacterial life, and this power was first discovered when the effort was made to grow various kinds of bacteria in it; it was looked upon as probable that blood-serum would prove a suitable soil or medium for this purpose. It was found in some instances to have exactly the opposite effect. The chemical characters of the substances which kill the bacteria are not fully known; indeed, the same is true for most of the substances we have to speak of in this connection. Absence of knowledge on this particular point has not, however, prevented important discoveries from being made.

So far as is known at present, the substances in question are protein in nature. The bactericidal powers of blood are destroyed by heating it for an hour to 55° C. Whether the substances are derived from the leucocytes is a disputed point; the balance of evidence appears to me to be in favour of this view in many cases at any rate, and phagocytosis becomes more intelligible if this view is accepted. The substances, whatever be their source or their chemical nature, are called *bacterio-lysins*.

Closely allied to the bactericidal power of blood, or blood-serum, is its globulicidal power. By this one means that the blood-serum of one animal has the power of dissolving the red blood-corpuscles of another species. If the serum of one animal is injected into the blood-stream of an animal of another species, the result is a destruction of its red corpuscles, which may be so excessive as to lead to the passing of the liberated hæmoglobin into the urine (hæmoglobinuria). The substance or substances in the serum that possess this property are called *hæmolysins*, and though there is some doubt whether bacterio-lysins and hæmolysins are absolutely identical, there is no doubt that they are closely related substances.

Normal blood possesses a certain amount of substances which are inimical to the life of our bacterial foes. But suppose a person gets run down; every one knows he is then liable to "catch anything." This coincides with a diminution in the bactericidal power of his blood. But even a perfectly healthy person has not an unlimited supply of bacterio-lysin, and if the bacteria are sufficiently numerous he will fall a victim to the disease they produce. Here, however, comes in the remarkable part of the defence. In the struggle he will produce more and more bacterio-lysin, and if he gets well it means that the bacteria are finally vanquished, and his blood remains rich in the particular bacterio-lysin he has produced, and so will render him immune for a time to further attacks from that particular species of bacterium. Each bacterium attacked in this way seems to cause the development of a specific anti-substance.

Immunity can more conveniently be produced gradually in animals, and this applies, not only to the bacteria, but in certain cases to the toxins they form. If, for instance, the bacilli which produce diphtheria are grown in a suitable medium, they produce the diphtheria poison, or toxin, much in the same way that yeast-cells will produce alcohol when grown in a solution of sugar. Diphtheria toxin is associated with a proteose, as is also the case with the poison of snake venom. If a certain small dose called a "lethal dose" is injected into a guinea-pig the result is death. But if the guinea-pig receives a smaller dose it will recover; a few days after it will stand a rather larger dose; and this may be continued until, after many successive gradually increasing doses, it will finally stand an amount equal to many lethal doses without any ill effects. The gradual introduction of the toxin has called forth the production of an antitoxin. If this is done in the horse instead of the guinea-pig the production of antitoxin is still more marked, and the serum obtained from the blood of an immunised horse may be used for injecting into human beings suffering from diphtheria, and rapidly cures the disease. The two actions of the blood, antitoxic and antibacterial, are frequently associated, but may be entirely distinct.

The antitoxin is also a protein probably of the nature of a globulin; at any rate it is a protein of larger molecular weight than a proteose. This suggests a practical point. In the case of snake-poisoning the poison gets into the blood rapidly owing to the comparative ease with which it diffuses, and so it is quickly carried all over the body. In treatment with the antitoxin or antivenin, speed is everything if life is to be saved; injection of this material under the skin is not much good, for the diffusion into the blood is too slow. It should be injected straight away into a blood-vessel.

There is no doubt that in these cases the antitoxin neutralises the toxin much in the same way that an acid neutralises an alkali. If the toxin and antitoxin are mixed in a test-tube, and time allowed for the interaction to occur, the result is an innocuous mixture. The toxin, however, is merely neutralised, not destroyed; for if the mixture in the test-tube is heated to 68° C. the antitoxin is coagulated and destroyed, and the toxin remains as poisonous as ever.

Immunity is distinguished into *active* and *passive*. Active immunity is produced by the development of protective substances in the body; passive immunity by the injection of a protective serum. Of the two the former is the more permanent.

Ricin, the poisonous protein of castor-oil seeds, and *abrin*, that of the Jequirity bean, also produce, when gradually given to animals, an immunity, due to the production of anti-ricin and anti-abrin respectively.

Ehrlich's hypothesis to explain such facts is usually spoken of as the *side-chain theory* of immunity. He considers that the toxins are capable of uniting with the protoplasm of living cells by possessing groups of atons like those by which nutritive proteins are united to cells during normal assimilation. He terms these *haptophor* groups, and the groups to which these are attached in the cells he terms *receptor* groups. The introduction of a toxin stimulates an excessive production of receptors, which are finally thrown out into the circulation, and the free circulating receptors constitute the antitoxin. The comparison of the process to assimilation is justified by the fact that non-toxic substances like milk or egg-white introduced gradually by successive doses into the blood-stream cause the formation of anti-substances capable of coagulating them.

Up to this point I have spoken only of the blood, but month by month workers are bringing forward evidence to show that other cells of the body may by similar measures be rendered capable of producing a corresponding protective mechanism.

One further development of the theory I must mention. At least two different substances are necessary to render a serum bactericidal or globulicidal. The bacterio-lysin or hæmolysin consists of these two substances. One of these is called the *immune body*, the other

the *complement*. We may illustrate the use of these terms by an example. The repeated injection of the blood of one animal (*e.g.*, the goat) into the blood of another animal (*e.g.*, a sheep) after a time renders the latter animal immune to further injections, and at the same time causes the production of a serum which dissolves readily the red blood-corpuscles of the first animal. The sheep's serum is thus hæmolytic towards goat's blood-corpuscles. This power is destroyed by heating to 56° C. for half an hour, but returns when the fresh serum of any animal is added. The specific immunising substance formed in the sheep is called the immune body; the ferment-like substance destroyed by heat is the complement. The latter is not specific, since it is furnished by the blood of non-immunised animals, but it is nevertheless essential for hæmolysis. Ehrlich believes that the immune body has two side groups—one which connects with the receptor of the red corpuscles, and one which unites with the haptophor group of the complement, and thus renders possible the ferment-like action of the complement on the red corpuscles. Various antibacterial serums which have not been the success in treating disease they were expected to be, are probably too poor in complement, though they may contain plenty of the immune body.

To put it another way: the cell-dissolving substances cannot act on their objects of attack without an intermediate substance to anchor them on to the substance in question. This intermediary substance, known as the immune body or amboceptor, is specific, and varies with the substance to be attacked (red corpuscles, bacterium, toxin, etc.). The complement may be compared to a person who wants to unlock a door; to do this effectively he must be provided with the proper key (amboceptor or immune body).

Quite distinct from the bactericidal, globulicidal, and antitoxic properties of blood is its agglutinating action. This is another result of infection with many kinds of bacteria or their toxins. The blood acquires the property of rendering immobile and clumping together the specific bacteria used in the infection. The test applied to the blood in cases of typhoid fever, and generally called Widal's reaction, depends on this fact. The substances that produce this effect are called *agglutinins*. They also are probably protein-like in nature, but are more resistant to heat than the lysins. Prolonged heating to over 60° C. is necessary to destroy their activity.

We thus see that the means of combating our bacterial enemies are various; in some cases they are rendered immobile by agglutinins, and in other cases, killed by bacterio-lysins. In other instances, their toxins are neutralised by antitoxins, and in others again they are directly devoured by phagocytes. Metschnikoff's view, which is shared by many eminent bacteriologists, is that phagocytosis is the supreme method, and the others are merely

auxiliaries, or confined to a small number of cases. If a foreign organism is destroyed by the leucocytes, it produces no ill effects when it enters the body of a man or other animal; but if it is not destroyed, it grows and produces a disease, and it is therefore called *pathogenic*. If the phagocytes can be induced to feed on a pathogenic organism, it is at once rendered non-pathogenic. The recent discovery of *opsonins*, by Sir A. E. Wright, emphasises this view and shows one means the body possesses of persuading the leucocytes to eat bacteria, which would otherwise be distasteful to them. Washed bacteria from a culture are usually refused by leucocytes; but if the bacteria had been previously soaked in serum, especially if that serum has been obtained from the blood of an animal previously immunised against that special bacterium, then the leucocytes devour them eagerly. Something has either been added to the bacterium to make it tasty, or something removed from it which previously made it distasteful: whichever is the case, the action is described as the action of an *opsonin* (derived from a Greek word which means "to prepare the feast").

We may take the specific case of the tubercle bacillus as an instance where such work is of value. All of us are breathing in these bacilli every day of our lives, but many of us escape tuberculosis because the opsonic power of our blood is sufficiently high to render the bacilli an easy prey to leucocytes. In those to whom the organism is pathogenic, the modern treatment is directed to enhancing nature's cure by increasing the opsonic power of the patient's blood by good food and pure air, or the injection of preparations of the required opsonin.

Lastly, we come to a question which more directly appeals to the physiologist than the preceding, because experiments in relation to immunity have furnished us with what has hitherto been lacking, a means of distinguishing human blood from the blood of other animals.

The discovery was made by Tchistovitch (1899), and his original experiment was as follows:—Rabbits, dogs, goats, and guinea-pigs were inoculated with eel-serum, which is toxic: he thereby obtained from these animals an antitoxic serum. But the serum was not only antitoxic, but produced a precipitate when added to eel-serum, but not when added to the serum of any other animal. In other words, not only has a specific antitoxin been produced, but also a specific *precipitin*. Numerous observers have since found that this is a general rule throughout the animal kingdom, including man. If, for instance, a rabbit is treated with human blood, the serum ultimately obtained from the rabbit contains a specific precipitin for human blood; that is to say, a precipitate is formed on adding such a rabbit's serum to human blood, but not on adding it to the blood

of any other animal. There may be a slight reaction with the blood of allied animals; for instance, with monkey's blood in the case of man. The great value of the test is its delicacy; it will detect the specific blood when it is greatly diluted, after it has been dried for weeks, or even when it is mixed with the blood of other animals.

CHAPTER XXVII

THE ALIMENTARY CANAL

THE alimentary canal consists of a long muscular tube lined by mucous membrane beginning at the mouth, and terminating at the anus. It comprises the mouth, pharynx, œsophagus, stomach, small intestine and large intestine. Opening into it are numerous glands which pour juices into it; these bring about the digestion of the food as it passes along. Some of the glands, like the gastric and intestinal glands, are situated in the mucous membrane which lines the canal; others, like the salivary glands, liver, and pancreas, are situated at a distance from the main canal, and pour their secretion into it by means of side tubes or ducts.

THE MOUTH

This cavity is lined by a mucous membrane consisting of a *corium* of fibrous tissue with numerous patches of lymphoid tissue in it, especially in the posterior regions; and an epithelium of the stratified variety closely resembling the epidermis. The surface layers, like those of the epidermis, are made of horny scales. Opening into the mouth are a large number of little mucous glands, and the salivary glands pour their secretion into the mouth also. The teeth (p. 64) have been previously studied. The tongue will be considered later in connection with taste.

THE PHARYNX

That portion of the alimentary canal which intervenes between the mouth and the œsophagus is termed the *Pharynx*. It is constructed of a series of three muscles with striated fibres (*constrictors*), which are covered by a thin fascia externally, and are lined internally by a strong fascia (pharyngeal aponeurosis), on the inner aspect of which is areolar (submucous) tissue and mucous membrane, continuous with that of the mouth, and, as regards the part concerned in swallowing, identical with it in general structure. The epithelium of this part of the pharynx, like that of the mouth, is stratified.

The upper portion of the pharynx into which the nares open is lined with ciliated epithelium.

The pharynx is well supplied with mucous glands.

Between the anterior and posterior arches of the soft palate are situated the *Tonsils*, one on each side. A tonsil consists of an elevation of the mucous membrane presenting 12 to 15 orifices, which lead into crypts or recesses, in the walls of which are placed nodules of lymphoid tissue (fig. 373). These nodules are enveloped in a less dense adenoid tissue which reaches the mucous surface. The surface is covered with stratified epithelium, and the corium may present rudimentary papillæ formed of adenoid tissue. The tonsil is bounded

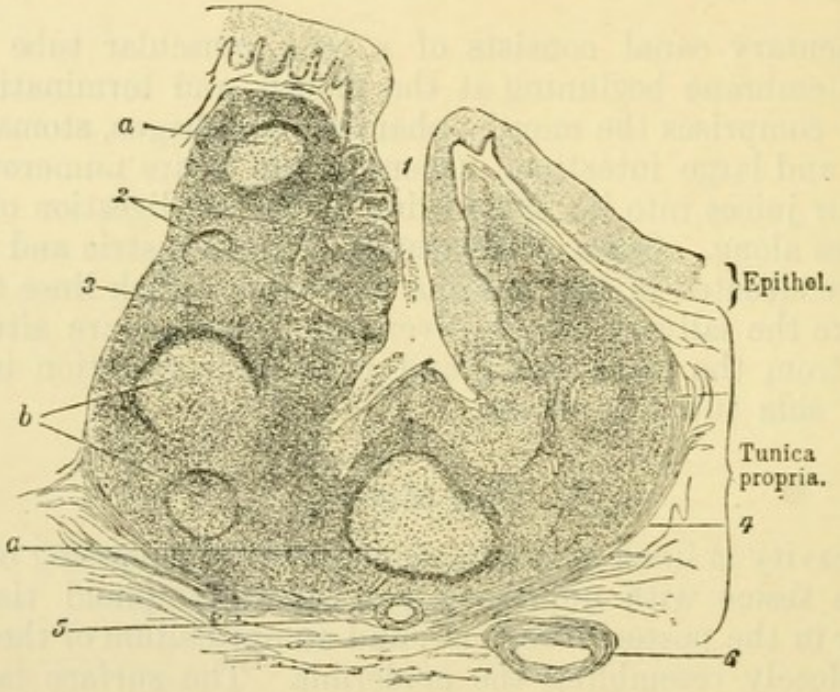


FIG. 373.—Vertical section through a crypt of the human tonsil. 1, entrance to the crypt; 2 and 3, the framework of adenoid tissue; 4, the enclosing fibrous tissue; *a* and *b*, lymphoid nodules; 5 and 6, blood-vessels. (Stöhr.)

beneath by a fibrous capsule (fig. 373, 4). Into the crypts open the ducts of numerous mucous glands.

THE ŒSOPHAGUS OR GULLET

The Œsophagus or Gullet, the narrowest portion of the alimentary canal, is a muscular tube, nine or ten inches in length, which extends from the lower end of the pharynx to the cardiac orifice of the stomach. It is made up of three coats—viz., the outer, *muscular;* the middle, *submucous;* and the inner, *mucous.* The *muscular* coat is covered externally by a varying amount of loose fibrous tissue. It is composed of two layers of fibres, the outer being arranged longitudinally, and the inner circularly. At the upper part of the œso-

phagus this coat is made up principally of striated muscle fibres; they are continuous with the constrictor muscles of the pharynx; but lower down the unstriated fibres become more and more numerous, and towards the end of the tube form the entire coat. The muscular coat is connected with the mucous coat by a more or less developed layer of areolar tissue, which forms the *submucous* coat, in which are contained in the lower half or third of the tube many mucous glands, the ducts of which, passing through the mucous membrane, open on



FIG. 374.—Section of the mucous membrane and submucous coat of the œsophagus.

its surface (fig. 374). In the deepest part of the mucous membrane is a well-developed layer of longitudinally arranged unstriated muscle, called the *muscularis mucosæ*. The corium of the mucous membrane is composed of fine connective tissue, which, towards the surface, is elevated into papillæ. It is covered with a stratified epithelium, of which the most superficial layers are composed of squamous cells. The epithelium is arranged upon a basement membrane.

In newly-born children the corium exhibits, in many parts, the structure of lymphoid tissue (Klein).

The Stomach

The stomach is a dilatation of the alimentary canal placed between and continuous with the œsophagus, which enters its larger or cardiac end on the one hand, and the small intestine, which commences at its narrowed end or pylorus, on the other.

Its wall is composed of four coats, (1) an external or peritoneal, (2) muscular, (3) submucous, and (4) mucous coat; with blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves distributed in and between them.

(1) The *peritoneal* coat has the structure of serous membranes in general.

(2) The *muscular* coat consists of three separate layers or sets of fibres, which, according to their several directions, are named the longitudinal, circular, and oblique. The *longitudinal* set are the most superficial: they are continuous with the longitudinal fibres of the œsophagus, and spread out in a diverging manner over the cardiac end and sides of the stomach. They extend as far as the pylorus, being especially distinct at the lesser or upper curvature of the stomach, along which they pass in several strong bands. The next set, the *circular* or *transverse* fibres, are most abundant at the middle and in the pyloric portion of the organ, and form the chief part of the thick projecting ring of the pylorus. They are continuous with the circular layer of the intestine. The deepest set of fibres are the *oblique*, continuous with the circular muscular fibres of the œsophagus: they are comparatively few in number, and are found only at the cardiac portion of the stomach; they form a sphincter around the cardiac orifice. The muscular fibres of the stomach and of the intestinal canal are of the *unstriated* or plain variety.

(3) The *submucous coat* consists of loose areolar tissue, which connects the muscular coat to the mucous membrane. It contains blood-vessels and nerves; in the contracted state of the stomach it is thrown into numerous, chiefly longitudinal, folds or rugæ, which disappear when the organ is distended.

(4) The *mucous membrane* is composed of a corium of fine connective tissue, which approaches closely in structure to adenoid tissue; this tissue supports the tubular glands of which the superficial and chief part of the mucous membrane is composed, and passing up between them assists in binding them together. The glands are separated from the rest of the mucous membrane by a very fine homogeneous basement membrane. The corium is covered with a layer of columnar epithelium, which passes down into the mouths of the glands.

At the deepest part of the mucous membrane are two thin layers (circular and longitudinal) of unstriped muscular fibres, called the *muscularis mucosæ*.

When examined with a lens, the internal or free surface of the stomach presents a peculiar honeycomb appearance, produced by shallow polygonal depressions. In the bottom of these little pits, and to some extent between them, minute openings are visible, which are the orifices of the ducts of perpendicularly arranged tubular glands (fig. 375), imbedded side by side in sets or bundles, on the surface of the mucous membrane, and composing nearly the whole structure.

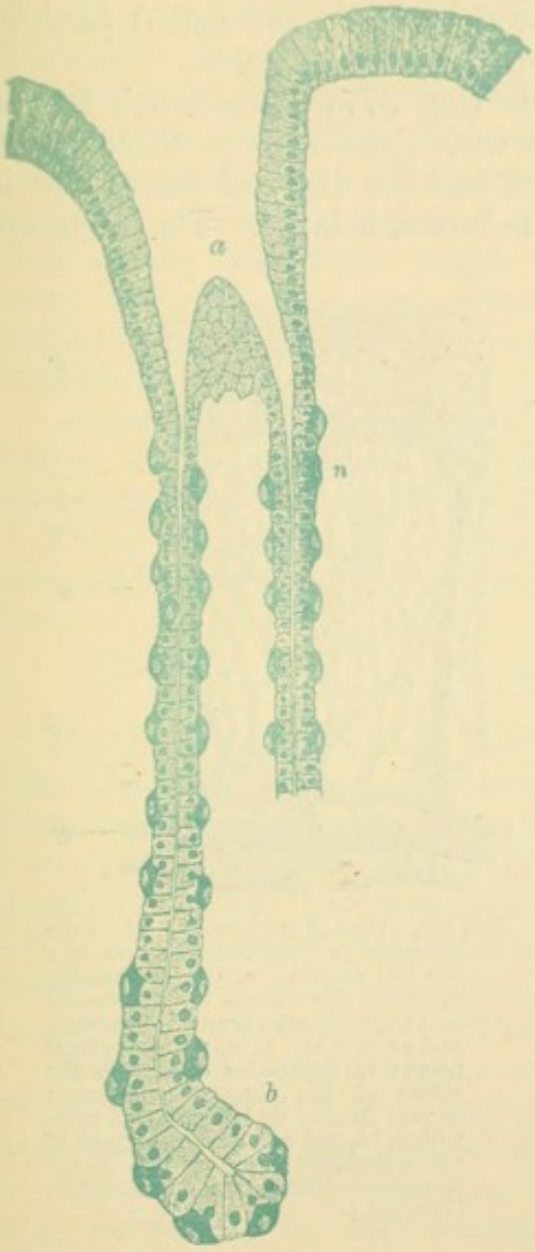


FIG. 375.—From a vertical section through the mucous membrane of the cardiac end of stomach. Two fundus glands are shown with a duct common to both. *a*, duct with columnar epithelium becoming shorter as the cells are traced downward; *n*, neck of gland tubes, with central and parietal cells; *b*, base with curved cæcal extremity—the parietal cells are not so numerous here. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

The glands of the mucous membrane are of three varieties,



FIG. 376.—Transverse section through lower part of fundus glands of a cat. *a*, parietal cells; *b*, central cells; *c*, transverse section of capillaries. (Frey.)

(*a*) Cardiac, (*b*) Fundus, and (*c*) Pyloric.

(*a*) *Cardiac* glands; these are simple tubular glands lined by short columnar granular cells, and are only found quite close to the cardiac orifice.

(*b*) *Fundus* glands are found throughout the remainder of the cardiac half and fundus of the stomach. They are arranged in groups of four or five, which are separated by a fine connective tissue. Two or three tubes open into one duct, which forms about a third of the whole length of the tube and opens on the surface. The ducts are lined with columnar epithelium. The gland-tubes are lined with coarsely granular polyhedral cells (*central cells*) which are con-

tinuous with the columnar cells of the duct. Between these cells and the basement membrane of the tubes, are large oval or spherical cells, opaque or granular in appearance, with clear oval nuclei, bulging out the basement membrane; these cells are called *parietal* or *oxyntic cells.* They do not form a continuous layer.

(*c*) *Pyloric Glands.*—These glands (fig. 377) have much longer ducts than the cardiac glands. Into each duct two or three tubes open by very short and narrow necks, and the body of each tube is branched, wavy, and convoluted. The lumen is large. The ducts are

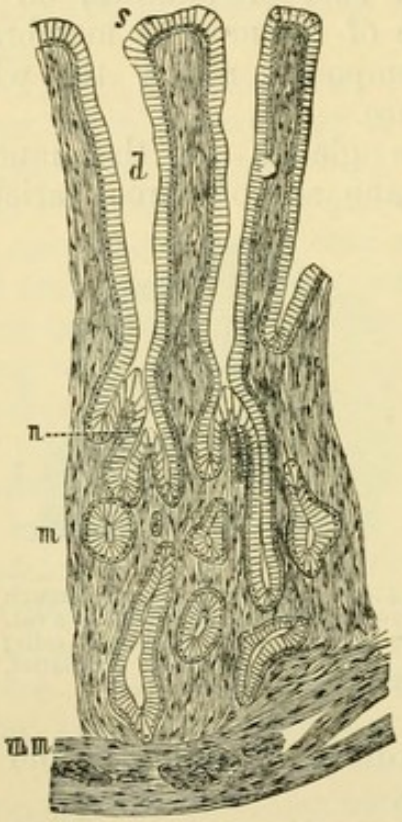


FIG. 377.—Section showing the pyloric glands. *s*, free surface; *d*, ducts of pyloric glands; *n*, neck of same; *m*, the gland tubules; *mm*, muscularis mucosæ. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

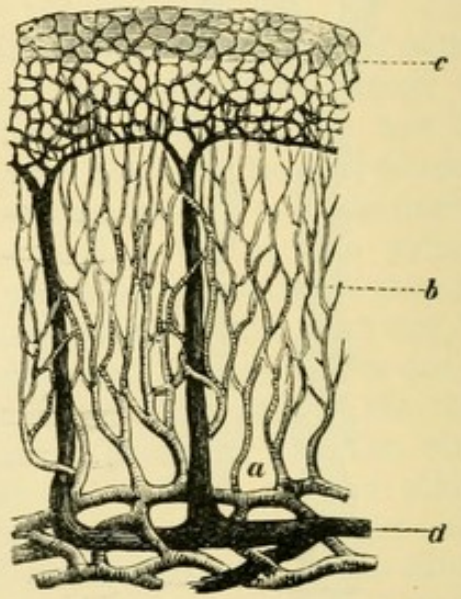


FIG. 378.—Plan of the blood-vessels of the stomach, as they would be seen in a vertical section. *a*, arteries, passing up from the vessels of submucous coat; *b*, capillaries branching between and around the tubes; *c*, superficial plexus of capillaries occupying the ridges of the mucous membrane; *d*, vein formed by the union of veins which, having collected the blood of the superficial capillary plexus, are seen passing down between the tubes. (Brinton.)

lined with columnar epithelium, and the neck and body with shorter and finely granular cubical cells, which correspond with the central cells of the fundus glands. As they approach the duodenum the pyloric glands become larger, more convoluted and more deeply situated. They are directly continuous with Brunner's glands in the duodenum.

Lymphatics.—Lymphatic vessels surround the gland tubes to a greater or less extent. Towards the base of the fundus glands are found masses of lymphoid tissue, which may appear as distinct follicles, somewhat like the solitary glands of the small intestine.

Blood-vessels.—The blood-vessels of the stomach, which first break up in the submucous tissue, send branches upward between the closely packed glandular tubes, anastomosing around them by means of a fine capillary network, with oblong meshes. Continuous with this deeper plexus, or prolonged upwards from it, is a more superficial network of larger capillaries, which branch densely around the orifices of the tubes, and form the framework on which are moulded the small elevated ridges of mucous membrane bounding the minute, polygonal pits before referred to. From this *superficial* network the veins chiefly take their origin. Thence passing down between the tubes, with no very free connection with the deeper *inter-tubular* capillary plexus, they open finally into the venous network in the submucous tissue (fig. 378).

Nerves.—The nerves of the stomach are derived from the pneumogastric and sympathetic, and form two plexuses, one in the submucous and the other between the muscular layers.

These plexuses are continuous with those which occur in the same situations in the intestine, and which we shall again refer to there.

The Intestines.

The Intestinal Canal is divided into two chief portions, named, from their differences in diameter, the *small* and *large* intestine. These are continuous with each other, and communicate by means of an opening guarded by a valve, the *ileo-cæcal* valve, which allows the passage of the products of digestion from the small into the large bowel, but not, under ordinary circumstances, in the opposite direction.

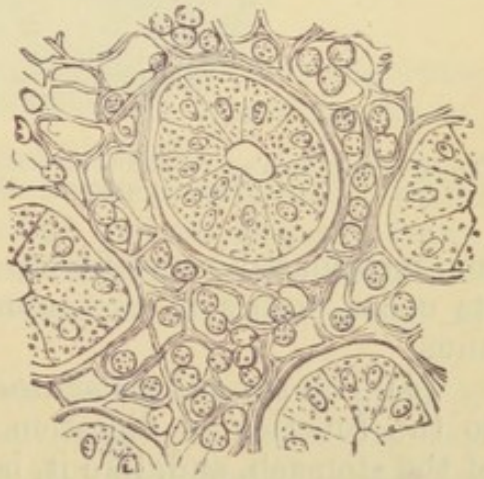


Fig. 379.—Horizontal section of a small fragment of the mucous membrane, including one entire crypt of Lieberkühn and parts of several others. The glands are separated by loose adenoid tissue.

The Small Intestine, the average length of which in an adult is about twenty feet, has been divided, for convenience of description, into three portions, viz., the *duodenum*, which extends for eight or ten inches beyond the pylorus; the *jejunum*, which forms two-fifths, and the *ileum*, which forms three-fifths of the rest of the canal.

Like the stomach, it is constructed of four coats, viz., the serous, muscular, submucous, and mucous.

(1) The *serous* coat is formed by the visceral layer of the peritoneum, and has the structure of serous membranes in general.

(2) The *muscular* coat consists of an internal circular and an

external longitudinal layer: the former is usually considerably the thicker. Both alike consist of bundles of unstriped muscle supported by connective tissue. They are well provided with lymphatic vessels, which form a set distinct from those of the mucous membrane.

Between the two muscular coats is a nerve-plexus (Auerbach's plexus) (fig. 380), similar in structure to Meissner's (in the submucous coat), but coarser and with more numerous ganglia.

(3) Between the mucous and muscular coats is the *submucous* coat, which consists of connective tissue in which numerous blood-vessels and lymphatics ramify. A fine plexus, consisting mainly of

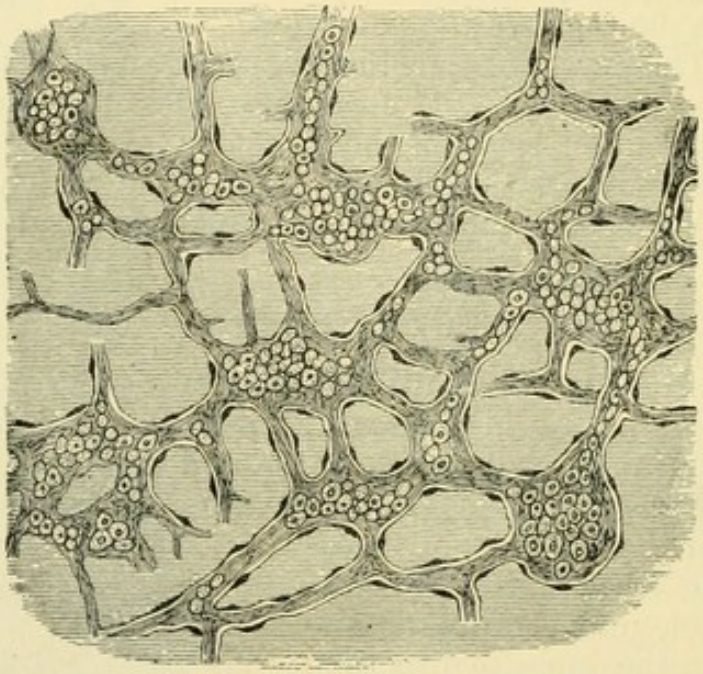


FIG. 380.—Auerbach's nerve-plexus in small intestine. Ganglion-cells are imbedded in the plexus, the whole of which is enclosed in a nucleated sheath. (Klein.)

non-medullated nerve-fibres, *Meissner's plexus,* with ganglion cells at its nodes, occurs in the submucous tissue from the stomach to the anus.

(4) The *mucous membrane* is the most important coat in relation to the function of digestion. Its general structure resembles that of the stomach, and, like it, is lined on its inner surface by columnar epithelium. Adenoid tissue (fig. 379) enters largely into its construction; and on its deep surface is the *muscularis mucosæ* (*m*, fig. 382), the fibres of which are arranged in two layers: the outer longitudinal and the inner circular.

Valvulæ Conniventes.—The valvulæ conniventes (fig. 381) commence in the duodenum, about one or two inches beyond the pylorus, and, becoming larger and more numerous immediately

beyond the entrance of the bile duct, continue well developed throughout the jejunum; then, gradually diminishing in size and number, they cease near the middle of the ileum. They are formed by a doubling inwards of the mucous membrane; the crescentic, nearly circular, folds thus formed are arranged transversely to the axis of the intestine, but each individual fold seldom extends around more than $\frac{1}{2}$ or $\frac{2}{3}$ of the bowel's circumference. Unlike the rugæ in the œsophagus and stomach, they do not disappear on distension of the canal. Their function is to afford a largely increased surface for secretion and absorption. They are covered with villi.

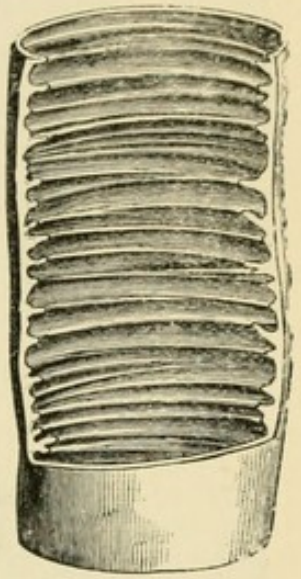


FIG. 381.—Piece of small intestine (previously distended and hardened by alcohol), laid open to show the normal position of the valvulæ conniventes. Natural size.

Villi.—The villi (figs. 382, 383, and 384) are confined exclusively to the mucous membrane of the small intestine. They are minute vascular processes, from $\frac{1}{48}$ to $\frac{1}{8}$ of an inch (·5 to 3 mm.) in length, covering the surface of the mucous membrane, and giving it a peculiar velvety, fleecy appearance. Krause estimates them at fifty to ninety in number in a square line at the upper part of the small intestine, and at forty to seventy in the same area at the lower part. They vary in form even in the same animal, and differ according as the lymphatic vessels or *lacteals* which they contain are empty or full; being usually, in the former case, flat and pointed at their summits, in the latter cylindrical.

Each villus is a small projection of the mucous membrane; its interior consists of fine adenoid tissue, which forms the framework in which the other constituents are contained.

The surface of the villus is clothed by columnar epithelium, which rests on a fine basement membrane; while within this are found, reckoning from without inwards, blood-vessels, fibres of the *muscularis mucosæ*, and a lymphatic or lacteal vessel sometimes looped or branched (fig. 384).

The epithelium is continuous with that lining the other parts of the mucous membrane. The cells are arranged with their long axis radiating from the surface of the villus (fig. 383), and their smaller ends resting on the basement membrane. The free surface of the epithelial cells of the villi, like that of the cells which cover the general surface of the mucous membrane, is surmounted by a bright *striated border* (see pp. 25-27).

Immediately beneath the basement membrane there is a rich supply of *blood-vessels*. Two or more minute arteries are distributed within each villus; and from their capillaries, which form a dense

network, proceed one or two small veins, which pass out at the base of the villus.

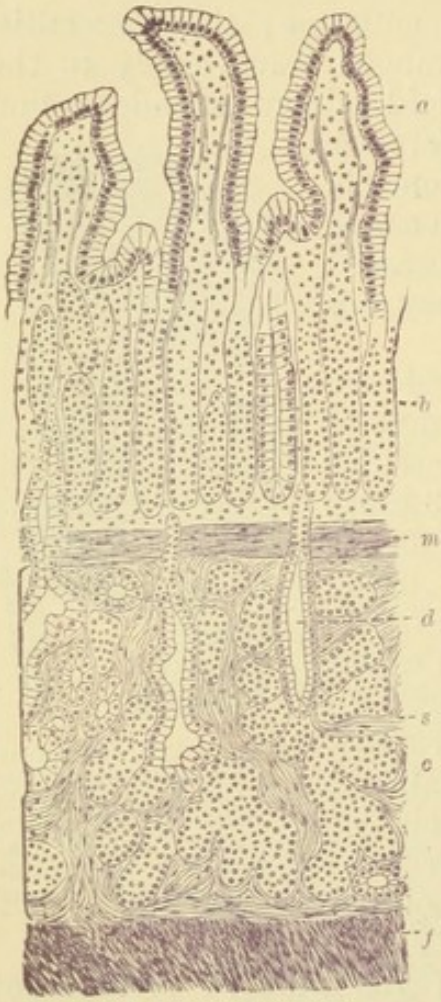


FIG. 382.—Vertical section of duodenum, showing *a*, villi; *b*, crypts of Lieberkühn, and *c*, Brunner's glands in the submucosa *s*, with ducts, *d*; muscularis mucosæ, *m*; and circular muscular coat, *f*. (Schofield.)

The layer of the *muscularis mucosæ* in the villus forms a kind of thin hollow cone immediately around the central lacteal, and is, therefore, situated beneath the blood-vessels. It is instrumental in the propulsion of chyle along the lacteal.

The *lacteal vessels* form the commencement of the intestinal lymphatic system. Each begins almost at the tip of the villus commonly by a dilated

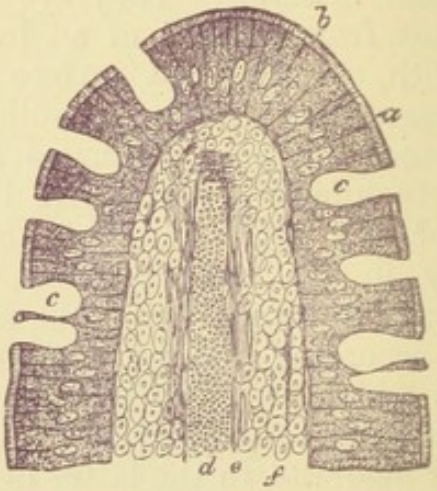


FIG. 383.—Vertical section of a villus of the small intestine of a cat. *a*, striated border of the epithelium; *b*, columnar epithelium; *c*, goblet cells; *d*, central lymph-vessel; *e*, smooth muscular fibres; *f*, adenoid stroma of the villus in which lymph corpuscles lie. (Klein.)

extremity. In the larger villi there may be two small lacteal vessels which join, or the lacteals may form a network in the villus (fig. 384).

Glands.—The glands are of two kinds:—viz., those of Lieberkühn and of Brunner. Peyer's patches and the solitary follicles are composed of lymphoid nodules. Though sometimes called glands, they form no external secretion.

The *glands* or *crypts of Lieberkühn* are tubular depressions of the intestinal mucous membrane, thickly distributed over the whole surface both of the large and small intestines. In the small intestine they are visible only with the aid of a lens; and their orifices appear as minute dots scattered between the villi. They are larger in the

large intestine, and increase in size the nearer they approach the anal end of the intestinal tube; and in the rectum their orifices may be visible to the naked eye. In length they vary from $\frac{1}{180}$ to $\frac{1}{60}$ of



FIG. 384.—A. *Villus of sheep.* B. *Villi of man.* (Slightly altered from Teichmann.)

an inch. Each tubule (fig. 386) is constructed of a fine *basement membrane,* lined by a layer of columnar epithelium, many of the cells of which are goblet cells.

Brunner's glands (fig. 382) are confined to the duodenum; they are most abundant and thickly set at its commencement, and diminish gradually as the duodenum advances. They are situated beneath the muscularis mucosæ, imbedded in the submucous tissue; each gland is a branched and convoluted tube, lined with columnar epithelium. In structure they are very similar to the pyloric glands of the stomach, but they are more branched and convoluted, and their ducts are longer. The duct of each gland passes through the muscularis mucosæ, and opens on the surface of the mucous membrane.

Peyer's patches are found in greatest abundance in the lower part of the ileum near to the ileo-cæcal valve. They consist of aggregated groups of lymphoid nodules; they vary from one to three inches in

length, and are about half-an-inch in width, chiefly of an oval form, their long axes being parallel with that of the intestine. They are almost always placed opposite the attachment of the mesentery.

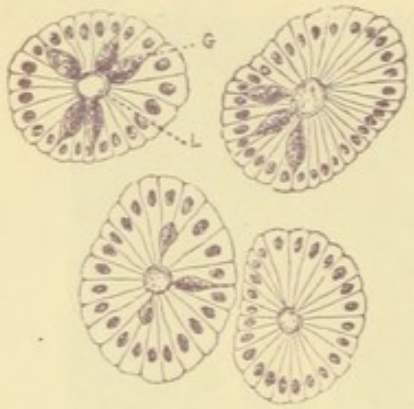


FIG. 385.—Transverse section through four crypts of Lieberkühn from the large intestine of the pig. They are lined by columnar epithelial cells, the nuclei being placed in the outer part of the cells. The divisions between the cells are seen as lines radiating from L, the lumen of the crypt; G, epithelial cells, which have become transformed into goblet cells. × 350. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

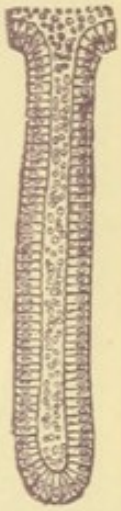


FIG. 386.—A gland of Lieberkühn in longitudinal section. (Brinton.)

When the lymphoid nodules occur singly, as they often do both in small and large intestines, they are called *solitary glands*, or *follicles*.

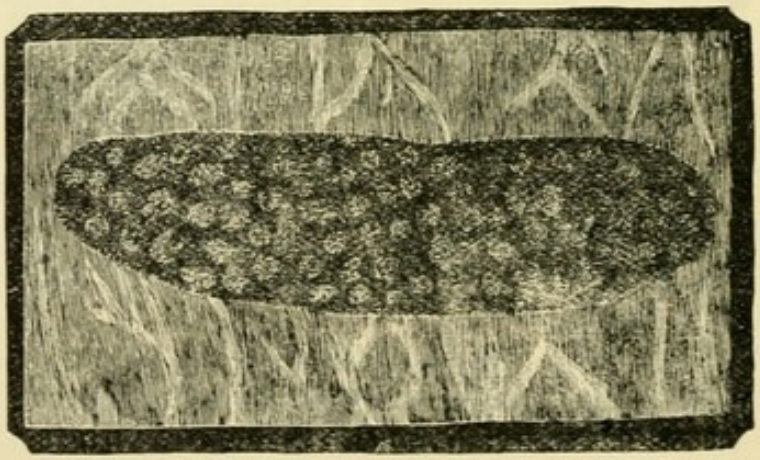


FIG. 387.—Agminate follicles, or Peyer's patch, in a state of distension. × 5. (Boehm.)

The Large Intestine in an adult is from about 4 to 6 feet long; it is subdivided for descriptive purposes into three portions, viz.:—the *cæcum*, a short wide pouch, communicating with the lower end of the small intestine through an opening, guarded by the *ileo-cæcal* valve; the *colon*, continuous with the cæcum, which forms the principal part of the large intestine, and is divided into ascending, transverse, and descending portions; and the *rectum*, which, after dilating at

its lower part, again contracts, and immediately afterwards opens externally through the *anus*. Attached to the cæcum is the small *appendix vermiformis*.

Like the small intestine, the large intestine is constructed of four coats, viz., the serous, muscular, submucous, and mucous. The *serous* coat has connected with it the small processes of peritoneum containing fat, called *appendices epiploicæ*. The fibres of the *muscular* coat, like those of the small intestine, are arranged in two layers—the outer longitudinal, the inner circular. In the cæcum and colon, the longitudinal fibres, instead of being, as in the small intestine, thinly disposed in all parts of the wall of the bowel, are collected, for the most part, into three strong bands, which, being shorter, from end to end, than the other coats of the intestine, hold the canal in folds, bounding intermediate sacculi. On the division of these bands, the intestine can be drawn out to its full length, and it then assumes a uniformly cylindrical form. In the rectum, the fasciculi of these longitudinal bands spread out and mingle with the other longitudinal fibres, forming with them a thicker layer of fibres than exists in any other part of the intestinal canal. The circular muscular fibres are spread over the whole bowel, but are somewhat more marked in the intervals between the sacculi. Towards the lower end of the rectum they become more numerous, and at the anus they form a strong ring called the *internal sphincter* muscle.

The *mucous membrane* of the large, like that of the small intestine, is lined throughout by columnar epithelium, but, unlike it, is quite destitute of villi, and is not projected in the form of *valvulæ conniventes*. It is bounded below by the *muscularis mucosæ*. The arrangement of ganglia and nerve-fibres in the large resembles that in the small intestine.

Glands.—The glands with which the large intestine is provided are simple *tubular* glands, or glands of Lieberkühn; they resemble those of the small intestine, but are somewhat larger and more numerous, and contain a very great number of goblet cells; nodules of *adenoid* or *lymphoid* tissue are most numerous in the cæcum and vermiform appendix. They resemble in shape and structure the solitary glands of the small intestine. Peyer's patches are not found in the large intestine.

Ileo-cæcal Valve.—The ileo-cæcal valve is situated at the place of junction of the small with the large intestine, and guards against any reflux of the contents of the latter into the ileum. It is composed of two semilunar folds of mucous membrane.

CHAPTER XXVIII

FOOD

THE chief chemical compounds or *proximate principles* in food are:—

1. Proteins	}	organic.
2. Carbohydrates		
3. Fats		
4. Water	}	inorganic.
5. Salts		

In milk and in eggs, which form the exclusive foods of young animals, all varieties of these proximate principles are present in suitable proportions. Hence they are spoken of as perfect foods. Eggs, though a perfect food for the developing bird, contain too little carbohydrate for a mammal. In most vegetable foods carbohydrates are in excess; while in animal food, like meat, the proteins are predominant. In a suitable diet these should be mixed in proper proportions, which must vary for herbivorous and carnivorous animals.

A healthy and suitable diet must possess the following characters:—

1. It must contain the proper amount and proportion of the various proximate principles.

2. It must be adapted to the climate; to the age and weight of the individual, and to the amount of work done by him.

3. The food must contain not only the necessary amount of proximate principles, but these must be present in a digestible form. As an instance of this, many vegetables (peas, beans, lentils) contain even more protein than beef or mutton, but are not so nutritious, as they are less digestible, much passing off in the fæces unused.

The nutritive value of a diet depends chiefly on the amount of carbon and nitrogen it contains. A man doing a moderate amount of work and taking the usual diet will eliminate, chiefly from the lungs, in the form of carbonic acid, from 250 to 280 grammes of carbon *per diem*. During the same time he will eliminate, chiefly in the form of urea in the urine, about 15 to 18 grammes of nitrogen. These substances are derived partly from the food and partly from the metabolism of the tissues, various forms of energy—mechanical motion

and heat being the chief—being simultaneously liberated. During muscular exercise the output of carbon greatly increases; the increased excretion of nitrogen is not nearly so marked. Taking, then, the state of moderate exercise, it is necessary that the waste should be replaced by fresh material in the form of food; and the proportion of carbon to nitrogen should be the same as in the excretions: 250 to 15, or 16·6 to 1. The proportion of carbon to nitrogen in protein is, however, 53 to 15, or 3·5 to 1. The extra supply of carbon must come from non-nitrogenous food—viz., fat and carbohydrate.

Voit gives the following daily diet:—

Protein	120 grms.
Fat	90 ,,
Carbohydrate	333 ,,

Ranke's diet closely resembles Moleschott's; it is—

Protein	100 grms.
Fat	100 ,,
Carbohydrate	250 ,,

Such typical diets as these must not be considered as more than rough averages of what is necessary for a man in the course of the day. Actual experience shows that in the diets of different nations there are considerable variations from this standard without the production of ill effects. Age, and the amount of work done, also influence the amount of food necessary; growing children, for instance, require a relatively rich diet; thus, milk, the diet of the infant, is proportionally twice as rich in proteins, and half as rich again in fats, as the normal diet given above. During work more food is necessary than during inactivity.

Attention has recently been devoted to the question whether as much protein as 100 to 120 grammes daily is really necessary, and by far the most convincing of the experiments published in favour of a reduction are those carried out by Chittenden on himself, his colleagues, his students, and on soldiers and athletes, over comparatively long periods of time. The protein intake was reduced to half and sometimes to less than half the quantity hitherto regarded as necessary. The deprivation was followed by no untoward results; bodily equilibrium was maintained; the health remained perfect or improved; the muscular force in athletes was increased; mental acuity was undiminished, and desire for richer food soon disappeared.

It may be freely admitted that the majority of well-to-do people eat too much protein; there are not many who limit themselves even to Voit's minimum, and in those who are prone to digestive and uric acid diseases, one cannot but feel that improvement in body and mind would be the result of more temperate habits.

But if we were all to permanently reduce our diet to the Chittenden level, we might be living perilously near the margin;

any unusual strain, such as privation or a severe illness, would then find us without any reserve of nutrient energy, and we should probably suffer more severely in consequence. The poor around us have had *nolens volens* to subsist on a Chittenden diet for years, whereas Chittenden's experiments only lasted months, and nearly all of his subjects have returned now to their previous diet. The underfed condition of the poor is apparent, and is not such as to make others inclined to follow their example. In countries like India, where the vegetarian native population is diluted with the meat-eating white races, it is the former who more readily succumb to the effects of disease. The recent development of the Japanese is by some attributed in part to the fact that they are accustoming themselves to a richer nitrogenous diet than they took in the past.

It is doubtful if the *minimum* is also the *optimum*. We take in protein, and rapidly eliminate most of its nitrogen as urea, without building it up first into the body tissues; but some is wanted by the body tissues to repair their waste, and some of the cleavage products of the food-protein are especially necessary for the synthesis of tissue protein; it is in order to obtain a sufficient quantity of these scanty cleavage products that we ingest what at first sight is an excess of the proteins which yield them. But after our study of digestion and excretion, we shall be in a better position to discuss this question more fully, and we shall return to it in the chapter on Metabolism (Chapter XXXIX.).

Milk.

Milk, which we have already spoken of as a perfect food, is only so for young children. For those who are older, it is so voluminous that unpleasantly large quantities of it would have to be taken in the course of the day to ensure the proper supply of nitrogen and carbon. Moreover, it is relatively too rich in protein and fat. It also contains too little iron (Bunge): hence children weaned late become anæmic.

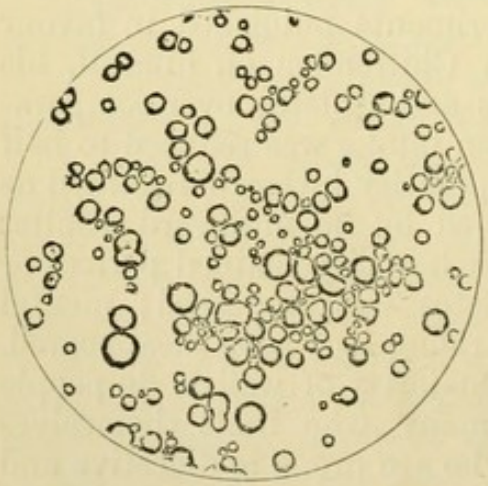


FIG. 388.—Globules of cow's milk. × 400.

The microscope reveals that it consists of two parts: a clear fluid and a number of minute particles that float in it. These consist of minute oil globules, varying in diameter from 0·0015 to 0·005 millimetre (fig. 388).

The milk secreted during the first few days of lactation is called *colostrum*. It contains very little caseinogen, but large quantities of albumin and globulin instead. It

coagulates like white of egg when boiled. Microscopically, cells from the acini of the mammary gland are seen, which contain fat globules in their interior; they are called *colostrum corpuscles.*

Reaction and Specific Gravity.—The reaction of fresh cow's milk and of human milk is amphoteric; that is, it turns blue litmus red, and red litmus blue. This is due to the presence of both acid and alkaline salts. All milk readily turns acid or sour as the result of fermentative change, part of its lactose being transformed into lactic acid. The specific gravity of milk is usually ascertained with the hydrometer. That of normal cow's milk varies from 1028 to 1034. When the milk is skimmed the specific gravity rises, owing to the removal of the light constituent, the fat, to 1033 to 1037. In all cases the specific gravity of water, with which other substances are compared, is taken as 1000.

Composition.—Bunge gives the following table, contrasting the milk of woman, and the cow:—

	Woman.	Cow.
	Per cent.	Per cent.
Proteins (chiefly caseinogen) .	1·7	3·5
Butter (fat)	3·4	3·7
Lactose	6·2	4·9
Salts	0·2	0·7

Hence, in feeding infants on cow's milk, it is necessary to dilute it, and add sugar and a little cream to make it approximately equal to natural human milk.

The Proteins of Milk.—The principal protein in milk is called *caseinogen;* it is *precipitable* by acids such as acetic acid, and also by saturation with magnesium sulphate, or half saturation with ammonium sulphate, so resembling globulins; it is *coagulated* by rennet to form *casein.* Cheese consists of casein with the entangled fat. The other protein in milk is an albumin. It is present in small quantities only; it differs in some of its properties (specific rotation, coagulation temperature, etc.) from serum-albumin; it is called *lact-albumin.*

The Coagulation of Milk.—Rennet is the agent usually employed for this purpose: it is a ferment secreted by the stomach, especially in sucking animals, and is generally obtained from the calf.

The *curd* consists of the casein and entangled fat: the liquid residue called *whey* contains the sugar, salts, and albumin of the milk. There is also a small quantity of a new protein called *whey-protein,* which differs from caseinogen by not being convertible into casein; this is produced by the decomposition of the caseinogen molecule during the process of curdling.

The curd formed in human milk is more finely divided than that in cow's milk; and it is more digestible. In feeding children and invalids on cow's milk, the lumpy condition of the curd may be obviated by the addition of lime water or barley water to the milk. There appears to be no chemical difference between the caseinogen of human and that of cow's milk; variations in the amount of calcium salts and of citric acid account for the differences described.

The addition of rennet produces coagulation in milk, provided that a sufficient amount of calcium salts is present. If the calcium salts are precipitated by the addition of potassium oxalate, rennet causes no formation of casein. The process of curdling in milk is a double one; the first action due to rennet is to produce a change in caseinogen; the second action is that of the calcium salt which precipitates the altered caseinogen as casein. In blood, also, calcium salts are necessary for coagulation, but there they act in a different way, namely, in the production of fibrin ferment (see p. 424).

Caseinogen is a phospho-protein (see p. 411). In milk it is combined with calcium to form calcium caseinogenate; when acetic acid is added we therefore get calcium acetate and free caseinogen.

The Fats of Milk.—The chemical composition of the fat of milk (butter) is very like that of adipose tissue. It consists chiefly of palmitin, stearin, and olein. There are, however, smaller quantities of fats derived from fatty acids lower in the series, especially butyrin and caproin. The relation between these varies somewhat, but the proportion is roughly as follows:—Olein, $\frac{3}{7}$; palmitin, $\frac{1}{3}$; stearin, $\frac{1}{6}$; butyrin, caproin, and caprylin, $\frac{1}{14}$. The old statement that each fat globule is surrounded by a film of caseinogen is, according to Ramsden's recent observations, correct. Milk also contains small quantities of lecithin, a phosphorised fat; of cholesterin, an alcohol which resembles fat in its solubilities, and a yellow fatty pigment or lipochrome.

Milk Sugar, or Lactose.—This is a saccharose ($C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$). Its properties have already been described in Chap. XXV., p. 394.

Souring of Milk.—When milk is allowed to stand the chief change which it is apt to undergo is a conversion of a part of its lactose into lactic acid. This is due to the action of micro-organisms, and would not occur if the milk were contained in closed sterilised vessels. Equations showing the change produced are given on p. 395. When souring occurs, the acid formed precipitates a portion of the caseinogen. This must not be confounded with the formation of casein from caseinogen which is produced by rennet. There are, however, some bacteria which, like rennet, produce true coagulation.

Alcoholic Fermentation in Milk.—When yeast is added to milk, the sugar does not readily undergo the alcoholic fermentation. Other

somewhat similar fungoid growths are, however, able to produce the change, as in the preparation of koumiss; the milk sugar is first inverted, that is dextrose and galactose are formed from it (see p. 395), and it is these sugars from which alcohol and carbonic acid originate.

The Salts of Milk.—The principal salt present is calcium phosphate; a small quantity of magnesium phosphate is also present. The other salts are chiefly chlorides of sodium and potassium.

The Mammary Glands.

The mammary glands are composed of large divisions or lobes, and these are again divisible into lobules; the lobules are composed of the convoluted and dilated subdivisions of the main ducts held together by connective tissue. Covering the general surface of the gland, with the exception of the nipple, is a considerable quantity of fat, itself lobulated by sheaths and processes of areolar tissue (fig. 389)

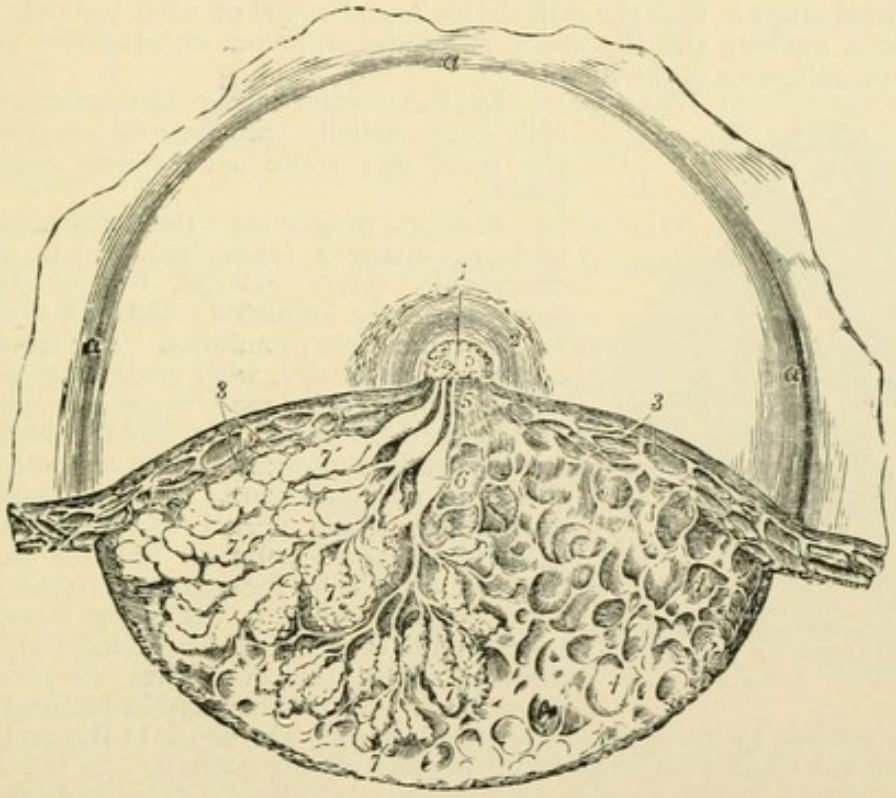


FIG. 389.—Dissection of the lower half of the female mamma, during the period of lactation. ⅔.—In the left-hand side of the dissected part the glandular lobes are exposed and partially unravelled; and on the right-hand side, the glandular substance has been removed to show the reticular loculi of the connective tissue in which the glandular lobules are placed: 1, upper part of the mamilla or nipple; 2, areola; 3, subcutaneous masses of fat; 4, reticular loculi of the connective-tissue which support the glandular substance and contain the fatty masses; 5, one of three lactiferous ducts shown passing towards the mamilla where they open; 6, one of the sinus lactei or reservoirs; 7, some of the glandular lobules which have been unravelled; 7′, others massed together. (Luschka.)

connected both with the skin in front and the gland behind; the same bond of connection extends also from the under surface of the gland to the sheathing connective tissue of the great pectoral muscle on which it lies. The main ducts of the gland, fifteen to twenty in number, called the *lactiferous* ducts, are formed by the union of the smaller (lobular) ducts, and open by small separate orifices through the nipple. At the points of junction of lobular ducts to form lactiferous ducts, and just before these enter the base of the nipple, the ducts are dilated; and during the period of active secretion by the gland, the dilatations form reservoirs for the milk,

which collects in and distends them. The walls of the gland-ducts are formed of areolar with some unstriped muscular tissue, and are lined internally by short columnar and near the nipple by flattened epithelium.

The nipple is composed of areolar tissue, and contains unstriped muscular fibres. Blood-vessels are also freely supplied to it, so as to give it an erectile structure. On its surface are very sensitive papillæ; and around it is a small area or *areola* of pink or dark-tinted skin, on which are to be seen small projections formed by minute secreting glands.

Blood-vessels, nerves, and lymphatics are plentifully supplied to the mammary glands; the calibre of the blood-vessels, as well as the size of the glands, varies very greatly under certain conditions, especially those of pregnancy and lactation.

The alveoli of the glands during the secreting periods are found to be lined with short columnar cells (see fig. 390). The edges of the cells towards the lumen may be irregular and jagged, and the remainder of the alveolus is filled up with the materials of the milk. During the intervals between the acts of discharge, the cells of the alveoli elongate towards the lumen, their nuclei divide, and in the part of the cells towards the lumen a collection of oil globules and of other materials takes place.

The next stage is that the cells divide and the part of each towards the lumen containing a nucleus and the materials of the secretion, disintegrates and goes to form the constituents of the milk.

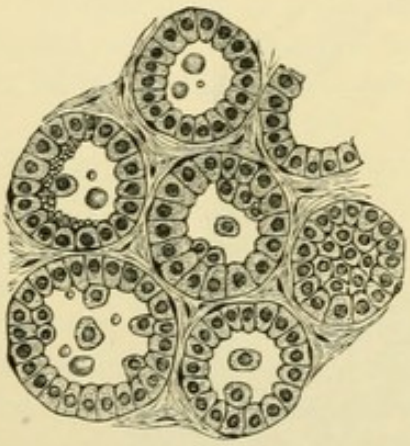


FIG. 390.—Section of mammary gland of bitch, showing acini, lined with epithelial cells of a short columnar form. × 200. (V. D. Harris.)

In the earlier days of lactation, epithelial cells only partially transformed are discharged in the secretion; these are termed *colostrum corpuscles.*

During pregnancy the mammary glands undergo changes (*evolution*) which are readily observable. They enlarge, become harder, and more distinctly lobulated; the veins on the surface become more prominent. The areola becomes enlarged and dusky, with projecting papillæ; the nipple, too, becomes more prominent, and milk can be squeezed from the orifices of the ducts. This is a very gradual process, which commences about the time of conception, and progresses steadily during the whole period of gestation. In the gland itself solid columns of cells bud off from the old alveoli to form new alveoli. But these solid columns after a while are converted into tubes by the central cells becoming fatty and being discharged as the colostrum corpuscles above mentioned. After the end of lactation, the mamma gradually returns to its original size (*involution*). The acini, in the early stages of involution, are lined with cells in all degrees of vacuolation. As involution proceeds, the acini diminish considerably in size, and at length, instead of a mosaic of lining epithelial cells (twenty to thirty in each acinus), we have five or six nuclei (some with no surrounding protoplasm) lying in an irregular heap within the acinus. No secretory nerves of the mammary gland have yet been discovered. It is possible they do not exist, but that the normal stimulus to mammary activity is a chemical one formed by the fœtus during its residence in the uterus. Extracts of fœtal tissues injected into virgin rabbits leads to incomplete *evolution* of the mammary glands (Starling and Lane-Claypon).

Eggs.

In this country the eggs of hens and ducks are those particularly selected as foods. The chief constituent of the *shell* is calcium carbonate. The *white* is composed of a richly albuminous fluid enclosed in a network of firmer and more fibrous material. The amount of

solids is 13·3 per cent.; of this, 12·2 is protein in nature (egg-albumin, with smaller quantities of egg-globulin, and of a mucinoid substance called ovo-mucoid), and the remainder is made up of sugar (0·5 per cent.), traces of fats, lecithin and cholesterin, and 0·6 per cent. of inorganic salts. The *yolk* is rich in food materials for the development of the future embryo. In it there are two varieties of yolk-spherules, one kind yellow and opaque (due to admixture with fat and a yellow lipochrome), and the other smaller, transparent and almost colourless; these are protein in nature, consisting of the phospho-protein called *vitellin*. Small quantities of sugar, lecithin, cholesterin and inorganic salts are also present.

The nutritive value of eggs is high, as they are so readily digestible; but the more an egg is cooked the more insoluble do its protein constituents become.

Meat.

This is composed of the muscular and connective (including adipose) tissues of certain animals. The flesh of some animals is not eaten; in some cases this is a matter of fashion, in others, owing to an unpleasant taste, such as the flesh of carnivora is said to have; and in other cases (*e.g.* the horse) because it is more lucrative to use the animal as a beast of burden.

Meat is the most concentrated and most easily assimilable of nitrogenous foods. It is our chief source of nitrogen. Its chief solid constituent is protein, and the principal protein is myosin. In addition to the extractives and salts contained in muscle, there is always a certain percentage of fat, even though all visible adipose tissue is dissected off. The fat-cells are placed between the muscular fibres, and the amount of fat so situated varies in different animals; it is particularly abundant in pork; hence the indigestibility of this form of flesh: the fat prevents the gastric juice from obtaining ready access to the muscular fibres.

The following table gives the chief substances in some of the principal meats used as food:—

Constituents.	Ox.	Calf.	Pig.	Horse.	Fowl.	Pike.
Water	76·7	75·6	72·6	74·3	70·8	79·3
Solids	23·3	24·4	27·4	25·7	29·2	20·7
Proteins, including gelatin*	20·0	19·4	19·9	21·6	22·7	18·3
Fat	1·5	2·9	6·2	2·5	4·1	0·7
Carbohydrate . . .	0·6	0·8	0·6	0·6	1·3	0·9
Salts	1·2	1·3	1·1	1·0	1·1	0·8

* The flesh of young animals is richer in gelatin than that of old; thus 1000 parts of beef yield 6, of veal 50, parts of gelatin.

The large percentage of water in meat should be particularly noted; if a man wished to take his daily supply of 100 grammes of protein entirely in the form of meat, it would be necessary for him to consume about 500 grammes (*i.e.*, a little more than 1 lb.) of meat.

Flour.

The best wheat flour is made from the interior of wheat grains, and contains the greater proportion of the starch of the grain and most of the protein. Whole flour is made from the whole grain *minus* the husk, and thus contains not only the white interior but also the harder and browner outer portion of the grain. This outer region contains a somewhat larger proportion of the proteins of the grain. Whole flour contains 1 to 2 per cent. more protein than the best white flour, but it has the disadvantage of being less readily digested. Brown flour contains a certain amount of bran in addition; it is still less digestible, but is useful as a mild laxative, the insoluble cellulose mechanically irritating the intestinal canal as it passes along.

The best flour contains very little sugar. The presence of sugar indicates that germination has commenced in the grains. In the manufacture of malt from barley this is purposely allowed to go on.

When mixed with water, wheat flour forms a sticky, adhesive mass called dough. This is due to the formation of gluten, and the forms of grain poor in gluten cannot be made into dough (oats, rice, etc.). Gluten is a mixture of several proteins (gliadin, mucedin, gluten-fibrin, etc.).

The following table contrasts the composition of some of the more important vegetable foods:—

Constituents.	Wheat.	Barley.	Oats.	Rice.	Lentils.	Peas.	Potatoes.
Water . .	13·6	13·8	12·4	13·1	12·5	14·8	76·0
Protein .	12·4	11·1	10·4	7·9	24·8	23·7	2·0
Fat . .	1·4	2·2	5·2	0·9	1·9	1·6	0·2
Starch .	67·9	64·9	57·8	76·5	54·8	49·3	20·6
Cellulose .	2·5	5·3	11·2	0·6	3·6	7·5	0·7
Mineral salts	1·8	2·7	3·0	1·0	2·4	3·1	1·0

We see from this table—

1. The great quantity of starch always present.

2. The small quantity of fat; that bread is generally eaten with butter is a popular recognition of this fact.

3. Protein, except in potatoes, is pretty abundant, and especially so in the pulses (lentils, peas, etc.). The protein in the pulses is not gluten, but consists of vitellin and globulin-like substances.

In the mineral matters in vegetables, salts of potassium and magnesium are, as a rule, more abundant than those of sodium and calcium.

Bread.

Bread is made by cooking the dough of wheat flour mixed with yeast, salt, and flavouring materials. A ferment in the flour acts at the commencement of the process, when the temperature is kept a little over that of the body, and forms dextrin and sugar from the starch, and then the alcoholic fermentation, due to the action of the yeast, begins. The bubbles of carbonic acid, burrowing passages through the bread, make it light and spongy. This enables the digestive juices subsequently to soak into it readily and affect all parts of it. In the later stages, viz., baking, the temperature is raised, the gas and alcohol are expelled from the bread, the yeast is killed, and a crust forms from the drying of the outer portions of the dough.

White bread contains, in 100 parts, 7 to 10 of protein, 55 of carbohydrates, 1 of fat, 2 of salts, and the rest water.

Cooking of Food.

The cooking of foods is a development of civilisation and serves many useful ends:—

1. It destroys all parasites and danger of infection. This relates not only to bacterial growths, but also to larger parasites, such as tapeworms and trichinæ.

2. In the case of vegetable foods it breaks up the starch grains, bursting the cellulose and allowing the digestive juices to come into contact with the granulose.

3. In the case of animal foods it converts the insoluble collagen of the universally distributed connective tissues into the soluble gelatin. The loosening of the fibres is assisted by the formation of steam between them. By thus loosening the binding material, the more important elements of the food, such as muscular fibres, are rendered accessible to the gastric and other juices. Meat before it is cooked is generally kept a certain length of time to allow *rigor mortis* to pass off.

Of the two chief methods of cooking, roasting and boiling, the former is the more economical, as by its means the meat is first surrounded with a coat of coagulated protein on its exterior, which keeps in the juices to a great extent, letting little else escape but the dripping (fat). Whereas in boiling, unless both bouillon and bouilli are used, there is considerable waste. Cooking, especially boiling, renders the proteins more insoluble than they are in the raw state; but this is counterbalanced by the other advantages that cooking possesses.

In making *beef tea* and similar extracts of meat it is necessary that the meat should be placed in cold water, and this is gradually and carefully warmed. In boiling a joint it is usual to put the meat into boiling water at once, so that the outer part is coagulated, and the loss of material minimised.

An extremely important point in this connection is that beef tea and similar meat extracts should not be regarded as foods. They are valuable as pleasant stimulating drinks for invalids, but they contain very little of the nutritive material of the meat, their chief constituents, next to water, being the salts and extractives of flesh.

Soup contains the extractives of meat, a very small proportion of the myosin, and the principal part of the gelatin. The gelatin is usually increased by adding bones and fibrous tissue to the stock. It is the presence of this substance which causes soup when cold to gelatinise.

Accessories to Food.

Among these must be placed *alcohol*, the value of which within moderate limits is not as a food but as a stimulant; *condiments* (mustard, pepper, ginger, curry powder, etc.), which are stomachic stimulants, the abuse of which is followed by dyspeptic troubles; and *tea*, *coffee*, *cocoa*, and similar drinks. These are stimulants chiefly to the nervous system; tea, coffee, maté (Paraguay), guarana (Brazil), cola nut (Central Africa), bush tea (South Africa), and a few other plants used in various countries all owe their chief property to an alkaloid called *theine* or *caffeine* ($C_8H_{10}N_4O_2$); cocoa to the closely related alkaloid, *theobromine* ($C_7H_8N_4O_2$); coca to *cocaine*. These alkaloids are all poisonous, and used in excess, even in the form of infusions of tea and coffee, produce over-excitement, loss of digestive power, and other disorders well known to physicians. Coffee differs from tea in being rich in aromatic matters; tea contains a bitter principle, tannin; to avoid the injurious solution of too much tannin, tea should only be allowed to infuse (draw) for a few minutes. Cocoa is not only a stimulant, but a food in addition; it contains about 50 per cent. of fat, and 12 per cent. of protein. In manufactured cocoa, the amount of fat is reduced to 30 per cent., and the amount of protein rises proportionately to about 20 per cent. The quantity of cocoa usually consumed is too small for these food materials to count very much in the daily supply. The amount of protein in solution (mainly proteose) in a breakfast cup of cocoa is under half a gramme; most of the food stuffs are in suspension, for cocoa is drunk "thick," not as a clear infusion.

Green vegetables are taken as a palatable adjunct to other foods, rather than for their nutritive properties. Their potassium salts are, however, abundant. Cabbage, turnips, and asparagus contain 80 to 92 water, 1 to 2 protein, 2 to 4 carbohydrates, and 1 to 1·5 cellulose per cent. The small amount of nutriment in most green foods accounts for the large meals made by, and the vast capacity of the alimentary canal of, herbivorous animals.

CHAPTER XXIX

SECRETING GLANDS

BEFORE passing on to the action of the digestive secretions on foods, it will be well to discuss the varieties of glands by means of which these substances are formed.

It is the function of gland-cells to produce by the metabolism of their protoplasm certain substances called secretions. These materials are of two kinds, viz., those which are employed for the purpose of serving some ulterior office in the economy, and those which are discharged from the body as useless or injurious. In the former case the separated materials are termed *secretions;* in the latter they are termed *excretions.*

The secretions, as a rule, consist of substances which do not pre-exist in the same form in the blood, but require special cells and a process of elaboration for their formation, *e.g.*, the liver cells for the formation of bile, the mammary gland-cells for the formation of milk. The excretions, on the other hand, commonly consist of substances which exist ready-formed in the blood, and are merely abstracted therefrom. If from any cause, such as extensive disease or extirpation of an excretory organ, the separation of an excretion is prevented, and an accumulation of it in the blood ensues, it frequently escapes through other organs, and may be detected in various fluids of the body. An instance of this is seen after the kidneys have been removed. Urea then accumulates in the blood. But this is never the case with secretions; for, after the removal of the special organ by which each of them is manufactured, the secretion is no longer formed.

The circumstances of their formation, and their final destination, are, however, the only particulars in which secretions and excretions can be distinguished; for, in general, the structure of the parts engaged in eliminating excretions is as complex as that of the parts concerned in the formation of secretions. It will, therefore, be sufficient to speak in general terms of the process.

Every secreting apparatus consists essentially of a layer of secreting cells arranged round a central cavity; they take from the lymph

which bathes them the necessary material, and transform it into the secretion which they pour at high pressure into the cavity.

The principal secreting organs are the following:—(1) the synovial membranes; (2) the mucous membranes with their special glands, *e.g.*, the buccal, gastric and intestinal glands; (3) the salivary glands and pancreas; (4) the mammary glands; (5) the liver; (6) the lacrimal gland; (7) the kidney and skin; and (8) the testes.

The synovial membranes line the joints and the sheaths of tendons and ligaments with which we may include the synovial *bursæ*. The contents of these sacs is called *synovia;* it lubricates the surfaces of the joint, and so ensures an easy movement. Synovia is a rich lymph *plus* a mucinoid material; and it is this latter constituent which gives the secretion its viscidity. It is thus a true secretion; and is formed by the epithelial cells which form an imperfect lining to the sac, and which are especially accumulated on the processes of the synovial fringes (fig. 391).

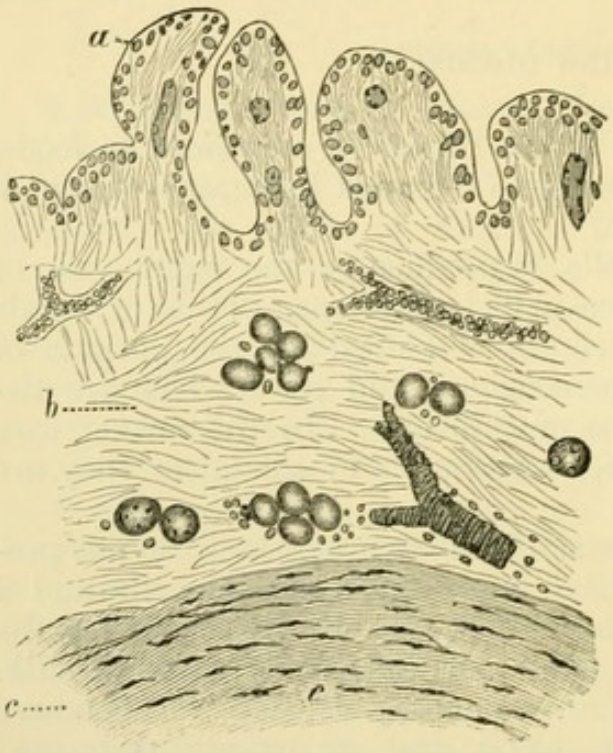


FIG. 391.—Section of synovial membrane. *a*, epithelial covering of the elevations of the membrane; *b*, underlying tissue containing fat and blood-vessels; *c*, ligament covered by the synovial membrane. (Cadiat.)

A mucous membrane consists of two parts: the *epithelium* on its surface, and the *corium* of connective tissue beneath. The epithelium generally rests on a basement membrane which is usually composed of clear flattened cells placed edge to edge.

The name *mucous* is derived from the fact that nearly all these membranes secrete *mucin*, the chief constituent of *mucus;* this may be formed from the surface epithelium cells breaking down into goblet cells (see p. 26), or an analogous process may occur in the cells of little glands called mucous glands, situated more or less deeply under the epithelium, and opening on the surface by ducts. Many mucous membranes (*e.g.*, that of the stomach) form other secretions as well.

Mucous membranes line all those passages by which internal parts communicate with the exterior. The principal tracts are the *Digestive*, *Respiratory*, and *Genito-urinary*.

Secreting glands may be classified according to certain types,

which are the following:—1. The *simple tubular* gland (A, fig. 392), examples of which are furnished by the crypts of Lieberkühn in the intestinal wall. To the same class may be referred the elongated and tortuous *sudoriferous glands.*

2. The *compound tubular* glands (D, fig. 392) form another

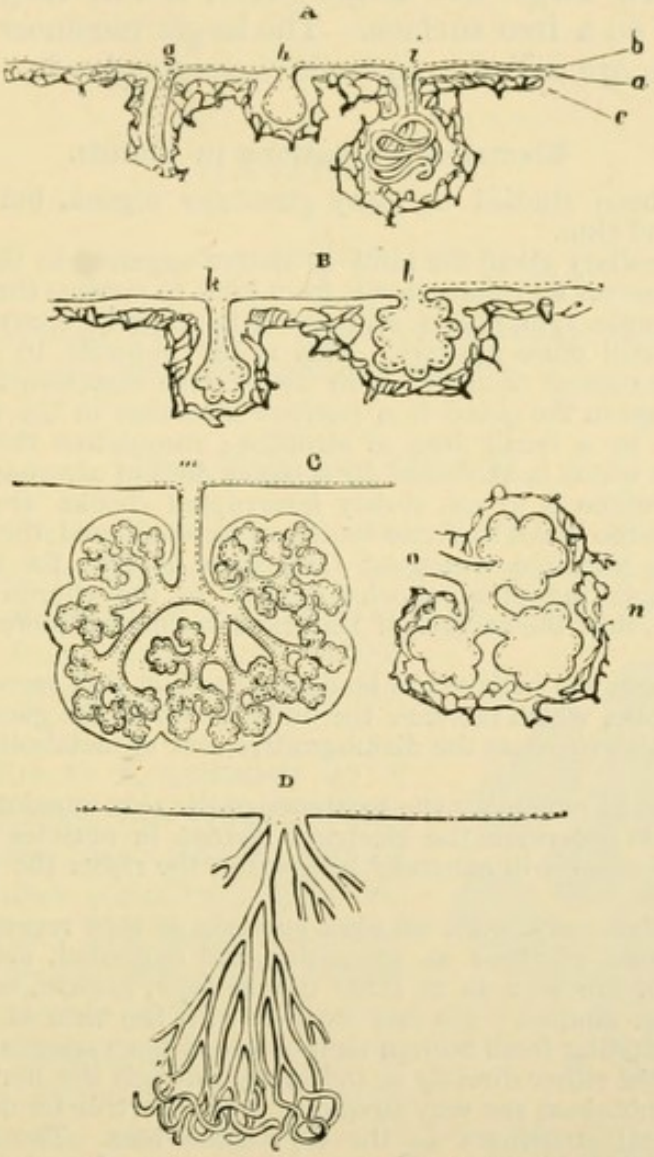


FIG. 392.—Diagram of types of secreting glands. A, simple glands, viz., *g*, straight tube; *h*, sac; *i*, coiled tube. B, multilocular crypts; *k*, of tubular form; *l*, saccular. C, racemose, or saccular compound gland; *m*, entire gland, showing branched duct and lobular structure; *n*, a lobule, detached with *o*, branch of duct proceeding from it. D, compound tubular gland. (Sharpey.)

division. These consist of main gland-tubes, which divide and sub-divide.

3. The *racemose* glands are those in which a number of vesicles or *acini* are arranged in groups or lobules (C, fig. 392). The *Meïbomian follicles* are examples of this kind of gland. Some glands, like the pancreas, are of a mixed character, combining some of the characters of the tubular with others of the racemose type; these are

called *tubulo-racemose* or *tubulo-acinous* glands. These glands differ from each other only in secondary points of structure, but all have the same essential character in consisting of rounded groups of vesicles containing gland-cells, and opening by a common central cavity into minute ducts, which ducts in the large glands converge and unite to form larger and larger tubes, and at length open by one common trunk on a free surface. The larger racemose glands, like the salivary glands, are called *compound racemose* glands.

Electrical Variations in Glands.

These have been studied in many glandular organs, but especially in the salivary glands and skin.

In the submaxillary gland the hilus is electro-negative to the external surface of the organ; a current therefore passes from hilus to surface through the galvanometer. If the chorda tympani is stimulated by rapidly interrupted shocks, the surface becomes still more positive. This is the opposite to what occurs in a muscle; there the current of action is in the reverse direction to the demarcation current; the change in the gland is a positive variation in the arithmetical sense. This is abolished by a small dose of atropine; stimulation then causes a small negative variation which is abolished by a larger dose of atropine.

If, before atropine is given, slowly interrupted shocks are used, or rapidly interrupted shocks too weak to excite secretion are employed, the electrical response of the organ is a negative variation. The same is true for stimulation of the sympathetic. Single induction shocks applied to the chorda tympani cause a diphasic variation, first the surface of the gland becoming more positive and then the hilus.

The two changes are believed to be due to the fact that secretory nerves are of two kinds: anabolic, which increase the building up of the glandular protoplasm; and katabolic, which increase the disintegrative side of metabolism, and so lead to secretion.

It is important to remember the existence of the skin currents, for they interfere with any attempt to determine the electrical change in muscles through the intact skin. This interference will naturally be greater, the richer the portion of skin is, in secreting glands.

The most satisfactory work on skin currents is that recently carried out by Waller. He speaks of them as glandular and epithelial, and regards them as important signs of life here as in other tissues (eye, muscle, nerve, plant tissues, etc.) which he has studied. He has worked with the skin of the frog, cat, and other animals, including fresh human skin obtained from surgical operations. The skin may be excited either directly or indirectly through the nerves that supply it. The main results obtained are very simple, and are also true for mucous membranes, and such epithelial structures as the crystalline lens. The normal current of unexcited living skin is ingoing. The normal response of excited skin is outgoing. This is explained in the following way:—In a passive mass of living animal material acted upon by its environment, there must be most change occurring on its surface, a point on the surface will therefore be electropositive to any point in the interior. If the same mass is excited, chemical changes will be greater in its interior than at the surface; hence internal points become less electronegative than they were before, or even electropositive in relation to the external surface, hence the current of action through the mass of skin is outgoing, and will therefore pass through the galvanometer from the external to the internal surface.

CHAPTER XXX

SALIVA

THE saliva is formed by three pairs of salivary glands, called the parotid, submaxillary, and sublingual glands.

The Salivary Glands.

These are typical secreting glands. They are made up of *lobules* united by connective tissue. Each lobule is made of a group of tubulo-saccular *alveoli* or *acini*, from which a duct passes; this unites with other ducts to form larger and larger tubes, the main duct opening into the mouth.

Each alveolus is surrounded by a plexus of capillaries; the lymph which exudes from these is in direct contact with the basement membrane that encloses the alveolus. The basement membrane is lined by secreting cells which surround the central cavity or lumen. The basement membrane is thin in many places, to allow the lymph more ready access to the secreting cells; it is continued along the ducts.

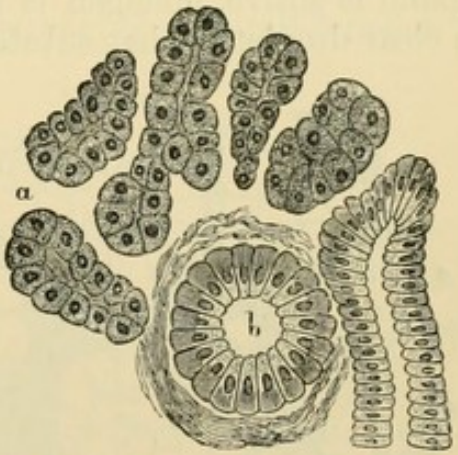


FIG. 393.—From a section through a salivary gland. *a*, serous or albuminous alveoli; *b*, intralobular duct cut transversely. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

The secreting epithelium is composed of a layer of polyhedral cells.

The epithelium of the ducts is columnar, except where it passes into an alveolus; at this point it is flattened. The columnar epithelium cells of the ducts exhibit striations in their outer part (see fig. 393); the inner zone of each cell is made of granular protoplasm. The largest ducts have a wall of connective tissue outside the basement membrane, and a few unstriated muscular fibres.

The secreting cells differ according to the substance they secrete. In alveoli that secrete mucin (such as those in the dog's submaxillary,

and some of the alveoli in the human submaxillary) the cells after treatment with water or alcohol are clear and swollen (fig. 395); this is the appearance they usually present in sections of the organ. But if examined in their natural state by teasing a portion of the fresh

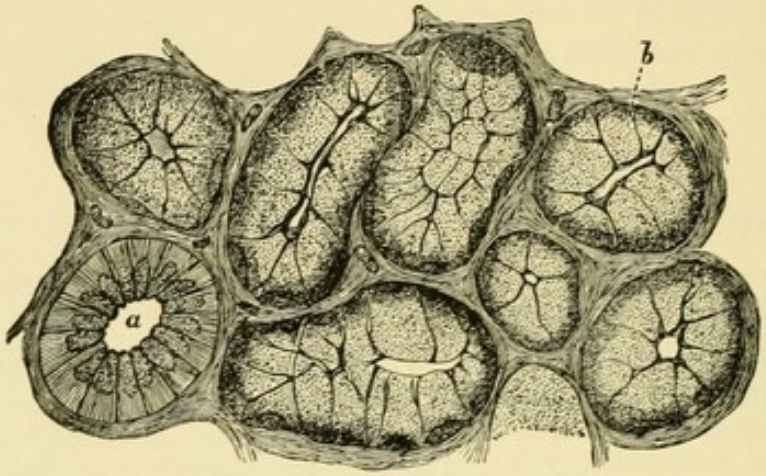


FIG. 394.—Section of submaxillary gland of dog. Showing gland-cells, *b*, and a duct, *a*, *b*, in section. (Kölliker.)

gland in serum, they are seen to be occupied by large granules composed of a substance known as *mucigen* or *mucinogen*. When the gland is active, mucigen is transformed into mucin and discharged as a clear droplet of that substance into the lumen of the alveolus. Outside these are smaller, highly granular cells containing no mucigen; these marginal cells stain darkly, and generally form crescentic groups (*crescents* or *demilunes* of Gianuzzi) next to the basement membrane. They do not secrete mucin, but are albuminous cells. After secretion their granules are lessened. The demilunes are therefore easily seen in the gland before secretion owing to the contrast they exhibit to the cells loaded with mucin.

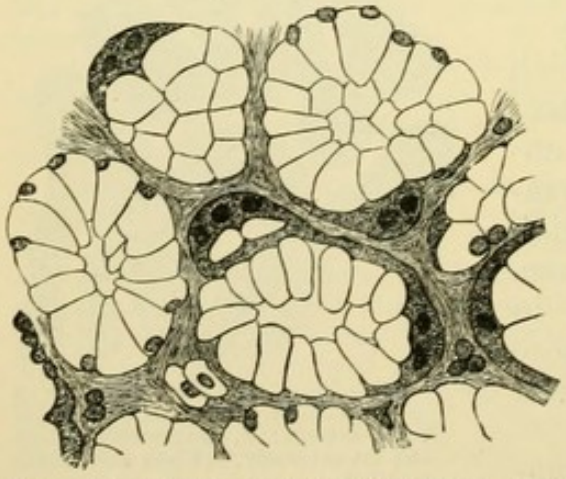


FIG. 395.—Section through a mucous gland hardened in alcohol. The alveoli are lined with transparent mucous cells, and outside these are the demilunes. (Heidenhain.)

In those alveoli which do not secrete mucin, but a watery non-viscid saliva (parotid, and some of the alveoli of the human submaxillary), the cells are filled with small granules of albuminous nature. Such alveoli are called *serous* or *albuminous*, to distinguish them from the *mucous* alveoli we have just described.

These yield to the secretion its ferment, *ptyalin*. The granular

substance within the cell is the mother substance of the ferment (*zymogen*), not the ferment itself. It is converted into the ferment in the act of secretion. We shall study the question of zymogens more fully in connection with the gastric glands and the pancreas, where they have been separated from the ferments by chemical methods. In the case of saliva we may term the zymogen, *ptyalinogen* provisionally, but it has never been satisfactorily separated chemically from ptyalin.

After secretion, due to the administration of food or of such a drug as pilocarpine, the cells shrink, they stain more readily, their

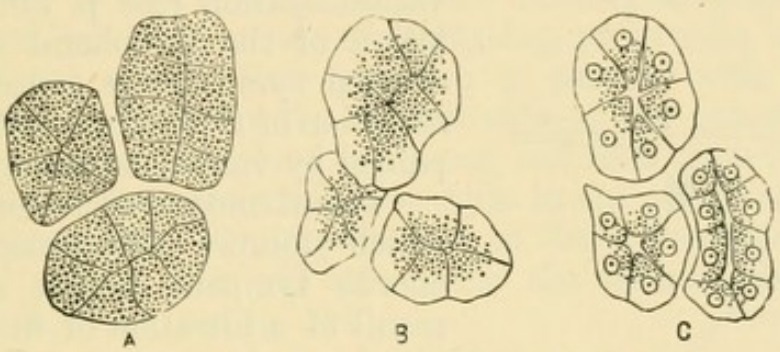


FIG. 396.—Alveoli of parotid gland. A, before secretion; B, in the first stage of secretion; C, after prolonged secretion. (Langley.)

nuclei become more conspicuous, and the outer part of each cell becomes clear and free from granules (fig. 396).

The Secretory Nerves of Salivary Glands.

The Submaxillary and Sublingual Glands. — These glands have been mainly studied in the dog; they receive two sets of nerve-fibres; namely, from the chordi tympani and the sympathetic.

The *chorda tympani* is given off from the seventh cranial nerve in the region of the tympanum. After quitting the temporal bone it passes downwards and forwards, and joins the lingual nerve, with which it is bound up for a short distance. On leaving the lingual nerve it traverses the *submaxillary ganglion;* it then runs parallel to the duct of the gland, gives off a branch to the sublingual gland, and others to the tongue. The main nerve enters the hilus of the submaxillary gland, where it traverses a scattered collection of ganglion cells concealed within the substance of the gland, and which may be called after its discoverer, *Langley's ganglion.*

The *sympathetic* branches to these two glands are derived from the plexus around the facial artery, and accompany the arteries which supply the glands.

Section of the nerves produces no immediate result; but after a few days a scanty but continuous secretion of thin watery saliva

takes place; this is called *paralytic secretion*, and is produced either by the activity of the local nervous mechanism, which is then uncontrolled by impulses from the central nervous system; or else it is a degenerative effect analogous to the fibrillar contractions which occur in degenerating muscles after severance of their nerves. If the operation is performed on one side, the glands of the opposite side also show a similar condition, and the thin saliva secreted there is called the *antilytic* secretion.

Stimulation of the peripheral end of the divided chorda tympani produces an abundant secretion of saliva, which is accompanied by vaso-dilatation (see p. 306). Stimulation of the peripheral end of the divided sympathetic causes a scanty secretion of thick viscid saliva, accompanied by vaso-constriction.

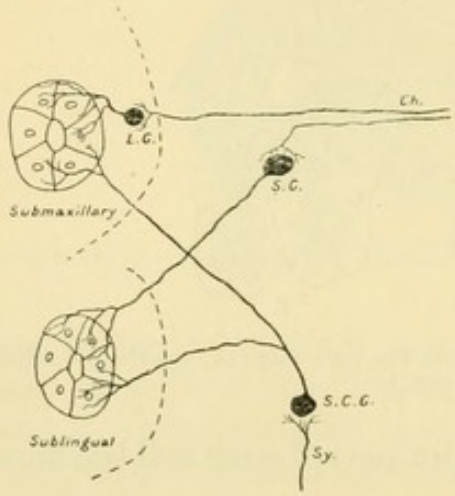


FIG. 397.—Diagram of secretory nerves of submaxillary and sublingual glands. Two fibres of the chorda tympani (Ch.) are shown, one of which supplies the sublingual gland, of which an acinus is shown; the cell station for this is in S. G., the so-called submaxillary ganglion. The other fibre supplies an acinus of the submaxillary gland; its cell station is in Langley's ganglion (L. G.), within the substance of the gland. Sy is a fibre of the sympathetic, which has its cell station in the superior cervical ganglion, S. C. G. (after Dixon).

The abundant secretion of saliva, which follows stimulation of the chorda tympani, is not merely the result of a filtration of fluid from the blood-vessels, in consequence of the largely increased circulation through them. This is proved by the fact that, when the main duct is obstructed, the pressure within it may considerably exceed the blood-pressure in the arteries,* and also that when into the veins of the animal experimented upon, some *atropine* has been previously injected, stimulation of the peripheral end of the divided chorda produces all the vascular effects as before, without any secretion of saliva accompanying them. Again, if an animal's head is cut off, and the chorda be rapidly exposed and stimulated with an interrupted current, a secretion of saliva ensues for a short time, although the blood-flow is necessarily absent. These experiments serve to prove that the chorda contains two sets of nerve-fibres, one set (*vaso-dilator*) which, when stimulated, cause the vessels to dilate; while another set, which are paralysed by atropine, directly stimulate the cells themselves to activity, whereby they

* The student should not suppose that the saliva is normally secreted at such high pressure. If it were so the saliva would spurt from the salivary duct with greater force than the blood would spurt from the arteries when they are cut. The high pressure alluded to in the text only occurs when the duct is obstructed, and indicates what enormous force the secreting cells can exercise.

secrete and discharge the constituents of the saliva which they produce. On the other hand, the sympathetic fibres are also of two kinds, vaso-constrictor and secretory, the latter being paralysed by atropine. The chorda tympani nerve is, however, the principal nerve through which efferent impulses proceed from the central nervous system to excite the secretion of these glands.

The function of the ganglia has been made out by Langley by the nicotine method (see p. 302). At one time the submaxillary ganglion was supposed to be the seat of reflex action for the secretion. This, however, is not the case. The ganglia are cell-stations on the course of the fibres to the submaxillary and sublingual glands. Nicotine applied locally has the power of paralysing nerve-cells, but not nerve-fibres. If the submaxillary ganglion is painted with nicotine, and the nerve stimulated on the central side of the ganglion, secretion from the submaxillary gland continues, but that from the sublingual gland ceases. The paralysed nerve-cells in the ganglion act as blocks to the propagation of the impulse, not to the submaxillary, but to the sublingual gland. The cell station for the submaxillary fibres is in Langley's ganglion (see fig. 397).

The differences between the two secretions is not only one of amount, for the "chorda secretion" is continuous as long as the nerve is stimulated; it is like the flow of fluid from a tap. The "sympathetic secretion," on the other hand, stops after about fifteen seconds, and may be compared to what happens when one squeezes a sponge. These facts are in accordance with observations on the loss of water sustained by the blood when the nerves are stimulated. In an actual experiment, 19·8 c.c. of blood left the gland in a minute during chorda stimulation. When tested, the blood was found to be more concentrated than the blood which entered the gland. The concentration was determined by estimating the relative amount of hæmoglobin in the arterial and venous bloods; the ratio was 1000 : 1075. It follows that for each 10 c.c. of venous blood which left the gland, 10·75 c.c. of arterial blood entered it; or for 19·8 c.c. emerging, $19{\cdot}8 \times \frac{10{\cdot}75}{10} = 21{\cdot}5$ c.c. entered. Hence 21·5 *minus* 19·8 = 1·5 c.c. of fluid left the blood to become saliva, and this was the actual amount secreted. In similar experiments on sympathetic saliva, there was no evidence of any loss of water from the blood. Sympathetic saliva comes either from the substance of the cells, or from the ducts, and without going into the evidence at length, the former is, at anyrate in part, the correct explanation. It would appear, therefore, that the fundamental difference between the two nerves is that the chorda confers upon the cells the power of recouping themselves from the blood, whilst this is denied to the sympathetic.

This is the salient point, but it is certain that the rate of blood-flow can modify the rate of salivary secretion; thus squeezing the artery during chorda stimulation lessens both flow of blood and flow of saliva, though the latter still remains continuous; and in the cat it is possible, on prolonged stimulation of the sympathetic, for the initial constriction of the arteries to pass off, and yet there is no continuous secretion.

Salivary secretion cannot be due to osmosis, for the saliva is poorer in salts than the blood, and therefore the stream of water, if osmosis existed, would be back to the blood from the saliva. The cells of the salivary glands are really doing work, or can be made to do so. There is positive evidence of increase of work by the increase of metabolism which occurs, and on p. 387, under the subject tissue respiration, figures illustrating this are given; there is no such evidence of increased gaseous metabolism when the sympathetic is stimulated. (Barcroft.)

Parotid Gland.—This gland also receives two sets of nerve-fibres analogous to those we have studied in connection with the submaxillary gland. The principal secretory nerve-fibres are glosso-pharyngeal in origin; the sympathetic is mainly vaso-constrictor, but in some animals does contain a few secretory fibres also.

Reflex Secretion.—Under ordinary circumstances the secretion of saliva is a reflex action. The principal afferent nerves are those of taste; but the smell or sight of food will also cause "the mouth to water"; and under certain circumstances, as before vomiting, irritation of the stomach has a similar effect. These sensory nerves stimulate a centre in the medulla from which efferent secretory impulses are reflected along the secretory nerves (chorda tympani, etc.) to the glands.

Pawlow has made some interesting observations on the salivary glands. He made an external fistula of the submaxillary duct in the dog, and found that the sight of food, the smell of food, or the administration of any kind of food, caused secretion; acid or even sand introduced into the mouth produced a similar effect. By means of similar experiments on the parotid secretion, very different results were obtained. If the dog was shown meat, or the meat was given to it to eat, there was practically no secretion. If, however, the meat was given as a dry powder, a copious secretion followed; dry bread produced a similar effect; in fact, the parotid secretion flows freely if dry food is simply shown to the animal; of course, in all such experiments the dog must be hungry.

Such observations emphasize the psychical element involved in secretion, and point out also the adaptation of the secretory process to the needs of the animal; thus the submaxillary saliva, which is mainly a lubricant in virtue of its mucin, flows whatever the food may be, whereas moist food requiring no watery saliva from the parotid excites the flow of none.

Extirpation of the Salivary Glands.—These may be removed without any harmful effects in the lower animals.

The Saliva.

The **saliva** is the first digestive juice to come in contact with the food. The secretions from the different salivary glands are mixed in the mouth; the secretion of the minute mucous glands of the mouth and a certain number of epithelial scales and the so-called "salivary corpuscles" derived from the tonsils are added to it. The liquid is transparent, slightly opalescent, of slimy consistency, and may contain lumps of nearly pure mucin. On standing it becomes cloudy owing to the precipitation of calcium carbonate, the carbonic acid, which held it in solution as bicarbonate, escaping.

Of the three forms of saliva which contribute to the mixture found in the mouth the sublingual is richest in solids (2·75 per cent.). The submaxillary saliva comes next (2·1 to 2·5 per cent.). The parotid saliva is poorest in total solids (0·3 to 0·5 per cent.), and contains no mucin. Mixed saliva contains in man an average of about 0·5 per cent. of solids: it is alkaline in reaction, due to the salts in it; and has a specific gravity of 1002 to 1006.

The solid constituents dissolved in saliva may be classified thus:

Organic
- *a.* Mucin: this may be precipitated by acetic acid.
- *b.* Ptyalin: an amylolytic ferment.
- *c.* Protein: of the nature of a globulin.
- *d.* Potassium sulphocyanide.

Inorganic
- *e.* Sodium chloride: the most abundant salt.
- *f.* Other salts: sodium carbonate, calcium phosphate and carbonate; magnesium phosphate; potassium chloride.

The action of saliva is twofold, physical and chemical.

The physical use of saliva consists in moistening the mucous membrane of the mouth, assisting the solution of soluble substances in the food, and in virtue of its mucin, lubricating the bolus of food to facilitate swallowing.

The chemical action of saliva is due to its active principle, ptyalin. This substance belongs to the class of unorganised ferments, which are called amylolytic (starch splitting) or diastatic (resembling diastase, the similar ferment in germinating barley and other grains).

The starch is first split into dextrin and maltose; the dextrin is subsequently converted into maltose also: this occurs more quickly with erythro-dextrin, which gives a red colour with iodine, than with the other variety of dextrin called achroo-dextrin, which gives no colour with iodine. Brown and Morris give the following equation:—

$$\underset{\text{[Starch.]}}{10(C_6H_{10}O_5)n} + \underset{\text{[Water.]}}{4nH_2O}$$

$$= \underset{\text{[Maltose.]}}{4nC_{12}H_{22}O_{11}} + \underset{\text{[Achroo-dextrin.]}}{(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n} + \underset{\text{[Erythro-dextrin.]}}{(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n}.$$

Ptyalin acts in a similar way, but more slowly on glycogen: it has no action on cellulose; hence it is inoperative on uncooked starch grains, for in them the cellulose layers are intact.

Ptyalin acts best at about the temperature of the body (35-40° C.). It acts best in a neutral medium; a small amount of alkali makes but little difference; a very small amount of acid stops its activity. The conversion of starch into sugar by swallowed saliva in the stomach continues for a certain time. It then ceases owing to the hydrochloric acid secreted by the glands of the stomach. The acid which is first poured out neutralises the saliva, and combines with the proteins of the food, but when free acid appears ptyalin is destroyed, and so it cannot resume work when the acid is neutralised

in the duodenum. Another amylolytic ferment contained in pancreatic juice (to be considered later) continues the digestion of starch in the intestine.

Cannon has recently shown that salivary digestion continues in the stomach for longer than one supposed. The food lying in the fundus of the stomach undergoes amylolysis for at least two hours, because the absence of peristalsis in this region until quite late stages in digestion prevents admixture with gastric juice, especially in the interior of the swallowed masses.

CHAPTER XXXI

THE GASTRIC JUICE

THE juice secreted by the glands in the mucous membrane of the stomach varies in composition in the different regions, but the mixed gastric juice, as it may be termed, is a solution of a proteolytic ferment called *pepsin* in a saline solution, which also contains a little free hydrochloric acid.

The gastric juice can be obtained during the life of an animal by means of a gastric fistula.* Gastric fistulæ have also been made in human beings, either by accidental injury or by surgical operations. The most celebrated case is that of Alexis St Martin, a young Canadian, who received a musket wound in the abdomen in 1822. Observations made on him by Dr Beaumont formed the starting-point for our correct knowledge of the physiology of the stomach and its secretion.

Artificial gastric juice is made by mixing weak hydrochloric acid (0·2 per cent.) with the glycerin extract of the stomach of a recently-killed animal. This acts like the normal juice.

Three kinds of glands are distinguished in the stomach, which differ from each other in their position, in the character of their epithelium, and in their secretion. Their structure will be found described, on pp. 461 462. We may, however, repeat that the *fundus* or *oxyntic glands* are those situated in the fundus and nearly the whole of the cardiac part of the stomach: their ducts are short, their tubules long in proportion. The latter are filled with polyhedral cells, only a small lumen being left; they are more coarsely granular than the corresponding cells in the pyloric glands. They are called *principal* or *central* cells. Between them and the basement membrane of the tubule are other cells which stain readily with aniline dyes. They are called *parietal* or *oxyntic* cells. The *pyloric glands*, in the

* A gastric fistula is made by cutting through the abdominal wall so as to expose the stomach. The stomach is then attached to the edges of the abdominal wound, and a small orifice is finally made through the wall of the stomach. When the wound heals there is then a free communication between the stomach and the exterior.

pyloric part of the stomach, have long ducts and short tubules lined with cubical granular cells. There are no parietal cells.

The **central** cells of the fundus glands and the cells of the pyloric glands are loaded with granules. During secretion they discharge their granules, those that remain being chiefly situated near the lumen, leaving in each cell a clear outer zone. These are the cells that secrete the pepsin. Like secreting cells generally, they select certain materials from the lymph that bathes them; these materials are worked up by the protoplasmic activity of the cells into the secretion, which is then discharged into the lumen of the gland. The most important substance in a digestive secretion is the ferment. In the case of the gastric juice this is pepsin. We can trace an intermediate step in this process by the presence of the granules. The granules are not, however, composed of pepsin, but of a mother-substance which is readily converted into pepsin. We shall find a similar ferment precursor in the cells of the pancreas, and the term *zymogen* is applied to these ferment precursors. The zymogen in the gastric cells is called *pepsinogen*. The rennet-ferment that causes the curdling of milk is distinct from pepsin, but is formed by the same cells. Pawlow's view that the curdling is only a phase of pepsin action has not met with general acceptance.

The **parietal cells** undergo merely a change of size during secretion, being at first somewhat enlarged, and after secretion they are somewhat shrunken. They are also called *oxyntic* (acid-forming) cells, because they secrete the hydrochloric acid of the juice. Heidenhain succeeded in making in one dog a *cul-de-sac* of the fundus, in another of the pyloric region of the stomach; the former secreted a juice containing both acid and pepsin; the latter, parietal cells being absent, secreted a viscid alkaline juice containing pepsin. The formation of a free acid from the alkaline blood and lymph is an important problem. There is no doubt that it is formed from the chlorides of the blood and lymph, and of the many theories advanced as to its actual mode of formation, none is wholly satisfactory.

Some theories are chemical and explain the formation of the acid by an interaction of the chlorides and phosphates. Others call to their assistance the law of "mass action," and we certainly know that by the action of large quantities of carbonic acid on salts of mineral acids, the latter may be liberated in small quantities. We know further that small quantities of acid ions may be continually formed in the organism by ionisation. But in every case we can only make use of these explanations if we assume that the small quantities of acid are carried away as soon as they are formed, and thus give room for the formation of fresh acid. Even then we are unable to explain the whole process. A specific action of the cells is no doubt exerted, for these reactions can hardly be considered to

occur in the blood generally, but rather in the oxyntic cells, which possess the necessary selective powers in reference to the saline constituents of the blood, and the hydrochloric acid, as soon as it is formed, passes into the secretion of the gland in consequence of its high power of diffusion.

Composition of Gastric Juice.

The following table gives the percentage composition of the gastric juice of man and the dog:—

Constituents.	Human.	Dog.
Water	99·44	97·30
Organic substances (chiefly pepsin) .	0·32	1·71
HCl	0·20	0·40 to 0·60
$CaCl_2$	0·006	0·06
NaCl	0·14	0·25
KCl	0·05	0·11
NH_4Cl.	...	0·05
$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$	0·01	0·17
$Mg_3(PO_4)_2$		0·02
$FePO_4$.		0·008

One sees from this how much richer in all constituents the gastric juice of the dog is than that of man. Carnivorous animals have always a more powerful gastric juice than other animals; they have more work for it to do; but the great contrast seen in the table is, no doubt, partly due to the fact that the persons from whom it has been possible to collect gastric juice have been invalids. In the foregoing table one also sees the great preponderance of chlorides over other salts; apportioning the total chlorine to the various metals present, that which remains over must be combined with hydrogen to form the free hydrochloric acid of the juice.

In recent years, the composition and action of the gastric juice has been studied by Pawlow. By an ingenious surgical operation, he succeeded in separating from the stomach of dogs a diverticulum which pours its secretion through an opening in the abdominal wall; the nerves of this small stomach are intact, and the amount of juice that can be collected from it when it is active amounts to several hundred cubic centimetres in a few hours. Pawlow thus obtained a pure gastric juice, which enabled him to study its action and composition. It is clear, colourless, has a specific gravity of 1003—1006, and is feebly dextro-rotatory. It contains 0·4 to 0·6 per cent. of hydrochloric acid. It is strongly proteolytic, and inverts cane sugar. When cooled to 0° C. it deposits a precipitate of pepsin, and this carries down with it the acid in loose combination, especially in the

layers first deposited. Its percentage composition is very similar to that of a protein, only it contains chlorine in addition to the usual elements. The numbers agree closely with those obtained by Kühne, who used ammonium sulphate as the precipitant.

Pepsin stands apart from nearly all other ferments by requiring an acid medium in order that it may act. A compound of the two substances, called *pepsin-hydrochloric acid*, is the really active agent. Other acids may take the place of hydrochloric acid, but none act so well. Lactic acid is often found in gastric juice: this is derived by fermentative processes from the food.

The digestive powers of the acids are proportional to their dissociation and the number of H ions liberated. The anions, however, modify this by having different powers of retarding the action. The greater suitability of hydrochloric over lactic acid, for instance, in gastric digestion is due to the fact that the former acid more readily undergoes dissociation.

Hydrochloric acid is absent in some diseases of the stomach, notably in cancer; the best colour tests for it are the following:—

(*a*) Gunsberg's reagent consists of 2 parts of phloroglucinol, 1 part of vanillin, and 30 parts of rectified spirit. A drop of filtered gastric juice is evaporated with an equal quantity of the reagent. Red crystals form, or if much peptone is present, there will be a red paste. The reaction takes place with one part of hydrochloric acid in 10,000. The organic acids do not give the reaction.

(*b*) Tropæolin test. Drops of a saturated solution of tropæolin -00 in 94 per cent. methylated spirit are allowed to dry on a porcelain slab at 40° C. A drop of the fluid to be tested is placed on the tropæolin drop, still at 40° C.; and if hydrochloric acid is present, a violet spot is left when the fluid has evaporated. A drop of 0·006 per cent. hydrochloric acid leaves a distinct mark.

(*c*) Töpfer's test. A drop of dimethyl-amido-azo-benzol is spread in a thin film on a white plate. A drop of dilute hydrochloric acid (up to 1 in 10,000) strikes with this in the cold a bright red colour.

Lactic acid is soluble in ether, and is generally detected by making an ethereal extract of the stomach contents, and evaporating the ether. If lactic acid is present in the residue it may be identified by the following way:—

A solution of dilute ferric chloride and carbolic acid is made as follows:—

10 c.c. of a 4-per-cent. solution of carbolic acid.

20 c.c. of distilled water.

1 drop of the liquor ferri perchloridi of the British Pharmacopœia.

On mixing a solution containing a mere trace (up to 1 part in 10,000) of lactic acid with this violet solution, it is instantly turned yellow. Larger percentages of other acids (for instance, more than 0·2 per cent. of hydrochloric acid) are necessary to decolorise the test solution, but they do not turn the solution yellow. Another colour test, that of Hopkins, is performed as follows:—5 c.c. of sulphuric acid and 3 drops of a saturated solution of copper sulphate are added to a few drops of lactic acid dissolved in alcohol. The mixture is placed in boiling water for five minutes, and then cooled; 2 drops of 0·2 per cent. alcoholic solution of thiophene are then added; on replacing the tube in boiling water, a cherry-red colour develops.

The Innervation of the Gastric Glands.

As long ago as 1852 Bidder and Schmidt showed in a dog with a gastric fistula that the sight of food caused a secretion of gastric juice; and in 1878 Richet observed that in a man with complete occlusion of the gullet the act of mastication caused a copious flow of gastric juice. There could therefore have been no doubt that the

glands are under the control of the nervous system, but the early attempts to discover the secretory nerves of the stomach were unsuccessful. The Russian physiologist Pawlow solved the problem by the employment of new methods. He experimented on dogs. In the first place he separated off the diverticulum, which we have described on p. 495, and by careful experiments he showed that the secretion of this small stomach is an exact sample, both as regards composition and rate of formation, of that which occurs in the main stomach, which is still left in continuity with the œsophagus above and the duodenum below.

Another procedure adopted was to divide the œsophagus, and to attach the two cut ends to the opening in the neck. The animal was fed by the lower segment, but any food taken into the mouth, or any saliva secreted there, never reached the stomach, but fell out through the opening of the upper segment. These animals were kept alive for months, and soon accommodated themselves to their new conditions of life. The animals could thus be subjected to, (1) real feeding, (2) sham feeding, by allowing them to eat food which subsequently tumbled out through the neck opening, and (3) psychical feeding, in which the animal was shown the food but was not allowed to eat it. The psychical element is important.

Mechanical excitation of the stomach wall produces no secretion. If water is introduced there is a slight flow, and even if meat is introduced into the main stomach without the knowledge of the dog, the juice formed is scanty and of feeble digestive power.

There is, moreover, no connection between the acts of mastication and swallowing with that of gastric secretion. Sham feeding with stones, butter, salt, pepper, mustard, extract of meat, and acid, though it excited a flow of saliva, produced no effect on the stomach. If, however, meat was used for the sham feeding, an abundant and active secretion occurred in the stomach (that of the small stomach was actually examined) after a latency of about five minutes. The secretion is thus adapted to the kind of food the dog has to digest; the larger the proportion of protein in the diet, the more abundant is the juice, and the richer both in pepsin and acid.

Indeed, if the animal is hungry and shown the meat and not allowed to swallow it, the effect is almost as great. The following striking experiment also shows the importance of the psychical element. Two dogs were taken, and a weighed amount of protein introduced into the main stomach of each without their knowledge; one was then sham fed on meat, and one and a half hours later the amount of protein digested by this dog was five times greater than that which was digested by the other.

In the meat, however, it is not the protein which acts most strongly as the stimulus; egg-white, for instance, is not a stronger

stimulus than water, but extract of meat is a powerful stimulus; what the exact extractives are that act in this way is not yet known, and Herzen has since shown that dextrin acts even more powerfully. Herzen distinguishes between *succagogues* (juice-drivers) like Liebig's extract, and *peptogens* like dextrin, which produce not only an increased flow, but a juice rich in pepsin-hydrochloric acid. The products of proteolysis are also peptogenic, so that when once digestion has started, a stimulus for more secretion is provided.

If the vagi are cut (below the origin of the recurrent laryngeal to avoid paralysis of the larynx), and then sham feeding is performed with meat, no secretion is obtained; the vagi therefore contain the secretory fibres. The experiment of stimulating the peripheral end of the cut nerve confirmed this hypothesis. The nerve was cut in the neck four or five days before it was stimulated; in this time degeneration of the cardio-inhibitory fibres took place, so that stoppage of the heart did not occur when the nerve was stimulated; under these circumstances a secretion was obtained with a long latency; the latency is explained by the presence of secreto-inhibitory fibres. Atropine abolishes the action of the vagus. In other animals the spinal cord was cut at the level of the first cervical nerve, and the animal kept alive by artificial respiration; the vagus nerve was then cut, and its peripheral end stimulated; an abundant secretion usually followed. Division of the cord renders an anæsthetic unnecessary, and also prevents the afferent impulses set up by the operation passing to the vagal centres, and thus exciting the inhibitory impulses which pass down the vagus, and tend to prevent secretion under ordinary circumstances.

Pawlow thinks that the sympathetic also contains some secretory fibres, but this has not yet been proved.

Action of Gastric Juice.

The principal action of the gastric juice consists in converting the proteins of the food into the diffusible peptones. In the case of milk this is preceded by the curdling due to rennet (see p. 473). The prolonged action of the juice leads to the formation from the peptones of the final cleavage products, leucine, tyrosine, and other amino-acids. But the usual duration of gastric digestion is so short that the amount of these that are formed is insignificant.

There is a still further action—that is, the gastric juice is anti-septic; putrefactive processes do not normally occur in the stomach, and the organisms that produce such processes, many of which are swallowed with the food, are in great measure destroyed, and thus the body is protected from them.

The formation of peptones is a process of hydrolysis; peptones

may be formed by other hydrolysing agencies such as superheated steam or heating with dilute mineral acids. There are certain intermediate steps in this process: the intermediate substances are called propeptones or proteoses. The word "proteose" includes the albumoses (from albumin), globuloses (from globulin), vitelloses (from vitellin), etc. Similar substances are also formed from gelatin (gelatinoses) and elastin (elastoses).

Another intermediate step in gastric digestion is acid albumin or syntonin. The products of digestion of albumin may be classified, according to the order in which they are formed, as follows:—

1. Acid albumin.
2. Propeptone { (*a*) Proto-albumose, (*b*) Hetero-albumose } The primary albumoses, *i.e.*, those which are formed first. (*c*) Deutero-albumose
3. Peptone.

Proteoses.—They are not coagulated by heat; they are precipitated but not coagulated by alcohol: like peptone they give the biuret reaction. They are precipitated by nitric acid, *the precipitate being soluble on heating, and reappearing when the liquid cools.* This last is a distinctive property of proteoses. They are slightly diffusible.

The primary proteoses are precipitated by saturation with magnesium sulphate or sodium chloride. Deutero-proteose is not; it is, however, precipitated by saturation with ammonium sulphate. Proto- and deutero-albumose are soluble in water; hetero-albumose is not; it requires salt to hold it in solution.

Peptones.—They are soluble in water, are not coagulated by heat, and are not precipitated by nitric acid, copper sulphate, ammonium sulphate, and a number of other precipitants of proteins. They are precipitated but not coagulated by alcohol. They are also precipitated by tannin, picric acid, potassio-mercuric iodide, phospho-molybdic acid, and phospho-tungstic acid.

They give the biuret reaction (rose-red solution with a trace of copper sulphate and caustic potash or soda).

Peptone is readily diffusible through animal membranes.

The annexed table, p. 500, will give us at a glance the chief characters of peptones and proteoses in contrast with those of the native proteins, albumins, and globulins.

We see that the main action of the gastric juice is upon the proteins of the food, converting them into more soluble and diffusible products. The fats are not chemically altered in the stomach,* their protein envelopes are, however, dissolved, and the solid fats are melted.

* According to some recent observations, a small amount of fat-splitting does occur in the stomach.

Starch is unaffected; but cane sugar is inverted. The inversion of cane sugar is largely due to the hydrochloric acid of the juice, and is frequently assisted by inverting ferments contained in the vegetable food swallowed.

Variety of proteid.	Action of heat.	Action of alcohol.	Action of nitric acid.	Action of ammonium sulphate.	Action of copper sulphate and caustic potash.	Diffusibility.
Albumin	Coagulated	Precipitated, then coagulated	Precipitated in the cold; not readily soluble on heating	Precipitated by complete saturation	Violet colour	Nil
Globulin	Ditto.	Ditto.	Ditto.	Precipitated by half saturation; also precipitated by $MgSO_4$.	Ditto.	Ditto.
Proteoses	Not coagulated	Precipitated, but not coagulated	Precipitated in the cold; readily soluble on heating; the precipitate reappears on cooling*	Precipitated by saturation	Rose-red colour (biuret reaction)	Slight
Peptones	Not coagulated	Precipitated, but not coagulated	Not precipitated	Not precipitated	Rose-red colour (biuret reaction)	Great

* In the case of deutero-albumose this reaction only occurs in the presence of excess of salt.

The question has been often raised why the stomach does not digest itself during life. The mere fact that the tissues are alkaline and pepsin requires an acid medium in which to act is not an explanation, but only opens up a fresh difficulty as to why the pancreatic juice which is alkaline does not digest the intestinal wall. To say that it is the vital properties of the tissues that enable them to resist digestion only shelves the difficulty and gives no real explanation of the mechanism of defence. Recent studies on the important question of immunity (see p. 451) have furnished us with the key to the problem; just as poisons introduced from without stimulate the cells to produce antitoxins, so harmful substances produced within the body are provided with anti-substances capable of neutralising their effects; for this reason the blood does not normally clot within the blood-vessels, and Weinland has shown that the gastric epithelium forms an antipepsin, the intestinal epithelium an antitrypsin, and so on. The bodies of parasitic worms that live in the intestine are particularly rich in these anti-bodies.

Mett's Tubes.

A method which is now generally employed for estimating the proteolytic activity of a digestive juice is one originally introduced by Mett. Pieces of capillary glass tubing of known length are filled with white of egg. This is set into a solid by heating to 95° C. They are then placed in the digestive fluid at 36° C., and the coagulated egg-white is digested. After a given time the tubes are removed; and if the digestive process has not gone too far, only a part of the little column of coagulated proteid will have disappeared; the length of the remaining

column is easily measured, and the length that has been digested is a measure of the digestive strength of the fluid.

Hamburger has used the same method in investigating the digestive action of juices on gelatin. The tubes are filled with warm gelatin solution, and this jellies on cooling. They are placed as before in the digestive mixture, and the length of the column that disappears can be easily measured. These experiments must, however, be performed at room temperature, for the usual temperature (36°—40° C.) at which artificial digestion is usually carried out would melt the gelatin. He has also used the same method for estimating amylolytic activity, by filling the tubes with thick starch paste.

Schütz' Law.

E. Schütz stated in 1885 that the amount of peptic activity is proportional to the square root of the amount of pepsin. This was confirmed by Borissow, who used Mett's capillary tube method. An example (taken from the work of E. Schütz, who estimated the amount of the digestive products in solution by means of nitrogen determinations) will suffice.

Amount of Solution of Pepsin in Cubic Centimetres.	Digested Nitrogen in Grammes.	
	Found.	Calculated.
1	0·0230	0·0223
4	0·0427	0·0446
9	0·0686	0·0669
16	0·0889	0·0892

This work was an early attempt to deal with enzyme action on exact mathematical lines, a branch of the subject now being extensively studied. Some have stated that the law holds more or less exactly for other enzymes; in other cases the relationship is different. The usual method now adopted is to estimate the velocity of reaction, that is, the time occupied by the ferment in accomplishing a given end on a fixed amount of material. If, for instance, one takes a series of tubes, each containing the same amount of milk, and adds to each different known amounts of rennet, the time occupied in producing curdling is accurately noted. In this case, and in similar experiments with blood or blood-plasma and fibrin ferment, the amount of ferment multiplied by the coagulation time is constant; thus, if two drops of rennet produce coagulation in 30 seconds, four drops will curdle the same amount of milk in 15 seconds. The same simple relationship also probably holds for the action of invertin, erepsin, and trypsin.

CHAPTER XXXII

DIGESTION IN THE INTESTINES

HERE we have to consider the action of pancreatic juice, of bile, and of the succus entericus.

The Pancreas.

This is a tubulo-racemose gland closely resembling the salivary glands in structure. The principal differences are that the alveoli or acini are more tubular in character; the connective tissue between them is looser, and in it are small groups of epithelium-like cells (islets of Langerhans) which are supplied by a close network of capillaries (fig. 399).

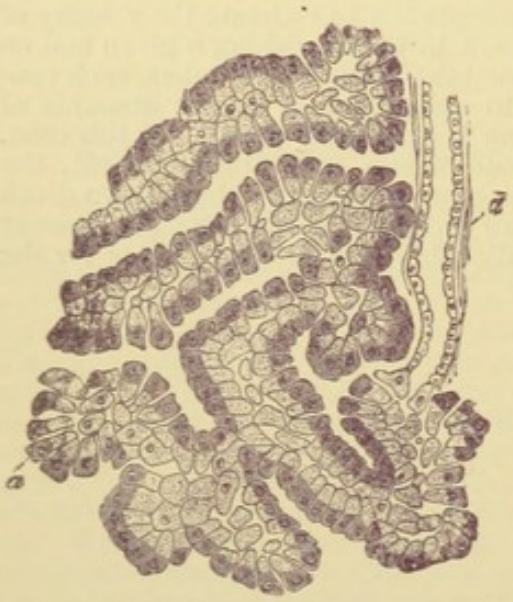


FIG. 398.—Section of the pancreas of a dog during digestion. *a*, Alveoli lined with cells, the clear outer zone of which is well stained with hæmatoxylin; *d*, duct lined with short cubical cells. × 350. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

The secreting cells of the pancreas are polyhedral. When examined in the fresh condition, or in preparations preserved by osmic acid, their protoplasm is seen to be filled in the inner two-thirds with small granules; but the outer third is left clear, and stains readily with protoplasmic dyes (fig. 398).

During secretion the granules are discharged; the clear zone consequently becomes wider, and the granular zone narrower.

These granules indicate the presence of a zymogen which is called *trypsinogen;* that is, the precursor of trypsin, the most important ferment of the pancreatic juice.

In the centre of the acini, spindle-shaped cells (*centro-acinar* cells) are often seen; their function and origin are unknown.

Composition and Action of Pancreatic Juice.

The pancreatic juice may be obtained by a fistula in animals, a cannula being inserted into the main pancreatic duct; but as in the case of gastric juice, experiments on the pancreatic secretion are usually performed with an artificial juice made by mixing a weak alkaline solution (1 per cent. sodium carbonate) with a glycerin extract of pancreas. The pancreas should be treated with dilute acid for a few

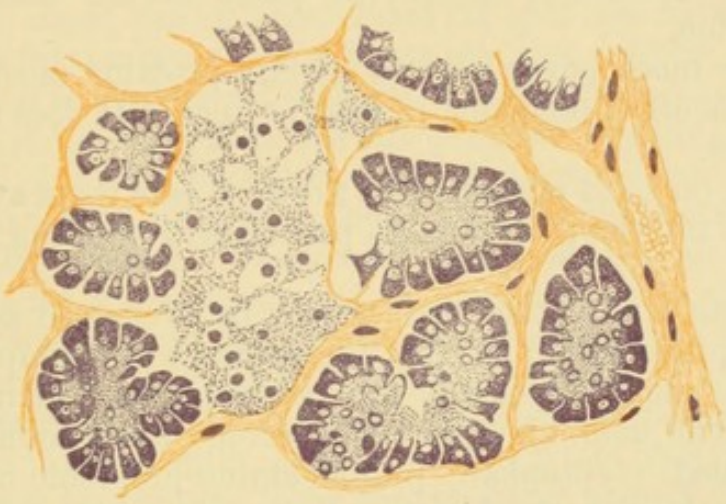


FIG. 399.—Section of the pancreas of armadillo, showing alveoli and an islet of Langerhans in the connective tissue. (V. D. Harris.)

hours before the glycerin is added. This ensures a conversion of the trypsinogen into trypsin.

Quantitative analysis of human pancreatic juice gives the following results:—

Water	97·6 per cent.
Organic solids	1·8 ,,
Inorganic salts	0·6 ,,

In the dog the amount of solids is much greater.

The organic substances in pancreatic juice are—

(*a*) Ferments. These are the most important both quantitatively and functionally. They are four in number:—

i. Trypsin, a proteolytic ferment.
ii. Amylopsin or pancreatic diastase, an amylolytic ferment.
iii. Steapsin or lipase, a fat-splitting or lipolytic ferment.
iv. A milk-curdling ferment.

(*b*) A small amount of protein matter, coagulable by heat.

(*c*) Traces of leucine, tyrosine, xanthine, and soaps.

The inorganic substances in pancreatic juice are—

Sodium chloride, which is the most abundant, and smaller quantities of potassium chloride, and phosphates of sodium, calcium, and

magnesium. The alkalinity of the juice is due to phosphates and carbonates, especially of sodium.

1. **Action of Trypsin.**—Trypsin acts like pepsin, but with certain differences, which are as follows:—

(*a*) It acts in an alkaline, pepsin in an acid medium.

(*b*) It acts more rapidly than pepsin; deutero-proteoses can be detected as intermediate products in the formation of peptone; the primary proteoses have not been detected.

(*c*) Alkali-albumin is formed in place of the acid-albumin of gastric digestion.

(*d*) It acts more powerfully on certain proteins (such as elastin) which are difficult of digestion in gastric juice. It does not, however, digest collagen.

(*e*) Acting on solid proteins like fibrin, it eats them away from the surface to the interior; there is no preliminary swelling as in gastric digestion.

(*f*) Trypsin acts further than pepsin, on prolonged action decomposing the peptone which has left the stomach into simpler products, of which the most important are polypeptides, leucine, tyrosine, arginine, aspartic acid, glutamic acid, hexone bases, ammonia, and a substance called tryptophan [indole-amino-propionic acid], which gives a red colour with chlorine or bromine water, and also the Adamkiewicz reaction. (For the constitution and properties of these cleavage products, see pp. 400 to 404.)

The action of proteolytic enzymes is, by a process of hydrolysis, to split the heavy protein molecule into smaller and smaller molecules; first, we get proteoses, then peptones and polypeptides, and, finally, simple products such as leucine and tyrosine. A variable fraction of the protein molecule is broken off with comparative ease, but the whole breakdown is more easily performed by the powerful tryptic enzyme than by pepsin-hydrochloric acid. The latter agent, however, is not entirely inactive in this direction, for although leucine and tyrosine and other amino-acids are not found to any great extent in a peptic digest, unless the action has been very prolonged, yet there is usually a small amount of such substances, and this amount increases the more time is allowed. The essential difference between pepsin and trypsin is one of velocity of action, or in other words, trypsin is the more powerful catalyst (see p. 418).

2. **Action of Amylopsin.**—The conversion of starch into maltose is the most rapid of all the actions of the pancreatic juice. Its power in this direction is much greater than that of saliva, and it will act even on unboiled starch. The absence of this ferment in the pancreatic juice of infants is an indication that milk, and not starch, is their natural diet.

3. **Action on Fats.**—The action of pancreatic juice on fats is a

double one: it forms an *emulsion*, and it decomposes the fats into fatty acids and glycerin by means of its fat-splitting ferment steapsin. The fatty acids unite with the alkaline bases to form soaps (*saponification*). The chemistry of this is described on p. 399. The fat-splitting power of pancreatic juice cannot be studied with a glycerin extract, as steapsin is not soluble in glycerin: either the fresh juice or a watery extract of pancreas must be used.

The formation of an emulsion may be studied in the following way: if olive oil and water are shaken up together, and the mixture is allowed to stand, the finely divided oil globules soon separate, run together, and form a layer which floats on the surface of the water. But if olive oil is shaken up with a solution of soap, the conditions of surface tension are such that the oil globules remain as such in the mixture, and a white milky fluid called an emulsion is the result. The emulsion is still more permanent if a colloid material like gum or albumin is also present. Pancreatic juice possesses all the necessary qualifications for the formation of an emulsion; it is alkaline, and so liberates fatty acids from the fat; these acids form soap with the alkali present; moreover, it is viscous from the presence of protein.

4. **Milk-curdling Ferment.**—The addition of pancreatic extracts or pancreatic juice to milk causes clotting; but this action (which differs in some particulars from the clotting caused by rennet) can hardly ever be called into play, as the milk upon which the juice has to act has been already curdled by the rennin of the stomach.

The so-called Peripheral Reflex Secretion of the Pancreas.

One of the most effective ways of producing a flow of pancreatic juice is to introduce acid into the duodenum. Popielski and Wertheimer and Le Page showed that this flow still occurs when the nerves supplying the duodenum and pancreas have been cut through. Wertheimer also mentions that the flow can be excited by injection of acid into the jejunum, but not when it is injected into the lower part of the ileum. These authors concluded that the secretion is a local reflex, the centres being situated in the scattered ganglia of the pancreas, or, in the case of the jejunum, in the ganglia of the solar plexus.

This subject has been re-investigated by Starling and Bayliss, and the results they have obtained are most noteworthy. They consider that the secretion cannot be reflex, since it occurs after extirpation of the solar plexus, and destruction of all nerves passing to an isolated loop of intestine. Moreover, atropine does not paralyse the secretory action. It must therefore be due to direct excitation of the pancreatic cells, by a substance or substances conveyed to the gland from the bowel by the blood-stream. So many of the connections between

organs are made by nerves (the telegraphic service of the body), that we are apt to forget the other messenger, the blood, whom we may compare to the postman.

The exciting substance is not acid; injection of 0·4 per cent. of hydrochloric acid into the blood-stream has no influence on the pancreas. The substance in question must be produced in the intestinal mucous membrane under the influence of the acid. This conclusion was confirmed by experiment. If the mucous membrane of the jejunum or duodenum is exposed to the action of 0·4 per cent. hydrochloric acid, a body is produced which, when injected into the blood-stream in minimal doses, produces a copious secretion of pancreatic juice and also, but to a less extent, of bile. This substance is termed *secretin*. It is associated with another substance which lowers arterial blood-pressure. The two substances are not identical, since acid extracts of the lower end of the ileum produce a lowering of blood-pressure, but have no excitatory influence on the pancreas.

Secretin is split off from a precursor, *pro-secretin*, which is present in relatively large amounts in the duodenal mucous membrane, and gradually diminishes as we descend the intestine. Pro-secretin can be dissolved out of the mucous membrane by normal saline solution. It has no influence on the pancreatic secretion. Secretin can be split off from it by boiling or by treatment with acid.

What secretin is chemically we do not yet know. It is soluble in alcohol and ether. It is not a protein, but probably is an organic substance of low molecular weight. It is, moreover, the same substance in all animals, and not specific to different kinds of animals.

Pawlow by experiments of a similar nature to those which led him to the discovery of the secretory nerves of the gastric mucous membrane, thought he had also discovered the secretory nerves of the pancreas in the vagus, and to a less extent in the splanchnic nerves. His failure to produce this result in some experiments he explained by the concomitant stimulation of secreto-inhibiting fibres. It is quite possible that nerves of this nature exist; but Pawlow's experiments do not prove their existence, because the passage of acid chyme into the duodenum was not excluded, and so he may only have been dealing with a production of secretin, the chemical stimulus to pancreatic activity.

Starling's work on secretion naturally led him and others to seek for other chemical messengers employed in the regulation of the activities of the body, and it has already been established that secretin is by no means a solitary instance of such. The general name given to these agents is that of *hormone*. The chemical substances secreted by such glands as the thyroid and suprarenal must be included under this term, and the part played by carbonic acid in the regulation of breathing (see p. 363) also comes into the

same category. In our study of gastric digestion, we have seen the powerful peptogenic action of dextrin, a substance prepared during the salivary digestion of starch; Edkins has given the name *gastrin* to the special hormone which is the result of the action of the salivary products on the gastric mucous membrane. Another example of a hormone is furnished by the material formed by the ovum especially during its development *in utero*, and which, passing into the maternal blood-stream, stimulates the mammary gland to action (see p. 476).

Adaptation of the Pancreas.—To a certain degree it cannot be doubted that the pancreas adapts its secretion to the work it has to do. Thus, whereas gastric juice has a maximal flow soon after the ingestion of food, the pancreative flow does not attain its full force until some hours later, that is, when it is wanted. The view that this is due to the hormone named secretin, which is not formed until the gastric contents enter the intestine, fully explains the reason for the delay.

But Pawlow went further than this, and stated that the proportion of the various enzymes of the juice was adapted to the proportions of proteins, carbohydrates, and fats in the food taken. Considerable doubt has been cast on these results, because of the failure to confirm one of the most remarkable instances of such adaptation; this is the power of the pancreas to secrete *lactase* (a ferment capable of hydrolysing lactose into glucoses). Normal pancreatic juice contains no lactase, but certain observers stated that by feeding an animal on milk, the pancreas could be educated to secrete it. Careful experiments by Plimmer have recently shown this is not really so, and so much more stringent experimental conditions will have to be imposed before the other cases of adaptation can be considered proven.

The Succus Entericus.

Succus entericus has been obtained free from other secretions by means of a fistula. Thiry's method is to cut the intestine across in two places; the loop so cut out is still supplied with blood and nerves, as its mesentery is intact; this loop is emptied, one end is sewn up, and the other stitched to the abdominal wound, and so a *cul-de-sac* from which the secretion can be collected is made. The continuity of the remainder of the intestine is restored by fastening together the upper and lower portions of the bowel from which the loop has been removed. Vella's method resembles Thiry's, except that both ends of the loop are sutured to the wound in the abdomen. Fig. 400 illustrates the two methods.

The succus entericus possesses to a slight extent the power of converting starch into sugar. Its best known action is due to a ferment called *invertase*, which inverts saccharoses—that is, it converts cane sugar and maltose into glucose. The original use of the term "inversion" has been explained on p. 394. It may be extended to include the similar hydrolysis of other saccharoses, although there may be no formation of levo-rotatory substances. There are probably numerous inverting ferments, each of which acts on a different saccharose.

Up till a year or two ago little or nothing was known regarding the action of the intestinal juice beyond this, but investigations

published quite recently have, however, altered this state of things, and in the light of these the succus entericus appears to be a juice of the highest importance.

Pawlow was the first to show that one of its main actions is to reinforce and intensify the action of the pancreatic juice, especially in reference to its proteolytic power. Fresh pancreatic juice has practically no digestive power on proteins. Claude Bernard, the earliest to study the pancreatic secretion, entirely missed its tryptic action. On standing, the juice very slowly acquires proteolytic activity. Vernon has shown that much the same is true for extracts of the pancreas. There is no doubt that what the fresh juice con-

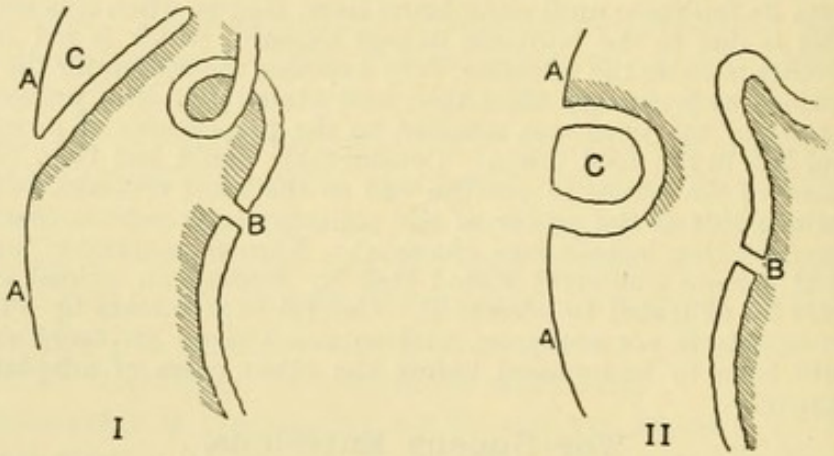


FIG. 400.—Diagram of intestinal fistula. I., Thiry's method; II., Vella's method. A, Abdominal wall; B, intestine, with mesentery; C, separated loop of intestine, with attached mesentery.

tains is trypsinogen, and this is slowly transformed into the active enzyme trypsin.

If fresh pancreatic and intestinal juices are mixed together, the result is a powerful proteolytic mixture, though neither juice by itself has any proteolytic activity.

Pawlow speaks of the substance in the intestinal juice which has this action as a "ferment of the ferments," and has named it *enterokinase*. It mainly reinforces tryptic activity, but also has a similar though slighter energising influence on the fat-splitting ferment.

Starling, like Pawlow, worked with dogs, and has confirmed his main results. A valuable contribution to the same subject has also been made by Hamburger. He has had the unusual opportunity of examining human succus entericus. It became necessary in a patient for surgical reasons to isolate a loop of the small intestine, and this loop continued to discharge intestinal juice to the exterior for some time after the operation. He finds that this juice, like that of the dog, contains a substance which renders pancreatic juice active. He could not find that it exercised any energising influence on the fat-splitting and amylolytic ferments of the pancreas, but its action

on the tryptic ferment was most marked. His quantitative experiments do not bear out Pawlow's view that the active substance in the intestinal juice is a ferment, for it is unable like a ferment to act on an unlimited amount of pancreatic juice. Delezenne also thinks it is not a ferment, but compares it to the immune body or amboceptor which enables hæmolysins to become effective (see p. 454). Starling, however, supports Pawlow's view; provided sufficient time is allowed to elapse, it will activate any amount of pancreatic juice.

Another discovery in connection with succus entericus has been made by Otto Cohnheim. The juice has no action on native proteins such as fibrin and egg-white,* but it acts on proteoses and peptone. It rapidly breaks them up into simpler substances, of which ammonia, leucine, tyrosine, and the hexone bases have been identified. Cohnheim has named the ferment to which this is due *erepsin*. Hamburger found that erepsin is also present in the human juice; it is not identical with enterokinase because erepsin is destroyed by heating the juice to 59° C. for three hours; enterokinase is not destroyed until the temperature is raised to 67° C. Other observers have confirmed the discovery of erepsin, but have found that it or a similar ferment is present in most tissues; it is most abundant in the kidney (Vernon).

The **bile**, as we shall find, has little or no digestive action by itself, but combined with pancreatic juice it assists the latter in all its actions. This is true for the digestion of starch and of protein, but most markedly so for the digestion of fat. Occlusion of the bile-duct by a gall-stone or by inflammation prevents bile entering the duodenum. Under these circumstances the fæces contain a large amount of undigested fat.

The importance of the work of Pawlow, and the other physiologists whose names have been mentioned, arises from the entirely new light thrown upon the digestion process as a whole. We have been too apt to think of the occurrences in the alimentary canal as a series of isolated phenomena. We now see that each step follows in an orderly manner as the result of the previous steps. For example, the acid gastric juice reaches the small intestine, and there produces secretin from its forerunner; the secretin is taken by the blood-stream to the pancreas, where it excites a flow of pancreatic juice; this juice arrives in the duodenum ready to act on starchy substances and on fat. With the assistance of the bile, fatty acid is liberated which in

* Cohnheim has investigated the action of erepsin on a large number of proteins; it acts energetically on proteoses, peptone, and protamines: on histone, which occupies an intermediate place between protamines and the other proteins, it has a slight action. On the other native proteins it has no action, with the single exception of caseinogen, which is speedily broken up into simple substances; this opens up the interesting physiological possibility that the suckling infant is able to digest its protein nutriment even if pepsin and trypsin are absent.

its turn forms more secretin, and so more pancreatic juice. The pancreatic juice, however, cannot act on proteins without enterokinase, which is supplied by the succus entericus; * this sets free the trypsin; and trypsin with the assistance of erepsin effectively carries out digestive proteolysis.

Bacterial Action.

The gastric juice is an antiseptic; the pancreatic juice is not. An alkaline fluid like pancreatic juice is just the most suitable medium for bacteria to flourish in. Even in an artificial digestion the fluid is very soon putrid, unless special precautions to exclude or kill bacteria are taken. It is often difficult to say where pancreatic action ends and bacterial action begins, as many of the bacteria that grow in the intestinal contents (having reached that situation in spite of the gastric juice) act in the same way as the pancreatic juice. Some form sugar from starch, others peptone, leucine, and tyrosine from proteins, while others, again, break up fats. There are, however, certain actions that are entirely due to these putrefactive organisms.

i. On carbohydrates. The most frequent fermentation they set up is the lactic acid fermentation: this may go further and result in the formation of carbonic acid, hydrogen and butyric acid (see p. 395). Cellulose is broken up into carbonic acid and methane. This is the chief cause of the gases in the intestine, the amount of which is increased by vegetable food.

ii. On fats. In addition to acting like steapsin, they produce lower acids (valeric, butyric, etc.). The formation of acid products from fats and carbohydrates gives to the intestinal contents an acid reaction. Recent researches show that the contents of the intestine become acid much higher up than was formerly supposed. Organic acids do not, however, hinder pancreatic digestion.

iii. On proteins. Fatty acids and amino-acids, especially leucine and tyrosine, are produced; but these putrefactive organisms have a specially powerful action in liberating substances having an evil odour, like indole (C_8H_7N), skatole (C_9H_9N), and phenol (C_6H_6O). There are also gaseous products in some cases.

If excessive, putrefactive processes are harmful; if within normal limits, they are useful, helping the pancreatic juice, and, further, preventing the entrance into the body of poisonous products. It is possible that, in digestion, poisonous alkaloids are formed. Certainly this is so in one well-known case. Lecithin, a material contained in small quantities in many foods, and in large quantities in egg-yolk

* The mixture of pancreatic and intestinal juice is extraordinarily powerful. If secretin is administered to a fasting animal the juice secreted, having no food to act upon, will produce erosion and inflammation of the intestinal wall. (Starling.)

and brain, is broken up by the pancreatic juice into glycerin, phosphoric acid, fatty acids, and an alkaloid called choline. We are, however, protected from the poisonous action of choline by the bacteria, which break it up into carbonic acid, methane, and ammonia.

Leucine and Tyrosine.

These two substances have been frequently mentioned in the preceding pages. They are important as types of the final cleavage products of proteins.

Leucine is usually the most abundant of these products, and hitherto we have spoken of it as amino-caproic acid (see p. 401).

But according to the way in which the amino-group is linked, a large number of isomeric amino-caproic acids, all with the same empirical formula, are theoretically possible. Some of these have been actually prepared in the laboratory; and chemical research has shown that the amino-caproic acid called leucine formed during digestion should be more accurately named *α*-amino-isobutylacetic acid $(CH_3)_2CH.CH_2CH(NH_2)COOH$.

Tyrosine is a little more complicated, and not nearly so abundant; its importance arises from its being a type of amino-acids which

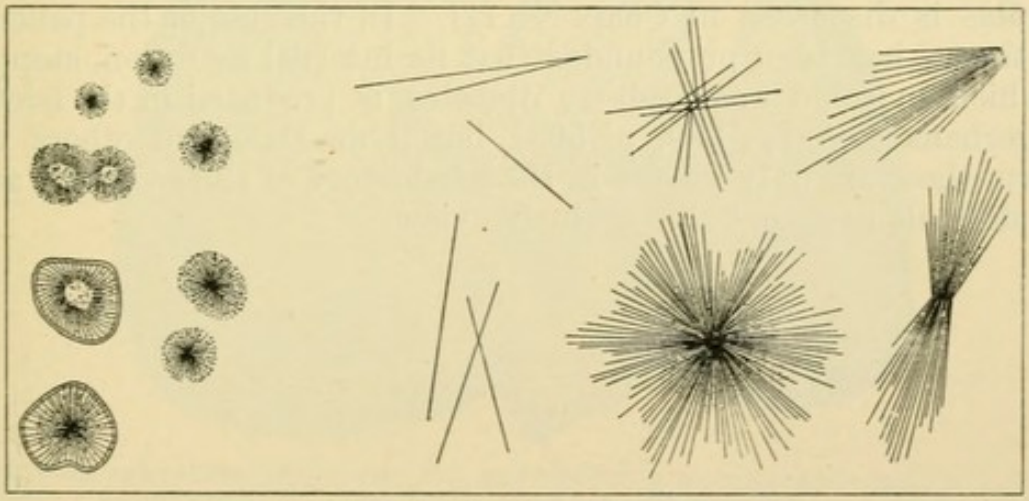


FIG. 401.—Crystals of leucine and tyrosine. × 216.

contain an aromatic radical. The constitution of tyrosine or oxyphenyl-amino-propionic acid is fully explained on p. 403. Leucine and tyrosine are both crystalline; the former crystallises in the form of spheroidal clumps of crystals, the latter in collections of fine silken needles (fig. 401).

Extirpation of the Pancreas.

Complete removal of the pancreas in animals and diseases of the pancreas in man produce a condition of diabetes, in addition to the loss of pancreatic action in the intestines. Grafting the pancreas

from another animal into the abdomen of the animal from which the pancreas has been removed relieves the diabetic condition.

How the pancreas acts other than in producing the pancreatic juice is not known. It must, however, have other functions related to the general metabolic phenomena of the body, which are disturbed by removal or disease of the gland. This is an illustration of a universal truth—viz., that each part of the body does not merely do its own special work, but is concerned in the great cycle of changes which is called general metabolism. Interference with any organ upsets not only its specific function, but causes disturbances through the body generally. The interdependence of the circulatory and respiratory systems is a well-known instance. Removal of the thyroid gland upsets the whole body, producing widespread changes known as myxœdema. Removal of the testes produces not only a loss of the spermatic secretion, but changes the whole growth and appearance of the animal. The precise way in which these glands are related to the general body processes is, however, a subject of which we know as yet very little. The theory at present most in favour is that certain glands produce an *internal secretion*, which leaves them *viâ* the lymph, and is then distributed to minister to parts elsewhere. The question of the internal secretions of the thyroid and suprarenal capsules is discussed in Chap. XXIII. In the case of the pancreas, the theory has been propounded that its internal secretion, stoppage of which in some way leads to diabetes, is produced in the islets of Langerhans (see fig. 399, p. 503), but if, as Dale and others have shown, these are only phases in the life-history of the secreting acini, it is difficult to accept this exclusive view.

CHAPTER XXXIII

THE LIVER

THE **Liver**, the largest gland in the body, situated in the abdomen on the right side chiefly, is an extremely vascular organ, and receives its supply of blood from two distinct sources, viz., from the *portal vein* and from the *hepatic artery*, while the blood is returned from it into

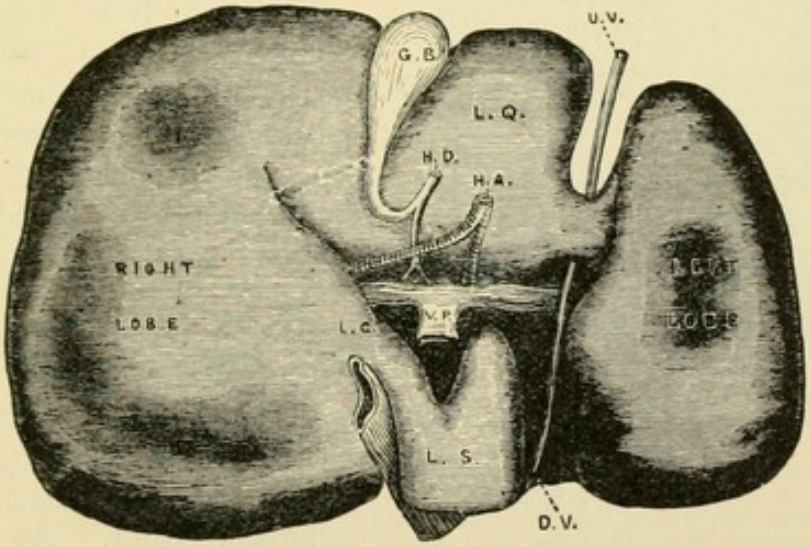


FIG. 402.—The under surface of the liver. G. B., gall-bladder; H. D., common bile-duct; H. A., hepatic artery; V. P., portal vein; L. Q., lobulus quadratus; L. S., lobulus spigelii; L. C., lobulus caudatus; D. V., ductus venosus; U. V., umbilical vein. (Noble Smith.)

the vena cava inferior by the *hepatic veins*. Its secretion, the *bile*, is conveyed from it by the *hepatic duct*, either directly into the intestine, or, when digestion is not going on, into the *cystic* duct, and thence into the gall-bladder, where it accumulates until required. The portal vein, hepatic artery, and hepatic duct branch together throughout the liver, while the hepatic veins and their tributaries run by themselves.

On the outside, the liver has an incomplete covering of peritoneum, and beneath this is a very fine coat of areolar tissue, continuous over the whole surface of the organ. At the transverse fissure it is

merged in the areolar investment called Glisson's capsule, which, surrounding the portal vein, hepatic artery, and hepatic duct, accompanies them in their branchings through the substance of the liver.

Structure.—The liver is in origin a tubular gland, but as development progresses it soon loses all resemblance to the tubular glands found elsewhere. It is made up of small roundish or oval portions called *lobules*, each of which is about $\frac{1}{20}$ of an inch (about 1 mm.) in diameter, and composed of the liver cells, between which the blood-vessels and bile-vessels ramify. The *hepatic cells* (fig. 406), which form the glandular or secreting part of the liver, are of a spheroidal form, somewhat polygonal from mutual pressure, about $\frac{1}{800}$ to $\frac{1}{1000}$ inch (about $\frac{1}{32}$ to $\frac{1}{40}$ mm.) in diameter, possessing a nucleus, sometimes two. The cell protoplasm contains numerous fatty particles, as well as a variable amount of glycogen. They are held together by a very delicate sustentacular tissue, continuous with the inter-lobular connective tissue.

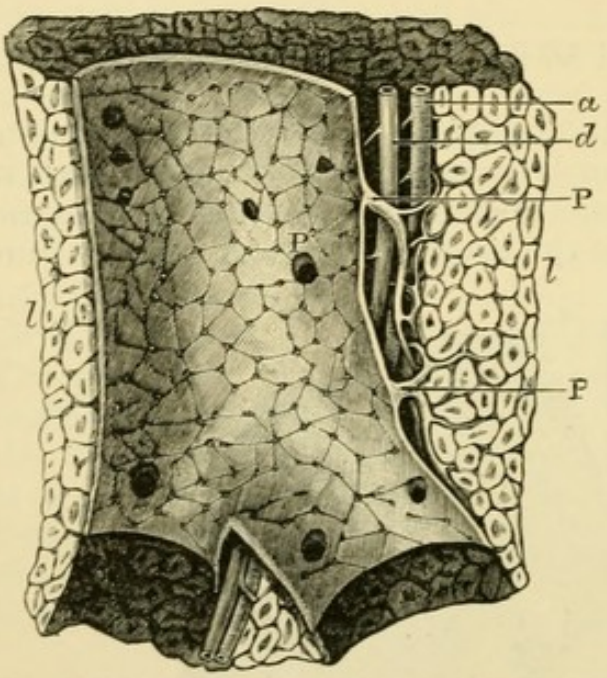


FIG. 403.—Longitudinal section of a portal canal, containing a portal vein, hepatic artery and hepatic duct, from the pig. P, branch of vena portæ, situated in a portal canal amongst the lobules of the liver; *l*, *l*, and giving off interlobular veins; there are also seen within the large portal vein numerous orifices of interlobular veins arising directly from it; *a*, hepatic artery; *d*, bile duct. × 5. (Kiernan.)

To understand the distribution of the blood-vessels in the liver, it will be well to trace, first, the two blood-vessels which enter, and the duct which leaves the organ on the under surface at the transverse fissure, viz., the portal vein, hepatic artery, and hepatic duct. As before remarked, all three run in company, and their appearance on longitudinal section is shown in fig. 403. Running together through the substance of the liver, they are contained in small channels called *portal canals*, their immediate investment being a sheath of areolar tissue continuous with Glisson's capsule.

To take the distribution of the portal vein first:—In its course through the liver this vessel gives off small branches which divide and subdivide *between* the lobules surrounding them and limiting them, and from this circumstance called *inter*-lobular veins. From these vessels a dense capillary network is prolonged into the substance of the lobule, and this network converges to a single small vein, occupying the centre of the lobule, and hence called *intra*-lobular.

This arrangement is well seen in fig. 404, which represents a section of a small piece of an injected liver.

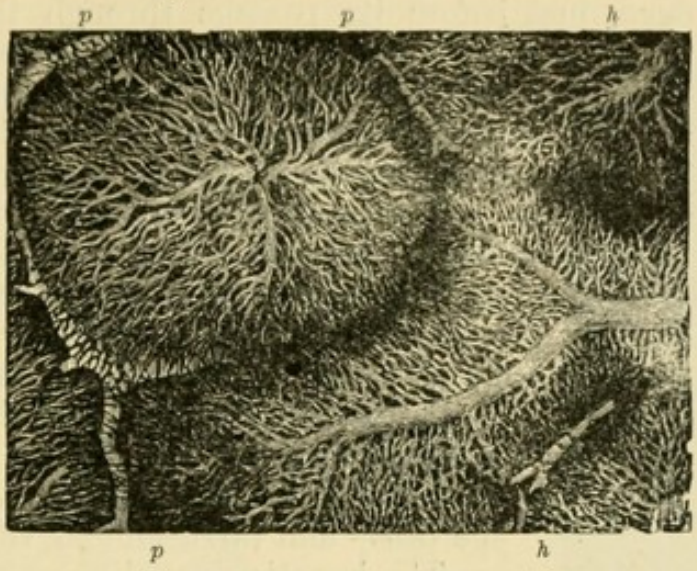


FIG. 404.—Capillary network of the lobules of the rabbit's liver. The figure is taken from a very successful injection of the liver veins, made by Harting: it shows nearly the whole of two lobules, and parts of three others; *p*, interlobular (portal) branches running in the interlobular spaces; *h*, intralobular (hepatic) veins occupying the centre of the lobules. The interlobular and intralobular vessels are connected by radiating capillaries. × 45. (Kölliker.)

The small *intra*-lobular veins discharge their contents into veins called *sub*-lobular (*h h h*, fig. 405); while these, again, by their union,

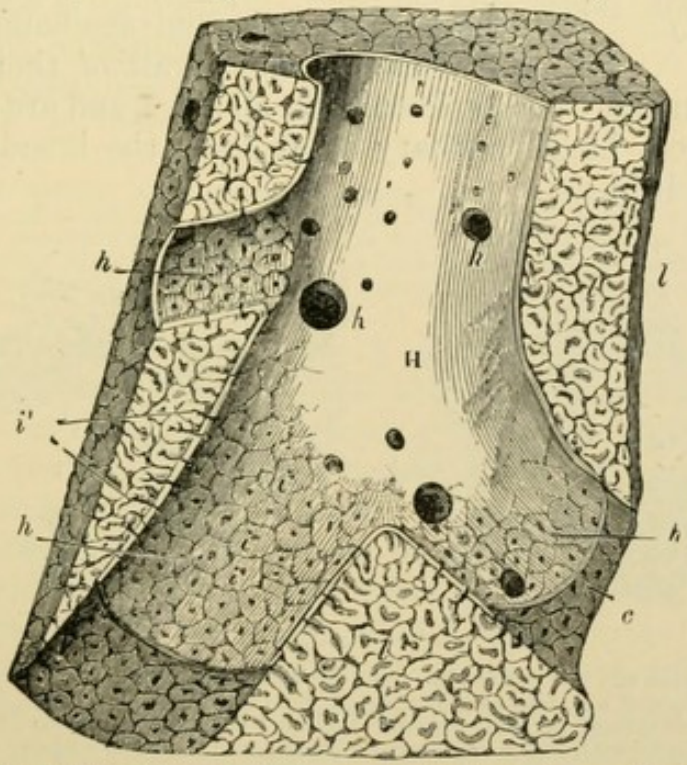


FIG. 405.—Section of a portion of liver passing longitudinally through a considerable hepatic vein, from the pig. H, hepatic venous trunk, against which the sides of the lobules (*l*) are applied; *h*, *h*, *h*, sublobular hepatic veins, on which the bases of the lobules rest, and through the coats of which they are seen as polygonal figures; *i*, mouth of the intralobular veins, opening into the sublobular veins; *i'*, intralobular veins shown passing up the centre of some divided lobules; *l*, *l*, cut surface of the liver; *c*, *c*, walls of the hepatic venous canal, formed by the polygonal bases of the lobules, × 5. (Kiernan.)

form the main branches of the *hepatic* veins, which leave the posterior border of the liver to end by two or three principal trunks in the inferior vena cava, just before its passage through the diaphragm. The *sub-lobular* and *hepatic veins*, unlike the *portal* vein and its companions, have little or no areolar tissue around them, and their coats are very thin.

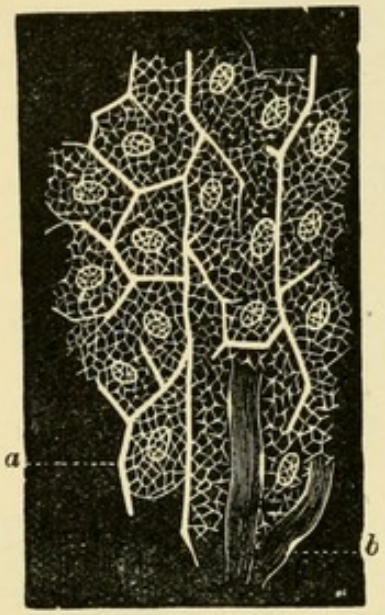


FIG. 406.—Portion of a lobule of liver. *a*, bile capillaries between liver-cells, the network in which is well seen; *b*, blood capillaries. × 350. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

The hepatic artery, the chief function of which is to distribute blood for nutrition to Glisson's capsule, the walls of the ducts and blood-vessels, and other parts of the liver, is distributed in a very similar manner to the portal vein, its blood being returned by small branches which pass into the capillary plexus of the lobules which connects the *inter-* and *intra*-lobular veins.

The hepatic duct divides and subdivides in a manner very like that of the portal vein and hepatic artery, the larger branches being lined by *columnar*, and the smaller by small *polygonal* epithelium.

The bile capillaries commence between the hepatic cells, and are bounded by a delicate membranous wall of their own. They are always bounded by hepatic cells on all sides, and are thus separated from the nearest blood capillary by at least the breadth of one cell (figs. 406 and 407).

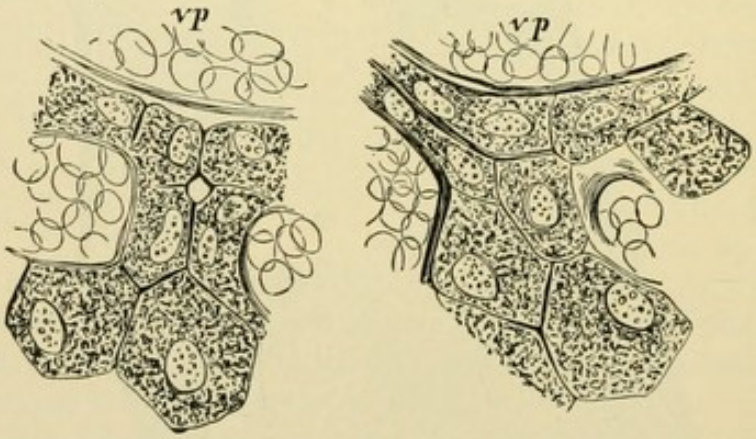


FIG. 407.—Hepatic cells and bile capillaries, from the liver of a child three months old. Both figures represent fragments of a section carried through the periphery of a lobule. The red corpuscles of the blood are recognised by their circular contour; *vp*, corresponds to an interlobular vein in immediate proximity with which are the epithelial cells of the biliary ducts, to which, at the lower part of the figures, the much larger hepatic cells suddenly succeed. (E. Hering.)

To demonstrate the intercellular network of bile capillaries, Chrzonszezewsky employed a method of natural injection. A saturated aqueous solution of sulph-indigotate of soda is introduced

into the circulation of dogs and pigs by the jugular vein. The animals are killed an hour and a half afterwards, and the blood-vessels washed free from blood, or injected with gelatin stained with carmine. The bile-ducts are then seen filled with blue, and the blood-vessels with red material. If the animals are killed sooner than this, the pigment is found within the hepatic cells, thus demonstrating it was through their agency that the canals were filled.

Pflüger and Kupffer have since this shown that the relation between the hepatic cells and the bile canaliculi is even more intimate, for they have demonstrated the existence of vacuoles in the cells communicating by minute intracellular channels with the adjoining bile canaliculi (fig. 408). It is important to notice that the

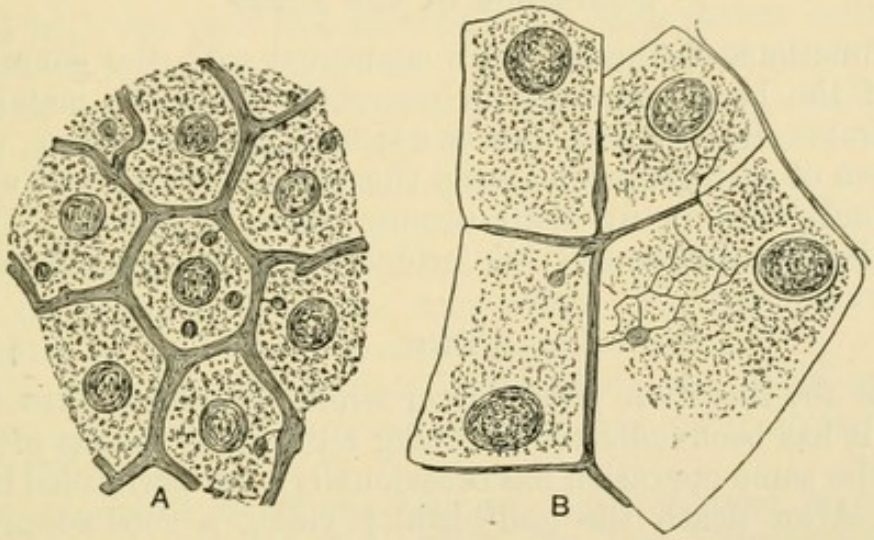


FIG. 408.—Sketches illustrating the mode of commencement of the bile canaliculi within the liver-cells (Heidenhain, after Kupffer). A, rabbit's liver, injected from hepatic duct with Berlin blue. The intercellular canaliculi give off minute twigs which penetrate into the liver-cells, and there terminate in vacuole-like enlargements. B, frog's liver naturally injected with sulph-indigotate of soda. A similar appearance is obtained, but the communicating twigs are ramified.

bile canaliculi are always separated by at least a portion of a cell from the nearest blood capillaries, and that the formation of bile is no mere transudation from the blood or lymph. The liver-cells take certain materials from the plasma and elaborate the constituents of the bile, the bile-salts and the bile pigments. There can be no doubt that these substances are formed by the hepatic cells, for they are not found in the blood nor in any other organ or tissue; and after extirpation of the liver they do not accumulate in the blood.

Intracellular canaliculi in the liver-cells are not unique. Recent research by Golgi's method has shown that in the salivary and gastric glands, and in the pancreas, there is a similar condition.

Schäfer has further shown that the liver-cells contain not only the intracellular bile canaliculi, but also intracellular blood canaliculi passing into the cells from the capillaries between them. These are too minute to admit blood-corpuscles.

The **Gall-bladder** (G. B., fig. 402) is a pear-shaped bag, attached to the under surface of the liver. Its smaller end contracts into the cystic duct. Its wall is constructed of three coats. (1) Externally (excepting that part which is in contact with the liver) is the *serous* coat, which has the same structure as the peritoneum with which it is continuous. Within this is (2) the *fibrous* or areolar coat, with which is mingled a considerable number of plain muscular fibres, both longitudinal and circular. (3) Internally the gall-bladder is lined by mucous membrane and a layer of columnar epithelium. The gall-bladder and all the main biliary ducts are provided with mucous glands, which open on their internal surface.

Functions of the Liver.

The functions of the liver are connected with the general metabolism of the body, especially in connection with the metabolism of carbohydrates (glycogenic function); and in connection with the metabolism of nitrogenous material (formation of urea and uric acid). This second function we shall discuss with the urine. The third function is the formation of bile, which it will be convenient to take first.

Bile.

Bile is the secretion of the liver which is poured into the duodenum: it has been collected in living animals by means of a biliary fistula; the same operation has occasionally been performed in human beings. After death the gall-bladder yields a good supply of bile which is more concentrated than that obtained from a fistula.

Bile is being continuously poured into the intestine, but there is an increased discharge immediately on the arrival of food in the duodenum; there is a second increase in secretion a few hours later.

Though the chief blood supply of the liver is by a vein (the portal vein), the amount of blood in the liver varies with its needs, being increased during the periods of digestion. This is due to the fact that in the area from which the portal vein collects blood—stomach, intestine, spleen, and pancreas — the arterioles are all dilated, and the capillaries are thus gorged with blood. The active peristalsis of the intestine and the pumping action of the spleen are additional factors in driving more blood onwards to the liver.

The bile is secreted from the portal blood at much lower pressure than one finds in glands such as the salivary glands, the blood supply of which is arterial. Heidenhain found that the pressure in the bile duct of the dog averages 15 mm. of mercury, which is nearly double that in the portal vein. This fact illustrates the general truth that secretion is not a mere process of passive filtration, but that the cells exercise secretory force.

The second increase in the flow of bile—that which occurs some hours after the arrival of the semi-digested food (chyme) in the intestine—appears to be due to the effect of the digestive products carried by the blood to the liver, stimulating the hepatic cells to activity: this is supported by the fact that protein food increases the quantity of bile secreted, whereas fatty food which is absorbed, not by the portal vein, but by the lacteals, has no such effect. It is, however, possible that the increased flow is due to the action of secretin, for this material stimulates the liver as well as the pancreas.

The chemical process by which the constituents of the bile are formed is obscure. We, however, know that the biliary pigment is produced by the decomposition of hæmoglobin. Bilirubin is, in fact, identical with the iron-free derivative of hæmoglobin called hæmatoidin, which is found in the form of crystals in old blood-clots such as occur in the brain after cerebral hæmorrhage (see p. 443).

An injection of hæmoglobin into the portal vein or of substances such as water which liberate hæmoglobin from the red blood-corpuscles produces an increase of bile pigment. If the spleen takes any part in the elaboration of bile pigment, it does not proceed so far as to liberate hæmoglobin from the corpuscles. No free hæmoglobin is discoverable in the blood plasma in the splenic vein.

The amount of bile secreted is differently estimated by different observers; the amount secreted daily in man varies from 500 c.c. to a litre (1000 c.c.).

The constituents of the bile are the bile salts proper (taurocholate and glycocholate of soda), the bile pigments (bilirubin, biliverdin), a mucinoid substance, small quantities of fats, soaps, cholesterin, lecithin, urea, and mineral salts, of which sodium chloride and the phosphates of iron and calcium are the most important.

Bile is a yellowish, reddish-brown, or green fluid, according to the relative preponderance of its two chief pigments. It has a musk-like odour, a bitter-sweet taste, and a neutral or faintly alkaline reaction.

The specific gravity of human bile from the gall-bladder is 1026 to 1032; that from a fistula, 1010 to 1011. The greater concentration of gall-bladder bile is partly but not wholly explained by the addition to it from the walls of that cavity of the mucinoid material it secretes.

The amount of solids in gall-bladder bile is from 9 to 14 per cent., in fistula bile from 1·5 to 3 per cent. The following table shows that this low percentage of solids is almost entirely due to want of bile salts. This can be accounted for in the way first suggested by Schiff —that there is normally a bile circulation going on in the body, a large quantity of the bile salts that pass into the intestine being first split up, then reabsorbed and again secreted. Such a circulation

would obviously be impossible in cases where all the bile is discharged to the exterior.

The following table gives some important analyses of human bile:—

Constituents.	Fistula bile (healthy woman. Copeman and Winston).	Fistula bile (case of cancer. Yeo and Herroun).	Normal bile (Frerichs).
Sodium glycocholate .	0·6280	0·165	9·14
Sodium taurocholate .		0·055	
Cholesterin, lecithin, fat .	0·0990	0·038	1·18
Mucinoid material . .	0·1725	0·148	2·98
Pigment	0·0725		
Inorganic salts . .	0·4510	0·878	0·78
Total solids . . .	1·4230	1·284	14·08
Water (by difference) .	98·5570	98·716	85·92

Bile Mucin.—There has been considerable diversity of opinion as to whether bile mucin is really mucin. The most recent work in Hammarsten's laboratory shows that differences occur in different animals. Thus in the ox there is very little true mucin, but a great amount of nucleo-protein; in human bile, on the other hand, there is very little if any nucleo-protein; the mucinoid material present there is really mucin.

The Bile Salts.—The bile contains the sodium salts of complex amino-acids called the bile acids. The two acids most frequently found are glycocholic and taurocholic acids. The former is the more abundant in the bile of man and herbivora; the latter in carnivorous animals, like the dog. The most important difference between the two acids is that taurocholic acid contains sulphur, and glycocholic acid does not.

Glycocholic acid ($C_{26}H_{43}NO_6$) is by the action of dilute acids and alkalis, and also in the intestine, hydrolysed and split into glycine or amino-acetic acid and cholalic acid.

$$\underset{\text{[Glycocholic acid.]}}{C_{26}H_{43}NO_6} + H_2O = \underset{\text{[Glycine.]}}{C_2H_5NO_2} + \underset{\text{[Cholalic acid.]}}{C_{24}H_{40}O_5}.$$

The glycocholate of soda has the formula $C_{26}H_{42}NaNO_6$.

Taurocholic acid ($C_{26}H_{45}NO_7S$) similarly splits into taurine or amino-isethionic acid and cholalic acid.

$$\underset{\text{[Taurocholic acid.]}}{C_{26}H_{45}NO_7S} + H_2O = \underset{\text{[Taurine.]}}{C_2H_7NO_3S} + \underset{\text{[Cholalic acid.]}}{C_{24}H_{40}O_5}$$

The taurocholate of soda has the formula $C_{26}H_{44}NaNO_7S$.

The colour reaction called **Pettenkofer's reaction** is due to the

presence of cholalic acid. Small quantities of cane sugar and strong sulphuric acid are added to the bile. The sulphuric acid acting on sugar forms a small quantity of a substance called *furfuraldehyde*, in addition to other products. The furfuraldehyde gives a brilliant purple colour with cholalic acid.

The Bile Pigments.—The two chief bile pigments are bilirubin and biliverdin. Bile which contains chiefly the former (such as dog's bile) is of a golden or orange-yellow colour, while the bile of many herbivora, which contains chiefly biliverdin, is either green or bluish-green. Human bile is generally described as containing chiefly bilirubin, but there have been some cases described in which biliverdin was in excess. The bile pigments show no absorption bands with the spectroscope; they originate from the blood pigment (see p. 519).

Bilirubin has the formula $C_{16}H_{18}N_2O_3$: it is thus an iron-free derivative of hæmoglobin. The iron is apparently stored up in the liver cells, perhaps for future use in the manufacture of new hæmoglobin. The bile contains only a trace of iron.

Biliverdin has the formula $C_{16}H_{18}N_2O_4$ (*i.e.*, one atom of oxygen more than in bilirubin): it may occur as such in bile; it may be formed by simply exposing red bile to the oxidising action of the atmosphere; or it may be formed as in Gmelin's test by the more vigorous oxidation produced by fuming nitric acid.

Gmelin's test consists in a play of colours—green, blue, red, and finally yellow, produced by the oxidising action of fuming nitric acid (that is, nitric acid containing nitrous acid in solution). The end or yellow product is called *choletelin*, $C_{16}H_{18}N_2O_6$.

Hydrobilirubin.—If a solution of bilirubin or biliverdin in dilute alkali is treated with sodium amalgam or allowed to putrefy, a brownish pigment, which is a reduction product, is formed called hydrobilirubin, $C_{32}H_{40}N_4O_7$. With the spectroscope it shows a dark absorption band between *b* and F, and a fainter band in the region of the D line.

This substance is interesting because a similar substance is formed from the bile pigment by reduction processes in the intestine, and constitutes *stercobilin*, the pigment of the fæces. Some of this is absorbed and ultimately leaves the body in the urine as one of its pigments called *urobilin*. A small quantity of urobilin is sometimes found preformed in the bile. The identity of urobilin and stercobilin has been frequently disputed, but the recent work of Garrod and Hopkins has confirmed the old statement that they are the same substance with different names. Hydrobilirubin differs from urobilin in containing more nitrogen (9·2 instead of 4·1 per cent.).

Cholesterin.—This substance is contained not only in bile, but very largely in nervous tissues. Like lecithin, it is an abundant constituent of the white substance of Schwann. It is found also

in blood-corpuscles. In bile it is normally present in small quantities only, but it may occur in excess, and form the concretions known as gall-stones, which are usually more or less tinged with bilirubin.

Though its solubilities remind one of a fat, cholesterin is not a fat. It is, in fact, chemically speaking, a monatomic alcohol probably of the terpene series. Its formula is $C_{27}H_{45}HO$.

From alcohol or ether containing water it crystallises in the form of rhombic tables, which contain one molecule of water of crystallisation: these are easily recognised under the microscope (see fig. 409).

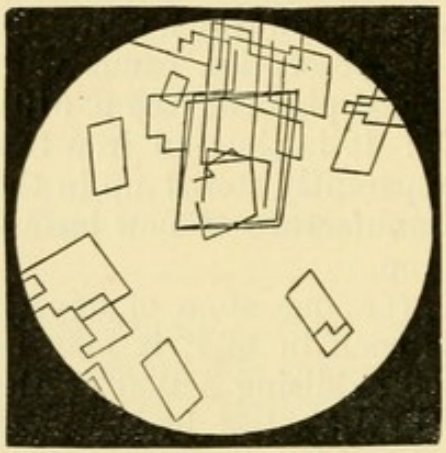


FIG. 409.—Crystalline scales of cholesterin.

It gives the following colour tests:—

1. Heated with sulphuric acid and water (5 : 1), the edges of the crystals turn red.

2. A solution of cholesterin in chloroform, shaken with an equal amount of concentrated sulphuric acid, turns red, and ultimately purple, the subjacent acid acquiring a green fluorescence. (Salkowski's reaction.)

3. If acetic anhydride is added to a chloroformic solution of cholesterin, and then sulphuric acid, drop by drop, a red coloration, which changes to bluish-green, is produced. (Liebermann's reaction).

The physiological significance of cholesterin is entirely unknown.

A substance called *iso-cholesterin*, isomeric with ordinary cholesterin, is found in the fatty secretion of the skin (sebum); it is largely contained in the preparation called *lanoline* made from sheep's-wool fat. It does not give Salkowski's reaction with chloroform and sulphuric acid just described.

The Uses of Bile.—Bile is doubtless, to a certain extent, excretory. Some state that it has a slight action on fats and carbohydrates, but its principal action is as a coadjutor to the pancreatic juice (especially in the digestion of fat). In some animals it has a feeble diastatic power.

Bile is said to be a natural antiseptic, lessening the putrefactive processes in the intestine. This is very doubtful. Though the bile salts are weak antiseptics, the bile itself is readily putrescible, and the power it has of diminishing putrescence in the intestine is due chiefly to the fact that by increasing absorption it lessens the amount of putrescible matter in the bowel.

When the bile meets the chyme the turbidity of the latter is increased owing to the precipitation of unpeptonised protein. This

is an action due to the bile salts, and it has been surmised that this conversion of the chyme into a more viscid mass is to hinder somewhat its progress through the intestines; it clings to the intestinal wall, thus allowing absorption to take place.

Bile is alkaline; it therefore assists the pancreatic juice in neutralising the acid mixture that leaves the stomach.

Bile assists the absorption of fats, as we shall see in studying that subject. It is also a solvent of fatty acids.

We have seen that fistula bile is poor in solids as compared with normal bile, and that this is explained on the supposition that the normal bile circulation is not occurring—the liver cannot excrete what it does not receive back from the intestine. Schiff was the first to show that if the bile is led back into the duodenum, or even if the animal is fed on bile, the percentage of solids in the bile excreted is at once raised. It is on these experiments that the theory of a bile circulation is mainly founded. The bile circulation relates, however, chiefly, if not entirely, to the bile salts: they are found but sparingly in the fæces; they are only represented to a slight extent in the urine: hence it is calculated that seven-eighths of them are re-absorbed from the intestine. Small quantities of cholalic acid, taurine, and glycine are found in the fæces; the greater part of these products of the decomposition of the bile salts is taken by the portal vein to the liver, where they are once more synthesised into the bile salts. Some of the taurine is absorbed and excreted as tauro-carbamic acid in the urine. Some of the absorbed glycine may be excreted as urea or uric acid. The cholesterin and mucus are found in the fæces; the pigment is changed into stercobilin (see p. 521).

The bile-expelling mechanism must be carefully distinguished from the bile-secreting action of the liver-cells. The bile is forced into the ducts, and ultimately into the duodenum, by the pressure of newly-formed bile pressing on that previously in the ducts, and this is assisted by the contraction of the plain muscular fibres of the larger ducts and gall-bladder, which occurs reflexly when the food enters the duodenum. In cases of obstruction, as by a gall-stone, in the ducts, this action becomes excessive, and gives rise to the intense pain known as *hepatic colic.*

Many *cholagogues* (bile-drivers), such as calomel, act on the bile-expelling mechanism and increase the peristalsis of the muscular tissue; they do not really cause an increased formation of bile.

Jaundice.—The commonest form of jaundice is produced by obstruction in the bile ducts preventing the bile entering the intestine. A very small amount of obstruction, for instance, a plug of mucus produced in excess owing to inflammatory processes, will often be sufficient, as the bile is secreted at such low pressure. Under these circumstances, the fæces are whitish or clay

coloured, and the bile passing backwards into the lymph,* enters the blood and is thus distributed over the body, causing a yellow tint in the skin and mucous membranes, and colouring the urine deeply.

In some cases of jaundice, however (*e.g.*, produced by various poisons), there is no obvious obstruction; the causes of non-obstructive, or blood-jaundice, form a pathological problem of some interest. A few years ago it was believed that the bile pigment was actually produced in the blood. But all recent work shows that the liver is the only place where production of bile occurs, and that in all cases of so-called non-obstructive jaundice, the bile is absorbed from the liver. There may be obstruction present in the smaller ducts, or the functions of the liver may be so upset that the bile passes into the lymph even when there is no obstruction.

The Glycogenic Function of the Liver.

The important fact that the liver normally forms sugar, or a substance readily convertible into it, was discovered by Claude Bernard in the following way: he fed a dog for seven days with food containing a large quantity of sugar and starch; and, as might be expected, found sugar in both the portal and hepatic blood. But when this dog was fed with meat only, to his surprise, sugar was still found in the blood of the hepatic veins. Repeated experiments gave invariably the same result; no sugar was found, under a meat diet, in the portal vein, if care were taken, by applying a ligature on it at the transverse fissure, to prevent reflux of blood from the hepatic venous system. Bernard found sugar also in the substance of the liver. It thus seemed certain that the liver formed sugar, even when, from the absence of carbohydrates in the food, none could have been brought directly to it from the stomach or intestines.

Bernard found, subsequently, that a liver, removed from the body, and from which all sugar had been completely washed away by injecting a stream of water through its blood-vessels, contained sugar in abundance after the lapse of a few hours. This post-mortem production of sugar was a fact which could only be explained on the supposition that the liver contained a substance readily convertible into sugar; and this theory was proved to be correct by the discovery of a substance in the liver allied to starch, and now termed *glycogen* or animal starch. We are thus led to the conclusion that glycogen is formed first and stored in the liver cells, and that the sugar, when present, is the result of its transformation.

Source of Glycogen.—Although the greatest amount of glycogen

* The absorption is by the lymph, because if jaundice is produced in an animal by ligature of the bile duct, it will cease when the thoracic duct is tied.

is produced by the liver upon a diet of starch or sugar, a certain quantity is produced upon a protein diet. It must, then, be produced by protoplasmic activity within the cells. The glycogen when stored in the liver cells may readily be demonstrated in sections of liver containing it by its reaction (red or port-wine colour) with iodine, and moreover, when the hardened sections are soaked in water in order to dissolve out the glycogen, the protoplasm of the cell is so vacuolated as to appear little more than a framework. In the liver of a hibernating frog the amount of glycogen stored up in the outer parts of the liver cells is very considerable.

Average Amount of Glycogen in the Liver of Dogs under various Diets (Pavy).

Diet.	Amount of Glycogen in Liver.
Animal food	7·19 per cent.
Animal food with sugar (about ¼-lb of sugar daily)	14·5 ,,
Vegetable diet (potatoes, with bread or barley-meal)	17·23 ,,

The dependence of the formation of glycogen on the kind of food taken is also well shown by the following results, obtained by the same experimenter:—

Average Quantity of Glycogen found in the Liver of Rabbits after Fasting, and after a Diet of Starch and Sugar respectively.

	Average amount of Glycogen in Liver.
After fasting for three days	Practically absent.
,, diet of starch and grape-sugar	15·4 per cent.
,, ,, cane-sugar	16·9 ,,

The diet most favourable to the production of a large amount of glycogen is a mixed diet containing a large amount of carbohydrate, but with some portein. Fats taken in as food do not increase the amount of glycogen in the cells, although glycerin may do so.

Destination of Glycogen.—There are two chief theories as to the destination of hepatic glycogen. (1.) That the glycogen is converted into sugar during life by the agency of a ferment (*liver diastase*) also formed in the liver; and that the sugar is conveyed away by the blood of the hepatic veins, to undergo combustion in the tissues. (2.) That the conversion into sugar only occurs after death, and that during life no sugar exists in healthy livers, glycogen not undergoing this transformation.

The first view is that of Claude Bernard, and has been adopted by the majority of physiologists. The second view is that of Pavy: he denies that the liver is a sugar-forming organ, he regards it as a sugar-destroying organ; the sugar is stored as animal starch, but never again leaves the liver as sugar during life. He has been unable to find more sugar in the hepatic blood than in the portal blood. Other observers have found an increase in the sugar of the blood leaving the liver, but the estimation of sugar in a fluid rich in

proteins is a matter of great difficulty. Even if the increase is so small as hardly to be detected, it must be remembered that the whole blood of the body passes through the liver about once a minute, so that a very small increase each time would mount up to a large total.

Pavy further denies that the *post-mortem* formation of sugar from glycogen that occurs in an excised liver is a true picture of what occurs during life, but is due to a ferment which is only formed after death. During life, he regards the glycogen as a source of other substances, like fat and protein. It is certainly a fact that increase of carbohydrate food leads to the formation of fat in the body and in the liver-cells. In support of the theory that glycogen may also contribute to the formation of proteins, he has shown that many proteins contain a carbohydrate radical.

The whole question is under keen discussion at present. We may state, however, that the prevalent opinion is that the liver-cells may be able to convert part of the store of glycogen into fat, but that most of the glycogen leaves the liver as sugar (dextrose), so justifying the name (literally, mother substance of sugar) given to it by Bernard.

Diabetes.—In certain disorders of metabolism, excess of sugar occurs in the blood, and leaves the body by the urine (*glycosuria*). This may be due to temporary causes, as for instance in what is called "alimentary glycosuria"; in this condition the diet contains too much carbohydrate for the liver to store as glycogen, and the excess passes into the blood; it is most readily produced in conditions where the liver is inactive, and may be remedied by reducing the carbohydrate ingested, or by improving the condition of the liver. In other cases, as in puncture diabetes, immediately to be described, it is due to an excessive action of the liver cells converting glycogen into sugar. In other cases, again, it is due to an inability of the organism to burn (*i.e.* utilise) sugar, and this is the usual condition in diabetes mellitus in man. A similar condition may be produced in animals by removal of the pancreas. In most of these cases the diabetic condition may be removed by rigid abstention from starchy and saccharine food. In other cases diet makes little or no difference; in this condition the sugar must come from the metabolism of the protein constituents of protoplasm; 40 per cent. or more of the katabolised protein may leave the body as sugar, certain of its cleavage products (for instance, alanine, see p. 597) acting as intermediate substances in sugar formation.

The principal ways in which diabetes may be produced in animals are the following:—

(1) *By diabetic puncture.*—C. Bernard was the first to show that injury to the floor of the fourth ventricle in the region of the vaso-

motor centre leads to glycosuria. In man, also, disease of the bulb is frequently associated with glycosuria. These observations led to the erroneous conclusion that diabetes is *always* of nervous origin. The diabetes produced in this way cannot be wholly due to vaso-motor disturbances, but is more probably due to an influence on the nerves of the liver which control its glycogenic function (see p. 528), for the glycosuria only occurs when the liver has within it a store of glycogen.

(2) *By extirpation of the pancreas.*—(See also p. 511). It is probable that in diabetes, the oxidative powers of the body-cells are lessened. Nevertheless, other diseases in which diminished oxidation occurs are not necessarily accompanied with glycosuria. The difficulty in diabetes probably lies in an impairment of the capacity of the cells of the body to prepare the sugar for oxidation. In this process the sugar or its derivative glycuronic acid is split into smaller molecules and ultimately into water and carbon dioxide. The close relationship of sugar and glycuronic acid is shown by the following formulæ:—

COH	COH
$(CHOH)_4$	$(CHOH)_4$
CH_2OH	COOH
[Dextrose.]	[Glycuronic acid.]

That is two hydrogen atoms in the CH_2OH group are replaced by one of oxygen. This oxidation is readily brought about in the body, and glycuronic acid is usually found in diabetic urine; but the further oxidation into water and carbon dioxide is a more difficult task, because it involves the disruption of the linkage of the carbon atoms. Perhaps it is here that the internal secretion of the pancreas is effective. This, however, is at present a mere theory, and certainly Lépine's idea that the ferment of the pancreatic internal secretion is one which initiates glycolysis or sugar-splitting *in the blood*, has been abundantly disproved. It may be that the active principle of the pancreatic internal secretion stimulates the glycolytic action of the tissue-cells.

(3) *By administration of phloridzin.*—Many poisons produce temporary glycosuria, but the most interesting and powerful of these is phloridzin. Phloridzin is a glucoside, but the sugar passed in the urine is too great to be accounted for by the small amount of sugar derivable from the drug. Besides that, phloretin, a derivative of phloridzin, free from sugar, produces the same results.

Phloridzin produces diabetes in starved animals, or in those in which any carbohydrate store must have been got rid of by the previous administration of the same drug. Phloridzin-diabetes is therefore analogous to those intense forms of diabetes in man in which the sugar must be derived from protoplasmic metabolism.

A puzzling feature is the absence of an increase of sugar in the

blood; if the phloridzin is directly injected into one renal artery, sugar rapidly appears in the secretion of that kidney; the sugar is formed within the kidney cells from some substance in the blood, and that substance is probably protein. In these cases the ratio of dextrose to nitrogen in the urine is 3·6 : 1; if such a ratio occurs in man when carbohydrates are absent from the food, a very serious condition is revealed; Graham Lusk calls it the fatal ratio.

(4) *By administration of adrenaline.*—This drug also produces a diabetic condition, but in this case there is excess of sugar in the blood also.

Acetonæmia.—Death in diabetic patients is usually preceded by deep coma, or unconsciousness. Some poison must be produced that acts soporifically upon the brain. The breath and urine of these patients smell strongly of acetone; hence the term *acetonæmia.* This apple-like smell should always suggest the possible onset of coma and death, but it is quite certain that acetone (which can certainly be detected in the urine) is not the true poison; ethyl-diacetic acid, which accompanies, and is the source of the acetone, was regarded for a time as the actual poison, but this substance, when introduced into the circulation artificially, does not cause any serious symptoms. The principal poison is hydroxybutyric acid or an amino-derivative of the same. The alkalinity and carbonic acid of the blood are decreased, and the ammonia of the urine is increased; this indicates an attempt of the body to neutralise the poisonous acids.

The Nerves of the Liver.

Claude Bernard observed that an increase of sugar in the blood is brought about by stimulation of the central and peripheral ends of the divided vagus, and that on the section of both vagi sugar disappears from the blood, and glycogen from the liver and tissues generally. These results have been confirmed in recent experiments, and it has been in addition found that stimulation of the cœliac plexus also leads to a loss of glycogen in the liver, with a corresponding production of glucose that passes into the blood. The disappearance of glycogen from the liver cells after the stimulation of these nerves can also be seen histologically (Cavazzani). These results are due to a direct influence of the nerves on the liver cells, for they are obtained after the circulation is stopped by ligature of the aorta and portal vein (Morat and Dufourt).

Vaso-motor nerves.—The vaso-constrictor fibres for the portal vein leave the spinal cord in the third to the eleventh thoracic nerves inclusive (Bayliss and Starling). The nerves of the hepatic artery are constrictors contained in the splanchnic, and dilators in both splanchnic and vagus.

CHAPTER XXXIV

THE ABSORPTION OF FOOD

Food is digested in order that it may be absorbed. It is absorbed in order that it may be assimilated, that is, become an integral part of the living material of the body. The digested food thus diminishes in quantity as it passes along the alimentary canal, and the fæces contain the undigested or indigestible residue.

In the mouth and œsophagus the thickness of the epithelium and the quick passage of the food through these parts reduce absorption to a minimum. Absorption takes place very slightly in the stomach: the small intestine with its folds and villi to increase its surface is the great place for absorption; in the large intestine, absorption (mainly of water) occurs also, but to a less extent.

Foods such as water and soluble salts like sodium chloride are absorbed unchanged. The organic foods are, however, considerably changed, colloid materials such as starch and protein being converted respectively into the diffusible materials sugar and amino-acids.

There are two channels of absorption, the blood-vessels (portal capillaries) and the lymphatic vessels or lacteals.

Absorption, however, is no mere physical process of osmosis and filtration. We must also take into account the fact that the cells through which the absorbed substances pass are living, and in virtue of their inherent activity not only select materials for absorption, but also change those substances while in contact with them. These cells are of two kinds—(1) the columnar epithelium that covers the surface; and (2) the lymph cells in the lymphoid tissue beneath. It is now generally accepted that of the two the former, the columnar epithelium, is the more important.

Absorption of Carbohydrates.—Though the sugar formed from starch by ptyalin and amylopsin is maltose, that found in the blood is glucose. Under normal circumstances little, if any, is absorbed by the lacteals. The glucose is formed from the maltose by the succus entericus, aided by the action of the epithelial cells through which it

passes. Cane sugar and milk sugar are also converted into glucoses before absorption.

The carbohydrate food which enters the blood as glucose is taken to the liver, and there stored up in the form of glycogen—a reserve store of carbohydrate material for the future needs of the body. Glycogen, however, is found in animals who take no carbohydrate food. It must, then, be formed by the protoplasmic activity of the liver cells from their protein constituents (see preceding chapter). Glucose is the only sugar from which the liver is capable of forming glycogen. If other carbohydrates such as cane sugar or lactose are injected into the blood-stream direct, they are unaltered by the liver, and finally leave the body by the urine.

Absorption of Proteins.—It is possible for the alimentary canal to absorb soluble protein in an unchanged condition. Thus, after taking a large number of eggs, egg-albumin is found in the urine. Patients fed *per rectum* derive nourishment from protein food, although proteolytic enzymes are absent from that part of the intestine. But such occurrences are exceptional; they are merely illustrations of the fact that under unusual conditions certain parts of the body can rise to the occasion and perform unusual feats.

The normal course of events is that the food proteins are broken up into their constituent amino-acids, and it is in this form that they are absorbed. If an animal receives, instead of protein, the final cleavage products of pancreatic digestion, it continues to maintain its health and nitrogenous equilibrium; that is to say, the cells of the body are able to synthesise tissue-proteins from the fragments of the food proteins.

Not many years ago, it was held that proteins were mainly absorbed as peptone, and that the absence of proteoses and peptones in the blood-stream was due to the fact that the intestinal epithelium had the power of resynthesising the blood-proteins from the peptone; and that this protected us from the poisonous effects which "peptone" exercises when it gets into the circulation.

Recent research has failed to substantiate such views, and the intestinal epithelium does not possess the exclusive power of building up heavy moleculed proteins either from "peptones" or from amino-acids.

It is certainly difficult to find the amino-acids in the blood during absorption, for several reasons: (1) the absorption during any given time is slow, and the products are diluted with the whole volume of the blood; (2) the presence of coagulable proteins in the blood in large quantity renders a search for the amino-acids difficult; and (3) when the amino-acids get into the blood they do not accumulate there, but are rapidly removed by the cells of the tissues. In spite of these difficulties, Leathes and, later, Howell have suc-

ceeded in demonstrating that during absorption the non-protein (that is the amino-acid) nitrogen of the blood increases.

There is something very attractive in this view, because it affords a rational explanation of why it is that the organism can construct the proteins peculiar to itself and maintain its chemical individuality, although the food taken varies so widely in composition.

If a man wants to build a house from the bricks of another previously built house, he naturally takes the latter to pieces first, and uses the bricks most suitable for his purpose, and arranges them in a different way to their previous arrangement. The Germans have recently coined the expression Bausteine (or building stones) for the final products of proteolysis with the same underlying idea; these fragments are rearranged by the tissue cells into tissue-protein, which is different architecturally from the food-protein.

Abderhalden has published a very striking experiment in confirmation of this view. He collected the blood of a horse, separated out the various proteins of the plasma, and estimated in each the yield of certain cleavage products (glutamic acid and tyrosine) which resulted from hydrolysis. He then fed the horse so that it formed new blood, but the only protein given was gliadin, a vegetable product, which is remarkable for its high percentage yield (31·5) of glutamic acid. But in the regenerated blood proteins the percentage yield of glutamic acid was not increased at all; they exactly resembled the proteins previously present.

It is a far cry from the highly specialised organism of the horse to the protoplasm of the simple mould known as *Aspergillus niger;* nevertheless, the same general rule holds; the protein matter present yields on hydrolysis, glycine, alanine, leucine, glutamic and aspartic acids, but aromatic products, such as tyrosine and phenylalanine, were not discovered. The mould was then cultivated on media of widely varying composition, but the protein formed in the living protoplasm remained constant in composition, and is thus independent of the composition of the nutritive medium.

What, then, if this is the case, would be the fate of food proteins introduced directly into the blood-stream without the intervention of the alimentary digestive processes? This is a question to which Mendel and Rockwood have been attempting to find an answer. If the preliminary cleavage in the gastro-intestinal tract is absolutely necessary, one would anticipate that a foreign food protein (such as edestin from hemp seed, or excelsin from Brazil nuts) administered by intravenous or intraperitoneal injection would not be assimilated, but would be cast out of the body in one or more of the excretions. But Mendel and Rockwood found that they were not eliminated in either urine or bile. In some cases, a proteose was found in small quantities in the urine, but the greater part of the protein administered was retained in the body, especially if the injection was slowly performed.

The fact that proteins are retained after this method of administration and apparently used in the body does not really militate against the theory that proteins under normal conditions are more or less completely broken down in the alimentary tract. It is more than probable that cleavage is absolutely necessary for assimilation, and here the enzymes present in the tissue-cells step in; they are capable of occasionally taking the place of the pancreatic trypsin and intestinal erepsin and doing their work. The presence of a proteose in urine in some of Mendel and Rockwood's experiments points in this direction, and this view is supported also by Vernon's recent discovery that every tissue of the body has an ereptic action, and that in some tissues this power is even greater than in the intestinal mucous membrane.

It must not, however, be supposed that all the building stones of

the food-protein are utilised in this way. The body is remarkable for its economical use of the tissue-proteins, and quite a small quantity relatively is used up in our daily activities, and so repair is only necessary to the same small extent. We may again get some assistance from our example of the man building a house. When he takes the first house to pieces, there will be a lot of useless bricks and other rubbish, and if the house he wants to build is a smaller one than the one he has destroyed, he will have to discard also many bricks which are not rubbish. So it is with the fragments of the food-protein, which, on usual diets, are more abundant than is necessary for the building of tissue-protein. The excess is carried to the liver, and there rapidly converted into urea, which is finally discharged from the body by the kidneys.

It should be further noted that the nitrogen of the protein is split off from it by hydrolysis, not by oxidation, so that the products of breakdown retain almost intact the previous energy of the protein, and the non-nitrogenous residue, in particular, is thus available for calorific process in the same way that the non-nitrogenous foods (carbohydrates and fat) are.

Absorption of Fats.—The fats undergo in the intestine two changes: one a physical change (emulsification), the other a chemical change (saponification). The lymphatic vessels are the great channels for fat absorption, and their name *lacteals* is derived from the milk-like appearance of their contents (*chyle*) during the absorption of fat.

The course which the minute fat-globules take may be studied by killing animals at varying periods after a meal of fat, and making osmic acid microscopic preparations of the villi. Figs. 410 and 411 illustrate the appearances observed.

The columnar epithelium cells become first filled with fatty globules of varying size, which are generally larger near the free border. The globules pass down the cells, the larger ones breaking up into smaller ones during the journey; they are then transferred to the amœboid cells of the lymphoid tissue beneath: these ultimately penetrate into the central lacteal, where they either disintegrate or discharge their cargo into the lymph-stream. The globules are by this time divided into immeasurably small ones, the molecular basis of chyle. The chyle enters the blood-stream by the thoracic duct, and after an abundant fatty meal the blood-plasma is quite milky; the fat droplets are so small that they circulate without hindrance through the capillaries. The fat in the blood after a meal is eventually stored up especially in the cells of adipose tissue. It must, however, be borne in mind that the fat of the body is not exclusively derived from the fat of the food, but it may originate from carbohydrate, and according to some observers from protein also.

The great difficulty in fat absorption was to explain how the fat

first gets into the columnar epithelium: these cells will not take up other particles, and it is certain that the epithelial cells do not protrude pseudopodia from their borders (this, however, does occur in the endoderm of some of the lower invertebrates); moreover, fat particles have never been seen in the striated border of the cells.

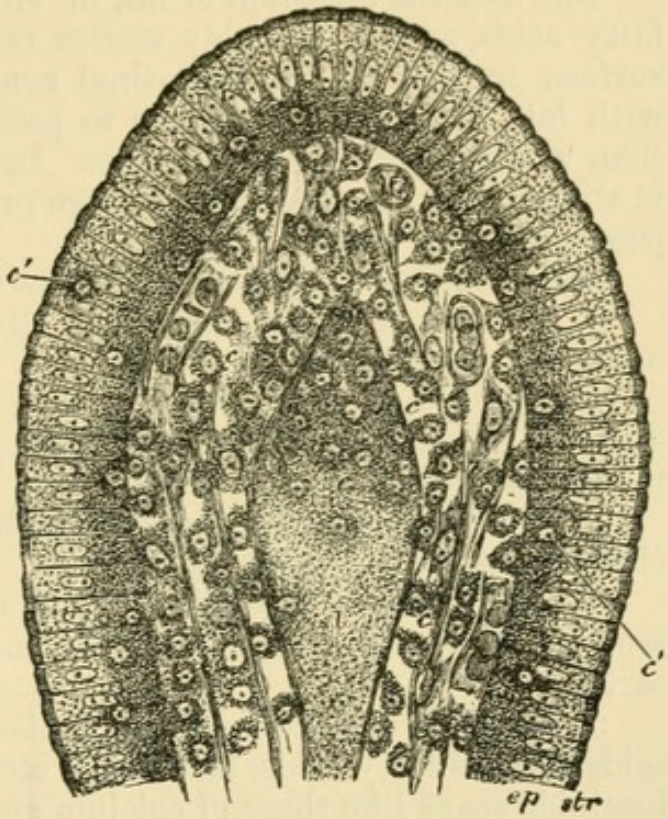


FIG. 410.—Section of the villus of a rat killed during fat absorption. *ep*, epithelium; *str*, striated border; *c*, lymph-cells; *c'*, lymph-cells in the epithelium; *l*, central lacteal containing disintegrating lymph-corpuscles. (E. A. Schäfer.)

Although granules really protoplasmic in nature are apt to be mistaken for fat granules, there is no doubt that the particles found in the cells during fat absorption are composed of fat. There is also no doubt that the epithelial cells have the power of forming fat out of the fatty acids and glycerin into which fats have been broken up in the intestine. Munk, who has performed a large number of experiments on the subject, showed that the splitting of fats into glycerin and fatty acids occurs to a much greater extent than was formerly supposed; these substances, being soluble, pass readily into the epithelium cells; and these cells perform the synthetic act of building them into fat once more, the fat so formed appearing in the form of small globules, surrounding or becoming mixed with the protoplasmic granules that are ordinarily present. Another remarkable fact which he made out is that after feeding an animal on fatty acids the chyle contains fat. The necessary glycerin must have been formed by protoplasmic activity during absorption. The more recent work of Moore and Rockwood has shown that fat is absorbed *entirely* as fatty acid or soap and glycerin; and that preliminary emulsification,

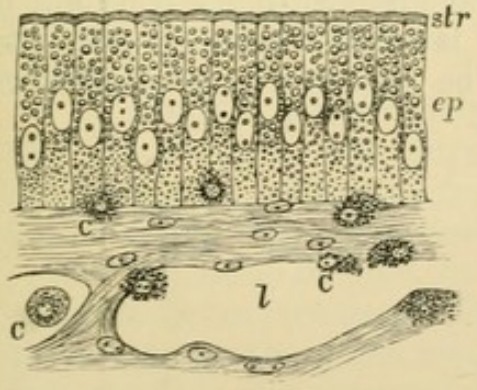


FIG. 411.—Mucous membrane of frog's intestine during fat absorption. *ep*, epithelium; *str*, striated border; C, lymph corpuscles; *l*, lacteal. (E. A. Schäfer.)

though advantageous for the formation of these substances, is not essential.

Bile aids the digestion of fat, in virtue of its being a solvent of fatty acids, and it probably assists fat absorption by reducing the surface tension of the intestinal contents; membranes moistened with bile allow fatty materials to pass through them more readily than would otherwise be the case. In cases of disease in which bile is absent from the intestines, a large proportion of the fat in the food passes into the fæces.

The fæces are alkaline, and contain the following substances:—

1. Water: in health from 68 to 82 per cent.; in diarrhœa it is more abundant still.

2. Undigested food; that is, if food is taken in excess, some escapes the action of the digestive juices. On a moderate diet unaltered protein is never found.

3. Indigestible constituents of the food: cellulose, keratin, mucin, chlorophyll, gums, resins, cholesterin.

4. Constituents digestible with difficulty: uncooked starch, tendons, elastin, various phosphates, and other salts of the alkaline earths.

5. Products of decomposition of the food: indole, skatole, phenol, acids such as fatty acids, lactic acid, etc.; hæmatin from hæmoglobin; insoluble soaps like those of calcium and magnesium.

6. Bacteria of all sorts, and *débris* from the intestinal wall; cells, nuclei, mucus, etc. This forms a very large contribution.

7. Bile residues: mucus, cholesterin, traces of bile acids and their products of decomposition, stercobilin from the bile pigment.

The average quantity of solid fæcal matter passed by the human adult *per diem* is 6 to 8 ounces.

Meconium is the name given to the greenish-black contents of the intestine of new-born children. It is chiefly concentrated bile, with *débris* from the intestinal wall. The pigment is a mixture of bilirubin and biliverdin, not stercobilin.

CHAPTER XXXV

THE MECHANICAL PROCESSES OF DIGESTION

UNDER this head we shall study the neuro-muscular mechanism of the alimentary canal, which has for its object the onward movement of the food, and its thorough admixture with the digestive juices. We shall therefore have to consider mastication, deglutition, the movements of the stomach and intestines, defæcation, and vomiting.

MASTICATION.

The act of mastication is performed by the biting and grinding movement of the lower range of teeth against the upper. The simultaneous movements of the tongue and cheeks assist partly by crushing the softer portions of the food against the hard palate and gums, and thus supplement the action of the teeth, and partly by returning the morsels of food to the teeth again and again, as they are squeezed out from between them, until they have been sufficiently chewed.

The act of mastication is much assisted by the saliva, and the intimate incorporation of this secretion with the food is called *insalivation.*

Mastication is much more thoroughly performed by some animals than by others. Thus, dogs hardly chew their food at all, but the œsophagus is protected from abrasion by a thick coating of very viscid saliva which lubricates the pieces of rough food.

In vegetable feeders, on the other hand, insalivation is a much more important process. This is especially so in the ruminants; in these animals, the grass, etc., taken, is hurriedly swallowed, and passes into the first compartment of their four-chambered stomach. Later on, it is returned to the mouth in small instalments for thorough mastication and insalivation; this is the act of *rumination,* or "chewing the cud"; it is then once more swallowed and passes on to the digestive regions of the stomach.

In man, mastication is also an important process, and in people

who have lost their teeth severe dyspepsia is often produced, which can be cured by a new set of teeth.

Deglutition.

When properly masticated, the food is transmitted in successive portions to the stomach by the act of deglutition or swallowing. This, for the purpose of description, may be divided into *three* acts. In the first, particles of food collected as a bolus are made to glide between the surface of the tongue and the palatine arch, till they have passed the anterior arch of the fauces; in the second, the morsel is carried through the pharynx; and in the third, it reaches the stomach through the œsophagus. These three acts follow each other rapidly. (1.) The first act is voluntary, although it is usually performed unconsciously; the morsel of food when sufficiently masticated, is pressed between the tongue and palate, by the agency of the muscles of the former, in such a manner as to force it back to the entrance of the pharynx. (2.) The second act is the most complicated, because the food must go past the posterior orifice of the nose and the upper opening of the larynx without entering them. When it has been brought, by the first act, between the anterior arches of the palate, it is moved onwards by the movement of the tongue backwards, and by the muscles of the anterior arches contracting on it and then behind it. The root of the tongue being retracted, and the larynx being raised with the pharynx and carried forwards under the base of the tongue, the epiglottis is pressed over the upper opening of the larynx, and the morsel glides past it; the closure of the glottis is additionally secured by the simultaneous contraction of its own muscles: so that, even when the epiglottis is destroyed, there is little danger of food passing into the larynx so long as its muscles can act freely. In man, and some other animals, the epiglottis is not drawn as a lid over the larynx during swallowing. At the same time, the raising of the soft palate, so that its posterior edge touches the back part of the pharynx, and the approximation of the sides of the posterior palatine arch, which move quickly inwards like side curtains, close the passage into the upper part of the pharynx and the posterior nares, and form an inclined plane, along the under surface of which the morsel descends; then the pharynx, raised up to receive it, in its turn contracts, and forces it onwards into the œsophagus. The passage of the bolus of food through the three constrictors of the pharynx is the last step in this stage. (3.) In the third act, in which the food passes through the œsophagus, every part of that tube, as it receives the morsel and is dilated by it, is stimulated to contract: hence an undulatory or peristaltic contraction of the œsophagus occurs, which is easily observable through the skin in long-necked animals like the

swan. If we suppose the bolus to be at one particular place in the tube, it acts stimulatingly on the circular muscular fibres behind it, and inhibitingly on those in front; the contraction therefore squeezes it into the dilated portion of the tube in front, where the same process is repeated, and this travels along the whole length of the tube. The second and third parts of the act of deglutition are involuntary. The action of these parts is more rapid than peristalsis usually is. This is due to the large amount of striated muscular tissue present. It serves the useful purpose of getting the bolus as quickly as possible past the opening of the respiratory tract.

Nervous Mechanism.—The nerves engaged in the reflex act of deglutition are:—*sensory*, branches of the fifth cranial nerve supplying the soft palate and tongue; glosso-pharyngeal, supplying the tongue and pharynx; the superior laryngeal branch of the vagus, supplying the epiglottis and the glottis; while the *motor* fibres concerned are:—branches of the fifth, supplying part of the digastric and mylo-hyoid muscles, and the muscles of mastication; the bulbar part of the spinal accessory through the pharyngeal plexus, supplying the levator palati, probably by rootlets which are glosso-pharyngeal in origin; the glosso-pharyngeal and vagus, and possibly the bulbar part of the spinal accessory, supplying the muscles of the pharynx through the pharyngeal plexus; the vagus, in virtue of its spinal accessory roots, supplying the muscles of the larynx through the inferior laryngeal branch; and the hypo-glossal, the muscles of the tongue. The nerve-centre by which the muscles are harmonised in their action, is situated in the medulla oblongata.

Stimulation of the vagi gives rise to peristalsis of the œsophagus. The cell stations of these fibres are in the ganglion trunci vagi. Division of both pneumogastric nerves gives rise to paralysis of the œsophagus and stomach, and firm contraction of the cardiac orifice. These nerves therefore normally supply the œsophagus with motor, and the cardiac sphincter with inhibitory fibres. If food is swallowed after these nerves are divided, it accumulates in the gullet and never reaches the stomach.

In discussing peristalsis on a previous occasion (p. 158), we arrived at the conclusion that it is an inherent property of muscle rather than of nerve; though normally it is controlled and influenced by nervous agency. This nervous control is especially marked in the œsophagus; for if that tube is divided across, leaving the nerve branches intact, a wave of contraction will travel from one end to the other across the cut.

Swallowing of Fluids.—The swallowing both of solids and liquids is a muscular act, and can, therefore, take place in opposition to the force of gravity. Thus, horses and many other

animals habitually drink up-hill, and the same feat can be performed by jugglers.

In swallowing liquids the two mylo-hyoid muscles form a diaphragm below the anterior part of the mouth. The stylo-glossi draw the tongue backwards and elevate its base; the two hyo-glossi act with these, pulling the tongue backwards and downwards. The action of these muscles resembles that of a force-pump projecting the mass of fluid down into the œsophagus; it reaches the cardiac orifice with great speed, and the pharyngeal and œsophageal muscles do not contract on it at all, but are inhibited during the passage of the fluid through them (Kronecker).

This is proved in a striking way in cases of poisoning by corrosive substances, such as oil of vitriol; the mouth and tongue are scarred and burnt, but the pharynx and œsophagus escape serious injury, so rapidly does the fluid pass along them; the cardiac orifice of the stomach is the next place to show the effects of the corrosive.

There is, however, no hard-and-fast line between the swallowing of solids and fluids: the more liquid the food is, the more does the force-pump action just described manifest itself.

Movements of the Stomach.

The gastric fluid is assisted in accomplishing its share in digestion by the movements of the stomach. In graminivorous birds, for example, the contraction of the strong muscular gizzard affords a necessary aid to digestion, by grinding and triturating the hard seeds which constitute their food. But in the stomach of man and other Mammalia the movements of the muscular coat are too feeble to exercise any such mechanical force on the food; neither are they needed, for mastication has already done the mechanical work of a gizzard; and it has been demonstrated that substances are digested even when enclosed in perforated tubes, and consequently protected from mechanical influence.

When digestion is not going on, the stomach is uniformly contracted, its orifices not more firmly than the rest of its walls; but, if examined shortly after the introduction of food, it is found closely encircling its contents, and its orifices are firmly closed by sphincters. The cardiac orifice, every time food is swallowed, opens to admit its passage into the stomach, and immediately again closes. The pyloric orifice, during the first part of gastric digestion, is usually so completely closed, that even when the stomach is separated from the intestines, none of its contents escape. But towards the termination of the digestive process, the pylorus offers less resistance to the passage of substances from the stomach; first it yields to allow the successively digested portions to go through it; and then it allows

the transit even of undigested substances. The peristaltic action of the muscular coat, whereby the digested portions are gradually moved towards the pylorus, also ensures thorough admixture with the gastric juice. The movements increase as the process of chymification advances, and are continued until it is completed.

The contraction of the fibres situated towards the pyloric end of the stomach is more energetic and more decidedly peristaltic than those of the cardiac portion. Thus, it was found in the case of St Martin, that when the bulb of a thermometer was placed about three inches from the pylorus, through the gastric fistula, it was tightly embraced from time to time, and drawn towards the pyloric orifice for a distance of three or four inches. The object of this movement appears to be, as just said, to carry the food towards the pylorus as fast as it is formed into chyme, and to propel the chyme into the duodenum; the undigested portions of food are kept back until they are also reduced into chyme, or until all that is digestible has passed out. The action of these fibres is often seen in the contracted state of the pyloric portion of the stomach after death, when it alone is contracted and firm, while the cardiac portion forms a dilated sac. Sometimes, by a predominant action of strong circular fibres placed between the cardia and pylorus, the two portions, or ends, as they are called, of the stomach, are partially separated from each other by a kind of hour-glass contraction.

The subject has recently been taken up by Cannon. He gave an animal food mixed with bismuth subnitrate, and obtained by the Röntgen rays shadow photographs of the stomach, because the bismuth salt renders its contents opaque. His results mainly confirm those of the earlier investigators; the principal peristalsis occurs in the pyloric portion of the stomach. The cardiac portion (including the fundus) presses steadily on its contents, and as they become chymified, urges them onwards towards the pyloric portion; the latter empties itself gradually through the pylorus into the duodenum, and in the later stages of digestion the cardiac part also is constricted into a tube.

Under ordinary circumstances, three or four hours may be taken as the average time occupied by the digestion of a meal in the stomach. But the digestibility and quantity of the meal, and the state of body and mind of the individual, are important causes of variation. The pylorus usually opens for the first time about twenty minutes after digestion begins; it, however, quickly closes again. The acid chyme provides a chemical stimulus for pancreatic secretion, and the strongly alkaline pancreatic juice neutralises it; as soon as the intestinal contents are neutral, the pylorus again opens, more acid chyme is thrust into the duodenum; more pancreatic juice provided; and so on, until the stomach is finally emptied.

Influence of the Nervous System.—The normal movements of the stomach during gastric digestion are in part controlled by the plexuses of nerves and ganglia contained in its walls. The stomach is also connected with the higher nerve-centres by means of branches of the vagi and of the splanchnic nerves through the solar plexus.

The vagi (especially the left) contain the accelerator nerves of the stomach; when they are stimulated the result is peristaltic movement. The sympathetic fibres are inhibitory; when they are stimulated peristalsis ceases. The cell stations on the course of the vagus fibres are in the ganglion trunci vagi; the post-ganglionic fibres that issue from this ganglion are non-medullated.

The sympathetic fibres leave the spinal cord by the anterior roots of the spinal nerves from the fifth to the eighth thoracic. They pass into the sympathetic system, have cell stations in the cœliac ganglion, and ultimately pass to the stomach by the splanchnic nerves.

It seems probable that automatic rhythmical contraction is inherent in the muscular coat of the stomach, and that the central nervous system is only employed to regulate it by impulses passing down by the vagi or splanchnic nerves.

The secretory nerves of the gastric glands are treated on p. 496.

Vomiting.

The expulsion of the contents of the stomach in vomiting, like that of mucus or other matter from the lungs in *coughing*, is preceded by an inspiration; the glottis is then closed, and immediately afterwards the abdominal muscles strongly act; but here occurs the difference in the two actions. Instead of the vocal cords yielding to the action of the abdominal muscles, they remain tightly closed. Thus the diaphragm, being unable to go up, forms an unyielding surface against which the stomach can be pressed. At the same time the *cardiac* sphincter being relaxed, and the orifice which it naturally guards being dilated, while the *pylorus* is closed, and the stomach itself also contracting, the action of the abdominal muscles expels the contents of the organ through the œsophagus, pharynx, and mouth. The reversed peristaltic action of the œsophagus possibly increases the effect.

It has been frequently stated that the stomach itself is quite passive during vomiting, and that the expulsion of its contents is effected solely by the pressure exerted upon it when the capacity of the abdomen is diminished by the contraction of the diaphragm, and subsequently of the abdominal muscles. The experiments and observations, however, which are supposed to confirm this statement, only show that the contraction of the abdominal muscles alone is

sufficient to expel matters from an unresisting bag through the œsophagus; and that, under very abnormal circumstances, the stomach, by itself, cannot expel its contents. They by no means show that in ordinary vomiting the stomach is passive, for there are good reasons for believing the contrary. In some cases of violent vomiting the contents of the duodenum are passed by anti-peristalsis into the stomach, and are then vomited. Where there is obstruction to the intestine, as in strangulated hernia, the total contents of the small intestine may be vomited.

Nervous mechanism.—Some few persons possess the power of vomiting at will, or the power may be acquired by effort and practice. But normally the action is a reflex one.

The *afferent* nerves are principally the fifth, and glosso-pharyngeal (as in vomiting produced by tickling the fauces), and the vagus (as in vomiting produced by gastric irritants); but vomiting may occur from stimulation of other sensory nerves, *e.g.*, those from the kidney, uterus, testicle, etc. The centre may also be stimulated by impressions from the cerebrum and cerebellum, producing so-called *central* vomiting occurring in diseases of those parts.

The *centre* for vomiting is in the medulla oblongata, and coincides with the centres of the nerves concerned.

The *efferent* (motor) impulses are carried by the vagi to the stomach, by the phrenics to the diaphragm, and by various other spinal nerves to the abdominal muscles.

Emetics.—Some emetics produce vomiting by irritating the stomach; others, like tartar emetic, apomorphine, etc., by stimulating the vomiting centre.

Movements of the Intestines.

The movement of the intestines is *peristaltic* or *vermicular*, and is effected by the alternate contractions and dilatations of successive portions of the muscular coats. The contractions, which may commence at any point of the intestine, extend in a wave-like manner along the tube. They are similar to what we have described in the œsophagus. In any given portion, the longitudinal muscular fibres contract first, or more than the circular; they draw a portion of the intestine upwards, over the substance to be propelled, and then the circular fibres of the same portion contracting in succession from above downwards, press the substance into the portion next below, in which at once the same succession of actions next ensues. These movements take place slowly, and, in health, commonly give rise to no sensation; but they are perceptible when they are accelerated under the influence of any irritant.

The movements of the intestines are sometimes retrograde; and

there is no hindrance to the backward movement of the contents of the small intestine, as in cases of violent vomiting just referred to. But almost complete security is afforded against the passage of the contents of the large into the small intestine by the ileo-cæcal valve.

Proceeding from above downwards, the muscular fibres of the large intestine become, on the whole, stronger in direct proportion to the greater strength required for the onward moving of the fæces, which are gradually, owing to the absorption of water, becoming firmer. The greatest strength is in the rectum, at the termination of which the circular unstriped muscular fibres form a strong band called the *internal* sphincter; while an *external* sphincter muscle with striped fibres is placed rather lower down, and more externally, and holds the orifice closed by a constant slight tonic contraction.

Nervous mechanism.—Experimental irritation of the brain or cord produces no evident or constant effect on the movements of the intestines during life; yet in consequence of certain mental conditions the movements are accelerated or retarded; and in paraplegia the intestines appear after a time much weakened in their power, and costiveness, with a tympanitic condition, ensues.

As in the case of the œsophagus and stomach, the peristaltic movements of the intestines may be directly set up in the muscular fibres by the presence of food or chyme acting as the stimulus. Few or no movements occur when the intestines are empty.

The small intestine is connected with the central nervous system by the vagi and by the splanchnic nerves. The fibres which leave the medulla in the vagal rootlets are fine medullated ones: they arborise around cells in the ganglion trunci, whence non-medullated fibres continue the impulse to the intestinal walls; they pass through the solar plexus, but are not connected with nerve-cells in that plexus. In animals stimulation of the pneumogastric nerves induces peristaltic movements of the intestines. If the intestines are contracting peristaltically before the stimulus is applied, the movements are inhibited for a brief period, after which they are greatly augmented. The sympathetic fibres leave the cord as fine medullated fibres by the anterior roots from the sixth thoracic to the first lumbar, pass through the lateral chain, but do not reach their cell-stations until they arrive at the superior mesenteric ganglia: thence they pass as non-medullated fibres to the muscular coats. Stimulation of these fibres causes inhibition of any peristaltic movements that may be present. These nerves also contain vaso-motor fibres, and section of these leads to vaso-dilatation and a great increase of very watery succus entericus.

Peristalsis in the small intestine can be excited artificially even when all nerves running to it from the central nervous system have been cut through. After pinching any particular spot a wave of

inhibition travels downwards, and a wave of contraction upwards. (Starling.)

In the case of the large intestine there is no supply from the vagus. The inferior mesenteric nerves are inhibitory in function, and the pelvic nerves take the place of the vagal fibres as excitatory: this refers to both coats of the muscular wall. If one pinches any particular spot, the upward wave of contraction is not so marked as in the small intestine, but the downward travelling wave of inhibition is well seen.

Duration of Intestinal Digestion.—The time occupied by the journey of a given portion of food from the stomach to the anus, varies considerably even in health, and on this account probably it is that such different opinions have been expressed in regard to the subject. About twelve hours are occupied by the journey of an ordinary meal through the *small* intestine, and twenty-four to thirty-six hours by the passage through the *large* bowel.

Drugs given for relief of diarrhœa or constipation act in various ways: some influence the amount of secretion and thus increase or diminish the fluidity of the intestinal contents; others acting on the muscular tissue or its nerves increase or diminish peristalsis.

The description just given of the intestinal movements relates to the principal movement observable, and which is of a peristaltic character. The rate of propagation of the peristaltic wave is slow but variable; it may be as small as 1 centimetre per minute.

Starling in his recent work on the subject has called attention to another kind of movement which he terms *swaying* or *pendulum* movement. These movements, and also the true peristaltic waves, may be seen in the small intestine in a warm saline bath even after all the nerves connecting them to the central nervous system have been cut through; the pendulum movements consist of slight waves of contraction affecting both muscular coats, and these are rapidly propagated at the rate of 2 to 5 centimetres per second. They cause a movement of the intestines from side to side, and occur at regular intervals of 5 or 6 seconds. Their use appears to bring about a mixing of the intestinal contents; they are not able to move the contents onwards.

They differ from the true peristaltic waves in being *myogenic*; that is, they are due to the rhythmicality of the muscular fibres themselves, and are propagated from one muscular fibre to another. They are not abolished by painting the intestine with cocaine, or by an injection of nicotine. The true peristaltic waves cease under these circumstances, and they are, therefore, co-ordinated reflex actions, but as they continue after all nerves connecting the intestines to the central nervous system are severed, they must be carried out by the local nervous mechanism. This is the only example known of a true reflex action dependent on peripheral nervous structures.

Intestinal Oncometer.—To study the volume changes of vascular origin, a loop of intestine is enclosed in an oncometer like that described on p. 152 (fig. 179). This is a most valuable application of plethysmography, for the loop gives an accurate record of what is occurring in the splanchnic area.

Defæcation.—The act of the expulsion of fæces is in part due to an increased reflex peristaltic action of the lower part of the large intestine, namely, of the sigmoid flexure and rectum, and in part to the action of the abdominal muscles. In the case of active voluntary efforts, there is usually, first, an inspiration, as in the case of coughing,

sneezing, and vomiting; the glottis is then closed, and the diaphragm fixed. The abdominal muscles are contracted, as in expiration; but as the glottis is closed, the whole of their pressure is exercised on the abdominal contents. The sphincter of the rectum being relaxed, the evacuation of its contents takes place accordingly, the effect being increased by the peristaltic action of the intestine.

Nervous Mechanism.—The anal sphincter muscle is normally in a state of tonic contraction. The nervous centre which governs this contraction is situated in the lumbar region of the spinal cord, inasmuch as in cases of division of the cord above this region the sphincter regains, after a time, to some extent the tonicity which is lost immediately after the operation. By an effort of the will, acting on the centre, the contraction may be relaxed or increased. Such voluntary control over the act is obviously impossible when the cord is divided. In ordinary cases the apparatus is set in action by the gradual accumulation of fæces in the sigmoid flexure and rectum, pressing by the peristaltic action of these parts of the large intestine against the sphincter, and causing by reflex action its relaxation; this sensory impulse acts upon the brain and reflexly through the spinal centre. At the same time that the sphincter is inhibited or relaxed, impulses pass to the muscles of the lower intestine increasing their peristalsis, and to the abdominal muscles as well.

Both inhibitory and motor fibres for the lower part of the intestine leave the cord by anterior roots lower than those which contain the fibres for the small intestine. The cell-stations are situated in the inferior mesenteric ganglia, or along the course of the colonic or hypogastric nerves. The lower portion of the large intestine resembles the œsophagus in being more under external nervous control than the small intestine.

CHAPTER XXXVI

THE URINARY APPARATUS

THIS consists of the kidneys; from each a tube called the *ureter* leads to the bladder in which the urine is temporarily stored; from the bladder a duct called the *urethra* leads to the exterior.

The Kidneys are situated deeply in the lumbar region of the abdomen on either side of the spinal column behind the peritoneum. In man each is about 4 inches long, $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches broad, and $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch thick, and weighs about $4\frac{1}{2}$ oz.

Structure.—The kidney is covered by a fibrous capsule, which is slightly attached at its inner surface to the proper substance of the organ by means of very fine bundles of areolar tissue and minute blood-vessels. From the healthy kidney, therefore, it may be easily torn off without much injury to the subjacent cortical portion of the organ. At the *hilus* of the kidney, it becomes continuous with the external coat of the upper and dilated part of the ureter (fig. 412).

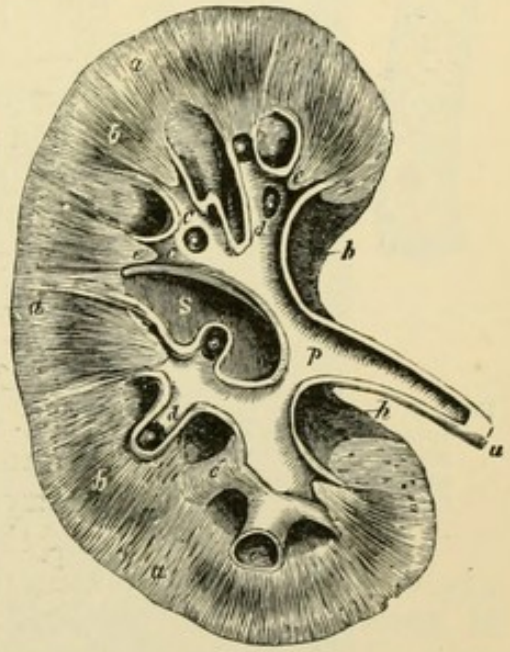


FIG. 412.—Plan of a longitudinal section through the pelvis and substance of the right kidney, $\frac{1}{2}$: *a*, the cortical substance; *b*, *b*, broad part of the pyramids of Malpighi; *c*, *c*, the divisions of the pelvis named calyces, laid open; *c'*, one of those unopened; *d*, summit of the pyramid projecting into calyces; *e*, *e*, section of the narrow part of two pyramids near the calyces; *p*, pelvis or enlarged portion of the ureter within the kidney; *u*, the ureter; *s*, the sinus; *h*, the hilus.

On dividing the kidney into two equal parts by a section carried through its long convex border it is seen to be composed of two portions called respectively *cortical* and *medullary;* the latter is composed of about a dozen conical bundles of urinary tubules, each bundle forming what is called a *pyramid.* The upper part of the

ureter or duct of the organ is dilated into the *pelvis;* and this, again, after separating into two or three principal divisions, is finally subdivided into still smaller portions, varying in number from about 8 to 12, called *calyces.* Each of these little calyces or cups receives the pointed extremity or *papilla* of a pyramid. The number of pyramids varies in different animals; in some there is only one.

The kidney is a compound tubular gland, and both its cortical and medullary portions are composed of tubes, the *tubuli uriniferi,* which, by one extremity, in the *cortical* portion, commence around tufts of capillary blood-vessels, called *Malpighian bodies,* and, by the other, open through the papillæ into the pelvis of the kidney, and thus discharge the urine which flows through them. They are bound together by connective tissue.



FIG. 413.—A. Portion of a secreting tubule from the cortical substance of the kidney. B. The epithelial or gland-cells. × 700 times.

In the pyramids the tubes are straight—uniting to form larger tubes as they descend through these from the cortical portion; while in the latter region they spread out more irregularly, and become much convoluted. But in the *boundary zone* between cortex and medulla, small collections of straight tubes called *medullary rays* project into the cortical region.

Tubuli Uriniferi.—The tubuli uriniferi (fig. 417) are composed of a basement membrane, lined internally by epithelium. They vary considerably in size in different parts of their course, but are, on an average, about $\frac{1}{600}$ of an inch ($\frac{1}{24}$ mm.) in diameter, and are found to be made up of several distinct portions which differ from one another very markedly, both in situation and structure.

Each begins in the cortex as a dilatation called the *Capsule of Bowman;* this encloses a tuft or glomerulus of capillaries called a *Malpighian corpuscle.* The tubule leaves the capsule by a *neck,* and then becomes convoluted (*first convoluted tubule*), but soon after becomes nearly straight or slightly spiral (*spiral tubule*); then rapidly narrowing it passes down into the medulla as the *descending tubule of Henle;* this turns round, forming a loop (*loop of Henle*), and passes up to the cortex again as the *ascending tubule of Henle.* It then becomes larger and irregularly zigzag (*zigzag tubule*) and again convoluted (*second convoluted tubule*). Eventually it narrows into a *junctional tubule,* which joins a straight or *collecting tubule.* This passes straight through the medulla, where it joins with others to

form one of the *ducts of Bellini* that open at the apex of the pyramid. These parts are all shown in fig. 414.

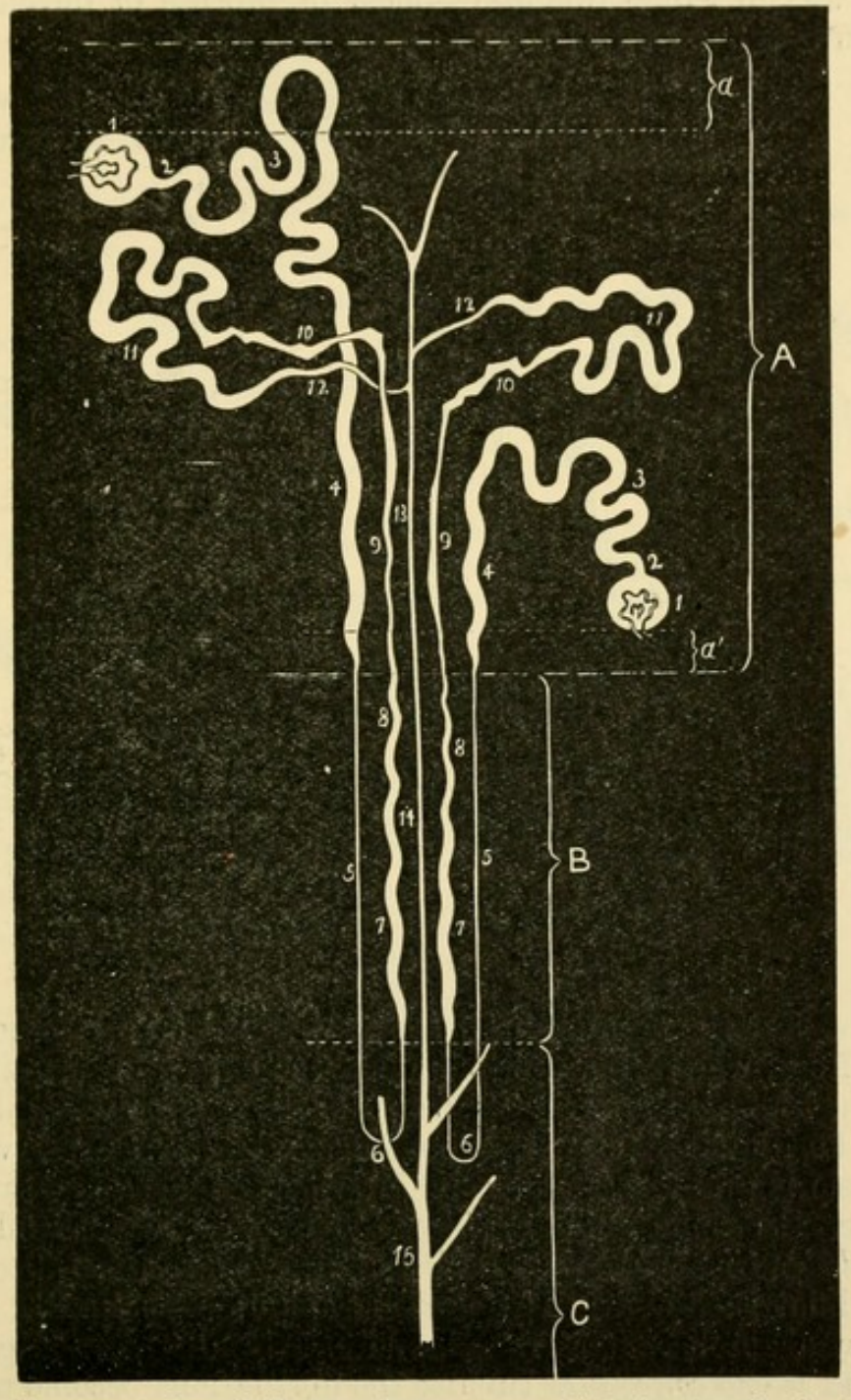


FIG. 414.—A diagram of the uriniferous tubes. A, cortex limited externally by the capsule; a, subcapsular layer not containing Malpighian corpuscles; a', inner stratum of cortex, also without Malpighian capsules; B, boundary layer; C, medullary part next the boundary layer; 1, Bowman's capsule of Malpighian corpuscle; 2, neck of capsule; 3, first convoluted tubule; 4, spiral tubule; 5, descending limb of Henle's loop; 6, the loop proper; 7, thick part of the ascending limb; 8, spiral part of ascending limb; 9, narrow ascending limb in the medullary ray; 10, the zigzag tubule; 11, the second convoluted tubule; 12, the junctional tubule; 13, the collecting tubule of the medullary ray; 14, the collecting tube of the boundary layer; 15, duct of Bellini. (Klein.)

The character of the epithelium that lines these several parts of the tubules is as follows:—

In the *capsule*, the epithelium is flattened and reflected over the glomerulus.

The way in which this takes place in process of development is shown in figs. 415 and 416.

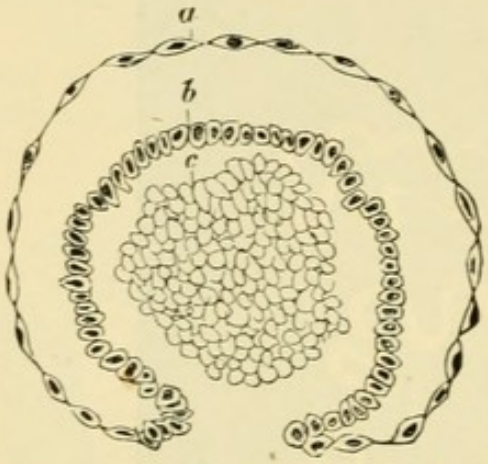


FIG. 415.—Transverse section of a developing Malpighian capsule and tuft (human). × 300. From a fœtus at about the fourth month; *a*, flattened cells growing to form the capsule; *b*, more rounded cells; continuous with the above, reflected round *c*, and finally enveloping it; *c*, mass of embryonic cells which will later become developed into blood-vessels. (W. Pye.)

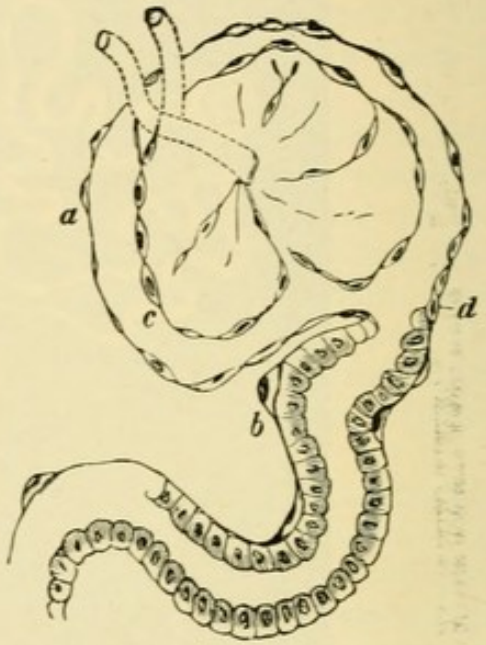


FIG. 416.—Epithelial elements of a Malpighian capsule and tuft, with the commencement of a urinary tubule showing the afferent and efferent vessel; *a*, layer of flat epithelium forming the capsule; *b*, similar, but rather larger epithelial cells, placed in the walls of the tube; *c*, cells, covering the vessels of the capillary tuft; *d*, commencement of the tubule, somewhat narrower than the rest of it. (W. Pye.)

In the *neck* the epithelium is still flattened, but in some animals, such as frogs, where the neck is longer, the epithelium is ciliated.

In the *first convoluted* and *spiral* tubules, it is thick, and the cells show a fibrillated structure, except around the nucleus, where the protoplasm is granular. The cells interlock laterally and are difficult to isolate. In some animals they are described as ciliated. In the *narrow descending tubule of Henle* and in *the loop* itself, the cells are clear and flattened and leave a considerable lumen; in the *ascending limb* they again become striated and nearly fill the tubule. In the *zigzag* and *second convoluted* tubules the fibrillations become even more marked. The *junctional* tubule has a large lumen, and is lined by clear flattened cells; the *collecting* tubules and *ducts of Bellini* are lined by clear cubical or columnar cells.

Blood-vessels of Kidney.—The renal artery enters the kidney at the hilus, and divides into branches that pass towards the cortex, then turn over and form incomplete arches in the region between cortex and medulla. From these arches vessels pass to the surface

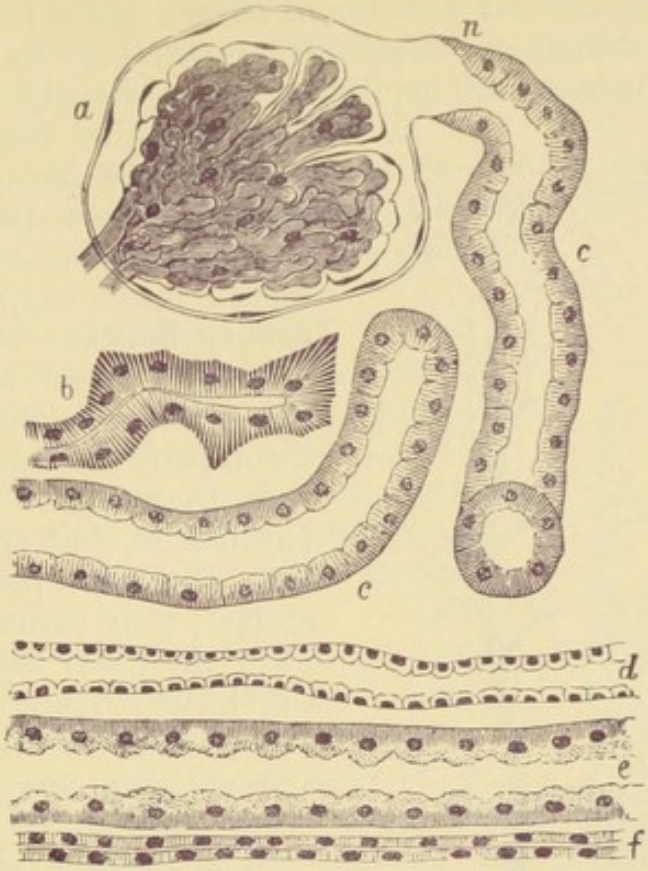


FIG. 417.—From a vertical section through the kidney of a dog—the capsule of which is supposed to be on the right. *a*, the capillaries of the Malpighian corpuscle, which are arranged in lobules; *n*, neck of capsule; *c*, convoluted tubes cut in various directions; *b*, zigzag tubule; *d*, *e*, and *f*, are straight tubes in a *medullary ray*; *d*, collecting tube; *e*, spiral tube; *f*, narrow section of ascending limb. × 380. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

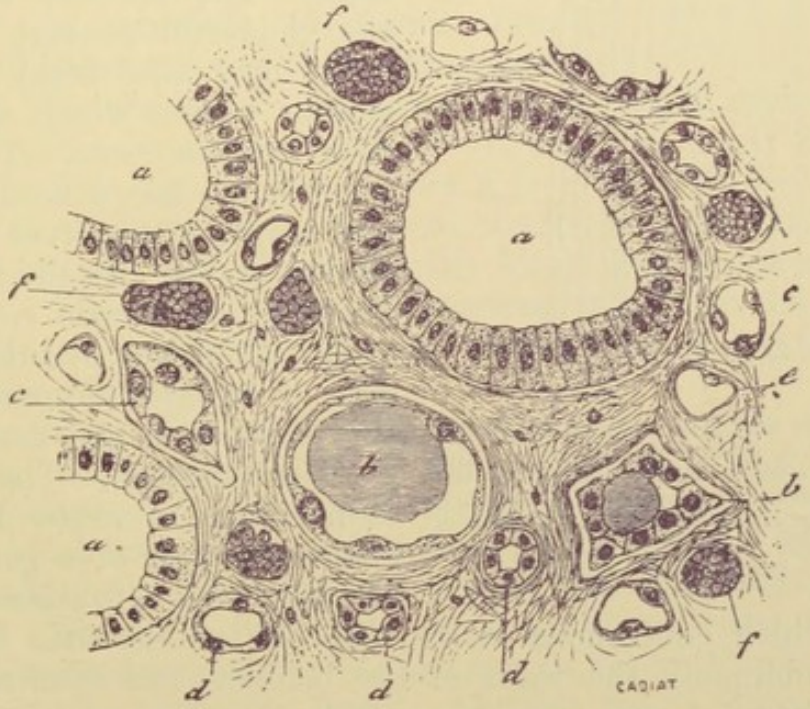


FIG. 418.—Transverse section of a renal papilla: *a*, large tubes or ducts of Bellini; *b*, *c*, and *d*, smaller tubes of Henle; *e*, *f*, blood capillaries, distinguished by their flatter epithelium. (Cadiat.)

which are called the *interlobular arteries;* they give off vessels at right angles, which are the *afferent vessels of the glomeruli;* a glomerulus is made up of capillaries as previously stated. From each, a smaller vessel (*the efferent vessel of the glomerulus*) passes out, and like a portal vessel on a small scale, breaks up once more into capillaries which ramify between the convoluted tubules. These unite to form veins (*interlobular veins*) which accompany the interlobular arteries; they pass to venous arches, parallel to, but more complete than, the corresponding arterial arches; they ultimately unite to form the renal vein that leaves the hilus. These veins receive also others which have a stellate arrangement near the capsule (*venæ stellulæ*).

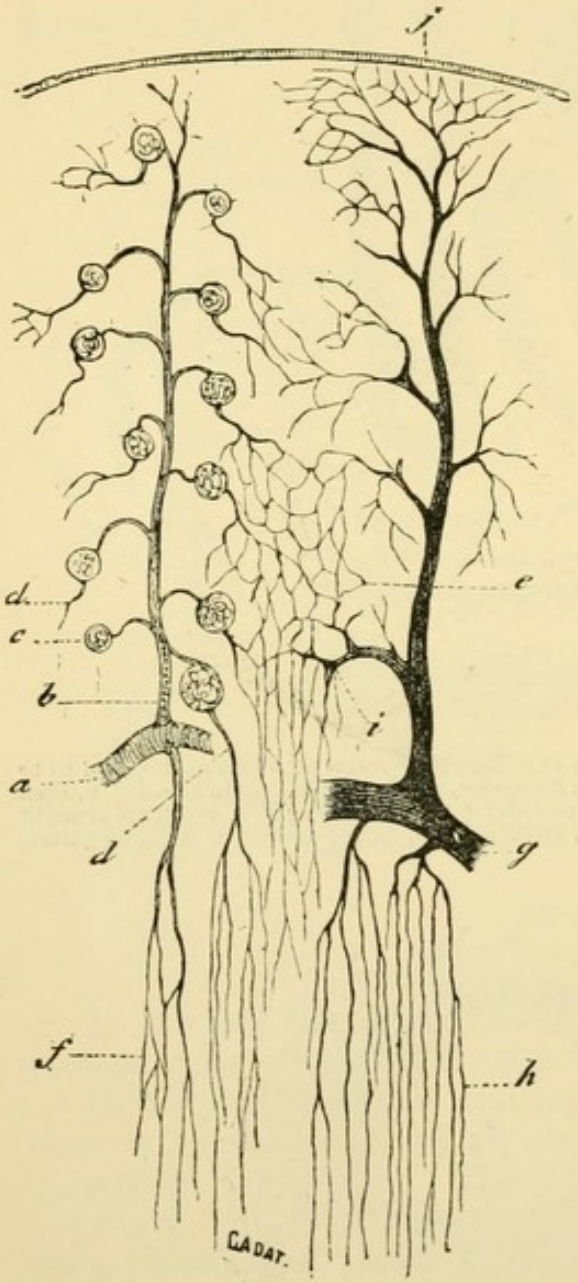


FIG. 419.—Vascular supply of kidney. *a*, part of arterial arch; *b*, interlobular artery; *c*, glomerulus; *d*, efferent vessel passing to the medulla as false arteria recta; *e*, capillaries of cortex; *f*, capillaries of medulla; *g*, venous arch; *h*, straight veins of medulla; *i*, interlobular vein; *j*, vena stellula. (Cadiat.)

The medulla is supplied by pencils of fine straight arterioles which arise from the arterial arches. They are called *arteriæ rectæ.* The efferent vessels of the glomeruli nearest the medulla may also break up into similar vessels which are called *false arteriæ rectæ.* The veins (*venæ rectæ*) take a similar course and empty themselves into the venous arches. In the boundary zone groups of *vasa recta* alternate with groups of tubules, and give a striated appearance to this portion of the medulla.

The Ureters.—The duct of each kidney, or *ureter,* is a tube about the size of a goose-quill, and from twelve to sixteen inches in length, which, continuous above with the pelvis, ends below by perforating obliquely the walls of the bladder, and opening on its internal surface.

It is constructed of three coats: (*a*) an outer *fibrous* coat; (*b*) a

middle *muscular coat*, of which the fibres are unstriped, and arranged in three layers—the fibres of the central layer being circular, and those of the other two longitudinal in direction; the outermost longitudinal layer is, however, present only in the lower part of the ureter; and (*c*) a *mucous membrane* continuous with that of the pelvis above, and of the urinary bladder below. It is composed of areolar tissue lined by transitional epithelium.

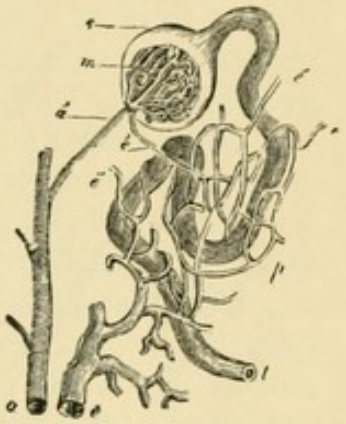


FIG. 420.—Diagram showing the relation of the Malpighian body to the uriniferous ducts and blood-vessels. *a*, one of the interlobular arteries; *a'*, afferent artery passing into the glomerulus; *c*, capsule of the Malpighian body, forming the commencement of and continuous with *t*, the uriniferous tube; *e'*, *e'*, efferent vessels which subdivide and form a plexus, *p*, surrounding the tube, and finally terminate in the branch of the renal vein *e*. (After Bowman.)

The Urinary Bladder, which forms a receptacle for the temporary lodgment of the urine, is pyriform; its widest part, which is situate above and behind, is termed the *fundus;* and the narrow constricted portion in front and below, by which it becomes continuous with the urethra, is called its *cervix* or *neck*.

It is constructed of four coats,—*serous, muscular, areolar* or *submucous,* and *mucous*. (*a*) The *serous* coat, which covers only the posterior and upper part of the bladder, has the same structure as the peritoneum, with which it is continuous. (*b*) The fibres of the *muscular* coat, which are unstriped, are arranged in three layers, of which the external and internal have a general longitudinal, and the middle layer a circular direction. The latter are especially developed around the *cervix* of the organ and form the *sphincter vesicæ*. (*c*) The *areolar* or *submucous* coat is constructed of connective-tissue with a large admixture of elastic fibres. (*d*) The *mucous* membrane is like that of the ureters. It is provided with mucous glands, which are most numerous near the neck of the bladder.

The bladder is well provided with *blood- and lymph-vessels,* and with *nerves*. The latter consist of branches from the sacral and hypogastric plexuses. Ganglion cells are found, here and there, on the course of the nerve-fibres.

The Urethra.—This occupies the centre of the corpus spongiosum in the male. As it passes through the prostate it is lined by transitional, but elsewhere by columnar epithelium, except near the orifice, where the epithelium is stratified like the epidermis with which it becomes continuous. The female urethra has stratified epithelium throughout. The epithelium rests on a vascular corium, and this is covered by submucous tissue containing an inner longitudinal and an outer circular muscular layer. Outside this a plexus of veins passes insensibly into the surrounding erectile tissue.

Into the urethra open a number of oblique recesses or *lacunæ*, a number of small mucous glands (glands of Littré), two compound

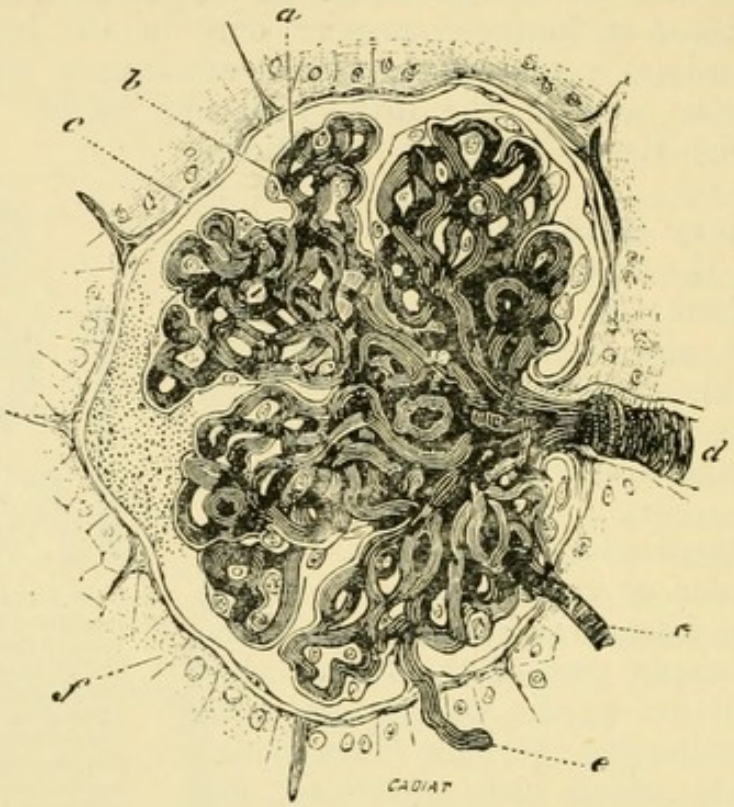


FIG. 421.—Malpighian corpuscle, injected through the renal artery with coloured gelatin; *a*, glomerular vessels; *b*, capsule; *c*, anterior capsule; *d*, afferent vessel of glomerulus; *e*, efferent vessels; *f*, epithelium of tubes. (Cadiat.)

racemose glands (Cowper's glands), the glands of the prostate, and the vas deferens. *The prostate*, which surrounds the commencement

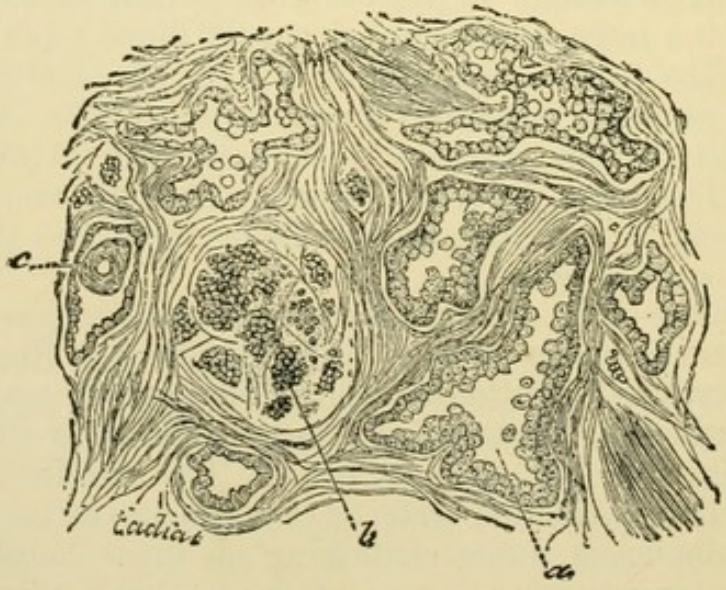


FIG. 422.—Section of a small portion of the prostate. *a*, gland duct cut across obliquely; *b*, gland structure; *c*, prostatic calculus. (Cadiat.)

of the male urethra, is a muscular and glandular mass. Its glands are tubular and lined by columnar epithelium.

The Functions of the Kidneys.

The main function of the kidneys is to separate the urine from the blood. The true secreting part of the kidney is the glandular epithelium that lines the convoluted portions of the tubules; there is, in addition to this, what is usually termed the filtering apparatus: we have already seen that the tufts of capillary blood-vessels called the Malpighian glomeruli are supplied with afferent vessels from the renal artery; the efferent vessels that leave these have a smaller calibre, and thus there is high pressure in the Malpighian capillaries. Certain constituents of the blood, especially water and salts, pass through the thin walls of these vessels into the surrounding Bowman's capsule which forms the commencement of each renal tubule. Though the process which occurs here is generally spoken of as a filtration, yet it is no purely mechanical process; but the cells exercise a secretory and a selective influence, and, among other things, prevent the albuminous constituents of the blood from escaping. During the passage of the water, which leaves the blood at the glomerulus, through the rest of the renal tubule, it gains the constituents urea, urates, etc., which are poured into it by the secreting cells of the convoluted tubules.

The term *excretion* is better than *secretion* as applied to the kidney, for the constituents of the urine are not actually formed in the kidney itself (as, for instance, the bile is formed in the liver), but they are formed elsewhere; the kidney is simply the place where they are picked out from the blood and eliminated from the body.

The Nerves of the Kidney.

These are derived from the renal plexus of each side. The renal plexus consists of both medullated and non-medullated nerve-fibres, with collections of ganglion cells. Fibres from the anterior roots of the eleventh, twelfth, and thirteenth dorsal nerves (in the dog) pass into this plexus. They are both vaso-constrictor and vaso-dilator in function. The nerve-cells on the course of the constrictor fibres are situated in the cœliac, mesenteric, and renal ganglia; the nerve-cells on the course of the dilator fibres are placed in the solar plexus and renal ganglia. These nerves are thus vaso-motor in function; we have, at present, no knowledge of true secretory nerves to the kidney, and the amount of urine is influenced, to a certain extent at any rate, by the blood-pressure in its capillaries. We shall, a few pages hence, however, see that the amount of urine does not depend wholly on the height of the blood-pressure; and one very

striking fact in this relation may be mentioned now,—namely, that if the blood-pressure is increased without allowing the blood to flow, the amount of urine formed is not increased; this can be done by ligaturing the renal vein; the blood-pressure within the kidney then rises enormously, but the flow of urine stops.

The Kidney Oncometer.

This is an instrument constructed on plethysmographic principles, by means of which the volume of the kidney is registered. The general characters of this instrument are described in the diagrams on p. 309. The special form introduced by Roy for the kidney is shown in fig. 423. Roy's instrument, however, is but seldom used at

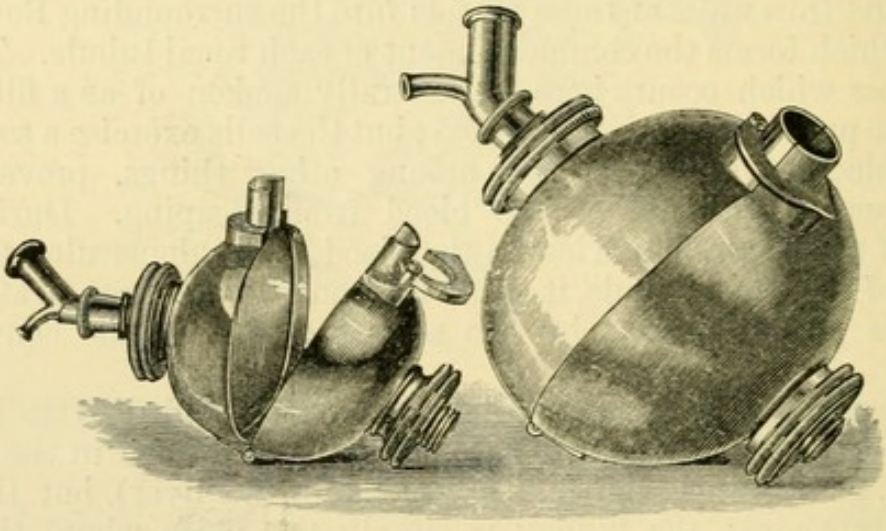


FIG. 423.—Oncometers for kidneys of different sizes.

the present day. An air oncometer, connected with a Marey's tambour or a bellows recorder (like that figured for the spleen on p. 152), is much less complicated, and gives better results.

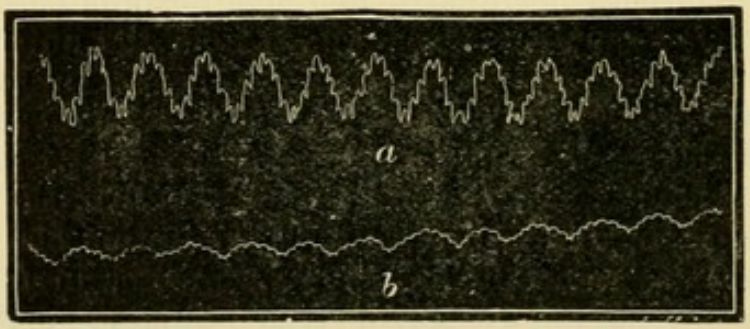


FIG. 424.—Curve taken by renal oncometer compared with that of ordinary blood-pressure. *a*, Kidney curve; *b*, blood-pressure curve. (Roy.)

It is found that the effect on the volume of the organ of dividing or stimulating nerves corresponds to blood-pressure. If a rise of

pressure in the renal artery is produced by constriction of the renal arterioles, this is accompanied by a fall of pressure in the renal capillaries and a shrinkage of the kidney. Increase in the volume of the kidney is produced by the opposite circumstances.

The accompanying tracing (fig. 424) shows that in a normal oncometric curve from the kidney there is a rise of volume, due to each heart-beat, and larger waves, which accompany respiration. In some cases larger sweeping waves (Traube-Hering curves) are seen as well, but they are absent in the tracing reproduced. If the kidney curve is compared with the tracing of arterial pressure, it will be seen that the rise of pressure is simultaneous with the fall in kidney volume due to constriction of the renal vessels.

Activity of Renal Epithelium.

It is now about seventy years since Bowman set forth his views concerning the functions of the renal epithelium. These views have been subjected to very searching criticism, but they may be accepted at the present time with considerable confidence. Two contributions of great importance were made by this observer:—(1) By means of injection he found that, in the frog, the renal arteries supplied both the glomeruli and the tubules of the kidney, whilst the renal portal vein carried blood only to the tubules. (2) From inspection of the nature of the epithelium in different situations, he inferred that the flat cells of the capsule surrounding the glomeruli were such as would serve for the ready passage of water and saline substances. The somewhat opaque cubical cells of the convoluted tubules would be likely to serve the purpose of secreting the more complex nitrogenous constituents of the urine.

Activity of Tubules.—Very many researches have been carried out on lines which really had their origin in the researches of Bowman. Inasmuch as the renal portal system of the frog supplies the tubules only, it is possible to study the functions of the tubules by ligature of the renal arteries. This experiment was first performed by Nussbaum. It resulted in the discovery that the flow of urine ceased when the glomeruli were deprived of their blood-supply, but that a flow—scanty, it is true—could be re-established by the injection of urea; on the other hand, injection of such substances as peptone did not set up a flow of urine. The urine which resulted from injection of urea was particularly rich in this substance. Nussbaum concluded then that the normal flow of water was a glomerular flow, and that such substances as urea were secreted by the tubules, whilst other substances (salts and peptone) were not so secreted.

Much doubt was cast upon the validity of the above experiment

by certain unsuccessful attempts to repeat it. Recent researches,* carried on along quite different lines, but giving rise to identical conclusions, appear, however, to have entirely established Nussbaum's contentions. In the former of these investigations, the original experiment was repeated almost exactly after Nussbaum's fashion, and it was found that a secretion of urea could always be evoked from the tubules, provided—and this provision is of great importance —that the kidney received sufficient oxygen for the maintenance of the functional activity of the cells. This was accomplished by keeping the frogs in an atmosphere of oxygen. In the second research, the legs of the frog were ligatured below the junction of the renal portal with the femoral vein; fluid injected into the anterior abdominal vein would pass, therefore, down the femorals, up the renal portals, and to the tubules of the kidney. In this way an artificial circulation of fluid was kept up. The fluid was of approximately the same saline content as frog's blood. Such a circulation evoked no flow of urine; but if certain diuretics, such as urea, or caffeine, or phloridzin, were mixed in suitable doses with the saline, a flow of urine was set up. This flow could at any time be stopped by re-establishing a circulation of saline which contained no urea or other stimulating substance. Finally, it appeared that the flow of urine was accompanied by increased metabolism of the kidney-cells in the case of caffeine and dilute urea solutions. This is shown by the fact that much more of the oxygen dissolved in the saline was removed by the kidney during the secretion of the urine than had previously been the case. Example—Oxygen taken up by resting tubules, ·002 c.c. per minute; during caffeine diuresis, ·010 c.c. per minute.

In the mammalian kidney, the function of the tubules, as opposed to the glomeruli, must be studied by a different method. The flow of urine from the capsules must be eliminated here also; but this cannot be done, as in the frog, by ligaturing the renal arteries; it can, however, be compassed by lowering the arterial blood-pressure. A research of great importance has been performed along this line by Heidenhain. By cutting the spinal cord, he removed the arterial tone from the whole visceral area, and consequently produced a blood-pressure so low that the flow of urine ceased. Into the animal he then injected a nitrogenous body, sulphindigotate of soda, which was known to be readily secreted, and which can easily be seen by reason of its blue colour. Subsequent examination of microscopical sections of the kidney showed the pigment in the lumen, and in the cells of those parts of the kidney tubule to which Bowman ascribed a secreting function, but never in the glomeruli. This experiment

* By Beddard and Bainbridge at Guy's Hospital, and by Brodie, Barcroft, Hamill, and Miss Cullis at the London School of Medicine for Women.

loses much of its interest if sulphindigotate of soda cannot be taken as a type of nitrogenous bodies generally, especially of urea.

Urea itself is a very difficult substance to trace in this way, because it does not leave a coloured trail behind it. In birds, the place of urea is taken by uric acid, and the urates can actually be traced, because they are deposited as crystals and can be seen in the cells and convoluted tubules in much the same way as Heidenhain's blue pigment.

Activity of Glomeruli.—What we have said not only shows that the tubules have an excretory function for urea and certain other nitrogenous substances (to these we may add, in a more qualified way, phosphates and nitrates), but it clears the way for a study of the functions of the glomerulus. Already we have shown that sulphates and chlorides, and saline substances generally (except phosphates and nitrates) are not secreted by the tubules, and water only seems to be so secreted under special circumstances. The elimination of these substances must, therefore, be relegated to the glomeruli. The point of greatest interest, with regard to the glomerular mechanism, is how far it is a filtration merely and how far it is, in the more restricted sense, a secretion.

Generally speaking, those changes in the general arterial blood-pressure which we should expect to cause an increased filtrate are, in fact, accompanied by diuresis. Thus, the capillary pressure may be increased in the following ways:—

(1) By increase in the force and frequency of the heart-beat.

(2) By constriction of the arterioles of areas other than that of the kidney, as in cold weather when the cutaneous capillaries are constricted.*

Local changes, which give rise to a high pressure in the glomerular capillaries, are also associated with increased flow of urine; for instance:—

(1) If the renal nerves are divided, the renal arterioles relax, and the pressure in the renal capillaries rises; this leads to an increased flow of urine, which is accompanied by an increase in the volume of the kidney, as shown by the oncometer. Stimulation of the divided nerves produces diminution in the flow of urine, and a shrinkage of the kidney due to constriction of its blood-vessels.† [If the splanchnic nerves are experimented with instead of the renal, the effects are not so marked, as these nerves have a wide distribution, and section leads to vascular dilatation in the whole splanchnic area;

* The reciprocal action between skin and kidneys will be discussed more fully in the chapter on the skin.

† These nerves also contain vaso-dilator fibres, which are excited when a slow rate of stimulation is used (see p. 307).

hence the increase of pressure in the renal capillaries is not so noticeable.]

(2) Puncture of the floor of the fourth ventricle in the neighbourhood of the vaso-motor centre (close to the spot, puncture of which produces glycosuria) leads to relaxation of the renal arterioles and a consequent large increase of urine.

Whilst these facts clearly indicate a connection between the capillary pressure and the urinary flow, there are numerous observations which are difficult to explain on such a simple mechanical hypothesis. Experimentally, it may be shown that an increased kidney volume on the one hand, or an increased flow of urine on the other, may take place without an increased blood-flow through the kidneys. Nor, indeed, is there always an increased kidney volume with an increased flow of urine.

Adhering to the view that the flow of urine produced by saline diuretics (such as sodium sulphate) is essentially a glomerular flow, we would point out that there are difficulties in finding a ready explanation of a sodium sulphate diuresis as the result of purely vascular changes:

(1) This salt is much more rapidly eliminated than others.

(2) It causes hydræmic plethora; by this means it increases the water in, and so the total volume of, the blood; it does not, however, appreciably increase the arterial pressure; and if we may accept the analogy of the intestinal and liver capillaries to the glomerular and tubular capillaries of the kidney respectively, hydræmic plethora, though it would markedly increase the pressure in the capillaries surrounding the tubules, would not cause greatly increased exudation from the vessels of the glomeruli.

(3) Sodium sulphate diuresis (and, indeed, all forms of diuresis which have been investigated) is accompanied with a great increase of oxygen used by the kidney, even in cases where the urine is very dilute.

(4) It has also been shown that if the pressure of urine in the ureter is artificially raised, as by partially blocking it, injection of the salt causes an increase of the output of sodium sulphate, and frequently of the total output of urine.

Another fact which is out of harmony with the idea that filtration alone will account for the functions of the glomerulus, is the extreme ease with which the kidney may be asphyxiated. Heidenhain has shown that clamping the renal artery for ten seconds may produce suppression of urine for a long period.

Again, it is possible to obtain urine which is much more watery even than the plasma.

To sum up our knowledge of the kidney, we may say that:—

(1) The function of the glomerulus is concerned with the elimina-

tion of water and salts, and perhaps a trifling quantity of urea washed through with the water.

(2) That both physical and secretory factors enter into this function.

(3) That the function of the tubules is a purely secretory one, and deals with the elimination of urea and certain other nitrogenous substances, as well as phosphates and nitrates.

It should be mentioned that Ludwig held that reabsorption of some of the water and salts which escape at the glomeruli takes place in the tubules. This view has been revived by the recent work of Meyer and of Cushny, and a good deal of controversy is taking place whether such a view is correct. In my opinion, however, the main function of the tubules is undoubtedly secretion as just stated, not absorption.

Diuretics.—We have gone very fully into the functions of the kidney, for it frequently happens that drugs must be prescribed for the purpose of promoting these functions. Such drugs are called diuretics. They act in different ways, some locally on the kidney, such as caffeine, and in our view some of the saline diuretics; others, such as digitalis, act upon the general blood-pressure. It is important, in prescribing these drugs, not to lose sight of the fact that whilst the greatest benefit may attend their action, it is doubtful whether any of them (the digitalis group excepted) can be regarded as doing their work without throwing a greater or less strain upon some portion of the renal epithelium.

The Work done by the Kidney.

We can estimate the energy transformed by the kidney in more than one way. The urine is much more concentrated, as regards crystalline constituents, than the plasma from which it was produced. Thus, urine contains about 2 per cent. of urea on an average, plasma 0·03 per cent., and the same is true in different degrees for other substances. It follows that if urine were placed inside an osmometer and an unlimited supply of plasma outside, water would be sucked into the osmometer until a column of fluid of great height had been established and much work had been performed in raising it. In a specific instance, the blood-plasma had an osmotic pressure equivalent to a 0·92 per cent. solution, and the urine to a 4 per cent. solution, of sodium chloride. From these data, and from the amount of urine secreted, it is possible to make a calculation of the work performed by the kidney. In other words, the energy used by the kidney in secreting the urine cannot be less than what is given by this purely physical consideration.

The maximum energy used up by the kidney may be calculated in quite another way. Estimations have been made of the amount of oxygen used by the kidney in secreting urines of known concentration; this oxygen may be taken as a measure of the amount of

kidney material used up. If the amount of metabolism be thus determined, we can arrive at the amount of energy used up by a knowledge of the heat produced by the decomposition of this amount of kidney material.

The kidney cannot be doing more work than its metabolism accounts for. If we suppose the kidney living on protein (and the figures would not differ greatly if we supposed it to be living on carbohydrate), we may start with the following constants: 1 c.c. of oxygen oxidises 1 milligramme of protein, and forms water, carbon dioxide, urea, etc. In doing so, it gives out 4 heat-units or calories (see Chapter XL.), and this is equivalent to 170,000 gramme-centimetres of work. In a typical experiment during diuresis, the kidney used 4 c.c. of oxygen per minute; this was, therefore, equivalent to 680,000 gramme-centimetres of work, and the energy transformed from potential to kinetic energy by the kidney cannot have been less than this. Let us consider what evidence there is of mechanical work which the organ does as an offset against this; one way in which the work manifests itself is in the concentration of the urine; this fluid is many times more concentrated than the blood-plasma. The degree of concentration can be calculated from a knowledge of the freezing-points of the blood and urine; the greater the concentration of a solution of a crystalline substance, the lower is its freezing-point (see p. 325). In this way, it was calculated that 14,700 gramme-centimetres of work was done in the case just referred to. If the calculation is made for each salt separately, a higher figure than this would, however, be obtained; but even then, much of the energy of the kidney is left unaccounted for; and in all probability the transference even of water at a rapid rate through protoplasm is a process involving the active metabolism of cells.

Extirpation of the Kidneys.

Extirpation of one kidney for stone, etc., is a common operation. It is not followed by any untoward result. The remaining kidney enlarges and does the work previously shared between the two.

Extirpation of both kidneys is fatal; the urea, etc., accumulate in the blood, and the animal dies in a few days; uræmic convulsions (see p. 569) do not occur in such experiments.

Ligature of both renal arteries amounts to the same thing as extirpation of the kidneys, and leads to the same result. If the ligature is released the kidney after a time again sets to work, but the urine secreted at first is albuminous, owing to the epithelium having been impaired by being deprived for a time of its blood supply. The ease with which the kidney can be injured by asphyxiation has already been alluded to (pp. 556, 558).

Bradford stated that in dogs removal of one kidney, followed at a later period by removal of a half or two-thirds of the other, produced the surprising result that the animals after the second operation secreted an increased quantity of urine, and this contained usually a quantity of urea in excess of the normal; the animals wasted rapidly and died within a few weeks. From these experiments wide-reaching conclusions were drawn, one of which was that the kidney plays (perhaps by means of an internal secretion) an important rôle in nitrogenous metabolism apart from merely excreting waste substances. Great caution should, however, be exercised in jumping to conclusions at present, especially because recent attempts to obtain the same results in cats have failed to confirm Bradford's statements.

The Passage of Urine into the Bladder.

As each portion of urine is secreted it propels that which is already in the uriniferous tubes onwards into the pelvis of the kidney. Thence through the ureter the urine passes into the bladder, into which its rate and mode of entrance has been watched in cases of *ectopia vesicæ*, *i.e.* of such fissures in the anterior and lower part of the walls of the abdomen, and of the front wall of the bladder, as expose to view its hinder wall together with the orifices of the ureters. The urine does not enter the bladder at any regular rate, nor is there a synchronism in its movement through the two ureters. During fasting, two or three drops enter the bladder every minute; each drop as it enters first raises up the little papilla through which the ureter opens, and then passes slowly through its orifice, which at once again closes like a sphincter. In the recumbent posture, the urine collects for a little time in the ureters, then flows gently, and, if the body is raised, runs from them in a stream till they are empty. Its flow is aided by the peristaltic contractions of the ureters, and is increased in deep inspiration, or by straining, and in active exercise, and in fifteen or twenty minutes after a meal. The urine is prevented from regurgitation into the ureters by the mode in which these pass through the walls of the bladder, namely, by their lying for between half and three-quarters of an inch between the muscular and mucous coats before they turn rather abruptly forwards, and open through the latter into the interior of the bladder.

Micturition.

The contraction of the muscular walls of the bladder may by itself expel the urine with little or no help from other muscles. In so far, however, as it is a *voluntary* act, it is performed by means of the abdominal and other expiratory muscles, which in their contraction press on the abdominal viscera, the diaphragm being fixed, and cause the expulsion of the contents of those whose sphincter muscles are at the same time relaxed. The muscular coat of the bladder co-operates, in micturition, by reflex *involuntary* action, with the abdominal muscles; and the act is completed by the *accelerator urinæ*, which, as its name implies, quickens the stream, and expels the last drop of urine from the urethra. The act, so far as it is not directed by volition, is under the control of a nervous *centre* in the lumbar spinal cord, through which, as in the case of the similar centre for defæcation, the various muscles concerned are harmonised in their action. It is well known that the act may be reflexly induced, *e.g.*, in children who suffer from intestinal worms, or other such irritation. Generally, the afferent impulse which calls into action the desire to

micturate is excited by over-distension of the bladder, or even by a few drops of urine passing into the urethra. The impulse passes up to the lumbar centre, and produces, on the one hand, inhibition of the sphincter, and on the other hand, contraction of the necessary muscles for the expulsion of the contents of the bladder. The tonic action of the lumbar centre can also be inhibited by the will.

The bladder receives nerves from two sources:—(1) from the lower dorsal and upper lumbar nerves; these fibres pass to the sympathetic chain, from here to the inferior mesenteric ganglion, and ultimately reach the bladder by the hypogastric nerves. Stimulation of these nerves causes contraction of the circular fibres of the bladder, including the sphincter; (2) from the second and third sacral nerves; these run to the bladder by the nervi erigentes. Stimulation of these nerves causes relaxation of the sphincter and contraction of the detrusor urinæ. (Zeissl.) Langley and Anderson find, however, that stimulation of both sets of nerves causes contraction of both longitudinally and circularly arranged muscle bundles.

CHAPTER XXXVII

THE URINE

Quantity.—A man of average weight and height passes from 1400 to 1600 c.c., or about 50 oz. daily. This contains about 50 grammes (1½ oz.) of solids. For analytical purposes it should be collected in a tall glass vessel capable of holding 3000 c.c., which should have a smooth-edged neck accurately covered by a ground-glass plate to exclude dust and prevent evaporation. The vessel, moreover, should be graduated so that the amount may be easily read off. From the total quantity thus collected in the twenty-four hours, samples should be drawn off for examination.

Colour.—This is some shade of yellow which varies considerably in health with the concentration of the urine. It is due to a mixture of pigments; of these, urobilin is the one of which we have the most accurate knowledge. Urobilin has a reddish tint, and is ultimately derived from the blood pigment, and, like bile pigment, is an iron-free derivative of hæmoglobin. The bile pigment in the intestines is converted into stercobilin; most of the stercobilin leaves the body with the fæces; some, however, is reabsorbed and is excreted with the urine as urobilin (see p. 521). Normal urine, however, contains very little urobilin. The actual body present is a chromogen or mother substance called urobilinogen, which by oxidation—for instance, standing exposed to the air—is converted into the pigment proper. In certain diseased conditions the amount of urobilin is considerably increased.

The most abundant urinary pigment is a yellow one, named *urochrome*. It shows no absorption bands. It is probably an oxidation product of urobilin. (Riva, A. E. Garrod.)

Reaction.—The reaction of normal urine is acid. This is not due to free acid, as the uric and hippuric acids in the urine are combined as urates and hippurates respectively. The acidity is due to acid salts, of which acid sodium phosphate is the most important. Under certain circumstances the urine becomes less acid and even alkaline; the most important of these are as follows:—

1. During digestion. Here there is a formation of free acid in

the stomach, and a corresponding liberation of bases in the blood, which, passing into the urine, diminish its acidity, or even render it alkaline. This is called *the alkaline tide;* the opposite condition, *the acid tide,* occurs after a fast—for instance, before breakfast.

2. In herbivorous animals and vegetarians. The food here contains excess of alkaline salts of acids such as tartaric, citric, malic, etc. These acids are oxidised into carbonates, which, passing into the urine, give it an alkaline reaction.

Specific Gravity.—This should be taken in a sample of the twenty-four hours' urine with a urinometer.

The specific gravity varies inversely as the quantity of urine passed under normal conditions from 1015 to 1025. A specific gravity below 1010 should excite suspicion of hydruria; one over 1030, of a febrile condition, or of diabetes, a disease in which it may rise to 1050. The specific gravity has, however, been known to sink as low as 1002 (after large potations, *urina potus*), or to rise as high as 1035 (after great sweating) in perfectly healthy persons.

Composition.—The following table gives the average amounts of the urinary constituents passed by a man taking an ordinary diet containing about 100 grammes of protein in the twenty-four hours:—

Total quantity of urine	1500·00 grammes.
Water	1440·00 ,,
Solids	60·00 ,,
Urea	35·00 ,,
Uric acid	0·75 ,,
Sodium chloride	16·5 ,,
Phosphoric acid	3·5 ,,
Sulphuric acid	2·0 ,,
Ammonia	0·65 ,,
Creatinine	0·9 ,,
Chlorine	11·0 ,,
Potassium	2·5 ,,
Sodium	5·5 ,,
Calcium	0·26 ,,
Magnesium	0·21 ,,

The most abundant constituents of the urine are water, urea, and sodium chloride. In the foregoing table one must not be misled by seeing the names of the acids and metals separated. The acids and the bases are combined to form salts, such as urates, chlorides, sulphates, phosphates, etc.

Urea.

Urea, or **Carbamide**, $CO(NH_2)_2$, is isomeric (that is, has the same empirical, but not the same structural formula) with ammonium cyanate $(NH_4)CNO$, from which it was first prepared synthetically by Wöhler in 1828. Since then it has been prepared synthetically in other ways. Wöhler's observation derives interest from the fact

that this was the first organic substance which was prepared synthetically by chemists.*

When crystallised out from the urine it is found to be readily soluble both in water and alcohol: it has a saltish taste, and is neutral to litmus paper. The form of its crystals is shown in fig. 425.



FIG. 425.—Crystals of Urea.

When treated with nitric acid, nitrate of urea ($CON_2H_4.HNO_3$) is formed; this crystallises in octahedra, lozenge-shaped tablets or hexagons (fig. 426). When treated with oxalic acid, flat or prismatic crystals of urea oxalate ($CON_2H_4.H_2C_2O_4 + H_2O$) are formed (fig. 427).

These crystals may be readily obtained by adding excess of the respective acids to urine which has been concentrated to a third or a quarter of its bulk.

Under the influence of an organised ferment, the micrococcus ureæ, which grows readily in stale urine, urea takes up water, and is converted into ammonium carbonate [$CON_2H_4 + 2H_2O = (NH_4)_2CO_3$]. Hence the ammoniacal odour of putrid urine.

By means of nitrous acid, urea is broken up into carbonic acid, water and nitrogen, $CON_2H_4 + 2HNO_2 = CO_2 + 3H_2O + 2N_2$. The

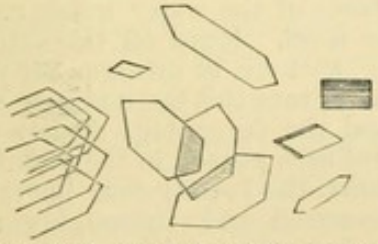


FIG. 426.—Crystals of Urea nitrate.

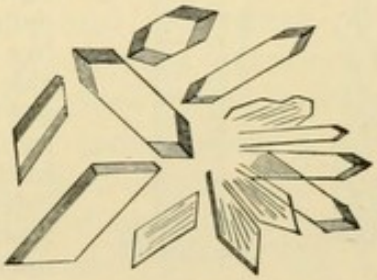


FIG. 427.—Crystals of Urea oxalate.

evolution of gas bubbles which takes place on the addition of fuming nitric acid may be used as a test for urea.

Hypobromite of soda decomposes urea in the following way:—

$$\underset{\text{[Urea.]}}{CON_2H_4} + \underset{\text{[Sodium hypobromite.]}}{3NaBrO} = \underset{\text{[Carbonic acid.]}}{CO_2} + \underset{\text{[Nitrogen.]}}{N_2} + \underset{\text{[Water.]}}{2H_2O} + \underset{\text{[Sodium bromide.]}}{3NaBr.}$$

This reaction is important, for on it one of the readiest methods for estimating urea depends. There have been various pieces of

* Meldola has pointed out that the English chemist Henry Hennell prepared alcohol from olefiant gas simultaneously with Wöhler's synthesis of urea. The honour of founding the science of organic chemistry must, therefore, be shared between the two men.

apparatus invented for rendering the analysis easy; but the one described below is the best. If the experiment is performed as directed, nitrogen is the only gas that comes off, the carbonic acid being absorbed by excess of soda. The amount of nitrogen is a measure of the amount of urea.

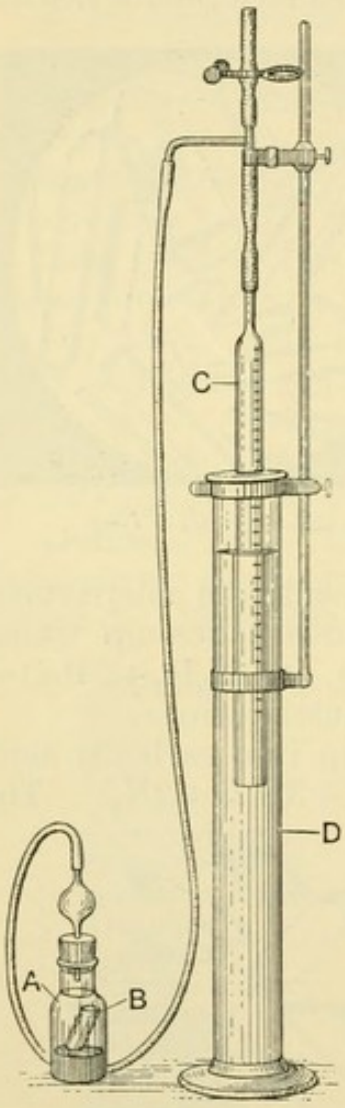


FIG. 428.—Dupré's Urea Apparatus.

Dupré's apparatus (fig. 428) consists of a bottle (A) united to a measuring tube by indiarubber tubing. The measuring tube (C) is placed within a cylinder of water (D), and can be raised and lowered at will. Measure 25 c.c. of alkaline solution of sodium hypobromite (made by mixing 2 c.c. of bromine with 23 c.c. of a 40 per cent. solution of caustic soda) into the bottle A. Measure 5 c.c. of urine into a small tube (B), and lower it carefully, so that no urine spills, into the bottle. Close the bottle securely with a stopper perforated by a glass tube; this glass tube (the bulb blown on this tube prevents froth from passing into the rest of the apparatus) is connected to the measuring tube by indiarubber tubing and a T-piece. The third limb of the T-piece is closed by a piece of indiarubber tubing and a pinch-cock, seen at the top of the figure. Open the pinch-cock and lower the measuring tube until the surface of the water with which the outer cylinder is filled is at the zero point of the graduation. Close the pinch-cock, and raise the measuring tube to ascertain if the apparatus is air-tight. Then lower it again. Tilt the bottle A so as to upset the urine, and shake well for a minute or so. During this time there is an evolution of gas. Then immerse the bottle in a large beaker containing water of the same temperature as that in the cylinder. After two or three minutes raise the measuring tube until the surfaces of the water inside and outside it are at the same level. Read off the amount of gas (nitrogen) evolved. 35·4 c.c. of nitrogen are yielded by 0·1 gramme of urea. From this the quantity of urea in the 5 c.c. of urine and the percentage of urea can be calculated. If the total urea passed in the twenty-four hours is to be ascertained, the twenty-four hours' urine must be carefully measured and thoroughly mixed. A sample is then taken from the total for analysis; and then, by a simple sum in proportion, the total amount of urea is ascertained.

A more accurate determination can be best made by the method introduced by Mörner and Sjöquist. The following reagents, etc., are wanted :—(i.) A saturated solution of barium chloride containing 5 per cent. of barium hydrate : (ii.) A mixture of alcohol and ether in the proportion 2 : 1 ; (iii.) The apparatus, etc., necessary for carrying out Kjeldahl's method of estimating nitrogen. 5 c.c. of urine are mixed with 5 c.c. of the barium mixture, and 100 c.c. of the ether-alcohol mixture. By this means all nitrogenous substances except urea are precipitated. Twenty-four hours later this is filtered off, and the precipitate is washed with 50 c.c. of the ether-alcohol mixture. The washings are added to the filtrate, and a little magnesia is added to drive off ammonia. The fluid is then evaporated down at 55° C. until its volume is about 10 c.c., and the nitrogen in this estimated by Kjeldahl's method. The nitrogen found is multiplied by 2·143, and the result is the amount of the urea.

Kjeldahl's method of estimating nitrogen consists in boiling the material under investigation with strong sulphuric acid. The nitrogen present is by this means converted into ammonia. Excess of soda is then added, and the ammonia distilled

over into a known volume of standard acid. The amount of diminution of acidity in the standard enables one to calculate the amount of ammonia, and thence the amount of nitrogen.

The quantity of urea is variable, the chief cause of variation being the amount of protein food ingested. In a man in a state of nitrogenous equilibrium, taking daily 100 grammes of protein in his food, the quantity of urea secreted daily is about 33 to 35 grammes (500 grains). The percentage in human urine would then be 2 per cent.; but this also varies, because the concentration of the urine varies considerably in health. In dogs it may be 10 per cent. The excretion of urea is usually at a maximum three hours after a meal, especially after a meal rich in proteins. If, therefore, people adopt the Chittenden diet, which contains about half the quantity of protein which is present in the more usual Voit dietary, their urine will naturally show a nitrogenous output of half of that which is now regarded as normal. In those who adopt such a reduced diet, Folin has shown that the decrease in urinary nitrogen falls mainly on the urea fraction, and in some cases the urea excreted accounted for only 66 per cent. of the total nitrogen. The other nitrogenous katabolites of the urine alter comparatively little under such circumstances, and the creatinine in particular remains remarkably constant in amount.

In our study of protein absorption (p. 530), we have already indicated that the amino-acid fragments of the food-protein are utilised in two ways. A small part is used by the tissue cells for the reconstruction of their protein which has undergone katabolism. In time this will in turn be katabolised, and the waste products discharged as ammonia, creatinine, and probably a certain amount of urea. This form of metabolism may be termed *tissue* or *endogenous* metabolism, and its amount is constant and independent to a great extent of the food. The other and larger part of the cleavage products of the food protein are not made use of thus, but are rapidly converted into urea by the liver, and discharged by the kidney. This part of metabolism may be termed *exogenous;* it is variable in amount, and depends on the quantity of ingested protein.

That the liver is the organ where urea is made is shown by the following considerations:—

1. After removal of the liver in such animals as frogs, urea formation almost ceases, and ammonia is found in the urine instead.

2. In mammals, the extirpation of the liver is such a severe operation that the animals do not live. But the liver of mammals can be very largely thrown out of gear by connecting the portal vein directly to the inferior vena cava (Eck's fistula). This experiment has been done successfully in dogs; the amount of urea in the urine is lessened, and its place is taken by ammonia.

3. When degenerative changes occur in the liver, as in *cirrhosis*

of that organ, the urea formed is much lessened, and its place is taken by ammonia. In *acute yellow atrophy* urea is almost absent in the urine, and, again, there is considerable increase in the ammonia. In this disease leucine and tyrosine are also found in the urine; they originate in the intestine, and, escaping further decomposition in the degenerated liver, pass as such into the urine.

That the amino-acids are the substance from which the liver forms urea is shown by the fact that if such amino-acids as glycine, leucine, arginine, etc., are administered by the mouth, or injected into the blood-stream, the excretion of urea is correspondingly raised.

The transformation of arginine into urea is a subject on which we have more accurate information than in the case of any other amino-acids, for there is no doubt that the change, which can be brought about in a test-tube, is also accomplished in the organism. If the account of arginine given on p. 401 is referred to, it will be seen to consist of a urea radical and a substance called ornithine. On hydrolysis we therefore get urea and ornithine (di-amino-valeric acid), and this in the body is accomplished by a special enzyme called *arginase* (Kossel and Dakin) which is more abundant in the liver than in any other tissue. The actual yield of urea is, however, greater than one would anticipate, and so it must be supposed that the ornithine in its turn is broken up and urea is the result. If we glance at the formula of ornithine, and compare it with that of certain other amino-acids which are also undoubted urea forerunners, we have the following:—

Glycine	$C_2H_5NO_2$
Leucine	$C_6H_{13}NO_2$
Ornithine	$C_5H_{12}N_2O_2$

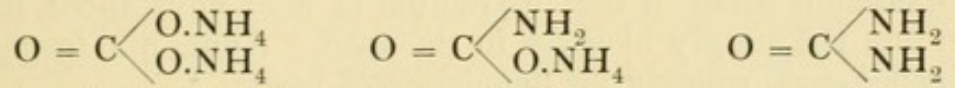
In all cases, the atoms of carbon are more numerous than those of nitrogen. In urea (CON_2H_4) the reverse is the case. The amino-acids must therefore be split into simpler compounds which unite with one another to form urea. Urea formation is thus, in part, synthetic. These simpler compounds are ammonium salts. Schröder's work, which has been confirmed by subsequent investigators, proves that ammonium carbonate is one of the urea precursors, if not the principal one. The equation which represents the reaction is as follows:—

$$\underset{\text{[Ammonium carbonate.]}}{(NH_4)_2CO_3} = \underset{\text{[Urea.]}}{CON_2H_4} + 2H_2O.$$

Schröder's principal experiment was this: a mixture of blood and ammonium carbonate was injected into the liver by the portal vein; the blood leaving the liver by the hepatic vein was found to contain urea in great abundance. This does not occur when the same experiment is performed with any other organ of the body, so that

Schröder's experiments also prove the great importance of the liver in urea formation. Similar results were obtained by Nencki with ammonium carbamate.

The importance of ammonia is accentuated when we remember that ammonia is one of the products of pancreatic digestion, and probably also of endogenous protein metabolism. The ammonia, whether it is formed directly or through the intermediate stage of amino-acid, will combine with the carbonic acid of the blood to form ammonium carbonate or carbamate, and the following structural formulæ exhibit the close relationship between these substances and urea. The loss of one molecule of water from ammonium carbonate produces ammonium carbamate; the loss of a second molecule of water produces urea—



[Ammonium carbonate.] [Ammonium carbamate.] [Urea or carbamide.]

Urea is absent, or nearly so, from the muscles, and its place there is taken by the substance called creatine. This substance, however, is eliminated not as urea but as creatinine. The fact that muscular work does not appreciably increase protein katabolism is intelligible, when, in light of recently acquired knowledge, we realise that protein katabolism, in so far as its nitrogen is concerned, is independent of the oxidations which give rise to heat, or to the energy which is converted into work. Whether severe work will have any effect on the endogenous protein metabolism of muscle cannot be shown by investigating urea excretion; determinations of creatinine are more likely to yield satisfactory results in the study of this question (see Creatinine).

Uræmia.—The older authors considered that urea was formed in the kidneys, just as they also erroneously thought that carbonic acid was formed in the lungs. Prévost and Dumas were the first to show that after complete extirpation of the kidneys the formation of urea goes on, and that it accumulates in the blood and tissues. Similarly, in those cases of disease in which the kidneys cease work, urea is still formed and accumulates. This condition is called *uræmia*, and unless the products of nitrogenous breakdown be discharged from the body the patient dies in a condition of coma preceded by convulsions.

This term was originally applied on the erroneous supposition that it is urea or some antecedent of urea which acts as the poison. There is no doubt that the poison is not any constituent of normal urine; if the kidneys of an animal are extirpated, the animal dies in a few days, but there are no symptoms of uræmia. In man, also, if the kidneys are healthy, or approximately so, and suppression of urine occurs from the simultaneous blocking of both renal arteries by clot, or of both ureters by stones, again uræmia does not follow. On the other hand, uræmia may occur even while a patient with diseased kidneys is passing a considerable amount of urine. What the poison is that is responsible for the convulsions and coma, is unknown. It is doubtless some abnormal katabolic product, but whether this is produced by the diseased kidney cells, or in some other part of the body, is also unknown.

Ammonia.

A small quantity of ammonia always slips through into the urine, because a portion of the ammonia-containing blood passes through the kidney before reaching the organs that are capable of converting it into urea. In man the daily amount of ammonia excreted varies between 0·3 and 1·2 grammes; the average is 0·7 gramme. The ingestion of ammonium carbonate does not increase the amount of ammonia in the urine, but increases the amount of urea, into which substance the ammonium carbonate is easily converted. But if a more stable salt, like ammonium chloride, is given, it appears as such in the urine.

Under normal circumstances the amount of ammonia depends on the adjustment between the production of acid substances in metabolism and the supply of bases in the food. Ammonia formation is the physiological remedy for deficiency of bases.

When the production of acids is excessive (as in diabetes), or when mineral acids are given by the mouth or injected into the blood-stream, the result is an increase of the physiological remedy, and excess of ammonia passes over into the urine. Under normal circumstances ammonia is kept at a minimum, being finally converted into the less toxic substance urea, which the kidneys easily excrete. The defence of the organism against acids which are very toxic, is an increase of ammonia formation, or, to put it more correctly, less of the ammonia formed is converted into urea.

Under the opposite conditions, namely, excess of alkali, either in food or given as such, the ammonia disappears from the urine, all being converted into urea. Hence the diminution of ammonia in the urine of man on a vegetable diet, and its absence in the urine of herbivorous animals.

Not only is this the case, but if ammonium chloride is given to a herbivorous animal such as a rabbit, the urinary ammonia is but little increased. It reacts with sodium carbonate in the tissues, forming ammonium carbonate (which is excreted as urea) and sodium chloride. Herbivora also suffer much more from, and are more easily killed by, acids than carnivora, their organisation not permitting a ready supply of ammonia to neutralise excess of acids.

Creatinine.

The creatinine of the urine is, next to urea, its most abundant nitrogenous constituent. It originates from the substance known as creatine, and creatine is in muscle the principal representative of nitrogenous katabolism.

Creatine, like arginine, contains a urea radical, and by boiling

with baryta it splits into urea and sarcosine (or methyl-glycine), as shown in the following equation:—

$$\underset{\text{[Creatine.]}}{C_4H_9N_3O_2} + \underset{\text{[Water.]}}{H_2O} = \underset{\text{[Urea.]}}{CON_2H_4} + \underset{\text{[Sarcosine.]}}{C_3H_7NO_2}.$$

The same decomposition is shown graphically on p. 401.

Here we have an instance of a reaction which occurs *in vitro*, but which is not carried out *in vivo*. There is no evidence that creatine in the living body is a precursor of urea. Indeed, all the evidence points the other way, for if creatine is given to an animal either by the mouth, or injected into the blood-stream, there is no increase in the urea of the urine. Whether creatinine ($C_4H_7N_3O$, that is creatine *minus* water) is increased under such conditions is also extremely doubtful, unless creatine is given in very large amounts. Even then the rise in creatinine is insignificant, and a good deal of the creatine is excreted as such. If only small amounts of creatine are given, they are retained in the body. Creatinine thus appears to be a substance of almost wholly endogenous origin (Folin). Its amount varies somewhat in different individuals and animals, but is remarkably constant in the same individual or the same animal, whatever be the diet. Under ordinary circumstances also, it is not increased by muscular work, but if the work is excessive, and especially if the muscle is not receiving a due supply of carbohydrate and fatty food, which are the normal sources of muscular energy, the amount excreted increases, showing that under such circumstances there is a perceptible increase in the endogenous protein katabolism.

Uric Acid.

Uric Acid ($C_5N_4H_4O_3$) is, in mammals, the medium by which a very small quantity of nitrogen is excreted from the body. It is, however, in birds and some reptiles the principal nitrogenous constituent of their urine. It is not present in the free state, but is combined with bases to form urates.

It may be obtained from human urine by adding 5 c.c. of hydrochloric acid to 100 c.c. of the urine, and allowing the mixture to stand for twelve to twenty-four hours. The crystals which form are deeply tinged with urinary pigment, and though by repeated solution in caustic soda or potash, and precipitation by hydrochloric acid, they may be obtained fairly free from pigment, pure uric acid is more readily obtained from the solid urine of a serpent or bird, which consists principally of the acid ammonium urate. This is dissolved in soda, and then the addition of hydrochloric acid produces as before the crystallisation of uric acid from the solution.

The pure acid crystallises in colourless rectangular plates or prisms. In striking contrast to urea it is a most insoluble substance, requiring for its solution 1900 parts of hot and 15,000 parts of cold water. The forms which uric acid assumes when precipitated from human urine, either by the addition of hydrochloric acid or in certain pathological processes, are very various, the most frequent being the whetstone shape; there are also bundles of crystals resembling sheaves, barrels, and dumb-bells (see fig. 429).

The *murexide* test is the principal test for uric acid. The test has received the name on account of the resemblance of the colour to the purple of the ancients, which was obtained from certain snails of the genus *Murex*. It is performed as follows: place a little uric acid or a urate in a capsule; add a little dilute nitric acid and evaporate to dryness. A yellowish-red residue is left. Add a little ammonia carefully, and the residue turns violet; this is due to the formation of purpurate of ammonia. On the addition of potash the colour becomes bluer.

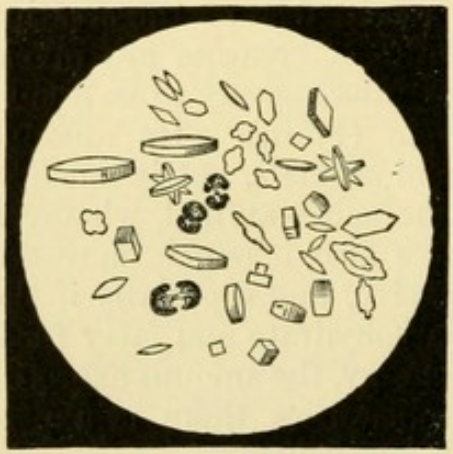


FIG. 429.—Various forms of uric acid crystals.

Another reaction that uric acid undergoes (though it is not applicable as a test) is, that on treatment with certain oxidising reagents urea and oxalic acid can be obtained from it. Alloxan ($C_4H_2N_2O_4$) or allantoin ($C_4H_6N_4O_3$) are intermediate products. It is, however, doubtful whether a similar oxidation occurs in the normal metabolic processes of the body.

Uric acid is dibasic, and thus there are two classes of urates—the normal urates and the acid urates. A normal urate is one in which two atoms of the hydrogen are replaced by two of a monad metal like sodium; an acid urate is one in which only one atom of hydrogen is thus replaced. The formulæ would be—

$C_5H_4N_4O_3$ = uric acid.
$C_5H_3NaN_4O_3$ = acid sodium urate.
$C_5H_2Na_2N_4O_3$ = normal sodium urate.

The acid sodium urate is the chief constituent of the pinkish deposit of urates, which often occurs in urine, and is called the *lateritious deposit*.

If uric acid is represented by H_2U, the normal urates may be represented by M_2U, and the acid urates by MHU. Bence Jones, and later Sir W. Roberts, considered that the urates actually occurring in urine are what are termed quadriurates $MHU.H_2U$. There is much doubt whether such compounds really exist; if they do, they are readily decomposed into acid urate, MHU, and free uric acid, H_2U.

The quantity of uric acid excreted by an adult varies from 7 to 10 grains (0·5 to 0·75 gramme) daily.

The best method for determining the quantity of uric acid in the urine is that of Hopkins. Ammonium chloride in crystals is added to the urine until no more will dissolve. This saturation completely precipitates all the uric acid in the form of ammonium urate. After standing for two hours the precipitate is collected on a filter, washed with saturated solution of ammonium chloride, and then dissolved in weak alkali. From this solution the uric acid is precipitated by neutralising with hydrochloric acid. The precipitate of uric acid is collected on a weighed filter, dried, and weighed; or the crystals may be dissolved in sodium carbonate solution, and titrated with standard solution of potassium permanganate, until a diffused pink flush appears throughout the solution.

Origin of Uric Acid.—Uric acid is not made by the kidneys; when these organs are removed, uric acid continues to be formed, and accumulates in the organs, especially in the liver and the spleen. After extirpation of the liver in birds (in which animals uric acid is such an important katabolite), the formation of uric acid practically ceases, and its place is taken by ammonia and lactic acid, and the conclusion is therefore drawn that in these animals, ammonia and lactic acid are normally synthesised in the liver to form uric acid.

But in mammals, this is not the history of uric acid formation; in these animals, including man, uric acid is the end product of the metabolism of nuclein, from the bases of which it arises by oxidation.

Nuclein, the main constituent of the nuclei of cells (see p. 412), yields, on decomposition, certain products called *purine* substances, and their close relationship to uric acid is shown by their formulæ:—

	Purine	$C_5H_4N_4$
Purine bases	Hypoxanthine (monoxypurine)	$C_5H_4N_4O$
	Xanthine (dioxypurine)	$C_5H_4N_4O_2$
	Adenine (amino-purine)	$C_5H_3N_4.NH_2$
	Guanine (amino-oxypurine)	$C_5H_6N_4O.NH_2$
	Uric acid (trioxypurine)	$C_5H_4N_4O_3$

Just as the ordinary protein metabolism is both exogenous and endogenous, so is it the case with nuclein metabolism. There are certain kinds of food (such as liver and sweetbread) which are rich in nuclei, and others, such as meat, which are rich is purine bases (especially hypoxanthine). The increase in uric acid excretion after partaking of such food is *exogenous*, and those liable to uric acid disorders should avoid such articles of diet. Other forms of diet lead to an increase in uric acid formation by increasing the number of leucocytes in the blood, and there is a consequent increase in the metabolism of their nuclei. Increase in leucocytes may occur, however, independently of diet, and in the disease known as *leucocy-*

thæmia, this occurs to a marked degree; in such cases uric acid formation increases. Although special attention has been directed to the nuclei of leucocytes because these can readily be examined during life, it must be remembered that the nuclein metabolism of all cells may contribute to uric acid formation. Uric acid, which originates by metabolism, is spoken of as *endogenous*.

We must next consider the mechanism by which the tissue cells form uric acid from nuclein. This question is not only of interest in itself, but also because it illustrates a general truth concerning the importance of the tissue enzymes. The ferment of the liver which turns glycogen into sugar is the oldest known example of these; in more recent times, the importance of tissue erepsins (see p. 531) and arginase (see p. 568) has been recognised. In uric acid formation, we have the very striking example of the action of a succession of enzymes; these have been studied in the extracts of different organs, and their distribution varies a good deal; speaking generally, however, they appear to be most abundant in spleen and liver. The first of these is called *nuclease*; this liberates the purine bases from nuclein. The next to come into play are certain deamidising ferments; one of these, called *adenase*, converts adenine into hypoxanthine, and another, called *guanase*, converts guanine into xanthine. Finally, *oxidases* step in, which convert hypoxanthine into xanthine, and xanthine into uric acid. But even that does not bring the list to a conclusion, for in many organs there is a capacity to destroy uric acid after it is formed, and so we are protected from a too great accumulation of this substance. What exactly happens to the uric acid is not certain, although it is clear that the products of its breakdown are not so harmful as uric acid itself. The ferment responsible for uric acid destruction is called the *uricolytic* ferment. The uric acid which ultimately eacapes as urates (normally) in the urine is the undestroyed residue.

In gout and allied disorders there may be increased formation of uric acid, or a smaller amount of that formed may be destroyed; the excess may pass into the urine, partly as free uric acid or excess of urates, and so there is a liability to concretions (calculi, gravel, etc.), forming in the kidney or bladder. There is also a tendency to the deposition of urates in certain parts, and the joint cartilages in particular are liable to these concretions. The uric acid diathesis is, however, much too large a subject to treat in a physiological textbook, and medical students, when they come to the study of pathology, will discover that many views are held in relation to it.

Hippuric Acid.

Hippuric Acid ($C_9H_9NO_3$), combined with bases to form hippurates, is present in small quantities in human urine, but in large

quantities in the urine of herbivora. This is due to the food of herbivora containing substances belonging to the aromatic group—the benzoic acid series. If benzoic acid is given to a man, it unites with glycine with the elimination of a molecule of water, and is excreted as hippuric acid—

$$\underset{\text{[Benzoic acid.]}}{C_6H_5.COOH} + \underset{\text{[Glycine.]}}{\begin{matrix}CH_2.NH_2\\|\\COOH\end{matrix}} = \underset{\text{[Hippuric acid.]}}{\begin{matrix}CH_2NH.CO.C_6H_5\\|\\COOH\end{matrix}} + \underset{\text{[Water.]}}{H_2O}$$

This is a well-marked instance of synthesis carried out in the animal body, and experimental investigation shows that it is accomplished by the living cells of the kidney itself; for if a mixture of glycine, benzoic acid, and blood is injected through the kidney (or mixed with a minced kidney just removed from the body of an animal), their place is found to have been taken by hippuric acid.

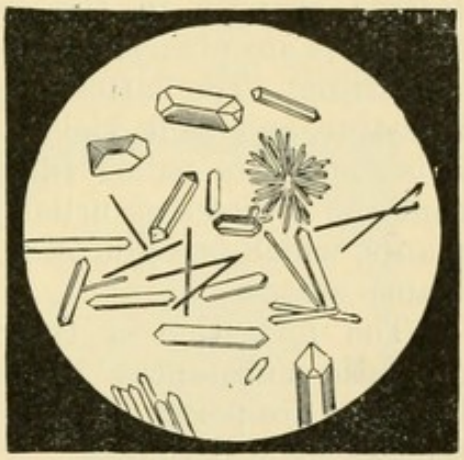


Fig. 430.—Crystals of hippuric acid.

The Inorganic Constituents of Urine.

The inorganic or mineral constituents of urine are chiefly chlorides, phosphates, sulphates, and carbonates; the metals with which these are in combination are sodium, potassium, ammonium, calcium, and magnesium. The total amount of these salts varies from 19 to 25 grammes daily. The most abundant is sodium chloride, which averages in amount 10 to 16 grammes per diem. These substances are derived from two sources—first from the food, and secondly as the result of metabolic processes. The chlorides and most of the phosphates come from the food; the sulphates and some of the phosphates, as a result of metabolism.

Chlorides.—The chief chloride is that of sodium. The ingestion of sodium chloride is followed by its appearance in the urine, some on the same day, some on the next day. Some is decomposed to form the hydrochloric acid of the gastric juice. The salt, in passing through the body, fulfils the useful office of stimulating metabolism and secretion.

Sulphates.—The sulphates in the urine are principally those of potassium and sodium. Only the smallest trace enters the body with the food. Sulphates have an unpleasant bitter taste (for instance, Epsom salts): hence we do not take food that contains them. The sulphates vary in amount from 1·5 to 3 grammes daily.

They are derived from the metabolism of proteins, and the excretion of sulphates, though it occurs earlier than that of urea, runs parallel with it. The sulphates are therefore like urea the result of exogenous protein metabolism. The sulphur of the protein, which is endogenously katabolised, is not converted into ordinary sulphates to any great extent, but reappears in the urine partly as ethereal sulphates, and partly in the form of certain obscure but not fully oxidised sulphur compounds, and is usually spoken of as *neutral sulphur*.

The ethereal sulphates just mentioned form about a tenth of the total sulphates. They are combinations of sulphuric acid with organic radicals, and the greater part of them originate from putrefactive changes in the intestine. The chief of these ethereal sulphates are phenyl sulphate of potassium and indoxyl sulphate of potassium. The latter originates from the indole formed in the intestine, and as it yields indigo when treated with certain reagents it is sometimes called *indican*. It is very important to remember that the indican of urine is not the same thing as the indican of plants, which is a glucoside. Both yield indigo, but there the resemblance ceases.

The formation of these sulphates is somewhat important; the aromatic substances liberated by putrefactive processes in the intestine are poisonous, but their conversion into ethereal sulphates renders them harmless.

The equation representing the formation of potassium phenyl-sulphate is as follows :—

$$\underset{\text{[Phenol.]}}{C_6H_5OH} + \underset{\text{[Potassium hydrogen sulphate.]}}{SO_2\langle^{OH}_{OK}} = \underset{\text{[Potassium phenyl-sulphate.]}}{SO_2\langle^{O.C_6H_5}_{OK}} + \underset{\text{[Water.]}}{H_2O.}$$

Indole (C_8H_7N) on absorption is converted into indoxyl :—

$$C_6H_4\langle^{C.OH:CH}_{NH.}$$

The equation representing the formation of potassium indoxyl-sulphate is as follows :—

$$\underset{\text{[Indoxyl.]}}{C_8H_7NO} + \underset{\text{[Potassium hydrogen sulphate.]}}{SO_2\langle^{OH}_{OK}} = \underset{\text{[Potassium indoxyl-sulphate.]}}{SO_2\langle^{O.C_8H_6N}_{OK}} + \underset{\text{[Water.]}}{H_2O.}$$

Carbonates.—Carbonates and bicarbonates of sodium, calcium, magnesium, and ammonium are only present in alkaline urine. They arise from the carbonates of the food, or from vegetable acids (malic, tartaric, etc.) in the food. They are, therefore, found in the urine of herbivora and vegetarians, whose urine is thus rendered alkaline. Urine containing carbonates becomes, like saliva, cloudy

on standing, the precipitate consisting of calcium carbonate, and also phosphates.

Phosphates.—Two classes of phosphates occur in normal urine:—

(1) Alkaline phosphates—that is, phosphates of sodium (abundant) and potassium (scanty).

(2) Earthy phosphates—that is, phosphates of calcium (abundant) and magnesium (scanty).

The composition of the phosphates in urine is liable to variation. In acid urine the acidity is due to the acid salts. These are chiefly:—

Sodium dihydrogen phosphate, NaH_2PO_4, and calcium dihydrogen phosphate, $Ca(H_2PO_4)_2$.

In neutral urine, in addition, disodium hydrogen phosphate (Na_2HPO_4), calcium hydrogen phosphate, $CaHPO_4$, and magnesium



FIG. 431.—Urinary sediment of triple phosphates (large prismatic crystals) and urate of ammonium, from urine which had undergone alkaline fermentation.

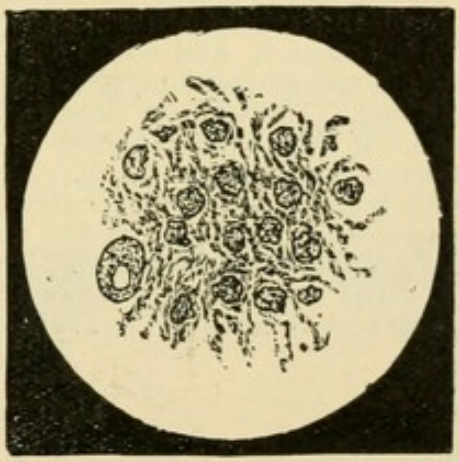


FIG. 432.—Mucus deposited from urine.

hydrogen phosphate, $MgHPO_4$, are found. In alkaline urine there may be instead of, or in addition to, the above, the normal phosphates of sodium, calcium, and magnesium [Na_3PO_4, $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$, $Mg_3(PO_4)_2$].

The earthy phosphates are precipitated by rendering the urine alkaline by ammonia. In decomposing urine, ammonia is formed from the urea: this also precipitates the earthy phosphates. The phosphates most frequently found in the white creamy precipitate which occurs in decomposing urine are:—

(1) Triple phosphate or ammonio-magnesium phosphate ($NH_4MgPO_4+6H_2O$). This crystallises in "coffin-lid" crystals (see fig. 431) or feathery stars.

(2) Stellar phosphate, or calcium phosphate; this crystallises in star-like clusters of prisms.

As a rule normal urine gives no precipitate when it is boiled; but sometimes neutral, alkaline, and occasionally faintly acid urines

give a precipitate of calcium phosphate when boiled: this precipitate is amorphous, and is liable to be mistaken for albumin. It may be distinguished readily from albumin, as it is soluble in a few drops of acetic acid, whereas coagulated protein does not dissolve.

The phosphoric acid in the urine chiefly originates from the phosphates of the food, but is partly a decomposition product of the phosphorised organic materials in the body, such as lecithin and nuclein. The amount of P_2O_5 in the twenty-four hours' urine varies from 2·5 to 3·5 grammes, of which the earthy phosphates contain about half (1 to 1·5 gr.).

Tests for the Inorganic Salts of Urine.

Chlorides.—Acidulate with nitric acid and add silver nitrate; a white precipitate of silver chloride, soluble in ammonia, is produced. The object of acidulating with nitric acid is to prevent phosphates being precipitated by the silver nitrate.

Sulphates.—Acidulate with hydrochloric acid, and add barium chloride. A white precipitate of barium sulphate is produced. Hydrochloric acid is again added first, to prevent precipitation of phosphates.

Phosphates.—i. Add ammonia; a white crystalline precipitate of earthy (that is, calcium and magnesium) phosphates is produced. This becomes more apparent on standing. The alkaline (that is, sodium and potassium) phosphates remain in solution. ii. Mix another portion of urine with half its volume of nitric acid; add ammonium molybdate, and boil. A yellow crystalline precipitate falls. This test is given by both classes of phosphates.

Quantitative estimation of the salts is accomplished by the use of solutions of standard strength, which are run into the urine till the formation of a precipitate ceases. The standards are made of silver nitrate, barium chloride, and uranium nitrate or acetate for chlorides, sulphates, and phosphates respectively.

Urinary Deposits.

The different substances that may occur in urinary deposits are formed elements and chemical substances.

The **formed** or **anatomical elements** may consist of blood corpuscles, pus, mucus, epithelium cells, spermatozoa, casts of the urinary tubules, fungi, and entozoa. All of these, with the exception of a small quantity of mucus, which forms a flocculent cloud in the urine, are pathological, and the microscope is chiefly employed in their detection.

The **chemical substances** are uric acid, urates, calcium oxalate, calcium carbonate, and phosphates. Rarer forms are leucine, tyrosine, xanthine, and cystin. We shall, however, here only consider the commoner deposits, and for their identification the microscope and chemical tests must both be employed.

Deposit of Uric Acid.—This is a sandy reddish deposit resembling cayenne pepper. It may be recognised by its crystalline form (fig. 429, p. 572) and the murexide reaction. The presence of these crystals generally indicates an increased formation of uric acid, and, if excessive, may lead to the formation of stones or calculi in the bladder.

Deposit of Urates.—This is much commoner, and may, if the urine is concentrated, occur in normal urine when it cools. It is generally found in the concentrated urine of fevers; and there appears to be a kind of fermentation, called the acid fermentation, which occurs in the urine after it has been passed, and which leads to the same result. The chief constituent of the deposit is the acid sodium urate, the formation of which from the normal sodium urate of the urine may be represented by the equation:—

$$\underset{\text{[Normal sodium urate.]}}{2C_5H_2Na_2N_4O_3} + \underset{\text{[Water.]}}{H_2O} + \underset{\text{[Carbonic acid.]}}{CO_2} = \underset{\text{[Acid sodium urate.]}}{2C_5H_3NaN_4O_3} + \underset{\text{[Sodium carbonate.]}}{Na_2CO_3}.$$

This deposit may be recognised as follows:—

(1) It has a pinkish colour; the pigment called *uro-erythrin* is one of the pigments of the urine, but its relationship to the other urinary pigments is not known.

(2) It dissolves upon warming the urine.

(3) Microscopically it is usually amorphous, but crystalline forms similar to those depicted in fig. 431 may occur. Crystals of calcium oxalate may be mixed with this deposit (see fig. 433).

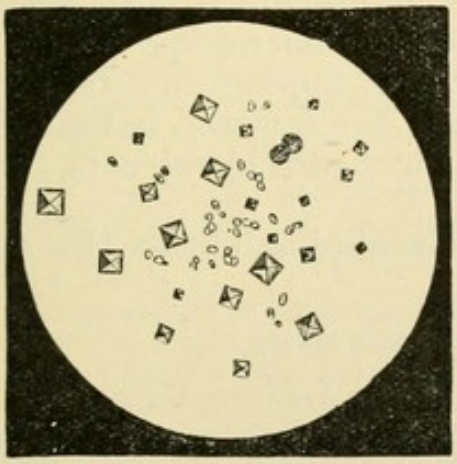


FIG. 433.—Crystals of calcium oxalate.

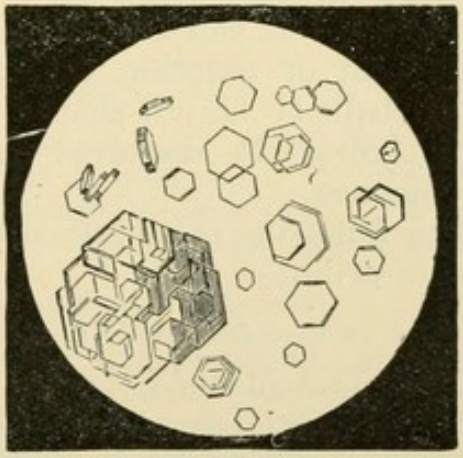


FIG. 434.—Crystals of cystin.

Deposit of Calcium Oxalate.—This occurs in envelope crystals (octahedra) or dumb-bells. It is insoluble in ammonia, and in acetic acid. It is soluble with difficulty in hydrochloric acid.

Deposit of Cystin.—Cystin ($C_6H_{12}N_2S_2O_4$) is recognised by its colourless six-sided crystals (fig. 434). These are rare: they occur only in acid urine, and they may form concretions or calculi. Cystinuria (cystin in the urine) is hereditary.

Deposit of Phosphates.—These occur in alkaline urine. The urine may be alkaline when passed, due to fermentative changes occurring in the bladder. All urine, however, if exposed to the air (unless the air is perfectly pure, as on the top of a snow mountain),

will in time become alkaline, owing to the growth of the *micrococcus ureæ*. This forms ammonium carbonate from the urea.

$$\underset{\text{[Urea.]}}{CON_2H_4} + \underset{\text{[Water.]}}{2H_2O} = \underset{\text{[Ammonium carbonate.]}}{(NH_4)_2CO_3}.$$

The ammonia renders the urine alkaline and precipitates the earthy phosphates. The chief forms of phosphates that occur in urinary deposits are—

(1) Calcium phosphate, $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$; amorphous.

(2) Triple or ammonio-magnesium phosphate, $MgNH_4PO_4$; coffin-lids and feathery stars (fig. 431).

(3) Crystalline phosphate of calcium, $CaHPO_4$, in rosettes of prisms, in spherules, or in dumb-bells.

(4) Magnesium phosphate, $Mg_3(PO_4)_2 + 22H_2O$, occurs occasionally, and crystallises in long plates.

All these phosphates are dissolved by acids, such as acetic acid, without effervescence.

A solution of ammonium carbonate (1 in 5) eats magnesium phosphate away at the edges; it has no effect on the triple phosphate. A phosphate of calcium ($CaHPO_4 + 2H_2O$) may occasionally be deposited in acid urine. Pus in urine is apt to be mistaken for phosphates, but can be distinguished by the microscope.

Deposit of calcium carbonate, $CaCO_3$, appears but rarely as whitish balls or biscuit-shaped bodies. It is commoner in the urine of herbivora. It dissolves in acetic or hydrochloric acid, with effervescence.

The following is a summary of the chemical sediments that may occur in urine:—

CHEMICAL SEDIMENTS IN URINE.

In Acid Urine.

Uric Acid.—Whetstone, dumb-bell, or sheaf-like aggregations of crystals deeply tinged by pigment.

Urates.—Generally amorphous. The acid urate of sodium and of ammonium may sometimes occur in star-shaped clusters of needles or spheroidal clumps with projecting spines. Tinged brick-red. Soluble on warming.

Calcium Oxalate. — Octahedra, so-called envelope crystals. Insoluble in acetic acid.

Cystin.—Hexagonal plates. Rare.

Leucine and Tyrosine.—Rare.

Calcium Phosphate, $CaHPO_4 + 2H_2O$.—Rare.

In Alkaline Urine.

Phosphates. — Calcium phosphate, $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$. Amorphous.

Triple phosphate, $MgNH_4PO_4 + 6H_2O$. Coffin-lids or feathery stars.

Calcium hydrogen phosphate, $CaHPO_4$. Rosettes, spherules, or dumb-bells.

Magnesium phosphate, $Mg_3(PO_4)_2 + 22H_2O$. Long plates.

All the preceding are soluble in acetic acid without effervescence.

Calcium Carbonate, $CaCO_3$.—Biscuit-shaped crystals. Soluble in acetic acid with effervescence.

Ammonium Urate, $C_5H_2(NH_4)_2N_4O_3$. — "Thorn-apple" spherules.

Leucine and Tyrosine.—Very rare.

Pathological Urine.

Under this head we shall briefly consider only those abnormal constituents which are most frequently met with.

Proteins.—There is no protein in normal urine,* and the most common cause of the appearance of albumin in the urine is disease of the kidney (Bright's disease). The term "albumin" is the one used by clinical observers. Properly speaking, it is a mixture of serum albumin and serum globulin. Of these, serum albumin is usually the more abundant. Globulins, and especially englobulins, have probably larger molecules, so escape of globulin indicates more serious damage to the renal cells. The best methods of testing for and estimating the protein are the following:—

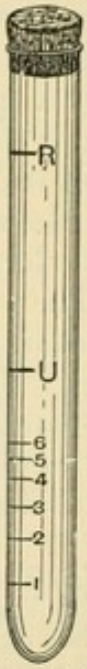


Fig. 435.—Esbach's Albuminometer.

(*a*) Boil the top of a long column of urine in a test-tube. If the urine is acid, the albumin is coagulated. If the quantity of albumin is small, the cloudiness produced is readily seen, as the unboiled urine below it is clear. This is insoluble in a few drops of acetic acid, and so may be distinguished from phosphates. If the urine is alkaline, it should be first rendered acid with a little dilute acetic acid.

(*b*) *Heller's Nitric-acid Test.*—Pour some of the urine gently on to the surface of some nitric acid in a test-tube. A ring of white precipitate occurs at the junction of the two liquids. This test is used for small quantities of albumin.

(*c*) *Estimation of Albumin by Esbach's Albuminometer.*—Esbach's reagent for precipitating the albumin is made by dissolving 10 grammes of picric acid and 20 grammes of citric acid in 800 or 900 c.c. of boiling water, and then adding sufficient water to make up to a litre (1000 c.c.).

The albuminometer is a test-tube graduated as shown in fig. 435.

Pour the urine into the tube up to the mark U; then the reagent up to the mark R. Close the tube with a cork, and to ensure complete mixture, tilt it to and fro a dozen times without shaking. Allow the corked tube to stand upright twenty-four hours; then read off on the scale the height of the coagulum. The figures indicate grammes of dried albumin in a litre of urine. The percentage is obtained by dividing by 10. Thus, if the coagulum stands at 3, the amount of albumin is 3 grammes per litre, or 0·3 gr. in 100 c.c. If the sediment falls between any two figures, the distance ¼, ½, or ¾ from the upper or lower figure can be read off with sufficient accuracy. Thus, the surface of the sediment being midway between 3 and 4 would be read as 3·5. When the albumin is so abundant that the sediment is above 4, a more accurate result is obtained by first diluting the urine with one or two volumes of water, and then multiplying the resulting figure by 2 or 3, as the case may be. If the amount of albumin is less than ·05 per cent., it cannot be accurately estimated by this method.

A condition called "peptonuria," or peptone in the urine, is observed in certain pathological states, especially in diseases where

* This absolute statement is true for all practical purposes. Mörner, however, has stated that a trace of protein (serum albumin *plus* the protein constituent of mucin) does occur in normal urine; but the trace is negligible, many hundreds of litres of urine having to be used to obtain an appreciable quantity.

there is a formation of pus, and particularly if the pus is decomposed owing to the action of a bacterial growth called staphylococcus; one of the products of disintegration of pus cells appears to be peptone; and this leaves the body by the urine. The term "peptone," however, is in the strict sense of the word incorrect; the proteid present is deutero-proteose. In the disease of bone called "osteomalacia" a proteose is also usually found in the urine. This more nearly resembles hetero-proteose in its properties.

Sugar.—Normal urine contains no sugar, or so little that for clinical purposes it may be considered absent. It occurs in the disease called diabetes mellitus, which can be artificially produced by puncture of the medulla oblongata, or by extirpation of the pancreas. The disease as it occurs in man may be due to disordered metabolism of the liver, to disease of the pancreas, and to other causes (see p. 526).

The sugar present is dextrose. Lactose may occur in the urine of nursing mothers. Levulose, pentoses, and other sugars are found but rarely. Diabetic urine also contains hydroxybutyric acid, and may contain or yield on distillation acetone, and ethyl-diacetic acid. The methods usually adopted for detecting and estimating the sugar are as follows:—

(*a*) The urine has generally a high specific gravity.

(*b*) The presence of sugar is shown by the reduction (yellow precipitate of cuprous oxide) that occurs on boiling with Fehling's solution. Fehling's solution is an alkaline solution of copper sulphate to which Rochelle salt has been added. The Rochelle salt (double tartrate of potash and soda) holds the cupric hydrate in solution. Fehling's solution should always be freshly prepared, as, on standing, an isomeride is formed from the tartaric acid, which reduces the cupric to cuprous oxide. Fehling's solution should, therefore, always be tested by boiling before it is used. If it remains clear on boiling, it is in good condition.

(*c*) *Picric Acid Test.*—Take a drachm (about 4 c.c.) of diabetic urine; add to it an equal volume of saturated aqueous solution of picric acid, and half the volume (*i.e.*, 2 c.c.) of the liquor potassæ of the British Pharmacopœia. Boil the mixture for about a minute, and it becomes so intensely dark red as to be opaque. Now do the same experiment with normal urine. An orange-red colour appears even in the cold, and is deepened by boiling, but it never becomes opaque, and so the urine for clinical purposes may be considered free from sugar. This reduction of picric acid by normal urine is due to creatinine.

(*d*) *Quantitative Determination of Sugar in Urine.*—Fehling's solution is prepared as follows:—34·639 grammes of copper sulphate are dissolved in about 200 c.c. of distilled water; 173 grammes of Rochelle salt are dissolved in 600 c.c. of a 14 per cent. solution of caustic soda. The two solutions are mixed and diluted to a litre. Ten c.c. of this solution are equivalent to 0·05 gramme of dextrose. Dilute 10 c.c. of this solution with about 40 c.c. of water, and boil it in a porcelain basin. Run into this from a burette the urine (which should be previously diluted with nine times its volume of distilled water) until the blue colour of the copper solution disappears—that is, till all the cupric hydrate is reduced. The mixture in the basin should be boiled after every addition. The quantity of diluted urine used from the burette contains 0·05 gramme of sugar. Calculate the percentage from this, remembering that the urine has been diluted to ten times its original volume.

Pavy's modification of Fehling's solution is often used. Here ammonia holds the copper in solution, and no precipitate forms on boiling with sugar, as ammonia holds the cuprous oxide in solution. The reduction is complete when the

blue colour disappears; 10 c.c. of Pavy's solution = 1 c.c. of Fehling's solution = 0·005 gramme of dextrose.

In some cases of diabetic urine where there is excess of ammonio-magnesic phosphate, the full reduction is not obtained with Fehling's solution, and when the quantity of sugar is small it may be missed. In such a case excess of soda or potash should be first added, the precipitated phosphates filtered off, and the filtrate after it has been well boiled may then be titrated with Fehling's solution.

Fehling's test is not absolutely trustworthy. Often a normal urine will decolorise Fehling's solution, though seldom a red precipitate is formed. This is due to excess of urates and creatinine. Another substance called glycuronic acid ($C_6H_{10}O_7$) is, however, very likely to be confused with sugar by Fehling's test; the cause of its appearance is sometimes the administration of drugs (chloral, camphor, etc.); but sometimes it appears independently of drug treatment. (See p. 527.)

In the rare and hereditary condition called alcaptonuria, confusion may also arise. Alcapton is a substance which originates from tyrosine by an unusual form of metabolism. It gives the urine a brown tint, which darkens on exposure to the air. It is an aromatic substance, which Baumann and Wolkow and later Garrod identified with homogentisinic acid ($C_6H_3.(OH)_2CH_2.COOH$).

(*e*) A good confirmatory test for sugar is the *fermentation test*, which is performed as follows:—

Half fill a test-tube with the urine and add a little German yeast. Fill up the tube with mercury; invert it in a basin of mercury, and leave it in a warm place for twenty-four hours. The sugar will undergo fermentation: carbonic acid gas accumulates in the tube, and the liquid no longer gives the tests for sugar, or only faintly, but gives those for alcohol instead. The specific gravity falls. A control experiment should be made with yeast and water in another test-tube, as a small yield of carbonic acid is sometimes obtained from impurities in the yeast.

(*f*) The *phenylhydrazine* test (p. 395) may also be applied.

Bile.—This occurs in jaundice. The urine is dark-brown, greenish, or in extreme cases almost black in colour. The most readily applied test is Gmelin's test for the bile pigments. Excess of urobilin should not be mistaken for bile pigment. Pettenkofer's test for the bile acids seldom succeeds in urine if the test is done in the ordinary way. The best method is to warm a thin film of urine and cane sugar solution in a flat porcelain dish. Then dip a glass rod in strong sulphuric acid, and draw it across the film. Its track is marked by a purplish line. Hay's sulphur test is a good one for bile salts. If some flowers of sulphur are sprinkled on the surface of normal urine, it remains floating on the top. If bile salts are present even in small quantities, the fine sulphur particles fall down to the bottom of the vessel in which the urine is contained; this is due to an alteration of surface tension which bile salts produce.

Blood.—When hæmorrhage occurs in any part of the urinary tract, blood appears in the urine. It is found in the acute stage of Bright's disease. If a large quantity is present, the urine is deep red. Microscopic examination then reveals the presence of blood corpuscles, and on spectroscopic examination the bands of oxyhæmoglobin are seen.

If only a small quantity of blood is present, the secretion—especially if acid—has a characteristic reddish-brown colour, which physicians term "smoky."

The blood pigment may, under certain circumstances, appear in the urine without the presence of any blood corpuscles at all. This is produced by a disintegration of the corpuscles occurring in the circulation. The condition so produced is called *hæmoglobinuria;* it occurs in several pathological states, as for instance in the tropical disease called "Black-water fever." The pigment is in the condition of methæmoglobin mixed with more or less oxyhæmoglobin, and the spectroscope is the means used for identifying these substances.

Pus occurs in the urine as the result of suppuration in any part of the urinary tract. It forms a white sediment resembling that of phosphates, and, indeed, is always mixed with phosphates. The pus corpuscles may, however, be seen with the microscope; their nuclei are rendered evident by treatment with 1 per cent. acetic acid, and the pus corpuscles are seen to resemble white blood-corpuscles, which, in fact, they are in origin. They dissolve in glacial acetic acid.

Some of the protein constituents of the pus cells—and the same is true for blood—pass into solution in the urine, so that the urine pipetted off from the surface of the deposit gives the tests for albumin.

On the addition of liquor potassæ to the deposit of pus cells, a ropy gelatinous mass is obtained. This is distinctive. Mucus treated in the same way is dissolved.

CHAPTER XXXVIII

THE SKIN AND ITS APPENDAGES

THE skin is composed of two parts, *epidermis* or *cuticle*, and *dermis* or *cutis vera*.

The Epidermis is composed of a large number of layers of cells; it is a very thick stratified epithelium. The deeper layers are proto-

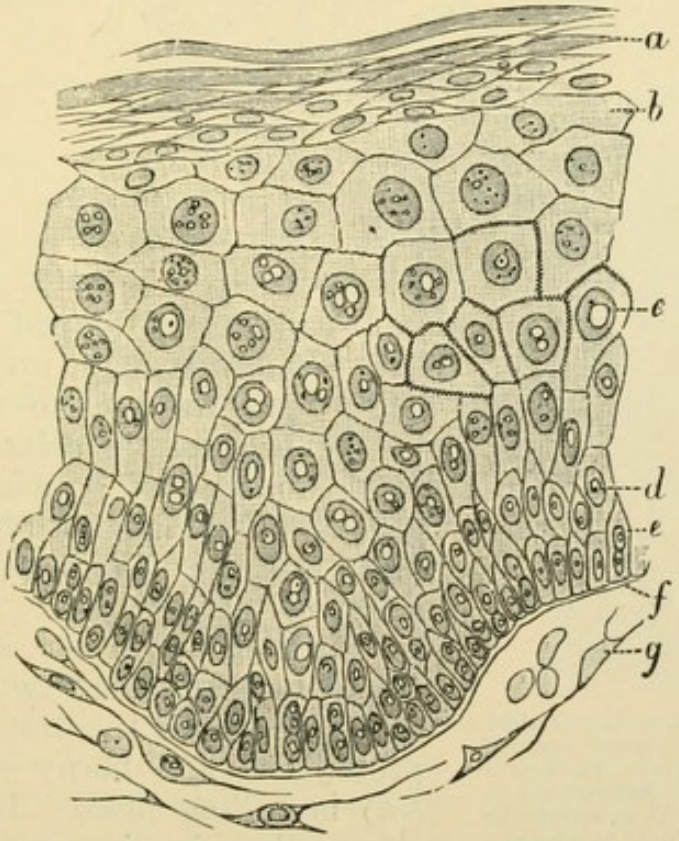


FIG. 436.—Vertical section of the epidermis of the prepuce. *a*, stratum corneum, of very few layers the stratum lucidum and stratum granulosum not being distinctly represented; *b*, *c*, *d*, and *e*, the layers of the stratum Malpighii, a certain number of the cells in layers *d* and *e* showing signs of division; it consists chiefly of prickle cells; *g*, connective-tissue cells in cutis vera. (Cadiat.)

plasmic, and form the *rete mucosum*, or *Malpighian layer*; the surface layers are hard and horny; this horny layer is the thickest part of the epidermis, and is specially thick on the palms and soles, where

it is subjected to most friction. The cells of the deepest layers of the Malpighian layer are columnar in shape; the layers next to these are composed of polyhedral cells, which become flatter as they approach the horny layers. Between these cells are fine intercellular passages, bridged across by fine protoplasmic processes, which pass from cell to cell; the spaces between the cells serve for the passage of lymph. It is in the cells of the Malpighian layer that pigment granules are deposited in the coloured races.

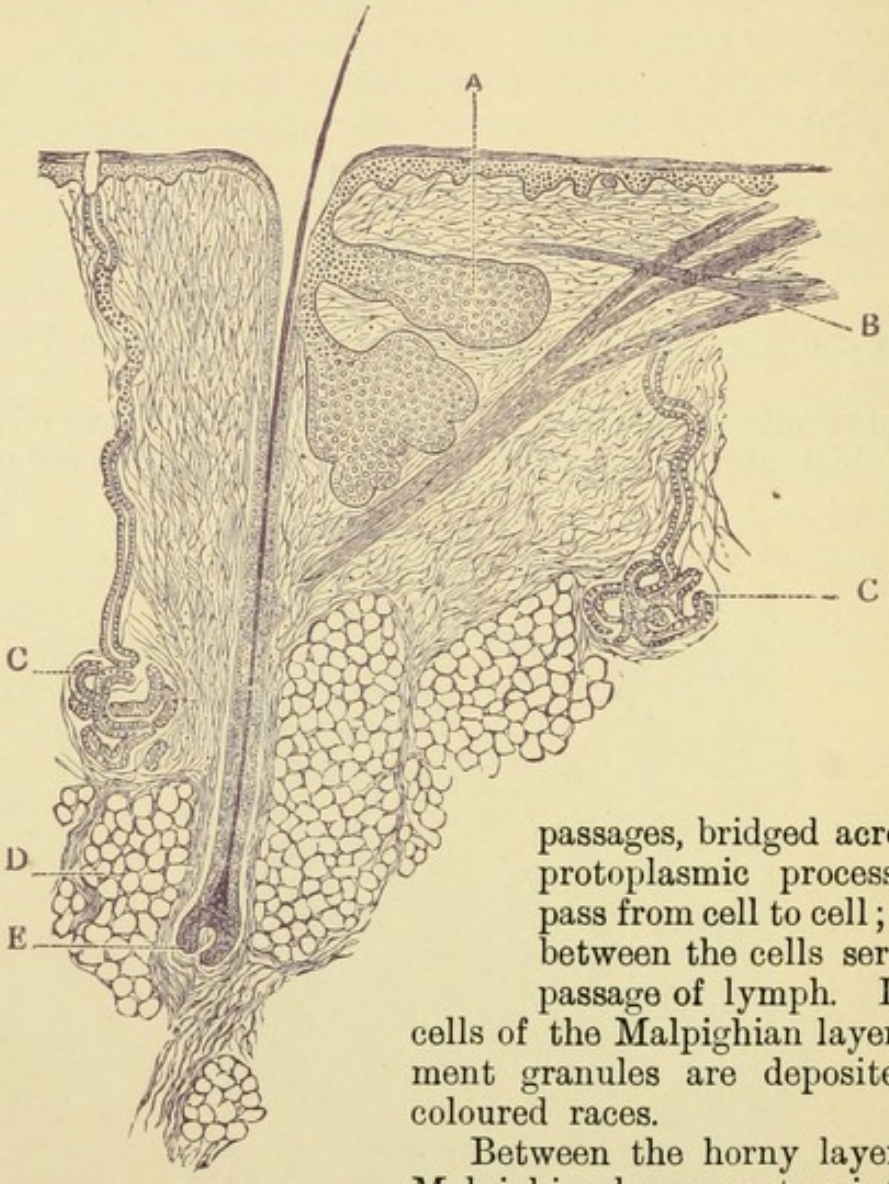


FIG. 437.—Vertical section of skin. A. Sebaceous gland opening into hair follicle. B. Muscular fibres. C. Sudoriferous or sweat-gland. D. Subcutaneous fat. E. Fundus of hair follicle, with hair papilla. (Klein.)

Between the horny layer and the Malpighian layer are two intermediate strata, in which the transformation of protoplasm into horny material (*keratin*) is taking place. In the first of these—that is, the one next to the Malpighian layer, the cells are flattened, and filled with large granules of *eleidin*, an intermediate substance in the formation of horn. This layer is called the *stratum granulosum.*

Above this are several layers of clear, more rounded cells, which constitute the *stratum lucidum;* and above this the horny layer

proper, many strata deep, begins. The cells become more and more scaly as they approach the surface, where they lose their nuclei and eventually become detached.

The epidermis grows by a multiplication of the deepest layer of

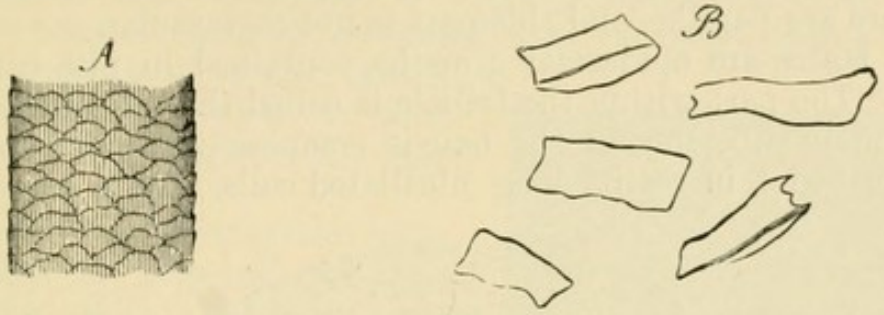


FIG. 438.—Surface of a white hair, magnified 160 diameters. The wavy lines mark the upper or free edges of the cortical scales. *B*, separated scales, magnified 350 diameters. (Kölliker.)

cells (fig. 436 *e*); the newly-formed cells push towards the surface those previously formed, in their progress undergoing the transformation into keratin.

The epidermis has no blood-vessels; nerve-fibrils pass into its deepest layers, and ramify between the cells.

The Dermis is composed of dense fibrous tissue, which becomes looser and more reticular in its deeper part, where it passes by insensible degrees into the areolar and adipose tissue of the subcutaneous region. The denser superficial layer is very vascular, and is covered with minute *papillæ;* the epidermis is moulded over these, and in the palms and soles, where the papillæ are largest and are disposed in rows, their presence is indicated by the well-known ridges on the surface.

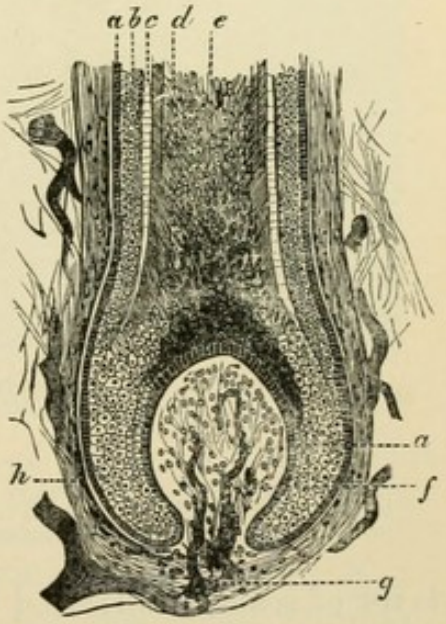


FIG. 439.—Longitudinal section of a hair follicle. *a* and *b*, external root-sheath; *c*, internal root-sheath; *d*, fibrous layer of the hair; *e*, medulla; *f*, hair papilla; *g*, blood-vessels of the hair papilla; *h*, dermic coat. (Cadiat.)

The papillæ contain loops of capillaries, and in some cases, especially in the palm of the hand and fingers, they contain tactile corpuscles (which will be more fully described in connection with the sense of touch). Special capillary networks are distributed to the sweat-glands, sebaceous glands, and hair follicles.

The deeper portions of the dermis in the scrotum, penis, and nipple, contain involuntary muscular tissue; there is also a bundle of muscular tissue attached to each hair follicle.

The Nails are thickenings of the stratum lucidum. Each lies in a depression called the *bed* of the nail, the posterior part of which is overlapped by epidermis, and called the *nail-groove.* The dermis beneath is beset with longitudinal ridges instead of papillæ; these are very vascular; but in the *lunula,* the crescent at the base of the nail, there are papillæ, and this part is not so vascular.

The Hairs are epidermal growths, contained in pits called *hair follicles.* The part within the follicle is called the *root* of the hair.

The main substance of the hair is composed of pigmented horny fibrous material, in reality long fibrillated cells. It is covered by a

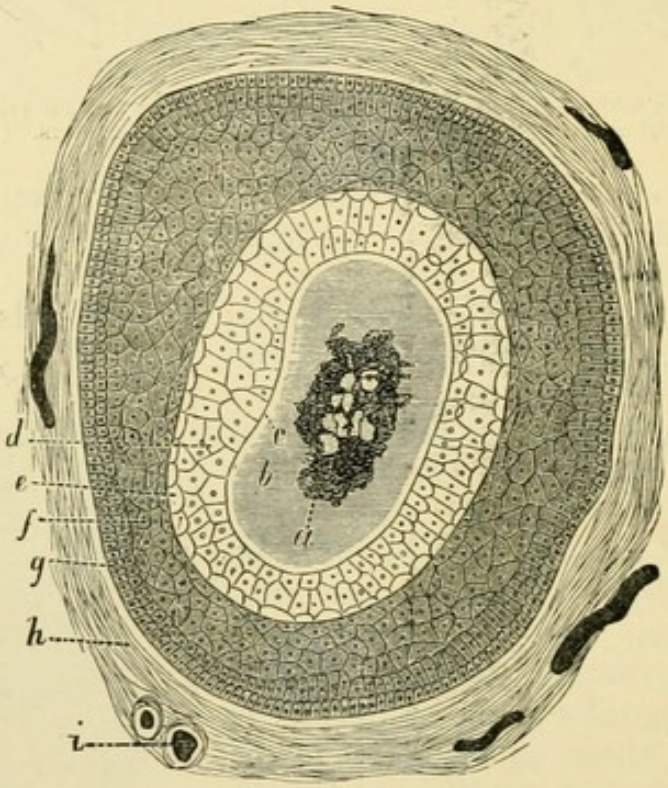


FIG. 440.—Transverse section of a hair and hair follicle made below the opening of the sebaceous gland. *a*, medulla, or pith of the hair; *b*, fibrous layer; *c*, cuticle; *d*, Huxley's layer; *e*, Henle's layer of internal root-sheath; *f* and *g*, layers of external root-sheath, outside of *g* is the basement membrane or hyaline layer; *h*, dermic (fibrous) coat of hair follicle; *i*, vessels. (Cadiat.)

layer of scales imbricated upwards (*hair cuticle*). In many hairs the centre is occupied by a *medulla,* formed of rounded cells containing eleidin granules. Minute air-bubbles may be present in both medulla and fibrous layer, and cause the hair to look white by reflected light. The grey hair of old age, however, is produced by a loss of pigment.

The root is enlarged at its extremity into a *knob,* into which projects a vascular *papilla* from the true skin.

The hair follicle consists of two parts, one continuous with the epidermis, called the *root-sheath,* the other continuous with the dermis, called the *dermic coat.* The two are separated by a basement membrane called the *hyaline layer* of the follicle. The root-sheath con-

sists of an outer layer of cells like the Malpighian layer of the epidermis, with which it is directly continuous (*outer root-sheath*), and of an inner horny layer (*inner root-sheath*), continuous with the horny layer of the epidermis. The inner root-sheath consists of three layers, the outermost being composed of long, non-nucleated cells (*Henle's layer*), the next of squarish nucleated cells (*Huxley's layer*), and the third is a *cuticle* of scales, imbricated downwards, which fit over the scales of the cuticle of the hair itself.

A small bundle of plain muscular fibres is attached to each follicle (fig. 437). When it contracts, as under the influence of cold, or of certain emotions such as fear, the hair is erected and the whole skin is roughened ("goose skin"). The nerves supplying these muscles are called *pilo-motor* nerves. The distribution of these nerves closely follows those of the vaso-constrictor nerves of the skin; their cell stations are in the lateral sympathetic chain.

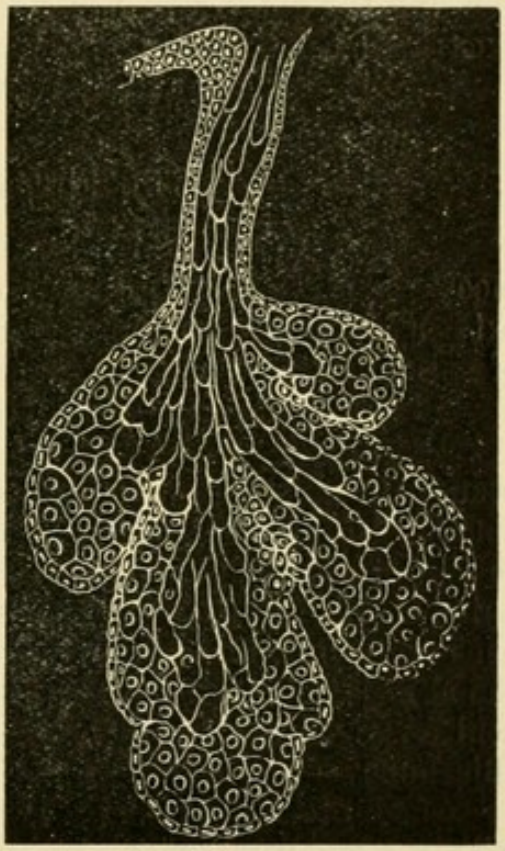


FIG. 441.—Sebaceous gland from human skin. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

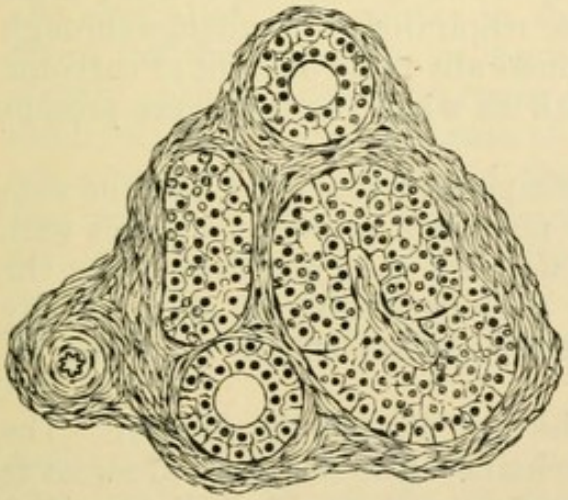


FIG. 442.—Terminal tubules of sudoriferous or sweat-glands, cut in various directions from the skin of the pig's ear. (V. D. Harris.)

The sebaceous glands (figs. 437 and 441) are small saccular glands, with ducts opening into the upper portion of the hair follicles. The secreting cells become charged with fatty matter, which is discharged into the lumen of the saccules owing to the disintegration of the cells. The secretion, *sebum*, contains isocholesterin (see p. 522) in addition to fatty matter. It acts as a lubricant to the hairs.

The sweat-glands are abundant over the whole human skin, but are most numerous where hairs are absent, on the palms and soles. Each consists of a coiled tube in the deepest part of the dermis, the

duct from which passes up through the dermis, and by a corkscrew-like canal through the epidermis to the surface.

The secreting tube is lined by one or two layers of cubical or columnar cells; outside this is a layer of longitudinally arranged muscular fibres, and then a basement membrane.

The duct is of similar structure, except that there is usually but one layer of cubical cells, and muscular fibres are absent; the passage through the epidermis has no proper wall; it is merely a channel excavated between the epidermal cells.

The ceruminous glands of the ear are modified sweat-glands.

The Functions of the Skin

Protection.—The skin acts as a protective organ, not only by mechanically covering and so defending internal structures from external violence, but more particularly in virtue of its being an organ of **sensation** (see later in the chapter on Touch).

Heat Regulation.—See Chapter XL.

Respiration.—A small amount of respiratory interchange of gases occurs through the skin, but in thick-skinned animals this is very small. In man, the carbonic acid exhaled by the skin is about $\frac{1}{150}$ to $\frac{1}{200}$ of that which passes from the lungs. But in thin-skinned animals, such as frogs, cutaneous respiration is very important; after the removal of the lungs of a frog, the respiratory interchange through the skin is sufficient to keep the animal alive, the amount of carbonic acid formed being about half as much as when the lungs are present (Bischoff).

Absorption.—This also is an unimportant function; but the skin will in a small measure absorb oily materials placed in contact with it; thus in some cases infants who will not take cod-liver oil by the mouth, can yet be dosed with it by rubbing it into the skin. Many ointments also are absorbed, and thus general effects produced by local inunction.

Secretion.—The secretions of the skin are two in number. The *sebum* is the natural lubricant of the hairs. The secretion of sweat is an important function of the skin, and we will therefore discuss it at greater length.

The Sweat

Physiology of the Secretion of Sweat.—We have seen that the sweat-glands are most abundant in man on the palms and soles, and here the greatest amount of perspiration occurs. Different animals vary a good deal in the amount of sweat they secrete, and in the place where the secretion is most abundant. Thus the ox perspires less than the horse and sheep; perspiration is absent from rats,

rabbits, and goats; pigs perspire mostly on the snout; dogs and cats on the pads of the feet.

As long as the secretion is small in amount, it is evaporated from the surface at once; this is called *insensible perspiration.* As soon as the secretion is increased or evaporation prevented, drops appear on the surface of the skin. This is known as *sensible perspiration.* The relation of these two varies with the temperature of the air; the drier and hotter the air, the greater is the proportion of insensible to sensible perspiration. In round numbers the total amount of sweat secreted by a man is two pounds in the twenty-four hours.

The amount of secretion is influenced by the vaso-motor nerves; an increase in the size of the skin-vessels leads to increased, a constriction of the vessels to diminished, perspiration. There are also special secretory fibres, stimulation of which causes a secretion even when the circulation is suspended, as in a recently amputated limb. These fibres are paralysed by atropine. They are contained in the same nerve-trunks as the vaso-motor nerves, as are also the nerve-fibres which supply the plain muscular fibres of the sweat-glands which act during the expulsion of the secretion. The secretory nerves for the lower limbs issue from the spinal cord by the last two or three dorsal and first two or four lumbar nerves (in the cat); they have cell stations in the lower ganglia of the lateral chain, and pass to the abdominal sympathetic and thence to the sciatic nerve. They are controlled by a centre in the upper lumbar region of the cord; those for the upper limbs leave the cord by the sixth, seventh, and eighth anterior thoracic roots, have cell stations in the ganglion stellatum, and ultimately pass to the ulnar and median nerves; they are controlled by a centre in the cervical enlargement of the cord. The secretory fibres for the head pass in the cervical sympathetic, and in some branches of the fifth cranial nerves. These subsidiary centres are dominated by one in the medulla oblongata (Adamkiewicz). These facts have been obtained by experiments on animals (cat, horse).

The sweat-centres may be excited directly by venous blood, as in asphyxia; or by over-heated blood (over 45° C.); or by certain drugs (see further); or reflexly by stimulation of afferent nerves such as the crural and peroneal.

Nervous diseases are often accompanied with disordered sweating; thus unilateral perspiration is seen in some cases of hemiplegia; degeneration of the anterior nerve-cells of the cord may cause stoppage of the secretion. It is sometimes increased in paralysed limbs.

The changes that occur in the secreting cells have been investigated by Renaut in the horse. When charged they are clear and swollen, the nucleus being situated near their attached ends;

when discharged they are smaller, granular, and their nucleus is more central.

The sweat, like the urine, must be regarded as an excretion, the secreting cells eliminating substances formed elsewhere.

Composition of the Sweat.—Sweat may be obtained in abundant quantities by placing the animal or man in a closed hot-air bath, or from a limb by enclosing it in a vessel made air-tight with an elastic bandage. Thus obtained, it is mixed with epidermal scales and a small quantity of fatty matter from the sebaceous glands. The continual shedding of epidermal scales is in reality an excretion. Keratin, of which they are chiefly composed, is rich in sulphur, and, consequently, this is one means by which sulphur is removed from the body.

The reaction of sweat is acid, and the acidity, as in the urine, is due to acid sodium phosphate. In profuse sweating, however, the secretion usually becomes alkaline or neutral. It has a peculiar and characteristic odour, which varies in different parts of the body, and is due to volatile fatty acids; its taste is saltish, its specific gravity about 1005.

In round numbers the percentage of solids is 1·2, of which 0·8 is inorganic matter. The following table is a compilation from several analyses:—

Water	98·88	per cent.	
Solids	1·12	,,	
Salts	0·57	,,	
NaCl	0·22 to 0·33	,,	
Other salts	0·18	,,	(alkaline sulphates, phosphates, lactates, and potassium chloride)
Fats	0·41	,,	(including fatty acids and isocholesterin)
Epithelium	0·17	,,	
Urea	0·08	,,	

The salts are in kind and relative quantity very like those of the urine. Funke was unable to find any urea, but most other observers agree on the presence of a minute quantity. It appears to become quickly transformed into ammonium carbonate. The protein which is present is probably derived from the epithelial cells of the epidermis, sweat-glands, and sebaceous glands, which are suspended in the excretion; but in the horse there is albumin actually in solution in the sweat.

Abnormal, Unusual, or Pathological Conditions of the Sweat.—*Drugs.*—Certain drugs (sudorifics) favour sweating, *e.g.*, pilocarpine, Calabar bean, strychnine, picrotoxine, muscarine, nicotine, camphor, ammonia. Others diminish the secretion, *e.g.*, atropine and morphine in large doses.

Large quantities of water, by raising the blood-pressure, increase the perspiration.

Some substances introduced into the body reappear in the sweat, *e.g.*, benzoic, tartaric, and succinic acids readily, quinine and iodine with more difficulty. Compounds of arsenic and mercury behave similarly.

Diseases.—Cystin has been found in some cases of cystinuria; dextrose in diabetic patients; bile-pigment in those with jaundice (as evidenced by the staining of the clothes); indigo in a peculiar condition known as chromidrosis; blood or hæmatin derivatives in red sweat; albumin in the sweat of acute rheumatism, which is often very acid; urates and calcium oxalate in gout; lactic acid in puerperal fever, and occasionally in rickets and scrofula.

Kidney Diseases.—The relation of the secretion of the skin to that of the kidneys is a very close one. Thus copious secretions of urine, or watery evacuations from the alimentary canal, coincide with dryness of the skin; abundant perspiration and scanty urine generally go together. In the condition known as *uræmia* (see p. 569), when the kidneys secrete little or no urine, the percentage of urea rises in the sweat; the sputum and the saliva also contain urea under those circumstances. The clear indication for the physician in such cases is to stimulate the skin to action by hot-air baths and pilocarpine, and the alimentary canal by means of purgatives. In some of these cases the skin secretes urea so abundantly that when the sweat dries on the body, the patient is covered with a coating of urea crystals.

Varnishing the Skin.—By covering the skin of such an animal as a rabbit with an impermeable varnish, the temperature is reduced, a peculiar train of symptoms set up, and ultimately the animal dies. If, however, cooling is prevented by keeping such an animal in warm cotton-wool, it lives longer. Varnishing the human skin does not seem to be dangerous. Many explanations have been offered to explain the peculiar condition observed in animals; retention of the sweat would hardly do it; the blood is not found *post-mortem* to contain any abnormal substance, nor is it poisonous when transfused into another animal. Cutaneous respiration is so slight in mammals that stoppage of this function cannot be supposed to cause death. The animal, in fact, dies of cold; the normal function of the skin in regulating temperature is interfered with, and it is animals with delicate skins which are most readily affected.

CHAPTER XXXIX

GENERAL METABOLISM

THE word *metabolism* has been often employed in the preceding chapters, and, as there explained, it is used to express the sum total of the chemical exchanges that occur in living tissues. The chemical changes have been considered separately under the headings Alimentation, Excretion, Respiration, etc. We have now to put our knowledge together, and consider these subjects in their relation to one another.

The living body is always giving off by the lungs, kidneys, and skin the products of its combustion, and is thus always tending to lose weight. This loss is compensated for by the intake of food and of oxygen. For the material it loses, it receives in exchange fresh substances. If, as in a normal adult, the income is exactly equal to the expenditure, the body-weight remains constant. If, as in a growing child, the income exceeds the expenditure, the body gains weight; and if, as in febrile conditions, or during starvation, the expenditure exceeds the income, the body wastes.

The different parts of the body have very different compositions; still, speaking of the body as a whole, Volkmann and Bischoff state that it contains 64 per cent. of water, 16 of proteins, 14 of fat, 5 of salt, and 1 of carbohydrates. The carbohydrates are thus the smallest constituent of the body; they are the glycogen of the liver and muscles, and small quantities of dextrose in various parts.

The most important, because the most abundant of the tissues of the body, is the muscular tissue. Muscle forms about 42 per cent. of the body-weight,* and contains, in round numbers, 75 per cent. of water and 21 per cent. of proteins; thus about half the protein material and of the water of the body exist in its muscles.

The body, however, does not remain in a stable condition; even while nutrition is occurring, destructive changes are taking place simultaneously; each cell may be considered to be in a state of unstable equilibrium, undergoing *anabolic*, or constructive processes, on the one hand, and destructive, or *katabolic*, processes on the other.

* The following is in round numbers the percentage proportion of the different structural elements of the body: skeleton, 16; muscles, 42; fat, 18; viscera, 9; skin, 8; brain, 2; blood, 5.

The two sides of metabolism may be compared by means of a balance-sheet, and the necessary data for the construction of such a comparison are:—

(1) The weight of the animal before, during, and after the experiment.

(2) The quantity and composition of its food.

(3) The amount of oxygen absorbed during respiration.

(4) The quantity and composition of urine, fæces, sweat, and expired air.

(5) The amount of work done, and the amount of heat developed. (The subject of animal heat will be considered in the next chapter.)

Water is determined by subtracting the amount of water ingested as food from the quantity lost by bowels, urine, lungs, and skin. The difference is a measure of the katabolism of hydrogen.

Nitrogen.—The nitrogen is derived from proteins, and appears chiefly in the urine. Smaller quantities are eliminated in sweat and fæces. From the amount of nitrogen so found, the amount of proteins which have undergone katabolism is calculated. Proteins contain, roughly, 16 per cent. of nitrogen; so 1 part of nitrogen is equivalent to 6·3 parts of protein; or 1 gramme of nitrogen to 30 grammes of flesh.

Fat and carbohydrate.—Subtract the carbon in the katabolised protein (protein contains 54 per cent. of carbon) from the total carbon eliminated by lungs, skin, bowels, and kidneys, and the difference represents fat and carbohydrate that have undergone katabolism.

Balance of Income and Discharge in Health.

In Chapter XXVIII. tables are given of adequate diets; these will in our balance-sheet represent the source of income; the other side of the balance-sheet, the expenditure, consists of the excretions.

We may select as our example a typical table of this daily exchange of material on an ordinary diet from the work of Pettenkofer and Voit. In the first experiment the man did no work.

Income.			Expenditure.			
Food.	Nitrogen.	Carbon.	Excretions.	Nitrogen.	Carbon.	Water.
Protein . 137 gr.	19·5	315·5	Urine .	17·4	12·7	1279
Fat . 117 „			Fæces .	2·1	14·5	83
Carbohydrate. 352 „			Expired air .	...	248·6	828
Water . 2016 „	...	...				
				19·5	275·8	2190

Here the body was in nitrogenous equilibrium, and it eliminated more water than it took in by 174 grammes, this being derived from oxidation of hydrogen. It stored 39·7 grammes of carbon, which is equivalent to 52 grammes of fat.

The next table gives the results of an experiment on the same man on the same diet, but who did active muscular work during the day :—

Expenditure.	Nitrogen.	Carbon.	Water.
Urine	17·4	12·6	1194
Fæces	2·1	14·5	94
Expired air	...	309·2	1412
	19·5	336·3	2700

It is important to notice that the discharge of nitrogen was unaltered, while that of both carbon and hydrogen was increased. At one time protein was considered to be the great source of muscular energy; this was first disproved by an historical experiment made by Fick and Wislicenus on themselves in their ascent of the Faulhorn. Nature works in a most economical way in reference to protein waste, and any increase in nitrogenous katabolism which occurs during muscular work is insignificant.

The balance-sheet method of investigation, though one of great usefulness, tells us very little of the details which lead to the end results. We must therefore now proceed to study the details, and although there is a good deal of guess work, and even ignorance upon some essential points, we may most conveniently consider the question under the three headings of our principal food materials, namely, carbohydrates, fats, and proteins.

Metabolism of Carbohydrates.

In plants, carbohydrates are synthesised by the agency of chlorophyll from the simple materials carbonic acid and water, which form their chief foods. The first substance formed is probably formic aldehyde, H.COH, and this by condensation is converted into sugar, and finally, into starch. We have no evidence that a synthesis of this kind ever takes place in animals, but the main source of animal carbohydrate is vegetable carbohydrate. This is taken in the food and converted into glucose; the glucose is taken to the liver and stored as glycogen, and in the liver is once more liberated as glucose, and distributed to the body in this form. The change from glycogen to sugar is the work of a ferment. Is the change from sugar to glycogen also a ferment action? And if so, is another ferment responsible for it, or have we to deal with a case of *reversible zymolysis?* This is one of many unanswered questions. The other important animal carbohydrate is lactose, a compound of dextrose and galactose. If the food contains galactose as well as dextrose, the

condensation of these two sugars to form lactose is a comparatively simple problem; there is no doubt that galactose is present in certain foods, for instance it is contained in some vegetables, and it also comes from the sugar of milk. Lactose in the mammary gland is, however, not the only place where galactose is necessary, for the cerebrosides of nervous tissue (see p. 176) also contain it. But it is not necessary to assume that all the galactose necessary for the formation of milk sugar and of the cerebrosides comes direct from the galactose of the food. Dextrose, galactose, and levulose are all isomeric, and the intramolecular rearrangements that would be necessary to convert one into another member of this group do not seem to be beyond the power of the tissue cells, and there is a good deal of evidence that such transformations actually occur in the body. The other carbohydrate constituents of the body are pentoses found in some nucleo-proteins, and glucosamine in the gluco-proteins, but in relation to these our knowledge of their formation is highly speculative.

It is further known that the hepatic glycogen may, under certain circumstances, originate from proteins, and that many proteins contain a carbohydrate radical; some, such as mucin, yield a considerable amount, but in the commoner proteins, the amount is in the neighbourhood of 1 per cent. or less. The mucins do not participate to any great degree in metabolism, and so the question arises whether the small amount of carbohydrates in the ordinary proteins is sufficient to account for the amount of glycogen formed. Arithmetic shows it will not; moreover, a protein (such as casein) which contains no carbohydrate radical at all, is equally efficacious as the others in yielding sugar when administered to animals suffering from glycosuria produced by phloridzin. We must therefore search for something in the protein molecule, as the source of the carbohydrate, and leucine, having like sugar 6 atoms of carbon, was naturally the first substance to be examined. But all experiments on the administration of leucine led to negative or nearly negative results. Another amino-acid, alanine (with its compounds tyrosine, phenyl-alanine, and tryptophane), was found to be the much more probable source of the carbohydrate. The relationship of alanine to the carbohydrates is a near one, for if HO is substituted in its molecule for NH_2, we get lactic acid, and it was found that the administration of alanine to rabbits led to glycogen formation in their livers, and to the passage of lactic acid into their urine. Another cleavage product of protein, namely, aspartic acid, may act in a similar way, and this also is intelligible on chemical lines, for if aspartic acid loses carbon dioxide, it is converted into lactic acid, and it is no great step from this to sugar. Similar experiments have been performed with glycine and other amino-acids, but the results, though in part positive,

are by no means so clear, nor is the chemical relationship between them and carbohydrate so easy to understand. The only other substance not a carbohydrate, but which appears to be converted into carbohydrate in the body, which we will mention is glycerin; glyceric aldehyde is isomeric with lactic acid, so here again we have a feasible explanation.

Turning now to the other side of the picture, what information have we about carbohydrate katabolism? The final products of combustion are carbonic acid and water, but what are the intermediate steps? Just as lactic acid has been assumed to be sometimes a stage in the formation of sugar, so also there is evidence that it is a stage in its breakdown. We know that certain micro-organisms possess the power of transforming sugar into lactic acid, and even still further into butyric acid (see formulæ, p. 395), and Buchner has recently asserted that lactic acid is a stage in the formation of alcohol and carbonic acid from sugar by means of yeast. The atoms in lactic acid ($C_3H_6O_3$) are in the same proportion as in sugar ($C_6H_{12}O_6$), but of course they are very differently arranged, and the rearrangement involved in the conversion of the one into the other, or *vice versâ*, is differently explained by different chemists. Lactic acid undoubtedly occurs in the body, but whether it all comes from sugar is extremely doubtful. The principal lactic acid formed is the dextro-rotatory variety (sarco-lactic acid), whereas that formed in fermentative processes, as in milk, is the optically inactive variety. Now, there is a good deal of evidence that sarco-lactic acid originates from proteins; for instance, in the birds from which Minkowski removed the liver, the giving of protein food increased the lactic acid (which was not synthesised in the absence of the liver into uric acid) of their urine, and we have further seen that alanine and other protein cleavage products are possible parent substances of lactic acid. Still, if we admit that some of the lactic acid is of carbohydrate origin, and the admission is quite justifiable, we must remember that such a breakdown of sugar yields no heat; the calorific value of sugar and lactic acid being equal. The formation of lactic acid involves no transformation of energy; there is no formation of animal heat, or of its equivalent in work, and so the change is merely preliminary to a further change into carbonic acid and water, in which there will be that liberation of energy which it is the main object of carbohydrate breakdown to accomplish. (Glycolysis in the blood and tissues, and the importance of glycuronic acid as an intermediate substance on carbohydrate cleavage, are discussed on p. 527).

Metabolism of Fat.

Just as the carbohydrate of the food is the usual source of the carbohydrate of the body, so the fat of the food is the usual source of

the fat of the body. But, again, fat may arise from something which is not fat in the food.

During absorption, the fatty acid and glycerin components of the fat undergo a temporary separation, but they soon reunite, and the fat which is not needed for immediate use, passes *viâ* the chyle and blood to the cells of adipose tissue where it is stored, and where it has the same composition as it had in the food. The proportion of the olein, stearin, and palmitin in the fat of an animal can therefore be varied by variations in their proportion in the food, and even if unusual glycerides or unusual fatty acids (such as linolein from linseed oil, erucic acid from rape-seed oil, or iodised fats) are administered, they will be discoverable in the storage fat of the body. When the fat leaves the cells of adipose tissue for utilisation, that is combustion, it is apparently again split into its constituents, and so it is rendered soluble in the blood for transportation; the ferment which brings this about, acts just like steapsin does in the intestine, and it is called *lipase*. Lipase is very widely distributed in the tissues, and its action is a reversible one; it can tie the knot or untie it equally easily. But there is no loss of energy in the process of untying, any more than there is in the formation of lactic acid from sugar, or to use the technical phrase, the reaction is an *isothermic* one.

But the fat of the body may also arise from carbohydrate food. This is a physiological fact which was first firmly established by Lawes and Gilbert in their classical experiments on the fattening of cattle and sheep, fifty years ago. The transformation is a monopoly of the living body: chemists were inclined to regard the fact as fiction, and they have never been able to repeat it in the laboratory. How the long carbon chains of the fat are linked together from the shorter carbohydrate chains of sugar is at present a riddle. Micro-organisms can accomplish the change of lactic acid into such fatty acids as acetic, butyric, and caproic; boiling with alkali brings about a similar reaction; and the same sort of change must occur in the body with the formation of higher fatty acids.* The liver appears to be the place where the change occurs.

May fats also arise from proteins? This is a controversial question. Voit and Pettenkofer said yes, because they were able to fatten dogs on lean meat, but as the amount of fat left in the meat, and the glycogen also present, were not taken into account, their proof can hardly be considered satisfactory. The majority of physiologists to-day either answer the question in the negative, or regard it as unproven one way or the other. They adopt this attitude because the main proof adduced by those who believed in the transformation of protein into fat has been shown to be fallacious. It was stated

* Those interested in speculations in this and other metabolic puzzles should consult Leathes' *Problems in Animal Metabolism*, published by John Murray, 1906.

that in certain pathological conditions, for instance in phosphorus poisoning, a fatty degeneration of cells of certain organs takes place, and the fat which appeared was believed to originate from the protein constituents of the cell-protoplasm. This has been shown to be incorrect; every case of so-called fatty degeneration has been shown to be either due to an infiltration of fat transported from elsewhere, or to a transformation of the fat previously present in the protoplasm, although not in the form of droplets, and probably also not in the form of the usual glycerides. In many cases, the total fat present in this concealed form in the cells of the heart, kidney, and liver, may be greater than when with disease it takes the form of droplets.

With regard to the origin of glycerin, there is no doubt that the cells are able to produce it, as was shown by Munk's experiments on chyle, which are referred to on p. 533. There is no necessity to suppose that it originates from protein, for if glycerin can be converted into sugar, there is no good ground for believing that the converse does not also take place.

On katabolism, the fats yield the same ultimate products as the carbohydrates, namely, carbonic acid and water. A great deal of the oxygen we breathe in is used up in the burning of fats, and the simultaneous liberation of heat and work. It is quite certain that sugar is an important source of muscular energy, but the fats also play the same rôle, and muscles which are perpetually at work like the heart and the diaphragm are particularly rich in fats. No actual lessening of the fat has yet been demonstrated to occur in excised muscles subjected to stimulation, but we have other and more trustworthy evidence that it does take place. During muscular work, the output of carbonic acid is increased, but the respiratory quotient (see pp. 375, 388) is almost unaltered; if sugar alone was undergoing combustion, this quotient would rise. Again, if the carbohydrate stores of the body are depleted by inanition, or by giving phloridzin to an animal, still muscular work has but little influence on protein katabolism, and therefore the necessary increased combustion must fall on the fat. But how the long carbon chains of the fats are taken to pieces and burnt up is entirely a matter of guess-work. There is just the same fundamental piece of blank ignorance staring us in the face in the case of the proteins; we know something of the way the protein-nitrogen is disposed of, but the non-nitrogenous residue (which is chiefly fatty acid * and which, like a fat, is used for combustion, and as a source of heat and energy), presents exactly the same problem as the fats do as to the way in which the final carbonic acid and water are formed from it.

* The existence of this non-nitrogenous and fat-like residue of protein should make physiologists hesitate before they finally deny the possible conversion of the food-protein and tissue-protein into fat.

One glimmer of light in the darkness has entered from an unexpected quarter, namely, from a study of acetonæmia (see also p. 528). β-oxybutyric acid arises in the body in diabetes; this by oxidation in the body is partly converted into aceto-acetic acid, and this in the urine loses carbonic acid, and so is partly converted into acetone. This group of products were at one time believed to originate from proteins; but if that were so, there ought to be a corresponding excess of other protein katabolites in the urine, which there is not. Acetonæmia can also be brought on in healthy people by cutting off their carbohydrate food; if sugar is again added to the diet, the acetonæmia ceases; but if fat is added instead, the acetonæmia increases; fat also increases acetonæmia in diabetes. If butyric acid and β-oxybutyric acid are normal intermediate products in fat katabolism (and they probably are), a healthy man under normal conditions of diet is able still further to oxidise them into carbonic acid and water. The diabetic patient or the man on an abnormal diet, breaks down at this very point.

There is one other interesting question of fat metabolism which we must mention. We have considered the evidence that sugar given in the food will become transformed into fat in the body. Is there any evidence that fat may be converted into carbohydrate? In vegetable life there is; certain seeds rich in oil, on germination, lose a good deal of their fat, and what is lost reappears as starch. There is also evidence of the same sort of change in animal life. In animals, glycosuria, produced by phloridzin or extirpation of the pancreas, is intensified if fats are administered; the sugar cannot be derived from protein in such cases, because the ratio of dextrose to nitrogen in the urine is much too high. Pflüger fed diabetic dogs exclusively on boiled cod, which in the winter months contains no glycogen and only a trace of fat; they continued to pass sugar in their urine, and in the course of a month one of these dogs, which may be taken as a sample of the others, passed more than five pounds of sugar over and above that which could be accounted for by any carbohydrate of the animal's body. This sugar must therefore have been derived either from fat or from protein. Pflüger holds that it all came from fat, and certainly the dog when it was killed had no visible fat in its connective tissues; and the dextrose-nitrogen ratio was so variable that it is difficult to ascribe the sugar formation to protein cleavage. The seat of the conversion of fat into sugar is the liver; in diabetic patients the liver is always the richest in fat; so it was with Pflüger's diabetic dogs. In these animals the increased work thrown upon the liver led to a great enlargement of that organ, and in one case it had enlarged to five times the size it has in cases of ordinary starvation. The fact that ammonium carbonate increases the sugar formed in diabetes is

ascribed by Pflüger to the stimulating effect this salt has on the functions of the liver, not only in relation to urea formation, but also in connection with the transformation of fat into sugar. Pflüger has always strenuously resisted the notion that protein is a source of carbohydrate, although the fact that his dogs received only protein food would appear to support this view. That such a keen observer as Pflüger has come to the opposite conclusion, that even in this case fat is the real source of the sugar, will indicate to the student how difficult the problems of metabolism are, and how impossible it is at present to make definite assertions one way or the other. We must, therefore, keep an open mind on this subject; we have already seen some positive evidence that protein does yield carbohydrate, and Pflüger's work shows us that sugar may also originate from fat. There is no reason for absolutely rejecting either set of proofs, and we may for the present conclude that sugar may arise in both ways. We have already seen the chemical difficulties of explaining how sugar can be converted into fat; the difficulty of explaining the converse change is equally great.

Metabolism of Protein.

In our discussion of the origin of urea in the urine, we have mentioned some of the main facts in relation to the metabolism of proteins, and it would be well if the student again reads these pages (pp. 567 to 569) before studying the paragraphs which now follow; for the laws which govern the composition of urine are the effect of more fundamental laws governing protein katabolism.

Liebig was the first to divide foods into flesh-forming and heat-forming, that is, into those which repair the tissue waste, and those which are not so intimately assimilated into the protoplasm, but are utilised as sources of energy. The latter function is the one performed by the fats and carbohydrates, and the former is more particularly the duty of the proteins. This idea is reflected in the popular use of the term nutritious; it is used almost synonymously with nitrogenous, and the notion that the non-nitrogenous foods, although they form the greater part of our daily diet, are not nutritious and next door to useless, is a most mischievous one, though it is carefully fostered by the advertisers of patent foods. Both kinds of food are equally necessary, and equally though differently nutritious.

It is now known that the proteins are not only flesh-formers, but also that they play the other rôle in nutrition and act as a source of energy. The complete breakdown into amino-acids which occurs in the gastro-intestinal tract, has in fact a double signification. It enables the cells of the body to construct from the cleavage products

the proteins peculiar to themselves, and it further enables the body to easily rid itself of the nitrogenous portions of the food-proteins which are not wanted for the repair of tissue waste. This portion is never really assimilated in the sense that it is built into protoplasm, but it is taken in by the liver cells, which rapidly convert it into urea and so render it harmless. The non-nitrogenous moiety is then utilisable for energy and heat production.

In starvation, the income of the body is limited to oxygen, but if water is given also, an animal will generally live a little over four weeks. During this time the excretion of nitrogenous and carbonaceous waste continues and the body loses weight day by day. The excretion of carbon dioxide continuously falls until death supervenes. The nitrogen of the urine falls also within the first few days, and then remains at a low but constant level to the end of the fourth week. Then for the few days preceding death, its amount again increases. By this date nearly every trace of the fat of the body has disappeared, and so the cells fall back on their more precious protein material and consume it in greater quantity than before. The nitrogen elimination during the weeks when it remains constant is also derived from the proteins of the body, for there is none coming in, in the way of food. It might be thought if at this time an amount of protein food containing the same quantity of nitrogen as was being lost by the body, was administered, that the loss of nitrogen from the body would be checked, and that the tissues would seize the opportunity of repairing their waste. But this is not the case; what happens is that the amount of nitrogen lost in the dog is almost doubled; and this is an undoubted proof that nearly all the protein in the food is disintegrated and its nitrogen discharged within the twenty-four hours. In order to get nitrogenous equilibrium, it is necessary to give in the day two and a half times as much protein as is lost during starvation in that period of time. This was one of the earliest proofs adduced that all the food protein is not used in tissue repair, and it led Voit to formulate his celebrated theory of the distinction between "tissue protein" and what he termed "circulating protein." The latter expression was coined because Voit believed that the katabolism of this variety of protein occurred in the blood, or at any rate in the tissue juices. In fact, he considered that katabolism occurred only in the "circulating protein," the small amount of "living protein" which dies being dissolved and so added to the "circulating protein" before katabolism occurs. Voit's great opponent was Pflüger, and for many years Pflüger's theory replaced Voit's; this theory states that all protein must first become assimilated; that is, must be built into and become part and parcel of living protoplasm before it undergoes katabolism. Pflüger did good service in emphasising the importance of the cells

in metabolic processes, and we certainly do not now believe that respiration or any other metabolic process has its seat in the circulating fluids. But at the same time Voit's theory possesses the correct underlying idea which forms the basis of our present doctrine of metabolism. In every living tissue there exists a framework of what we may call more distinctly living substance, the metabolism of which is constant and does not give rise to massive discharges of energy; in the interstices of this, are various kinds of material related in different degrees to this framework; these materials are less eminently living, and the chief part of the energy set free comes directly from the metabolism of some or other of this material. Both the framework and the intercalated material undergo metabolism, and have in different degrees their anabolic and katabolic changes; both are concerned in the life of the organism; but one more directly than the other. When we now speak of *endogenous protein metabolism* we refer to that in the material highly endowed with life; when we apply the term *exogenous protein metabolism* to the changes by which the liver brings about the conversion of amino-acids from the food into urea, we refer to its action on intercalated material, and no longer use the phrase "circulating protein."

We have already discovered in our study of the urine, that exogenous protein katabolism is mainly represented in the urine by urea and inorganic sulphates; while the final katabolites of endogenous metabolism are substances like creatinine and "neutral sulphur"; but there is no doubt that some urea is formed also: this is seen, for instance, during starvation.

Let us consider a man taking the customary Voit dietary of 16 or 17 grammes of nitrogen in his daily food; probably only a quarter or even less of this is destined for endogenous use, and the protein sufficient to maintain this is indispensable. Would it be possible to dispense entirely with the amount which is exogenously metabolised, and reduce our protein intake to the low level of say 4 grammes of nitrogen *per diem*. The old observations on starving animals we have just referred to shows that this would not be possible; the minimum is not the optimum; and even Chittenden (see p. 471) does not recommend a reduction lower than 7 or 8 daily grammes of nitrogen. If an animal cell is presented only with protein food, it takes and uses it eagerly, even although it may not ultimately build much of it into protoplasm. If substances like fat, carbohydrate, or the incomplete protein we call gelatin, is presented to it also, the amount of protein necessary is reduced, and so we speak of such foods as being "protein-sparing."

The important character of Chittenden's work has given the faddists on matters of diet an important opportunity of being listened to. There is, for instance, a group of these to whom

the very necessary act of chewing has assumed almost the nature of a religious ceremony, and they have sought to convince mankind of its superlative importance. These, however, need not concern us, but there are some even in the scientific world who seem almost to believe that the law of conservation of energy does not apply to the chemical changes in a living animal. They cite instances of people who do a large amount of work, and do it upon what most would regard as an insufficient diet, without detriment or loss of body-weight. If a man only receives food in the day of the energy value say of 1500 large calories, and the heat he produces and the work he does are equivalent to 2000; then the additional 500 must have come from his internal resources, and he must have used up some of the material formerly stored in his body. This is as certain as the fact that one and one make two. It is quite conceivable that his body may not have lost weight, but nevertheless fat may have disappeared, and been replaced by an equivalent weight of water, and excess of carbohydrate food which usually is a character of the diets of such people is just the sort of diet likely to cause retention of water in the body.

We have in our mention of the Chittenden diet alluded to several circumstances that should make us hesitate before we accept his conclusions to the full. Many people eat too much; would it be advisable for us all to eat too little, and is Chittenden's diet too scanty?

No doubt the over-eaters would benefit by eating too little for a time. They would give their overtaxed digestive and secretory organs a necessary rest, and have time to consume some of their accumulated stores of material. It is quite possible that the benefit noticed in some of the subjects of Chittenden's experiments might have been due to such a circumstance as this, or to the regular life they were compelled to live, quite apart from diet altogether. But to eat too little as an ordinary and permanent thing is quite another matter; and it is interesting to be able to record that most of the subjects of Chittenden's experiments have now returned to their previous dietetic habits.

So far as it is possible to read history correctly, man has always where he can taken instinctively more protein than Chittenden would allow him, and with few exceptions, the meat eating nations are those which have risen to the front.

So far as it is possible to draw correct deductions on questions of diet from animals to man, a restricted diet over a long period has proved detrimental. Moreover, a careful study of Chittenden's own analytical figures, such as Benedict has made, shows there was in some cases distinct impairment of absorptive power.

But still the question remains, why an apparently large excess of

nitrogen which the body casts out within a few hours should be advisable? The answer to this appears to be, that though most of the cleavage products are dealt with in this way, there are probably some which are especially precious for tissue reconstruction, and it is for these that we put up with the excess of waste. The large size and activity of the normal liver seem to be for the express purpose of dealing with this waste rapidly.

Nature does not work in minimums: Leathes puts it very well when he says it is not considered unphysiological to take more food than will yield the minimum of fæcal refuse; and he also points out that in the infant, even allowing for its growth, the normal amount of milk provided for it by nature is ten times greater than would appear to be the necessary minimum; and this is probably a safer argument than the one so often used when the instinctive habits of past centuries of adults are appealed to.

We may also draw a useful lesson from disease. In the modern treatment of consumption, the open air cure is combined with a steady process of generous feeding; in certain cases of nervous breakdown, an important part of the "rest cure" is the providing of abundant and appetising meals. One can hardly doubt that much of the benefit noticeable in both classes is due to the "reserve energy" provided, enabling the body more fully to grapple with the malady. "Reserve energy" may be objected to as a vague phrase which, though comforting to those who use it, is nevertheless very difficult to explain. There is a good deal of reason in such an objection, for "reserve force" is difficult to define clearly. We have, for instance, no knowledge of any storage places for protein, in the same way in which the liver and adipose tissue act as storehouses for carbohydrate and fat respectively. But it is an undoubted factor all the same; many people have more of it than others; and this "stamina," as it is sometimes called, is a lucky possession for those who have it. Research on immunity has, however, shown us that this is in part due to the condition of our leucocytes, and the opsonic power of the blood-plasma (see p. 455). It may be that it is in this direction, among others, that the abundance of protein food may assist us in repelling disease. Each leucocyte may not require much in the way of repair every day, but it is more likely to get this "stitch in time" if there is an abundant supply of repairing material available.

Rubner has called attention to what he terms the specific dynamic action of food-stuffs. Weight for weight, fat yields more heat when burnt than protein does, and outside the body it is more easily combustible than either protein or carbohydrate. Inside the body it is just the reverse; proteins are the most readily burnt of any food material, and fats the least. In other words, proteins have a

specific value in stimulating metabolism, and so leading to an increase of oxidation in the body. Some of the subjects of Chittenden's experiments suffered intensely from the cold in the winter, and this use of protein must not be lost sight of in settling the right amount which we should take in our daily food.

Some attempt has been made to determine which of the protein cleavage products, or Bausteine, to use the German term, are specially valuable in the body, either for the synthesis of tissue protein, or, as Hopkins has suggested, for the formation of the special hormones or chemical messengers of the body, such as adrenaline. Vegetable proteins are not so nutritious as those of animal origin, and this does not seem to be wholly due to the fact that they are not so readily digestible. Research on their Bausteine seems to show that they are not really the same as the animal proteins; this is exemplified by their high yield (often over 30 per cent.) of glutamic acid. Barker and Cohoe have pointed out that some articles of diet will "agree" and others "disagree" with people. On the supposition that this may be due to the distribution of the nitrogen, they made determination of the mono-amino-nitrogen, di-amino-nitrogen, etc., in various foods (veal, pork, sirloin, chicken, fish, etc.), and have found very striking differences between them. The ultimate valuation of these results is for the future, but this is the sort of work which must be done before our knowledge can be based on the bed-rock of experiment.

At present we can only make a rough guess as to which of the Bausteine are the more precious building stones; but it does appear that phenyl-alanine and its near relative tyrosine are such; for when they are injected into the blood-stream they do not reappear as urea in the urine. We also know that proteins which yield no tyrosine, such as gelatin, are of inferior value as food. Gelatin is also destitute of the tryptophane radical, and probably tryptophane is specially useful too. Zein, the protein of maize, lacks tryptophane, and if tryptophane is added to a zein diet, animals fed on the mixture thrive better than those whose sole nitrogenous food is zein. Histidine and pyrrolidine have been suggested as being in the same category, but here again we must await further information.

Inanition or Starvation.

During starvation the body gradually loses weight; the temperature, after a preliminary rise, sinks; the functions get weaker by degrees, and ultimately death ensues when the body has lost about 50 per cent. of its original weight. Death may be delayed somewhat by artificial warmth, so that the strain on the internal production of heat is not so great. If water is given, life may continue for rather more than a month. The age of the animal influences the time at which death occurs. This statement was originally made by Hippocrates, and has been borne out by the experiments of Martigny and Chossat. Young animals lose weight more quickly, and die after a smaller loss of weight than old ones.

The following table from Ranke's experiment on himself represents by the balance-sheet method the exchange for a period of twenty-four hours, the same time having elapsed since the last meal.

Income, due to Disintegration of Tissues.			Expenditure, obtained by analysing the excretions.		
	Nitrogen.	Carbon.		Nitrogen.	Carbon.
Protein . 50 gr.	7·8	26·5	Urine . . .	7·8	3·4
Fat . 200 ,,	0·0	157·5	Respiration (CO_2)	0·0	180·6
	7·8	184·0		7·8	184·0

The excretion of nitrogen falls quickly at the commencement of starvation, and even on the first day the above table shows us it has sunk to half the normal. This lessening goes on for a few days, after which it remains constant; about the end of the fourth week it rises again when the fat of the animal has been used up, and the body makes an increased call on the protein constituents of its protoplasm. With the onset of symptoms of approaching death, which is sometimes accompanied by convulsions, the excretion of nitrogen rapidly falls again. The sulphates and phosphates of the urine show much the same series of changes. The discharge of carbonic acid and the intake of oxygen fall continuously over the whole period.

It is important to note, that wasting does not occur to an equal extent in all the tissues and organs. Those which are most essential to life are fed at the expense of the others; thus the heart loses little or none, and the central nervous system loses at most 3 per cent. of its weight. The fat nearly all disappears, at least 97 per cent. of it being used up; muscles lose 30 per cent. of their original weight, and most of the other organs suffer also but in varying degrees. Taking the total loss as 100, Voit gives the loss due to that of individual organs as follows:—

Bone . . . 5·4	Pancreas . . 0·1	Brain and cord . 0·1
Muscle . . 42·2	Lungs . . 0·3	Skin and hair . 8·8
Liver . . 4·8	Heart . . 0·0	Fat . . . 26·2
Kidneys . . 0·6	Testes . . 0·1	Blood . . 3·7
Spleen . . 0·6	Intestines . 2·0	Other parts . 5·0

CHAPTER XL

ANIMAL HEAT

AMONG the most important results of the chemical processes we sum up under the term metabolism, is the production of heat. Heat, like mechanical motion, is the result of the katabolic side of metabolic processes; the result, or accompaniment, that is to say, of the formation of carbonic acid, water, and other simple products.

Animals may be divided into two great classes:—

(1) Warm-blooded or *homoiothermal* animals, or those which have an almost constant temperature. (Mammals and birds.)

(2) Cold-blooded or *poikilothermal* animals, or those whose temperature varies with that of the surrounding medium, being always, however, a degree, or a fraction of a degree, above that of the medium. This class includes reptiles, amphibians, fish, embryonic birds and mammals, and probably most invertebrates.

The temperature of a man in health varies but slightly, being between 36·5° and 37·5° C. (98° to 99° F.). Most mammals have approximately the same temperature: horse, donkey, ox, 37·5° to 38°; dog, cat, 38·5° to 39°; sheep, rabbit, 38° to 39·5°; mouse, 37·5°; rat, 37·9°. Birds have a higher temperature, about 42° C. The temperature varies a little in different parts of the body, that of the interior being greater than that of the surface; the blood coming from the liver where chemical changes are very active is warmer than that of the general circulation; the blood becomes rather cooler in its passage through the lungs.

The temperature also shows slight diurnal variations, reaching a maximum about 4 or 5 P.M. (37·5° C.) and a minimum about 3 A.M. (36·8° C.); that is, at a time when the functions of the body are least active. If, however, the habits of a man are altered, and he sleeps in the day, working during the night, the times of the maximum and minimum temperatures are also inverted. Inanition causes the temperature to fall, and just at the onset of death it may be below 30° C. Active muscular exercise raises the temperature temporarily

by about 0·5° to 1° C. Diseases may cause the temperature to vary considerably, especially those which we term febrile.

A mere increase in the production of heat does not necessarily cause fever. The administration of food causes increased combustion in the body, but there is no rise of temperature in health because *pari passu* with the increased production there is increased loss of heat. Similarly, diminution in the loss of heat such as occurs on a hot as compared with a cold day does not produce fever because the production of heat within the body is correspondingly diminished. A febrile condition may however occur, if tight-fitting and otherwise unsuitable clothing which interferes with the proper action of the skin is worn in hot weather; this is the frequent cause of "heat-stroke" among soldiers in the tropics.

In fever there is increased production of heat, as is shown by metabolic balance-sheets; the intake of food is usually small, and the discharge of carbon, nitrogen, etc., results mainly from tissue disintegration; this is even greater than in ordinary inanition; the tissues are said to be in a "labile" condition, that is, they are easily broken down. Usually the skin is dry, the sweat glands like most of the secretory glands being comparatively inactive, and so the discharge of heat is lessened. The skin, however, may sometimes be bathed in perspiration and yet high fever be present. The essential cause of the high temperature in fever is neither increased formation nor diminished discharge of heat, but an interference with the reflex mechanism which in health operates so as to equalise the two.

Although certain mechanical actions, such as friction, due to movements of various kinds, may contribute a minute share in the production of heat in the body, yet we have no knowledge as to the actual amount thus generated. The great source of heat is, as already stated, chemical action, especially oxidation. Any given oxidation will always produce the same amount of heat. Thus, if we oxidise a gramme of carbon, a known amount of heat is produced, whether the element be free or in a chemical compound. The following figures show the approximate number of heat-units produced by the combustion of one gramme of the following substances. A heat-unit, or calorie, is the amount of heat necessary to raise the temperature of one gramme of water 1° C.:—

Hydrogen	34662	Fat	9400
Carbon	8100	Cane sugar	3950
Urea	2530	Starch	4160
Albumin	5600		

It is, however, most important to remember that the "physiological heat-value" of a food may be different from the "physical heat-value," *i.e.*, the amount of heat produced by combustion in the body may be different from that produced when the same amount of the same food is burnt in a calorimeter. This is the case with the proteins, because they do not undergo complete combustion in the body, for each gramme of protein yields a third of a gramme of urea, which has a considerable heat-value of its own. Thus albumin, which, by complete combustion, yields 5600 heat-units, has a physiological heat-value = 5600 *minus* one-third of the heat-value of urea (2530) = 5600 − 846 = 4754. Rubner has shown that this figure must be reduced to nearly 4000, as some of the imperfectly burnt products

of decomposition of proteins escape as uric acid, creatinine, etc., in the urine, and there is a small quantity of similar substances in the fæces. Any difference between the physical and physiological heat-values of fats and carbohydrates may be neglected, provided all the fat and carbohydrate in the food is absorbed.

Of the heat produced in the body, it is estimated by Helmholtz that about 7 per cent. is represented by external mechanical work, and that of the remainder about four-fifths are discharged by radiation, conduction, and evaporation from the skin, and the remaining fifth by the lungs and excreta. This is only an average estimate, subject to much variation, especially in the amount of work done.

The following table exhibits the relation between the production and discharge of energy in twenty-four hours in the human organism at rest, estimated in calories.* The table conveniently takes the form of a balance-sheet in which production and discharge of heat are compared; to keep the body-temperature normal these must be equal. The basis of the table in the left-hand (income) side is the same as Ranke's diet (see p. 471):—

Production of heat.		*Discharge of heat.*	
Metabolism of	Calories.		
Protein (100 gr.) . $100 \times 4000 =$	400,000	Warming water in food, 2·6 kilos. $\times 25°$ C. =	65,000
Fat (100 gr.) . $100 \times 9400 =$	940,000	Warming air in respiration, 16 kilos. $\times 25° \times 0{\cdot}24 =$	96,000
Carbohydrates (=250 gr. starch) $250 \times 4160 =$	1,040,000	Evaporation in lungs, 630 gr. $\times 582 =$	366,660
		Radiation, evaporation, etc., at surface, *plus* the thermal equivalent of mechanical work done accounts for the remainder	1,852,340
	2,380,000		2,380,000

The figures under the heading Production are obtained by multiplying the weight of food by its physiological heat-value. The figures on the other side of the balance-sheet are obtained as follows: The water in the food is reckoned as weighing 2·6 kilos. This is supposed to be at the temperature of the air taken as 12° C.; it has to be raised to the temperature of the body, 37° C., that is, through 25° C. Hence the weight of water multiplied by 25 gives the number of calories expended in heating it. The weight of air is taken as weighing 16 kilos.; this also has to be raised 25° C., and so to be multiplied by 25; it has further to be multiplied by the relative heat of air (0·24). The 630 grammes of water evaporated in the lungs

* The calorie we are taking is sometimes called the small calorie; by some the word *calorie* is used to denote the amount of heat necessary to raise one kilogramme of water 1° C. This is called the large caloric.

must be multiplied by the potential or latent heat of steam at 37° C. (582); the portion of heat lost by radiation, conduction, and evaporation from the skin constitutes about four-fifths of the whole, and is obtained by deducting the three previous amounts from the total. This table does not take into account the small quantities of heat lost with urine and fæces. We are further supposing that the man remains of constant weight, so that there is no storage or loss of material, and, therefore, of energy in the body. He is also supposed to be at rest, and therefore the amount of work done is only what is called internal work, *i.e.*, maintaining the circulation, respiration, etc.

It need hardly be remarked that the above is a mere average illustrative experiment. Changes in the diet, in the atmospheric temperature, in the temperature of the food taken, in the activity of the sweat-glands, in the amount of moisture in the atmosphere, and in the amount of work done, would considerably alter the above figures.

Calorimetry.—Calorimeters employed in chemical operations are not suitable for experiments on animals. An animal surrounded by ice or mercury, the melting and expansion of which respectively are

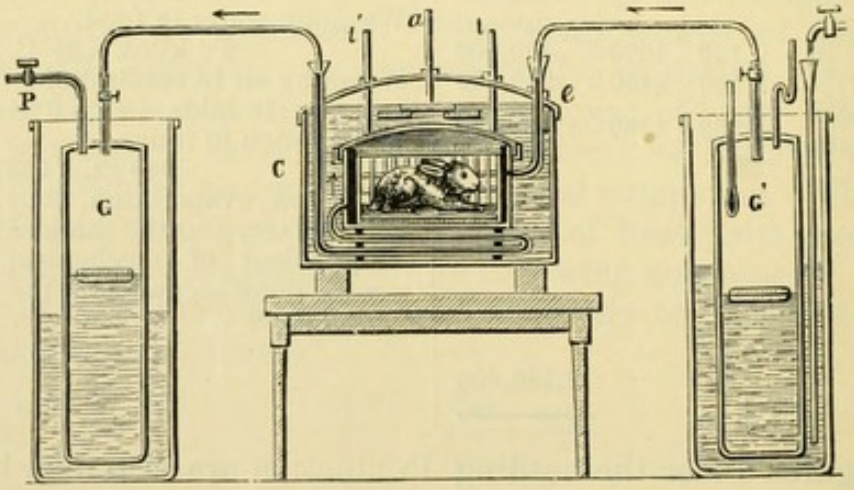


FIG. 443.—Dulong's Calorimeter: C, calorimeter, consisting of a vessel of cold water in which the chamber holding the animal is placed; G', gasometer from which air is expelled by a stream of water. The air enters the respiratory chamber. G, gasometer receiving the gases of expiration and the excess of air. *t*, *t'*, thermometers; *a*, a wheel for agitating the water. Observe the delivery-tube on the left is much twisted in the water-chamber, so as to give off its heat to the surrounding water. (From McKendrick's "Physiology.")

measures of the amount of heat evolved, would be under such abnormal conditions that the results would be valueless. Lavoisier, however, used an ice calorimeter in his experiments on animals.

The apparatus often employed is the water calorimeter. This was first used by Crawford (1788). Dulong's instrument is shown in fig. 443. The animal is placed in a metal chamber, surrounded by a water-jacket. There are also tubes for the entrance and exit of the inspired and expired gases respectively. The heat given out by the

animal warms the water in the jacket, and is measured by the rise of temperature of the water, of which the volume is also known.

Air Calorimeters are now, however, generally used. Fig. 444 is an outline sketch of the one which has been most used in this country.

It consists of two precisely similar chambers made of thin sheet copper. Each chamber has two walls between which is an air space; and the outer is covered by a thick casing of felt (F) to prevent fluctuations in the temperature of the surroundings from affecting the air in the air-space. The chambers are made perfectly air-tight, except for the ventilating tubes AA, A′A′. By means of these, the chambers are filled with perfectly dry air before the experiment is commenced. Leading from each air-space is a tube; the two tubes

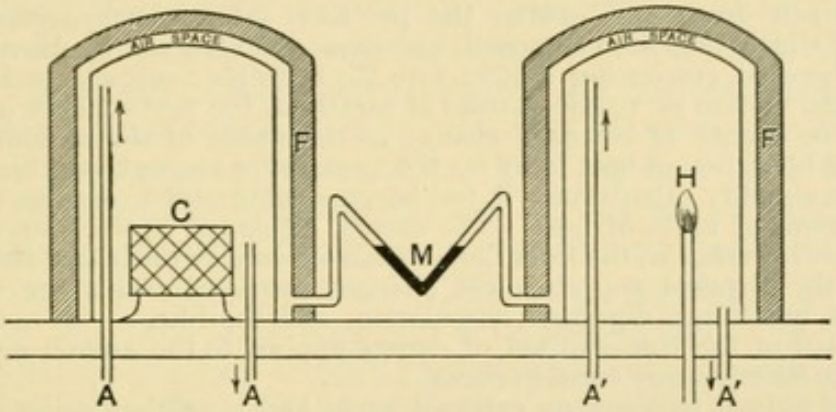


FIG. 444.—Air Calorimeter of Haldane, Hale White, and Washbourn. C, cage for animal. In order to make the conditions in both chambers as much alike as possible, an empty cage should be placed in the other chamber.

are connected to the two limbs of a manometer (M) shaped as in the figure, and containing oil of erigeron.

The action of the calorimeter is as follows:—In one chamber the animal, the heat production of which is to be ascertained, is placed within the cage C. In the other, hydrogen is burnt (H). Both chambers are shut, the tubes AA, A′A′ being clamped. The heat given off from the animal warms its chamber, and thus increases the pressure of the air in the air-space between the two copper walls of the chamber. This would lead to movement of the fluid in the manometer, but that the heat given off by the burning of the hydrogen increases at the same time the pressure in the air-space between the walls of its chamber. This latter increase of pressure tends to make the fluid in the manometer move in the other direction. If the fluid in the manometer remains stationary, the amount of heat given off by the animal is equal to that produced by the burning hydrogen; and during an experiment the fluid in the manometer is kept stationary by turning the hydrogen flame up and down. The amount of hydrogen burnt is estimated by the amount of water formed, and the

heat of combustion of hydrogen being known, it is easy to calculate the calories produced, which equal those given off by the animal.

The applicability of the law of the conservation of energy to diverse chemical reactions has been amply demonstrated. In view of the chemical nature of metabolism, we might assume that the same law applies to the reactions taking place in the body, that it is in fact one of the fundamental laws of the universe. We have, however, no scientific right to assume in advance that no special laws are operative in living matter. The law therefore here requires experimental verification, and much labour has accordingly been devoted to this problem. The early work of Lavoisier, Crawford, Dulong, and others showed great discrepancies between the heat actually found and that calculated, but with the advance of knowledge and improvements of chemical methods and calorimetry, these have disappeared. It is to Rubner in particular that we owe the experimental demonstration of the law of the conservation of energy in the living organism.

The various tissues of the living body in the performance of their several functions break down and oxidise the proteins, fats, carbohydrates, and other materials of which they are composed, and seize upon the energy previously stored and thus liberated, converting it here into the invisible molecular motion of heat, there into the motion of visible masses of matter in the performance of work, and again into the energy of chemical change as the needs of the organism demand. Of these the liberation of heat is by far the greatest in amount, and for this reason, as well as to simplify calculations, it has become customary to express the available energy in terms of units of heat. The energy expended as work may be divided into (1) external work, *i.e.*, the work done on masses outside the body; and (2) internal work, *i.e.*, the physical and chemical changes produced within the body in the processes of breathing, digestion, circulation, and the like.

If the law of the conservation of energy applies to the animal organism, the following are its necessary consequences :—

1. If an animal is doing no external work, and is neither gaining nor losing substance, the potential energy of the food (expressed as its heat of combustion) will be equal to that of the excreta, *plus* that given off as heat, *plus* that of internal work.

2. If an animal is doing external work, and is neither gaining nor losing substance, the potential energy of the food will be equal to the potential energy of the excreta, *plus* that given off as heat, *plus* that of the internal work, *plus* that of the external work.

3. If an animal is doing no external work, but gaining or losing body substance, the potential energy of the food will equal the potential energy of the excreta, *plus* that given off as heat, *plus* that of the internal work, *plus* that of the gain by the body-substance (a loss by the body being regarded as a negative gain).

4. In an animal doing external work, and gaining or losing body-substance, the potential energy of the food will equal the potential energy of the excreta, *plus* that given off as heat, *plus* that of the internal and external work, *plus* that of the gain (positive or negative) of the body-substance.

In actual experimentation it is practically impossible to adjust the food so that there is no gain or loss of body-substance, hence experiments necessarily fall under (3) or (4); and the majority under (3).

The quantities to be determined, then, are :—

i. Potential energy of the food.

ii. Potential energy of excreta (fæces, urine, etc.).

iii. The heat produced (including that into which any mechanical work is convertible).

iv. The potential energy of the gain or loss of body-substance.

If, then, the equality stated under (3) and (4) is found to exist, we shall be justified in the conclusion that the law of the conservation of energy applies to the animal body. This is what the painstaking work of Rubner, Laulanié, Atwater, Benedict, and others has succeeded in showing is actually the case.

Regulation of the Temperature of Warm-blooded Animals.

The equalisation of the two sides of the balance-sheet in the maintenance of a normal temperature may be accomplished by the production of heat adapting itself to variations in discharge, or by the discharge of heat adapting itself to variations in production, or lastly, and more probably, both sets of processes may adapt themselves mutually to one another. We have, therefore, to consider regulation (1) by variations in loss, and (2) by variations in production.

Regulation by Variations in Loss.—The two channels of loss susceptible of any amount of variation are the lungs and the skin. The more air that passes in and out of the lungs, the greater will be the loss in warming the expired air and in evaporating the water of respiration. In such animals as the dog, which perspire but little, respiration is a most important means of regulating the temperature; and in these animals a close connection is observed between the production of heat and the respiratory activity. The panting of a dog when overheated is a familiar instance of this. A dog also, under the same circumstances, puts out its tongue, and loses heat from the evaporation that occurs from its surface. The great regulator, however, is undoubtedly the skin, and this has a double action. In the first place, it regulates the loss of heat by its vaso-motor mechanism; the more blood passing through the skin, the greater will be the loss of heat by conduction, radiation, and evaporation. Conversely, the loss of heat is diminished by anything that lessens the amount of blood in the skin, such as constriction of the cutaneous vessels, or dilatation of the splanchnic vascular area. In the second place, the special nerves of the sweat-glands are called into action. Familiar instances of the action of these two sets of nerves are the reddening of the skin and sweating that occurs after exercise, on a hot day, or in a hot-air or vapour bath, and the pallor of the skin and absence of sensible perspiration on the application of cold to the body.

Regulation by Variations in Production.—The rate of production of heat in a living body, as determined by calorimetry, depends on a variety of circumstances. It varies in different kinds of animals. The general rate of katabolism of a man is greater than that of a dog, and of a dog greater than that of a rabbit. Probably every species has a specific coefficient, and every individual a personal coefficient of heat production, which is the expression of the inborn qualities proper to the living substance of the species and individual. Another factor is the proportion of the bulk of the animal to its surface area, the struggle for existence raising the specific coefficient of the animals in which the ratio is high. Other important considerations are the relation of the intake of food to metabolic processes,

and the amount of muscular work which is performed. These various influences are themselves regulated by the nervous system, and physiologists have long suspected that afferent impulses arising in the skin or elsewhere may, through the central nervous system, originate efferent impulses, the effect of which would be to increase or diminish the metabolism of the muscles and other organs, and by that means increase or diminish respectively the amount of heat there generated. That such a metabolic or thermogenic nervous mechanism does exist in warm-blooded animals is supported by the following experimental evidence:—

(1) Though in cold-blooded animals a rise or fall of the surrounding temperature causes respectively a rise and fall of their metabolic activity, in a warm-blooded animal the effect is just the reverse. Warmth from the exterior demands a diminished production of heat in the interior, and *vice versâ*.

If the changes of the external temperature are so great as to cause a rise (as in steam baths) or a fall (as in hibernation) of body temperature, the metabolic changes are increased or decreased respectively as in cold-blooded animals. Pembrey has also shown that warm-blooded animals in an embryonic condition are practically cold-blooded, the regulatory mechanism not being fully developed at this stage.

(2) That this is due to a reflex nervous impulse is supported by the fact that a warm-blooded animal, when poisoned by curare, no longer manifests its normal behaviour to external heat and cold, but is affected in the same way as a cold-blooded animal. Section of the medulla produces the same effects, as the nerve-channels, by which the impulses travel, are severed. When curare is given, the reflex chain is broken at its muscular end, the poison exerting its influence on the end-plates, and causing a diminution of the chemical tonus of the muscles. The centre of this thermotaxic reflex mechanism must be situated somewhere above the spinal cord; according to some observers, in the optic thalamus.

(3) The reflex mechanism is well exemplified in *shivering;* here the muscles are thrown into involuntary contraction, and so produce more heat, as the result of the stimulation of the skin by cold.

(4) Various injuries caused by accident, or purposely produced by puncture, or cautery, or electrical stimulation of limited portions of the more central portions of the brain, may give rise to great increase of temperature, not accompanied by other marked symptoms.

We thus see that the nervous system is intimately associated with the regulation of the temperature of the body. There is at least one—there may be several centres associated in this action. The centres receive afferent impulses from without; they send out efferent impulses by at least three sets of nerves: (1) the vaso-motor

nerves, (2) the secretory nerves of the sweat-glands, (3) trophic or nutritional nerves. The first two sets of nerves, the vaso-motor and the secretory, affect the regulation of temperature on the side of discharge; the third set on the side of production.

The foregoing account of heat regulation does not take into account what after all is, at any rate in man, a very important factor, namely, the voluntary and artificial means which he employs, such as various kinds of clothing suitable to the climate, heating of rooms, and voluntary muscular exercise.

CHAPTER XLI

THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

We already know sufficient from our preliminary study of nerve-centres to be aware that the central nervous system is divided into the two main parts called the brain and spinal cord.

Fig. 445 shows the general arrangement of the cerebro-spinal axis, and some anatomical details concerning the membranes that envelop the brain and cord may here conveniently be added.

Membranes of the Brain and Spinal Cord.—The Brain and Spinal Cord are enveloped in three membranes—(1) the Dura Mater, (2) the Arachnoid, (3) the Pia Mater.

(1) The *Dura Mater*, or external covering, is a tough membrane composed of bundles of connective tissue which cross at various angles, and in whose interstices branched connective-tissue corpuscles lie: it is lined by a thin elastic membrane, on the inner surface of which is a layer of endothelial cells.

(2) The *Arachnoid* is a much more delicate membrane, very similar in structure to the dura mater, and lined on its outer or free surface by an endothelial membrane.

(3) The *Pia Mater* of the cord consists of two layers between which numerous blood-vessels ramify. In that of the brain only the inner of the two layers is represented. Between the arachnoid and pia mater is a network of fibrous tissue trabeculæ sheathed with endothelial cells: these sub-arachnoid trabeculæ divide up the sub-arachnoid space into a number of irregular sinuses. There are some similar trabeculæ, but much fewer in number, traversing the sub-dural space, *i.e.*, the space between the dura mater and arachnoid.

Pacchionian bodies are growths from the sub-arachnoid network of connective-tissue trabeculæ which project through small holes in the inner layers of the dura mater into the venous sinuses of that membrane. The venous sinuses of the dura mater have been injected from the sub-arachnoidal space through the intermediation of these villous outgrowths.

In the chapters preceding this one we have seen how all-pervading nervous action is; in connection with circulation, respiration, secretion, peristalsis, etc., the way in which such functions are regulated by nervous activity has taken up a considerable amount of space. Some of the facts there described will be better understood, or be seen in a clearer light, if the student turns back to them and studies them once more after he has grasped what we are going to consider in the chapters that follow this on the physiology of the central nervous system.

It would also be advisable, before he begins this subject, that he

should once more read Chap. XVII. on nerve-centres, in order to

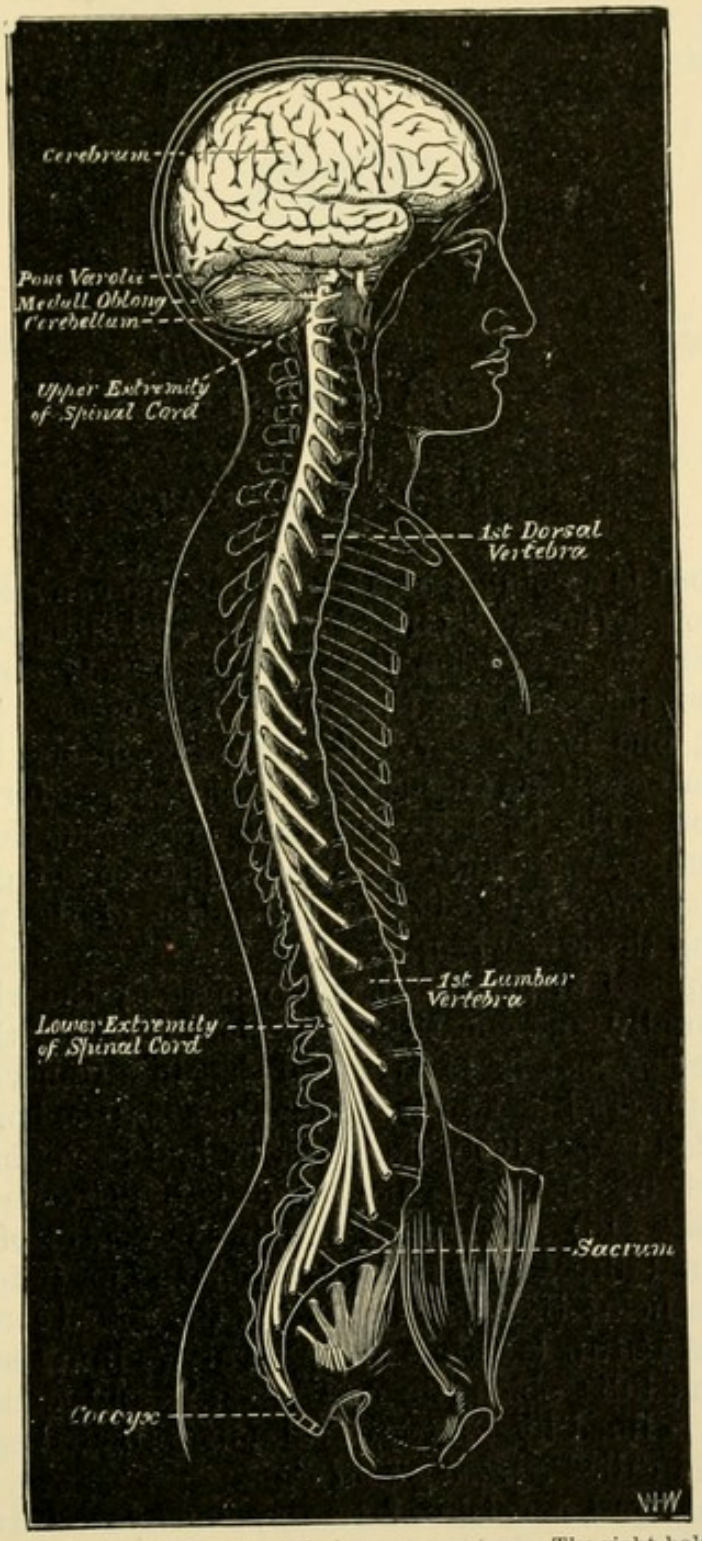


FIG. 445.—View of the cerebro-spinal axis of the nervous system. The right half of the cranium and trunk of the body has been removed by a vertical section; the membranes of the brain and spinal cord have also been removed, and the roots and first part of the fifth and ninth cranial, and of all the spinal nerves of the right side, have been dissected out and laid separately on the wall of the skull and on the several vertebræ opposite to the place of their natural exit from the cranio-spinal cavity. (After Bourgery.)

refresh his memory concerning the elementary and fundamental problems in relation to nervous activity in these regions.

CHAPTER XLII

STRUCTURE OF THE SPINAL CORD

THE spinal cord is a column of nerve-substance connected above with the brain through the medium of the bulb, and situated in the spinal canal. In transverse section it is approximately circular, but the cord is not of the same size throughout its course. It exhibits two enlargements, one in the cervical, the other in the lumbar region. These are the situations whence the large nerves for the supply of the limbs issue. The cord terminates below, about the lower border of the first lumbar vertebra, in a slender filament of grey substance, the *filum terminale*, which lies in the midst of the roots of many nerves forming the *cauda equina*.

It is composed of grey and white matter; the white matter is situated externally, and constitutes its chief portion; the grey matter is in the interior, and is so arranged that in a transverse section of the cord it appears like two crescentic masses (the horns of each of which are called respectively the anterior and posterior cornua) connected together by a narrower portion or isthmus, called the posterior commissure (fig. 446). Passing through the centre of this isthmus in a longitudinal direction is a minute canal; in a transverse section it appears as a hole; this *central canal* of the spinal cord is continued throughout its entire length, and opens above into the space at the back of the medulla oblongata and pons Varolii, called the fourth ventricle. It is lined by a layer of columnar ciliated epithelium, and contains a fluid called *cerebro-spinal fluid*.

The spinal cord consists of two symmetrical halves, separated anteriorly and posteriorly by vertical *fissures* (the posterior fissure being deeper, but less wide and distinct than the anterior), and united in the middle by nervous matter which is usually described as forming two commissures—an *anterior* commissure (consisting of medullated nerve-fibres) in front of the *posterior* commissure, which is the isthmus of grey matter pierced by the central canal, to which

we referred in the last paragraph (fig. 446, B). Each half of the spinal cord is marked on the sides (obscurely at the lower part, but distinctly above) by two longitudinal furrows, which divide it into three

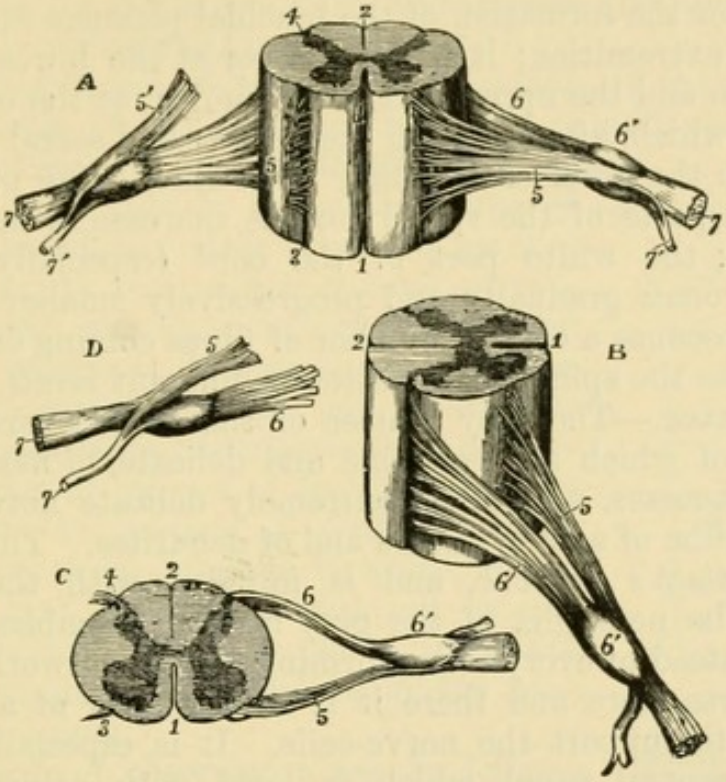


FIG. 446.—Different views of a portion of the spinal cord from the cervical region, with the roots of the nerves (slightly enlarged). In A, the anterior surface of the specimen is shown; the anterior nerve-root of its right side is divided; in B, a view of the right side is given; in C, the upper surface is shown; in D, the nerve-roots and ganglion are shown from below. 1, the anterior median fissure; 2, posterior median fissure; 3, anterior lateral depression, from which the anterior nerve-roots are seen to issue; 4, posterior lateral groove, into which the posterior roots are seen to sink; 5, anterior roots passing the ganglion; 5', in A, the anterior root divided; 6, the posterior roots, the fibres of which pass into the ganglion 6'; 7, the united or compound nerve; 7', the posterior primary branch, seen in A and D to be derived in part from the anterior and in part from the posterior root. (Allen Thomson.)

portions, columns, or tracts, an *anterior*, *lateral*, and *posterior*. From the groove between the anterior and lateral columns spring the *anterior roots* of the spinal nerves (fig. 446, B and C, 5); and just in front of the groove between the lateral and posterior column the *posterior roots* enter (B, 6): a pair of roots on each side corresponds to each vertebra.

White matter.—The white matter of the cord is made up of medullated nerve-fibres, of different sizes, running mainly in a longitudinal direction, and of a supporting material of two kinds, viz.:—(*a*) ordinary fibrous connective-tissue with elastic fibres, which is connected with septa from the pia mater which pass into the cord to carry the blood-vessels. (*b*) Neuroglia; the processes of the neuroglia-cells are arranged so as to support the nerve-fibres which are without the usual neurilemmal nerve-sheaths.

The general rule respecting the size of different parts of the cord is, that each part is in direct proportion to the size and number of nerve-roots given off from it. Thus the cord is very large in the middle and lower part of its cervical portion, whence arise the large nerve-roots for the formation of the brachial plexuses and the supply of the upper extremities; it again enlarges at the lowest part of its dorsal portion and the upper part of its lumbar, at the origins of the large nerves which, after forming the lumbar and sacral plexuses, are distributed to the lower extremities. The chief cause of the greater size at these parts of the spinal cord is increase in the quantity of grey matter; the white part of the cord (especially the lateral columns) becomes gradually and progressively smaller from above downwards, because a certain number of fibres coming down from the brain pass into the spinal grey matter at different levels.

Grey matter.—The grey matter of the cord consists of nerve-fibres, most of which are very fine and delicate, of nerve-cells with branching processes, and of an extremely delicate network of the primitive fibrillæ of axis-cylinders and of dendrites. This fine plexus is called *Gerlach's network*, and is mingled with the meshes of neuroglia. The neuroglia of the grey matter resembles that of the white, but instead of everywhere forming a close network to support the nerve-fibres, here and there it is in the form of a more open sponge-work to support the nerve-cells. It is especially developed around the central canal, which is lined with columnar ciliated epithelium, the cells of which at their outer end terminate in fine processes, which join the neuroglia network surrounding the canal, and form the *substantia gelatinosa centralis*. It is also developed at the tip of the posterior cornu of grey matter, forming what is known as the *substantia gelatinosa lateralis* of Rolando, which is much enlarged in the upper cervical region.

Groups of cells in the grey matter.—The multipolar cells of the grey matter are either scattered singly or arranged in definite groups.

(1) *Anterior horn cells.*—In the cervical and lumbar enlargements there are several groups of large multipolar cells in the anterior horn; in the thoracic region these are reduced to two, a mesial and a lateral group. The larger groups correspond with segments of the limbs, and in the cervical cord there is one special group from which the phrenic nerve arises for the supply of the diaphragm. The axons pass out by the anterior nerve-roots of the same side, but a few axons pass to the antero-lateral column of the same side, and by the white commissure to that of the opposite side. In birds, a few axons are stated to pass to the posterior roots.

(2) *Posterior vesicular column of Lockhart Clarke; generally known as Clarke's column.*—This is a group of large nerve-cells with their long

axis vertical. It lies at the base of the posterior horn, and is best marked in the thoracic region. Their axons pass into the direct cerebellar tract.

(3) *Intermedio-lateral group.*—This is seen in the outer part of the grey matter of the lateral horn, and is most distinct in the upper thoracic and lower cervical regions.

(4) *The middle cell column* lies in the middle of the crescent.

(5) The cells of the posterior horn are usually small; they are numerous, but are not disposed in special groups.

Columns and tracts in the white matter of the spinal cord.—The columns of the white matter which are marked out by the points from which the nerve-roots issue, are called the *anterior*, the *lateral*, and the *posterior* columns; the posterior is further divided by a septum of the pia mater into two almost equal parts, constituting the *postero-external* column, or *column of Burdach*, and the *postero-median*, or *column of Goll* (fig. 449). In addition to these columns, however, it has been shown that the white matter can be still further subdivided. These tracts in the white matter perform different functions in the conduction of impulses.

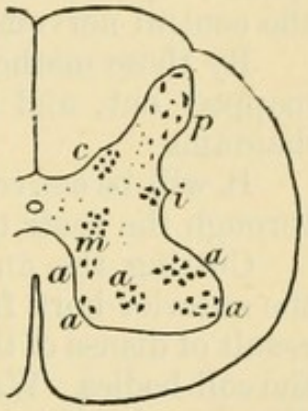


FIG. 447.—Section of half the spinal cord to show the principal groups of cells in the grey matter; *a*, groups of cells in the anterior horn; *c*, Clarke's column; *i*, intermedio-lateral group; *m*, middle cell column; *p*, scattered cells of the posterior horn. (Diagrammatic after Schäfer.)

The methods of observation are the following:—

(*a*) The *embryological* method. It has been found by examining the spinal cord at different stages of its development that certain groups of the nerve-fibres put on their myelin sheath at earlier periods than others, and that the different groups of fibres can therefore be traced in various directions. This is also known as the method of Flechsig.

(*b*) *Wallerian or degeneration method.*—This method depends upon the fact that if a nerve-fibre is separated from its nerve-cell, it wastes or degenerates. It consists in tracing the course of tracts of degenerated fibres, which result from an injury to any part of the central nervous system. When fibres degenerate below a lesion, the tract is said to be of *descending degeneration*, and when the fibres degenerate in the opposite direction, the tract is one of *ascending degeneration*. By the modern methods employed in staining the central nervous system, it has proved comparatively easy to distinguish degenerated parts in sections of the cord and of other portions of the central nervous system. Degenerated fibres have a different staining reaction when the sections are stained by what are called Weigert's and Pal's methods; this consists in subjecting them to a special

solution of hæmatoxylin, and then to certain differentiating solutions. The degenerated fibres appear light yellow, whereas the healthy fibres are a deep blue. Marchi's method is even better. After hardening in Müller's fluid, Marchi's solution (a mixture of Müller's fluid and osmic acid) stains degenerated fibres black, and leaves the rest of the tissue unstained. Accidents to the central nervous system in man have given us much information upon this subject, but this has of late years been supplemented and largely extended by experiments on animals, particularly upon monkeys; and considerable light has been shed upon the conduction of impulses to and from the nervous system by the study of the results of section of different parts of the central nervous system, and of the spinal nerve-roots.

By these methods the tracts in the white matter have now been mapped out, and the principal ones are shown in the succeeding diagrams.

It will be convenient to begin by considering the result of cutting through the roots of the spinal nerves.

Cutting the anterior roots produces chromatolysis of the cells of the anterior horn from which they originate; this slow atrophy is the result of disuse of the axons which are cut and still remain attached to the cell-bodies. Wallerian degeneration is limited to the motor nerve-fibres on the distal side of the point of section. The fact that chromatolysis (see p. 202) occurs when the axon of a nerve-cell is cut through, furnishes us with a valuable method of ascertaining what nerve-cells various tracts originate from.

Cutting the posterior roots between the spinal ganglia and the cord leaves the peripheral part of the nerve healthy, and degeneration occurs in the portion of the root which runs into the cord, because the fibres are cut off from the cells of the spinal ganglion from which they grew. These degenerated nerve-fibres may be traced up the cord for a considerable distance. Each posterior root-fibre when it enters the cord bifurcates, the main branch passing upwards, and the shorter branch downwards, so that the degeneration is seen in a small tract called the comma tract (fig. 450) immediately below the point of entrance of the cut posterior root. The upgoing fibre is contained in the posterior column of white matter, and it terminates in the grey matter either in the cord itself at a higher level, or in the medulla oblongata.

Fig. 448 represents in a schematic way the manner in which the fibres of the two roots of a spinal nerve are connected to the grey matter in the cord.

1, 2, 3, 4 represent four cells of the anterior horn. Each gives rise to an axis-cylinder process A, one of which is shown terminating in its final ramification in the end-plate of a muscular fibre M. Each of these four cells is further surrounded by an arborisation (synapse)

derived from the fibres of the pyramidal tract P, which comes down from the brain.

According to Schäfer's recent work, the pyramidal fibres really terminate around the cells at the base of the posterior horn; these cells therefore act as intermediate cell-stations on the way to those in the anterior horn. This is not shown in the diagram.

A fibre of the posterior root is also shown; this originates from the cell G of the spinal ganglion; the process of this cell bifurcates, one branch (B) passing to the periphery, where it ends in an arbor-

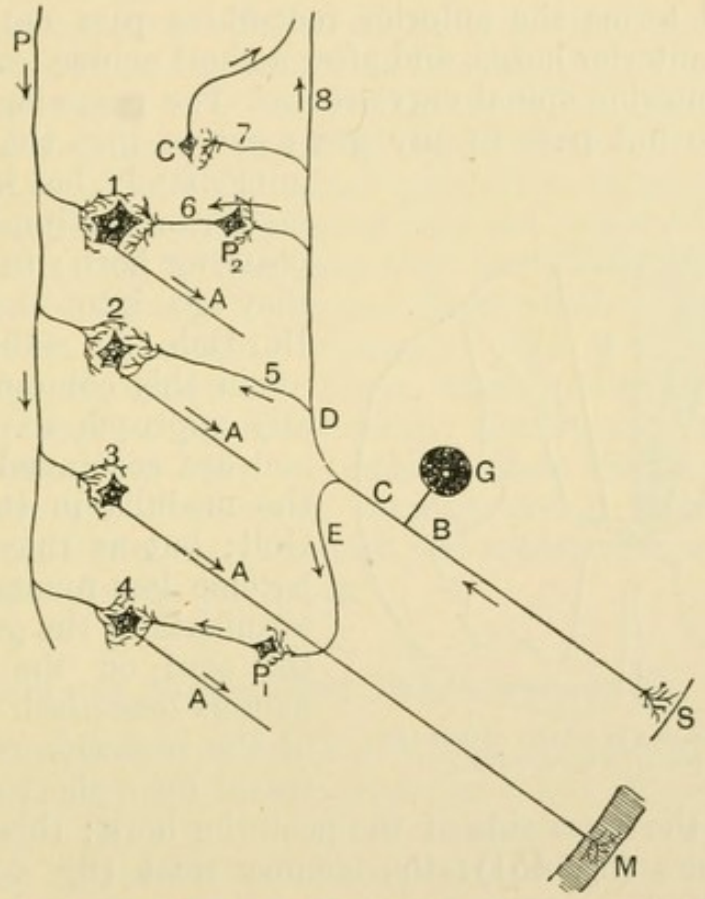


FIG. 448.—Course of nerve-fibres in spinal cord. (After Schäfer.)

escence in the skin (S); the arrow by the side of this branch represents the direction of conduction of the sensory impulses from the skin. An arrow in the opposite direction would indicate the direction of its growth. The other branch C passes into the spinal cord, where it again bifurcates; the branch E, a short one, passes downwards and ends in an arborisation around one of the small cells P_1 of the posterior cornu; from which a new axis-cylinder arises, and terminates around one of the multipolar cells (4) of the anterior horn.

The main division D travels up in the posterior column of the cord, and ends in grey matter at various levels. Some collaterals (5)

terminate by arborising directly around the anterior cornual cells, principally of the same side; others (6) do so with an intermediate cell station in a posterior cornual cell P_2; others (7) arborise around the cells of Clarke's column (C) in the thoracic region of the cord, and from these cells fresh axis-cylinders carry up the impulse to the cerebellum in what is called the direct cerebellar tract, while the main fibre (8) may terminate in any of these ways at a higher level in the cord, or above the cord in the medulla oblongata. When we become acquainted with the structure of the medulla oblongata, we shall be able to trace these fibres further.

In general terms the anterior root-fibres pass out of the grey matter of the anterior horns, and after a short course leave the spinal cord in the anterior spinal nerve-roots. The posterior roots, on the other hand, do not pass to any great extent into the grey matter immediately, but into the white matter on the inner side of the posterior horn; in other words, they go into the column of Burdach (fig. 449); they pass up in this column, but gradually approach the middle line, and are continued upwards to the medulla in the column of Goll; but as they go up they become less numerous, as some terminate in the grey matter of the cord on the way in the manner described. A few fibres of the posterior root, however, travel for a short distance in a small tract on the outer side of the posterior horn; this is called the tract of Lissauer (fig. 451); the comma tract (fig. 450) has been already explained.

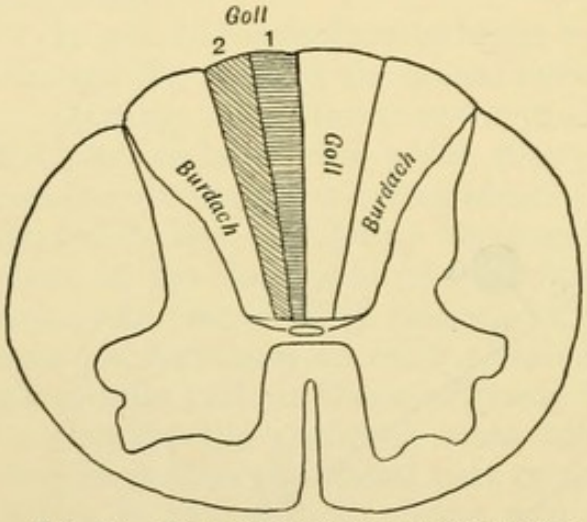


FIG. 449.—Degeneration in column of Goll after section of posterior nerve-roots.

Suppose now one cuts through several posterior roots between the spinal ganglia and the cord, so that the course of degeneration may be more readily traced. Immediately below the points of entrance of these nerve-roots, the comma tract will be found degenerated; immediately above, the degenerated fibres will be found in the column of Burdach; higher up in the cord they will be less numerous, and have approached the middle line; the fibres which enter the cord lowest get ultimately nearest the middle line, so that the greater part of the column of Goll is made up of sensory fibres from the legs; the fibres which enter the cord last, for instance those from the upper limbs and neck, pursue their course in the inner part of the column of Burdach.

The preceding figure (fig. 449) shows the degeneration in a section of the spinal cord, after the division of a number of nerve-roots on one side. The microscopic section is taken high up, so that all the degenerated fibres have passed into the column of Goll on the same side; the inner set (1) are shaded differently from the outer set (2), indicating that those nearest the middle line come from the lowest nerve-roots.

We may pass from this to consider the tracts of degeneration that occur when the spinal cord is cut right across in the thoracic region. Some tracts will be found degenerated in the piece of cord below the lesion; these consist of nerve-fibres that are connected with the nerve-cells in the brain; the principal ones are the pyramidal tracts. Other tracts are found degenerated in the piece of cord above the lesion; these consist of nerve-fibres that are connected with the nerve-cells of the spinal ganglia, or with the cells of the spinal cord itself below the lesion and are passing upwards.

In general terms we may say that the tracts which degenerate downwards are the motor tracts, and those which degenerate upwards are the afferent or sensory channels. We must also take into account groups of association fibres which unite together different regions of the cord; these are generally short tracts in which, therefore, degeneration can only be traced a short distance up or down. The long tracts are those which connect cord or spinal nerves with brain, like those of Goll and Burdach just mentioned, or the pyramidal tracts the main efferent pathways.

Tracts of Descending Degeneration (fig. 450).

(1.) *The crossed pyramidal tract.*—This is situated in the lateral column on the outer side of the posterior cornu of grey matter. At the lower part of the spinal cord it extends to the margin, but higher up it becomes displaced from this position by the interpolation of another tract of fibres, to be presently described, viz., the direct cerebellar tract. The crossed pyramidal tract is large, and may touch the grey matter at the tip of the posterior cornu, but is separated from it elsewhere. Its shape on cross section is somewhat like a lens, but varies in different regions of the cord, and diminishes in size from the cervical region downwards, its fibres passing off as they descend, to arborise around the nerve-cells and their branchings in the grey matter of the cord. The fibres of which this tract is composed are moderately large, but are mixed with some that are smaller.

(2.) *The direct or uncrossed pyramidal tract, or column of Türck.*—This tract is situated in the anterior column by the side of the anterior fissure. It ends in the mid or lower thoracic region of the cord.

The two pyramidal tracts come down from the brain; in the medulla oblongata, the greater number of the pyramidal fibres cross over to the other side of the cord which they descend; hence the term crossed pyramidal tract; a smaller collection of the pyramidal fibres goes straight on, on the same side of the cord, and these cross at different levels in the anterior commissure of the cord lower down; hence the disappearance of the direct pyramidal tract in the lower part of the cord. The fact that the crossed pyramidal tract of one side is the fellow of the direct pyramidal tract of the other side, is indicated in the diagram by the direction of shading (see fig. 450).

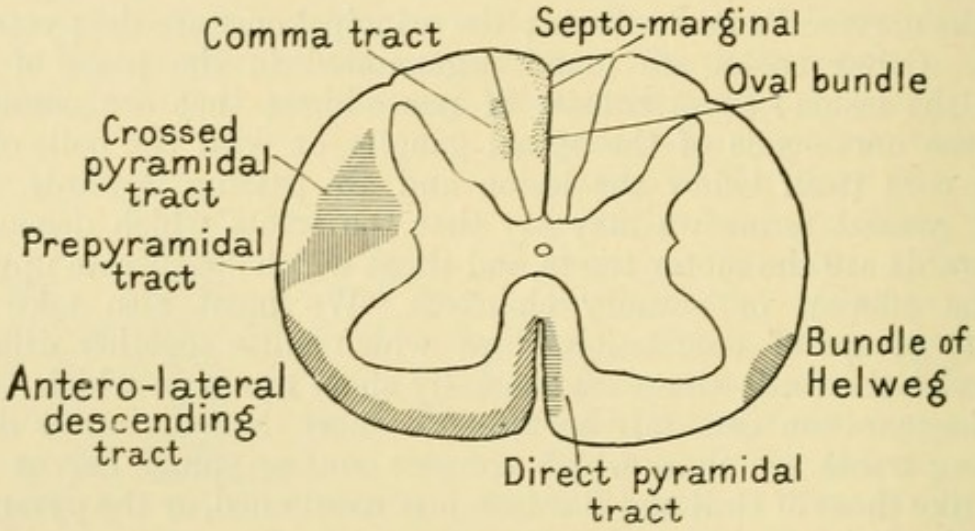


FIG. 450.—Tracts of descending degeneration. For the sake of clearness each is shown on only one side. (After Schäfer.)

Mingled with the fibres of the crossed pyramidal tract are a few fibres of the pyramid which have not crossed in the medulla oblongata, and are therefore derived from the same side of the cerebrum (*uncrossed lateral pyramidal fibres*).

The pyramidal fibres are not found at all in vertebrates below the mammals. In the lower mammals they are very few, and in some rodents (rat, mouse, guinea-pig) they are placed in the posterior columns. The direct pyramidal tract is found only in man and the higher apes.

The paralysis that results from the section of the pyramidal tracts passes off very soon in many animals, whereas that which results from section of the anterior column and the adjacent part of the lateral column is more permanent. It is probable that the two tracts next to be described may be the second path for volitional impulses, and perhaps derive their importance from the fact that the impulses which travel down them are necessary in the maintenance of the tone of the anterior horn cells.

(3.) *Antero-lateral descending tract, or tract of Loewenthal,* lies by the side of the anterior median fissure, and extends along the margin

of the cord towards the lateral column. These originate from the posterior longitudinal bundle of the medulla oblongata, and from other sources to be described later. They end by synapses in the anterior horn.

(4.) *The prepyramidal tract* (Monakow's bundle).—This is situated just in front of the crossed pyramidal tract. Its origin is in the cells of the red nucleus in the mid-brain. Its fibres end by arborisations in the grey matter about the middle of the crescent.

(5.) *Bundle of Helweg.*—The exact origin and destination of these fibres are not known: they can be traced from the neighbourhood of the olivary body in the medulla oblongata, and pass down in the anterior part of the lateral column in the cervical region.

(6.) *Short tracts in the posterior column.*—These are (*a*) the *Comma* tract; though this degenerates downwards, it is in reality a sensory tract, being composed, as we have already seen, of the branches of the entering posterior root-fibres which pass downwards on entering the cord. It is only found for a comparatively short distance below the actual lesion. (*b*) *Septo-marginal fibres;* these are few in number, and are mainly found near the median fissure, where they constitute the *oval bundle,* and near the posterior surface, where they form the *median triangle bundle.* These are doubtless short association tracts, and are mixed with others, especially in the ventral part of the posterior column, which have an "ascending" course.

Tracts of Ascending Degeneration (fig. 451).

(1.) *Postero-medial column, or column of Goll.*—This consists of fibres derived from the posterior roots of the sacral, lumbar, and lower

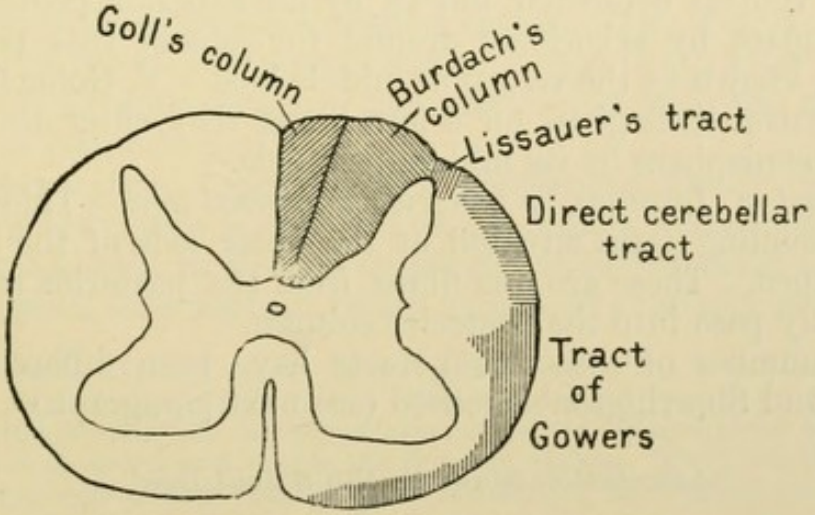


FIG. 451.—Tracts of ascending degeneration, shown on one side of the cord only. (After Schäfer.)

thoracic nerves. These fibres enter the postero-lateral column, and gradually pass towards the mid-line, as already explained. They

end in the grey matter of the nucleus gracilis of the medulla oblongata.

(2.) *Postero-lateral column, or column of Burdach.*—Many of the fibres of this tract, which is also composed of the entering posterior nerve-roots, pass into the grey matter of the cord either immediately on entrance, or in their course upwards. The rest continue upwards to the medulla oblongata, but those from the lower roots pass into the column of Goll, as just stated; those from the upper roots continue to travel upwards in the column of Burdach, and end in the grey matter of the nucleus cuneatus in the medulla oblongata.

(3.) *Dorsal or direct cerebellar tract, or tract of Flechsig.*—This is found in the cervical and thoracic regions of the cord, and is situated between the crossed pyramidal tract and the margin. It degenerates on injury or section of the cord itself, but not on section of the posterior nerve-roots. In other words, its fibres are endogenous, *i.e.*, arise from cells within the grey matter of the cord; these cells are those of Clarke's column of the same side; the fibres are large ones.

(4.) *Ventral cerebellar or antero-lateral ascending tract, or tract of Gowers.*—This is situated in front of the crossed pyramidal and direct cerebellar tracts in the lumbar region, while in the thoracic and cervical regions it forms a narrow band at the margin of the cord, curving round even into the anterior column. Its fibres intermingle with those of the antero-lateral descending tract. They originate probably from cells in the middle and posterior parts of the grey crescent, partly on the same, but mainly on the opposite side of the cord.

Both of these tracts, as their names indicate, go to the cerebellum; the dorsal cerebellar enters the cerebellum by its lower peduncle, while the ventral cerebellar enters by its superior peduncle. The fibres terminate by arborising around the cells of that part of the cerebellum known as the *vermis* or middle lobe. V. Gehuchten states that the ventral tract gives off a few fibres that enter the opposite cerebellar hemisphere by its middle peduncle.

(5.) *Tract of Lissauer, or posterior marginal zone.*—This is a small tract of ascending fibres situated at the outer side of the tip of the posterior horn. These are fine fibres from the posterior roots; they subsequently pass into the posterior column.

(6.) A number of association tracts have been differentiated by Flechsig's and Sherrington's method (see next paragraph).

Association fibres in the Spinal Cord.

The numerous short tracts already mentioned as demonstrable in the spinal cord are doubtless bundles of association fibres which connect its different levels together. The main difficulty of investigating them by the degeneration method has arisen from the fact that they are largely intermingled with, and so are hard to distinguish from the long tracts which connect brain and cord together. In 1853

Pflüger stated that reflex irradiation within the spinal cord always took place in an upward direction, but Sherrington in his work found many exceptions to this rule, and he sought for the paths which are capable of carrying the impulses down the cord by a very ingenious method. The spinal cord of a dog was completely divided across, and the animal was kept alive for a considerable time afterwards; sufficient time was allowed to elapse (roughly about a year) for all traces of the degeneration due to this lesion to have disappeared. The cord is then left, as it were, like a cleaned slate, on which once more a new degeneration can be written without fear of confusion with a previous one. The second degeneration produced by such an operation as hemisection would then affect the intra-spinal fibres only, all the long tracts from brain to cord having been wiped out by the first operation. The complete topography of all these fibres, which are very numerous, has not yet been worked out. The degenerated fibres are scattered throughout the white matter, but are most numerous at the margins of the cord. This is especially true for the longer fibres, and some of them appear to be very long indeed. In the case of the longer fibres there is no evidence of decussation; in the case of the shorter fibres there is some evidence that they in part cross to the other side.

Complete transverse section of the spinal cord leads to:—

1. Loss of motion of the parts supplied by the nerves below the section on both sides of the body. The paralysis is not confined to the voluntary muscles, but includes the muscular fibres of the blood-vessels and viscera. Hence there is fall of blood-pressure, paralysis of sphincters, etc.
2. Loss of sensation in the same regions.
3. Degeneration, ascending and descending, on both sides of the cord.

Hemisection.—If the operation performed is not a complete cutting of the spinal cord across transversely, but a cutting of half the cord across, it is termed hemisection, or semi-section.

This operation leads to:—

1. Loss of motion of the parts supplied by the nerves below the section on the same side of the body as the injury.
2. Loss of sensation in the same region. The loss of sensation is not a very prominent symptom, and is limited to the sense of localisation and the muscular sense. The animal can still feel sensations of pain and of heat and cold.
3. Degeneration, ascending and descending, nearly entirely confined to the same side of the cord as the injury. The most important of these are shown in the photo-micrographs (fig. 452) on the next page, the small text beneath which should be carefully studied.

Differences in different regions of the spinal cord.—The white matter decreases in amount from above downwards. The amount of grey matter varies; it is greatest in the cervical and lumbar enlargements, viz., at and about the 5th lumbar and 6th cervical nerve, and least in the thoracic region. The greatest development of grey matter corresponds with greatest number of nerve-fibres passing from the cord.

In the cervical enlargement the grey matter occupies a large proportion of the section, the grey commissure is short and thick, the anterior horn is blunt, whilst the posterior is somewhat tapering. The anterior and posterior roots run some distance through the white matter before they reach the periphery. At the extreme

upper part of the cervical region, the end of the posterior horn is swollen out by excess of neuroglia into a rounded mass called the *substantia gelatinosa of Rolando.* The cervical cord is wider from side to side than from before back; this is owing to the great width of the lateral columns.

In the dorsal region the grey matter bears only a small proportion to the white, and the posterior roots in particular run a long course through the white matter after they enter the cord; the grey commissure is thinner and narrower than in the

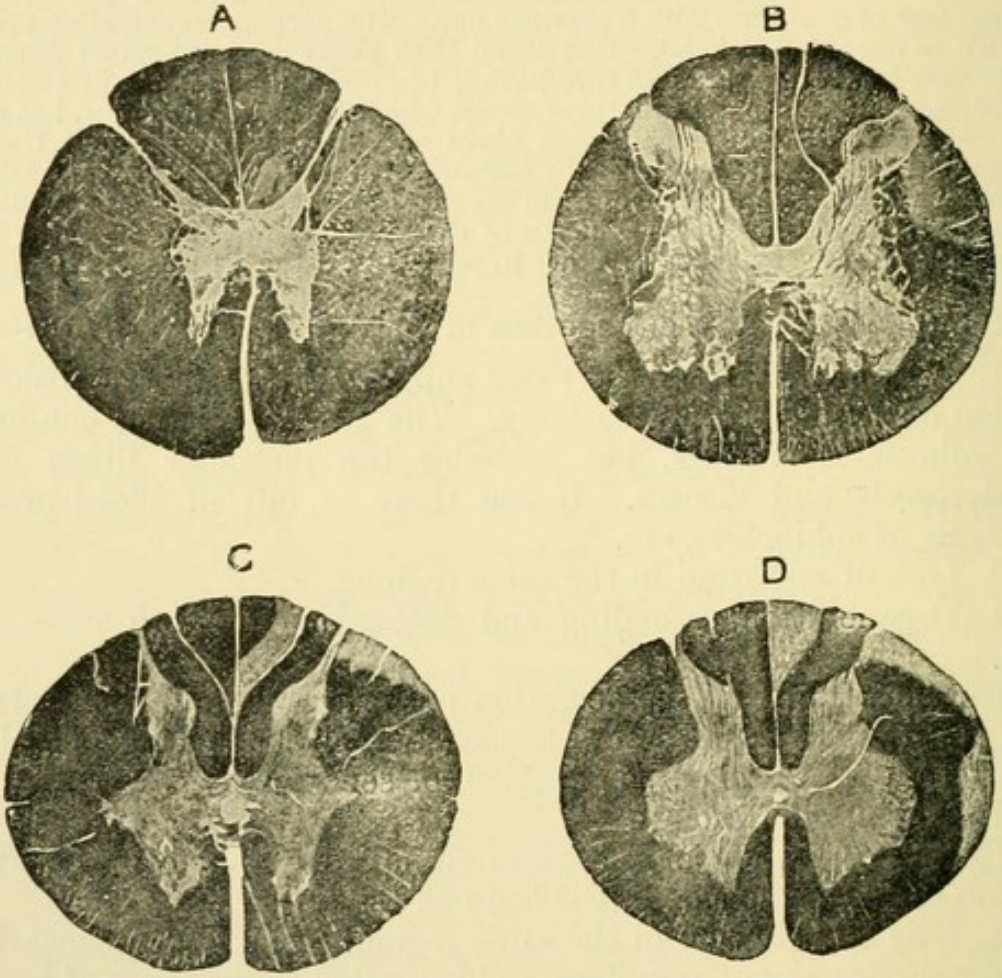


FIG. 452.—The above diagrams are reproductions of photo-micrographs from the spinal cord of a monkey, in which the operation of left hemisection had been performed some weeks previously (Mott). The sections were stained by Weigert's method, by which the grey matter is bleached, while the healthy white matter remains dark blue. The degenerated tracts are also bleached. A is a section of the cord in the thoracic region below the lesion; the crossed pyramidal tract is degenerated. B is a section lower down in the lumbar enlargement; the degenerated pyramidal tract is now smaller. C is a section in the thoracic region some little distance above the lesion. The degenerated tracts seen are in the outer part of Goll's column, and in the direct cerebellar tract. D is a section higher up in the cervical region; the degeneration in Goll's column now occupies a median position; the degenerations in the direct cerebellar tract, and in the tract of Gowers, are also well shown. Notice that in all cases the degenerated traces are on the same side as the injury.

cervical region. The intermedio-lateral tract is here most marked, and forms a prominence often called the lateral horn. This is shown in fig. 452 C. Clarke's column is also confined to this region of the cord.

In the lumbar enlargement the grey matter again bears a very large proportion to the whole size of the transverse section, but its posterior cornua are shorter and blunter than they are in the cervical region. The grey commissure is short and extremely narrow. The cord is circular on transverse section.

At the upper part of the conus medullaris, which is the portion of the cord immediately below the lumbar enlargement, the grey substance occupies nearly the

whole of the transverse section, as it is only invested by a thin layer of white substance. This thin layer is wanting in the neighbourhood of the posterior nerve-roots. The grey commissure is extremely thick.

At the level of the fifth sacral nerve the grey matter is also in excess, and the central canal is enlarged, appearing T-shaped in section; whilst in the *upper portion of the filum terminale* the grey matter is uniform in shape without any canal.

CHAPTER XLIII

THE BRAIN

A STUDENT'S first glance at a brain, or at such a drawing of it as is given in fig. 453, will be sufficient to convince him of its complicated

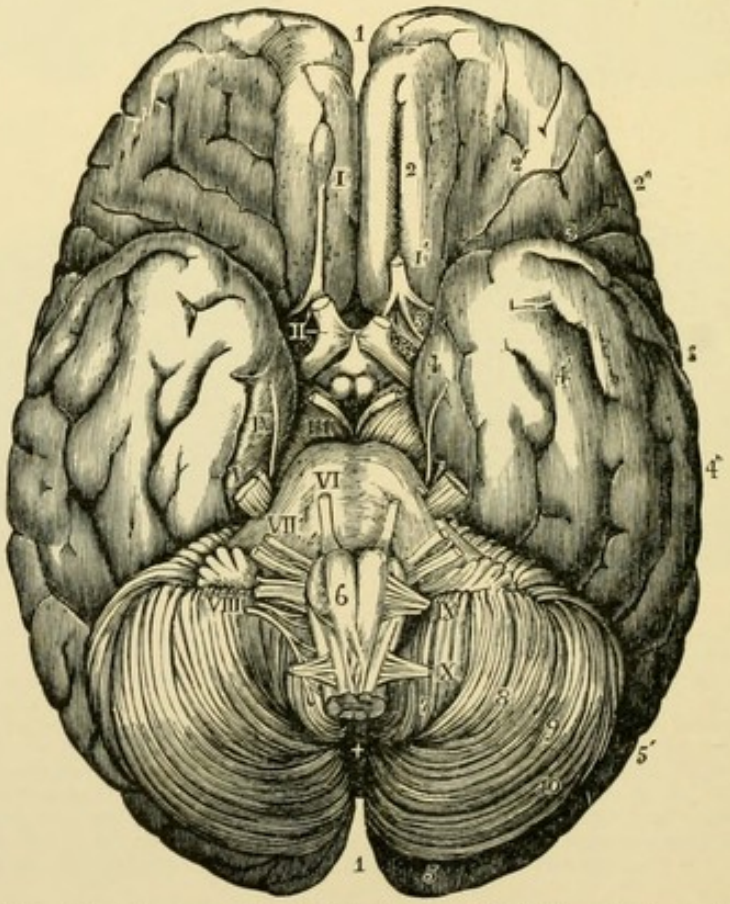


FIG. 453.—Base of the brain. 1, superior longitudinal fissure; 2, 2', 2'', anterior cerebral lobe; 3, fissure of Sylvius, between anterior and 4, 4', 4'', middle cerebral lobe; 5, 5', posterior lobe; 6, medulla oblongata; the figure is in the right anterior pyramid; 7, 8, 9, 10, the cerebellum; +, the inferior vermiform process. The figures from I. to IX. are placed against the corresponding cerebral nerves; III. is placed on the right crus cerebri. VI. and VII. on the pons Varolii; X. the first cervical or suboccipital nerve. (Allen Thomson.) ½.

structure. We shall devote this and a few succeeding chapters to anatomical considerations, before passing on to the study of its physiology.

At the lowest part of the brain (fig. 454), continuing the spinal cord upwards, is the *medulla oblongata* or *bulb* (D). Next comes the *pons Varolii* (C), very appropriately called the bridge, because in it are the connections between the bulb and the upper regions of the brain, and between the *cerebellum* or small brain (B) and the rest of the nervous system.

The *mid-brain* comes next (*a*, *b*), and this leads into the peduncles or crura of the *cerebrum* (A), the largest section of the brain.

Through the brain runs a cavity filled with cerebro-spinal fluid (see p. 178), and lined by ciliated epithelium; this is continuous with the central canal of the spinal cord. In the brain, however, it does

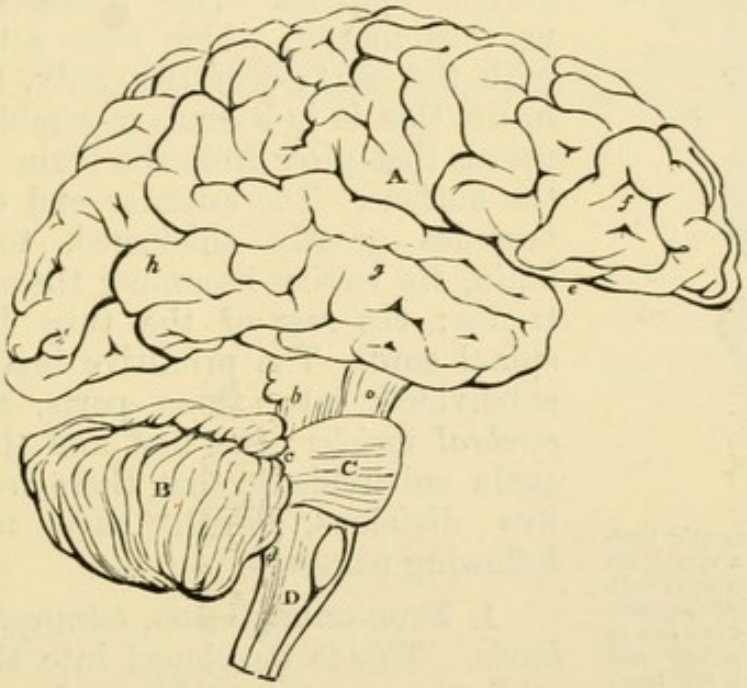


FIG. 454.—Plan in outline of the brain, as seen from the right side. ½. The parts are represented as separated from one another somewhat more than natural, so as to show their connections. A, cerebrum; *f*, *g*, *h*, its anterior, middle, and posterior lobes; *e*, fissure of Sylvius; B, cerebellum; C, pons Varolii; D, medulla oblongata; *a*, peduncles of the cerebrum; *b*, *c*, *d*, superior, middle, and inferior peduncles of the cerebellum. (From Quain.)

not remain a simple canal, but is enlarged at intervals into what are called the **ventricles**. There is one ventricle in each half or hemisphere of the cerebrum; these are called the *lateral ventricles*, they open into the *third ventricle*, which is in the middle line; and then a narrow canal (*aqueduct of Sylvius*) leads from this to the *fourth ventricle*, which is placed on the back of the bulb and pons, which form its floor; its roof is formed partly by the overhanging cerebellum, partly by pia mater. This piece of pia mater is pierced by a hole (*Foramen of Magendie*), and so the cerebro-spinal fluid in the interior of the cerebro-spinal cavity is continuous with that which bathes the external surface of brain and cord in the sub-arachnoid space. The fourth ventricle leads into the central canal of the spinal

cord. The fifth ventricle in the central structures of the brain does not communicate with the others.

Speaking generally, there are two main collections of grey matter—that on the surface, and that in the interior bordering on the cerebro-spinal cavity, and subdivided into various masses (floor of fourth ventricle, corpora striata, optic thalami, etc.), whose closer acquaintance we shall make presently.

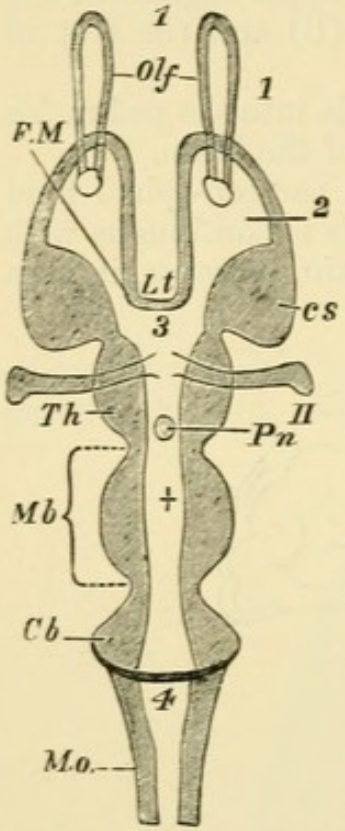


FIG. 455.—Diagrammatic horizontal section of a vertebrate brain. The figures serve both for this and the next diagram. *Mb*, mid-brain: what lies in front of this is the fore-, and what lies behind, the hind-brain; *Lt*, lamina terminalis; *Olf*, olfactory lobes; *Hmp*, hemispheres; *Th. E*, thalamencephalon; *Pn*, pineal gland; *Pg*, pituitary body; *F.M.*, foramen of Munro; *cs*, corpus striatum; *Th*, optic thalamus; *CC*, crura cerebri: the mass lying above the canal represents the corpora quadrigemina; *Cb*, cerebellum; *M.o.*, medulla oblongata; *I—IX*, nine pairs of cranial nerves; 1, olfactory ventricle; 2, lateral ventricle; 3, third ventricle; 4, fourth ventricle; +, iter a tertio ad quartum ventriculum, or aqueduct of Sylvius.
(Huxley.)

In the fœtus the central nervous system is formed by an infolding of a portion of the surface epiblast. This becomes a tube of nervous matter, which loses all connection with the surface of the body, though later in life this is in a sense re-established by the nerves that grow from the brain and cord to the surface. The anterior end of this tube becomes greatly thickened, to form the brain, its cavity becoming the cerebral ventricles; the rest of the tube becomes the spinal cord. The primitive brain is at first subdivided into three parts, the *primary cerebral vesicles;* the first and third of these again subdivide, so that there are ultimately five divisions, which have received the following names:—

1. **Pros-encephalon**, *telencephalon* or *fore brain.* This is developed into the cerebrum with the corpora striata. It encloses the lateral ventricles.

2. **Thalam-encephalon**, *diencephalon* or *twixt brain.* This is developed into the parts including the optic thalami, which enclose the third ventricle.

3. **Mes-encephalon**, or *mid brain*, consists of the parts which enclose the aqueduct of Sylvius — namely, the corpora quadrigemina, which form its dorsal, and the crura cerebri, which form its ventral aspect.

4. **Met-encephalon**, or *hind brain*, which forms the cerebellum and pons.

5. **Myel-encephalon**, or *after brain*, which forms the bulb or medulla oblongata.

Figs. 455 and 456 represent a diagrammatic view of a vertebrate brain; the attachment of the pineal gland, pituitary body, and olfactory (I) and optic (II) nerves is also shown.

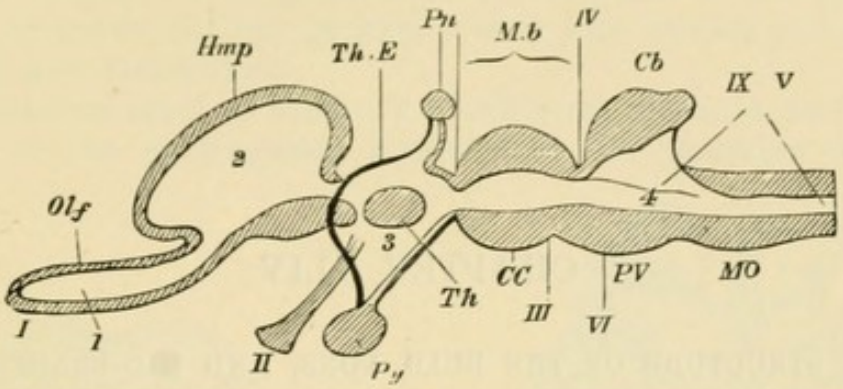


FIG. 456.—Longitudinal and vertical diagrammatic section of a vertebrate brain. Letters as before. *PV*, pons Varolii. Lamina terminalis is represented by the strong black line joining *Pn* and *Py*. (Huxley.)

CHAPTER XLIV

STRUCTURE OF THE BULB, PONS, AND MID-BRAIN

We may study the bulb and pons by examining first the anterior or ventral, then the posterior or dorsal aspect, and last of all the interior.

Anterior Aspect.

The bulb is seen to be shaped, like an inverted truncated cone, larger than the spinal cord, and enlarging as it goes up until it terminates in the still larger pons (fig. 457, *p*). In the middle line is a groove, which is a continuation upwards of the anterior median fissure of the spinal cord; the columns of the bulb are, speaking roughly, continuations upwards of those of the cord, but there is a considerable rearrangement of the fibres in each. Thus the prominent columns in the middle line, called the *pyramids* (*a a*), are composed of the pyramidal fibres, which in the spinal cord are situated principally in the lateral columns of the opposite side (crossed pyramidal tracts). The decussation or crossing of the pyramids (*b*) occurs at their lower part: a small collection of the pyramidal fibres is, however, continued down the cord in the anterior column of the same side of the cord (direct pyramidal tract): these cross at different levels in the cord.

On the outer side of each pyramid is an oval prominence (*c c*), which is not represented in the spinal cord at all. These are called the *olivary bodies* or *olives;* they consist of white matter outside, with grey and white matter in their interior.

The *restiform bodies* at the sides (*d d*) are the continuation upwards of those fibres from cord and bulb which enter the cerebellum, and the upper part of each restiform body is called the *inferior peduncle of the cerebellum.**

* Each half of the cerebellum has three peduncles: inferior, middle, and superior.

Posterior Aspect.

Fig. 458 shows a surface view of the back of the bulb, pons, and mid-brain. Again we recognise some of the parts of the spinal cord continued upwards, though generally with new names, and again we see certain new structures.

The posterior median fissure is continued upwards, and on each side of it is the prolongation upwards of the posterior column of

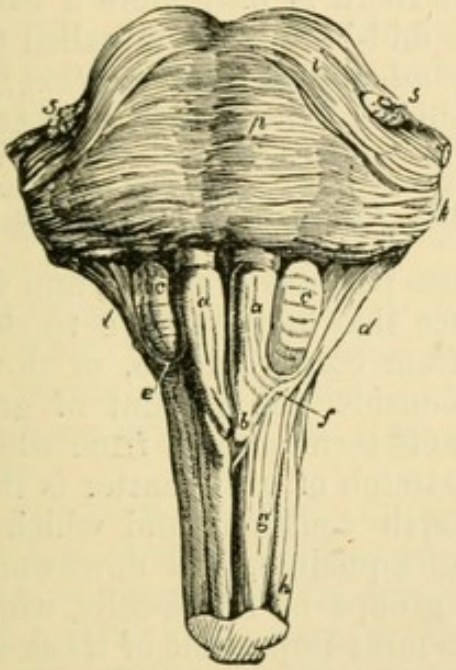


FIG. 457.—Ventral or anterior surface of the pons Varolii, and medulla oblongata. *a*, *a*, pyramids; *b*, their decussation; *c*, *c*, olivary bodies; *d*, *d*, restiform bodies; *e*, arcuate fibres; *f*, fibres passing from the anterior column of the cord to the cerebellum; *g*, anterior column of the spinal cord; *h*, lateral column; *p*, pons Varolii; *i*, its upper fibres; 5, 5, roots of the fifth pair of nerves.

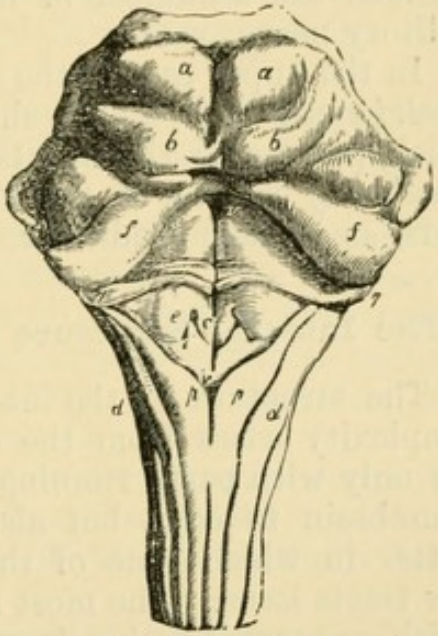


FIG. 458.—Dorsal or posterior surface of the pons Varolii, corpora quadrigemina, and medulla oblongata. The peduncles of the cerebellum are cut short at the sides. *a*, *a*, the upper pair of corpora quadrigemina; *b*, *b*, the lower; *f*, *f*, superior peduncles of the cerebellum; *c*, eminence connected with the nucleus of the hypoglossal nerve: *e*, that of the glosso-pharyngeal nerve; *i*, that of the vagus nerve; *d*, *d*, restiform bodies; *p*, *p*, posterior columns; *v*, *v*, groove in the middle of the fourth ventricle, ending below in the calamus scriptorius; 7, 7, roots of the auditory nerves.

the cord. The column of Goll is now called the *Funiculus gracilis*, and the column of Burdach the *Funiculus cuneatus*.

The two funiculi graciles lie at first side by side, but soon diverge and form the two lower boundaries of a diamond-shaped space called the *floor of the fourth ventricle;* this is made of grey matter; the central canal of the cord gets nearer and nearer to the dorsal surface of the bulb, till at last it opens out on the back of the bulb, and its surrounding grey matter is spread out to form the floor of the fourth ventricle. The two upper boundaries of the diamond-shaped

space are made by the superior peduncles of the cerebellum, which contain fibres going up through the mid-brain to the cerebrum. The middle peduncles of the cerebellum are principally made up of fibres running from one cerebellar hemisphere towards the other through the pons.

Running down the centre of the floor of the fourth ventricle is a shallow groove; on each side of this is a rounded longitudinal eminence called the *eminentia teres;* running across the middle of the floor are a number of fibres (the *striæ acousticæ*), which join the auditory nerve.

In the upper part of the diagram, the mid-brain, with the *corpora quadrigemina* (*a a, b b*), is shown. Here there is once more a canal which penetrates the substance of the mid-brain, and is called the *aqueduct of Sylvius,* or the *iter a tertio ad quartum ventriculum;* it leads, as its name indicates, from the third to the fourth ventricle.

The Internal Structure of the Bulb, Pons, and Mid-Brain.

The structure of the interior of these parts is complex, and the complexity arises from the circumstance that here we have to deal not only with parts running upwards from cord to brain, or down from brain to cord, but also with a considerable amount of grey matter in which some of the white tracts terminate, or from which new tracts issue. The most important stretch of grey matter is that which appears on the floor of the fourth ventricle, and which is continued upwards around the Sylvian aqueduct, and downwards into the spinal cord; here are situated groups of nerve-cells, which are spoken of as centres, or nuclei. The most important of these are those which are connected with the cranial nerves. There are twelve pairs of cranial nerves, and of these the last ten pairs originate from the floor of the fourth ventricle or the neighbouring grey matter.

The following is a list of the cranial nerves:—

1. *Olfactory.*—This is the nerve of smell.
2. *Optic.*—This is the nerve of sight.
3. *Motor oculi*
4. *Trochlear*
6. *Abducens*

} These three nerves supply the muscles of the eyeball.

5. *Trigeminal.*—This is the great sensory nerve of the face and head. Its smaller motor division supplies the muscles of mastication and a few other muscles also.

7. *Facial.*—This is mainly the motor nerve of the face muscles.

8. *Auditory.*—This is divided into two parts, one of which, called the *cochlear* nerve, is the true nerve of hearing, and is distributed to the cochlea of the internal ear; the other division, called the *vestibular*

nerve, is distributed to the vestibule and semicircular canals of the internal ear.

9. *Glosso-pharyngeal.*—This is a mixed nerve; its motor fibres pass to certain of the pharyngeal muscles; its sensory fibres are mainly concerned in the sense of taste.

10. *Vagus or pneumogastric.*—This is a nerve with varied efferent and afferent functions; its branches pass to pharynx, larynx, œsophagus, stomach, lungs, heart, intestines, liver and spleen. These functions we have already studied in connection with those organs.

11. *Spinal accessory.*—The internal branch of this nerve blends with the vagus, and its larger external division supplies the trapezius and the sterno-mastoid muscles.

12. *Hypoglossal.*—This is the motor nerve to the tongue muscles.

A mere enumeration of the nerves connected to the bulb shows how supremely important this small area of the brain is for carrying on the organic functions of life. It contains centres which regulate deglutition, vomiting, the secretion of saliva, etc., respiration, the heart's movements, and the vaso-motor nerves.

When we further consider that the various centres are connected by groups of association fibres, we at once realise the reason for the complexity of the structures where all this busy traffic takes place.

In the enumeration of the cranial nerves, it will be noticed that many of them are either wholly motor or wholly sensory, and that some of them, like the spinal nerves, have a double function. The motor nerve fibres start as axons from the groups of nerve-cells in the grey matter of this region, just as the motor fibres in the spinal nerves originate from the cells of the spinal grey matter. There is a corresponding resemblance in the origin of the sensory fibres of the cranial and spinal nerves. In the latter, it will be remembered, they originate as outgrowths from the cells of the spinal ganglia, one branch growing to the periphery, and the other to the spinal cord, where it terminates after a more or less extended course by forming synapses with the cells of the grey matter. In the cranial nerves they have a corresponding origin in peripheral ganglia, and those branches which grow towards the bulb terminate by arborising around special groups of cells spoken of as the sensory nuclei.

The following diagram (fig. 459) roughly indicates the position of these nuclei; the motor nuclei are coloured blue, and the sensory red. It must, however, be clearly recognised that while the motor nuclei are true centres of origin, that the so-called sensory nuclei are groups of cells around which the entering sensory fibres arborise; these cells do not give origin to the axons of the sensory nerves. After we have studied the internal structure of the bulb we shall be able to

return once more to the cranial nerves, in order that we consider their origin and function in greater detail.

But this diagram will give a general idea of the positions of the

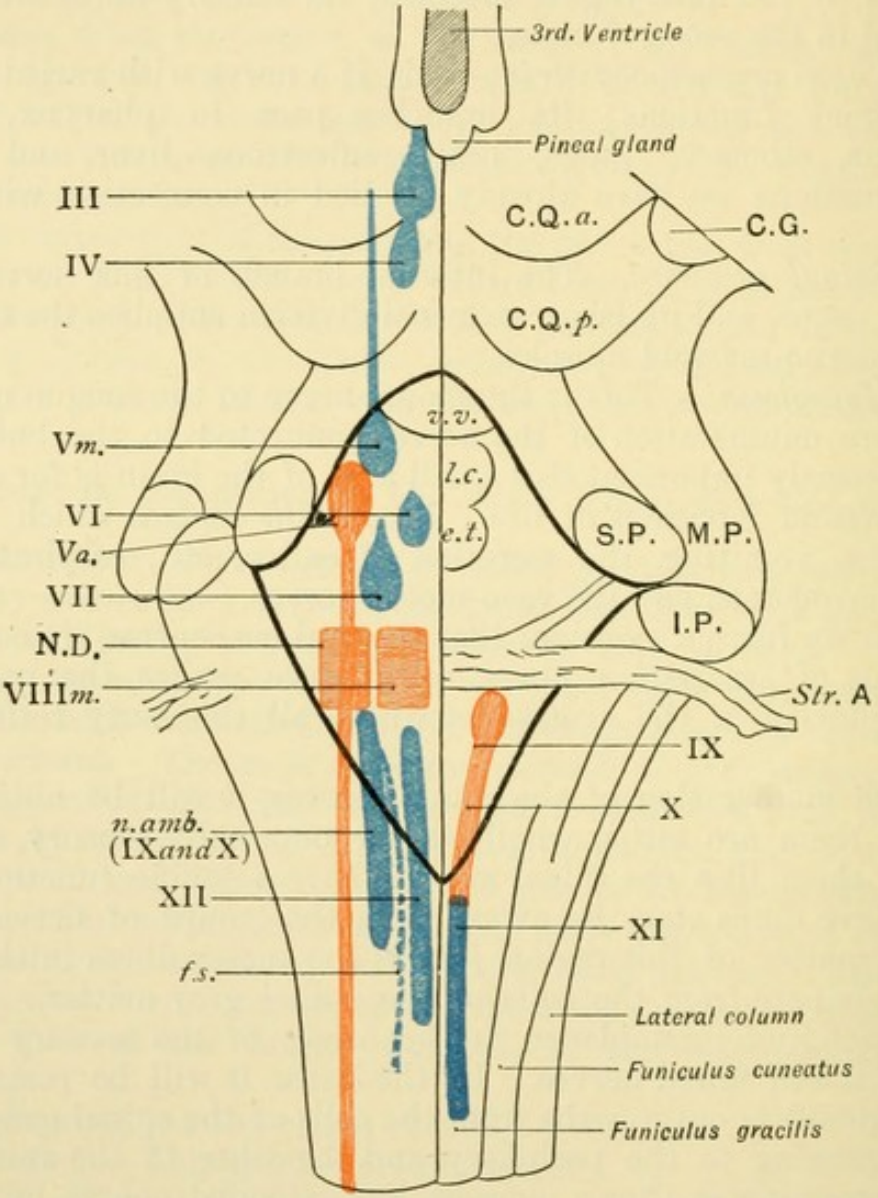


FIG. 459.—Diagram to show the position of the nuclei of the cranial nerves (after Sherrington). The medulla and pons are viewed from the dorsal aspect, the cerebrum and cerebellum having been cut away. The nuclei (sensory coloured red, and motor blue) are represented as being seen through transparent material. C.Q. *a.*, anterior corpus quadrigeminum; C.Q. *p.*, posterior corpus quadrigeminum; C.G., corpus geniculatum; *v.v.*, value of Vieussens; *l.c.*, locus cœruleus; *e.t.*, eminentia teres; *str.* A., striæ acousticæ. S.P., M.P., and I.P., superior middle and inferior cerebellum peduncles respectively cut through. The numerals III. to XII. indicate the nuclei of the respective cranial nerves, all shown on the left side except the accessory-vago-glossopharyngeal IX., X., XI., which to avoid confusion is placed on the right side. Vm. is the motor nucleus of the fifth nerve; Vd., the sensory nucleus of the same nerve with its long descending root; VIII*m.*, the median nucleus of the auditory nerve; N.D. Nucleus of Deiters; *n. amb.* nucleus ambiguus. The position of the descending root of the ninth and tenth (fasciculus solitarius) is also indicated (*f. s.*).

nuclei. It will be noticed that the so-called sensory nuclei (coloured red) are in the minority; they comprise the sensory nucleus of the fifth nerve with its long descending (formerly called ascending) root,

the nuclei of the eighth nerve (only one of which, VIII*m.*, is seen in the diagram), and the glossopharyngeal and vagal portions of a long strand of nerve-cells called the *combined nucleus* of the ninth, tenth, and eleventh nerves. The remaining nuclei (coloured blue) are efferent, and may be principally arranged into two groups:—(1) the nuclei of the third, fourth, sixth, and twelfth nerves, which are close to the middle line; and (2) the motor nucleus of the fifth, the nucleus of the seventh, and the nucleus ambiguus (motor nucleus of the ninth and tenth nerves) which form a line more lateral in position.

It should be added that van Gehuchten has shown that, except a few fibres of the third, and the whole of the fourth nerves, none of the fibres of the cranial nerves cross to the opposite side.

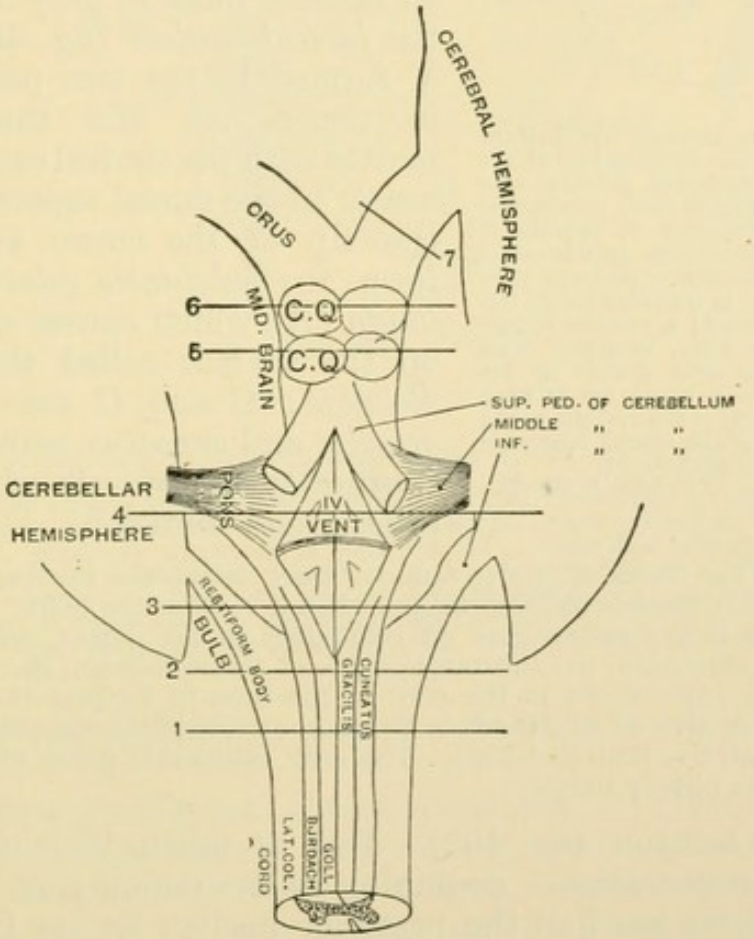


FIG. 460.—Diagrammatic representation of dorsal aspect of medulla, pons, and mid-brain.

The first two pairs of cranial nerves, the olfactory and the optic, will be studied in connection with smell and vision later on.

We can now pass to the consideration of transverse sections of this part of the central nervous system. We will limit ourselves to seven, the level of which is indicated in the above diagram (fig. 460). The cerebellum has been bisected into two halves and turned outwards, its upper peduncles having been cut through to render the

parts more evident. The position of our seven sections is indicated by the transverse lines numbered 1 to 7.

First section.—This is taken at the lowest level of the bulb, through the region of the decussation of the pyramids. The similarity to the cervical cord will be at once recognised; the passage of the pyramidal fibres (P) from the anterior part of the bulb to the crossed pyramidal tract of the opposite side of the cord cuts off the tip of anterior horn (A), which in sections higher up appears as an isolated mass of grey matter, called the *lateral nucleus* (fig. 462, *nl*). The V formed by the two posterior horns is opened out, and thus the grey matter with the central canal is brought nearer to the dorsal aspect of the bulb; the tip of the cornu swells out to form the *substantia gelatinosa of Rolando* (R), which causes a prominence on the surface called the *tubercle of Rolando;* G and C are the *funiculi gracilis* and *cuneatus* respectively, the continuations upwards of the columns of Goll and Burdach.

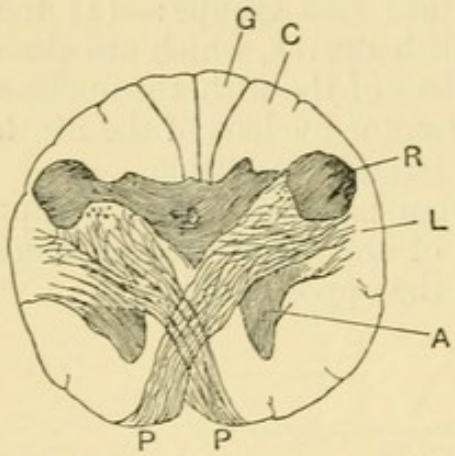


FIG. 461.—Section through the bulb at the level of the decussation of the pyramids. G, funiculus gracilis, continuation of column of Goll; C, funiculus cuneatus, continuation of column of Burdach; R, substantia gelatinosa of Rolando, continuation of posterior horn of spinal cord; L, continuation of lateral column of cord; A, remains of part of the anterior horn, separated from the rest of the grey matter by the pyramidal fibres P, which are crossing from the pyramid of the medulla to the posterior part of the lateral column of the opposite side of the cord. (After L. Clarke.)

Many of the fibres of the pyramidal tract terminate in the mid-brain and pons, hence this tract is reduced in size when it reaches the bulb. The pyramidal fibres on their long journey give off collaterals to the cortex cerebri, the basal ganglia of the cerebrum, the substantia nigra of the mid-brain, the nuclei pontis of the pons, and lower down in the cord to the base of its posterior horn. They, however, do not give off collaterals to the motor nuclei of the cranial nerves on their passage through the bulb (Schäfer). The only collaterals given off in this region are a few to the olivary nuclei.

Second section (fig. 462).—This is taken through the upper part of the decussation. Beginning in the middle line at the top of the diagram, we see first the posterior median fissure (*p.m.f.*), below which is the grey matter enclosing the central canal (*c.c.*), and containing the nuclei of the eleventh and twelfth nerves; the funiculus gracilis (*f.g.*) comes next, and then the funiculus cuneatus (*f.c.*); these two funiculi have now grey matter in their interior: these masses of grey matter are called respectively *nucleus gracilis* (*n.g.*) and *nucleus cuneatus* (*n.c.*); the fibres which have ascended the posterior columns of the cord terminate by arborising around the cells of this grey matter; the fibres from the lower part of the body end in the nucleus gracilis, and those from the upper part of the body in the

nucleus cuneatus. These nuclei form a most important position of relay in the course of the afferent fibres from cord to brain. The new fibres (the second relay of the sensory spinal path) arising from the cells of these nuclei pass in a number of different directions, and

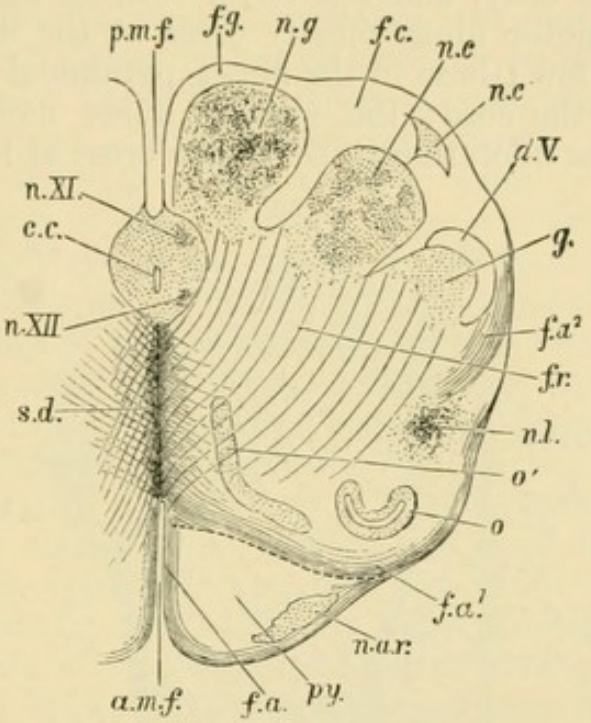


FIG. 462.—Transverse section of the medulla oblongata in the region of the superior decussation. *a.m.f.*, anterior median fissure; *f.a.*, superficial arcuate fibres; *py.*, pyramid; *n.a.r.*, nuclei of arcuate fibres; *f.a*¹, deep arcuate fibres becoming superficial; *o*, *o'*, lower end of olivary nucleus; *n.l.*, nucleus lateralis; *f.r.*, formatio reticularis; *f.a*², arcuate fibres proceeding from the formatio reticularis; *g*, substantia gelatinosa of Rolando; *d.V.*, descending root of fifth nerve; *f.c.*, funiculus cuneatus; *n.c.*, nucleus cuneatus; *n.c.'*, external cuneate nucleus; *n.g.*, nucleus gracilis; *f.g.*, funiculus gracilis; *p.m.f.*, posterior median fissure; *c.c.*, central canal surrounded by grey matter, in which are *n.XI.*, nucleus of the eleventh and *n.XII.*, nucleus of the twelfth nerve; *s.d.*, superior decussation (decussation of fillet). (Modified from Schwalbe.)

break up the rest of the grey matter into what is called the *formatio reticularis.*

The nucleus gracilis and nucleus cuneatus are often spoken of as the *posterior column nuclei;* they do not receive all the ascending branches of the posterior root fibres, for a number of these branches have already entered the grey matter and arborised amongst its cells in the spinal cord itself. The cells of the posterior column nuclei are of moderate size, and their axons pass as *internal arcuate fibres* into the reticular formation between the two olivary bodies, which is known as the *inter-olivary layer.* They cross the median raphe dorsal to the pyramids, and then turn upwards towards the upper parts of the brain, and so constitute what is known as the *fillet.* In the higher parts of the bulb and pons, this tract is reinforced by fibres from the cells of the sensory nuclei of the cranial nerves. The fillet becomes a longitudinal bundle, which passes upwards to

various parts of the cerebrum, but the sensory impulses go through one or more cell-stations (positions of relay) before they ultimately arrive at the cortex. We now see that the brain has a crossed relationship to the body, the left half of the brain governing the right half of the body, and *vice versâ*, both as regards motion and sensation; the motor fibres mostly cross at the decussation of the pyramids, some few (those in the direct pyramidal tract) crossing at lower levels in the cord; the sensory fibres mostly cross at the decussation of the fillet, though some few cross at lower levels in the

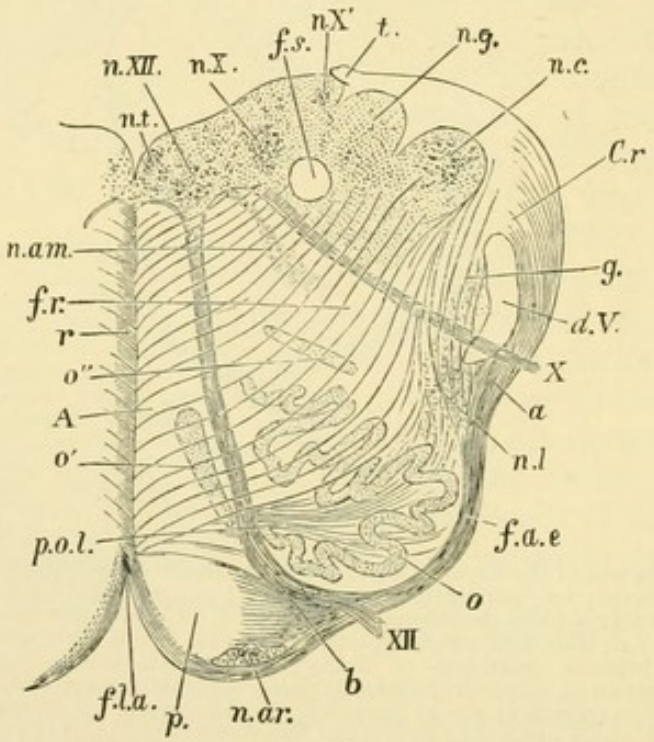


FIG. 463.—Section of the medulla oblongata at about the middle of the olivary body. *f.l.a.*, anterior median fissure; *n.ar.*, nucleus arcuatus; *p*, pyramid; *XII.*, bundle of hypoglossal nerve emerging from the surface; at *b*, it is seen coursing between the pyramid and the olivary nucleus, *o*; *f.a.e.*, external arcuate fibres; *n.l.*, nucleus lateralis; *a.*, arcuate fibres passing towards restiform body, partly through the substantia gelatinosa, *g.*, partly superficial to the descending root of the fifth nerve, *d.V.*; *X.*, bundle of vagus root emerging; *f.r.*, formatio reticularis; *C.r.*, corpus restiforme, beginning to be formed, chiefly by arcuate fibres, superficial and deep; *n.c.*, nucleus cuneatus; *n.g.*, nucleus gracilis; *t*, attachment of the ligula; *f.s.*, funiculus solitarius; *n.X.*, *n.X.'*, two parts of the vagus nucleus; *n.XII.*, hypoglossal nucleus; *n.t.*, nucleus of the funiculus teres; *n.am.*, nucleus ambiguus; *r.*, raphe; *A.*, continuation of the anterior column of cord; *o'*, *o''*, accessory olivary nucleus; *p.o.l.*, pedunculus olivæ. (Modified from Schwalbe.)

cord, soon after their entrance into the cord by the posterior nerve-roots.

Other points to be noticed in the section are the substantia gelatinosa of Rolando (*g*) (representing the tip of the posterior cornu of the cord), now separated from the surface by the descending root of the fifth nerve (*d. V.*); the lateral nucleus (*n l*) (remains of the anterior cornu of the cord); the lower part of the grey matter of the olivary body (*o*, *o'*), and most anteriorly the *pyramid* (*py*).

Third section.—This (fig. 463) is taken at about the middle of the olivary body, and passes also through the lower part of the floor

of the fourth ventricle. The central canal has now opened out into the fourth ventricle, and the grey matter on its floor contains the nuclei of the twelfth and tenth nerves; bundles of the fibres of these nerves course through the substance of the bulb, leaving it at the places indicated in the diagram.

The nucleus gracilis, nucleus cuneatus, are pushed into a more lateral position, and higher up are replaced by small masses of grey matter mingled with nerve-fibres (*nucleus posterior*); the *restiform body* (*C.r.*) now forms a well-marked prominence, and the olivary body is well seen with its *dentate nucleus;* from the open mouth of this corrugated layer of grey matter a large number of fibres issue, and passing through the raphe, course as internal arcuate fibres to the opposite restiform body, and thus to the cerebellum; some pass to the restiform body of the same side; the continuation of the direct cerebellar tract of the cord also passes into the restiform body. Its fibres terminate by arborisations round Purkinje's cells in the *vermis* of the cerebellum. The continuation of the tract of Gowers lies just dorsal to the olivary body. The *funiculus solitarius* and *nucleus ambiguus*, also seen in this section, will be considered in our account of the origin of the ninth and tenth cranial nerves.

Fourth section (fig. 464).—This is taken through the middle of the pons, and shows much the same kind of arrangement as in the upper part of the bulb. The general appearance of the section is, however, modified by a number of transversely coursing bundles of fibres, most of which are passing from the cerebellar hemispheres to the raphe, and form the middle cerebellar peduncles. Intermingled with these is a considerable amount of grey matter (*nuclei pontis*).

From the cells of the nuclei pontis, many of the fibres of the middle peduncle take origin, and many fibres and collaterals of the pyramidal tract arborise around them. The continuation of the pyramids (*py*) is embedded between these transverse bundles. The pyramidal fibres which terminate in the pons are situated postero-laterally, and are spoken of as *cortico-pontine* in contradistinction with those of the pyramidal tract proper (*cortico-spinal*) which pass down through the bulb to the cord.

The pyramidal bundles are separated from the reticular formation by deeper transverse fibres, which constitute what is known as the *trapezium* (*t*). These fibres belong to a different system, and form part of the central auditory path; some of them connect the auditory nuclei of the two sides together. The larger olivary nucleus is no longer seen, but one or two small collections of grey matter (*o.s.*) represent it and constitute the *superior olivary nucleus.* These as well as a collection of nerve-cells in the trapezium (*nucleus of the trapezium*) are connected with fibres of the trapezium, while some of their axons pass into the adjacent lateral part of the fillet.

The *nucleus of Deiters* (*n. VIII*, fig. 464) begins to appear in the upper part of the bulb, and extends into the pons; it lies near the floor of the ventricle, a little mesial to the restiform body. The nerve-fibres connected with its cells pass towards the middle line, and enter the *posterior longitudinal bundle*, which is more clearly seen

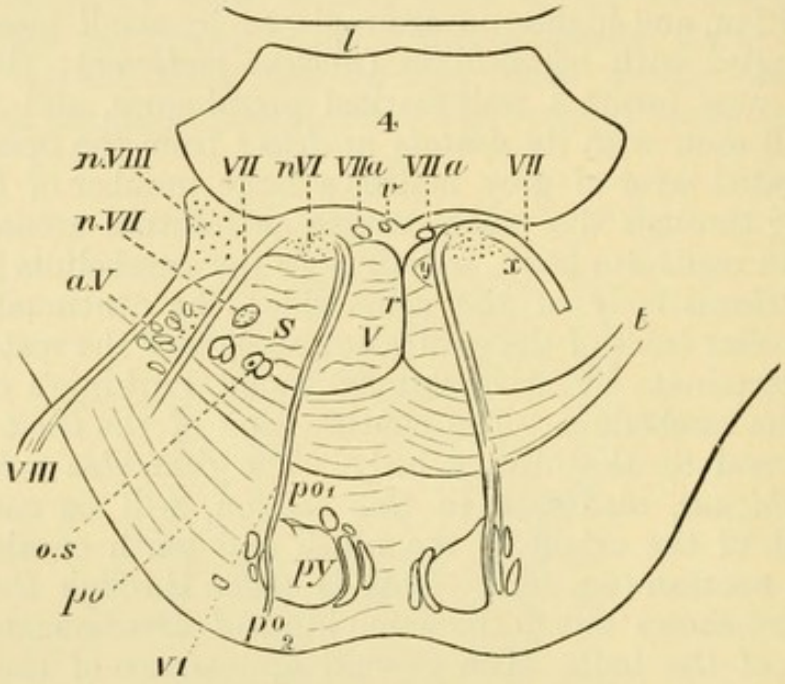


FIG. 464.—Section across the pons, about the middle of the fourth ventricle. *py.*, pyramidal bundles; *po.*, transverse fibres passing po_1 behind, and po_2, in front of *py*; *r.*, raphe; *o.s.*, superior olive; *a.V.*, bundles of motor root of *V.* nerve enclosed in a prolongation of the substance of Rolando; *t*, trapezium; *VI.*, the sixth nerve, *n.VI.*, its nucleus; *VII.*, facial nerve; *VII. a.*, intermediate portion, *n.VII.*, its nucleus; *VIII.*, auditory nerve, *n.VIII.*, Deiters' nucleus formerly called the lateral nucleus of the auditory. (After Quain.)

in the two next sections (fig. 465). This bundle of fibres connects Deiters' nucleus, the nucleus of the third and sixth nerves, and the anterior horn cells of the spinal cord. The fibres which pass into it from Deiters' nucleus bifurcate, one branch passing upwards to arborise around the cells mainly of the oculo-motor nucleus of the opposite side; the other extends downwards through the bulb into the cord, where they are found in the antero-lateral descending tract of each side. They end by synapses around the anterior horn cells.

This bundle receives in addition to the fibres from Deiters' nucleus, other fibres from the sensory nucleus of the fifth nerve, and from large cells in the reticular formation of mid-brain, pons, and bulb.

The nerves which are connected with the grey matter of this region of the pons are the sixth, seventh, and eighth, as shown in the diagram. The nuclei in connection with the fifth nerve are higher up, where the floor of the ventricle is again narrowing. At last, in the region of the mid-brain, we once more get a canal (Sylvian aqueduct) which corresponds to the central canal of the spinal cord.

Fifth and Sixth sections are taken through the mid-brain, and are drawn on a smaller scale than the others we have been examining; they represent the actual size of the sections obtained from the human subject.

Near the middle is the *Sylvian aqueduct*, with its lining of ciliated epithelium. In the grey matter which surrounds it are large nerve-cells from which the fourth nerve, and higher up the third nerve, originate; the fibres of the third nerve are seen issuing from these in fig. 465, B., III. The reticular formation of the pons is continued up into the mid-brain, and is called the *tegmentum*. It is composed of both longitudinal and transverse bundles of fibres intermingled with

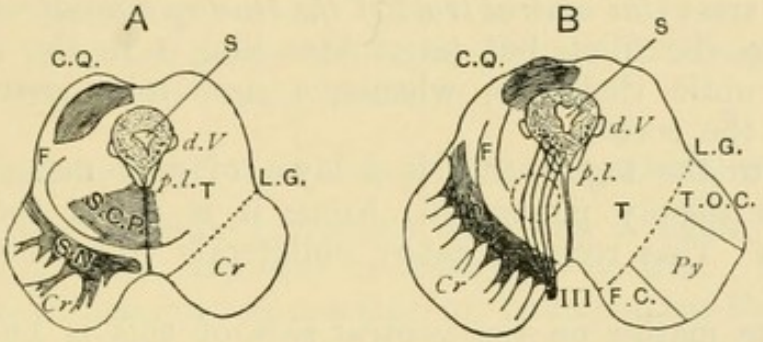


FIG. 465.—Outline of two sections across the mid-brain: A, through the middle of the inferior; B, through the middle of the superior corpora quadrigemina, C.Q. *Cr.*, crusta; S.N., substantia nigra —shown only on one side; T, tegmentum; S, Sylvian aqueduct, with its surrounding grey matter; L.G., lateral groove; *p.l.*, posterior longitudinal bundle; *d.V.*, descending root of the fifth nerve; S.C.P., superior cerebellar peduncle; F, fillet; III., third nerve. The dotted circle in B represents the situation of the tegmental nucleus. In B the three divisions of the crusta are indicated on one side. The pyramidal fibres (*Py*) are in the middle, and the fronto-cerebellar (F.C.) and temporo-occipital cerebellar (T.O.C.) at the sides. (After Schäfer.)

grey matter. Its transverse fibres include those of the superior peduncles of the cerebellum which decussate in the middle line (fig. 465, A., S.C.P.). These originate from the cells of the dentate nucleus of the cerebellum; after decussation they bifurcate, the ascending branches being lost in the collection of nerve-cells in the tegmentum known as the *tegmental* or *red nucleus*, while the descending branches turn downwards in the reticular formation. The axons from the cells of the red nucleus run downwards and form Monakow's bundle, or the prepyramidal tract which we have already seen in the spinal cord.

Another important longitudinal bundle in the tegmentum is the fillet. This, we have seen, is the longitudinal continuation of the internal arcuate fibres, which, starting from the cells of the posterior column nuclei of the opposite side, form the second relay on the sensory path; to these fibres others are added which originate from other masses of grey matter in bulb and pons. In the mid-brain the fillet splits into three bundles, termed the *lateral*, the *upper*, and the *mesial fillet*.

(1) *The lateral fillet* is chiefly formed by fibres derived from the accessory auditory, the inferior olivary, and trapezoid nuclei of the opposite side. Some of its fibres terminate by synapses around a new collection of cells (the *lateral fillet*

nucleus); their axons pass inwards towards the raphe. The rest of its fibres can be traced to the grey matter of the inferior corpora quadrigemina.

(2) *The upper fillet* consists of fibres which go to the superior corpora quadrigemina and partly to the tegmental region of the mid-brain and optic thalamus.

(3) *The mesial fillet* goes on through the tegmentum of the crus cerebri, and its fibres terminate around the cells of the optic thalamus, and the subthalamic region. From here fresh axons forming a new relay continue the afferent impulses to the cortex of the cerebrum.

The mesial fillet is the important link in this region between the sensory *spinal* nerves and the part of the brain which is the seat of those processes we call sensations. But most of the fibres which continue the sensory path of the *cranial* nerves form another less well-defined tract (*the central tract of the sensory cranial nerves*) which lies dorsal to the fillet, but terminates like it in the subthalamic region and optic thalamus, whence a new relay carries on the impulses to the cortex.

Ventral to the tegmentum is a layer of grey matter, of which the cells are deeply pigmented; hence it is called the *substantia nigra* (S.N.). This receives many collaterals from the pyramidal bundles.

The white matter on the ventral side of this is known as the *crusta* (*Cr*) or *pes*. It is here that the pyramidal bundles are situated; these occupy its middle three-fifths (*Py*). The mesial fifth is occupied by fibres passing from the frontal region of the cerebrum to the pons, and thence, it is believed, to the cerebellum; hence they are called *fronto-cerebellar* fibres. The fibres occupying the lateral fifth are usually spoken of as *temporo-occipital cerebellar* fibres, but there is no certainty as yet regarding their origin or functions.

The *corpora quadrigemina* are formed mainly of grey matter; from each superior corpus a bundle of white fibres passes upwards and forwards to the geniculate bodies, eventually joining the optic tract of the same side. The white layer on the surface of the grey matter of the C. quadrigemina is derived from the optic tract; these fibres come from the retina, and terminate by arborising around the cells of the grey matter of the C. quadrigemina.

The cells of the grey matter of the corpora quadrigemina differ greatly in form and size; the destination of their axons is not precisely known, but some pass ventralwards, cross at the raphe, and constitute the *fountain decussation of Meynert;* after decussation they form the main mass of the *ventral longitudinal bundle;* this gives off collaterals to the nuclei of the three nerves that supply the eye muscles, and then runs ventro-laterally to the posterior longitudinal bundle, with which its fibres ultimately mix in the antero-lateral descending tract of the spinal cord.

Seventh section.—This is through the crus. It is made up of *crusta* (which contains the motor fibres), *tegmentum* (which contains

the sensory fibres, especially the bundle called the mesial fillet), and the *substantia nigra*, the grey matter which separates them.

The destination of one of the spinal cord tracts we have not yet mentioned; this is the tract of Gowers. This is continued up through the ventral part of the pons lateral to the pyramidal bundles; when it reaches the superior cerebellar peduncles the main part of the tract takes a sharp backward turn and enters the middle lobe or *vermis* of the cerebellum by the superior peduncle and superior medullary velum. Some of the fibres of the tract are continued, however, into the corpora quadrigemina, and some to the optic thalamus.

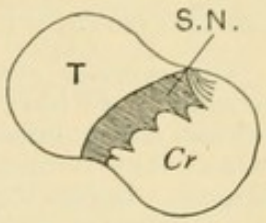


FIG. 466.—Section through crus of cerebrum. *Cr*, crusta; S.N., substantia nigra; T, tegmentum.

The Tracts of the Bulb, Pons, and Mid-Brain.

In the preceding description we have had occasion to mention the main tracts which are seen in transverse section. It will now be convenient to summarise matters by enumerating them again as well as certain others which are of less importance, or concerning which we know less. The tracts may be divided into two main groups, those which are descending and those which are ascending.

Descending tracts.—The principal descending tract is (*a*) the *pyramidal tract.* This has already been sufficiently described, so also have (*b*) the *posterior* and (*c*) the *ventral longitudinal bundles.* The remaining tracts are:—

(*d*) *Monakow's bundle.*—These fibres start from the cells of the red nucleus, cross the raphe in Forel's fountain decussation; they eventually pass into the lateral column of the cord as the prepyramidal tract.

(*e*) *The ponto-spinal lateral tract* starts from the large cells of the formatio reticularis, and runs down the lateral portion of this formation through the pons and bulb. In the spinal cord the fibres, mixed with many others of different origin, lie in the lateral column between the grey matter and the tracts of Gowers and Monakow. They pass like the fibres of the posterior and ventral longitudinal bundles into the grey matter of the anterior cornu.

(*f*) *The vestibulo-spinal tract fibres* are similar in origin to those of the posterior longitudinal bundle; its fibres lie mixed with those of the two last-mentioned tracts, and their destination is the grey matter of the anterior horn.

(*g*) *The central tract of the tegmentum;* this is a distinct bundle which lies in the middle of the reticular formation, but its origin and destination are both unknown.

(*h*) Other longitudinal fibres of the tegmentum are (1) the *fasciculus retroflexus*, which passes obliquely from the ganglion of the habenula (a collection of cells near the middle of the optic thalamus) to the interpeduncular ganglion of the opposite side (a collection of cells just where the peduncles diverge from the transverse fibres of the pons); (2) *Von Gudden's bundle*, which runs from the corpora mammillaria to end in the tegmentum; these fibres decussate, and their intercrossing together with that of Monakow's bundle constitutes the fountain decussation of Forel.

Ascending Tracts.—The most important of these are—(*a*) the tract of the *fillet,* and (*b*), the *central tract of the cranial sensory nerves.*

We must also remember the fibres that connect the cord to the cerebellum ((*c*) *dorsal and* (*d*) *ventral cerebellar tracts*), and (*e*) the fibres that pass into the *restiform body* (inferior cerebellar peduncle) from the olivary body.

The *superior cerebellar peduncles* originate from the dentate nucleus of the cerebellum; we have already seen them converging to the middle line as they pass upwards, and decussating in the mid-brain at the level of the posterior C. quadrigemina; they terminate in the red nucleus of the tegmentum and in the optic thalamus. Before they cross they give off branches which Cajal describes as forming a *descending cerebellar bundle*, which gives off collaterals to the motor nuclei of cranial and spinal nerves.

Origins and Functions of the Cranial Nerves.

Having now studied the internal construction of these parts, we can take up more fully the origins and functions of the cranial nerves which originate there. The olfactory nerve is connected to the cerebrum, and will be considered with the sense of smell. The optic nerve will be studied with vision, though it is, as we have seen, immediately connected with the mid-brain.

The third, fourth, and sixth nerves are wholly motor, and supply the muscles of the eye. Gaskell discovered among the rootlets of the third and fourth nerves the vestiges of a degenerated and functionless ganglion, which indicates the previous existence of a sensory portion of these nerves.

The **third** nerve (*motor oculi*) arises in a group of nerve-cells in the grey matter on the side of the Sylvian aqueduct underneath the superior corpus quadrigeminum, and close to the middle line. The anterior part of this nucleus is composed of small cells from which small nerve-fibres originate for the ciliary muscle and sphincter of the iris (intrinsic muscles of the eyeball). These fibres correspond to the visceral fibres of a spinal nerve, and, like them, have a cell station, namely, in the ciliary ganglion. The posterior part of the nucleus is composed of larger cells, and these give rise to larger fibres which supply the following extrinsic eye-muscles:—superior rectus, inferior rectus, internal rectus, inferior oblique and levator palpebræ.

The **fourth** nerve (*trochlear*) takes origin from the grey matter immediately below the centre of the third, but slightly more lateral in position. It is underneath the inferior corpus quadrigeminum. It supplies the superior oblique muscle of the opposite eyeball.

The **sixth** nerve (*abducens*) arises from a centre beneath the eminentia teres in the upper part of the floor of the fourth ventricle near the middle line. It supplies the external rectus.

It is obviously necessary that the eye-muscles should work together harmoniously, that the two eyeballs should also be moved simultaneously and in corresponding directions, and that such movements should take place in accordance with the necessities of vision.

This is provided for in the shape of association fibres which link the centres of the eye-muscles together. The principal association tracts are the posterior longitudinal bundle, which connects the nuclei of the third and sixth nerves, and the ventral longitudinal bundle which unites the optic nerves through the intermediation of the cells of the C. quadrigemina, with the nuclei of all these nerves. It should also be remembered that all the fibres of the fourth, and some of those of the third nerve decussate, in the middle line.

The **fifth** nerve (*trigeminal*) is a mixed nerve; it leaves the side of the pons in a smaller motor, and a larger sensory division. The former supplies the muscles of mastication, the tensors of the palate and tympanum, the mylo-hyoid, and the anterior belly of the digastric; the sensory division has upon it a ganglion called the Gasserian ganglion; it is the great sensory nerve of the face and head. The motor fibres arise from the motor nucleus (V*m*, fig. 459), which lies at the lateral edge of the upper part of the floor of the fourth ventricle, but a certain number of its fibres arise from cells in the lower part of the mid-brain and upper part of the pons; this long stretch of nerve-cells, indicated by the long blue tail in the diagram, is called the *accessory* or *superior motor nucleus* of the fifth. The sensory fibres arise from the cells of the Gasserian ganglion, which resemble in structure those of a spinal ganglion; one branch of each passes to the periphery in the skin of the head and face, and the other grows centralwards; on reaching the pons these bifurcate, the ascending branches arborise around the *principal sensory nucleus of the fifth* (V*d*, fig. 459), which lies just lateral to the motor nucleus, while the descending branches pass down into the bulb, where they form the descending root of the fifth, and some reach as far down in the spinal cord as the second cervical nerve. Mingled with these descending fibres are numerous nerve-cells, many of which are grouped in clusters (islands of Calleja), and the descending fibres form synapses around them. The new axons arising from the cells of the sensory nuclei pass upwards in three principal tracts:—(1) The greater number cross the raphe and join the mesial fillet; (2) some ascend the fillet of the same side; and (3) others pass into a special ascending bundle which lies near the ventricular floor (the central tract of the cranial sensory nerves).

The **seventh** nerve (*facial*) is the great motor nerve of the face muscles. It also supplies the platysma, the stapedius, stylo-hyoid, and posterior belly of the digastric. When it is paralysed, the muscles of the face being all powerless, the countenance acquires on the paralysed side a characteristic, vacant look, from the absence of all expression: the angle of the mouth is lower, and the paralysed half of the mouth looks longer than that on the other side; the eye has an unmeaning stare, owing to the paralysis of the orbicularis palpe-

brarum. All these peculiarities are exaggerated when at any time the muscles of the opposite side of the face are made active in any expression, or in any of their ordinary functions. In an attempt to blow or whistle, one side of the mouth and cheeks acts properly, but the other side is motionless, or flaps loosely at the impulse of the expired air; so, in trying to suck, one side only of the mouth acts; in feeding, on account of paralysis of the buccinator muscle, food lodges between the cheek and gums.

The motor fibres originate from a nucleus in the ventricular floor below that of the fifth and to the outer side of that of the sixth nerve. As they curve over the nucleus of the sixth, they give off a bundle of fine fibres which cross the raphe, but their destination is unknown. The facial nucleus receives collaterals from the sensory tracts in the reticular formation.

The seventh nerve, however, is not wholly motor. The geniculate ganglion on it is of spinal type; the fibres which arise from it pass centrally into the *pars intermedia* of Wrisberg, which enters the pons between the seventh and eighth nerves; these, like other sensory fibres, divide into ascending and descending branches; the latter have been traced down to the sensory nucleus of the glosso-pharyngeal nerve. The peripheral branches of the geniculate ganglion cells pass into the large superficial petrosal and chorda tympani, the gustatory fibres of which they probably furnish. The secretory fibres of the chorda tympani are efferent fibres which reach it from the facial nucleus *viâ* the pars intermedia.

The **eighth** nerve (*auditory*) runs into the hinder margin of the pons by two roots. One winds round the restiform body dorsal to it, and is known as the *dorsal* or *cochlear* division; the other passes ventro-mesially on the other side of the restiform body, and is known as the *ventral* or *vestibular* division.

We will take these two parts separately. The fibres of the cochlear nerve take origin from the bipolar nerve-cells of the spiral ganglion of the cochlea; the peripheral axons ramify among the hair cells of the organ of Corti, and the central axons pass towards the pons; as they enter they bifurcate, and some pass to and arborise around a collection of nerve-cells situated between the two roots and the restiform body, called the *accessory auditory nucleus;* the remaining fibres terminate similarly in a collection of cells in the grey matter overlying the restiform body, and extending into the ventricular floor in its widest part. This is called the ganglion of the root, and the mass of grey matter is termed the *acoustic tubercle.* The auditory path is continued by new axons that arise from these cells. Those from the accessory nucleus enter the trapezium, and pass in it partly to the superior olive and trapezoid nucleus of the same side, but mainly to the corresponding nuclei of the opposite side; some fibres

end here, others traverse the nuclei, and merely give off collaterals to them; they then turn upwards in the lateral fillet, and so reach the inferior C. quadrigemina. The fibres which arise in the acoustic tubercle pass superficially over the floor of the ventricle, forming the *striæ acousticæ;* having crossed the raphe, they join the fibres from the accessory nucleus in their course to the superior olive and fillet. Here again, however, a few fibres pass to the fillet of the same side.

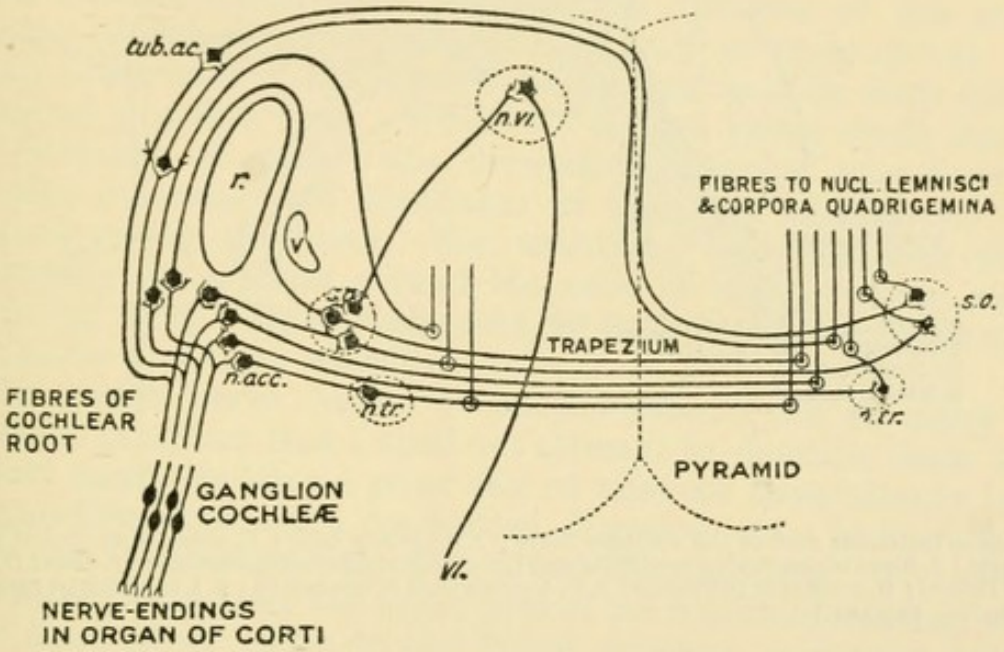


FIG. 467.—Cochlear root of the auditory nerve. *r*, restiform body; *V*, descending root of the fifth nerve; *tub. ac.*, acoustic tubercle; *n. acc.*, accessory nucleus; *s.o.*, superior olive; *n.tr.*, trapezoid nucleus; *n.VI.*, nucleus of the sixth nerve; *VI.*, issuing fibre of sixth nerve. (Schafer.)

The vestibular nerve arises from the bipolar cells of the *ganglion of Scarpa* in the internal ear. The peripheral axons ramify among the hair cells of the epithelium in the utricle, saccule, and semicircular canals. The central axons enter a collection of small nerve-cells between the restiform body and the descending root of the fifth; this is termed the *principal nucleus;* here they bifurcate; the descending branches run towards the lower part of the bulb, and arborise around the cells of the neighbouring grey matter (descending vestibular nucleus). The ascending branches pass upwards in the restiform body to the cerebellum, in their course giving off many collaterals which form synapses with the large cells of two nuclei near the outer angle of the ventricular floor, and known as the *nucleus of Deiters* and *nucleus of Bechterew* respectively. The fibres which arise from Deiters' nucleus pass into the posterior longitudinal bundles of both sides (see p. 648); those which start in *Bechterew's nucleus* become longitudinal, but their destination is uncertain.

The accompanying diagrams (figs. 467 and 468) will serve to render these complex relationships clearer.

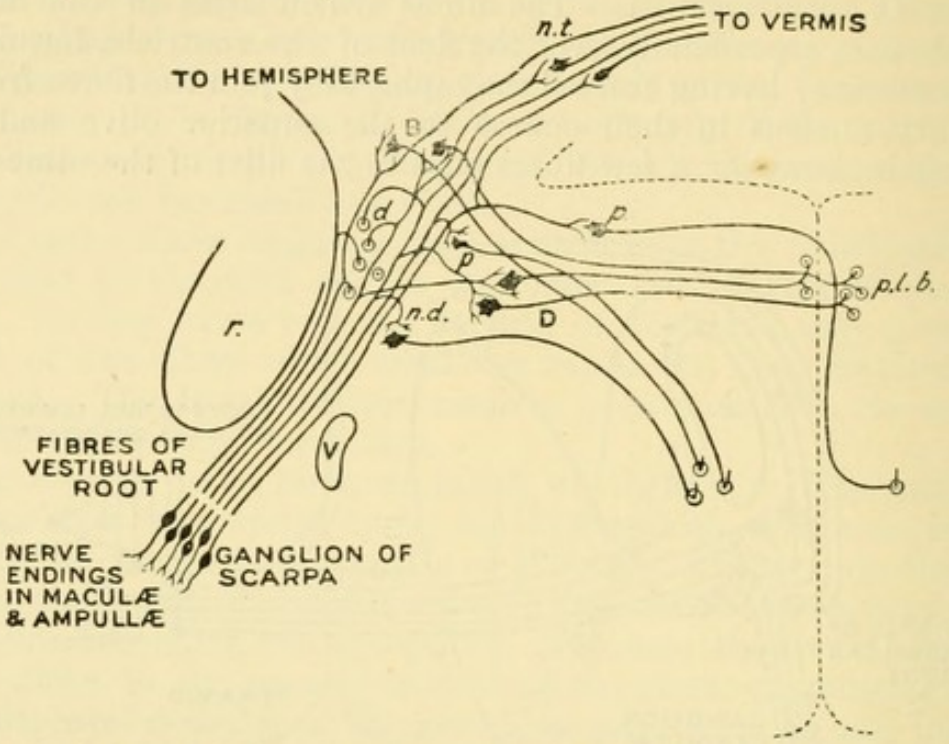


FIG. 468.—Vestibular root of the auditory nerve; *r*, restiform body; *V*, descending root of the fifth nerve; *d*, fibres of descending vestibular root; *n. d.*, cell of descending vestibular nucleus; *D*, nucleus of Deiters; B, nucleus of Bechterew: *n. t.*, nucleus tecti of cerebellum: *p. l. b.*, posterior longitudinal bundle. (Schäfer.)

The **ninth** nerve (*glosso-pharyngeal*) gives filaments through its tympanic branch (Jacobsen's nerve) to the fenestra ovalis and fenestra rotunda, and the Eustachian tube, parts of the middle ear; also, to the carotid plexus, and through the great superficial petrosal nerve, to the spheno-palatine (Meckel's) ganglion. The small superficial petrosal (Jacobsen's nerve) passes to the otic ganglion, and thus controls the parotid secretion. The carotid plexus may also connect the nerve with the spheno-palatine ganglion. Connections are also made with the sympathetic plexus on the great meningeal artery by the external superficial petrosal. This is important, as another possible connecting link between the glosso-pharyngeal and the otic ganglion is thus provided. After communicating, either within or without the cranium, with the vagus, it leaves the cranium, divides into the two principal divisions indicated by its name, and supplies the mucous membrane of the posterior and lateral walls of the upper part of the pharynx, the Eustachian tube, the arches of the palate, the tonsils and their mucous membrane, and the tongue as far forwards as the foramen cæcum in the middle line, and to near the tip at the sides and inferior part.

It contains motor fibres to the stylo-pharyngeus, middle constrictor of pharynx, and crico-thyroid muscles, and probably to the

levator palati and other muscles of the palate, except the tensor, which is supplied by the fifth nerve, and the other constrictors of the pharynx, which are supplied from the nucleus ambiguus by cranial rootlets of both ninth and tenth nerves. The nerve also contains fibres concerned in common sensation, and the sense of taste, and secretory fibres for the parotid gland.

The cells from which the motor fibres originate are situated in a special nucleus, which is a continuation upwards of the *nucleus ambiguus* (the chief motor nucleus of the tenth or vagus nerve). The sensory fibres arise in the *jugular* and *petrosal* ganglia from cells of the spinal ganglion type. When the central axons reach the bulb they bifurcate as usual; the descending branches pass down the *funiculus solitarius* and terminate in synapses around the cells scattered among its fibres. The ascending branches pass almost horizontally to arborise around the cells of the *principal nucleus* (IX in fig. 459). The arrangement, in fact, is very like that of the tenth nerve now to be described.

The **tenth** nerve (*vagus* or *pneumo-gastric*) has so many and important functions that I shall not attempt to describe them here; it would mean rewriting a great deal of what we have already learnt in connection with heart, respiration, digestion, etc. It is sufficient to say that it contains both efferent and afferent fibres. The efferent fibres arise partly from the upper part of the combined nucleus, which lower down gives origin to the spinal accessory nerve (fig. 459, X) but mainly from the nucleus ambiguus, the position of which is shown in fig. 459, coloured blue, and also in transverse section in fig. 463. The afferent fibres originate from the cells of the ganglion of the trunk and of the root; they enter the bulb and bifurcate; the ascending branches are short and arborise around the cells of the principal nucleus (X in fig. 459); the descending fibres, together with similar ones derived from the glosso-pharyngeal nerve, and pars intermedia, pass down in the descending root of vagus and glosso-pharyngeal, which is also known as the *funiculus solitarius*. These fibres terminate by arborising around the cells of the grey matter that lies along its mesial border (*descending nucleus of vagus and glosso-pharyngeal*). This approaches the middle line as it descends, and finally joins that of the opposite side over the central canal (*commissural nucleus*).

The **eleventh** nerve (*spinal accessory*) is wholly efferent: it arises by two distinct origins—one from a centre in the floor of the fourth ventricle, and connected with the glosso-pharyngeal-vagus-nucleus; the other, from the outer side of the anterior cornu of the spinal cord as low down as the fourth cervical nerve. The fibres from the two origins come together at the jugular foramen, but separate again into two branches, outer and inner. The outer, consisting of large

medullated fibres from the spinal origin, supplies the trapezius and sterno-mastoid muscles. The inner branch, consisting of small medullated fibres from the medulla, supplies chiefly viscero-motor filaments to the vagus. The muscles of the larynx, all of which are supplied by branches of the vagus, derive their motor nerves from the accessory; and (which is a very significant fact) Vrolik states that in the chimpanzee the internal branch of the accessory does not join the

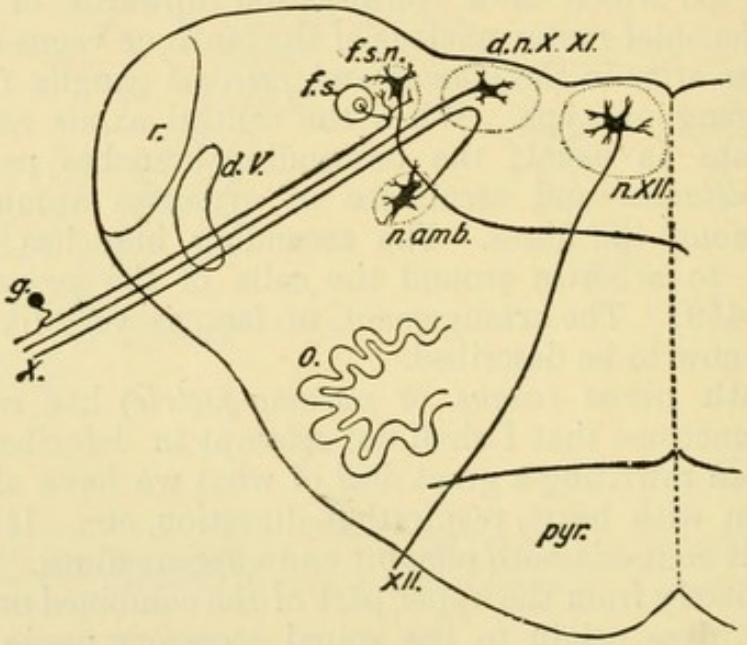


FIG. 469.—The tenth and twelfth nerves. *pyr*, pyramid; *n.XII.*, nucleus of hypoglossal; *XII.*, fibre of hypoglossal; *d.n.X.XI.*, combined nucleus of vagus and spinal accessory; *n.amb.*, nucleus ambiguus; *f.s.*, fasciculus solitarius, descending fibres of vagus and glosso-pharyngeal; *f.s.n.*, its nucleus; *X.*, motor fibre of vagus; *g*, ganglion cell in vagus trunk giving rise to a sensory fibre; *d.V.*, descending root of the fifth nerve; *r*, restiform body. (Schäfer.)

vagus at all, but goes direct to the larynx. The crico-thyroid, however, receives fibres which leave the bulb by glosso-pharyngeal rootlets.

The **twelfth** nerve (*hypoglossal*) is also entirely efferent. It arises from a large celled and long nucleus in the bulb, close to the middle line, inside the combined nucleus of the ninth, tenth, and eleventh nerves. It receives numerous collaterals from adjacent sensory tracts, and from the descending nuclei of the fifth, ninth, and tenth nerves, and from the posterior longitudinal bundle. Fibres from this nucleus run from the ventral surface through the reticular formation in a series of bundles, and emerge from a groove between the anterior pyramid and olivary body. It is the motor nerve to the muscles of the tongue (stylo-glossus, hyo-glossus, genio-hyo-glossus, and linguales). The branches of this nerve to the genio-hyoid, thyro-hyoid, sterno-thyroid, sterno-hyoid, and omo-hyoid are branches of the first, second, and third cervical nerves carried down in its sheath and slipped off at various points as descendens (hypoglossi) cervicis.

CHAPTER XLV

STRUCTURE OF THE CEREBELLUM

THE cerebellum is composed of an elongated central portion or lobe, called the vermis or vermiform process, and two hemispheres. Each hemisphere is connected with its fellow, by means of the vermiform process.

The cerebellum is composed of white and grey matter, the latter

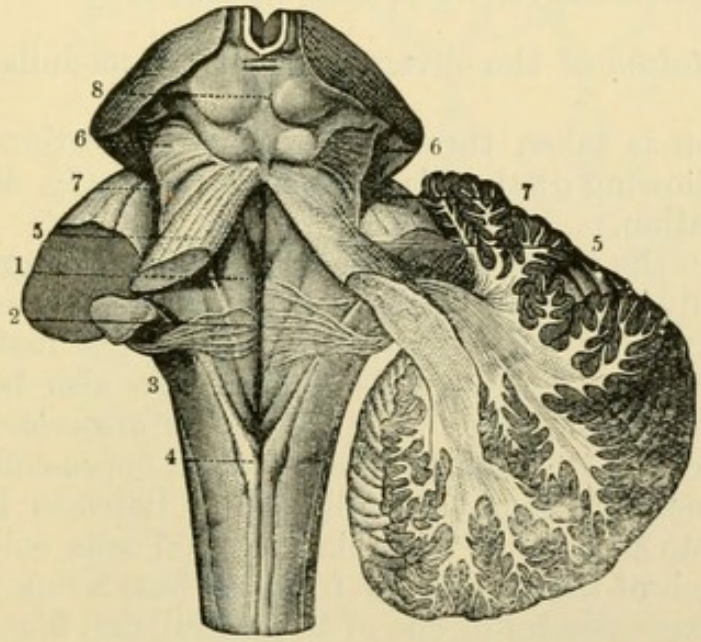


FIG. 470.—Cerebellum in section and fourth ventricle, with the neighbouring parts. 1, median groove of fourth ventricle, ending below in the *calamus scriptorius*, with the longitudinal eminences formed by the *fasciculi teretes*, one on each side; 2, the same groove, at the place where the white streaks of the auditory nerve emerge from it to cross the floor of the ventricle; 3, inferior peduncle of the cerebellum, formed by the restiform body; 4, funiculus gracilis; above this is the calamus scriptorius; 5, superior peduncle of cerebellum; 6, 6, fillet to the side of the crura cerebri; 7, 7, lateral grooves of the crura cerebri; 8, corpora quadrigemina. (From Sappey after Hirschfeld and Leveillé.)

being external, like that of the cerebrum, and like it, infolded, so that a larger area may be contained in a given space. The convolutions of the grey matter, however, are arranged after a different pattern, as shown in fig. 470. The tree-like arrangement of the white

matter has given rise to the name *arbor vitæ*. Besides the grey substance on the surface, there are, in the centre of the white substance of each hemisphere, small masses of grey matter, the largest of which, called the *corpus dentatum* (fig. 471, *cd*), resembles very closely

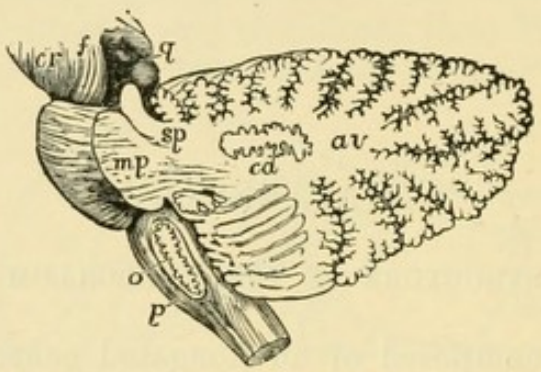


FIG. 471.—Outline sketch of a section of the cerebellum, showing the corpus dentatum. The section has been carried through the left lateral part of the pons, so as to divide the superior peduncle and pass nearly through the middle of the left cerebellar hemisphere. The olivary body has also been divided longitudinally so as to expose in section its *corpus dentatum*. *cr*, crus cerebri; *f*, fillet; *q*, corpora quadrigemina; *sp*, superior peduncle of the cerebellum divided; *mp*, middle peduncle or lateral part of the pons Varolii, with fibres passing from it into the white stem; *av*, continuation of the white stem radiating towards the arbor vitæ of the folia; *cd*, corpus dentatum; *o*, olivary body with its corpus dentatum; *p*, pyramid. (Allen Thomson.) ¾.

the *corpus dentatum* of the olivary body of the medulla oblongata in appearance.

If a section is taken through the cortical portion of the cerebellum, the following distinct layers can be seen (fig. 472) by microscopic examination.

Underneath the pia mater is the *external layer* of grey matter; it is formed chiefly of fine nerve-fibres with small nerve-cells scattered through it. Into its outer part, processes of pia mater pass vertically; these convey blood-vessels. There are also here numerous long tapering neuroglia-cells. The *internal* or *granular* layer of grey matter is made up of a large number of small nerve-cells mixed with a few larger ones, and some neuroglia-cells. Between the two layers is an incomplete stratum of large flask-shaped cells, called the *cells of Purkinje*. Each of these gives off from its base a fine process which becomes the axis-cylinder of one of the medullated fibres of the white matter; the neck of the flask passing in the opposite direction breaks up into dendrites which pass into the external layer of grey matter. By Golgi's method (fig. 473) these dendrons have been shown to spread out in planes transverse to the direction of the lamellæ of the organ.

Each cell of Purkinje is further invested by arborisations of two sets of nerve-fibres. One of these (originating from the fibres of the white matter which are not continuous as axis-cylinders from the cells of Purkinje) forms a basket-work round the dendrons; the other (originating as axis-cylinder processes from the nerve-cells of the

external layer) forms a felt-work of fibrils round the body of the cell.

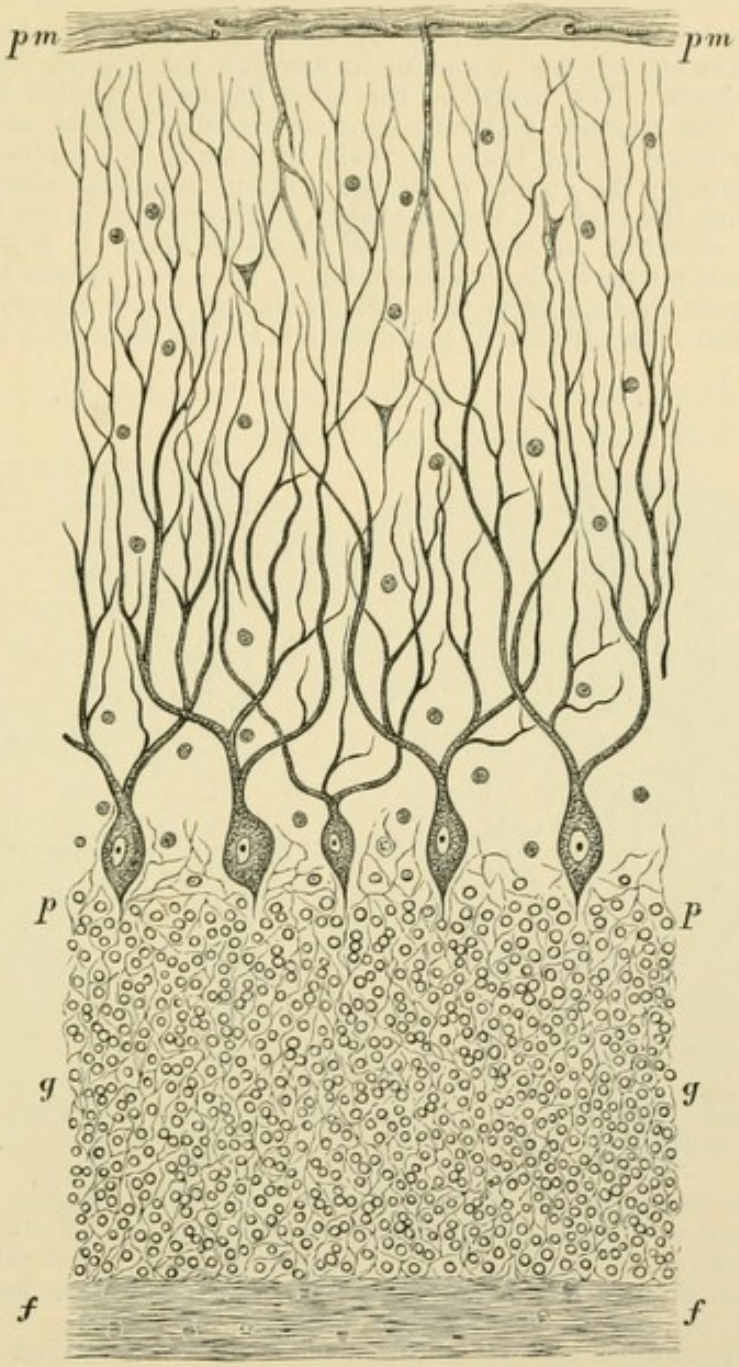


FIG. 472.—Vertical section of dog's cerebellum; *pm*, pia mater; *p*, cells of Purkinje, which are branched nerve-cells lying in a single layer and sending single processes downwards and more numerous ones upwards, which branch continuously and extend through the external "molecular layer" towards the free surface; *g*, dense (granular) layer of small nerve-cells; *f*, layer of nerve-fibres, with a few scattered nerve-cells. This last layer (*f f*) constitutes part of the *white* matter of the cerebellum, while the layers between it and the free surface are *grey* matter. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

The cells of the internal layer of grey matter are small; their dendrites intermingle with those of neighbouring cells; their axons penetrate into the external layer, but their final destination is uncertain. Ramifying among these cells are fibres characterised by

possessing bunches of short branches at intervals (moss-fibres of Cajal).

The peduncles of the cerebellum are three in number—superior, middle, and inferior; we have already had occasion to mention them in our study of the bulb, pons, and mid-brain. The course of the fibres has been studied by the degeneration method. The *superior* peduncle consists mainly of fibres which originate in the corpus dentatum; some fibres are said to arise in the cerebellar hemisphere, and to pass through the corpus dentatum without communicating with its cells. These fibres cross the raphe in the mid-brain, and terminate in the red or tegmental nucleus. The direction of the impulses in these fibres is from cerebellum to cerebrum, the red nucleus being a cell station on the road. There appear, however, to be some fibres starting from the optic thalamus which convey impulses in the opposite direction. In addition to these there is Cajal's *descending cerebellar bundle.*

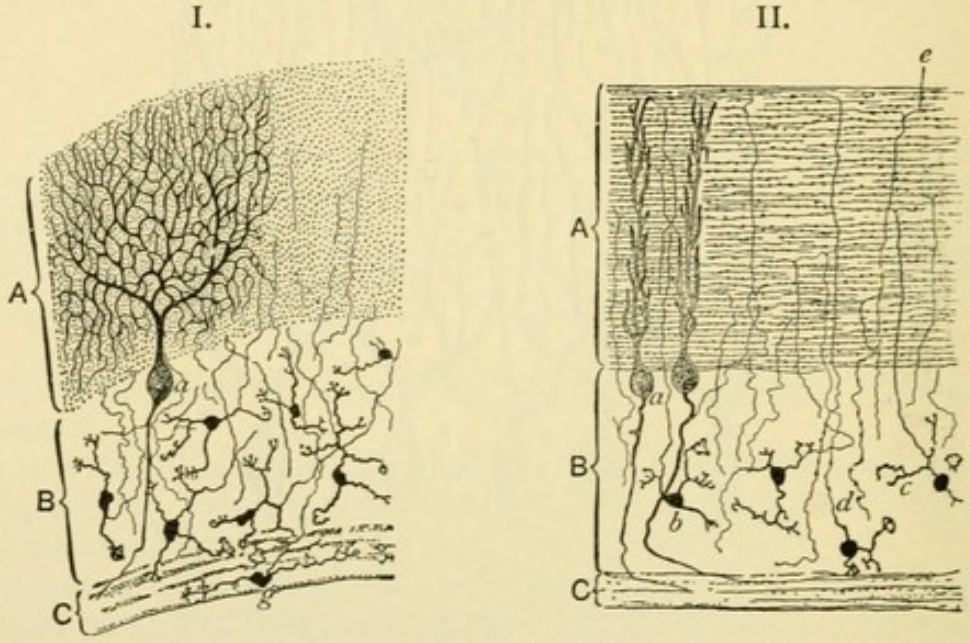


FIG. 473.—Section of cerebellar cortex, stained by Golgi's method; I. taken across the lamina; II. in the direction of the lamina; A, outer or molecular layer; B, inner or granular layer; C, white matter. *a*, Cell of Purkinje; *b*, small cells of inner layer; *c*, dendrons of these cells; *d*, axis-cylinder process of one of these cells becoming longitudinal in the outer layer; *e*, bifurcation of one of these; *g*, a similar cell lying in the white matter. (Ramon y Cajal.)

This consists of branches which are given off by the fibres before they cross at the raphe; they pass towards the bulb, giving off collaterals to the motor nucleus of the fifth nerve, to the facial nucleus, to the nucleus ambiguus, and others. One must not forget that besides all these fibres the tract of Gowers joins the superior peduncle, and runs back along its mesial border to the vermis.

The *middle* peduncle consists of fibres which form the anterior transverse fibres of the pons. They pass from the nuclei pontis to the opposite cerebellar hemisphere. Others convey impulses in the opposite direction from the hemisphere to the pons; on section, these fibres degenerate as far as the raphe, where they intermingle with those from the opposite side.

The *inferior* peduncle or restiform body is composed of ascending fibres, which pass into it from the direct cerebellar tract, from both olivary nuclei, but mainly from that of the opposite side, from the nucleus gracilis and nucleus cuneatus, and from the nuclei of the sensory roots of the cranial nerves. The fibres pass mostly to the vermis, crossing to the opposite side over the fourth ventricle, but giving off strong collaterals to the cerebellar hemisphere of the same side; these account for the fact that each cerebellar hemisphere is in principal physiological connection with the same side of the spinal cord.

CHAPTER XLVI

STRUCTURE OF THE CEREBRUM

THE cerebrum consists of two halves called *cerebral hemispheres*, separated by a deep longitudinal fissure and connected by a large

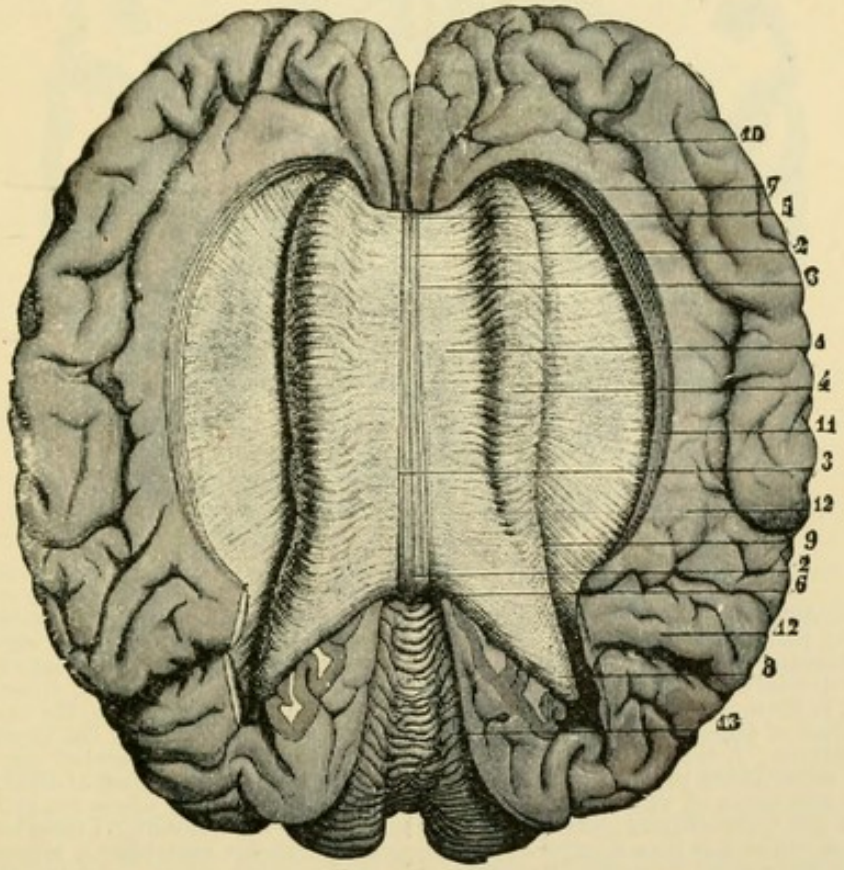


FIG. 474.—View of the Corpus Callosum from above. ½.—The upper surface of the corpus callosum has been fully exposed by separating the cerebral hemispheres and throwing them to the side; the gyrus fornicatus has been detached, and the transverse fibres of the corpus callosum traced for some distance into the cerebral medullary substance. 1, the upper surface of the corpus callosum; 2, median furrow or raphe; 3, longitudinal striæ bounding the furrow; 4, swelling formed by the transverse bands as they pass into the cerebrum; 5, anterior extremity or knee of the corpus callosum; 6, posterior extremity; 7, anterior, and 8, posterior part of the mass of fibres proceeding from the corpus callosum; 9, margin of the swelling; 10, anterior part of the convolution of the corpus callosum; 11, hem or band of union of this convolution; 12, internal convolutions of the parietal lobe; 13, upper surface of the cerebellum. (Sappey after Foville.)

band of transverse commissural fibres known as the *corpus callosum* (fig. 474). The interior of each hemisphere contains a cavity of com-

plicated shape called the *lateral ventricle;* the lateral ventricles open into the third ventricle. Fig. 475 represents a dissected brain in which the corpus callosum has been removed; the ventricles are thus exposed.

Each hemisphere is covered with grey matter, which passes down

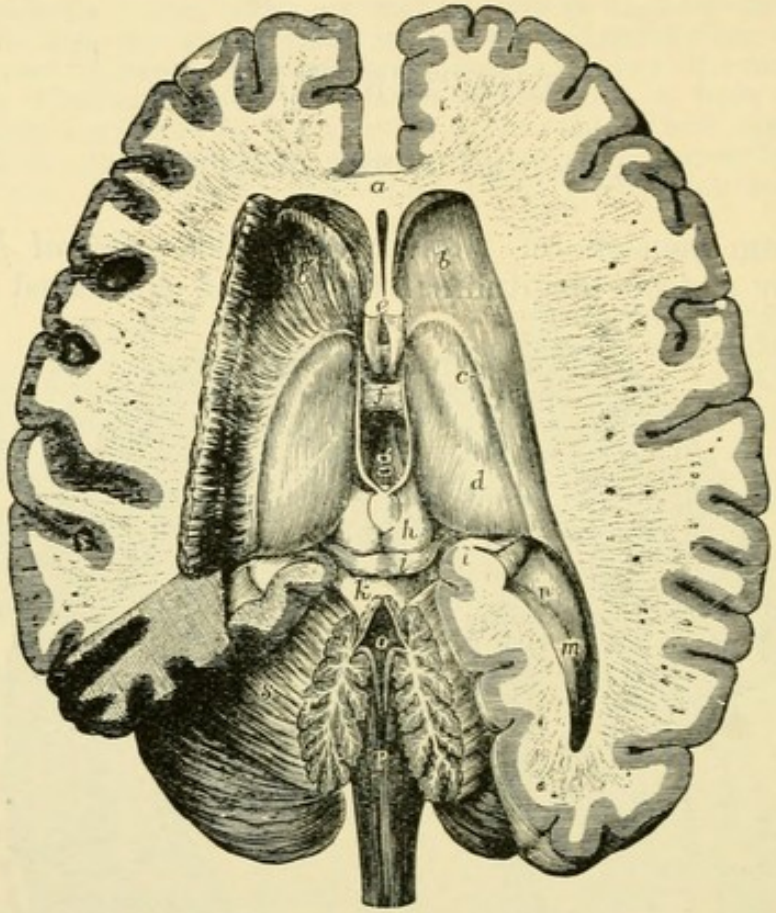


FIG. 475.—Dissection of brain, from above, exposing the lateral, fourth, and fifth ventricles with the surrounding parts. ½.—*a*, anterior part, or *genu* of corpus callosum; *b*, corpus striatum; *b'*, the corpus striatum of left side, dissected so as to expose its grey substance; *c*, points by a line to the tænia semicircularis; *d*, optic thalamus; *e*, anterior pillars of fornix divided; below they are seen descending in front of the third ventricle, and between them is seen part of the anterior commissure; in front of the letter *e* is seen the slit-like fifth ventricle, between the two laminæ of the septum lucidum; *f*, soft or middle commissure; *g* is placed in the posterior part of the third ventricle; immediately behind the latter are the posterior commissure (just visible) and the pineal gland, the two crura of which extend forwards along the inner and upper margins of the optic thalami; *h* and *i*, the corpora quadrigemina; *k*, superior crus of cerebellum; close to *k* is the valve of Vieussens, which has been divided so as to expose the fourth ventricle; *l*, hippocampus major and corpus fimbriatum, or tænia hippocampi; *m*, hippocampus minor; *n*, eminentia collateralis; *o*, fourth ventricle; *p*, posterior surface of medulla oblongata; *r*, section of cerebellum; *s*, upper part of left hemisphere of cerebellum exposed by the removal of part of the posterior cerebral lobe. (Hirschfeld and Leveillé.)

into the fissures. This surface grey matter is called the *cerebral cortex.* The amount of this grey matter varies directly with the amount of convolution of the surface. Under it white matter is situated; and at the base there are masses of grey matter; part of these *basal ganglia* are seen forming part of the wall of the ventricles. The anterior basal ganglion is called the *corpus striatum;* it is

divided into two parts called the *lenticular* or *extraventricular nucleus*, and the *caudate* or *intraventricular nucleus*. It has received the latter name because it is seen in the interior of the ventricle. The posterior basal ganglion is called the *optic thalamus*.

Passing up between the basal ganglia are the white fibres which enter the cerebral hemisphere from the crus; these constitute the *internal capsule*. This passes in front between the two subdivisions of the corpus striatum, and behind between the optic thalamus and the lenticular nucleus of the corpus striatum.

The relationship of these parts is best seen in a vertical section; such as is represented in the next diagram (fig. 476).

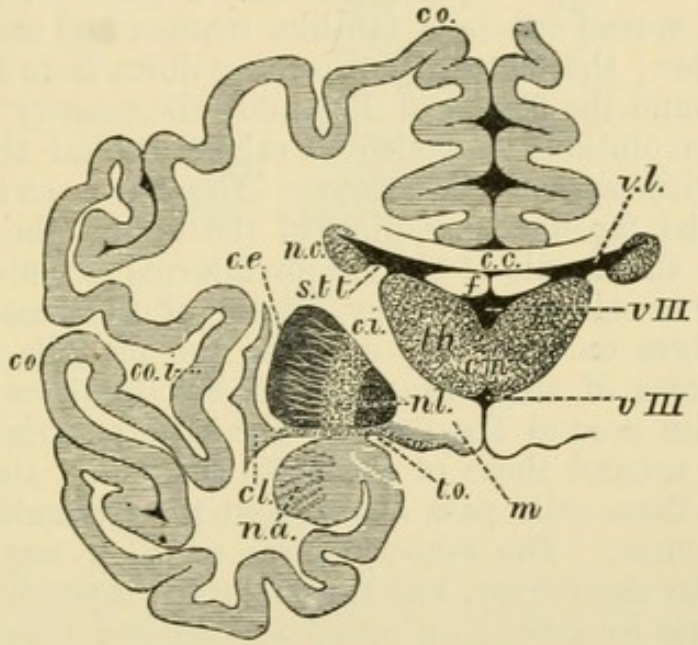


FIG. 476.—Vertical section through the cerebrum and basal ganglia to show the relations of the latter. *co.*, cerebral convolutions; *c.c.*, corpus callosum; *v.l.*, lateral ventricle; *f*, fornix; *vIII.*, third ventricle; *n.c.*, caudate nucleus; *th*, optic thalamus; *n.l.*, lenticular nucleus; *c.i.*, internal capsule; *cl.*, claustrum; *c.e.*, external capsule; *m*, corpus mammillare; *t.o.*, optic tract; *s.t.t.*, stria terminalis; *n.a.*, nucleus amygdalæ; *cm*, soft commissure; *co.i.*, Island of Reil. (Schwalbe.)

One hemisphere is seen, with portions of the other. The surface darkly shaded indicates the grey matter of the cortex, which passes down into the fissures; one very extensive set of convolutions (*co.i.*), passes deeply into the substance of the hemisphere; this is called the Island of Reil; the lowest stratum of grey matter is separated from this to form a narrow isolated strip of grey matter called the *claustrum* (*cl.*). In the middle line the great longitudinal fissure is seen extending as far as (*c.c.*) the corpus callosum, the band of white matter that forms the great commissure between the two hemispheres; beneath this are the lateral ventricles which communicate by the *foramen of Munro* with the third ventricle: *the fornix* is indicated by the letter *f*. Contributing to the floor of the lateral ventricle, one next sees the optic thalamus (*th.*), and the tail

end of the nucleus caudatus (*n.c.*); the section being taken somewhat posteriorly. The nucleus lenticularis is marked *nl.*; and the band of white fibres passing up between it and the thalamus is called the *internal capsule* (*c.i.*); the narrow piece of white matter between the claustrum and the lenticular nucleus is called the *external capsule.*

For the student of medicine the internal capsule is one of the most important parts of the brain. Into it are continued up the fibres which we have previously traced as far as the crus cerebri; the motor-fibres of the crusta are continued into the anterior two-thirds of its posterior limb (*i.e.* behind the genu * in fig. 477); the sensory fibres of the tegmentum into the posterior third of this limb. When these fibres get beyond the narrow pass between the basal ganglia, they spread out in a fan-like manner and are distributed to the grey cortex; the motor-fibres coming down from the motor convolutions around the fissure of Rolando; the sensory fibres going to the same convolutions and also to others behind these which are associated with special sensations. The name *corona radiata* is applied to the fan-like spreading of the fibres; the fibres as they pass through the handle of the fan, or internal capsule, communicate with the nerve-cells of the grey matter of the basal ganglia; the pyramidal fibres on their way down to the medulla and cord from the motor areas of the brain send off collaterals or side branches which arborise around the cells of the corpus striatum, and to a lesser degree around those of the optic thalamus; the axis-cylinder processes of these cells pass out to join the pyramidal tract on its downward course. The sensory fibres on their way up may pass straight on to the cortex, but the majority, especially those in the fillet, terminate by arborising round the cells of the optic thalamus, and in the *subthalamic area.* This, in fact, is another cell-station or position of relay: the fibres passing out from the cells of the thalamus continue the impulse on to the cortex.

The importance of the internal capsule is rendered evident when one considers the blood supply of these parts; at the *anterior and posterior perforated spots,* numerous small blood-vessels enter for the supply of the basal ganglia, and these are liable to become diseased, and if they rupture, a condition called *apoplexy* is the result; if the hæmorrhage is excessive, death may occur almost immediately; but if the patient recovers, a condition of more or less permanent paralysis remains behind; and a very large amount of paralysis results from a comparatively limited lesion, because so many fibres are congregated together in this narrow isthmus of white matter. If the hæmorrhage is in the anterior part of the posterior limb, motor paralysis of the opposite side of the body (hemiplegia) will be the most marked symptom. If the hæmorrhage occurs in the posterior part, sensory paralysis of the opposite side of the body will be the most marked

symptom. If the motor-fibres are affected, degeneration will occur in the pyramidal tract, and can be traced through the pes of the crus and mid-brain to the pyramid of the pons and bulb, and then in the crossed pyramidal tract of the opposite side and in the direct pyramidal tract of the same side of the cord.

Fig. 477 represents a horizontal view through the hemisphere. The internal capsule (*c*) at the point * makes a bend called the *genu*

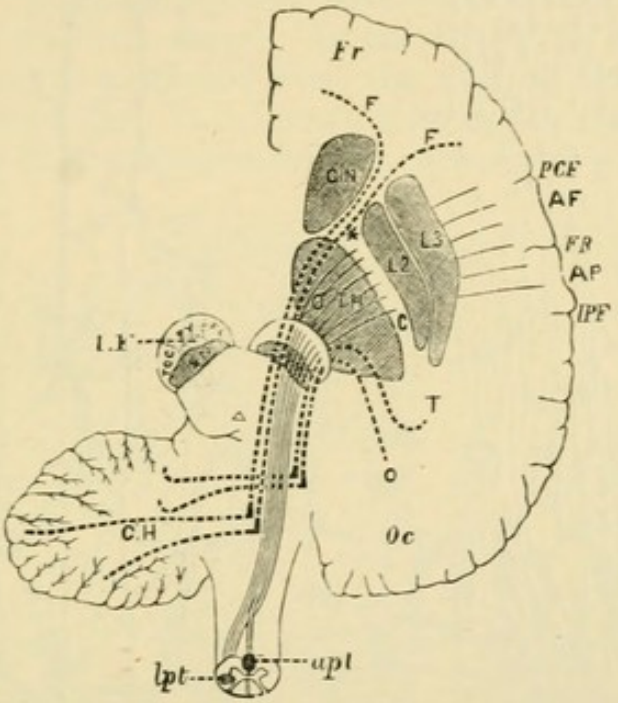


FIG. 477.—Diagram to show the connection of the Frontal and Occipital Lobes with the Cerebellum, etc. The dotted lines passing in the crusta (T.OC), outside the motor fibres, indicate the connection between the temporo-occipital lobe and the cerebellum. F.C., the fronto-cerebellar fibres, which pass anteriorly to the motor tract in the crusta; I.F., fibres from the caudate nucleus to the pons. *Fr.*, frontal lobe; *Oc.*, occipital lobe; AF., ascending frontal; AP., ascending parietal convolutions; PCF., precentral fissure in front of the ascending frontal convolution; FR., fissure of Rolando; IPF., intraparietal fissure. A section of the crus is lettered on the left side. S.N., substantia nigra; PY., pyramidal motor fibres, which on the right are shown as continuous lines converging to pass through the posterior limb of I.C., internal capsule (the knee or elbow of which is shown thus *) upwards into the hemisphere and downwards through the pons to cross at the medulla in the pyramidal decussation. *lpt*, crossed pyramidal tract; *apt*, direct pyramidal tract. (Gowers.)

or knee, behind which the motor-fibres, and more posteriorly still sensory-fibres, pass. The connection between cerebrum and the cerebellum is also indicated; one cerebral hemisphere is connected with the opposite cerebellar hemisphere by fronto-cerebellar and temporo-occipito-cerebellar fibres which pass respectively in front of and behind the pyramidal fibres in the internal capsule.

Histological Structure of the Cerebral Cortex.

The grey matter of the cortex is composed of a number of layers which are, however, not well marked off from one another. The number of these layers is variously given by different authorities

from three up to nine. The most satisfactory division appears to me to be that into three.

1. *The molecular layer.*—Most superficially is a thin stratum of

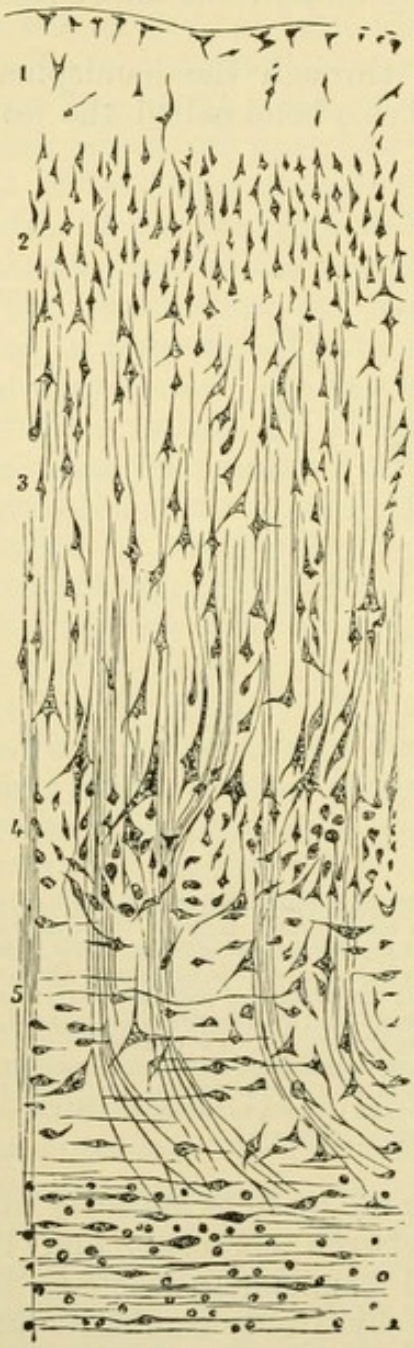


FIG. 478.—The layers of the cortical grey matter of the cerebrum. (Meynert.)

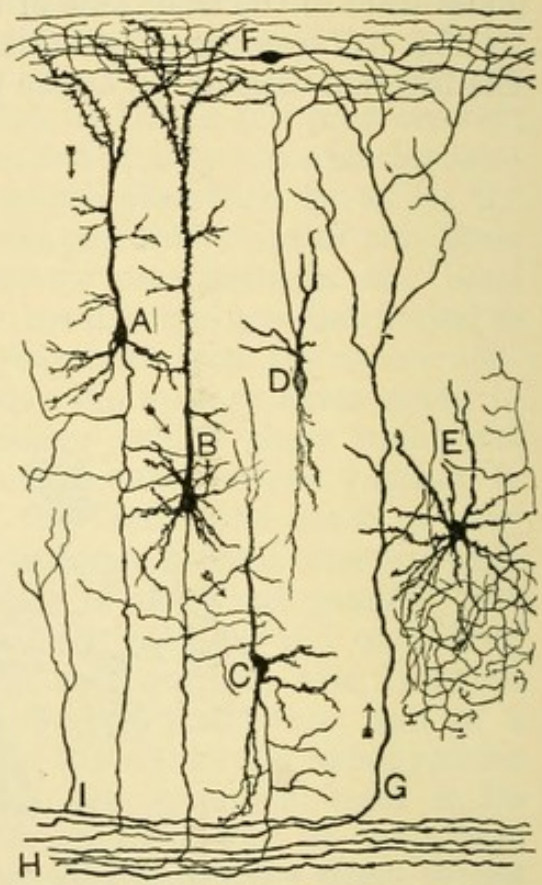


FIG. 479.—Principal types of cells in the cerebral cortex.

A, medium-sized pyramidal cell of the second layer.
B, large pyramidal cell.
C, polymorphous cell.
D, cell of which the axis-cylinder process is ascending.
E, neuroglia cell.
F, cell of the first, or molecular, layer, forming an intermediate cell-station between sensory fibres and motor cells. Notice the *tangential* direction of the nerve-fibres.
G, sensory fibre from the white matter.
H, white matter.
I, collateral of the white matter. (Ramon y Cajal.)

medullated nerve-fibres largely derived from the dendrons of the cells of the next layer. The nerve-cells (F in fig. 479) intermingled with these are branched, and have several processes which lie horizontally beneath the surface (tangential fibres). Neuroglia cells are also present.

2. *The layer of pyramids.*—There are several deep, and the largest cells are situated most deeply. Each of these has an apical process running to the surface, where the branches run tangentially. The lateral processes are also branched dendrons. The axon originates from the base. The largest pyramids (Betz cells) are found in the so-called motor cortex (Rolandic area) and give origin to the fibres of the pyramidal tract. The smaller pyramids are association units.

3. *The layer of polymorphous cells.*—There are small scattered cells, many of a fusiform shape. In the Island of Reil this layer is hypertrophied, and is separated from the rest of the grey matter by a stratum of white fibres; it is known then as the *claustrum.*

Variations in different regions of the cortex will be found described



FIG. 480.—Human cerebral cortex: Golgi's method. Low power. (Mott.)

in histological works, but the physiological meaning of these is not clear in many cases. The Golgi method has proved conspicuously useful in the study of the shapes and dispositions of the cells (see figs. 479, 480, 481). Bundles of medullated nerve-fibres pass in vertical streaks through the deeper layers of the grey matter; some of these are axis cylinder processes of the pyramidal and polymorphous cells, and are conveying impulses downwards; others conveying impulses upwards pass from the white matter into the cortex to arborise among its various cells. In addition to these fibres, other strands lie parallel to the surface of the cortex, and have received various names, such as the outer line of Baillarger in the layer of medium-sized pyramids, the inner line of Baillarger in the layer of large pyramids, and the

line of Gennari in the occipital region. There can be little or no doubt that these are association tracts linking the convolutions together.

The cells of the cortex thus give rise to the motor or efferent fibres; these pass into the white matter of the interior of the brain. Some go either directly or by collaterals, (1) to the cortex of more or less distant convolutions. These are called *Association fibres.* (2) Others pass to the corpus callosum, and so reach the cortex of the opposite hemisphere. These are called *Commissural fibres.* In each case they terminate by arborisations (synapses) around the cells of the grey matter of the cortex; while others again, especially those of the largest pyramidal cells, extend downward through the corona radiata and internal capsule, and become, (3) fibres of the pyramidal

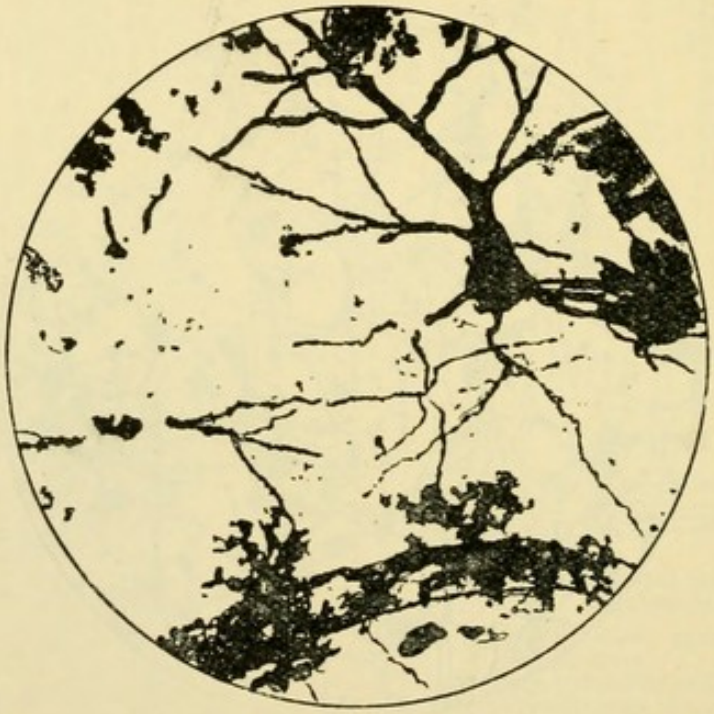


FIG. 481.—Human cerebral cortex: Golgi's method. High power. (Mott.)

tract. These are called *Projection fibres.* As they pass down they give off collaterals to the adjacent grey matter, to the opposite hemisphere *viâ* the corpus callosum, to the corpus striatum and the optic thalamus, which terminate there by arborisations; the main fibres terminate in synapses round the multipolar cells of the grey matter of the opposite side of the spinal cord. These are termed the cortico-spinal fibres; von Monakow has shown that some of the pyramidal fibres terminate in the mid-brain and pons (cortico-pontine fibres), and a fresh relay of fibres thence continues the impulse downwards.

The cells of the cortex are, in addition to all this, surrounded by the arborising terminations of the sensory nerve-fibres, which, after relays at various cell-stations, ultimately reach the cortex.

We are now in a position to complete diagram 448 (p. 625), and obtain an idea of the relations of the principal cells and fibres of the cerebro-spinal nervous system to one another.

Pyr. (fig. 482) is a cell of the Rolandic area of the cerebral cortex; AX is its axis-cylinder process which passes down in the pyramidal tract, and crosses the

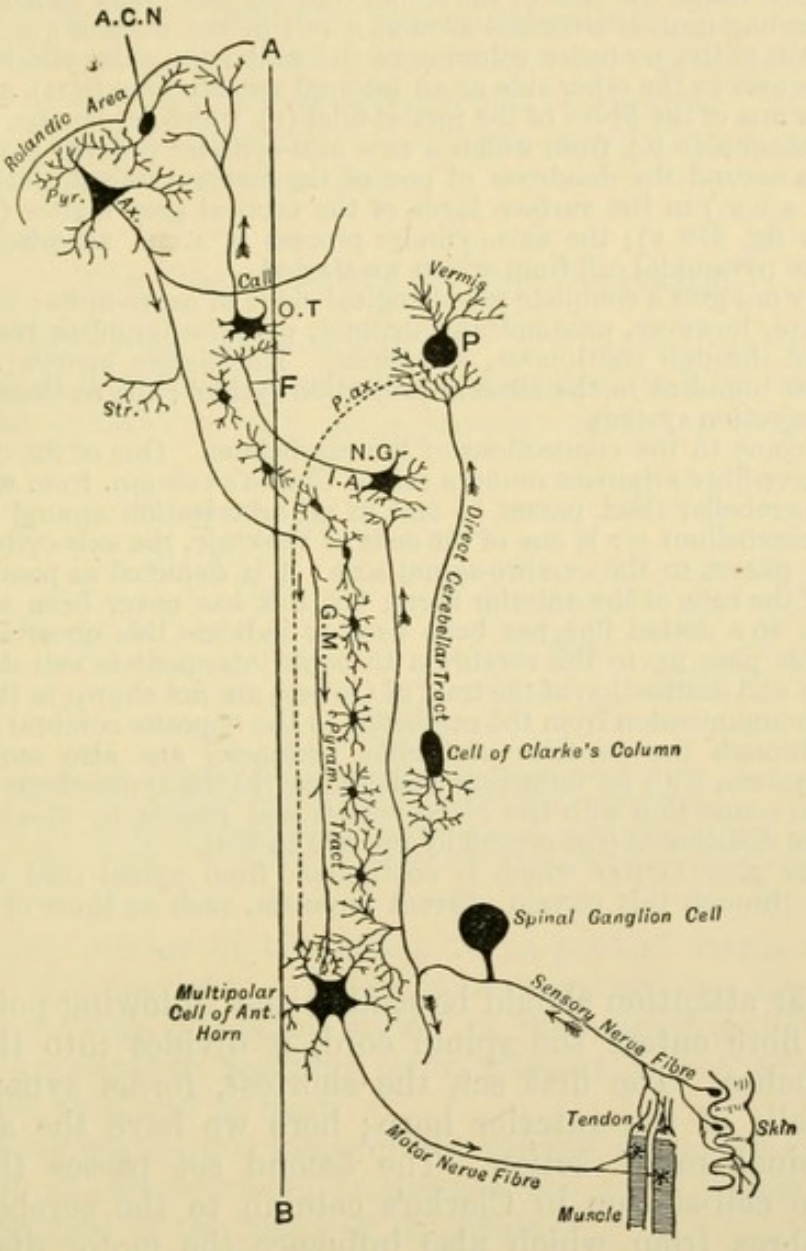


FIG. 482.—Scheme of relationship of cells and fibres of brain and cord. (In the preparation of this diagram I have received considerable assistance from Dr Mott.)

middle line AB at the pyramidal decussation. It gives off collaterals, one of which (*call*) is shown passing in the corpus callosum to terminate in an arborisation in the cortex of the opposite hemisphere; another (*str*) passes into the corpus striatum. In the cord collaterals pass off and end in arborisations around cells of the anterior horn of the spinal cord (see also fig. 448); the main fibre has a similar termination.*

* The intermediate cell-station in the posterior horn between the pyramidal fibre and the anterior cornual cell (Schäfer) is not shown in the diagram (see also p. 625).

The motor nerve-fibre passes from the anterior cornual cell to muscular fibres, where it ends in the terminal arborisations called end-plates.

Coming now to the sensory fibres, a cell of one of the spinal ganglia is shown. Its axis-cylinder process bifurcates, and one branch passes to the periphery, ending in arborisations in skin and tendon. The other (central) branch bifurcates on entering the cord, and its divisions pass upwards and downwards, the latter for a short distance only; the terminations of this descending branch and of collaterals of the ascending branch round the cells of the spinal cord are more fully shown in fig. 448. The main ascending branch arborises around a cell of the nucleus gracilis (N.G.) or nucleus cuneatus in the posterior columns of the bulb; the axis-cylinder process of this cell passes over to the other side as an internal arcuate fibre (I.A.), and becomes longitudinal as one of the fibres of the mesial fillet (F), which terminates round a cell of the optic thalamus (O.T.), from which a new axis-cylinder process passes to form an arborisation around the dendrons of one of the cerebral cells (Cajal's nerve-unit of association A.C.N.) in the surface layer of the cortical grey matter (shown on a larger scale in fig. 479 F); the axis-cylinder process of A.C.N. arborises round the dendrons of the pyramidal cell from which we started.

In this way one gets a complete physiological circle of nerve-units; the segments of the circle are, however, anatomically distinct, and the impulses travel through contiguous, not through continuous, structures. The simple arrows indicate the direction of the impulses in the efferent projection system; the feathered arrows in the afferent projection system.

Next we come to the connections of the cerebellum. One of the collaterals of the sensory nerve-fibre arborises round a cell of Clarke's column, from which a fibre of the direct cerebellar tract passes to end in an arborisation around a cell in the vermis of the cerebellum. P is one of the cells of Purkinje, the axis-cylinder process of which P.ax passes to the cerebro-spinal axis; it is depicted as passing down to envelop one of the cells of the anterior horn; but this has never been satisfactorily demonstrated; so a dotted line has been used to indicate this uncertainty. Most of its collaterals pass up to the cerebrum through intermediate cell-stations.

The origin and destination of the tract of Gowers are not shown in the diagram; the fibres of communication from the cerebellar to the opposite cerebral hemisphere, which pass through the superior cerebellar peduncle, are also omitted. The sympathetic system, with its numerous cell-stations in the sympathetic ganglia, we have studied in connection with the blood-vessels and viscera to which the sympathetic fibres are distributed (see especially pp. 299 to 303).

G.M. is the grey matter which is continuous from spinal cord to the optic thalamus, and through this certain afferent impulses, such as those of pain, travel upwards.

Particular attention should be paid to the following point: when an afferent fibre enters the spinal cord, it divides into three main sets of branches. The first set, the shortest, forms synapses with the motor cells of the anterior horn; here we have the anatomical basis of spinal reflex action. The second set passes through an intermediate cell-station in Clarke's column to the cerebellum, the emerging fibres from which also influence the motor discharge of the anterior horn cells. The third set, the longest, passes through three intermediate cell-stations (the first in the nucleus gracilis or cuneatus, the second in the optic thalamus, the third in the association units in the cortex), and ultimately reaches the pyramidal nerve-cells of the cerebral cortex, the efferent fibres (pyramidal fibres) of which pass to the motor cells of the anterior cornu and influence their discharge. The motor nerve-cells of the anterior horn may thus be influenced by the afferent impulses *viâ* three paths or

nervous circles. In health, all these nervous circles are in action to produce co-ordinated muscular impulses. In locomotor ataxy, which is a degeneration of the cells of the ganglia on the posterior roots and their branches, all these nervous circles are deranged, and the result is loss of reflex action, and inco-ordination of muscular movements.

It should be noted that the pyramidal cells in the cortex, though the largest in size, are the least numerous. Similarly the large motor cells of the cord are relatively few in number. The innumerable smaller cells in both situations are association cells concerned in the co-ordination of impulses.

The Convolutions of the Cerebrum.

The surface of the brain is marked by a great number of depressions which are called *fissures* or *sulci*, and it is this folding of the surface that enables a very large amount of the precious material

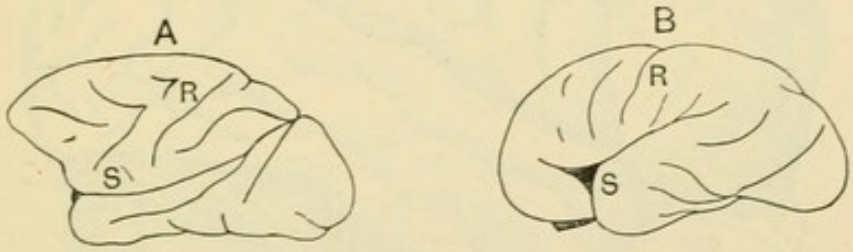


FIG. 483.

A. Cerebral Hemisphere of adult Macacque monkey.
B. Cerebral Hemisphere of child shortly before birth.

The two brains are very much alike, but the growth forwards of the frontal lobes even at this early stage of development of the human brain is quite well seen. S, fissure of Sylvius; R, fissure of Rolando.

called the grey matter of the cortex to be packed within the narrow compass of the cranium. In the lowest vertebrates the surface of the brain is smooth, but going higher in the animal scale the fissures make their appearance, reaching their greatest degree of complexity in the higher apes and in man.

In an early embryonic stage of the human fœtus the brain is also smooth, but as development progresses the sulci appear, until the climax is reached in the brain of the adult.

The sulci, which make their appearance first, both in the animal scale and in the development of the human fœtus, are the same. They remain in the adult as the deepest and best marked sulci; they are called the *primary fissures* or *sulci*, and they divide the brain into *lobes;* the remaining sulci, called the *secondary fissures* or *sulci*, further subdivide each lobe into *convolutions* or *gyri*.

A first glance at an adult human brain reveals what appears to be a hopeless puzzle; this, however, is reduced to order when one

studies the brain in different stages of development, or compares the brain of man with that of the lower animals. The monkey's brain in particular has given the key to the puzzle, because there the primary fissures are not obscured by the complexity and contorted arrangement of secondary fissures.

The preceding figure, comparing the brain of one of the lower monkeys with that of the child shortly before birth, shows the close family likeness in the two cases.

Fig. 484 gives a representation of the brain of one of the higher monkeys, the orang-outang, where there is an intermediate condition of complexity by which we are led lastly to the human brain.

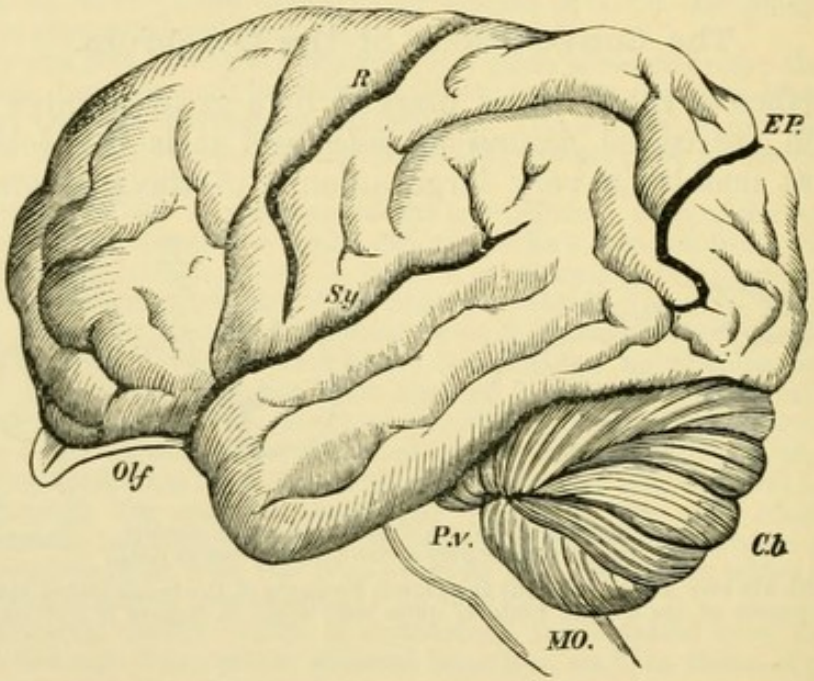


FIG. 484.—Brain of the Orang, $\frac{3}{4}$ natural size, showing the arrangement of the convolutions. *Sy*, fissure of Sylvius; *R*, fissure of Rolando; *EP*, external parieto-occipital fissure; *Olf*, olfactory lobe; *Cb*, cerebellum; *PV*, pons Varolii; *MO*, medulla oblongata. As contrasted with the human brain, the frontal lobe is short and small relatively, the fissure of Sylvius is oblique, the temporo-sphenoidal lobe very prominent, and the external parieto-occipital fissure very well marked. Note also the bend or genu in the Rolandic fissure. This is found in all anthropoid apes.

Let us take first the outer surface of the human hemisphere; the primary fissures are—

1. *The fissure of Sylvius;* this divides into two limbs, the posterior of which is the larger, and runs backwards and upwards, and the anterior limb, which, passing into the substance of the hemisphere, forms the *Island of Reil.*

2. *The fissure of Rolando* runs from about the middle of the top of the diagram (fig. 485) downwards and forwards.

3. *The external parieto-occipital fissure* (PAR. OC. F.) is parallel to the fissure of Rolando but more posterior and much shorter; in monkeys it is longer (see fig. 484).

These three fissures divide the brain into five lobes:—

1. *The frontal lobe;* in front of the fissure of Rolando.

2. *The parietal lobe;* between the fissure of Rolando and the external parieto-occipital fissure.

3. *The occipital lobe;* behind the external parieto-occipital fissure.

4. *The temporo-sphenoidal lobe;* below the fissure of Sylvius.

5. *The Island of Reil.*

It will be noticed that the names of the lobes correspond to those of the bones of the cranial vault which cover them. There is no exact correspondence between the bones and the lobes, but the precise position of the various convolutions in relation to the surface of the skull is a matter of anatomy, which, in these days of brain-surgery, is of overwhelming importance to the surgeon. The position of a localised disease in the brain can be determined very accurately, as we shall see later, by the symptoms exhibited by the patient, and it

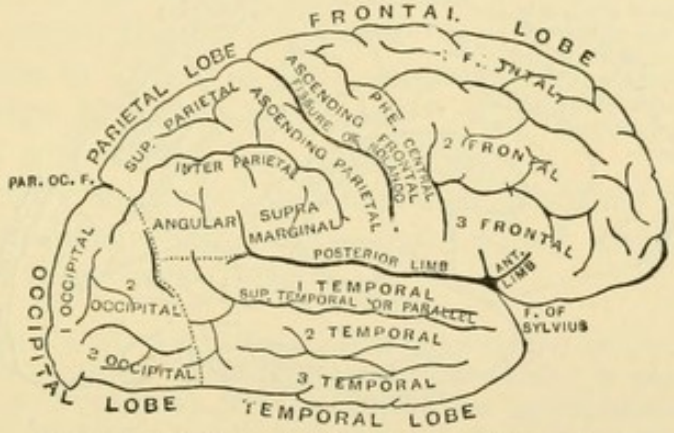


FIG. 485.—Right cerebral hemisphere, outer surface.

would be obviously inconvenient to the patient if the surgeon was unable to trephine over the exact spot under which the diseased convolution lies, but had to make a number of exploratory holes to find out where he was.

Each lobe is divided into convolutions by secondary fissures.

1. **The frontal lobe** is divided by the *central frontal* or *prefrontal sulcus*, which runs upwards parallel to the fissure of Rolando, and two *transverse frontal sulci*, upper and lower, into four convolutions; namely, the *ascending frontal convolution* in front of the fissure of Rolando, and three *transverse frontal convolutions, upper, middle, and lower*, which run outwards and forwards from it.

2. **The parietal lobe** has one important secondary sulcus, at first running parallel to the fissure of Rolando and then turning back parallel to the margin of the brain. It is called the *intra-parietal sulcus*. The lobe is thus divided into the *ascending parietal convolution* behind the fissure of Rolando, the *supra-marginal convolution* between the intra-parietal sulcus, and the fissure of Sylvius, the

angular convolution which turns round the end of the Sylvian fissure, and the *superior parietal convolution*, or *parietal lobule*, in front of the external parieto-occipital fissure.

3. **The occipital lobe** is divided into *upper, middle, and lower occipital convolutions* by two secondary fissures running across it.

4. **The temporal or temporo-sphenoidal lobe** is similarly divided into *upper, middle, and lower temporal convolutions* by two fissures running parallel to the fissure of Sylvius; the upper of these fissures is called the *parallel fissure.*

5. **The Island of Reil** is divided into convolutions by the breaking up of the anterior limb of the Sylvian fissure.

Coming now to the mesial surface of the hemisphere (fig. 486), its subdivisions are made evident by cutting through the corpus callosum which unites the hemisphere to its fellow. The sub-

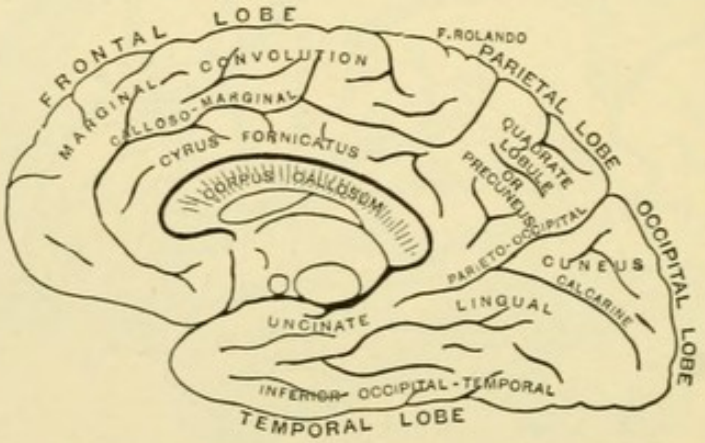


FIG. 486.—Right cerebral hemisphere, mesial surface.

division into lobes is not so apparent here as on the external surface of the hemisphere, so we may pass at once to the convolutions into which it is broken up by fissures.

In the middle the corpus callosum is seen cut across; above it and parallel to its upper border is a fissure called the *calloso-marginal fissure*, which turns up and ends on the surface near the upper end of the fissure of Rolando. The convolution above this is called the *marginal convolution*, and the one below it the *callosal convolution* or *gyrus fornicatus.* The deep fissure below the corpus callosum running from its posterior end forwards and downwards is called the *dentate fissure;* this forms a projection seen in the interior of the lateral ventricle, and called there the *hippocampus major;* the *hippocampal convolution*, together with the gyrus fornicatus above the corpus callosum, constitutes the *limbic lobe.* Below the dentate fissure is another called the *collateral fissure*, above which is the *uncinate convolution*, and below which is the inferior temporal convolution which we have previously seen on the external surface of the

hemisphere (see fig. 485). In the occipital region the internal *parieto-occipital fissure,* which is a continuation of the external parieto-occipital fissure, passes downwards and forwards till it meets the *calcarine fissure;* these two enclose between them a wedge-shaped piece of brain called the *cuneus* or *cuneate lobule;* the square piece above it is called the *precuneus* or *quadrilateral lobule.*

The only convolutions now left are those which are placed on the surface of the frontal lobe that rests on the orbital plate of the frontal bone; they are shown in fig. 453, 2 2′ 2″ (p. 634), and may be seen diagrammatically in fig. 487, the end of the temporal lobe being cut off to expose the convolutions of the central lobe or Island of Reil.

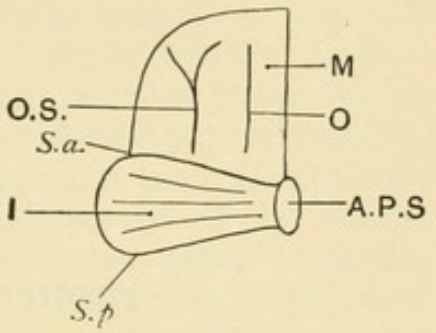


FIG. 487.—Orbital surface of frontal lobe.
M, marginal convolution.
O, olfactory sulcus.
O.S., orbital sulcus.
I, island of Reil.
S.a., anterior limb of Sylvian fissure.
S.p., posterior limb of Sylvian fissure.
A.P.S., anterior perforated spot.

Along the edge is the continuation of the marginal convolution (M); next comes the olfactory sulcus (O) in which the olfactory tract and bulb lie; then the triradiate *orbital sulcus* (O.S.) which divides the rest of this surface into three convolutions.

The Archipallium and the Neopallium.—The grey matter of the fore-brain which makes its appearance earliest in vertebrates is that which is associated with the sense of smell (rhinencephalon), and is termed the archipallium; it forms the principal part of the primitive cortex and even in some mammals (those in which the olfactory sense is highly developed), remains large and important, consisting of a large hollow olfactory bulb continuous with the hippocampus, and separated from the rest of the cortex by the limbic fissure. In the higher mammals it is reduced to small proportions in comparison with the rest of the cortex, which is termed on account of its later appearance in historical development, the neopallium. In man the rhinencephalon consists of the olfactory bulb and tract (see Chapter LIII.); posteriorly the grey cortex to which this passes is doubled in to form the hippocampus major which projects into the lateral ventricle; this is continuous externally around the dentate sulcus with the gyrus hippocampi. This part of the cortex is easily distinguishable microscopically from the neopallium, but without going into minute details, it may be stated in general terms that it is simpler in structure than the grey matter elsewhere; in the hippocampus, for instance, the pyramids are reduced to a single layer of large cells; in the lobus pyriformis (anterior part of the gyrus hippocampi) the cells are grouped in a characteristic nest-like way.

CHAPTER XLVII

FUNCTIONS OF THE SPINAL CORD

THE functions of the spinal cord fall into two categories: functions of the grey matter, which consist in the reflection of afferent impulses, and their conversion into efferent impulses (*reflex action*); and functions of the white matter, which are those of *conduction*.

The Cord as an Organ of Conduction.

We have studied at some length the various paths in the white matter, and so we have the materials at hand for recapitulating the main facts in connection with the physiological aspect of the problem.

Complete section of the spinal cord in animals, and diseases or injuries of the cord or spinal canal in man, which practically cut the cord in two, lead to certain *histological* changes of a degenerative nature, which we have already studied, and to *physiological* results, which are briefly—(1) paralysis, both motor and sensory, of the parts of the body supplied by spinal nerves which originate below the point of injury; and (2) increased reflex irritability of the same parts, the reason for which we shall study immediately.

Hemisection of the cord leads to degenerative changes on the same side of the cord, and loss of motion and sensation on the same side of the body below the lesion (see p. 631).

The main motor path in the cord from the brain is the pyramidal tract; the anatomy of this tract is described in Chapters XLII. to XLVI., and we need do no more here than remind the reader that it originates from the pyramidal cells of the cortex of the opposite cerebral hemisphere, and that the principal decussation occurs at the lower part of the bulb.

The sensory tracts are more complex, on account of the numerous cell-stations on their course. The path for tactile and muscular sense impressions is up the posterior columns to the nucleus gracilis and nucleus cuneatus; thence by the internal arcuate fibres and fillet to the optic thalamus of the opposite side, and thence by the posterior

part of the internal capsule to the Rolandic area of the hemisphere; the decussation of the fillet occurs in the bulb.

Schiff, one of the earliest to work at the subject of conducting paths in the cord, arrived at the conclusion that painful impressions travelled to the brain by the grey matter of the cord. This conclusion was regarded as paradoxical, for white matter is conducting, grey matter is central or reflecting. But the conclusion is not so paradoxical as it appears at first sight, for we now know the grey matter is made up of nerve-units, communicating physiologically by their interlacement of dendrons; and it is quite easy to understand that impulses may travel up grey matter through a vast series of cell-stations or positions of relay. The more exact methods of modern research have gone far to justify Schiff's conclusions, and it is now generally held that the impulses due to painful impressions, and also those produced by heat and cold, travel up to the optic thalamus by the loopings of fibres from cell to cell through the tract of grey matter, which is continuous from cord to optic thalamus (fig. 482, G.M.); from the optic thalamus the fibres of the corona radiata carry on the impulse to the cortex. These conclusions are confirmed by recent experiments on hemisection (see p. 631), and by the phenomena seen in certain diseases. One of the most instructive of these from the physiological standpoint is known as *locomotor ataxy*. This disease is an affection of the afferent neurons, and the most marked and constant change in the spinal cord is a degenerative one in the posterior columns. In such a case muscular and tactile sense are abolished, particularly in the lower limbs, but painful and thermal sensations are felt. On the other hand, in the disease of the grey matter of the cord called *syringomyelia*, sensations of heat, cold, and pain are lost, and tactile sensations remain.

Some afferent impulses reach the cerebellum *viâ* the cells of Clarke's column and the direct or dorsal cerebellar tract to the restiform body and inferior peduncle of the cerebellum; it terminates in the vermis or middle lobe of the cerebellum. The fibres of the tract of Gowers originate in the same or neighbouring cells, and those of its fibres which enter the cerebellum do so by its superior peduncle, and these also end in the vermis.

This leaves us still one more set of fibres to consider; these are the fibres that leave the cerebellum and travel up to the brain and down the cord. They, like most of the other tracts, have been investigated by the degeneration method. Their exact course is, however, uncertain, though probably they ultimately terminate by arborising round the multipolar cells of the cerebrum and of the anterior horn of the cord (see fig. 482, p. 671; see also under Cerebellum, Chapter XLIX.).

Reflex Action of the Spinal Cord.

There are two theories of a speculative nature regarding the relationship of reflex and voluntary actions: one is, that all actions are in essence reflex, and that the so-called voluntary actions are modified reflexes, in which the afferent impulse to act, though often obscure, is nevertheless, by seeking, always to be found. Put in popular language, this theory implies that we have really no such thing as a will of our own, but our actions are simply the result of external circumstances.

The other theory is the exact opposite—namely, that all actions are in the beginning voluntary, and become reflex by practice in the lifetime of the individual, or the lifetime of his ancestors, who transmit this character to their descendants.

This is not the place to discuss a philosophical question of this kind, and still less the debated question whether acquired characters are transmissible by inheritance. The distinction between voluntary and reflex actions is a useful practical one, and certainly it cannot be doubted that many practised actions become reflex in the lifetime of every one of us. Take walking, skating, or bicycling as examples: at first these acts of locomotion are those in which the brain is concerned; they are actions demanding the concentration of the attention; but later on the action is largely carried out by the spinal cord, the afferent impulses to the cord from the lower limbs directing the efferent impulses to the muscles concerned.

The reflex actions of the spinal cord may first be studied in a brainless frog, as in this animal the spinal cord possesses a great power of controlling very complex reflex actions.

Reflexes in a Brainless Frog.

After destruction of the cerebrum the shock of the operation renders the animal for a short time motionless and irresponsive to stimuli, but in a few minutes it gradually assumes a position which differs but little from that of a living conscious frog. If thrown into water it will swim; if placed on a slanting board it will crawl up it (Goltz); if stroked on the flanks it will croak (Goltz); if it is laid on its back, and a small piece of blotting-paper moistened with acid be placed on the skin, it will generally succeed in kicking it off; if a foot is pinched it will draw the foot away; if left perfectly quiet it remains motionless. Even when the optic thalami are destroyed also, it still executes complex reflex actions, but all power of balancing and all spontaneity are lost.

The muscular response that follows an excitation of the surface is purposive and constant, the path along which the impulse is propagated being definite.

Under certain abnormal conditions, however, the propagation of the impulse in the cord is widespread, the normal paths being, as it were, broken down. This is seen in the convulsions that occur on slight excitation in animals or men who have suffered from profuse hæmorrhage, or in the disease called lockjaw or tetanus. Such a condition is easily demonstrable in a brainless frog under the influence of strychnine: after the injection of a few drops of a 1 per cent. solution under the skin, cutaneous excitation no longer produces co-ordinated responses, but paroxysms of convulsions, in which the frog assumes a characteristic attitude, with arms flexed and legs extended.

Spreading of reflexes.—If one lower limb is excited, it is that limb which responds: if the excitation is a strong one it will spread to the limb of the opposite side, and if stronger still to the upper limbs also.

Pflüger taught that the direction of irradiation within the spinal cord was always upwards. Sherrington has shown that this is not so, and has discovered many descending paths (see p. 631).

Cumulation of reflexes.—This is well illustrated by Turck's method. If a number of beakers of water are prepared, acidulated with 1, 2, 4, etc., parts of sulphuric acid per 1000, and the tips of the frog's toes are immersed in the weakest, the frog at first takes no notice of the fact, but in time the cumulation or summation of the sensory impulses causes the animal to withdraw its feet. If this is repeated with the stronger liquids in succession, the time that intervenes before the muscles respond becomes less and less. This method also serves to test reflex irritability when the frog is under the influence of various drugs.

Inhibition of reflexes.—If, instead of the whole brain, the cerebrum only is destroyed, and the optic lobes are left intact, response to excitation is much slower, the influence of the remaining part of the brain inhibiting the reflex action of the cord. Or if in doing the experiment with acid just described the toes of the other foot are being simultaneously pinched, the response to the acid is delayed.

This influence of the brain on the cord is also illustrated in man, by the fact that a strong effort of the will can control many reflex actions. It is, for instance, possible to subdue the tendency to sneeze; if one accidentally puts one's hand in a flame, the natural reflex is to withdraw it: yet it is well known that Cranmer, when being burnt at the stake, held his hand in the flames till it was consumed.

After the spinal cord has been divided by injury or disease in the thoracic region, the brain can no longer exert this controlling action; hence the part of the cord below the injury having it, as it were, all its own way, has its reflex irritability increased.* The increase of

* In some injuries to the cord produced by crushing, there is a loss of reflexes below the injury. These, however, are not simple transverse lesions; the loss of reflex action is due partly to shock, and partly to extensive injury of the grey matter.

reflex irritability is also seen in the disease called *lateral sclerosis;* here the lateral columns, including the pyramidal tract, become degenerated, and so the path from the brain to the cells of the cord is in great measure destroyed. In these patients the increase of reflex irritability may become a very distressing symptom, slight excitations, like a movement of the bed-clothes, arousing powerful convulsive spasms of the legs.

Reflex time.—In the frog, deducting the time taken in the transmission of impulses along nerves, the time consumed in the cord (reflex time) varies from 0·008 to 0·015 second; if the reflex crosses to the other side it is one-third longer. It is lessened by heat, and under the influence of a strong stimulus (see also p. 205).

Reflex Action in Man.

The reflexes obtainable in man form a most important factor in diagnosis of diseases of the nervous system; each action is effected through an afferent sensory nerve, a system of nerve-cells in the cord termed the reflex centre, and an efferent motor nerve; the whole constitutes what is called the *reflex arc.* The absence of certain reflexes may determine the position in the spinal cord, which is the seat of disease.

Two forms of reflex action must be distinguished:—

1. Superficial reflexes. These are true reflex actions, and are excited by stimulation of the skin.

2. Deep reflexes or tendon reflexes. This is a most undesirable name, as they are not true reflex actions.

Superficial Reflexes.—These are obtained by a gentle stimulation, such as a touch on the skin; the muscles beneath are usually affected, but muscles at a distance may be affected also. Thus a prick near the knee will cause a reflex flexion of the hip.

The most important of these reflexes are:

a. *Plantar reflex:* withdrawal of the feet when the soles are tickled.

b. *Gluteal reflex:* a contraction in the gluteus when the skin over it is stimulated.

c. *Cremasteric reflex:* a retraction of the testicle when the skin on the inner side of the thigh is stimulated.

d. *Abdominal reflex:* in the muscles of the abdominal wall when the skin over the side of the abdomen is stroked; the upper part of this reflex is a very definite contraction at the epigastrium, and has been termed the *epigastric reflex.*

e. A series of similar reflex actions may be obtained in the muscles of the back, the highest being in the muscles of the scapula.

f. In the region of the cranial nerves the most important reflexes

are those of the eye—(i) the *conjunctival reflex*, the movement of the eyelids when the front of the eyeball is touched; and (ii) the contraction of the pupil on exposure of the eye to light, and its dilatation on stimulation of the skin of the neck.

Tendon Reflexes.—When the muscles are in a state of slight tension, a tap on their tendons will cause them to contract. The two so-called tendon reflexes which are generally examined are the patella tendon reflex or *knee-jerk*, and the foot phenomenon or *ankle-clonus*.

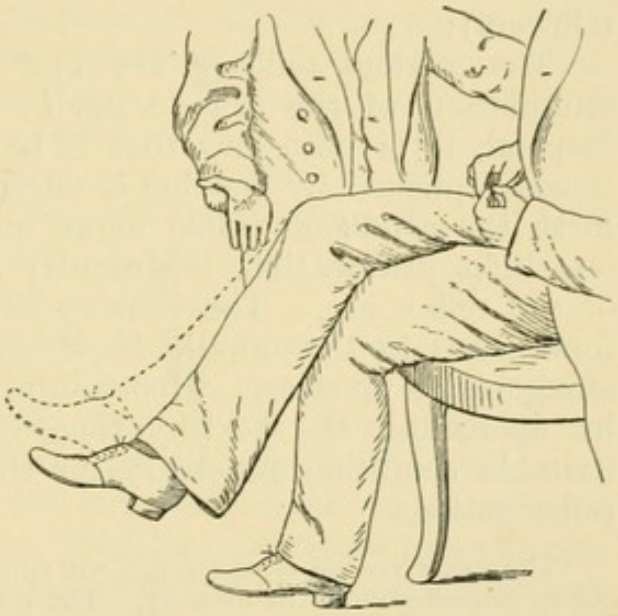


FIG. 488.—The Knee-jerk. (Gowers.)

The knee-jerk.—The quadriceps muscle is slightly stretched by putting one knee over the other; a slight blow on the patella tendon causes a movement of the foot forwards, as indicated in the dotted line of fig. 488. The phenomenon is present in health.

Ankle-clonus.—This is elicited as depicted in the next figure: the hand is pressed against the sole of the foot, the calf muscles are thus put on the stretch and they contract, and if the pressure is kept up a quick succession or clonic series of contractions is obtained. This, however, is not readily obtained in health.

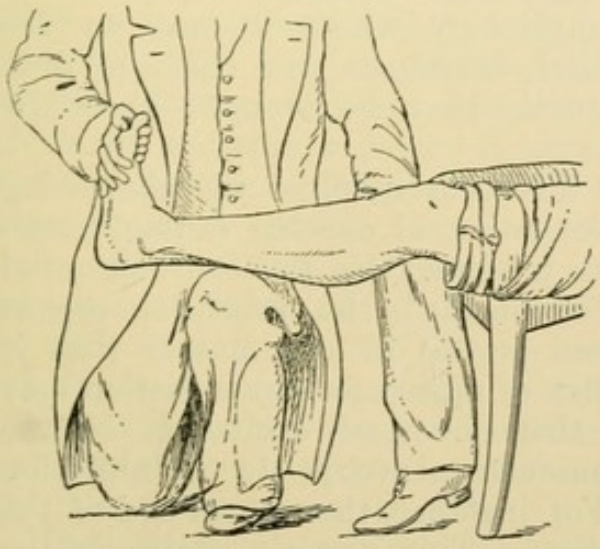


FIG. 489.—Ankle-clonus. (Gowers.)

These phenomena are not true reflexes; the time that intervenes between the tap and the response is so short that they must be due to direct stimulation of the muscles by the sudden stretching of their tendons.

Nevertheless, the idea that they are reflex is supported by the following facts:—

1. There are nerves in tendon.

2. The phenomena depend for their occurrence on the integrity of the reflex arc. Disease or injury to the afferent nerve, efferent nerve, or spinal grey matter, abolishes them. Thus they cannot

be obtained in locomotor ataxy (damage to the posterior nerve-roots), or in infantile paralysis (damage to the anterior horns of grey matter).

3. They are excessive in those conditions which increase true reflex irritability, such as severance of brain from cord, and in lateral sclerosis.

These two sets of facts can be reconciled in the following way (Gowers):—

The tendon reflexes are not reflexes, but are due to direct stimulation of the muscle itself. In order that the muscle may respond, it is necessary that it be in an irritable condition; this is accomplished by putting it slightly on the stretch, and so calling forth the condition called *tonus*, and thus a readiness to contract on slight provocation. Muscular tonus depends on the integrity of the reflex arc. The sensory stimulus for this reflex muscular tone arises in the muscle itself, and also in the condition of the antagonistic muscles. Hence injury to any part of the reflex arc, by abolishing the healthy tone of a muscle, deprives it of that irritable condition necessary for the production of these so-called reflex actions.

The exact course of the reflex arc concerned in the knee-jerk has been worked out by Sherrington in the monkey. The nerve-fibres are mainly those which pass (1) to and from the crureus by the anterior crural nerve, and (2) to and from the hamstrings by the sciatic nerve. The fibres which supply the crureus arise from the spinal nerve-roots which in man correspond to the 3rd and 4th lumbar; the hamstring supply is from the 5th lumbar and 1st and 2nd sacral roots.

Reciprocal Action of Antagonistic Muscles.—This is an interesting branch of muscle physiology, which we owe to the researches of Sherrington. In brief, he shows that the inhibition of the tonus of a voluntary muscle may be brought about by excitation of its antagonist.

Movement at a joint in any direction involves the shortening of one set of muscles and the elongation of another (antagonistic) set. The stretching of a muscle produced by the contraction of its antagonist may excite (mechanically) the sensorial organs (probably the muscle-spindles, see p. 86) in the muscle that is under extension; in this way a reflex of pure muscular initiation may be started. Experiments show that electrical excitation of the central end of an exclusively muscular nerve produces inhibition of the tonus of its antagonist. For instance, the central end of the severed hamstring nerve is faradised. This nerve contains in the cat 4510 nerve-fibres, and of these about 1810 are sensory in function*; these come from the flexor muscles of the knee, not

* The number of sensory nerve-fibres is determined by counting the healthy fibres in the nerve after section of the anterior nerve-roots.

from the skin. The effect of the stimulation of the nerve on the tonus of the extensor muscles of the knee is seen (*a*) in elongation of those muscles, (*b*) in temporary diminution of the knee-jerk. The experiment may be varied as follows: the exposed flexor muscles detached from the knee, and therefore incapable of mechanically affecting the position of the joint, are stretched or kneaded. This produces a reflex elongation of the extensor muscles of the knee and a temporary diminution of the knee-jerk. The effects are in fact the same as those produced by faradisation of the central end of the nerve supplying them. It may therefore be that reciprocal innervation, which is a common form of co-ordination of antagonistic muscles, is secured by a simple reflex mechanism, an important factor in its execution being the tendency for the action of a muscle to produce its own inhibition reflexly by mechanical stimulation of the sensory apparatus in its antagonist.

On p. 672 we have drawn attention to the three "*nervous circles*" by which an afferent impulse may affect the motor discharge from the anterior horn-cells of the cord; there is the short path by the collaterals of the entering fibre which pass directly to these cells, and there are the two longer paths, *viâ* the cerebellum and cerebrum respectively. In the execution of a voluntary action all three circles are in activity to produce the co-ordination and due contraction and elongation of antagonistic muscles which characterise an effective muscular act. Section of the posterior roots produces not only an inability to carry out reflex actions, but also leads to an inability to carry out effectively those more complicated reflex actions which are called voluntary, and in which the brain participates. Locomotor ataxy, or tabes dorsalis, is a slowly progressive disease, the anatomical basis of which is a degeneration of the nerve-units of the spinal ganglia. It is, therefore, analogous to a physiological experiment in which the posterior roots are divided, and although fibres may remain which still allow of the passage of nervous impulses, the action of the three circles is greatly interfered with; the spinal reflex arc is at fault; this is shown by the loss of reflex action, the disappearance of the tendon reflexes, and the want of tonus in antagonistic muscles; the main symptom of the disease is want of muscular co-ordination, and this is produced not only by the lesion in the spinal cord, but is accentuated by the want of continuity in the other two circles, so that the brain is unable to effectively control the motor discharge from the anterior cornual cells.

The tendon phenomena are important to the pathologist; they furnish him with a valuable means of diagnosis in nervous disorders. Their usefulness in the normal state is very well put by Starling in the following words:—"Every joint is protected by inextensible ligaments and by muscles. A sudden strain on a ligament will

rupture some of its fibres, and perhaps injure the joint surfaces. An ordinary reflex contraction could not prevent this, for the mischief would be done before the reaction could take place. But the central nervous system keeps the muscles awake, so that they themselves may react to any sudden increase in the tension by an equally sudden contraction which saves the joint, before the central nervous system has had time to become aware of the strain."

The Principle of the Common Path (Sherrington).—When an afferent nerve is stimulated, the impulse enters that complex network of conducting paths, which is called the central nervous system. So numerous are the potential connections in this labyrinth that the impulse may, under such abnormal conditions as strychnine poisoning, radiate in all directions, and be discharged so as to throw all the muscles of the body into action. But under normal circumstances the irradiation is limited to certain lines, which increase in number with the strength of the entering impulse. The general pattern of the nervous web remains fairly constant, but its details are subject to great variations, and a new stimulus may act like a tap on a kaleidoscope, and throw a new pattern into being.

At the commencement of every reflex arc is a receptive neuron extending from a sensory surface to the brain or cord, and this is a *private* path exclusively occupied by impulses from its own receptive points on the surface of the body. These impulses pass along certain association tracts or internuncial paths in the central nervous system, and at the termination of the arc we have a final neuron which acts as the conducting link between the central nervous system and the muscle or gland which it supplies. This final neuron does not subserve exclusively impulses generated at one receptive source, but can be used in the conduction of impulses generated at many points of the body's surface. The arm muscles, for instance, can be thrown into play in response to visual, auditory, tactile, and other sensations. The final neuron thus differs from the initial neuron in being *public*, not private, and may be spoken of as the *final common path*. Of course, in every reflex action we are not really concerned with individual neurons, but with thousands of them acting in harmony; still, for descriptive purposes, it is well to speak of one set of neurons only as a sample of the rest. An ordinary motor nerve is thus a collection of many final common paths.

Now let us suppose that two stimuli are acting on different parts of the body's surface, each of which would produce impulses that ultimately reach the same final common path together, though they may throw it into action in rather a different way. Under such circumstances, it is found that the occupation of the public path by one impulse prevents it being simultaneously used by the other; one reflex or the other takes place, but not both of them.

For the investigation of such a problem, the "scratch reflex" of the dog is one that lends itself admirably. This can best be studied in the "spinal" dog, that is in a dog in which cerebral influence is shut off by division of the spinal cord in the cervical region. If the skin over a large saddle-shaped area covering the shoulders and back is gently irritated on one side, the hind leg of the same side executes scratching movements, which involve flexor muscles principally; the rate of scratching is about 4 per second, and each movement is presumably a short tetanus. The best "artificial flea" to employ is a weak faradic current, and it is the nerves at the roots of the hair follicles which are specially susceptible when eliciting the reflex. The internuncial paths in the cord are in the lateral part of the lateral column, and division of that region of the cord abolishes the reflex.

But there is another form of stimulation which also throws the same flexor muscles into action, although in rather a different way, and that is stimulation of the sole of the foot. The foot and leg are withdrawn, and the action is a steady one, and not a succession of rhythmic discharges as in scratching. Both reflexes, however, end in the same final common path; and if while scratching is being elicited by stimulation of the shoulder, the foot is then stimulated simultaneously, scratching immediately ceases, one set of impulses has displaced the other from the final common path. If then one ceases to stimulate the foot, the scratch reflex returns if the irritation of the shoulder is kept up. This is well illustrated by the accompanying tracing (fig. 490).

But there is also another way in which the inhibition of reflexes may be produced. The contraction of one set of muscles is usually accompanied by relaxation of its antagonists, and the contraction of the flexors in the scratch reflex may therefore be inhibited by making the antagonistic muscles (the extensors) contract. Further, the scratch reflex is unilateral, but this does not mean that the muscles supplying the other legs are inactive, for they must act in such a way as to support the dog on three legs, while it scratches with the fourth. So if the right shoulder is stimulated, the right hind leg scratches; if the left shoulder is stimulated, the left hind leg scratches; but if both shoulders are stimulated together, only one or the other leg scratches, not the two at once; parts of the final paths are common to both sides, and there is a struggle for their occupation. Some instances of reinforcing action were found; for example, if two points of the skin of one shoulder are stimulated with a very feeble current, neither stimulus alone may be sufficient to evoke the scratch reflex, but the two together may elicit it; in order to attain this result the two points of skin must be fairly close together.

The afferent neurons (private paths) of the body are about five

times more numerous than the efferent (final common paths), and in the struggle for the occupation of these public paths by the impulses

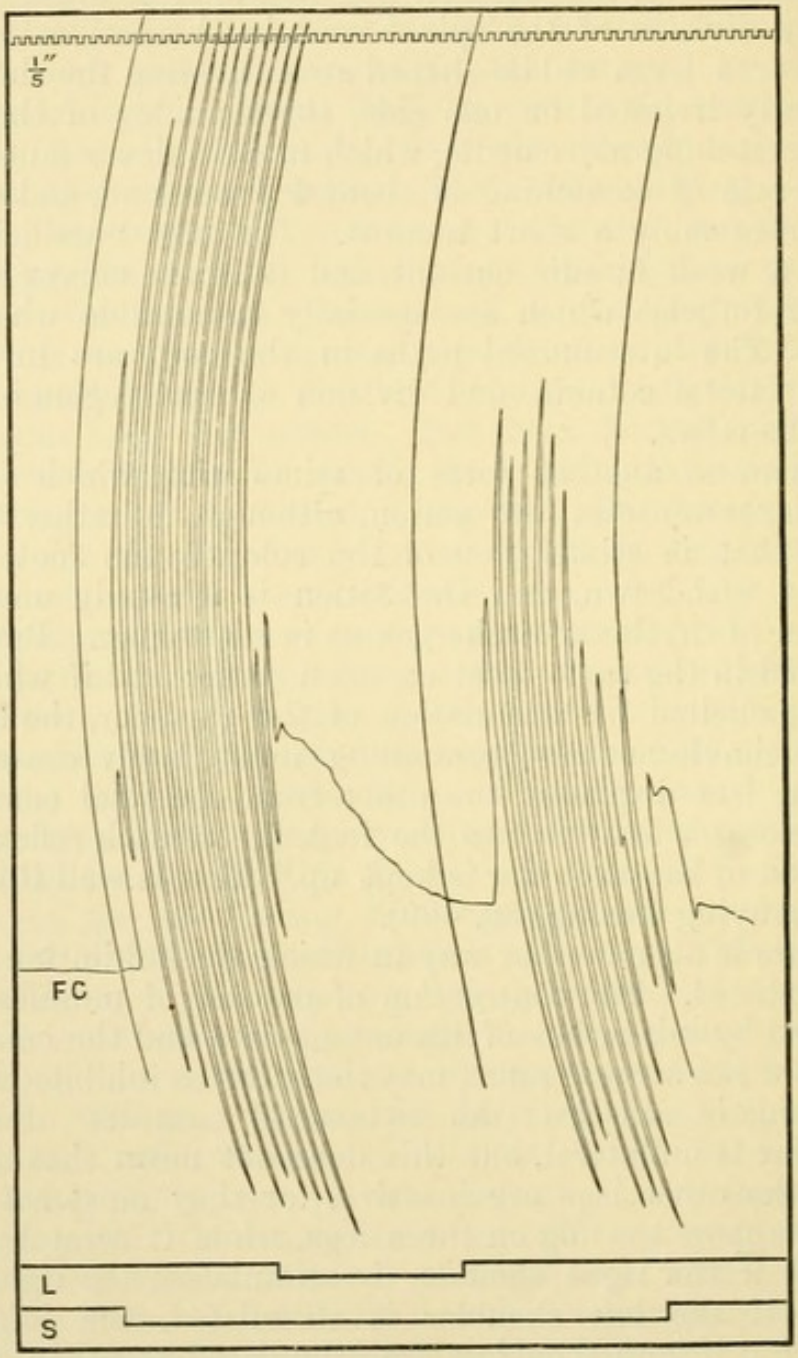


FIG. 490.—The Scratch reflex. Tracing of the flexors of left hip evoked by stimulation of the skin of the shoulder. The depression in the signal line S indicates the commencement of the stimulation, and its rise the termination. While this was going on, the left foot was stimulated, and the depression of the signal line L indicates the duration of this stimulation; during the stimulation of the foot, and for a short time afterwards, the scratch reflex is inhibited, but the scratch reflex returns soon afterwards. The time is registered in fifths of seconds. To be read from left to right. (Sherrington.)

that enter the central nervous system by the more numerous private paths, three factors are specially concerned:—(1) Strength of stimulus; the stronger the stimulus the better chance the resulting

impulse has of getting round to the motor organ. (2) Character of impulse; sensations of painful nature and sexual feelings win the final path easily; it is a matter of common experience that such sensations dominate and even exclude other sensations; a man with bad toothache is not likely to take much notice of anyone who pulls his coat tails. (3) Fatigue; at the end of a long stimulation, a stimulus applied to a fresh reflex arc has a better chance of capturing the common path.

Reaction Time in Man.—The term reaction time is applied to the time occupied in the centre in that complex response to a pre-arranged stimulus in which the brain as well as the cord comes into play. It is sometimes called the *personal equation*. It may be most readily measured by the electrical method, and the accompanying diagram (fig. 491) will illustrate one of the numerous arrangements which have been proposed for the purpose.

In the primary circuit two keys *A* and *B* are included, and a chronograph (1), arranged to write on a revolving cylinder (fast rate). Another chronograph (2),

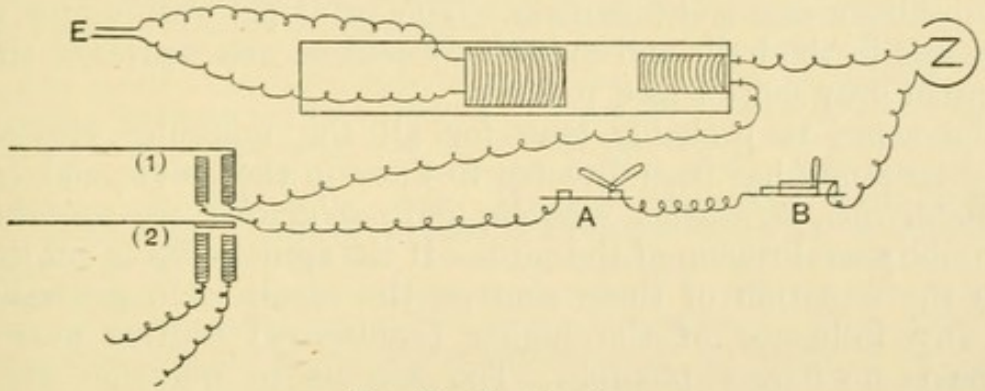


FIG. 491.—Reaction time.

marking 1-100ths of a second, is placed below this. The experiment is performed by two persons *C* and *D*. The key *A*, under the control of *C*, is opened. The key *B*, under the control of *D*, is closed. The electrodes *E* are applied to some part of *D*'s body. *C* closes *A*. The primary circuit is made, and the chronograph moves. As soon as *D* feels the shock he opens *B*, the current is thus broken, and the chronograph lever returns to rest. Measure the time between the two movements of the chronograph (1), by means of the time tracing written by chronograph (2). From this, the time occupied by transmission along the nerves has to be deducted,

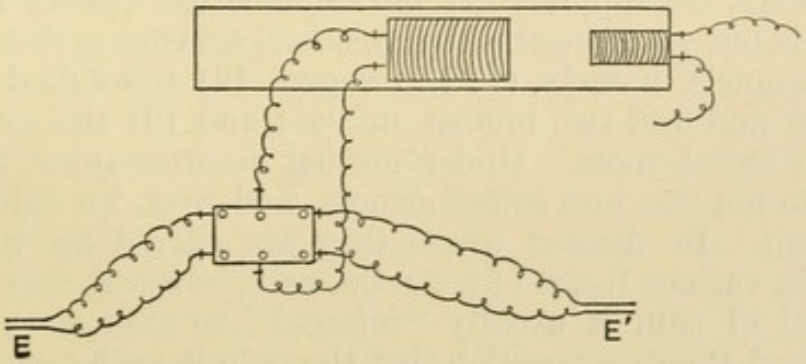


FIG. 492.—The Dilemma.

and the remainder is the *reaction time*. It usually varies from 0·15 to 0·2 second, but is increased in :—

The Dilemma.—The primary circuit is arranged as before. Lead the wires

from the secondary coil to the middle screws of a reverser without cross wires. To each pair of end screws, attach a pair of electrodes E and E', applied to different parts of D's body (fig. 492). Arrange previously that D is to open B, when one part is stimulated, but not the other, C adjusting the reverser unknown to D. Under these circumstances the reaction time is longer.

The reaction time in response to various kinds of stimuli, sound, light, pain, etc., varies a good deal; the condition of the subject of the experiment is also an important factor. This, however, is really a practical branch of psychology, and has recently been much worked at by students of that science (see also p. 205).

Spinal Visceral Reflexes.

The spinal grey matter contains centres which regulate the operation of many involuntary muscles. Some of these centres are :—

The *cilio-spinal* centre controls the dilatation of the pupil; it is situated in the lower cervical region, reaching as far down as the origin of the first to the third thoracic nerve.

Subsidiary *vaso-motor* centres. The principal vaso-motor centre is situated in the bulb, and subsidiary centres are scattered through the spinal grey matter (see p. 298).

The same is probably true for all the muscular viscera, but particular study has been directed to those in the pelvis, and centres for *micturition, defæcation, erection,* and *parturition* are contained in the lumbo-sacral region of the cord. If the spinal cord is cut through above the situation of these centres, the result is in general terms that any influence of the higher (voluntary) centres over these actions is no longer possible. The actions in question are then simply reflex ones occurring unconsciously at certain intervals, and set in movement by the peripheral stimulus (fulness of bladder, or of rectum, etc.). If the portion of the cord where these centres are placed is entirely destroyed, the result is paralysis of the muscles concerned, though in certain cases, even after such a severe injury, some amount of recovery has been noticed, which must be attributed to the peripheral ganglia being able to play the part of reflex centres.

The viscera are supplied not only by efferent (motor and inhibitory) nerves, but are connected to the central nervous system by certain afferent channels, namely, (1) the vagus; (2) the spinal roots from the thoracic and first two lumbar nerves; and (3) the second, third, and fourth sacral roots. Under normal circumstances, the afferent impulses do not rise into consciousness, and even on injury pain is often absent. In disease where they are stirred up to excessive action, as in various forms of colic, the pain, however, may be intense. A good deal of pain is usually "referred" to skin areas which are "tender," and Ross's suggestion that the pain in such cases is referred to parts supplied by sensory cutaneous fibres ending in the same segments of the cord as do the afferent fibres from the viscera in question, has been placed beyond doubt by Head's researches.

Bladder Reflexes.—The spinal region which acts as the micturition centre is that with which the first, second, and third lumbar, and the second, third, and fourth sacral roots are connected. Transverse section of the cord about the level of the sixth lumbar segment (in cat and rabbit) causes immediate escape of urine from the bladder. In the first days after the operation the bladder can only be emptied by artificial stimulation, and especially easily by a light quick pressure on the distended bladder through the abdominal walls. It is not the pressure that squeezes out the urine, it merely sets going a reflex in which contraction of the detrusor and relaxation of the sphincter constitute the final stage. Later on the urine is voided "spontaneously" at intervals, and this is usually accompanied by defæcation.

Goltz and Ewald found in dogs in which the lower part of the cord had been removed, that the bladder emptied itself spontaneously from time to time months later, but usually it had to be emptied by artificial means. In man retention of urine is usually a permanent symptom after a total transverse lesion of the cord.

Defæcation.—A regular expulsion of fæcal matter occurs without difficulty in animals after transverse section of the cord in the upper lumbar region. The tone of the external sphincter is generally restored a few minutes after the operation; and in Goltz and Ewald's dogs the tonus returned even when the lower part of the cord was entirely removed. After a total transverse lesion of the cord in man, incontinence of fæces is usually described, but this is not the case in monkeys. Gowers describes two states in disease which can be distinguished by introducing the finger into the rectum: (1) if the centre is inactive a momentary contraction caused by local irritation of the sphincter is followed by permanent relaxation; (2) relaxation is followed by gentle tonic contraction: in such cases the reflex arc is intact.

Uterine Reflexes.—Uterine contractions can be induced by rectal injections, the passage of a foreign body into the uterus, the application of the child to the breast, and by other means. In animals faradisation of the central end of the first sacral nerve produces the same result. The contractions of the uterus are therefore reflex. Several cases have been recorded in which parturition has occurred normally in women who have had the cord divided across completely in the thoracic region; it is thus evident the centre must be a lumbar one. In such cases the uterine contractions technically called "pains" are strong, but pain is, of course, absent. The communication with the lumbar region appears to be principally by the first three lumbar nerves. Similar observations have been made experimentally in animals, and in one of Goltz and Ewald's dogs in which the cord had been removed from the lower thoracic region downwards, pregnancy followed coitus, and terminated with successful parturition. The mammary glands enlarge as usual in such cases, even when, as in Routh's well-known case (where the cord was completely destroyed at the seventh thoracic segment), there can be no spinal communication between the pelvis and the breast (see also p. 476).

Erection.—This can be excited in man even immediately after a transverse lesion of the cord; so also can ejaculation, but not so commonly. The evidence in favour of such acts being spinal reflexes is very complete in the case of animals.

CHAPTER XLVIII

FUNCTIONS OF THE CEREBRUM

THE brain is the seat of those psychical or mental processes which are called volition and feeling; volition is the starting-point in motor activity; feeling is the final phase of sensory impressions.

In the days of the ancients very curious ideas prevailed as to the use of the brain. It is true that Alkmäon, as early as 580 B.C., placed the seat of consciousness in the brain, but this view was of the nature of a guess, and did not meet with general acceptance; and two hundred years later Aristotle considered that the principal use of the brain was to cool the hot vapours rising from the heart. At this time the seat of mental processes, especially those of an emotional kind, was supposed to be in the heart, an idea now confined to poets; or in the bowels, as those acquainted with such ancient writings as the Bible will know.

As time went on, truer notions regarding the brain came to the fore: thus Herophilus (300 B.C.) was aware of the danger attending injury to the medulla; Aretæus and Cassius (A.D. 97) knew that injury to one side of the brain produced paralysis of the opposite side of the body; and Galen (A.D. 131—203) was acquainted with the main motor and sensory tracts in brain and cord. Between that time and this, most of the celebrated anatomists have contributed something to our knowledge, and one may particularly mention Vesalius, Sylvius, Rolando, Gall, Carus, Willis, and Burdach; many of these names are familiar because certain structures in the brain have been christened after them. The erroneous notion that the brain was not excitable by stimuli lasted even to the days of Flourens and Magendie.

Effects of Removal of the Cerebrum.

When the brain is removed in a frog, it is deprived of volition and of feeling; it remains perfectly quiescent unless stimulated; it is entirely devoid of initiatory power, but, as we have already seen, it will execute reflex actions, many of which are of a complex nature (see p. 680 and also Chapter L.).

A pigeon treated in the same way remains perfectly motionless and unconscious unless it is disturbed (see fig. 493). When disturbed in any way it will move; for instance, when thrown into the air it will fly; but these movements are, as in the frog, purely reflex in character.

In mammals the operation of extirpation of the brain is attended with such severe hæmorrhage that the animal dies very rapidly, but

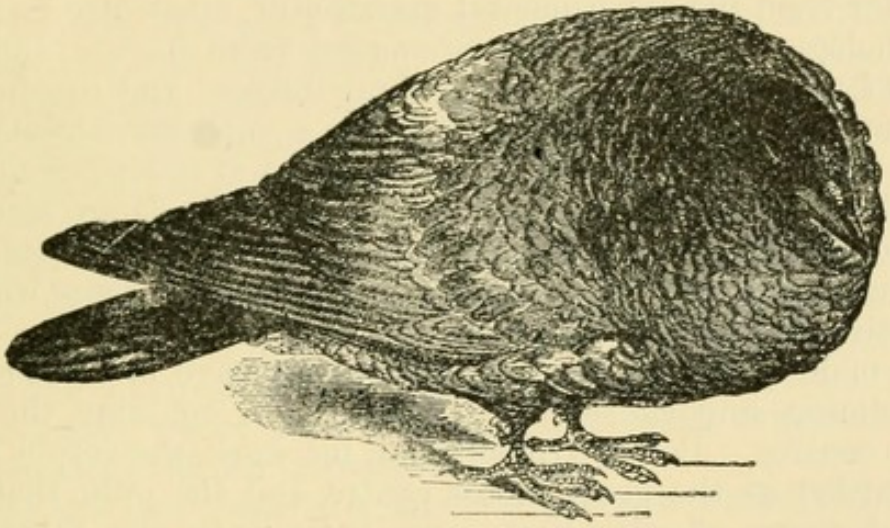


FIG. 493.—Pigeon after removal of the hemispheres. (Dalton.)

in some few cases where the animals have been kept alive, the phenomena they exhibit are precisely similar to those shown by a frog or pigeon. In the case of the dog, portions of the cortex have been removed piecemeal by Goltz of Strasburg, until at last the whole of the cortex has been extirpated. Such animals carry out co-ordinated movements of a complicated character very well, but they manifest no intelligence, and have complete lack of memory. They are in a condition analogous to that of the frogs and pigeons just mentioned.

Localisation of Cerebral Functions.

When the main function of the cerebrum was understood, physiologists were divided into two schools; those who thought that the brain acted as a whole, and those who thought that different parts of the brain had different functions to perform. One of the most prominent of the first school was Flourens; and Goltz, whose work has been done chiefly on dogs, is the only eminent living survivor of this set of physiologists. Gradually, as better methods have come in, and especially since monkeys have been used for experiment, those who believe in the localisation of function have multiplied; and now, localisation of cerebral function is more than

a theory, it is an accepted fact. Perhaps the best practical evidence of this is the fact that experiments on monkeys have been taken as the basis for surgical operations on the human brain, and with perfect success.

The earliest to work in the direction of localisation were Hitzig and Fritsch. The subject was then taken up by Ferrier and Yeo, and later by Schäfer, Horsley, etc., in this country, and by Munk and many others in Germany. In addition to those who have studied the matter from the experimental standpoint, must also be reckoned the pathologists, who in the *post-mortem* room have examined the brains of patients dying from cerebral disease, and carefully compared the position of the disease with the symptoms exhibited by the patients during life. In this way two series of independent investigations have led to the same results; both methods are essential, as many minor details discovered by the one method correct the erroneous conclusions which are apt to be drawn by those who devote their entire attention to the other.

The main point which these researches have brought out is the overwhelming importance of the cortex; it contains the highest cerebral centres. Before Hitzig began his work, the corpus striatum was regarded as the great motor centre, and the optic thalamus as the chief centre of sensation; very little note was taken of the cortex; it appears to have been almost regarded as a kind of ornamental finish to the brain. The idea that the basal ganglia were so important arose from the examination of the brains of people who had died from, or at least suffered from, cerebral hæmorrhage.

The most common situation for cerebral hæmorrhage is either in the region of the corpus striatum or optic thalamus; it was noticed that motor paralysis was the most marked symptom if the corpus striatum was injured, and sensory paralysis if the optic thalamus was injured. The paralysis, however, is due, not to injury of the basal ganglia, but of the neighbouring internal capsule. The internal capsule consists in front of the motor fibres passing down from the cortex to the cord, and behind of the sensory fibres passing up from cord to the cortex (see p. 666). Hence, if these fibres are ploughed up by the escaping blood, paralysis naturally is the result. If a hæmorrhage or injury is so limited as to affect the basal ganglia only, and not the fibres that pass between them, the resulting paralysis is slight or absent.

The question will next be asked: What, then, is the function of the basal ganglia? They are what we may term subsidiary centres: the corpus striatum, principally in connection with movement, and the optic thalamus, in connection with sensation, and especially with the sense of vision as its name indicates.

A subsidiary centre may be compared to a subordinate official in

an army. The principal centre may be compared to the commander-in-chief. This highest officer gives a general order for the movement of a body of troops in a certain direction; we may compare this to the principal motor-centre of the cortex sending out an impulse for a certain movement in a limb. But the general does not give the order himself to each individual soldier, any more than the cerebral cortex does to each individual muscle; but the order is first given to subordinate officers, who arrange exactly how the movement shall be executed, and their orders are in the end distributed to the individual men, who must move in harmony with their fellows with regard to both time and space. So the subsidiary nerve-centres or positions of relay enable the impulse to be widely distributed by collaterals to numerous muscles which contract in a similar orderly, harmonious, and co-ordinate manner.

There is just the same sort of thing in the reverse direction in the matter of sensory impulses. Just as a private in the army, when he wishes to communicate with the general, does so through one or several subordinate officers, so the sensory impulse passes through many cell-stations or subsidiary centres on the way to the highest centre, where the mental process called sensation, that is, the appreciation of the impulse, takes place.

There are two great experimental methods used for determining the function of any part of the cerebrum. The first is **stimulation**; the second is **extirpation**. These words almost explain themselves; in *stimulation* a weak interrupted induction current is applied by means of electrodes to the convolution under investigation, and the resulting movement of the muscles of the body, if any occurs, is noticed. In *extirpation* the piece of brain is removed, and the resulting paralysis, if any, is observed.

It is essential, when the experiment of stimulating the cortex of the brain is being performed, that the animal should be anæsthetised and absolutely unconscious, otherwise voluntary or reflex actions will occur which mask those produced by stimulation. If, however, the animal is too deeply under the influence of a narcotic the brain is inexcitable.

On p. 378 Ehrlich's experiments with methylene blue are described. In an anæsthetised animal the brain is inactive, and if the pigment is injected into the blood, the brain is seen to be of a blue colour. If, however, a spot of the cerebral surface is stimulated, that part of the brain is thrown into action, oxygen is used up, and the methylene blue is reduced, and in consequence that area of the brain loses its blue tint. If the animal is so deeply narcotised that the brain does not discharge an impulse, the part stimulated remains blue.

By such means the cortex has been mapped out into what we may provisionally term motor areas and sensory areas.

Motor areas.—These areas are also termed *sensori-motor* or *kinæsthetic*, for reasons which will be explained more fully later. The name *Rolandic area* which they have also received is derived from their anatomical position.

Stimulation of them produces movement of some part of the opposite side of the body; excitation of the same spot is always followed by the same movement in the same animal. In different animals excitation of anatomically corresponding spots produces similar or corresponding results. It is this which has enabled one to apply the results of stimulating areas of the monkey's brain to the elucidation of the function of the similar brain of man.

If the stimulation used is too powerful the result is a movement of other parts, and a considerable portion of the body may be thrown into convulsive movements similar to those seen in epilepsy.

Extirpation, or removal, of these areas produces paralysis of the same muscles which are thrown into action by stimulation.

The degeneration tracts after destruction of the Rolandic area are shown in fig. 494. The shaded area in each case represents the

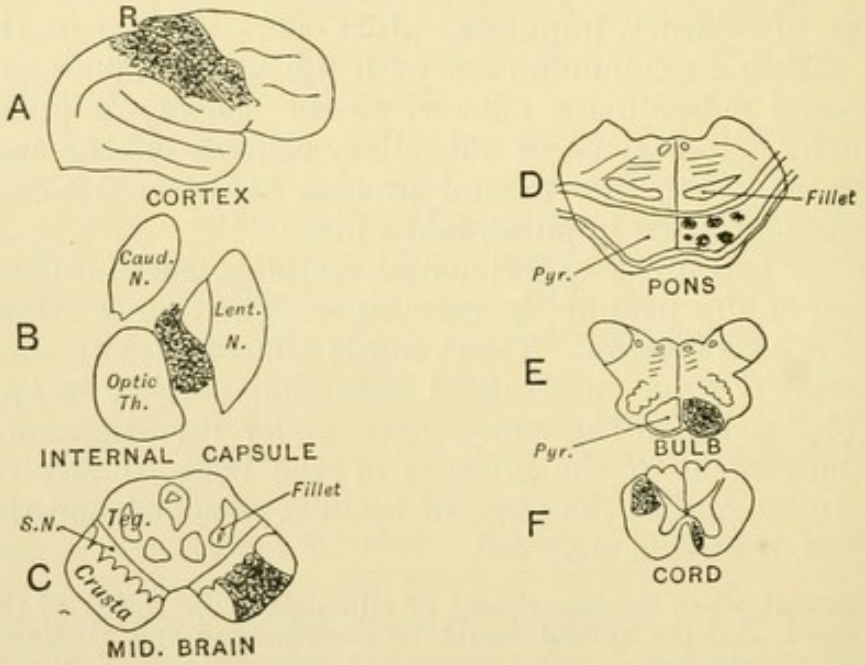


FIG. 494.—Degeneration after destruction of the Rolandic area of the right hemisphere. (After Gowers.)

injured or degenerated material; A in the cortex, B in the anterior part of the posterior limb of the internal capsule, C in the middle of the crusta of crus and mid-brain, D in the pyramidal bundles of the pons, E in the pyramid of the bulb, and F in the crossed and direct pyramidal tracts of the cord.

Sensory areas.—*Stimulation* of these produces no direct movements, but doubtless sets up a sensation called a *subjective* sensation; that is, one produced in the animal's own brain, and this indirectly leads to movements which are reflex; thus on stimulating the auditory area there is a pricking up of the ears; on stimulating the *visual area* there is a turning of the head and eyes in the direction

of the supposed visual impulse. That such movements are reflex and not direct is shown by the long period of delay intervening between the stimulation and the movement.

Extirpation of a sensory area leads to loss of the sense in question.

The rougher experiments performed by nature in the shape of diseases of the brain produce corresponding results.

Some diseases are of the nature of extirpation.

An instance of this is cerebral hæmorrhage. If the hæmorrhage is in the region of the internal capsule, it cuts through fibres to the muscles of the whole of the opposite side of the body, as they are all collected together in a narrow compass, and the condition obtained is called *hemiplegia.* The varieties of hemiplegia are numerous, according as motor or sensory fibres are most affected, and in one variety of hemiplegia, called *crossed hemiplegia*, the face is paralysed on one side of the body, the limbs on the other; this is due to injury of the tracts in the bulb, above the crossing of the pyramids.

If now the hæmorrhage occurs on the surface of the brain, a much more limited paralysis, called *monoplegia*, is the result; if the arm area is affected, there will be paralysis of the opposite arm; if the leg area, of the opposite leg; if a sensory area, there will be loss of the corresponding sense.

Some diseases, on the other hand, act as the induction currents do in artificial stimulation; they irritate the surface of the brain; such a disease is a tumour growing in the membranes of the brain; if the tumour irritates a piece of the motor area, there will be involuntary movements in the corresponding region of the body; these movements may culminate in the production of epileptiform convulsions commencing in the arm, leg, or other part of the body which corresponds to the brain area irritated. It is these cases of "*Jacksonian Epilepsy*" which have given the best results in surgery; the movement produced is an indication of the area of the brain which is being irritated, and the surgeon after trephining is able to remove the source of the mischief. If the area of the brain which is irritated is a sensory area, the result produced is a subjective sensation, similar to what we imagine is produced in animals with an electric current.

We may now proceed from these general considerations to particular points, and give maps of the brain to show the areas we have been speaking of.

Figs. 495 and 496 are views of the dog's brain. It is convenient to take this first because it was the starting-point of the experimental work on the subject in the hands of Hitzig and Fritsch. If the text beneath the figure is consulted, it will be seen that the motor areas, mapped out by the method of stimulation, are situated in the

neighbourhood of the *crucial sulcus*, which corresponds to the fissure of Rolando in man.

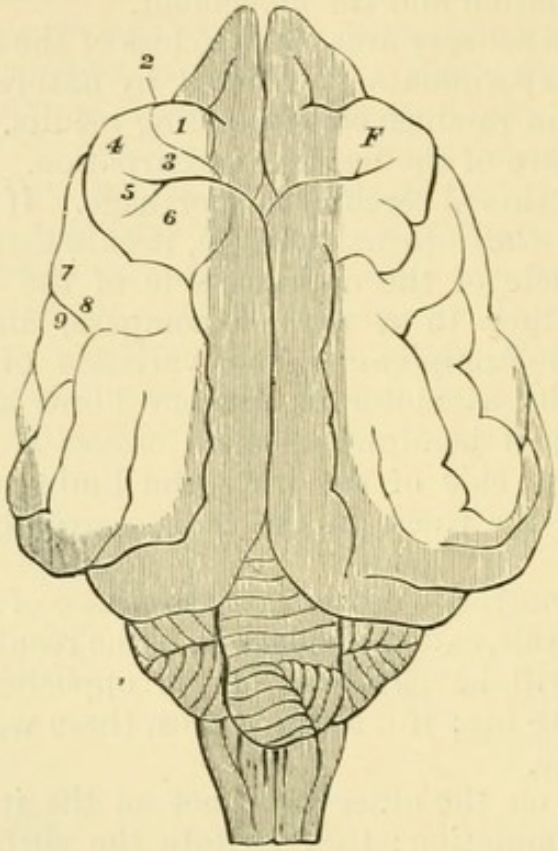


FIG. 495.

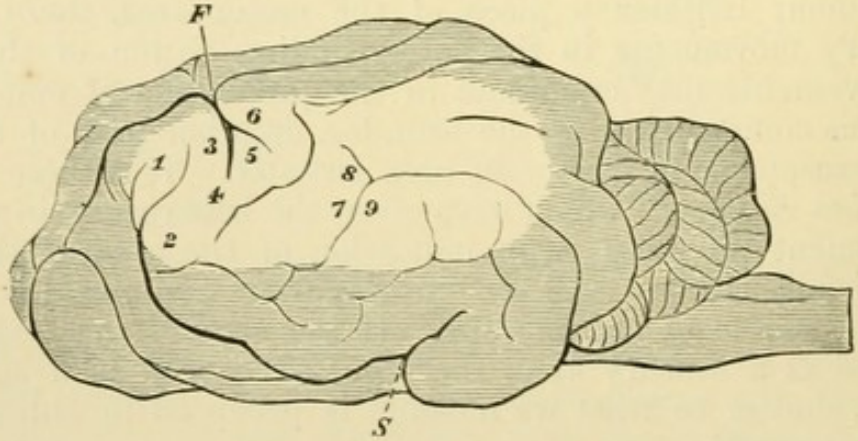


FIG. 496.

FIGS. 495 and 496.—Brain of dog, viewed from above and in profile. *F*, frontal fissure, sometimes termed crucial sulcus, corresponding to the fissure of Rolando in man. *S*, fissure of Sylvius, around which the four longitudinal convolutions are concentrically arranged; 1, flexion of head on the neck, in the median line; 2, flexion of head on the neck, with rotation towards the side of the stimulus; 3, 4, flexion and extension of anterior limb; 5, 6, flexion and extension of posterior limb; 7, 8, 9, contraction of orbicularis oculi, and the facial muscles in general. The unshaded part is that exposed by opening the skull. (Dalton.)

Coming next to the brain of the monkey, figure 497 is reproduced from Ferrier's book. He marked out the surface into a

number of circles, stimulation of each of which produced movements of various sets of muscles, face, arm, and leg from below upwards; extirpation of these same areas produced the corresponding paralysis. It will be further noticed that these areas are all grouped around the fissure of Rolando, particularly in the ascending frontal and ascending parietal convolutions; hence the term *Rolandic area* which is often applied to this region of the brain.

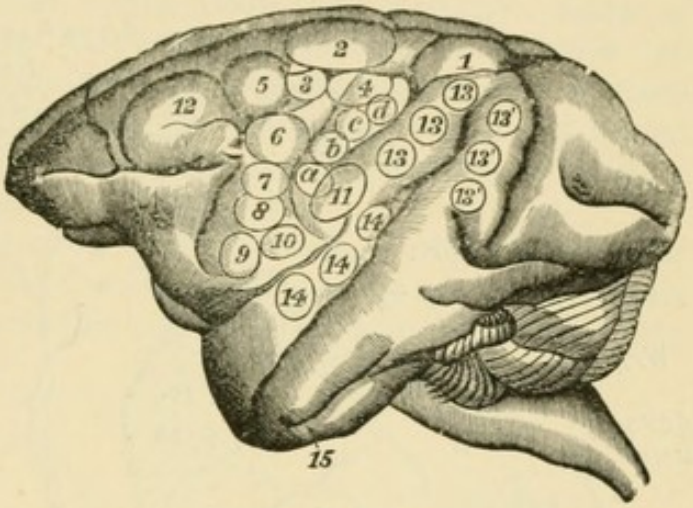


FIG. 497.

Most of our knowledge concerning the localisation of the sensori-motor area in the human brain has been deduced from experiments on the lower monkeys. Valuable as such knowledge is, infinitely more useful knowledge, from the standpoint of the human brain, would be obtained by examining the brains of those monkeys nearest to man, which are known as the anthropoid apes. The difficulty and expense of obtaining such animals has hitherto deterred investigators from performing such experiments. Horsley and Beevor examined the brain of an orang-outang some years ago, and now Sherrington and Grünbaum have made a number of experiments; several specimens of two species of chimpanzee, the orang and the gorilla, have been examined. Their conclusions are of great importance. The figure on p. 700 (fig. 498) of the chimpanzee's brain shows what has been found; the orang and the gorilla gave practically the same results, and no doubt the human brain would give identical results also if it could be examined.

The method used is to expose the brain in an anæsthetised animal, and thoroughly explore it with a weak faradic current, one electrode being placed on the brain, and the other attached to an indifferent part of the animal's body. This allows of finer localisation than is possible with the ordinary double-point electrodes.

The so-called "motor" area includes continuously the whole length of the ascending frontal, or as it is sometimes called, the precentral convolution. It never extends behind the central sulcus, or, as it is sometimes called, the fissure of Rolando. On the mesial surface it extends but a short distance, and never as far as the calloso-marginal fissure. The motor area extends also into the depth of the Rolandic and other fissures; the part of the excitable area thus hidden equals or may even exceed that on the free surface of

the hemisphere. The arrangement of the various regions of the musculature follow the segmental sequence of the cranio-spinal series to a remarkable extent; in fact, the excitable area may be compared

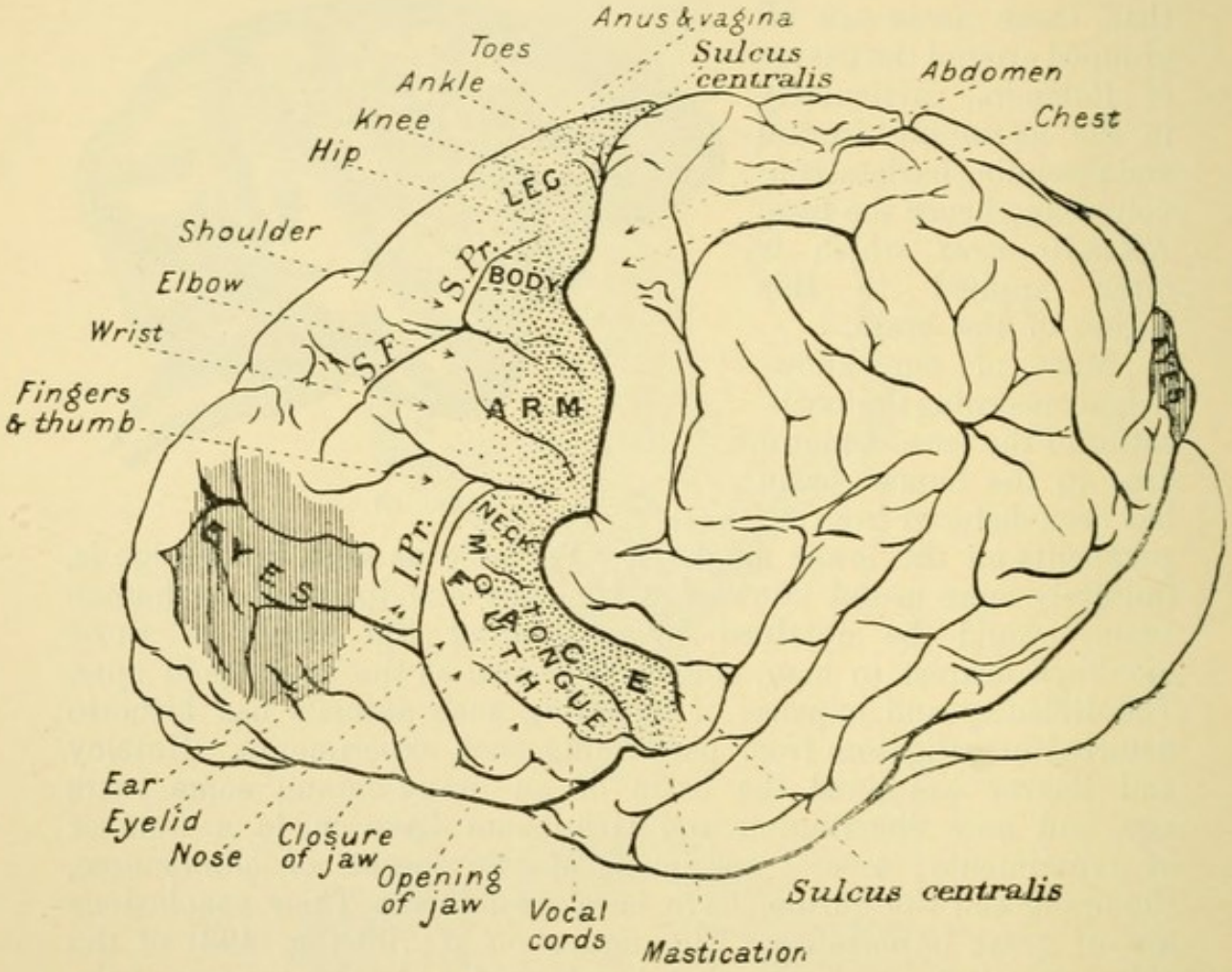


FIG. 498.—Brain of Chimpanzee. Left hemisphere viewed from side and above so as to obtain the configuration of the Rolandic area. The figure involves some foreshortening about both ends of the sulcus centralis or fissure of Rolando. The extent of the so-called motor area on the free surface of the hemisphere is indicated by black stippling which extends back to the central sulcus. Much of the "motor" area is hidden in sulci; for instance, it extends into both the central and precentral sulci. The names printed in capitals on the stippled area indicate the main subdivisions of the "motor" area; the names printed small outside the brain indicate by their pointing lines some of the chief subdivisions of the main areas. But there is much overlapping of the areas which it is not possible to indicate in a diagram of this kind. The shaded regions marked "eyes" in the frontal and occipital regions indicate the areas which under faradisation yield conjugate movements of the eyeballs. S.F. = superior frontal sulcus. S.Pr. = superior precentral sulcus. I.Pr. = inferior precentral sulcus. (After Sherrington and Grünbaum.)

to the spinal cord upside down. The accompanying figure indicates this better than any verbal description.

The sulci in the region of the cortex dealt with cannot be considered to act as physiological boundaries, and the variations in the sulci in these higher brains are so great that they prove to be precarious or even fallacious landmarks to the details of the true topography of the cortex.

It cannot fail to strike even a superficial observer how large the cortical area is that deals with movements of the head and arm regions when compared with that of the lower limb, and still more with that of the trunk. The trunk itself has a larger mass of muscular tissue, but it is in the head region (which includes the complex movements of the tongue and such structures as the vocal cords) and in the arm and hand that the movements are most varied and most delicate. No doubt this is the explanation of the greater size of their cortical representation.

The experiments of extirpation confirm those of stimulation; for example, extirpation of the hand area is followed by severe paralysis of the hand, but in a few weeks use and power return in a remarkable

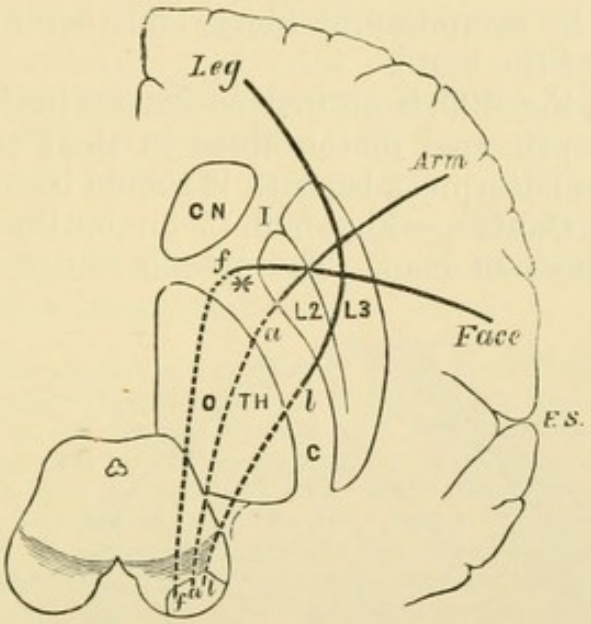


FIG. 499.—Diagram to show the relative positions of the several motor tracts in their course from the cortex to the crus. The section through the convolutions is vertical; that through the internal capsule, I, C, horizontal; that through the crus also horizontal. C.N., caudate nucleus; O.TH., optic thalamus; L2 and L3, middle and outer part of lenticular nucleus; *f*, *a*, *l*, face, arm, and leg fibres. The words in italics indicate corresponding cortical centres; F.S., fissure of Sylvius. (Gowers.)

degree. On the other hand, ablations of even larger portions of the parts behind the Rolandic fissure do not give rise to even transient paralysis, and do not lead to degeneration in the pyramidal system of fibres.

Sherrington and Grünbaum also found that the part of the frontal region which yields conjugate movements of the eyeballs is separated from the Rolandic area by a field of "inexcitable" cortex. As to the occipital lobe, only from its extreme posterior apex did faradisation yield any movement of the eyes, and then not easily. This becomes intelligible on histological examination; the large cells in the deeper layer of the grey matter are so scattered that they are called "solitary cells"; their axons pass to the oculo-motor nuclei, and so

the pathway is provided for the movements of the eyes in accordance with the necessities of vision.

The marginal convolution on the mesial surface of the hemisphere was first investigated by Schäfer and Horsley, in the lower monkeys. They found in these animals that it contained a considerable extension of the "motor" area, including the cortical centres for the trunk muscles. This, at any rate, is not the case for the higher apes, and therefore probably is not true for man.

In experiments on unilateral extirpation in animals, and in destructive lesions of one side of the brain in man, it is the muscles which act normally unilaterally which are most paralysed. The muscles which normally move bilaterally, *e.g.*, the chest muscles in breathing, the trunk muscles in maintaining an erect position, are comparatively little affected; the spinal centres of such muscles are no doubt connected by commissural fibres, and therefore can be affected from both sides of the brain.

The diagram, Fig. 499, is an instructive one indicating the relative positions of the principal motor fibres in their course from cortex to the crus. The letterpress beneath it should be carefully consulted.

The Speech Centre.—Fig. 500 is an outline map of the left cerebral hemisphere in man. The speech centre is surrounded by

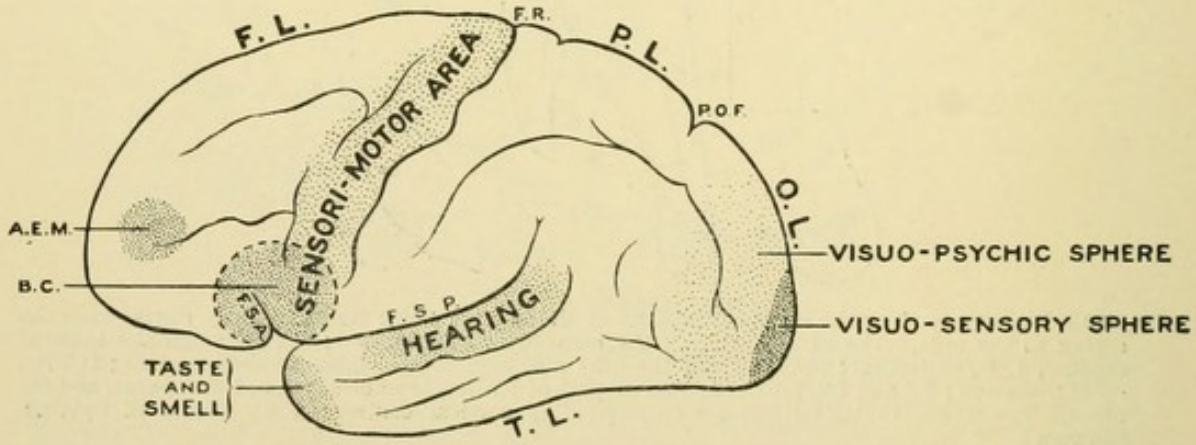


FIG. 500.—Left cerebral hemisphere, outer surface. The lobes and the principal sulci are indicated by their initial letters; A.E.M., anterior centre for eye movements; B.C., Broca's convolution.

a dotted circle. There are other centres concerned in speech, as we shall see when considering the question of association fibres; but this is the centre for the muscular actions concerned in speech. The discovery of this centre was the earliest feat in the direction of cerebral localisation. It was discovered by a French physician named *Broca;* he noticed that patients who died after hæmorrhage in the brain, but who previous to death exhibited a curious disorder of speech called *aphasia,* were found, after death, to have the seat of the hæmorrhage in this convolution. The convolution is generally called *Broca's convolution.* Experiments on animals are useless in

discovering the centre for speech. Sherrington and Grünbaum found in the higher apes that faradisation of the Broca area does not evoke vocalisation.

The most curious fact about the speech-centre is that it is unilateral; it is situated only on the left side of the brain, except in left-handed people, where it is on the right. We are thus left-brained so far as the finer movements of the hand-muscles are concerned, as in writing, and we are also left-brained in regard to speech, an action intimately associated with writing.

The visual area is in the occipital lobe. Removal of one occipital lobe in a monkey, or disease of that lobe in man, produces blindness of the same side of each retina, or inability to see the opposite half of the visual field. This is called *hemianopsia;* the head and eyes are turned to one side (*conjugate deviation* to the side of the injury). Such an operation does not destroy vision in the central portion (*macula lutea*) of either retina, because each macula sends impulses to both sides of the brain. Stimulation of one visual area leads to a subjective sensation apparently coming from the same halves of both retinæ, and also excites the solitary cells (see p. 701); this produces *conjugate deviation of head and eyes* towards the opposite side to that stimulated.

The optic radiations consist of (1) sensory fibres from the optic tracts *viâ* the external geniculate bodies; (2) efferent fibres to the centres for eye-movements; and (3) association fibres which are last developed. The last named link one convolution to others, and the two hemispheres together, and bring about association of ideas of vision in both hemispheres, and with other sensations. A large collection of such fibres runs horizontally through the grey matter. This white stripe is visible to the naked eye; it is the anatomical mark of the *visuo-sensory cortex*, and is called the *line of Gennari*. The growth of the great parietal association centre pushes the visuo-sensory area in man mainly on to the mesial surface of the hemisphere (see area 4 in figs. 506, 507. The *visuo-psychic* region (fig. 500) has no line of Gennari, but possesses many pyramidal cells in its outer layers, which play the part of association units where memory pictures are stored and visual sensations correlated with those from other sense-organs; the higher one ascends the animal scale, the greater becomes the depth of this layer. The eye centre in the frontal lobe is separated, as in the higher apes, by inexcitable grey matter from the rest of the sensori-motor area. In the lower monkeys the anterior eye centre is not insulated in this way. No cortical centre is purely motor or purely sensory, and this one, though usually called motor, has its sensory complement probably from the eyeballs and eyelids (5th nerve). The newly developed grey matter between it and the Rolandic region is an area probably concerned in the association of eye movements with equilibration and the maintenance of the erect position; we know that the fibres from the frontal lobe to the cerebellum are very numerous.

The auditory area is in the posterior part of the upper temporal convolution, and is connected to the visual by annectent gyri. **Taste and smell** are closely connected; their cerebral area is in the uncinate convolution and tip of the temporal lobe. This part is enlarged in animals with a keen sense of smell.

Munk's view, supported in this country by Bastian, Mott, and

numerous others, is that the sensory fibres from the skin and muscles terminate in the Rolandic area; and the histological researches of Golgi and Ramon y Cajal (see figs. 479 and 482) point to the same conclusion. This is, in fact, what one would expect; volition and feeling are associated together so closely physiologically, that anatomically we should expect to find the commencement of the volitional fibres contiguous to the terminations of the sensory fibres. That this is really the case has been shown by a careful examination of the sensation in animals in which the Rolandic area has been removed, and in cases of hemiplegia in man. A delicate test is to place a clip on the fingers or toes, taking care the animal does not see the clip put on. If there is loss of tactile sensibility the monkey either takes no notice at all of the clip or removes it after a long delay. Whereas if sensation is perfect the monkey at once seizes the clip and flings it away. It is found that the intensity of both the motor and sensory paralysis are directly proportional to each other. Hence the term motor area, which we have been provisionally employing for the Rolandic area, should be replaced by the more correct term **sensori-motor** or **kinæsthetic area**. These new terms indicate that what really occurs in the Rolandic area is a sense of movement, and this acts as a stimulus *viâ* the pyramidal tracts to the true motor centres which are in the opposite anterior horn of the spinal cord. If the posterior roots of the spinal nerves are divided there is a loss of sensation, and so the sense of movement cannot reach the brain from the muscles, and consequently the muscles are not called into action; when all the posterior roots coming from a limb in a monkey are cut, the muscles, so far as voluntary movements are concerned, are in fact as effectually paralysed as if the anterior roots of the spinal nerves had been cut. The muscles, however, do not degenerate as they would if the anterior roots had been cut. They merely undergo a small amount of wasting due to want of use ("disuse atrophy").

Prof. Schäfer is one prominent worker who has not accepted Munk's views on this subject. He still regards the Rolandic area as essentially motor in function. Naturally, he does not deny that it has connections with sensory fibres, but he considers it incorrect to speak of the area as a sensory one. He has produced injuries of the area without obtaining any loss of sensation, and in testing the sensations of his monkeys employs the method of stroking the skin, which he regards as more trustworthy than Schiff's clip test. The sensory disturbances observed by others he regards as due to general disturbance of the brain produced by the severity of the operation.

On referring once more to the maps of the brain, it will be seen that there are many blanks; one of these is in the anterior part of the frontal region. Extirpation or stimulation of this part of the

brain in animals produces but little result. The large size of this portion of the brain is very distinctive of the human brain, and it has therefore been supposed that here is the seat of the higher intellectual faculties. Such a question is obviously very difficult to answer by experiments on animals. Both experimental physiology and pathology have localised the sensory areas (and sensations are the materials for intellect) either within or behind the Rolandic area, but this does not necessarily mean that the frontal convolutions have nothing to do with intellectual functions. The celebrated American crowbar accident is generally quoted as a proof to the contrary; owing to the premature explosion of a charge of dynamite in one of the American mines a crowbar was sent through the frontal region of the foreman's head, removing the anterior part of his brain. He is usually stated to have subsequently returned to his work, without any noteworthy symptoms. Recent examination of the records of the case has shown that this is not correct; when he returned to work he was practically useless, having lost just those higher functions which are so important in the superintendence of other people. Mott's observations on lunatics show that this region is important for intellectual operations, though not so important as the parietal association area behind the Rolandic area; the greater the intellectual development, the larger and more convoluted does this parietal region become.

The association fibres have been the subject of special study by Flechsig, who has shown that in the development of the brain these are the last to become myelinated; white fibres do not become fully functional until they receive their medullary sheath. This coincides with the well-known fact that association of ideas is the last phase in the psychical development of the child. It has been shown that the frontal convolutions are connected by important association tracts with the more posterior regions of the brain, and that there is therefore no difficulty in understanding that the frontal convolutions play the part of a centre for the association of ideas, or in other words for intellectual operations.

Function and Myelination.

Flechsig's embryological method has given us most valuable knowledge of the structure and functions of the human brain. The method depends on the fact that various tracts of fibres become myelinated, *i.e.*, acquire their medullary sheath at successive periods of time in development. The myelin sheath appears three or four months after the axis cylinder is formed. The Weigert method of staining renders the detection of a medullary sheath an easy task. Flechsig's method is in short the complement of the Wallerian method. In the former method the tracts are isolated by the differences in the origin of the myelin sheath; in the latter method, the same object is obtained by observing the degeneration which is most noticeable in the same sheath.

In the central nervous system, the afferent projection fibres are myelinated first;

the efferent projection fibres and the association fibres are myelinated later. Thus in the human fœtus the peripheral nerves and nerve-roots become myelinated in the fifth month of intra-uterine life; of the tracts in the cord, those of Burdach and Goll (*exogenous* fibres springing from the cells of the spinal ganglia) are the first to be myelinated; next come the tracts of Flechsig (dorsal cerebellar) and of Gowers

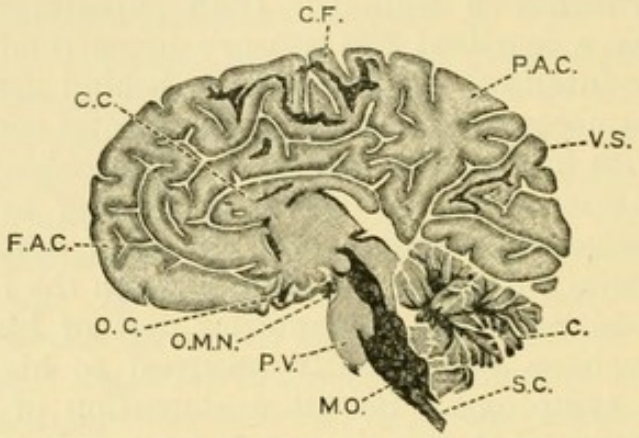


FIG. 501.—Diagram of vertical section through brain of new-born child, drawn from one of Flechsig's photographs. The section was treated by Weigert's method, by which myelinated fibres are deeply stained. Attention is drawn to the deep shading indicating myelination around the central fissure, which corresponds to the sensori-motor area, and also around the calcarine fissure in the visual sphere. The association fibres are not myelinated. The fibres of the pyramidal efferent system have also no myelin. M.O., medulla oblongata; P.V., pons Varolii; O.M.N., oculo-motor nerve; O.C., optic commissure; F.A.C., frontal association centre; C.C., corpus callosum; C.F., central fissure, or fissure of Rolando; P.A.C., posterior association centre; V.S., visual sphere; C., cerebellum; S.C., spinal cord.

(ventral cerebellar): these are *endogenous* fibres springing from cells within the cord. All these tracts are afferent. The pyramidal tracts, the great efferent or motor channels, are not myelinated until after birth. The whole afferent tract is myelinated at birth; these fibres have *in utero* been exercised in conveying impressions to the afferent reception centres, the stimuli arising from contact of the fœtal integuments with the maternal tissues. There is also early myelination around the calcarine fissure in the visual sphere, and in connection with the areas related to other special senses. This is shown in figs. 501 and 502, where the condition at birth and that some months later are compared.

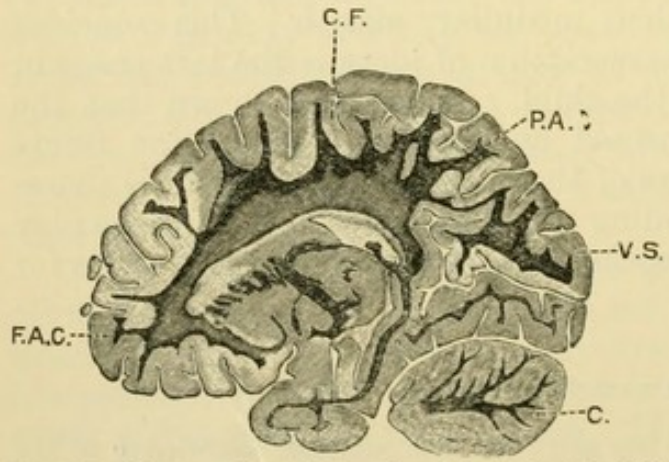


FIG. 502.—Diagram of vertical section of the brain of a child 5 months of age. The greater part of the white matter now shows myelination, thus indicating development of the association centres. The letters have the same meaning as in Fig. 501. (After Flechsig; Weigert method of staining.)

Flechsig considers that at least two-thirds of the cortex consists of neurons of association, and further that these association centres possess no neurons of the efferent or afferent projection systems. The last part of this statement is probably not correct, and has not been accepted in its entirety by the majority of neurologists.

Ambronn and Held confirm Flechsig in finding that the afferent fibres are myelinated before the efferent, in the central nervous system, but in the case of the nerve-roots this is reversed, the anterior root fibres being myelinated before the posterior.

Held has also demonstrated the important influence of stimulus on myelination.

His experiments were made on cats, dogs, and rabbits, which are born blind. If light is admitted to one eye by opening the lid, more obvious myelination is subsequently found in the corresponding optic nerve than in that of the opposite side. This is not due to the irritation caused by forcibly opening the lid, for if the lid be opened and the animal kept in the dark, no difference in the myelination of the two optic nerves is observable. Flechsig also showed that a child born at 8 months had more marked myelination of its optic nerves, a month later, than a child born in the usual way at the ninth month.

The richness of the brain in myelinated fibres increases for many years after birth with the progress of intellectual development. Kaes states this continues up to forty years of age, and that in old age the number diminishes. Myelin appears to be necessary for the functional activity of nerve tracts, and its development progresses *pari passu* with development of function; the reverse change (atrophy and degeneration) correspondingly accompanies marked disturbances of function.

Association Fibres and Association Centres.

We know by common experience that any group of muscles can be voluntarily contracted in reply to any form of stimulus, cutaneous, visual, auditory, etc. If, for instance, the wrist is flexed in response to an auditory stimulus, the nerve impulses pass first to the auditory area, then by certain fibres to the cerebral cells which control the muscles of the arm. The fibres which connect the two areas are termed *association fibres*. A diagrammatic view of the principal bundles of

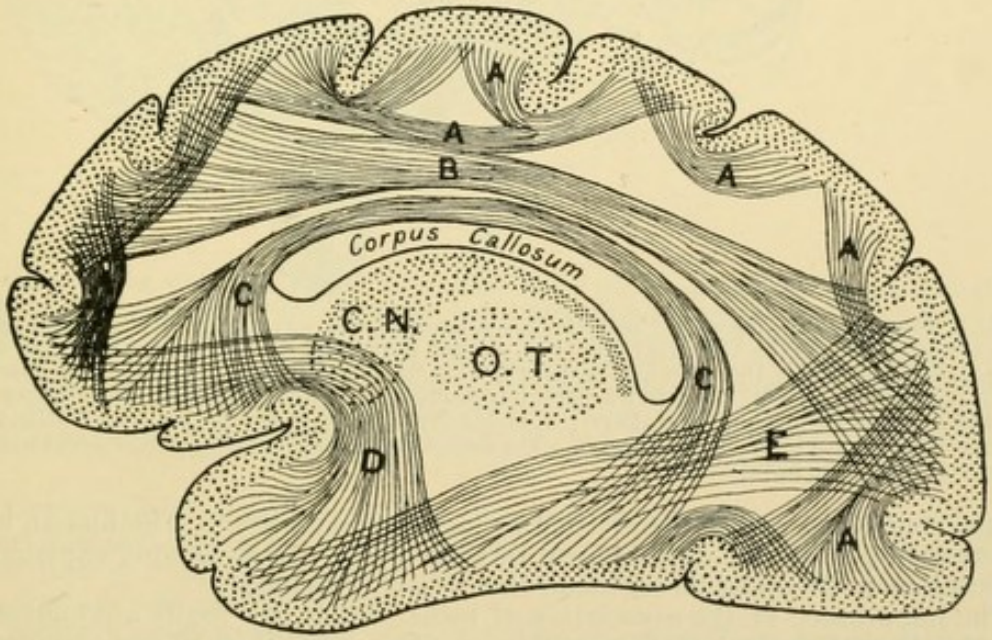


FIG. 503.—Lateral view of a human hemisphere, showing the main bundles of association fibres (Starr). A, A, between adjacent convolutions; B, between frontal and occipital areas; C, between frontal and temporal areas (cingulum); D, between frontal and temporal areas (fasciculus uncinatus); E, between occipital and temporal areas (fasciculus longitudinalis inferior); C.N., caudate nucleus; O.T., optic thalamus.

association fibres is given in fig. 503. This figure may be usefully compared with the next (fig. 504), which shows the general plan of the projection fibres.

The term "*association centres*" is given by Flechsig to those portions of the cortex that lie between the sensory centres he has been able to demonstrate. The function of these centres is first to furnish pathways between the several centres, and secondly to retain as memories previous sense impressions, so that in action they may modify the impulses sent into them, and by these modifications adjust to an almost infinite degree the form of the final response.

The association centres comprise a very large area of the cortex, and are divided into three:—(1) The great anterior association centre in the frontal lobe; (2) the posterior association centre in the parieto-temporal region; (3) the middle association centre; this is smaller and coincides with the island of Reil. These regions are in fact those in which no evident response follows excitation;

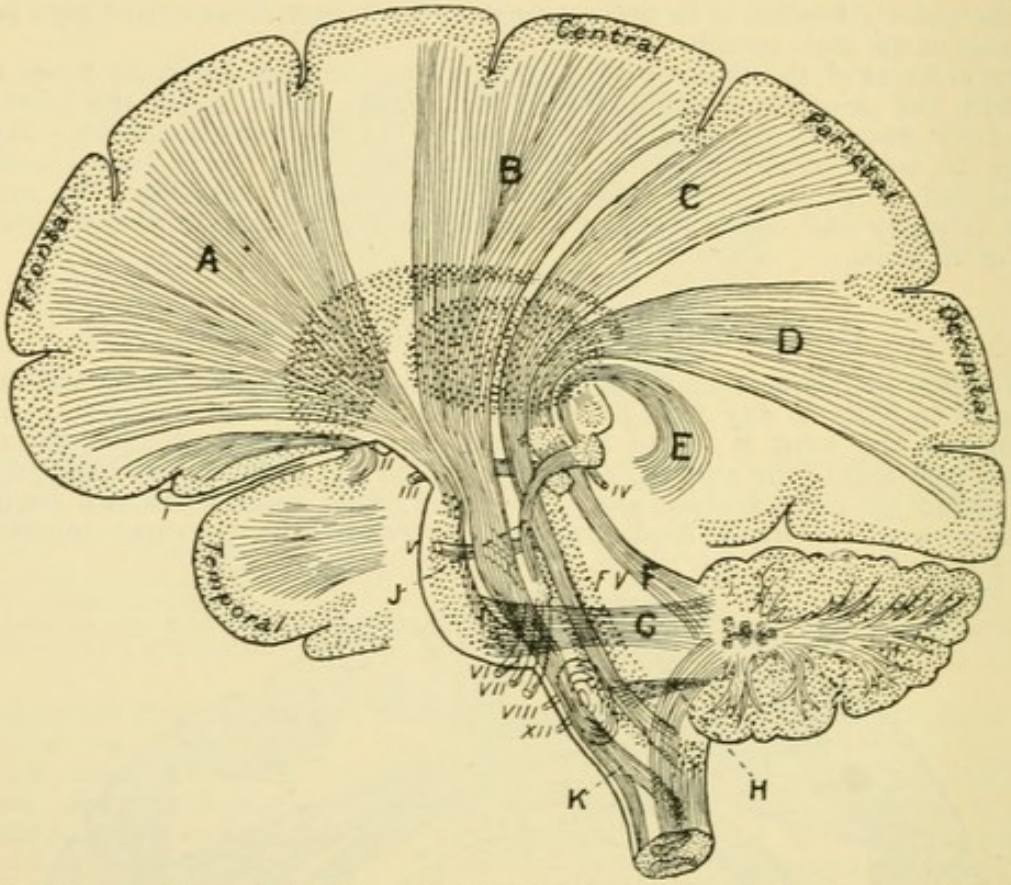


FIG. 504.—Schema of the projection fibres within the brain (Starr). A, tract from the frontal gyri to the pons nuclei and so to the cerebellum; B, motor pyramidal tract; C, sensory tract for touch (separated from B for the sake of clearness in the diagram); D, visual tract; E, auditory tract; F, G, H, superior, middle, and inferior cerebellar peduncles; J, fibres between the auditory nucleus and the inferior corpus quadrigeminum; K, motor decussation in the bulb; F.V., fourth ventricle. The numerals refer to the cranial nerves. The sensory radiations are seen to be massed towards the occipital end of the hemisphere.

they are sometimes called the "latent or inexcitable cortex." The human brain is characterised by the high development of these parts, and as already explained they are doubtless, as Flechsig terms them, the organs of thought.

The importance of the association of ideas, which has for its anatomical basis the association of cortical centres, will be at once grasped when one considers such complex actions as reading aloud or writing from dictation. The accompanying diagram (fig. 505) shows the position of the main centres involved, particulars of which will be found in the small text beneath the figure.

In reading aloud, the impressions of the words enter by the eyes, reach that portion of the visual sphere known as the *visual word centre*, travel across to the *auditory word centre* by association fibres, where the memory of their sounds is revived; another tract of association fibres connects this to the sensori-motor area in Broca's convolution called by Bastian the *glosso-kinæsthetic area*, whence motor impulses originate which finally reach the muscles concerned in pronouncing the words originally seen.

Writing from dictation is just as complex; the course of the impulses is by the auditory channels to the *auditory word centre*, then by association tracts to the *visual word centre*, where the shapes of the letters composing the words are

revived; another association tract carries the impulse thence to the sensori-motor area connected with the movements of the hand (Bastian's *cheiro-kinæsthetic area*) in the middle region of the Rolandic cortex, and finally the movement of writing is accomplished. The diverse symptoms exhibited by patients suffering from various forms of aphasia can be all explained by more or less extensive damage either to the centres themselves or to the association tracts which connect them.

The association fibres of the spinal cord are described on p. 630.

In the development of a neuron, four stages can be distinguished:—(1) Cells without processes; (2) the appearance of simple branches, the axon developing most rapidly; (3) the formation of collaterals; (4) the appearance of the medullary sheath. In the cerebral convolutions the fibres become myelinated in a strictly regular sequence; some convolutions have their fibres medullated three months before birth, while in others complete myelination has not occurred six months later. Fibres of equally great importance become medullated at the same time; those of

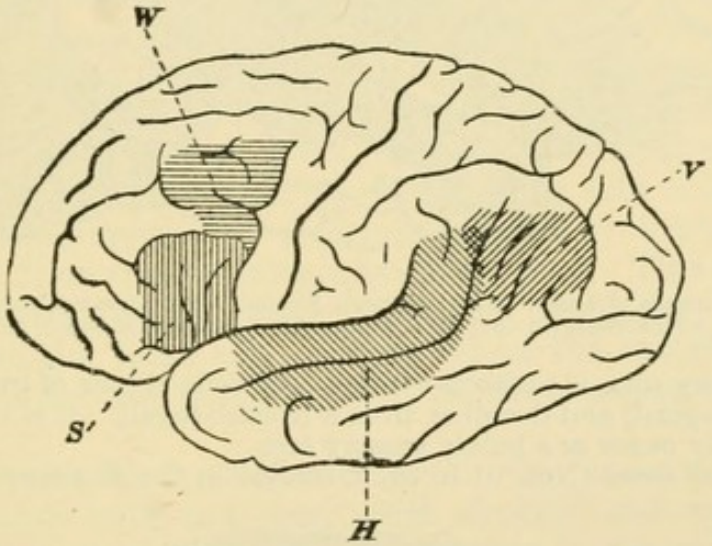


FIG. 505.—Lateral view of the left cerebral hemisphere of man (after Donaldson). V is the cortical area, damage to which produces "word blindness"; it is situated in the angular gyrus, and is called the *visual word centre*. H is the area in the superior temporal convolution, called the *auditory word centre*, damage to which produces "word deafness." S is Broca's convolution, damage to which produces loss of audible speech (motor aphasia); this is the sensori-motor area for the movements of the tongue, vocal cords, etc., concerned in speaking; Bastian terms it the *glosso-kinæsthetic area*. The area W, called by Bastian the *cheiro-kinæsthetic area*, is the corresponding region concerned in hand movements, damage to which abolishes the power of writing (agraphia).

primary importance first, and so on. In this way, myelogenetic cortical fields can be mapped out, which retain their contours for some time. Thirty-six of such fields were made out by Flechsig, and can be divided chronologically into three groups, *primary*, *intermediate*, and *terminal*.

The *primary* fields are darkly shaded in the accompanying diagrams (figs. 506 and 507).

They are 10 in number, and are those provided with myelinated fibres at birth; they contain the seats of the cortical representation of all the senses. To No. 1 is assigned the cutaneous and muscular sense; to No. 2 the sense of smell; to No. 4 that of vision; to No. 5 that of hearing. The functions of some of the primary areas had not been determined. The principal efferent projection tracts originate from the primary fields; thus the pyramidal tract starts from No. 1, but mainly from the ascending frontal convolution.* The sensory fibres connected with the skin and muscles terminate mainly in the ascending parietal convolution. The inferior fornix is connected with Nos. 2 and 3. The inner bundle of the pes springs from 1 b, 6, 12, 14 and 15; the origin of the outer bundle of the pes is doubtful. From the visual area (No. 4) a tract arises which passes mainly into the anterior

* This coincides well with the work of Sherrington and Grünbaum (p. 699).

corpus quadrigeminum; the auditory zone (No. 5), towards which a tract proceeds that leads from the internal corpus geniculatum, sends an outgoing tract into the column of Türck, and thus motor functions of the upper part of the body are possible as a direct result of auditory impressions. In fact in every case each

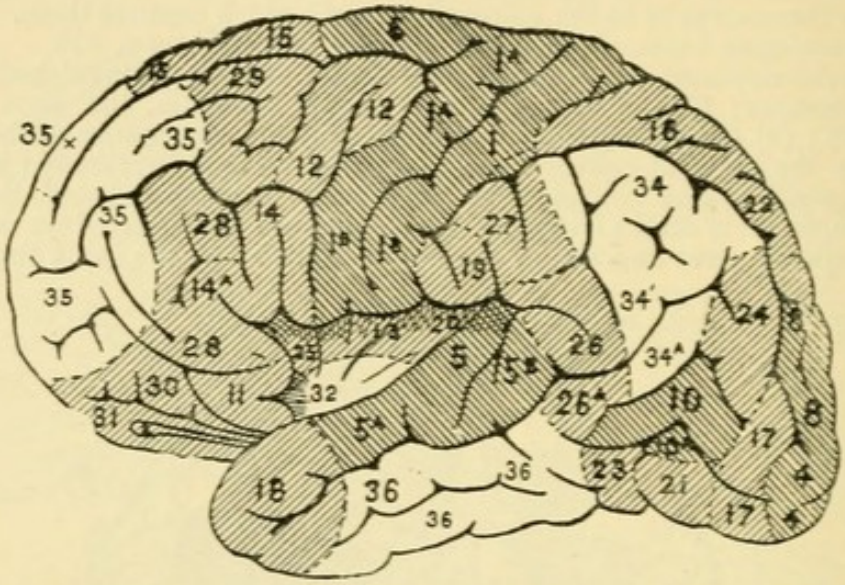


FIG. 506.— Outer surface of human brain, showing Flechsig's developmental zones; primary (1—10) darkly shaded; intermediate (11—31), less deeply shaded; terminal (32—36), not shaded. (Flechsig.)

primordial sensory zone is connected with a well-defined pair of tracts, one proceeding to it (cortico-petal) and the other from it (cortico-fugal). It is thus impossible to speak of a purely motor or a purely sensory area.

The *terminal* areas (Nos. 31 to 36, unshaded in the diagrams) do not begin to

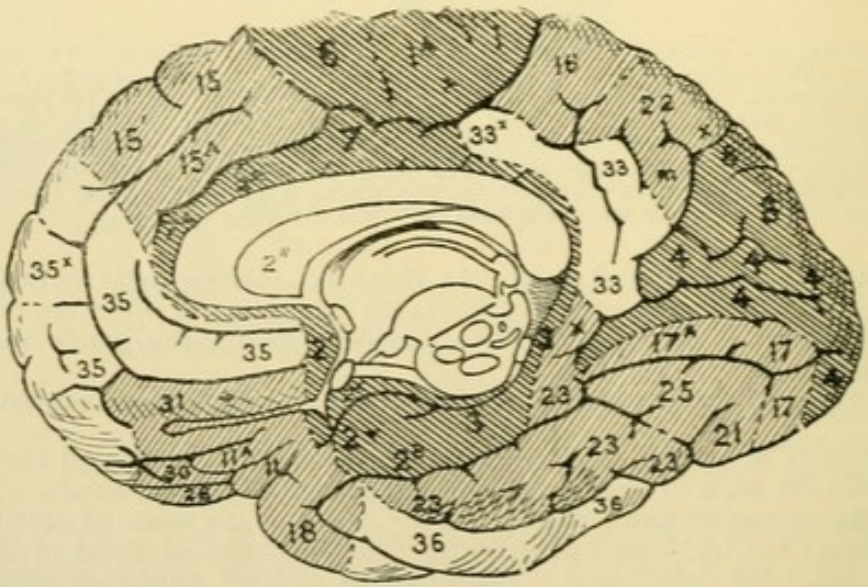


FIG. 507.—Inner surface of same. (Flechsig.)

be myelinated until at least a month after birth. These and the majority of the *intermediate* areas (Nos. 11 to 31, lightly shaded in the diagrams) show few or no projection fibres * even 8 months after birth. They comprise, in fact, the association centres, and are rich in long association fibres.

* That they never have any projection fibres at all is denied by most observers.

Electrical Variation in Central Nervous System.

Du Bois Reymond found that the spinal cord, like a nerve, exhibits a demarcation current between its longitudinal surface and a cross-section, and that a diminution of this current occurs on excitation (negative variation). Gotch and Horsley investigated the currents of the cord very thoroughly. If the Rolandic area of the cortex is stimulated, and a portion of the thoracic region of the spinal cord is led off to a galvanometer, a persistent negative variation followed by a series of intermittent variations is observed; this exactly corresponds to the tonic spasm followed by clonic contractions which occur in the muscles excited by this means.

The galvanometer in the hands of these observers also proved to be a valuable instrument for determining the paths taken by nervous impulses in the cord. One example will suffice: If the central end of one sciatic nerve is stimulated, the chief electrical variation in the cord is noticed to be obtained when the same side of the cord is led off to the galvanometer, but a certain amount of electrical variation is obtainable from the opposite side of the cord. This coincides with the fact ascertained by other methods, that the main sensory channel is on the same side of the cord as the entering nerves, but that there is a certain small amount of decussation below the level of the bulb.

Electromotive changes also occur during activity in the cortex cerebri, but they have not been much studied, and we do not know whether they have their seat in the grey or in the underlying white matter.

Sleep.

The conditions that favour sleep are:—

(1) A diminution of the impulses entering the central nervous system by the afferent channels. This is under our voluntary control, as, for instance, in closing the eyes, or retiring to a quiet room.

(2) Fatigue. This diminishes the readiness of the central nervous system to respond to stimuli.

The first two hours of sleep are always the most profound; later on, relatively weak stimuli will cause awakening. Of the parts of the central nervous system, the spinal cord is always less profoundly affected than the brain, but even the brain is never entirely irresponsive, and unless slumber is very profound, dreams are the subjective result of external stimuli.

Sleep has been attributed by some to changes in the blood-supply of the brain, and ultimately referred to fatigue of the vaso-motor centres. The existence of an effective vaso-motor mechanism in the

cerebral blood-vessels themselves is problematical (see p. 311); so that if changes occur in the cerebral blood-pressure or rate of flow, they are mainly secondary to those which are produced in other parts of the body. Plethysmographic records from the arm of a sleeping man show a diminution in its volume every time he is disturbed, even though the disturbance may not be sufficient to awaken him. This is interpreted as meaning a diminution in the blood of the body, and a corresponding increase in the blood-flow through the brain. It is, however, quite possible that the vascular condition is rather the concomitant or consequence of sleep than its cause.

Some of the theories to account for sleep have been chemical. Thus certain observers have considered that sleep is the result of the action of chemical materials produced during waking hours, which have a soporific effect on the brain; according to this theory awakening from sleep is due to the action of certain other materials produced during rest, which have the opposite effect. Obersteiner has gone so far as to consider that the soporific substances are reducing in nature, and others regard them as alkaloidal. These theories all rest upon the slimsiest foundations, and none has yet been found to stand experimental tests.

Then there are what we may term histological theories of sleep, and these are equally unsatisfactory. The introduction of the Golgi method opened a fresh field for investigators, and several have sought to find by this method a condition of the neurons produced by narcotics such as opium and chloroform, which is different from that which obtains in the waking state.

Demoor and others found that in animals in which deep anæsthesia has occurred, that the dendrites exhibit moniliform swellings, that is, a series of minute thickenings or varicosities. On the strength of this observation, he has formulated what we may call a bio-physical theory of sleep. In the waking state, the neighbouring nerve units are in contact with each other; transmission of nerve impulses from neuron to neuron is then possible, and the result is consciousness; during sleep the dendrites are retracted in an amœboid manner; the neurons are therefore separated, and the result is unconsciousness.

Lugaro, on the other hand, takes the precisely contrary view. He was not able to discover moniliform enlargements, and his bio-physical hypothesis is that the interlacing of dendrites is much more intimate during sleep than during consciousness. He therefore explains sleep by supposing that the definite and limited relationships between neurons no longer exists, but are lost and rendered ineffective by the universality of the connecting paths. It is not very difficult to explain such divergence of views, for they both

depend mainly on observations made by a single method; and the method itself is open to objection. It is one which gives even in the same brain most inconstant results, and is not calculated to show much more than a mere outline of a few of the cells and their branches. So much doubt has arisen of late in regard to the trustworthiness of the method, that many neurologists are beginning to doubt whether the neuron theory implying absolute non-continuity of nerve units has been satisfactorily proved, and there is a tendency to return to the idea of a connecting network not very different from that originally put forward by Gerlach.

A more satisfactory investigation of the effect of anæsthetics on nerve-cells was carried out by Hamilton Wright.

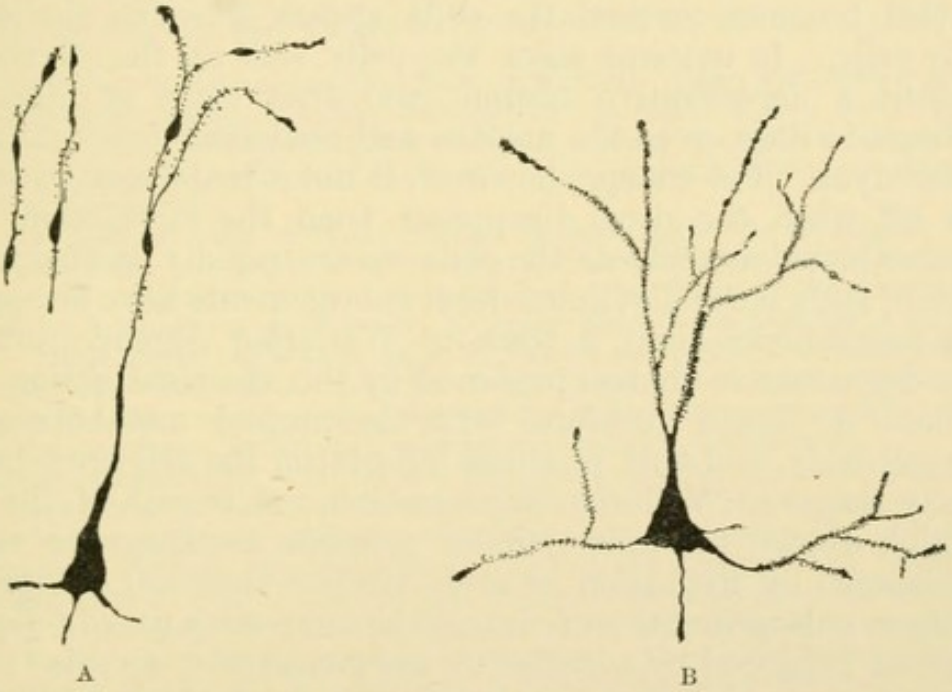


FIG. 508.—Moniliform enlargements on dendrites of nerve-cells, rendered evident by Cox's modification of Golgi's method. A, in a cortical cell of a rabbit; B, in a corresponding cell of a dog's brain, after six hours' anæsthetisation with ether in each case. (Hamilton Wright.)

He used rabbits and dogs, and subjected them to ether and chloroform narcosis for periods varying from half an hour to nine hours. In both animals he found that the nerve-cells are affected, but in rabbits much more readily. This accords quite well with what is known regarding the susceptibility of rabbits as compared to dogs towards the influence of these narcotising agents. In a rabbit, the nerve-cells, especially of the cerebrum, show changes even after only half an hour's anæsthesia, but in dogs at least four hours' anæsthesia must be employed. By the Golgi method the moniliform enlargements can be seen. These become more numerous, larger, and encroach more and more on the dendritic stems, the longer the anæsthesia is kept up. The accompanying illustrations show the appearances seen (fig. 508).

Lugaro's failure to find these appearances is doubtless due to his not having maintained the anæsthesia long enough in his dogs.

Wright started his work with a bias in favour of Demoor's bio-physical theory, but he soon found that the theory was untenable; the results of his observations have shown him that the action of anæsthetics is bio-chemical rather than bio-physical, and he has been led to this conclusion by the employment of other histological methods, particularly the most sensitive one we possess, namely, the methylene-blue reaction.

Owing to the chemical action of the anæsthetic on the cells, the Nissl bodies have no longer an affinity for methylene-blue, and the cells consequently present what Wright calls a rarefied appearance; when this becomes marked the cells appear like the skeletons of healthy cells. In extreme cases the cells look as though they had undergone a degenerative change, and after eight or nine hours' anæsthesia in dogs, even the nucleus and nucleolus lose their affinity for basic dyes. The change, however, is not a real degeneration, and passes off when the drug disappears from the circulation. Even after nine hours' anæsthesia the cells return rapidly to their normal condition, stain normally, moniliform enlargements have disappeared, and no nerve-fibres show a trace of Wallerian degeneration. The pseudo-degenerative change produced by the chemical action of the anæsthetic no doubt interferes with the normal metabolic activity of the cell-body, and this produces effects on the cell-branches. In the early stages of Wallerian degeneration, the branch of the nerve-cell which we call the axis-cylinder presents swellings or varicosities, produced by hydration or some similar chemical change. The moniliform enlargements seen during the temporary pseudo-degenerative effects produced by anæsthetics are comparable to this.* These enlargements are therefore not the primary cause of loss of consciousness, but are merely secondary results of changes in the cell-body. When a tree begins to wither the earliest apparent change is noticed in the branches most remote from the centre of nutrition, the root; as the changes in the centre of nutrition become more profound, the larger branches become implicated, but the seat of the mischief is not primarily in the branches. This illustration may serve to render intelligible what is found in nerve-cells and their branches.

Whether the appearances found in dogs and rabbits are applicable to the human subject is another question. I am inclined to think that we may safely regard them as such; there is no reason why an anæsthetic should act differently in different animals. The resistance of the animal is a variable factor, and this causes a varia-

* Some observers look upon the varicosities as artifacts. If they are, they ought to have been found in all Wright's specimens, for the method of preparation was the same throughout.

tion in degree only; the effect is probably the same in kind for all animals, man included.

But I feel that we should be very chary in concluding that the artificial sleep of a deeply-narcotised animal is any criterion of what occurs during normal sleep. The sleep of anæsthesia is a pathological condition due to the action of a poison. The drug reduces the chemico-vital activities of the cells, and is, in a sense, dependent on an increasing condition of exhaustion, which may culminate in death. Normal sleep, on the other hand, is not produced by a poison, or at any rate we have no evidence of any poison; it is the normal manifestation of one stage in the rhythmical activity of nerve-cells, and though it may be preceded by fatigue or exhaustion, it is accompanied by repair, the constructive side of metabolic activity.

Loss of sleep is more damaging than starvation. Dogs will recover after being starved for three weeks, but they die from loss of sleep in five days. The body temperature falls, reflexes disappear, and *post-mortem* the brain is found to contain capillary hæmorrhages, the cord is dry and anæmic, and fatty degeneration is found in most of the tissues.

In man, loss of sleep curiously enough causes a slight rise in weight; the body temperature falls; the excretion of nitrogen and still more so that of phosphoric acid increases; the reactions of the muscular, and later those of the nervous, system diminish in intensity, except that in all cases there is an increase in acuteness of vision. These experiments were made by Patrick and Gilbert on three young men, who voluntarily went without sleep for ninety hours. At the end of the experiment a very small extra amount of sleep beyond the normal caused complete restoration, and all the symptoms, including the increase of weight, disappeared.

Action of anæsthetics.—Moore and Roaf point out that the cells usually investigated, as in Wright's work, are the nerve cells, for the state of quiescence produced in these by an anæsthetic underlies the state of unconsciousness. All other cells are, however, similarly affected, although in varying degree. The changes noted by Wright form a signal of the changes produced in protoplasm by the prolonged action of the anæsthetic. The action must be due to a change in some substance present in all cells, and this substance is protein. They have shown that unstable compounds of protein and chloroform are obtainable, hence the great solubility of chloroform in blood as compared to water. The chloroform-protein compound may be compared to oxyhæmoglobin, for it undergoes dissociation in the same kind of way. Just as oxyhæmoglobin parts with its oxygen to the tissue-cells, so the chloroform parts company from the blood-protein, and enters into combination with the cell-protein, limiting its activity and producing quiescence or anæsthesia. When the administration of the anæsthetic ceases, the chloroform tension in the blood is no longer maintained, the combination between cell-protein and chloroform dissociates, and anæsthesia passes off.

CHAPTER XLIX

FUNCTIONS OF THE CEREBELLUM

In past times there have been several views held as to the functions of the cerebellum. One of the oldest of these was the idea that the cerebellum was associated with the function of generation; another view, first promulgated by Willis, was that the cerebellum contained the centres which regulate the functions of organic life; this arose from the circumstance that diseases of the cerebellum are often associated with nausea and vomiting; it is a familiar fact that in displacements of equilibrium such as occur on board ship in a rough sea, or in the disease called Menière's disease, sickness is a frequent result; it appears from this that the cerebellum does receive from or send to the viscera certain impulses. The third and last of these older theories was that the cerebellum was the centre for sensation. This arose from the fact that certain of the afferent channels of the spinal cord were traced into the cerebellum. The impulses that travel along these, however, though afferent, are not truly sensory, and their reception in the cerebellum is not associated with consciousness.

The true function of the cerebellum was first pointed out by Flourens, who showed that the cerebellum is the great centre for the co-ordination of muscular movement, and especially for that variety of co-ordination which is called equilibration—that is, the harmonious adjustment of the working of the muscles which maintain the body in a position of equilibrium.

It must not be supposed from this that the cerebellum is the sole centre for co-ordination. We have already seen that all the machinery necessary for carrying out very complicated locomotive movements is present in the spinal cord. The higher centres set this machinery going, and the work of arranging what muscles are to act, and in what order, is carried out by the whole of the grey matter from the corpora striata to the end of the spinal cord, including such outgrowths as the corpora quadrigemina and cerebellum. An instance of a complex co-ordinated movement is seen in what we learnt to call in the last chapter *conjugate deviation of head and eyes.* The higher cortical centre gives the general word of command to turn the head

and eyes to the right: the subsidiary centres or subordinate officials arrange that this is to be accomplished by the external rectus of the right eye supplied by the right sixth nerve, the internal rectus of the left eye supplied by the left third nerve, and numerous muscles of neck and back of both sides supplied by numerous nerves. The relaxation of the antagonistic muscles has also to be provided for. We thus see how the complicated intercrossing of fibres and connections of the centres of the various nerves are brought into play.

The functions of the cerebellum are investigated by the same two methods of experiment (*stimulation* and *extirpation*) that are employed in similar researches on the cerebrum. The anatomical connections of the cerebellum with other parts of the cerebro-spinal axis (see p. 662) have been chiefly elucidated by the degeneration method.

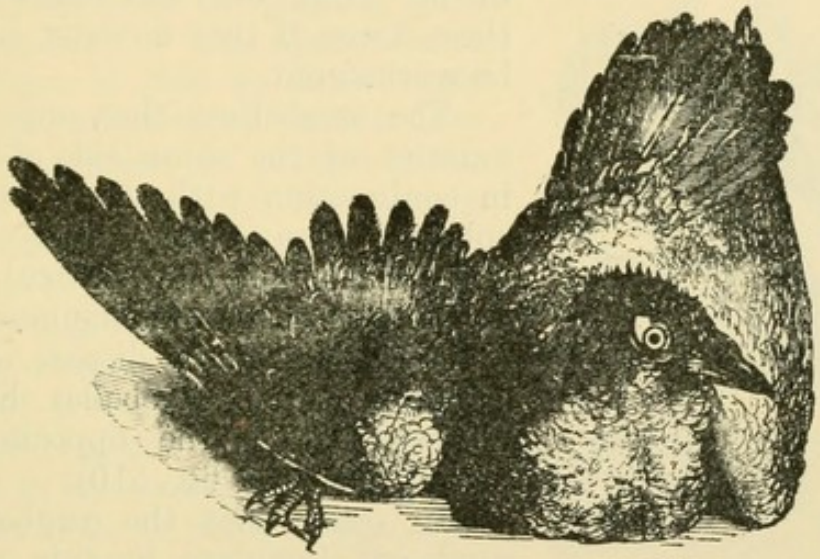


FIG. 509.—Pigeon after removal of the cerebellum. (Dalton.)

Each side of the cerebellum has three peduncles: the *superior* peduncle connecting it to the opposite hemisphere of the cerebrum, the *inferior* peduncle connecting it mainly to the same side of the spinal cord, and the *middle* peduncle contains fibres which link the two halves of the cerebellum together in a physiological though not in an anatomical sense. The upper end of the inferior peduncle terminates in the vermis; in some of the lower animals the vermis is practically the only part of the cerebellum which is present, and it is this part of the cerebellum which is principally concerned in the co-ordination of the bodily movements. The cerebellar hemispheres are especially connected with the opposite cerebral hemispheres; and possibly just as the different regions of the body have corresponding areas in the cerebrum, so also they are similarly represented in the cerebellum; but localisation of function in the cerebellum has not gone sufficiently far yet to make this a certainty.

If the cerebellum is removed in an animal, or if it is the seat of

disease in man, the result is a condition of slight muscular weakness; but the principal symptom observed is *inco-ordination*, chiefly evidenced by a staggering gait similar to that seen in a drunken man. It is called *cerebellar ataxy*.

This condition is well illustrated in the figure on p. 717 (fig. 509); the disturbed condition of the animal contrasts very forcibly with the sleepy state produced by removal of the cerebrum (see fig. 493).

In order that the cerebellum may duly execute its function of equilibration, it is necessary that it should send out impulses; this it does by fibres that leave its cells and pass out through its peduncles; they pass out to the opposite cerebral hemisphere, and so influence the discharge of the impulses from the cortex of the cerebrum. It is also probable that impulses pass out to the cord (see dotted line in fig. 482), but the exact course of these fibres, if they do exist, has still to be worked out.

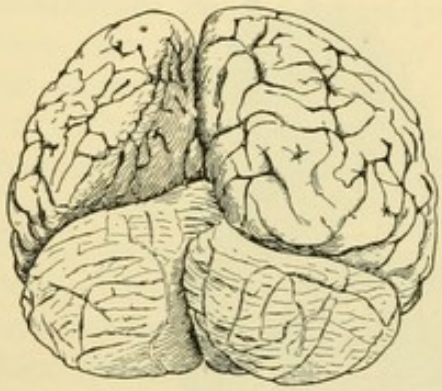


FIG. 510.—This is a reproduction of a photograph of a lunatic's brain lent me by Dr Fricke. One cerebral and the opposite cerebellar hemisphere are atrophied.

The cerebellum thus acts upon the muscles of the same side of the body in conjunction with the cerebral hemisphere of the opposite side. The close inter-relation of one cerebral with the opposite cerebellar hemisphere is shown in cases of brain disease, in which atrophy of one cerebellar hemisphere follows that of the opposite cerebral hemisphere (see fig. 510).

In order that the cerebellum may send out impulses in this way, it is necessary that it receive impulses which guide it by keeping it informed of the position of the body in space. These afferent impulses are of four kinds, namely:—

1. Tactile.
2. Motorial.
3. Visual.
4. Labyrinthine.

1. *Tactile impressions.*—The importance of the tactile sense is obvious; and in diseases of the afferent tracts, loss of that sense in the lower limbs leads to disturbances of equilibrium; in such cases a man has difficulty in balancing himself while standing with his eyes shut. Sherrington, however, has shown how comparatively unimportant is the loss of tactile sensibility from the feet. A cat, in which the feet have been completely desensitised by division of all their nerves, can stand and walk without obvious inconvenience. It is not until the sensitiveness of the joints, especially in the upper segments of the limb, is interfered with that marked disturbances of balance are noticeable.

2. *Motorial impressions.*—Even more important than the tactile sense from the skin is the sense which enables us to know what we are doing with our muscles. We have hitherto chiefly spoken of the muscular nerves as being motor; they also contain sensory fibres; these pass from the muscles, and their tendons to the posterior roots of the spinal nerves, and the impulses ascend the sensory tracts through cord and brain to reach the cerebellum and the Rolandic area. In many cases of locomotor ataxy there is but little loss of tactile sensibility, and the condition of inco-ordination is then chiefly due to the loss of impressions from motorial organs (muscles and joints, see further, p. 742).

3. *Visual impressions.*—The use of visual impressions in guiding the nervous centres for the maintenance of equilibrium is seen in those cases of locomotor ataxy where there is loss of equilibrium when the patient closes his eyes. Destruction of the eyes in animals often causes them to spin round and lose their balance. The giddiness experienced by many people on looking at moving water, or after the onset of a squint, or when objects are viewed under unusual circumstances, as in the ascent of a mountain railway, is due to the same thing. The importance of keeping one's eyes open is brought home to one very forcibly when one is walking in a perilous position, as along the edge of a precipice, where an upset of the equilibrium would be attended with serious consequences.

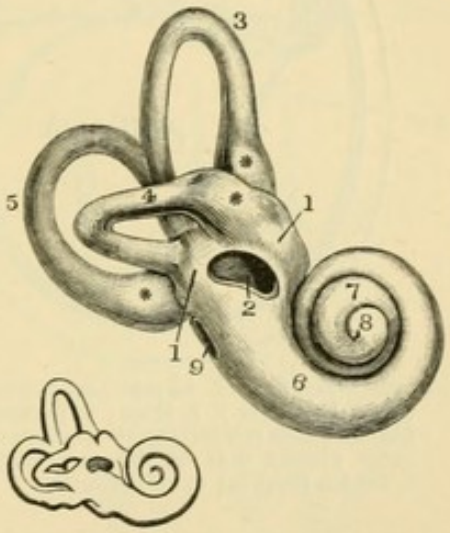


FIG. 511.—Right bony labyrinth, viewed from the outer side. The specimen here represented was prepared by separating piecemeal the looser substance of the petrous bone from the dense walls which immediately enclose the labyrinth. 1, the vestibule; 2, fenestra ovalis; 3, superior semicircular canal; 4, horizontal or external canal; 5, posterior canal; *, ampullæ of the semicircular canals; 6, first turn of the cochlea; 7, second turn; 8, apex; 9, fenestra rotunda. The smaller figure in outline below shows the natural size. (Sömmering.)

4. *Labyrinthine impressions.*—These are the most important of all; they are the impressions that reach the central nervous system from that part of the internal ear called the labyrinth. Here, however, we must pause to consider first some anatomical facts in connection with the semicircular canals that make up the labyrinth. Fig. 511 is an external view of the internal ear; it is enclosed within the petrous portion of the temporal bone; and consists of three parts—the vestibule (1), the three semicircular canals (3, 4, 5) which open into the vestibule, and the tube, coiled like a snail's shell, called the cochlea (6, 7, 8). The cochlea is the part of the apparatus which is concerned in the reception of auditory impressions; it is supplied

by the cochlear division of the eighth or auditory nerve. The remainder of the internal ear is concerned not in hearing, but in the reception of the impressions we are now studying. Within the vestibule are two chambers made of membrane, called the utricle and the saccule; these communicate with one another and with the canal of the cochlea. Within each bony semicircular canal is a membranous semicircular canal of similar shape. Each canal is filled with a watery fluid called *endolymph*, and separated from the bony canal by another fluid called *perilymph*. Each canal has a swelling at one end called the ampulla. The membranous canals open into the utricle; the *horizontal* canal by each of its ends; the *superior* and *posterior* vertical canals by three openings, these two canals being connected at their non-ampullary ends.

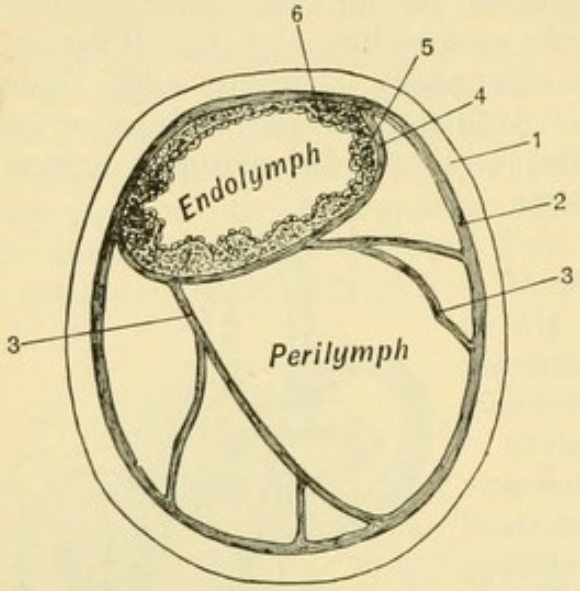


FIG. 512.—Section of human semicircular canal. (After Rüdinger.) 1, Bone; 2, periosteum; 3, 3, fibrous bands connecting the periosteum to 4, the outer fibrous coat of the membranous canal; 5, tunica propria; 6, epithelium.

Fig. 512 shows in transverse section the way in which the membranous is contained within the bony canal; the membranous

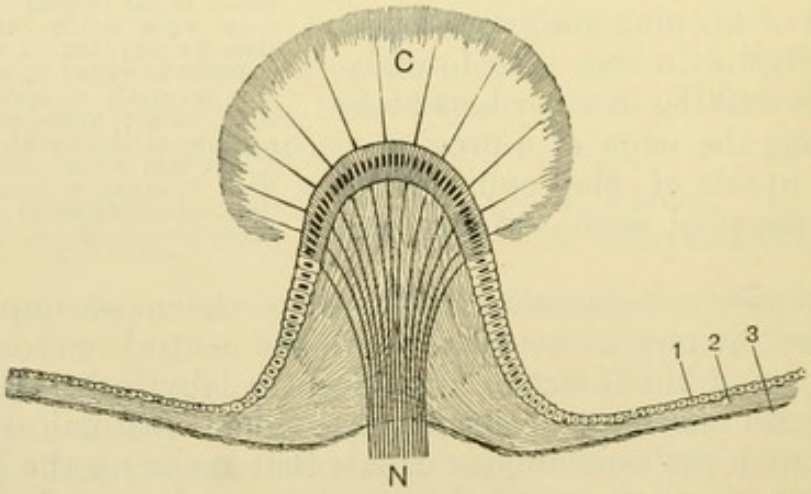


FIG. 513.—Section through the wall of the ampulla of a semicircular canal, passing through the crista acoustica. 1, Epithelium; 2, tunica propria; 3, fibrous layer of canal; N, bundles of nerve-fibres; C, cupula, into which the hairs of the hair-cells project. (After Schäfer).

canal consists of three layers, the outer of which is fibrous and continuous with the periosteum that lines the bony canal; then comes the *tunica propria*, composed of homogeneous material, and thrown

into papillæ except just where the attachment of the membranous to the bony canal is closest; and the innermost layer is a somewhat flattened epithelium.

At the ampulla there is a different appearance; the tunica propria is raised into a hillock called the *crista acustica* (see fig. 513); the cells of the epithelium become columnar in shape, and to some of them fibres of the auditory nerve pass, arborising round them; these cells are provided with stiff hairs, which project into what is called the *cupula*, a mass of mucus-like material containing otoliths or crystals of calcium carbonate. Between the hair-cells are fibre-cells which act as supports (fig. 514). When the endolymph in the interior of the canals is thrown into vibration, the hairs of the hair-cells are affected, and a nervous impulse is set up in the contiguous nerve-fibres, which carry it to the central nervous system.

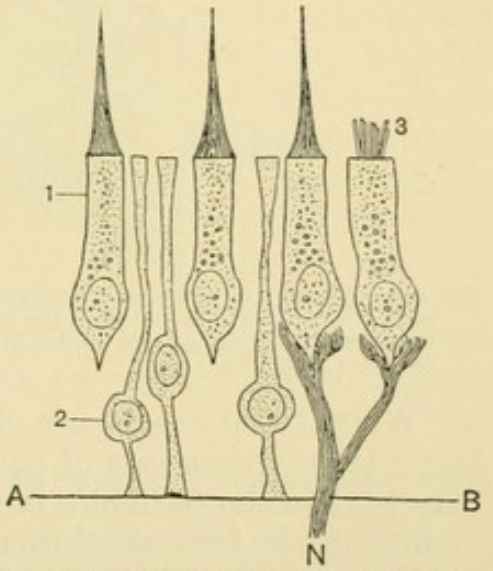


FIG. 514.—1, Hair-cell; 3, hair-cell, showing the hair broken, and the base of the hair split into its constituent fibrils; 2, fibre-cell; N, bundle of nerve-fibres which have lost their medullary sheath, and terminate by arborising round the base of the hair-cells; A B, surface of tunica propria. (After Retzius.)

The walls of the saccule and utricle are similar in composition, and each has a similar hillock, called a *macula*, to the hair-cells on which nerve-fibres are distributed.

The macula of the utricle and the cristæ of the superior and horizontal canals are supplied by the vestibular division of the eighth or auditory nerve. The macula of the saccule and the crista of the posterior canal are supplied by a branch of the cochlear division of the same nerve (see p. 655).

It will be noticed that the canals of each side are in three planes at right angles to each other, and we learn the movements of our body with regard to the three dimensions of space by means of impressions from the ampullary endings of the auditory nerve; these impressions are set up by the varying pressure of the endolymph in the ampullæ.

Thus a sudden turning of the head from right to left will cause movement of the endolymph towards, and therefore increased pressure on, the ampullary nerve-endings of the left horizontal canal, and diminished pressure on the corresponding nerve-endings of the right side. It is probable that resulting from such a movement two impulses reach the brain, one the effect of increased pressure in one ampulla, the second the effect of decreased pressure in its fellow.

"One canal can be affected by, and transmit the sensation of

rotation about one axis in one direction only; and for complete perception of rotation in any direction about any axis, six canals are required in three pairs, each pair being in the same or parallel planes, and their ampullæ turned opposite ways. Each pair would thus be sensitive to any rotation about a line at right angles to its plane or planes, the one canal being influenced by rotation in one direction, the other by rotation in the opposite direction." (Crum-Brown.)

The two horizontal canals are in the same plane; the posterior vertical of one side is in a plane parallel to that of the superior vertical of the other side (see fig. 515).

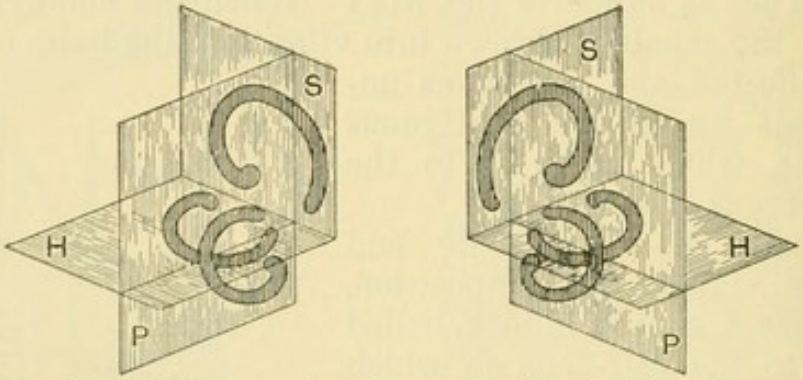


FIG. 515.—Diagram of semicircular canals, to show their positions in three planes at right angles to each other. It will be seen that the two horizontal canals (H) lie in the same plane: and that the superior vertical of one side (S) lies in a plane parallel to that of the posterior vertical (P) of the other. (After Ewald.)

When these canals are diseased in man as in Menière's disease, there are disturbances of equilibrium: a feeling of giddiness, which may lead to the patient's falling down, is associated with nausea and vomiting. In animals similar results are produced by injury, and the subject has been chiefly worked out on birds by Flourens, where the canals are large and readily exposed, and more recently in fishes, by Lee.

Thus, if the horizontal canal is divided in a pigeon, the head is thrown into a series of oscillations in a horizontal plane, which are increased by section of the corresponding canal of the opposite side. After section of the vertical canals, the forced movements are in a vertical plane, and the animal tends to turn somersaults.

"When the whole of the canals are destroyed on both sides the disturbances of equilibrium are of the most pronounced character. Goltz describes a pigeon so treated which always kept its head with the occiput touching the breast, the vertex directed downwards, with the right eye looking to the left and the left looking to the right, the head being incessantly swung in a pendulum-like manner. Cyon says it is almost impossible to give an idea of the perpetual movements to which the animal is subject. It can neither stand, nor lie still, nor fly, nor maintain any fixed attitude. It executes violent somersaults, now forwards, now backwards, rolls round and round, or springs in the air and falls back to recommence anew. It

is necessary to envelop the animals in some soft covering to prevent them dashing themselves to pieces by the violence of their movements, and even then not always with success. The extreme agitation is manifest only during the first few days following the operation, and the animal may then be set free without danger; but it is still unable to stand or walk, and tumultuous movements come on from the slightest disturbance. But after the lapse of a fortnight it is able to maintain its upright position. At this stage it resembles an animal painfully learning to stand and walk. In this it relies mainly on its vision, and it is only necessary to cover the eyes with a hood to dispel all the fruits of this new education, and cause the reappearance of all the motor disorders." (Ferrier.)

It is these canals which enable all of us to know in which direction we are being moved, even though our eyes are bandaged, and the feet are not allowed to touch the ground. On being whirled round, such a person knows in which direction he is being moved, and feels that he is moving so long as the rate of rotation varies, but when the whirling stops he seems, especially if he opens his eyes, to be whirling in the opposite direction, probably owing to the rebound of the fluid in the canals. The forced movements just described in animals are due both to the absence of the normal sensations from the canals and to delusive sensations arising from their irritation, and the animal makes efforts to correct the movement which it imagines it is being subjected to.

Artificial stimulation of the canals produces movements of the head and orbits, and giddiness. Similar movements occur during bodily rotation, and giddiness is the result of a rivalry of sensations which afford conflicting ideas of the position of the body relatively to external objects. A certain proportion of deaf mutes lose their sense of direction under water, cannot maintain their equilibrium when their eyes are shut, exhibit no orbital movements when rotated, and never suffer from sea-sickness or giddiness. This proportion is approximately the frequency in which abnormal conditions of the canals have been found *post-mortem* in deaf mutes.

These four sets of impressions (tactile, motorial, visual, and labyrinthine) reach the cerebellum by its peduncles; from the eyes through the superior peduncle, from the semicircular canals through the middle and inferior peduncles, and from the body generally through the restiform body or inferior peduncle. Section and stimulation of the peduncles cause inco-ordination, chiefly evidenced by rotatory and circus movements similar to those that occur when the nerve-endings in the semicircular canals are destroyed or stimulated. Stimulation of the cerebellum itself—and this has been done through the skull in man—causes giddiness, and consequent muscular efforts to correct it. The results of stimulation, indeed, are precisely analogous to those of extirpation, only in the reverse direction. Loss of muscular tone which follows extirpation of the canals is probably the result of secondary changes in the brain.

CHAPTER L

COMPARATIVE PHYSIOLOGY OF THE BRAIN

It will have been noticed in the preceding chapters how much of our knowledge of cerebral functions is derived from observations and experiments performed upon the lower animals. I propose in this chapter to expand this part of the subject. It is important not only because of its intrinsic interest, but also because a wider survey of the conditions in various animals throws considerable light on what is found in man.

The brain in the lower vertebrata is composed of a smaller number of cells than is found in the human brain; one notices also that the massing of the nerve units towards the cerebral cortex and in relation to the principal sense organs has gone on to a less extent.

The doctrine of cerebral localisation is not accurately expressed by the statement that a cortical centre is one, the stimulation of which produces a definite response, and the extirpation of which abolishes the response. We have, for instance, seen that the stimulation of certain areas in the dog's brain produces certain movements, but Goltz showed that in his dogs, the removal of an entire hemisphere did not cause permanent paralysis of the opposite side of the body.

In the central nervous system there are few or no places, where only one set of nerve units are situated, with fibres passing to and from them. Almost every locality has several connections with other parts, and also fibres passing through it which connect together the parts on all sides of it. Hence in extirpating even a limited area, numerous pathways are interrupted, and the damage is consequently widespread. Much of the disturbance produced at first gradually passes away, and the *temporary* effects must be distinguished from those which are *permanent;* the permanent effects have the greater significance of the two. Moreover, it is clear that the relative and absolute value of any locality in the central nervous system depends largely on the degree to which centralisation has progressed, and on the amount of connection between the various areas. The closer the connection, the more numerous and intricate the path-

ways, the greater will be the permanent effects of an extirpation, and the recovery of function the more remote. The lower the animal in the zoological series, or the less the age of the animal, the more imperfectly developed will be the connecting strands, and so the possibility of other parts taking up to some extent the functions of those that are removed will be increased.

If the cerebral hemispheres are removed in a teleostean or bony fish (and in such animals there is practically no cortex), the animal is to all intents and purposes unaffected; it can distinguish between a worm and a piece of string, and will rise to red wafers in preference to those of another colour. The operation does not damage the primary centres of vision, and in these fishes the eye is the most important sense organ.

A shark, however, subjected to the same operation, is reduced to a condition of complete quiescence; this is due to the circumstance that in this fish the principal sense organ is that of smell, and severance of both olfactory tracts produces the same result as removal of the entire hemispheres. In either case the path between the olfactory bulbs and the centres that control the cord are interrupted.

Going higher in the animal scale to the frog, we find that removal of the hemispheres only does not entirely abolish its apparent spontaneity; it still continues to feed itself, for instance, by catching passing insects. It is not until the optic thalami are removed also that it becomes the purely reflex animal described on p. 680.

If the brain and the anterior end of the bulb are removed the frog becomes incessantly active, creeping and clambering about the room; but if the whole bulb is removed strong stimulation is required to produce movements; these, however, remain co-ordinated.

If the frog's cerebellum is removed there is some tremor of the leg muscles, and a loss of co-ordination in jumping. If the removal is confined to one side of the twixt-brain, mid-brain, or bulb, there is a tendency to forced positions and movements, action being most vigorous on the side of the body associated with the uninjured portions.

We thus see that a progressive removal of portions of the brain is followed by a progressive loss of responsiveness, until we reach the anterior end of the bulb, the removal of which sets free the lower centres of the cord, and the result is incessant movement provoked by slight stimuli. Further removal, however, lessens responsiveness, and this is not easy to explain.

In the bird, removal of the hemispheres and basal ganglia produces the sleepy condition already described (p. 693); when the animal is made to fly its movements are directed by the sense of sight, and it will select a perch to settle on in preference to the floor. It will start at a noise; it will not eat voluntarily; it exhibits no emotions such as fear, sexual feeling, or maternal instincts.

In mammals, the difficulty of the operation has been overcome by Goltz in dogs by removing the cerebrum piecemeal. One dog treated in this way lived in good health for eighteen months, when it was killed in order that a thorough examination of the brain might be made. It was then found that not only the hemispheres but the main parts of the optic thalamus and corpus striatum had been removed also. Though it could still carry out co-ordinated movements, its reactions were entirely reflex, and emotions, feelings, or the capacity to learn were absent.

If we now compare these effects, it is seen that the results of the operation becomes progressively greater as we ascend the scale. The higher the animal, the more fatal the effects, the immediate disturbance more severe, the return of function slower, and the permanent loss greater. The long life of Goltz's dog was doubtless due to the fact that the removal was accomplished by several operations.

The higher animal loses just those characters which distinguish it from the lower ones. It is difficult to prophesy what would happen if as extensive operations were carried out in a monkey or a man. But so far as extirpation has been observed, the initial paralysis (which is seen also in the dog) does not disappear so rapidly or so completely. In man, the tendency to recover is least.

This is anatomically explicable when we remember that the anterior horn cells are influenced chiefly by two sets of impulses, those which enter the cord by the posterior roots, and those which come down from the cerebrum by the pyramidal tracts. In the lower animals the pyramidal pathway is insignificant, and when it is interrupted the disturbance is consequently slight. In animals below the mammals it is absent, and going up the mammalian scale it becomes more and more important, as the following figures show:—

In the mouse the pyramidal fibres constitute			1·14	per cent.	of those in the cord.
,,	guinea-pig	,,	,,	3·0	,, ,,
,,	rabbit	,,	,,	5·3	,, ,,
,,	cat	,,	,,	7·76	,, ,,
,,	man	,,	,,	11·87	,, ,,

We can therefore quite readily understand that in the apes and in man, a damage to the cortex which causes degeneration of these tracts will cut off many impulses to the anterior cornual cells, and produce a greater or less degree of paralysis.

There are 80,000 fibres in each pyramidal tract of the human cord. They are, moreover, not the only tracts which connect the cerebrum to the spinal cord, and section of these other tracts (see p. 628) may produce more marked and more permanent paralysis. In man, it appears that when the pyramidal tracts are diseased, it is the finer and more delicate movements which are permanently lost. (Schäfer.)

We have already pointed out (p. 701) that the size of the cortical areas does not vary with the mere mass of the muscles under control,

but with the increasing complexity and delicacy of the movement; (compare in fig. 498 the relative size of the areas which control the trunk muscles and the finger movements). It is just these movements which are most affected by a cortical injury, and which exhibit least recovery; in the upper limb, for instance, the shoulder muscles will be the least, and the hand the most, paralysed.

On the sensory side of the cortex, vision alone can be analysed with sufficient accuracy. The lower the animal in the series, the more readily can its actions be controlled by sensory impulses which have not passed through the cortex cerebri. A decerebrated bony fish can distinguish colours, a frog can catch flies, even a pigeon will select its perch, though it takes no notice of food or of people who try to frighten it. A dog similarly operated on is practically blind, though it will blink at a bright flash of light. In the lower animals the impulses pass in to the primary visual centre which acts as the centre for the reflex; the higher we ascend the animal scale, the path *viâ* the cortex becomes more permeable, of greater value or even indispensable, and the reflexes through the lower centres of less importance; not only so, but there are subdivisions of the visual cortical area, which correspond to different regions of the retinæ.

In the fishes which have no cortex cerebri, the optic lobes, analogous to the C. quadrigemina, are the centres for vision. In some fishes, a small number of the fibres of the optic nerve pass into the geniculate body, which forms a cell station on the road to the posterior region of the cerebrum, where a primitive cortex begins to appear. On ascending the animal scale, this group of fibres becomes more and more abundant, and this part of the cortex becomes more elaborate in structure. When we reach the monkeys, this part of the brain is cut off from the rest to form a distinct occipital lobe by the parieto-occipital fissure, which is frequently called the Affenspalte (ape's split). At first this lobe is smooth (fig. 497, p. 699), but as the great parietal association centres get larger with increase of intelligence, the visuo-sensory area is pushed back, and is thus thrown into folds. In the highest apes, and in the lower races of mankind, a good deal of the visuo-sensory sphere is still seen on the external cerebral surface; but in the higher races, most is pushed round on to the mesial surface (area 4, figs. 506, 507, p. 710). This *calcarine area* is better named the *striate area*, because it is characterised by the white stripe called the line of Gennari (see p. 703).

Some animals have *panoramic* and others *stereoscopic* vision. The former (mainly vegetable feeders) have eyes set laterally; each eye receives a different picture, and the decussation of the optic nerves is complete; each eye sends impulses to the opposite hemisphere. Animals with stereoscopic vision have the eyes, as in man, in front, and the optic axes can be converged so that an object is focussed with both eyes. This becomes necessary in carnivora, which have to catch moving prey; the more complex the movements of the fore-limb, the greater becomes the necessity for fixation of the eyes to guide them. In such animals each visual area corresponds with the same half of both retinæ, that is, with the opposite half of the visual field; the lower half of each area corresponds with the upper half of each half field of vision, and *vice versâ*. The appearance of the macula lutea (with cortical representation in both hemispheres) in the primates is the culminating point in visual development among the mammals.

A man or an animal who loses both eyes is blind, but in time manages to find his way about. This is not the case when blindness is produced by removal or disease of both occipital lobes; here, the sense of orientation is lost also, for the association of many essential sensory and motor impulses is then impossible.

CHAPTER LI

SENSATION

BEFORE passing to the study of the various special senses, there are a number of general considerations in connection with the subject of sensation that demand our attention.

The psychologist divides the mental phenomena, which the physiologist localises in the brain, into three main categories:—

1. *Intellectual:* perceiving, remembering, reasoning, etc.
2. *Emotional:* joy, love, hate, anger, etc.
3. *Volitional:* purposing, deliberating, doing.

These are all closely connected together, and are all present in each healthy brain; but according as one or other may predominate, we speak of intellectual, emotional, or strong-willed individuals. The connection is especially close between intellect and will, which represent as it were the two sides of what we may call a conscious reflex action; the intellect gives the reason or stimulus for the exercise of the volitional power. The emotions are more complex mental processes, in which sensations predominate.

The intellectual faculties are derived from the senses; sensations form the materials for intellect; in other words, we know and learn from what we see, feel, hear, taste, and smell. People born blind or deaf thus labour under the great disadvantage of having one or the other channel of knowledge closed; they can, however, make up for this in some measure by an education, and consequent increased sensitiveness of the channels that remain open.

The simplest mental operation is a **sensation**—that is, the conscious reception of an impression from the external world. For this the following things are necessary:—

1. A stimulus.
2. A nerve-ending to receive it.
3. A path to the brain.
4. A part of the brain to receive the impulse.

Partly through congenital, partly through acquired experience, the brain refers the sensation to the nerve-ending which received

the stimulus; thus pain in the finger is referred to the finger, the sight of an object to the eyes, etc. If the ulnar nerve is stimulated by a knock on the elbow, the sensation is referred to the fingers where the nerve is distributed; if the stump of a recently amputated leg be stimulated, the brain not having got used to the new condition of things, refers the sensation to the toes, which still seem to be present.

Perception is a more complicated mental process; it consists in the grouping of sensations into a presentation of the object from which they arise, and which is called the *percept*. The smell, the taste, the colour, etc., of an orange are all sensations; the grouping of these together constitutes the perception of an orange. Each mental process leaves an impress on the mind; these impressions allow of memory, or *representative imagination;* this may be reproductive, as in recalling a friend's face; or constructive, as in picturing the face of an historical person.

During the whole operation, moreover, there must be *attention;* it is quite possible, for instance, in a dreamy person, that he may look at a thing without seeing it, or be present at a lecture without hearing it.

The more complex intellectual operations consist in the formation of *concepts*, and reasoning is the grouping and discrimination of conceptions. Just as perception is built up of sensations, so **conception** is built up of perceptions. Thus the orange of our previous example is learnt to be one of similar substances called fruits; fruits to be products of the vegetable, as distinguished from the animal world, and so on.

In the mental development of a child, it is very doubtful whether he ever experiences the individual sensations, of which for descriptive purposes we have assumed a perception is built, although of course it is only by education that he learns what these sensations correspond to in the external world, and how they may be classified. From the first, perceptions and conceptions find an outlet in motor activity; at length the conscious realisation of ideas of movement culminate in the purposeful actions of **volition**. Moreover, every experience contains its own *quantum* of pain or pleasure, and produces reflex contractions or relaxations in vascular and other tissues, which in their turn possess a painful or pleasurable component. So, too, ideas acquire their colouring of pain or pleasure, ultimately elaborating the complex **emotions** of sorrow, joy, etc.

The nerve-endings that receive the impression from the external world are of various kinds. They may be simply ramifying and interlacing plexuses of nerve-fibrils, as in the cornea, parts of the skin, and in the interior of the body; this kind of nerve-ending is chiefly associated with *general sensibility*, that vague kind of sensa-

tion which cannot be put under any of the special headings—sight, hearing, labyrinthine, taste, smell, touch, temperature, etc. The nerve-endings of the nerves of special sense are usually end-organs of a specialised kind. The most frequent kind of sensory end-organ is made of what is called *nerve-epithelium;* certain epithelial cells of the surface of the body become peculiarly modified, and grouped in special ways to receive the impressions from the outer world; these send an impulse into the arborisations at the termination of the axis-cylinders of the nerves which envelop the cells. One of these varieties of nerve-epithelium we have already made the acquaintance of, in the hair-cells of the semicircular canals; we shall find other kinds in the hair-cells of the cochlea, in the rods and cones of the retina, etc.

Pain may be due to an excessive stimulation of the other sensory nerves, but there is evidence that it is a distinct sensation. Thus in some cases of diseases of sensory channels, tactile sensation may be intact, but sensitiveness to pain absent, and *vice versâ;* (see p. 679 and also p. 740).

The other essential anatomical necessities for a sensation are the channels to the brain with their numerous cell-stations on the road, and the parts of the brain to which these tracts pass. Blindness, for instance, may not only be due to disease of the eye, but also to disease of the optic nerve, or of the parts of the brain to which the optic nerve passes.

A small stimulus, or a small increase or decrease in a big stimulus, will have no effect; a light touch, a feeble light, a gentle sound, may be so slight as to produce no effect on the brain. The smallest stimulus that produces an effect is called the *lower limit of excitation* or the *liminal* (from *limen*, a threshold) *intensity of the sensation.* The *height of sensibility* or *maximum of excitation* is a stimulus, so strong that the brain is incapable of recognising any increase in it; a bright light, for instance, may be so intense that any increase in its brightness is not perceptible. Between these two extremes we have what is called the *range of sensibility.* Most of our ordinary sensations fall somewhere about the middle of the range, and *Weber's law* (as expanded by *Fechner*) is a law that regulates the proportion between the stimulus and the sensation, and which is operative for this region of the range of sensibility. In general terms it may be stated that sensations increase as the logarithm of the stimuli; or, in order that the intensity of a sensation may increase in arithmetical progression, the stimulus must increase in a geometrical progression.

A definite example will help us to understand these mathematical terms a little better. We will select our example from the sense of vision, because the intensity of the cause of visual sensa-

tions, light, is easily measurable. Suppose a room lighted by 100 candles, and one candle more is brought in, the increase of light produced by the extra candle is quite perceptible to the eye; or if a candle were removed, the decrease in light would be perfectly appreciable. Next suppose the room lighted by 1000 candles, and one extra was brought in, no difference would be seen in the amount of illumination; in order to notice increase or decrease in the light it would be necessary to bring in ten extra candles, or take away ten of the candles, as the case might be. In each case an increment or decrease of one-hundredth of the original light is necessary to cause an increase or diminution in the sensation.

This is after all a perfectly familiar fact; a farthing rushlight will increase the illumination in a dimly-lighted cellar, but it makes no apparent difference in the bright sunshine.

The magnitude of the fraction representing the increment of stimulus necessary to produce an increase of sensation determines what is called the *discriminative sensibility*. This fraction differs considerably for different sense-organs; thus:—

For light it is $\frac{1}{100}$.

For weight it is $\frac{1}{40}$ to $\frac{1}{75}$ for different muscles.

For tactile pressure $\frac{1}{30}$ to $\frac{1}{10}$ in different parts of the body.

Another general consideration in connection with sensation is that the sensation lasts longer than the stimulus; a familiar instance of this is the sting after a blow. The *after-sensations*, as they are called, have been specially studied in connection with the eye (see After-images).

Subjective sensations are those which are not produced by stimuli in the external world, but arise in one's own inner consciousness; they are illustrated by the sensations experienced during sleep (dreams), and in the hallucinations to which mad and delirious people are subject.

Homologous stimuli.—Each kind of peripheral end-organ is specially suited to respond to a certain kind of stimulus. The homologous stimuli of the organs of special sense may be divided into:—

1. Vibrations set up at a distance without actual contact with the object; for instance, light and radiant heat.

2. Changes produced by actual contact with the object; for instance, in the production of sensations of taste, touch, weight, and alteration of temperature by conduction; in the case of the olfactory end-organs, the sensation is also excited by material particles given off by the odoriferous body, and borne by the air to the nostrils. In sound also, though there is no actual contact of the ear with the vibrating body which emits the sound, the organ of hearing is excited by waves of material substance, first of air, then of bones, then of endolymph, and these excite the nerve-endings of the internal ear.

When the eye is excited by any other kind of stimulus than by light, which is its adequate or homologous stimulus, the sensation experienced is light all the same; for instance, one sees sparks when the eyeball is struck; singing in the ears, the result of an accumulation of wax against the membrana tympani, is a similar example.

It has been inferred that there are separate nerve-fibres for the conveyance of each kind of sensation, and Johannes Müller expressed this idea in what is known as the law of *specific nerve energy*. He pointed out that the same nerve may be stimulated by mechanical or electrical means as well as in the normal physiological manner, and that in all cases the sensation—light, sound, taste, contact, etc., as the case might be—is the same. Hence it was argued that the psychical effect or sensation is independent of the nature of the stimulus, but dependent on the nature of the activity of the central cells among which the afferent fibres terminate. We have no observations which can decide whether the nerve impulses passing along the optic fibres are, for instance, similar to or different from those which are transmitted by the auditory fibres. The experiments of Langley and others on nerve-crossing (p. 173) would seem to indicate that the nervous impulse is an identical process in all nerves.

It is, however, possible that in the nerves of cutaneous sensation, the psychical process is determined by the nature of the peripheral stimulus, and consequently different branches of the same nerve-fibres may be imagined to be susceptible to different forms of stimulation, and thus two different sensations follow from the partial stimulation of the same nerve-fibres. Hering even argues in favour of the view that the nerve impulse has different characters in different afferent nerves, and further that it may be modified by the nature of the normal stimulus (*e.g.*, in the skin, heat, cold, pain, or pressure). In the absence of direct experimental proof of such an idea, it is difficult to see upon what grounds it can rest.

CHAPTER LII

CUTANEOUS SENSATIONS

THE tactile end-organs are of numerous kinds, but the following are the principal ones :—

Pacinian Corpuscles.—These are named after their discoverer Pacini. They are little oval bodies, situated on some of the cerebro-spinal and sympathetic nerves, especially the cutaneous nerves of the hands and feet, where they lie deeply placed in the true skin. They also occur on the nerves of the mesentery of some animals like the cat. They have been observed also in the pancreas, lymphatic glands and thyroid glands, as well as in the penis. They are about $\frac{1}{12}$ inch long. Each corpuscle is attached by a narrow pedicle to the nerve on which it is situated, and is formed of several concentric sheaths of connective-tissue, each layer being lined by endothelium (figs. 517, 518); through its pedicle passes a single nerve-fibre, which loses its medullary sheath and enters a central core, at or near the distal end of which it terminates in an arborisation. Some of these layers are continuous with those of the perineurium, but some are superadded. In some cases two nerve-fibres have been seen entering one Pacinian body, and in others a nerve-fibre after passing through it has been observed to terminate in a second.

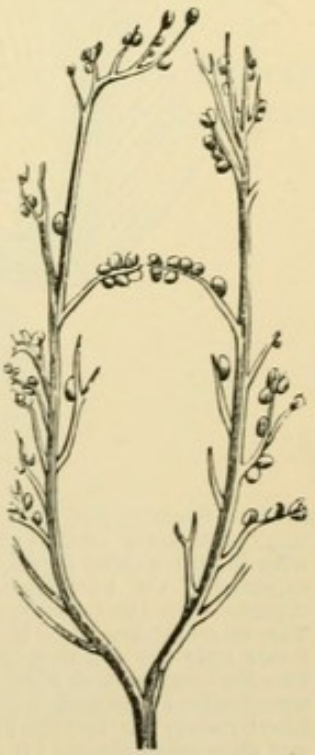


FIG. 516.—Extremities of a nerve of the finger with Pacinian corpuscles attached, about the natural size. (Adapted from Henle and Kölliker.)

The **corpuscles of Herbst** (fig. 519) are closely allied to Pacinian corpuscles, except that they are smaller and longer, with a row of nuclei around the central termination of the nerve in the core. They have been found chiefly in the tongues and bills of ducks.

End-bulbs are found in the conjunctiva (where in man they are spheroidal, but in most animals oblong), in the glans penis and clitoris, in the skin, in the lips, in the epineurium of nerve-trunks, and in tendon; each is about $\frac{1}{600}$ inch in diameter, oval or spheroidal,

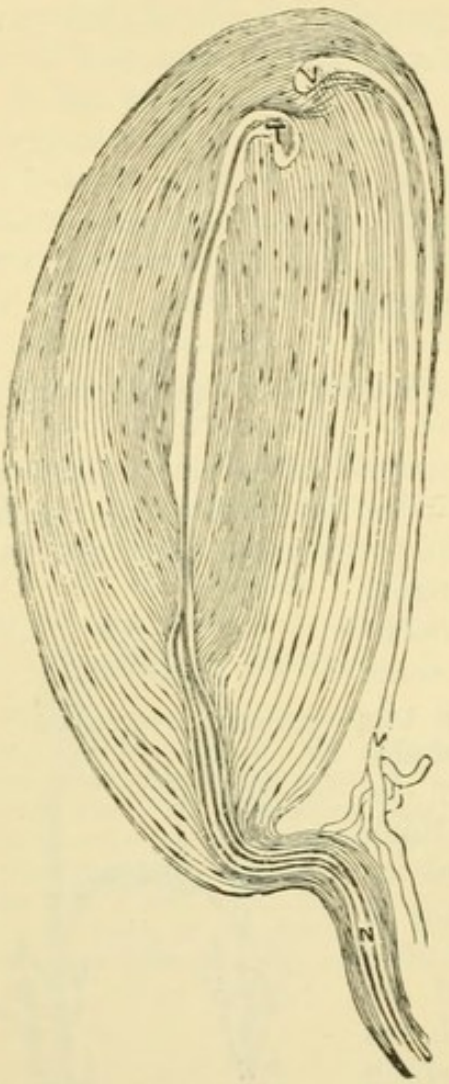


FIG. 517.—Pacinian corpuscle of the cat's mesentery. The stalk consists of a nerve-fibre (N) with its thick outer sheath. The peripheral capsules of the Pacinian corpuscle are continuous with the outer sheath of the stalk. The intermediary part becomes much narrower near the entrance of the axis-cylinder into the clear central core. A hook-shaped termination (T) is seen in the upper part. A blood-vessel (V) enters the Pacinian corpuscle, and approaches the end; it possesses a sheath which is the continuation of the peripheral capsules of the Pacinian corpuscle. ×100. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

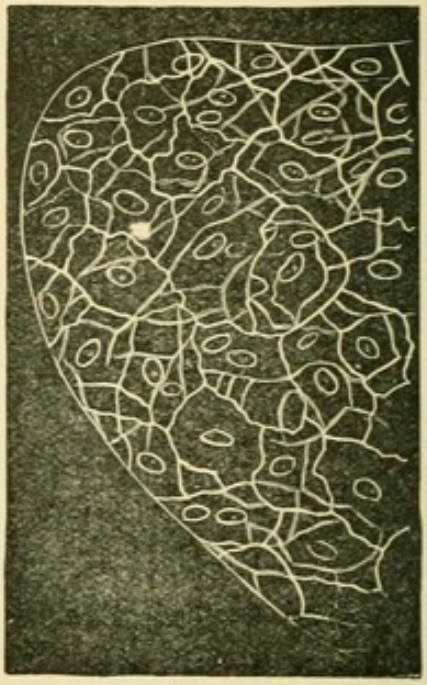


FIG. 518.—Summit of a Pacinian corpuscle of the human finger showing the endothelial membranes lining the capsules. × 220. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

and is composed of a medullated nerve-fibre, which terminates among cells of various shapes. Its capsule contains a transparent or striated core, in the centre of which the axis-cylinder terminates (fig. 520).

Touch-corpuscles (Meissner's corpuscles), (figs. 521, 523), are found in the papillæ of the skin of the fingers and toes. They are oblong, about $\frac{1}{290}$ inch long, and $\frac{1}{800}$ inch broad, and composed of connective-tissue, surrounded by elastic fibres and a capsule of nucleated cells. They do not occur in all the papillæ of the parts where they are found, and, as a rule, in the papillæ in which they are present there are no blood-vessels.

The peculiar way in which the medullated nerve winds round and round the corpuscle before it enters it is shown in fig. 523. It

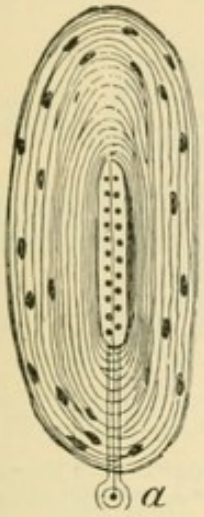


FIG. 519.—A corpuscle of Herbst, from the tongue of a duck. *a*, Medullated nerve cut away. (Klein.)

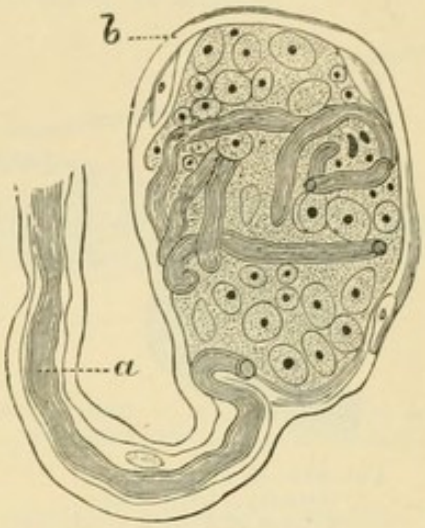


FIG. 520.—End-bulb of Krause. *a*, Medullated nerve-fibre; *b*, capsule of corpuscle.

loses its sheath before it enters into the interior, and then its axis-cylinder branches, and the branches after either a straight or convoluted course terminate within the corpuscle.

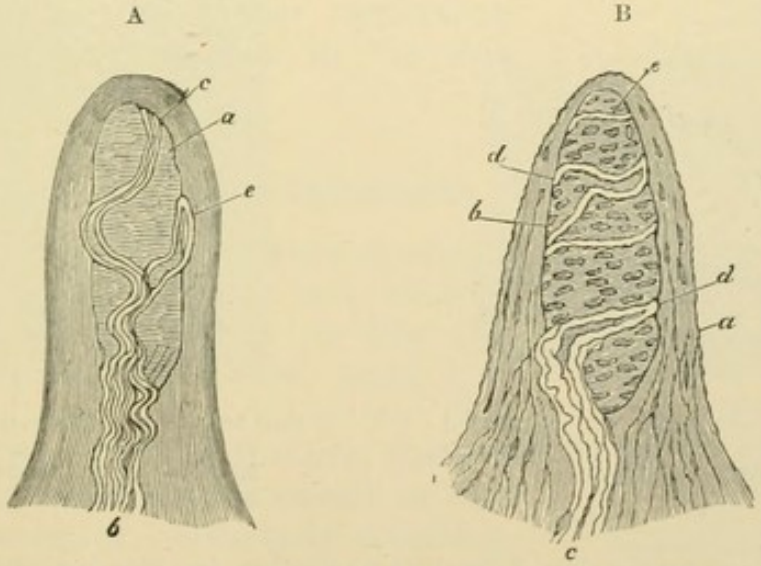


FIG. 521.—Papillæ from the skin of the hand, freed from the cuticle and exhibiting Meissner's corpuscles. A AND B. Simple papilla with four nerve-fibres; *a*, tactile corpuscle; *b*, nerves with winding fibres *c* and *e*. B. Papilla treated with acetic acid; *a*, cortical layer with cells and fine elastic filaments; *b*, tactile corpuscle with transverse nuclei; *c*, entering nerve; *d* and *e*, nerve-fibres winding round the corpuscle. × 350. (Kölliker.)

The **corpuscles of Grandry** (fig. 522) form another variety, and have been noticed in the beaks and tongues of birds. They consist of oval or spherical cells, two or more of which compressed vertically

are contained within a delicate nucleated sheath. The nerve enters on one side, and, laying aside its medullary sheath, terminates between the cells in flattened expansions.

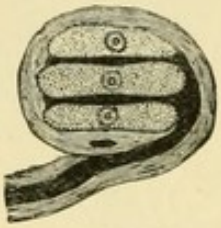


FIG. 522.—A corpuscle of Grandry, from the tongue of a duck.

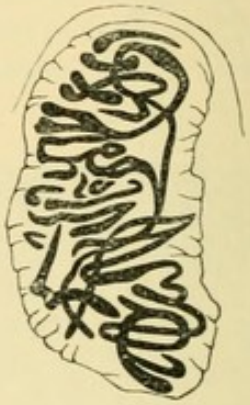


FIG. 523.—A touch-corpuscle from the skin of the human hand, stained with gold chloride.

Sensory nerve-endings in muscle. — Nerve terminations, sensory in function, are found in tendon. Some of these are end-bulbs, and others appear very much like end-plates, as represented in figs. 524 and 525. The *neuro-muscular spindles*, which are described



FIG. 524.—Termination of medullated nerve-fibres in tendon near the muscular insertion. (Golgi.)

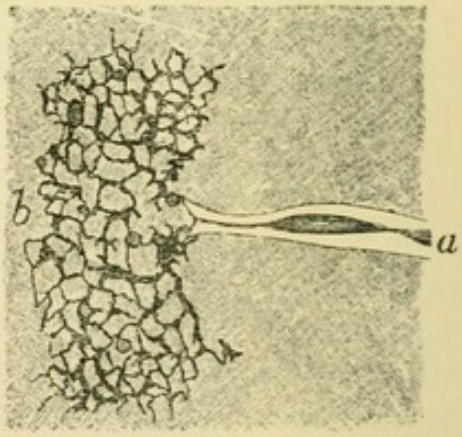


FIG. 525.—One of the reticulated end-plates of fig. 524, more highly magnified. *a*, Medullated nerve-fibre; *b*, reticulated end-plate. (Golgi.)

on p. 86, are principally found in muscles in the neighbourhood of tendons and aponeuroses. One of these spindles is shown in the accompanying drawing (fig. 526).

The principal grounds for believing the neuro-muscular spindles to be sensory are, first, that the nerve-fibres that supply them do not degenerate when the anterior roots of the spinal nerves are cut, and secondly, that they do degenerate when the posterior roots are divided (Sherrington). They also undergo degenerative changes in

locomotor ataxy, which is a disease of the sensory nerve-units, and remain healthy in infantile paralysis, which is a disease of the motor cells of the anterior horn of the cord (Batten).

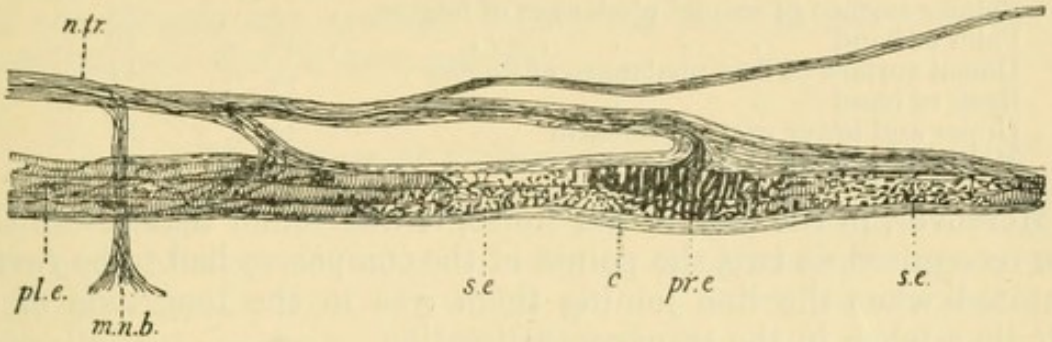


FIG. 526.—Neuro-muscular spindle. *c.*, Capsule; *n.tr.*, nerve trunk; *m.n.b.*, motor nerve bundle; *pl.e.*, plate-ending; *pr.e.*, primary nerve-ending; *s.e.*, secondary ending. (After Ruffini.)

In addition to the special end-organs, sensory fibres may terminate in **plexuses** of fibrils, as in the sub-epithelial and the intra-epithelial plexus of the cornea (fig. 527) and around the hair follicles in the skin generally. In some cases the nerve-fibrils within a stratified epithelium end in crescentic expansions (*tactile discs*) which are applied to the deeper epithelium cells. These are well seen in the skin of the pig's snout.

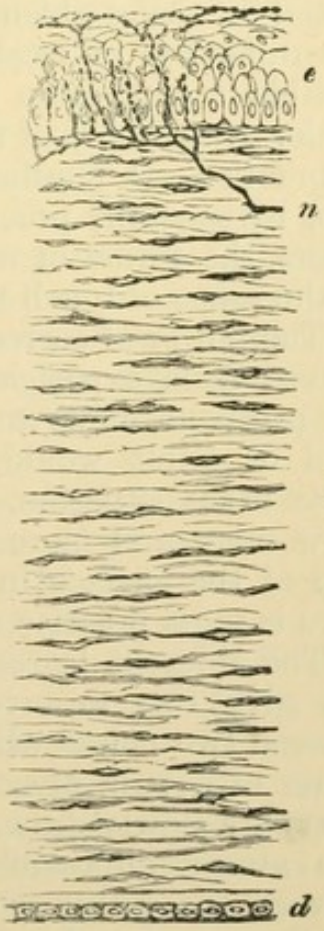


FIG. 527.—Vertical section of rabbit's cornea, stained with gold chloride. The nerves *n*, terminate in a plexus under and within the epithelial layer, *e*.

Localisation of Tactile Sensations.

The localisation of a tactile sensation is of two kinds, absolute and relative. We can localise a touch on the arm *absolutely* by indicating the exact spot which has been touched, or we may localise it *relatively* to another spot on the arm which is simultaneously or successively touched. Generally speaking, the delicacy of these two kinds of localisation are similarly variable in different parts of the body. The simplest experiments which have been made to determine the spatial relationships of the cutaneous sense consist in touching the skin, while the eyes are closed, with the points of a pair of compasses, and in ascertaining how close the

points may be brought to each other, and still be felt as two points. (Weber.) A few results are as follow:—

Tip of tongue	$\frac{1}{24}$-inch	1 mm.
Palmar surface of third phalanx of forefinger	$\frac{1}{12}$,,	2 ,,
Palmar surface of second phalanges of fingers	$\frac{1}{6}$,,	4 ,,
Palm of hand	$\frac{5}{12}$,,	10 ,,
Dorsal surface of first phalanges of fingers	$\frac{7}{12}$,,	14 ,,
Back of hand	$1\frac{1}{6}$,,	25 ,,
Upper and lower parts of forearm	$1\frac{1}{2}$,,	37 ,,
Middle of thigh and back	$2\frac{1}{2}$,,	62 ,,

Moreover, in the case of the limbs, it was found that before they were recognised as two, the points of the compasses had to be *further* separated when the line joining them was in the long axis of the limb, than when in the transverse direction.

We may thus assume that minute areas of the body surface have each their "local sign," *i.e.*, the sensation arising from stimulation of one area differs in some obscure quality from the sensations arising from stimulation of neighbouring areas, thereby acquiring its own spatial colouring which enables us to identify the area when stimulated. The difference of local sign between two near points may be imperoeptible in one region of the body, but fully recognisable in another. Again, the delicacy of the sense of touch may be very much increased by practice. A familiar illustration occurs in the case of the blind, who, by constant practice, can acquire the power of reading raised letters, the forms of which are almost if not quite undistinguishable by the sense of touch to an ordinary person.

The power of correctly localising sensations of touch is gradually derived from experience. Thus, infants when in pain simply cry but make no effort to remove the cause of irritation, as an older child or adult would, on account of their imperfect knowledge of its exact situation. As education proceeds the brain gets to know more and more accurately the surface of the body, and the map of the surface in the brain is most accurately known where there is most practice of the sense of touch.

The different degrees of sensitiveness possessed by different parts may give rise to errors of judgment in estimating the distance between two points where the skin is touched. Thus, if the blunted points of a pair of compasses (maintained at a constant distance apart) are slowly drawn over the skin of the cheek towards the lips, it is almost impossible to resist the conclusion that the distance between the points is gradually increasing. When they reach the lips they seem to be considerably further apart than on the cheek. Then, too, our estimate of the size of a cavity in a tooth is usually exaggerated when based upon sensations derived from the tongue alone. Another curious illusion is the following:—If we close the eyes, and place a marble between the crossed fore and middle

fingers, we seem to be touching two marbles. This illusion is due to an error of judgment. The marble is touched by two surfaces which, under ordinary circumstances, could only be touched by two separate marbles; hence, the mind, taking no cognizance of the fact that the fingers are crossed, forms the conclusion that the two sensations are due to two marbles.

Varieties of Cutaneous Sensations.

The surface of the skin is a mosaic of tiny sensorial areas; but these areas are not set edge to edge as in the retina, but separated by relatively wide intervals which are not sensitive to stimuli just above liminal intensity. If the stimuli are made nearly minimal, the individual fields are reduced to small spots. Each of these spots subserves a specific sense, touch, cold, heat or pain, and each doubtless coincides with the site of some special end-organ, placed either singly or in clusters. The "touch spots," "cold spots," "heat spots," and "pain spots" are intercommingled. In some districts one variety predominates, in others another. "Pain spots" are the most and "heat spots" the least numerous. It is a matter of common experience that the sensitiveness of these varieties of cutaneous sensation differs in different parts of the body. The tip of the finger which is very sensitive to the true tactile sense (sense of pressure or contact) is not nearly so sensitive to alterations of temperature as the forearm or cheek to which a washerwoman generally holds her iron when forming a judgment of its temperature. Some parts of the skin are more sensitive to pain than others, and in the cornea we have an instance of a surface in which "pain spots" alone are present.

For the more accurate exploration of the skin *æsthesiometers* of various kinds have been invented. The sense of pressure may be estimated by the ability of the skin to distinguish different weights placed upon it; there must be no lifting of the weight, or the motorial sense is brought into play. The fraction which by Weber's law represents the discriminative sensibility (see p. 731) varies from $\frac{1}{30}$ to more than $\frac{1}{10}$ in different parts of the body. It does not, however, follow that the acuteness of the pressure sense varies exactly as the ability of accurately localising sensations; for instance, the skin of the forearm is as sensitive to pressure changes as that of the palm; and the tip of the tongue, which is the most discriminative region of the body for locality, is not so for pressure. For pressure stimuli which are near the limen or threshold of sensation, the hair æsthesiometer is much used; this is a hair or bristle mounted in a holder; the bristle can be shifted backwards or forwards in the holder, and the amount of pressure it exercises can

thus be varied. It is used for the exploration of "touch spots," and these are found most numerously around the hair follicles. The touch spots are more numerous in some parts than in others, but fifteen for each square centimetre of skin is a rough average. To explore "pain spots" a mounted needle is used; in Griesbach's instrument the needle shifts up and down in the holder, and works against a spring which registers the amount of pressure exerted to evoke a painful sensation. In a "pain spot" the sensation is unaccompanied by "cold" or "heat," even if a cold or hot needle is used. For the exploration of "heat spots" a small, hollow, metallic pencil is kept warm by a stream of warm water; this is moved over the surface; there are some points where the sensation is purely tactile, but at the "heat spots" the pencil will feel uncomfortably warm. "Cold spots" can be similarly mapped out by the use of a cold pencil. The accompanying figure (fig. 528) indicates a small piece of the skin of the thigh; the areas where heat spots are numerous are shaded horizontally; the areas where cold spots are numerous are shaded vertically.

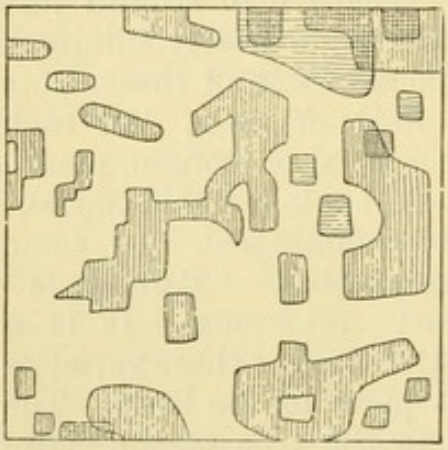


FIG. 528.—Heat and cold areas. (Waller, after Goldscheider.)

All these facts clearly indicate that different varieties of sensation are the result of the stimulation of different end-organs, and that the impulses are conveyed to the central nervous system by different groups of nerve-fibres; they moreover form the clearest piece of evidence we have that pain is a distinct kind of sensation.

The question is more difficult to answer, which particular end-organ is concerned with each variety of sensation. There is, however, little doubt that the nerve-fibrils around the hair follicles of the short hairs are the terminations most affected by changes of pressure, and also that Meissner's corpuscles are purely tactual, taking the place of hairs in hairless parts. In the palmar surface of the last phalanx of the index finger, there are 21 Meissner's corpuscles per square centimetre; in other parts of the palm and sole the number varies from 2 to 8. End-bulbs are believed to be the organs for cold; they are most numerous in the conjunctiva and glans penis, where "cold spots" are almost exclusively present. The end-organs in "heat spots" have not been identified with certainty, but they are probably larger organs, and placed more deeply in the skin.

We have spoken of the pressure sense as the true tactile sense; but Meissner pointed out many years ago that the hand immersed

in a fluid like mercury at body temperature, does not feel the contact of the fluid, although the fluid pressure may be far above the limen; it is, however, equal in all directions; it is therefore clear that the adequate stimulus for touch organs consists in a deformation of the skin surface.

As compared with the sensation obtained from pain spots, touch is quicker both in development and subsidence. Thus vibrations of strings are recognisable as such by the finger, even at a frequency of 1500 vibrations per second. A revolving wheel with toothed edge does not give a sensation of smoothness till the teeth meet the skin at the rate of from 480 to 640 per second.

Head, in his recent study of nerve-regeneration, cut one of the nerves in his own arm and noted accurately the date and other particulars of return of function. The first sensations return about the eightieth day after the operation; they are of a vague nature, and are termed *protopathic*. Head associates this with the activity of the fine medullated nerve-fibres which replace the degenerated ones at this early stage. The more elaborate sensations and power to localise them accurately return much later, and this *epicritic* sensibility is usually not perfect until many months or even a few years after the regeneration started. By this time, as was shown in experiments on animals, the fine nerve-fibres which subserve protopathic sensation are largely admixed with a later growth of larger nerve-fibres, and Head believes epicritic sensation is subserved by these. Quite apart from these two forms of cutaneous sensation is the *deep* sensibility of subjacent structures, and the fibres subserving this run mainly with the motor nerves; this form of sensation is not destroyed by division of all the nerves to the skin. The three kinds of sensation (deep, protopathic, and epicritic) are doubtless related to different kinds of end-organs in the peripheral structures.

Adaptation plays a part as important in cutaneous as in other sensations. The same room feels warm to a man who enters it from the street, and cold to another who has been in a conservatory. Hering calls the point of adaptation to temperature "the physiological zero." Thus the temperature of the mouth and the lips may actually differ by several degrees, yet neither of them will feel hot or cold because each is at the physiological zero temperature. Sensations of warmth or cold arise when the physiological zero is altered: they persist until a new zero is formed, *i.e.*, until adaptation is complete. So, too, heavy weights feel unduly heavy after light weights, and *vice versâ*. When eyeglasses or false teeth are first worn, their contact is well-nigh unbearable; yet later, through adaptation, the discomfort becomes negligible.

It is very difficult to draw any hard and fast line between the cutaneous sensations we have just described, and those which are grouped under the name "common or general sensibility." Sensations which are difficult to describe but which are perfectly familiar, such as those accompanying tickling, shivering, shuddering, and the like, are regarded as varieties of "common sensation." Pain may be looked upon as an excessive form of "common sensation," but cutaneous pain is so distinct a sensation that most psychologists agree to place it under a "special" rather than a "common" heading. The term "common sensation" is most frequently employed in reference to sensations from the interior of the body. Each viscus stands in

relation with a definite patch of skin; that is to say, the afferent fibres from the skin and from the viscera belong to corresponding spinal nerve-roots. Localisation of painful or uncomfortable feelings arising from disorders of internal organs is always very difficult; hence the associated skin pains play an important part in ascertaining the position of internal maladies. (Head, see also p. 690.)

Drugs.—Cocaine applied locally depresses all forms of cutaneous sensibility, but especially the true tactile sense; carbolic acid acts similarly but less strongly. Chloroform produces a temporary burning sensation, and then blunts sensibility especially to temperature changes. Menthol produces a feeling of local cold because it first causes hyperæsthesia of the end-organs for cold; this is followed by a depression of the activity of these organs, together with that subserving other forms of cutaneous sensation.

The Motorial or Kinæsthetic Sense.

By this sense we become aware that movement is taking place in some part of the body. We are especially conscious of willed muscular action, and the sense has thus been confused and identified with the "feeling of innervation," or "sense of effort," which accompanies volitional movements. By some this feeling has been attributed to a direct discharge from the motor to the sensory cells of the cerebral cortex occurring at the very birth of the efferent impulse. But most physiologists of the present day regard the sense of effort as due to afferent impulses peripherally generated by the accompanying respiratory and other strains; and they no longer consider it as a very important factor in effecting or estimating movement. It is in the estimation of weights that the value of peripheral sensations can be most clearly seen.

When a weight is first handled, the amount of force necessary to lift it is estimated in the light of past experience. As it is being lifted, sensations from the moving limb guide the expenditure of force: a weight which flies up too fast or does not move at once, calls for less or more muscular force. Similarly the motorial sense is invoked when we estimate the extent to which we have moved our limbs, or to which they have been passively moved by others.

These guiding sensations are not merely of cutaneous origin. Persons whose skin has been rendered insensitive by cocaine, or by certain diseases, yet retain the power of estimating weights and the extent of their movement. In locomotor ataxy the motorial sense may be destroyed while the skin retains its usual sensitiveness to touch. On the other hand, we must remember that it is not at all certain that the muscles are solely or even predominantly the seat of these peripheral sensations; the term "motorial" or "kinæsthetic" is therefore preferable to that of "muscular" sense, by which name it was formerly known. It is true that sensory end-organs and nerve-fibres occur in muscles and tendons, which presumably transmit impulses upon change of muscular form or of tendinous strain. But we have experimental evidence that the pressure and movement of joint-surfaces are most important factors in the development of kinæsthetic sensations. The "motorial sense" is thus of very complex origin.

CHAPTER LIII

TASTE AND SMELL

Taste.

CERTAIN anatomical facts must be studied first in connection with the tongue, the upper surface of which is concerned in the reception of taste stimuli.

The tongue is a muscular organ covered by mucous membrane. The muscles, which form the greater part of the substance of the tongue (*intrinsic* muscles) are termed *linguales;* and by these, which are attached to the mucous membrane, its smaller and more delicate movements are performed.

By other muscles (*extrinsic* muscles), such as the genio-hyoglossus, the styloglossus, etc., the tongue is fixed to the surrounding parts; and by these its larger movements are performed.

Its mucous membrane resembles other mucous membranes in essential points, but contains *papillæ,* peculiar to itself. The tongue is also beset with mucous glands (fig. 530) and lymphoid nodules.

The lingual *papillæ* are thickly set over the anterior two-thirds of its upper surface, or *dorsum* (fig. 529), and give to it its characteristic roughness. Three principal varieties may be distinguished, namely, the (1) *circumvallate,* the (2) *fungiform,* and the (3) *conical and filiform* papillæ. They are all formed by a projection of the corium of the mucous membrane, covered by stratified epithelium; they contain special branches of blood-vessels and nerves. The corium in each kind is studded by microscopic papillæ.

(1.) *Circumvallate.*—These papillæ (fig. 531), eight or ten in number, are situate in a V-shaped line at the base of the tongue (1, 1, fig. 529). They are circular elevations, from $\frac{1}{20}$th to $\frac{1}{12}$th of an inch wide (1 to 2 mm.), each with a slight central depression, and surrounded by a circular moat, at the outside of which again is a slightly elevated ring or rampart; their walls contain taste-buds. Into the moat that surrounds the central tower, a few little glands (*glands of Ebner*) open. They form a thin, watery secretion.

(2.) *Fungiform.*—The fungiform papillæ (3, fig. 529) are scattered chiefly over the sides and tip, and sparingly over the middle of the

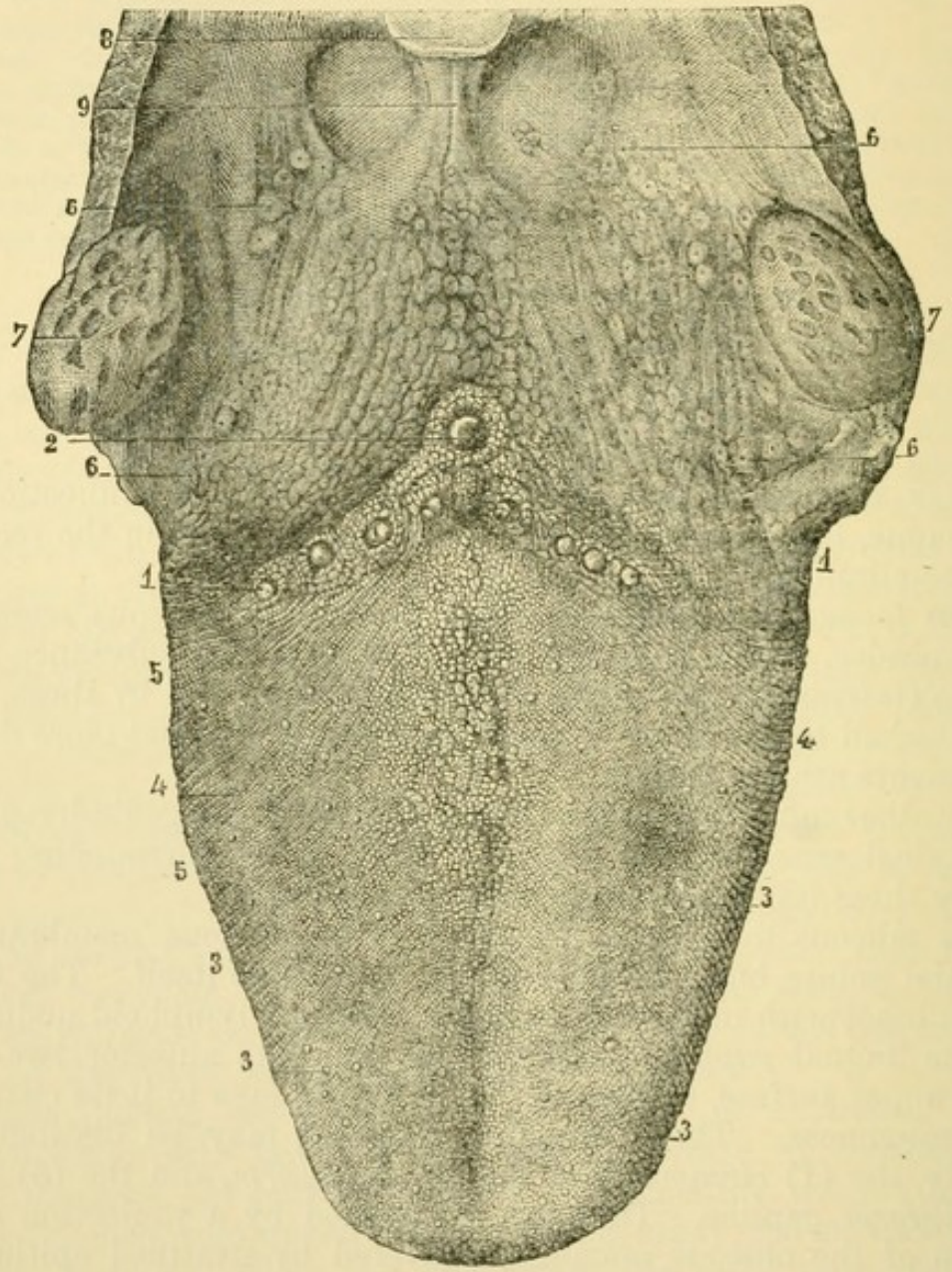


FIG. 529.—Papillar surface of the tongue, with the fauces and tonsils. 1, 1, Circumvallate papillæ in front of 2, the foramen cæcum; 3, fungiform papillæ; 4, filiform and conical papillæ; 5, transverse and oblique rugæ; 6, mucous glands at the base of the tongue and in the fauces; 7, tonsils; 8, part of the epiglottis; 9, median glosso-epiglottidean fold (frænum epiglottidis). (From Sappey.)

dorsum, of the tongue; their name is derived from their being shaped like a puff-ball fungus. (See fig. 532, B.)

(3.) *Conical and Filiform.*—These, which are the most abundant papillæ, are scattered over the whole upper surface of the tongue, but especially over the middle of the dorsum. They vary in shape,

some being conical (simple or compound) and others filiform; they are covered by a thick layer of epithelium, which is either arranged over them, in an imbricated manner, or is prolonged from their surface in the form of fine stiff projections (fig. 533). In carnivora they are developed into horny spines. From their structure, it is likely that these papillæ have a mechanical and tactile function,

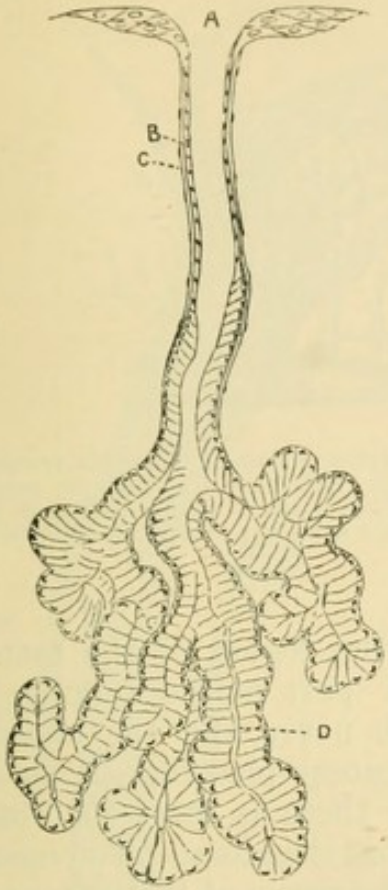


FIG. 530.—Section of a mucous gland from the tongue. A, Opening of the duct on the free surface; C, basement membrane with nuclei; B, flattened epithelial cells lining duct. The duct divides into several branches, which are convoluted and end blindly, being lined throughout by columnar epithelium. D, Lumen of one of the tubuli of the gland. × 90. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

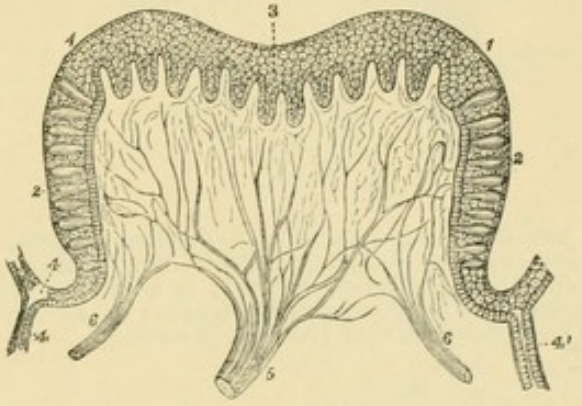


FIG. 531.—Vertical section of a circumvallate papilla of the calf. 1 and 3, Epithelial layers covering it; 2, taste-buds; 4 and 4', duct of serous gland opening out into the pit in which papilla is situated; 5 and 6, nerves ramifying within the papilla. (Engelmann.)

rather than that of taste; the latter sense is seated especially in the other two varieties of papillæ, the *circumvallate* and the *fungiform*.

In the circumvallate papillæ of the tongue of man peculiar structures known as *taste-buds* are found. They are of an oval shape, and consist of a number of closely packed, very narrow and fusiform, cells (*gustatory cells*). This central core of gustatory cells is enclosed in a single layer of broader fusiform cells (*encasing cells*). The gustatory cells terminate in fine stiff spikes which project on the free surface (fig. 534, *a*).

These bodies also occur in considerable numbers in the epithelium of the papilla foliata, which is situated near the root of the tongue in the rabbit, and is composed of a number of closely packed papillæ very similar to the circumvallate papillæ of man. Taste-buds are also scattered over the posterior third of the tongue and the pharynx, as low as the posterior (laryngeal) surface of the epiglottis.

The gustatory cells in the interior of the taste-buds are surrounded by arborisations of nerve-fibres.

The middle of the dorsum of the tongue is but feebly endowed with the sense of taste; the tip and margins, and especially

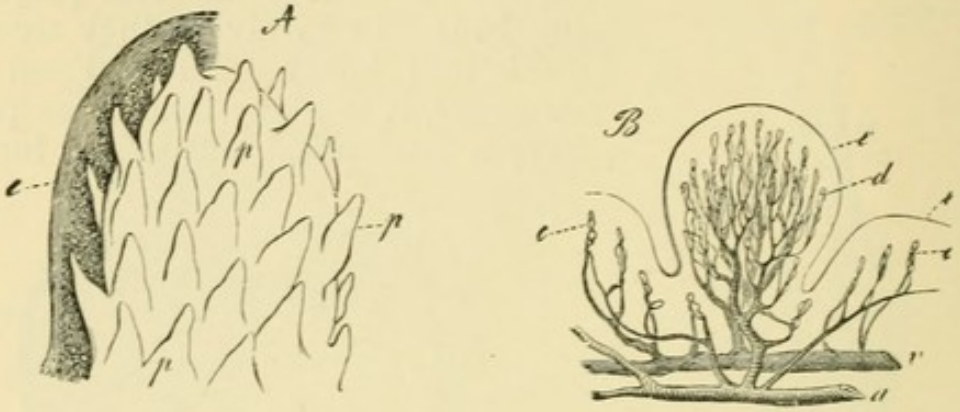


FIG. 532.—Surface and section of the fungiform papillæ. A, The surface of a fungiform papilla, partially denuded of its epithelium; *p*, secondary papillæ; *e*, epithelium. B, Section of a fungiform papilla with the blood-vessels injected; *a*, artery; *v*, vein; *c*, capillary loops of similar papillæ in the neighbouring structure of the tongue; *d*, capillary loops of the secondary papillæ; *e*, epithelium. (From Kölliker, after Todd and Bowman.)

the posterior third of the dorsum (*i.e.*, in the region of the taste-buds), possess this faculty. The anterior part of the tongue is supplied by the lingual branch of the fifth nerve and the chorda tympani, and the posterior third by the glosso-pharyngeal nerve. Considerable discussion has arisen whether there is more than one nerve of taste. The view generally held is that the glosso-pharyngeal nerve is the nerve of taste, and the lingual the nerve of tactile sensation. Nevertheless, the lingual and the chorda tympani do contain taste-fibres, which probably take origin from the cells of the geniculate ganglion; the central axons of these cells pass by the pars intermedia to the sensory nucleus of the glosso-pharyngeal nerve. Gowers holds that the fifth nerve is the only nerve of taste, and has recorded a case of loss of taste where the fifth nerve alone was the seat of disease; other cases, however, do not support this view.

Tastes may be classified into—

1. Sweet.
2. Bitter.
3. Acid.
4. Saline.

Whether alkaline and metallic tastes are elementary, is as yet undecided. All the above affect to a varying extent the nerves of tactile sense as well of those of touch proper, sweet having the least, acids the most marked action upon the latter. Sweet tastes are best appreciated by the tip, acid by the side, and bitter tastes by the back of the tongue.

The substance to be tasted must be dissolved; here there is a

striking contrast to the sense of smell; flavours are really odours. In testing the sense of taste in a patient, the tongue should be protruded, and drops of the substance to be tasted applied with a camel's hair brush to the different parts; the subject of the experiment must signify his sensations by signs, for if he withdraws the tongue to speak, the material gets widely spread. The more concentrated the solution, and the larger the surface acted on, the more intense is the taste; some tastes are perceived more rapidly than others, saline tastes the most rapidly of all. The best temperature of the substance to be tasted is from 10° to 35° C. Very high or very low temperatures deaden the sense.

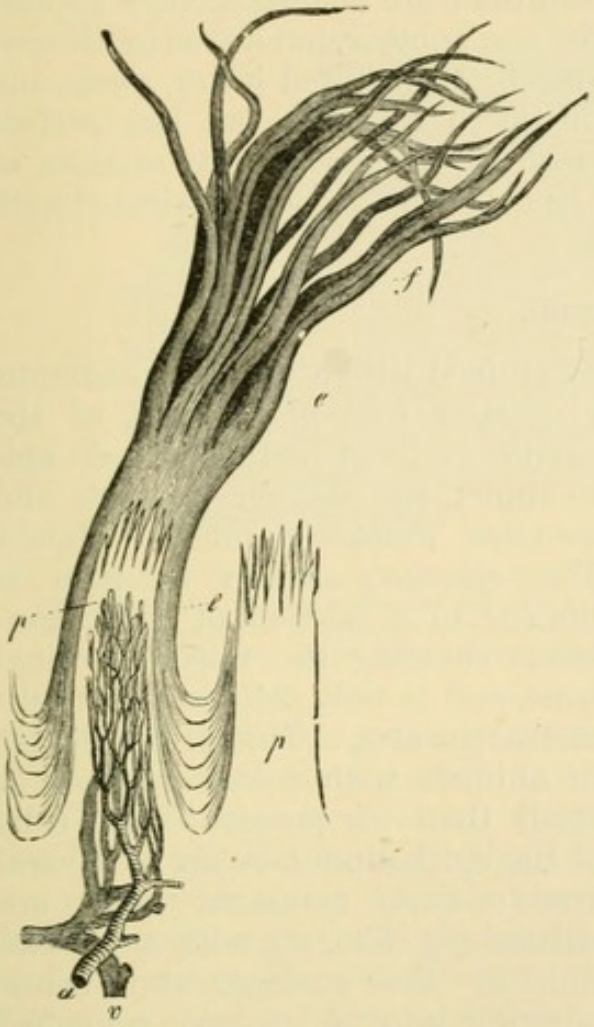


FIG. 533.—Filiform papillæ, one with epithelium, the other without. $\frac{35}{1}$.—*p*, The substance of the papillæ dividing at their upper extremities into secondary papillæ; *a*, artery, and *v*, vein, dividing into capillary loops; *e*, epithelial covering, laminated between the papillæ, but extended into hair-like processes, *f*, from the extremities of the secondary papillæ. (From Kölliker, after Todd and Bowman.)

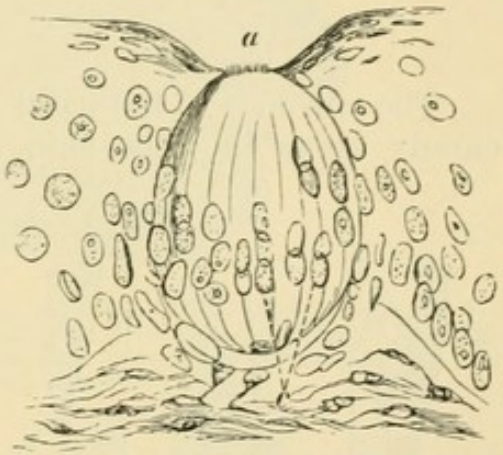


FIG. 534.—Taste-bud from dog's epiglottis (laryngeal surface near the base), precisely similar in structure to those found in the tongue. *a*, Depression in epithelium over bud; below the letter are seen the fine hair-like processes in which the cells terminate; *c*, two nuclei of the axial (gustatory) cells. The more superficial nuclei belong to the superficial (encasing) cells; the converging lines indicate the fusiform shape of the encasing cells. × 400. (Schofield.)

Individual papillæ, when thus treated with various solutions, show great diversity: from some only one or two tastes can be evoked, from others all four. The papillæ may also be stimulated electrically.

It is possible by chewing the leaves of a certain plant called the Gymnema sylvestre to do away with the power of tasting bitters and sweets, while the taste for acids and salts remains.

It will thus be seen that there are many facts pointing to the conclusion, that the varieties of gustatory like those of cutaneous sensation are due to the stimulation of different end-organs.

When diluted sweet and salt solutions are simultaneously applied to the tongue, they tend to neutralise one another, but a true indifferent point is difficult or impossible to reach. Sweet and bitter, sweet and acid-tasting substances are antagonistic to a similar but less perfect extent. Contrast-effects of one taste upon another are matters of common observation, but can only be experimentally investigated with great difficulty.

Smell.

The entrance to the nasal cavity is lined with a mucous membrane closely resembling the skin. The greater part of the rest of the cavity is lined with ciliated epithelium; the corium is thick and contains numerous mucous glands. The olfactory region in man is limited to a portion of the membrane covering the upper turbinal bone, and is only 245 square millimetres in area. This area is larger in animals with a keener sense of smell than we possess. The cells of the epithelium here are of several kinds:—first, columnar cells not ciliated (fig. 535, *st*), with the broad end at the surface, and below tapering into an irregular branched process or processes, the terminations of which pass into the next layer: the second kind of cell (fig. 535, *r*) consists of a small cell body with large spherical nucleus, situated between the ends of the first kind of cell, and sending upwards a process to the surface between the cells of the first kind, and from the other pole of the nucleus a process towards the corium. The latter process is very delicate and may be varicose. The upper process is prolonged beyond the surface, where it becomes stiff, and in some animals, such as the frog, is provided with hairs. These cells, which are called *olfactorial cells*, are numerous, and the nuclei of the cells not being on the same level, a comparatively thick nuclear layer is the result (fig. 537, *b*). In the corium are a number of serous glands called Bowman's glands. They open upon the surface by fine ducts passing up between the epithelium cells.

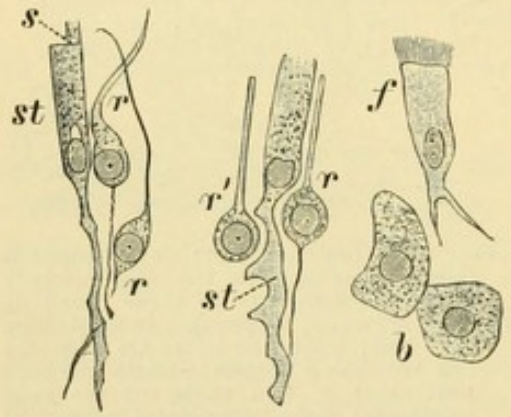


FIG. 535.—Cells from the olfactory region of the rabbit. *st*, Supporting cells; *r*, *r'*, olfactorial cells; *f*, ciliated cells; *s*, cilia-like processes; *b*, cells from Bowman's gland. (Stöhr.)

The distribution of the olfactory nerves which penetrate the

cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone and pass to this region of the nasal mucous membrane is shown in fig. 536. The nerve-fibres are

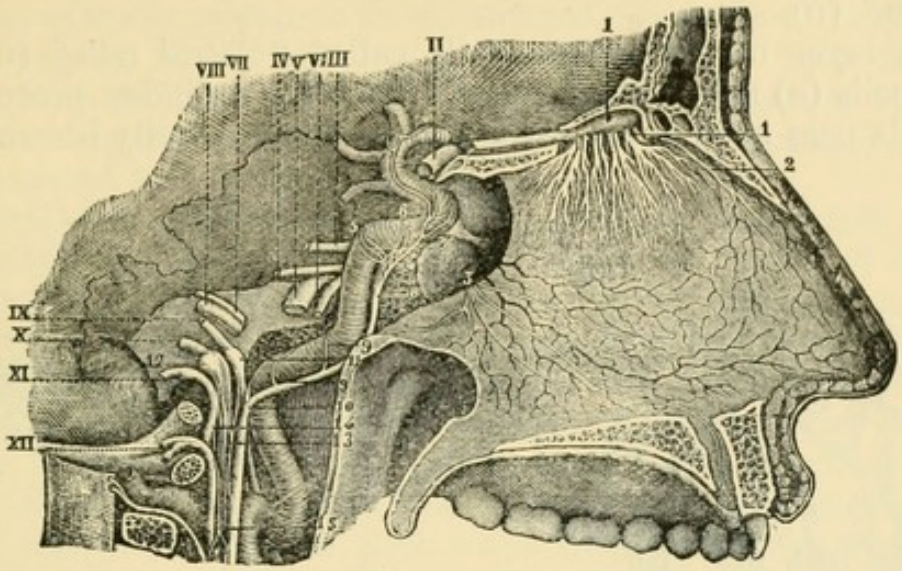


FIG. 536.—Nerves of the septum nasi, seen from the right side. ¾.—I, The olfactory bulb; 1, the olfactory nerves passing through the foramina of the cribriform plate, and descending to be distributed on the septum; 2, the internal or septal twig of the nasal branch of the ophthalmic nerve; 3, naso-palatine nerves. (From Sappey, after Hirschfeld and Leveillé.)

continuous with the inner processes of the cells we have termed olfactorial; the columnar cells between these act as supports to them.

The olfactory tract is an outgrowth of the brain which was originally hollow, and remains so in many animals; in man the cavity is obliterated, and the centre is occupied by neuroglia: outside this the white fibres lie, and a thin superficial layer of neuroglia covers these. The three "roots" of the olfactory tract have been traced to the uncinate gyrus and hippocampal regions of the same side of the brain, which is the portion experimentally found to be associated with the reception of olfactory impulses (see pp. 677 and 703). From the cells of the grey matter here fibres pass by a complex path to the corresponding regions of the opposite side. There is also a communication *viâ* the corpora mammillaria with the optic thalamus and tegmentum of the mid-brain.

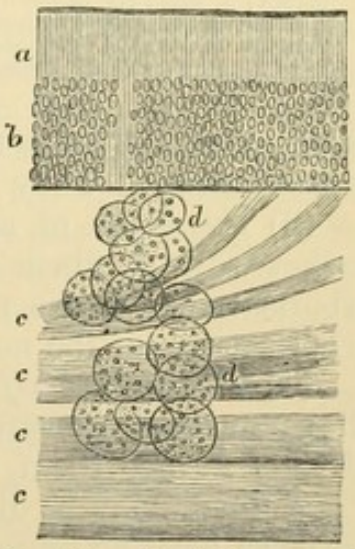


FIG. 537. — Semi-diagrammatic section through the olfactory mucous membrane of the new-born child. *a*, Non-nuclear; and *b*, nucleated portions of the epithelium; *c*, nerves; *dd*, Bowman's glands. (M. Schultze.)

The olfactory bulb has a more complicated structure; above there is first a continuation of the olfactory tract (white fibres enclosing neuroglia); below this four layers are distinguishable; they are

shown in the accompanying diagram from Ramon y Cajal's work, the histological method used being Golgi's.

(1) A layer of white fibres containing numerous small cells, or "*granules*" (D).

(2) A layer of large nerve-cells called "*mitral cells*" (C), with smaller cells (*a*) mixed with them. The axis-cylinder processes of these cells pass up into the layer above and eventually become fibres

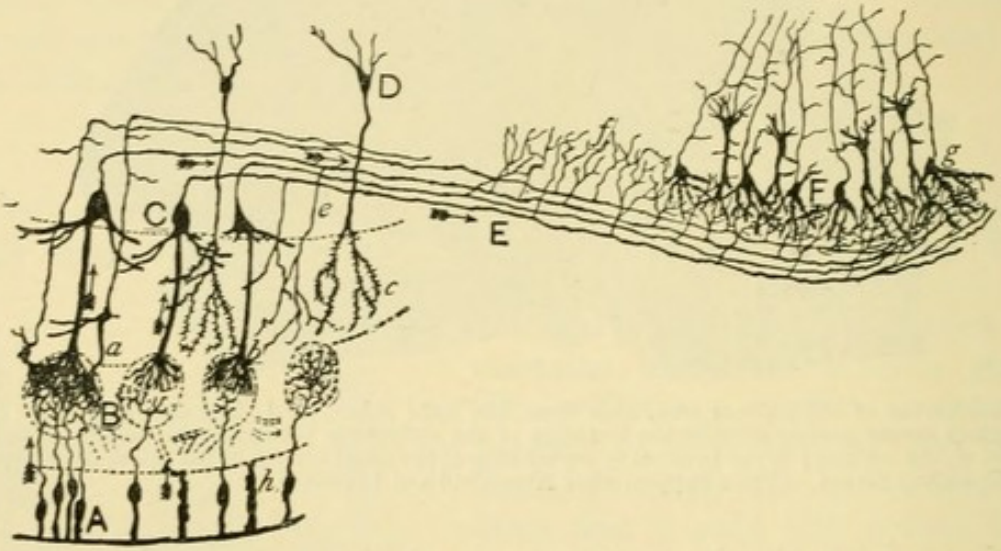


FIG. 538.—Nervous mechanism of the olfactory apparatus. A, Bipolar cells of the olfactory apparatus (Max Schultze's olfactorial cells); B, olfactory glomeruli; C, mitral cells; D, granule of white layer; E, external root of the olfactory tract; F, grey matter of the sphenoidal region of the cortex; *a*, small cell of the mitral layer; *b*, basket of a glomerulus; *c*, spiny basket of a granule; *e*, collateral of the axis-cylinder process of a mitral cell; *f*, collaterals terminating in the molecular layer of the frontal and sphenoidal convolutions; *g*, superficial triangular cells of the cortex; *h*, supporting epithelium cells of the olfactory mucous membrane. (Ramon y Cajal.)

of the olfactory tract E, which passes to the grey matter of the base of the brain F. They give off numerous collaterals on the way (*e, f*).

(3) The layer of *olfactory glomeruli* (B). Each glomerulus is a basket-work of fibrils derived on the one hand from the terminal arborisations of the mitral cells, and on the other from similar arborisations of the non-medullated fibres which form the next layer.

(4) *The layer of olfactory nerve-fibres.*—These are non-medullated; they continue upwards the *bipolar olfactory cells*, or as we have already termed them, the olfactorial cells of the mucous membrane.

Animals may be divided into three classes:—those which, like the porpoise, have no sense of smell (*anosmatic*); those which possess it in comparatively feeble degree (man, most primates, monotremes, and some cetacea); those are called *microsmatic*. In man the thickness of the olfactory membrane is only 0·06 mm. Most mammals are in contradistinction *macrosmatic*, the thickness of the membrane being 0·1 mm. or more, and its area larger.

The mucous membrane must be neither too dry nor too moist; if we have a cold we are unable to smell odours or flavours (which are

really odours). When liquids are poured into the nose, their smell is imperceptible, as they damage the olfactory epithelium, owing to the difference of osmotic pressure. But even if a "normal" saline solution of an odorous substance be substituted, the sense of smell is still lost so long as air-bubbles are carefully excluded from the nasal cavity. It is therefore necessary that odorous substances should be in a gaseous state in order to act upon the olfactory epithelium; they are propagated mainly by diffusion.

Generally, the odours of homologous series of compounds increase in intensity with increase of molecular weight, but bodies of very low molecular weight are odourless, while vapours of very high molecular weight, which escape and diffuse slowly have little or no smell. A slight change in chemical constitution may produce marked alteration in the character of the odour of a substance; certain modes of atomic grouping within the molecule appear to be more odoriferous than others. Attempts have been made to discover the elementary sensations of smell, but hitherto with scant success. Many odours have unquestionably a complex physiological effect. For example, when nitrobenzol is held before the nose, it yields first the smell of heliotrope, next the smell of bitter almonds, and finally the smell of benzene; just as if different end-organs became successively exhausted. Some substances have a very different smell according to their concentration. Chemical dissociation, too, unquestionably plays a prominent part.

Nevertheless, there are certain points which indicate the existence of primary sensations of smell. First, some persons are congenitally insensible to one or more odours, but yet smell others quite normally. Hydrocyanic acid, mignonette, violet, vanilla, benzoin, are substances which appear to certain people to have no smell. Secondly, some odorous bodies, when simultaneously given, antagonise one another; others produce a mixed smell. Thirdly, fatigue of the epithelium with one odour will modify or abolish the effect of some smells, but will leave that of others untouched.

The delicacy of the sense of smell is most remarkable. Valentin calculates that even $\frac{3}{100,000,000}$ of a grain of musk can be distinctly smelled. Solutions of camphor afford a good means of testing olfactory acuity. One tube of camphor solution is presented to the subject along with three tubes of water, and the former is replaced with weaker and weaker solutions until it is indistinguishable from the tubes containing water. Pungent substances, like ammonia, are unsuited for olfactometrical experiment. They stimulate the endings of the fifth as well as those of the olfactory nerve.

CHAPTER LIV

HEARING

Anatomy of the Ear.

THE Organ of Hearing (fig. 539) is divided into three parts, (1) the external, (2) the middle, and (3) the internal ear. The two first are only accessory to the third or internal ear, which contains the essential parts of the organ of hearing.

External Ear.—The external ear consists of the *pinna* and the *external auditory meatus.* The central hollow of the former is named the *concha.* From the concha, the auditory canal, with a slight arch directed upwards, passes inwards and a little forwards to the membrana tympani, to which it thus serves to convey the vibrating air.

Middle Ear or **Tympanum.**—The middle ear, or tympanum or drum (3, fig. 539), is separated by the *membrana tympani* from the external auditory meatus. It is a cavity in the temporal bone, opening through its anterior and inner wall into the Eustachian tube, a cylindriform flattened canal, dilated at both ends, composed partly of bone and partly of elastic cartilage, and lined with mucous membrane, which forms a communication between the tympanum and the pharynx. It opens into the cavity of the pharynx just behind the posterior aperture of the nostrils. The cavity of the tympanum communicates posteriorly with air-cavities, the *mastoid cells* in the mastoid process of the temporal bone; but its only opening to the external air is through the Eustachian tube (4, fig. 539). The walls of the tympanum are osseous, except where apertures in them are closed with membrane, as at the *fenestra rotunda,* and *fenestra ovalis,* and at the outer part where the bone is replaced by the membrana tympani. The cavity of the tympanum is lined with mucous membrane, the epithelium of which is ciliated and continuous through the Eustachian tube with that of the pharynx. In some parts, however, viz., over the roof, promontory, ossicles, and membrana tympani, the epithelium is of the pavement variety. A chain of small bones extends from the membrana tympani to the fenestra ovalis.

The *membrana tympani* is placed in a slanting direction at the bottom of the external auditory canal, its plane being at an angle of about 45° with the lower wall of the canal. It is formed of fibres, some running radially, some circularly; its margin is set in a bony

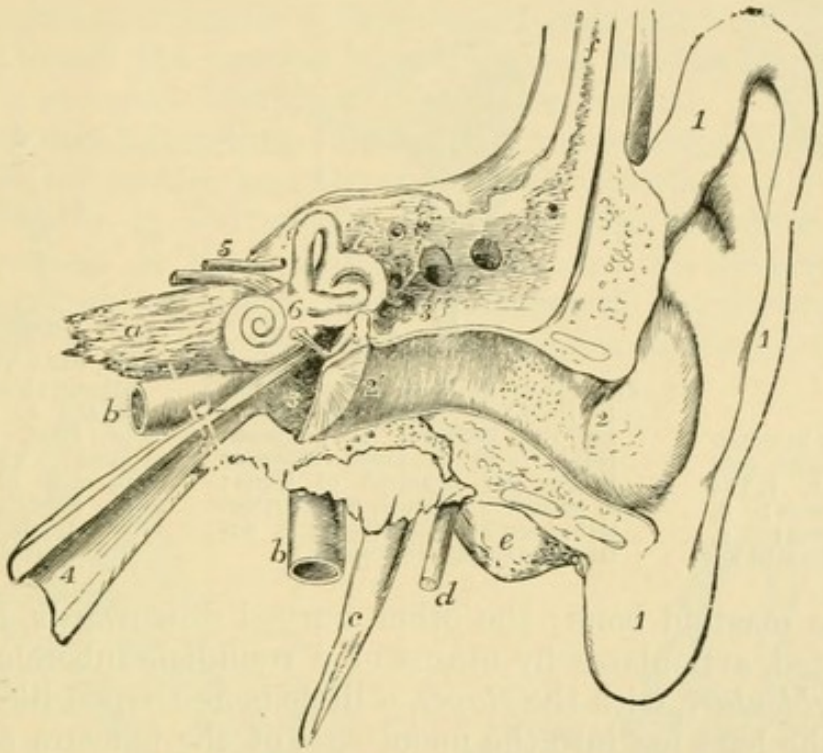


FIG. 539.—Diagrammatic view from before of the parts composing the organ of hearing of the left side. The temporal bone of the left side, with the accompanying soft parts, has been detached from the head, and a section has been carried through it transversely, so as to remove the front of the meatus externus, half the tympanic membrane, the upper and anterior wall of the tympanum and Eustachian tube. The meatus internus has also been opened, and the bony labyrinth exposed by the removal of the surrounding parts of the petrous bone. 1, The pinna and lobe; 2, meatus externus; 2′, membrana tympani; 3, cavity of the tympanum; 3′, its opening backwards into the mastoid cells; between 3 and 3′, the chain of small bones; 4, Eustachian tube; 5, meatus internus, containing the facial (uppermost) and the auditory nerves; 6, placed on the vestibule of the labyrinth above the fenestra ovalis; *a*, apex of the petrous bone; *b*, internal carotid artery: *c*, styloid process; *d*, facial nerve issuing from the stylo-mastoid foramen; *e*, mastoid process; *f*, squamous part of the bone covered by integument, etc. (Arnold.)

groove; its outer surface is covered with a continuation of the cutaneous lining of the auditory canal, its inner surface with the mucous membrane of the tympanum.

The *ossicles* are three in number; named malleus, incus, and stapes. The malleus, or hammer-bone, has a long slightly-curved process, called its handle, which is inserted between the layers of the membrana tympani; the line of attachment is vertical, including the whole length of the handle, and extending from the upper border to the centre of the membrane. The head of the malleus is irregularly rounded; its neck, or the line of boundary between the head and the handle, supports two processes: a *short* conical one, and a *slender* one, *processus gracilis*, which extends forwards, and is attached to the wall of the cavity at the Glaserian fissure. The

incus, or anvil-bone, shaped like a bicuspid molar tooth, is articulated by its broader part, corresponding with the surface of the crown of the tooth, to the malleus. Of its two fang-like processes, one, directed backwards, has a free end attached by ligament to a depres-

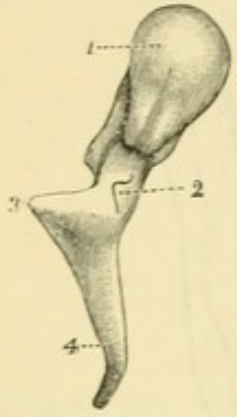


FIG. 540.—The hammer-bone or malleus, seen from the front. 1, The head; 2, neck; 3, short process; 4, handle. (Schwalbe.)

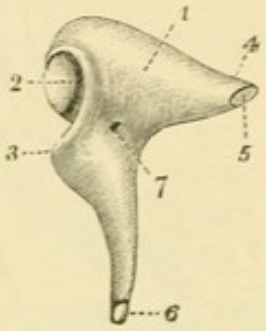


FIG. 541.—The incus, or anvil-bone. 1, Body; 2, ridged articulation for the malleus; 4, processus brevis, with 5, rough articular surface for ligament of incus; 6, processus magnus, with articulating surface for stapes; 7, nutrient foramen. (Schwalbe.)

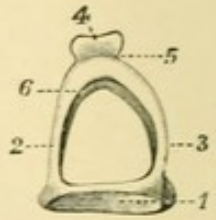


FIG. 542.—The stapes, or stirrup-bone. 1, Base; 2 and 3, arch; 4, head of bone, which articulates with orbicular process of the incus; 5, constricted part of neck; 6, one of the crura. (Schwalbe.)

sion in the mastoid bone; the other, curved downwards, longer and more pointed, articulates by means of a roundish tubercle, formerly called *os orbiculare*, with the *stapes*, a little bone shaped like a stirrup, of which the base fits into the membrane of the fenestra ovalis. To the neck of the stapes, a short process, corresponding with the loop of the stirrup, is attached the *stapedius* muscle.

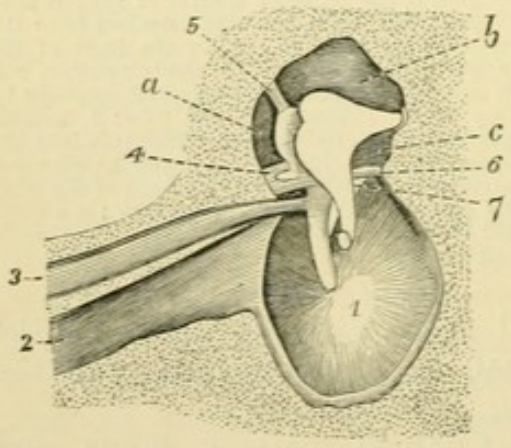


FIG. 543.—Interior view of the tympanum, with membrana tympani and bones in natural position. 1, Membrana tympani; 2, Eustachian tube; 3, tensor tympani muscle; 4, lig. mallei exter.; 5, lig. mallei super.; 6, chorda-tympani nerve; *a*, *b*, and *c*, sinuses about ossicles. (Schwalbe.)

The muscles of the tympanum are two in number. The *tensor tympani* arises from the cartilaginous end of the Eustachian tube and the adjoining surface of the sphenoid, and from the sides of the canal in which the muscle lies; the tendon of the muscle bends at nearly a right angle over the end of the processus cochleariformis, and is inserted into the inner part of the handle of the malleus. The *stapedius* is concealed within a canal in the bone in front of the aqueductus Fallopii. The tendon issues from the aperture of this canal and is inserted into the neck of the stapes posteriorly.

The Internal Ear.—The proper organ of hearing is formed by the

distribution of the auditory nerve, within the internal ear, or *labyrinth*, a set of cavities within the petrous portion of the temporal bone. The bone which forms the walls of these cavities is denser than that around it, and forms the *osseous labyrinth*; the membrane within the cavities forms the *membranous labyrinth*. The membranous labyrinth contains a fluid called *endolymph*; while outside it, between it and the osseous labyrinth, is a fluid called *perilymph*. This fluid is not pure lymph, as it contains mucin.

The **Osseous Labyrinth** consists of three principal parts, namely, the *vestibule*, the *cochlea*, and the *semicircular canals*.

The *vestibule* is the middle cavity of the labyrinth, and the central chamber of the auditory apparatus. It presents, in its inner wall, several openings for the entrance of the divisions of the auditory nerve; in its outer wall, the *fenestra ovalis* (2, fig. 544*a*),

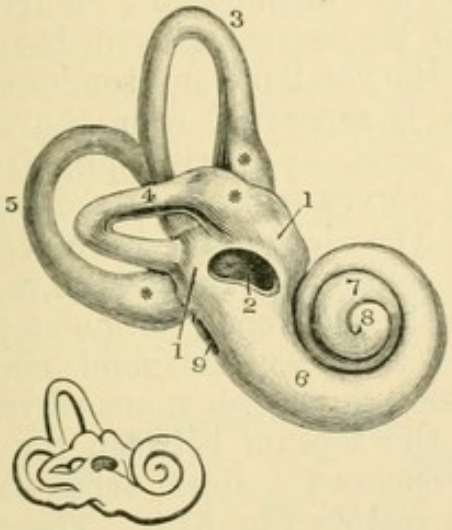


FIG. 544*a*.—Right bony labyrinth, viewed from the outer side. The specimen here represented is prepared by separating piecemeal the looser substance of the petrous bone from the dense walls which immediately enclose the labyrinth. 1, The vestibule; 2, fenestra ovalis; 3, superior semicircular canal; 4, horizontal or external canal; 5, posterior canal; *, ampullæ of the semicircular canals; 5, first turn of the cochlea; 7, second turn; 8, apex; 9, fenestra rotunda. The smaller figure in outline below shows the natural size. $\frac{2\frac{1}{2}}{1}$. (Sömmering.)

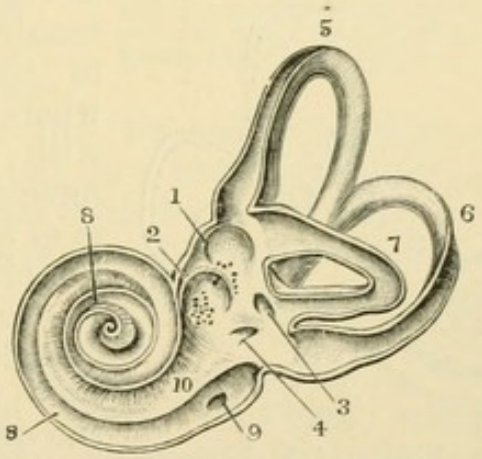


FIG. 544*b*.—View of the interior of the left labyrinth. The bony wall of the labyrinth is removed superiorly and externally. 1, Fovea hemielliptica; 2, fovea hemispherica; 3, common opening of the superior and posterior semicircular canals; 4, opening of the aqueduct of the vestibule; 5, the superior; 6, the posterior, and 7, the external semicircular canals; 8, spiral tube of the cochlea (scala tympani); 9, opening of the aqueduct of the cochlea; 10, placed on the lamina spiralis in the scala vestibuli. $\frac{2\frac{1}{2}}{1}$. (Sömmering.)

an opening filled by membrane, in which is inserted the base of the stapes; in its posterior and superior walls, five openings by which the *semicircular canals* communicate with it: in its anterior wall, an opening leading into the *cochlea*. The *semicircular canals* are described in Chapter XLIX.

The *cochlea* (6, 7, 8, fig. 544*a*, and 8, fig. 544*b*) is shaped like a

snail-shell, and is situated in front of the vestibule; its base rests on the bottom of the internal meatus, where some apertures transmit the cochlear filaments of the auditory nerve. In its axis, the cochlea is traversed by a conical column, the *modiolus*, around which a *spiral canal* winds with two turns and a half from the base to the apex. At the apex of the cochlea the canal is closed; at the base it presents three openings, of which one, already mentioned, communicates with the vestibule; another, called *fenestra rotunda*, is separated by a membrane from the cavity of the tympanum; the third is the orifice of the *aquæductus cochleæ*, a canal leading to the jugular fossa of the petrous bone. The spiral canal is divided into two passages, or *scalæ* (staircases), by a partition formed partly of bone, the *lamina spiralis*, connected with the modiolus, and partly of a membrane called the *basilar membrane*.

The **Membranous Labyrinth**.—The membranous labyrinth corresponds generally with the form of the osseous labyrinth, so far as regards the vestibule and semicircular canals, but is separated from the walls of these parts by perilymph, except where the nerves enter into connection with it. The labyrinth is a closed membrane containing endolymph, which is of much the same composition as perilymph, but contains less solid matter. In the cochlea, the membranous labyrinth completes the septum between the two *scalæ*, and encloses a spiral canal, called the *canalis cochleæ* (fig. 545). The fluid in the *scalæ* of the cochlea is continuous with the perilymph in the vestibule and semicircular canals. The vestibular portion of the membranous labyrinth comprises two communicating cavities, of which the larger and upper is named the *utricle*; the lower, the *saccule*. They are lodged in depressions in the bony labyrinth, termed respectively *fovea hemielliptica* and *fovea hemispherica*. The membranous semicircular canals open into the utricle; the canal of the cochlea opens by the canalis reuniens into the saccule. The accompanying diagram (fig. 545) shows the relationship of all these parts to one another.

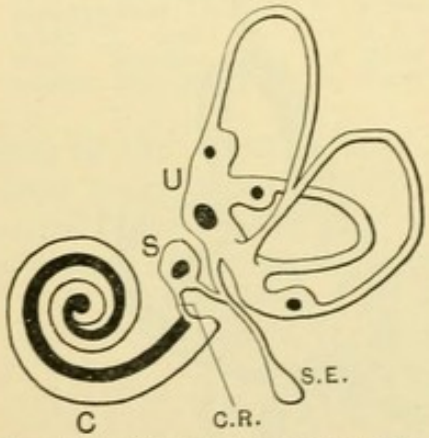


FIG. 545.—Diagram of the right membranous labyrinth. U, Utricle, into which the three semicircular canals open; S, saccule, communicating with the cochlea (C) by C.R., the canalis reuniens, and with the utricle by a canal having on it an enlargement, the saccus endolymphaticus (S.E.). The black shading represents the places of termination of the auditory nerve, namely, in the maculæ of the utricle and saccule; the cristæ in the ampullary ends of the three semicircular canals; and in the whole length of the canal of the cochlea. (After Schäfer.)

Auditory Nerve.—All the organs now described are provided for the appropriate exposure of the filaments of the auditory nerve to vibrations. It enters the *meatus auditorius internus* with the

facial nerve and the nervus intermedius, and, traversing the bone, enters the labyrinth at the angle between the base of the cochlea and the vestibule, in two divisions; one for the vestibule and semicircular canals, and the other for the cochlea.

There are two branches for the vestibule, one, superior, distributed to the utricle and to the superior and horizontal semicircular canals, and the other, inferior, which arises from the cochlear nerve, ends in the saccule and posterior semicircular canal. The inferior nerve, although it is contained for some distance in the sheath of the cochlear nerve, is really composed of vestibular fibres. The terminations of the nerve in the saccule, utricle, and semicircular canals have been already described in page 721; so we can pass at once to the cochlea.

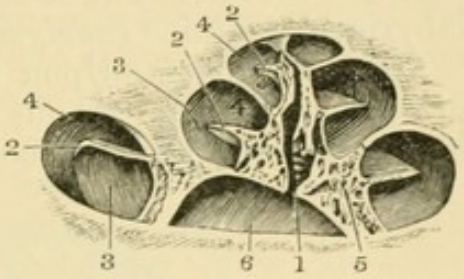


FIG. 546.—View of the osseous cochlea divided through the middle. 1, Central canal of the modiolus; 2, lamina spiralis ossea; 3, scala tympani; 4, scala vestibuli; 5, porous substance of the modiolus near one of the sections of the canalis spiralis modioli. $\frac{4}{1}$ (Arnold.)

This is best seen in vertical section; the cavity is divided partly by bone (the *spiral lamina*), partly by membrane (the *basilar membrane*), into two spiral scalæ, the *scala tympani* and *scala vestibuli* (fig. 546). The basilar membrane increases in breadth from the base towards the apex of the cochlea. It contains fibres (about 24,000 in all) embedded in a homogeneous matrix, and running radially, from the spiral lamina to the *spiral ligament*, where its other end is again attached to the bone. At the apex of the cochlea, the lamina ends in a small *hamulus*, the inner and concave part of which being detached from the summit of the modiolus, leaves a small aperture named the *helicotrema*, by which the two scalæ, separated in all the rest of their length, communicate.

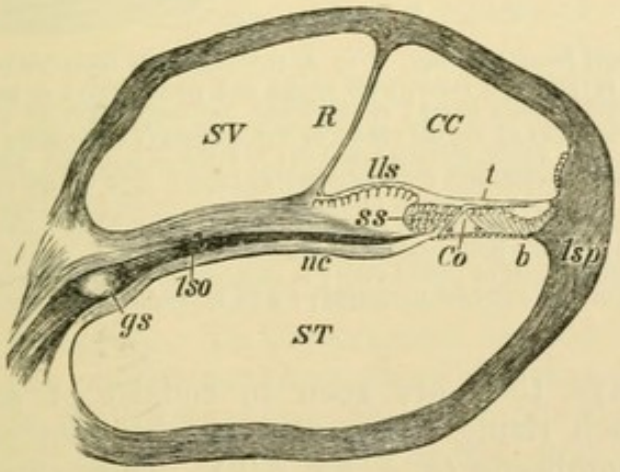


FIG. 547.—Section through one of the coils of the cochlea (diagrammatic). *ST*, Scala tympani; *SV*, scala vestibuli; *CC*, canalis cochlea or canalis membranaceus; *R*, membrane of Reissner; *lso*, lamina spiralis ossea; *lls*, limbus laminæ spiralis; *ss*, sulcus spiralis; *nc*, cochlear nerve; *gs*, ganglion spirale; *t*, membrana tectoria (below the membrana tectoria is the lamina reticularis); *b*, membrana basilaris; *Co*, rods of Corti; *lsp*, ligamentum spirale. (Quain.)

Besides the scala vestibuli and scala tympani, there is a third space between them, called *scala media* or *canal of the cochlea* (*CC*, fig. 547). In section it is triangular, its external wall being formed by the wall of the cochlea, its upper wall (separating it from the scala vestibuli) by

the membrane of Reissner, and its lower wall (separating it from the scala tympani) by the basilar membrane, these two meeting at the outer edge of the bony lamina spiralis. Following the turns of the cochlea to its apex, the scala media there terminates blindly; while towards the base of the cochlea it is also closed, with the exception of a very narrow passage (canalis reuniens) uniting it with the saccule. The scala media (like the rest of the membranous labyrinth) contains *endolymph.*

Organ of Corti.—Upon the basilar membrane are arranged cells of various shapes. About midway between the outer edge of the lamina spiralis and the outer wall of the cochlea are situated the

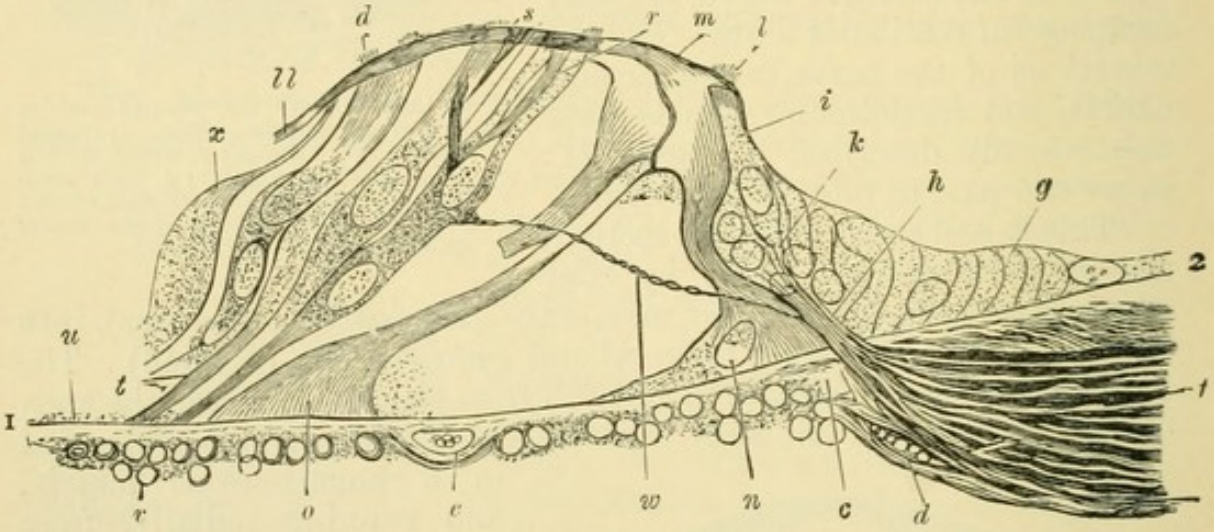


FIG. 548.—Vertical section of the organ of Corti from the dog. 1 to 2, Homogeneous layer of the membrana basilaris; *u*, vestibular layer; *v*, tympanal layer, with nuclei and protoplasm; *a*, prolongation of tympanal periosteum of lamina spiralis ossea; *c*, thickened commencement of the membrana basilaris near the point of perforation of the nerves *h*; *d*, blood-vessel (vas spirale); *e*, blood-vessel; *f*, nerves; *g*, the epithelium of the sulcus spiralis internus; *i*, internal hair-cell, with basal process *k*, surrounded with nuclei and protoplasm (of the granular layer), into which the nerve-fibres radiate; *l*, hairs of the internal hair-cell; *n*, base or foot of inner pillar of organ of Corti; *m*, head of the same uniting with the corresponding part of an external pillar, whose under half is missing, while the next pillar beyond, *o*, presents both middle portion and base; *r*, *s*, *d*, three external hair-cells; *t*, bases of two neighbouring hair or tufted cells; *x*, supporting cell of Deiters; *w*, nerve-fibre arborising round the first of the external hair-cells; *l l* to *l*, lamina reticularis. × 800. (Waldeyer.)

rods of Corti. Viewed sideways, they are seen to consist of an external and internal pillar, each rising from an expanded foot or *base* attached to the basilar membrane (*o*, *n*, fig. 548). They slant inwards towards each other, and each ends in a swelling termed the *head;* the head of the inner pillar overlies that of the outer (fig. 548). Each pair of pillars forms a pointed roof arching over a space, and by a succession of them a tunnel is formed.

There are about 3000 of these pairs of pillars, in proceeding from the base of the cochlea towards its apex. They are found progressively to increase in length, and become more oblique; in other words, the tunnel becomes wider, but diminishes in height as we approach the apex of the cochlea. Leaning against the rods of Corti

are certain other cells called *hair-cells*, which terminate in small hair-like processes. There are several rows of these on the outer and one row on the inner side. Between them are certain supporting cells called *cells of Deiters* (fig. 548, *x*). This structure rests upon the basilar membrane; it is roofed in by a fenestrated membrane or lamina reticularis into the fenestræ of which the tops of the various rods and cells are received. When viewed from above, the organ of Corti shows a remarkable resemblance to the keyboard of a piano. The top of the organ is roofed by the *membrana tectoria* (fig. 547, *t*) which extends from the end of the limbus (*lls*, fig. 547), a connective tissue structure on the spiral lamina. The *spiral ganglion* from which the cochlear nerve-fibres originate is situated in the spiral lamina. The peripheral axons of its bipolar cells arborise around the hair-cells of the organ of Corti: the central axons pass down the modiolus, and thence to the pons (see p. 654).

Physiology of Hearing.

Sounds are caused by vibrations; when a piano-string is struck, it is thrown into a series of rapid regular vibrations; the more rapidly the vibrations occur the higher is the *pitch* of the musical note; the greater the amplitude of the vibration, the louder or more intense is the tone; if the vibrations are regular and simple (pendular), the tone is pure; if they are regular but compound, the tone is impure, and its quality or *timbre* is dependent on the rate and amplitude of the simple vibrations of which the compound vibrations are composed. The vibrations are transmitted as waves, and ultimately affect the hair-cells at the extremities of the auditory nerve in the cochlea. The semicircular canals are not concerned in the sense of hearing; their function in connection with equilibration is described in Chapter XLIX. The external and middle ears are conducting; the internal ear is conducting and receptive. In the external ear the vibrations travel through air; in the middle ear through solid structures—membranes and bones; and in the internal ear through fluid, first through the perilymph on the far side of the fenestra ovalis; and then the vibrations pass through the basilar membrane and membrane of Reissner, and set the endolymph of the canal of the cochlea in motion.

This is the normal way in which the vibrations pass, but the endolymph may be affected in other ways, for instance through the other bones of the head; one can, for example, hear the ticking of one's watch when it is placed between the teeth, even when the ears are stopped. From this fact is derived a valuable practical method of distinguishing in a deaf person what part of the organ of hearing is at fault. The patient may not be able to hear a watch or a tuning-fork when it is held close to the ear; but if he can hear it when it is placed between his teeth, or on his forehead, the malady is localised in either the external or middle ear; if he can hear it in neither situation, it is a much more serious case, for then the internal ear or the

nervous mechanism of hearing is at fault. In disease of the middle ear the hearing of low tones is especially affected; high tones appear to be transmissible by bone-conduction more readily than low.

In connection with the external ear there is not much more to be said; the pinna in many animals is large and acts as a kind of natural ear-trumpet to collect the vibrations of the air; in man this function is to a very great extent lost, and though there are muscles present to move it into appropriate postures, they are not under the control of the will in the majority of people, and are functionless, ancestral vestiges.

In the middle ear, however, there are several points to be considered, namely, the action of the membrana tympani, of the ossicles, of the tympanic muscles, and of the Eustachian tube.

The Membrana Tympani.—This membrane, unlike that of ordinary drums, can take up and vibrate in response to, not only its own fundamental tone, but to an immense range of tones differing from each other by many octaves. This would clearly be impossible if it were an evenly stretched membrane. It is not evenly nor very tightly stretched, but owing to its attachment to the chain of ossicles it is slightly funnel-shaped: the ossicles also damp the continuance of the vibrations.

When the membrane gets too tightly stretched, by increase or decrease of the pressure of the air in the tympanum, then the sense of hearing is dulled. The pressure in the tympanic cavity is kept the same as that of the atmosphere by the *Eustachian tube,* which leads from the cavity to the pharynx, and so to the external air. The Eustachian tube is not, however, always open; it is opened by the action of the *tensor palati* during swallowing. Suppose it were closed owing to swelling of its mucous membrane—this often happens in inflammation of the throat—the result would be what is called *Eustachian* or *throat deafness,* and this is relieved by passing a catheter so as to open the tube. When the tube is closed, an interchange of gases takes place between the imprisoned air and the blood of the tympanic vessels. In time, as in the aërotomometer (see p. 381), equilibrium is established and the tension of the imprisoned gases becomes equal to that of the blood-gases, not to that of the atmosphere. The membrane is therefore cupped inwards by the atmospheric pressure on its exterior; it is this increased tightening of the membrane that produces deafness. There is also an accumulation of mucus. When one makes a violent expiration, as in sneezing, some air is often forced through the Eustachian tube into the tympanum. The ears feel as though they were bulged out, as indeed the membrana tympani is, and there is again partial deafness, which sensations are at once relieved by swallowing, so as to open the Eustachian tube and thus re-establish equality of pressure.

The ossicles communicate the vibrations of the membrana

tympani (to which the handle of the malleus is fixed) to the membrane which closes the fenestra ovalis (to which the foot of the stapes is attached). Thus the vibrations are communicated to the fluid of the internal ear which is situated on the other side of the oval window.

The accompanying diagram will assist us in understanding how this is brought about. The bones all vibrate as if they were one, the slight movements between the individual bones being inappreciable. The utility of there being several bones is seen when the vibrations are excessive; the small amount of "give" at the articulations is really protective and tends to prevent fractures.

The handle of the malleus is inserted between the layers of the tympanic membrane; the processus gracilis (*p. g.*) has its end A attached to the tympanic wall on the inner aspect of the Glaserian fissure; the end B of the short process (*s. p.*) of the incus is fastened by a ligament to the opposite wall of the tympanic cavity; the end D of the long process of the incus articulates with the stirrup, the base of which is turned towards the reader. The handle vibrates with the membrana tympani; and the vibrations of the whole chain take place round the *axis of rotation* AB. Every time C comes forwards D comes forwards, but by drawing perpendiculars from C and D to the axis of rotation, it is found that D is about $\frac{2}{3}$ of the distance from the axis that C is. So in the transmission of the vibrations from membrane to membrane across the bony chain, the amplitude of the vibration is decreased by about $\frac{1}{3}$, and the force is correspondingly increased. This increase of power is augmented by the fact that the tympanic membrane concentrates its power upon an area (the membrane of the oval window) only one-twentieth of its size. The final movement of the stapes is, however, always very small; it varies from $\frac{1}{15}$ to less than $\frac{1}{10000}$ of a millimetre.

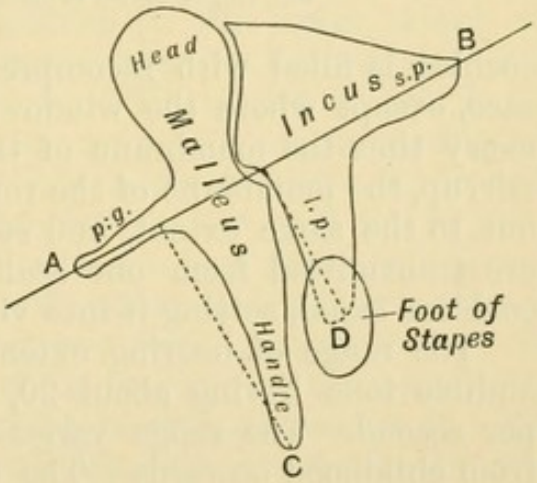


FIG. 549.—Diagrammatic view of ear ossicles.

The action of the *tensor tympani*, by pulling in the handle of the malleus, increases the tension of the membrana tympani. It is supplied by the fifth nerve. It is opposed by the strong external ligament of the malleus. The *stapedius* attached to the neck of the stapes tilts it backwards and diminishes the intra-tympanic air-pressure. It is supplied by the seventh nerve.

The next very simple diagram (fig. 550) will explain the use of the *fenestra rotunda.*

The cochlea is supposed to be uncoiled; the scala vestibuli leads from the fenestra ovalis, to the other side of which the stapes is attached; the scala tympani leads to the fenestra rotunda; the two scalæ communicate at the helicotrema, and are separated from the canal of the cochlea by the basilar membrane, and the membrane of Reissner. C.R. is the canalis reuniens leading to the saccule. The

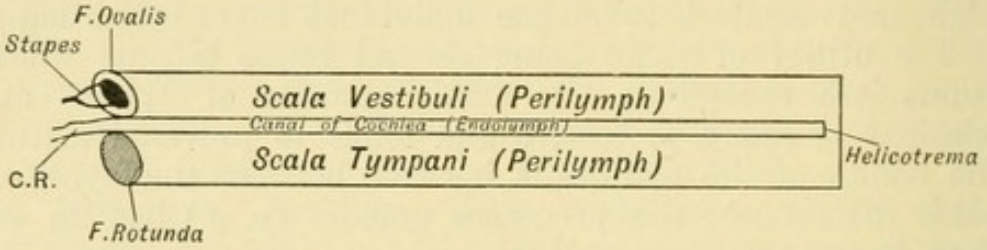


FIG. 550.—Diagram to illustrate the use of the fenestra rotunda.

cochlea is filled with incompressible fluid in an inexpansible bony case, except where the windows are closed by membranes. Hence every time the membrane of the oval window is bulged in by the stirrup, the membrane of the round window is simultaneously bulged out to the same extent, and *vice versâ*. These changes of pressure are transmitted from one scala to the other directly through the cochlear canal, setting it into vibration, and through the helicotrema.

The range of hearing extends over 10 or 11 octaves; the lowest audible tone having about 20, the highest about 25,000, vibrations per second. The range varies in different people, and diminishes from childhood onwards. The upper limit of hearing may be tested by minute tuning-forks, metal rods, or by Galton's whistle. Many animals appear to be able to detect high tones which lie beyond the human limit. The lower limit may be determined by very large tuning-forks, or by employing very low difference-tones.

Difference-tones are produced when two tones of different pitch, m and n, are sounded together. A tone having the pitch m minus n is then heard in addition to the tones m and n: also a summation tone of pitch m plus n may be heard, but with greater difficulty. When m and n are nearly equal, a beating tone, instead of a difference-tone, results, having a pitch somewhere intermediate between m and n. If the difference between m and n is exceedingly small, this beating-tone alone is heard. The frequency of the beats corresponds to the difference in vibration-rates, m and n. Under certain conditions the difference and summation-tones (which are collectively called combination-tones) exist in the air; their presence being demonstrable by their re-inforcement before appropriate resonators. More generally, however, they appear to be produced within the ear, *i.e.*, they have merely a subjective origin. The smallest perceptible difference in pitch between two successive tones is about 0·2 vibrations in the

middle region of the piano for trained subjects. Practice effects extraordinary improvement, even among the most unmusical.

There can be little doubt that the cochlea is the organ specially concerned in hearing. It first appears among vertebrata in certain fishes as a very rudimentary structure. If the cochlea is removed from dogs, they become deaf.

There are two classes of theories of hearing, in both of which the basilar membrane of the cochlea plays the essential part.

The one class comprises the many "sound-picture" theories which have been advanced in very various forms by Rutherford, Waller, Hurst, Ewald, and Meyer. The entire basilar membrane is supposed to vibrate either as a telephone plate, or as an elastic membrane, different tones or combinations of tones giving rise to different patterns of vibrations which are communicated to the hair-cells and thence by the auditory nerve-fibres to the brain, where (in Rutherford's theory) the analysis of these patterns is held to take place.

The other is the resonance-theory of Helmholtz, in which the pitch of a tone, or the analysis of a complex sound into its constituent tones, is determined not in the brain but in the cochlea. It depends on the principle of sympathetic vibration. As is well known, if a tone is sung in front of a piano (best with the loud pedal held down), the string of the piano which is attuned to that tone will immediately respond; another tone will elicit response from another string. So in the cochlea the appropriate fibre of the basilar membrane is thrown into vibration when the tone to which it is attuned reaches it. The fibre thus stimulated affects the hair-cells above it, whence the stimulus is conducted to the brain. If two tones are sounded together, the two appropriate fibres respond, and the analysis of the now more complex stimulus is performed in the cochlea. The fibres of the basilar membrane increase in radial length from the base towards the apex of the cochlea. According to the resonance-theory, the upper part of the organ would thus be affected by low tones, the lower part by high tones.

The first of these two classes of theory makes it difficult or impossible for us to explain our ability to analyse complex chords into their component tones. The full acceptance of the second is difficult in the face of the small difference of length (at most 1 : 12) between the shortest and the longest of the basilar fibres. On the other hand, it gains support from the effects of experiment on, and disease of, different portions of the cochlea. For instance, the deafness to high-pitched tones (seen in boiler-makers) is stated to be associated with disease of the lower whorl of the cochlea.

It may be that the fibres of the basilar membrane do not vibrate as Helmholtz supposed, but that the hair-cells themselves are each in some unknown way specially attuned to respond only to one of the many tonal stimuli which may reach them (Myers).

CHAPTER LV

VOICE AND SPEECH

THE fundamental tones of the voice are produced by the current of expired air causing the vibration of the vocal cords, two elastic bands contained in a cartilaginous box placed at the top of the wind-pipe or trachea. This box is called the *larynx*. The sounds produced here are modified by other parts such as the tongue, teeth, and lips, as will be explained later on.

Anatomy of the Larynx.

The cartilages of the larynx are the thyroid, the cricoid, the two arytenoids. These are the most important for voice production; they are made of hyaline carti-

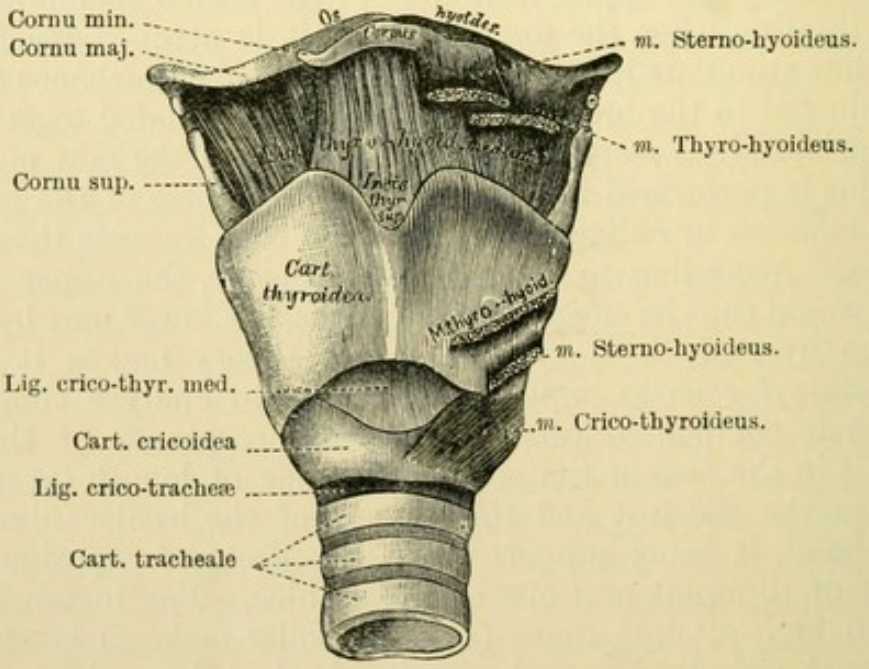


FIG. 551.—The larynx, as seen from the front showing the cartilages and ligaments. The muscles, with the exception of one crico-thyroid, are cut off short. (Stoerk.)

lage. Then there are the epiglottis, two cornicular, and two cuneiform cartilages. These are made of yellow fibro-cartilage.

The *thyroid* cartilage (fig. 552, 1 to 4) does not form a complete ring around the

larynx, but only covers the front portion. It forms the prominence in front of the throat known as Adam's apple. The *cricoid* cartilage (fig. 552, 5, 6), on the other hand, is a complete ring; the back part of the ring is much broader than the front. On the top of this broad portion of the cricoid are the *arytenoid* cartilages (fig. 552, 7); the connection between the cricoid below and arytenoid cartilages above is a joint with synovial membrane and ligaments, the latter permitting tolerably free

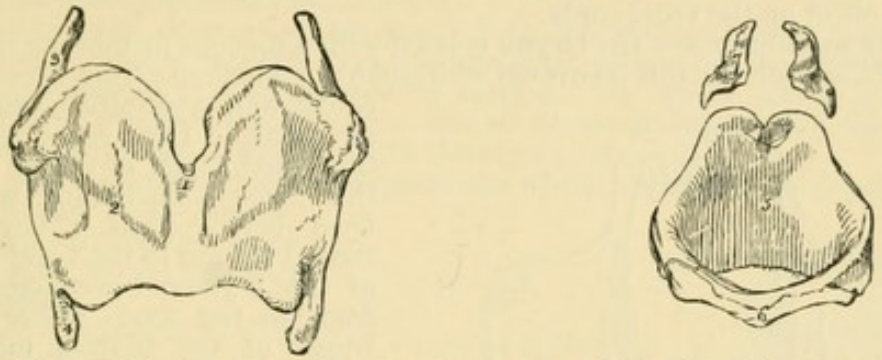


FIG. 552.—Cartilages of the larynx seen from the front. 1 to 4, Thyroid cartilage; 1, vertical ridge or pomum Adami; 2, right ala; 3, superior, and 4, inferior cornu of the right side; 5, 6, cricoid cartilage; 5, inside of the posterior part; 6, anterior narrow part of the ring; 7, arytenoid cartilages. × ¾.

motion between them. But although the arytenoid cartilages can move on the cricoid, they accompany the latter in all its movements. The base by means of which each arytenoid cartilage sits on the cricoid is triangular; the anterior angle is often called the vocal process: to it the posterior ends of the true vocal cords are attached. The outer angle is thick and called the muscular process.

The cornicular cartilages, or cartilages of Santorini, are perched on the top of

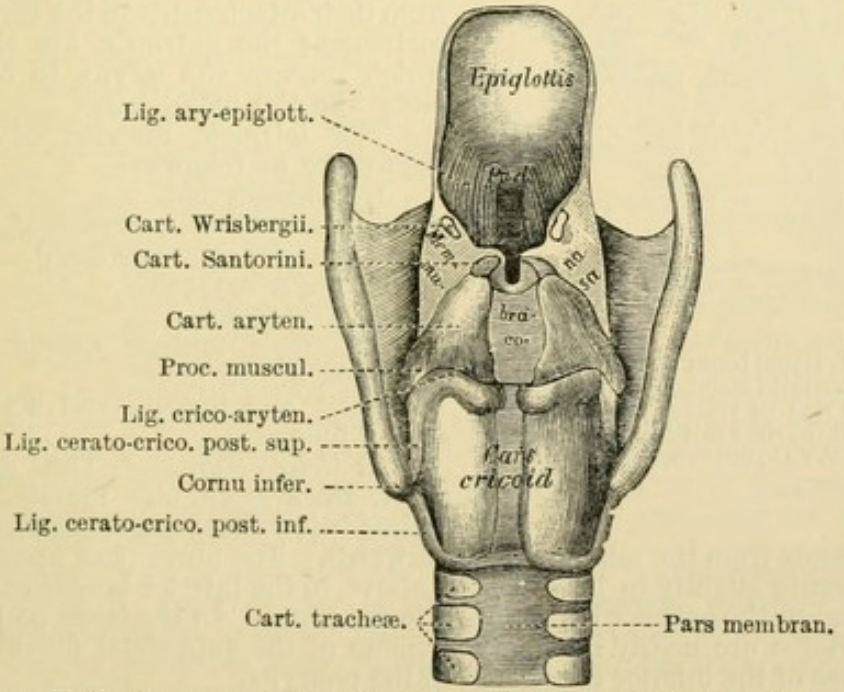


FIG. 553.—The larynx as seen from behind after removal of the muscles. The cartilages and ligaments only remain. (Stoerk.)

the arytenoids; the cuneiform cartilages, or cartilages of Wrisberg, are in a fold of mucous membrane; the epiglottis looks like a lid to the whole (fig. 553).

The thyroid cartilage is connected with the cricoid, by the crico-thyroid membrane, and also by joints with synovial membranes; the lower *cornua* of the thyroid clasp the cricoid between them, yet not so tightly but that the thyroid can revolve, within a certain range, around an axis passing transversely through the two joints

at which the cricoid is clasped. The vocal cords are attached behind to the front portion of the base (vocal process) of the arytenoid cartilages, and in front to the re-entering angle at the back of the thyroid; it is evident, therefore, that all movements of either of these cartilages must produce an effect on them of some kind or other. Inasmuch, too, as the arytenoid cartilages rest on the top of the back portion of the cricoid cartilage, and are connected with it by capsular and other ligaments, all movements of the cricoid cartilage must move the arytenoid cartilages, and also produce an effect on the vocal cords.

Mucous membrane.—The larynx is lined with a mucous membrane continuous with that of the trachea; this is covered with ciliated epithelium except over the vocal cords and epiglottis, where it is stratified. The vocal cords are thickened bands of elastic tissue in this mucous membrane which run from before back. They are attached behind to the vocal processes of the arytenoid cartilages, and in front to the angle where the two wings of the thyroid meet. The chink between them is called the *rima glottidis* (see fig. 554). Two ridges of mucous membrane above and parallel to these are called the *false vocal cords;* between the true and false vocal cord on each side is a recess called the *ventricle.*

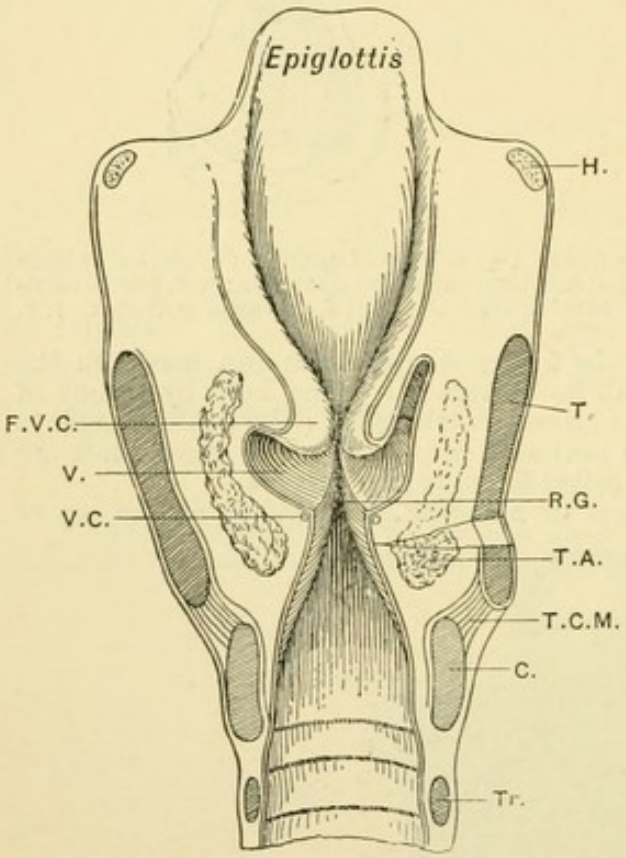


FIG. 554.—Vertical section through the larynx, passing from side to side. H, Hyoid bone; T., thyroid cartilage; T.C.M., thyro-cricoid membrane; C., cricoid cartilage; Tr., first ring of trachea; T.A., thyro-arytenoid muscle; R.G., rima glottidis; V.C., vocal cord; V., ventricle; F.V.C., false vocal cord. (After Allen Thomson.)

Muscles.—The muscles of the larynx are divided into intrinsic and extrinsic. The intrinsic are named from their attachments to the various cartilages; the extrinsic are those which connect the larynx to other parts like the hyoid bone.

The intrinsic muscles of the larynx are as follows:—

1. Crico-thyroid.
2. Posterior crico-arytenoid.
3. Lateral crico-arytenoid.
4. Thyro-arytenoid.
5. Arytenoid.

All these muscles except the arytenoid are in pairs.

Their attachments and actions are as follows:—

1. *Crico-thyroid.*—This is a short, thick triangular muscle, attached below to the cricoid cartilage; this attachment extends from the middle line backwards. The fibres pass upwards and outwards, diverging slightly to be attached above to the inferior border of the thyroid cartilage, and to the anterior border of its lower cornu. In the latter portion of the muscle the fibres are nearly horizontal. Some of the superficial fibres are continuous with those of the inferior constrictor of the pharynx.

The thyroid cartilage being fixed by extrinsic muscles, the contraction of this muscle draws upwards the anterior part of the cricoid cartilage, and depresses the posterior part, and with it the arytenoid cartilages, so that the vocal cords are stretched. Paralysis of these muscles therefore causes an inability to produce high-pitched tones.

2. *Posterior crico-arytenoid.*—This arises from the broad depression on the corresponding half of the posterior surface of the cricoid cartilage; its fibres converge upwards and outwards, and are inserted into the outer angle of the base of the

arytenoid cartilage behind the attachment of the lateral crico-arytenoid muscle. Near their insertion the upper fibres are blended with the lower fibres of the arytenoid muscle.

These muscles draw the outer angles of the arytenoid cartilages backwards and inwards, and thus rotate the anterior or vocal processes outwards, and widen the rima glottidis. They come into action during deep inspiration. If they are paralysed, the lips of the glottis approach the middle line and come in contact during each inspiration, so that dyspnœa is produced.

3. *Lateral crico-arytenoid.*—This arises from the sloping upper border of the cricoid cartilage, and is inserted into the muscular process of the arytenoid cartilage, and the adjacent part of its anterior surface. Its upper part is more or less blended with the thyro-arytenoid, and a few of its fibres are continuous round the outer side of the arytenoid cartilage with the arytenoid muscle.

These muscles draw the muscular processes of the arytenoid cartilages forwards and downwards, and thus approximate the vocal cords. They are antagonistic to the posterior crico-arytenoids.

4. *Thyro-arytenoid.* — This consists of two portions, inner and outer. The *inner* portion arises in the lower half of the angle formed by the alæ of the thyroid cartilage, and passing backwards is attached behind to the vocal process and to the adjacent parts of the outer surface of the arytenoid cartilage. These fibres are joined internally by short fibres which are attached in front to the vocal cord, and behind to the vocal process. Some oblique fibres pass from the sloping portion of the crico-thyroid membrane below the vocal cord, upwards, outwards, and somewhat backwards, to end in the tissue of the false vocal cord. The fibres of the *outer* portion arise in front from the thyroid cartilage close to the origin of the inner portion and from the crico-thyroid membrane. They pass backwards to be inserted in part into the lateral border and muscular process of the arytenoid cartilage, and in part they pass obliquely upwards towards the aryteno-epiglottidean fold, ending in the false vocal cord. The portion of this muscle which extends towards the epiglottis is often described as a separate muscle (*thyro-epiglottidean*); it resembles the crico-arytenoid in that some of its fibres are continuous with those of the arytenoid muscle.

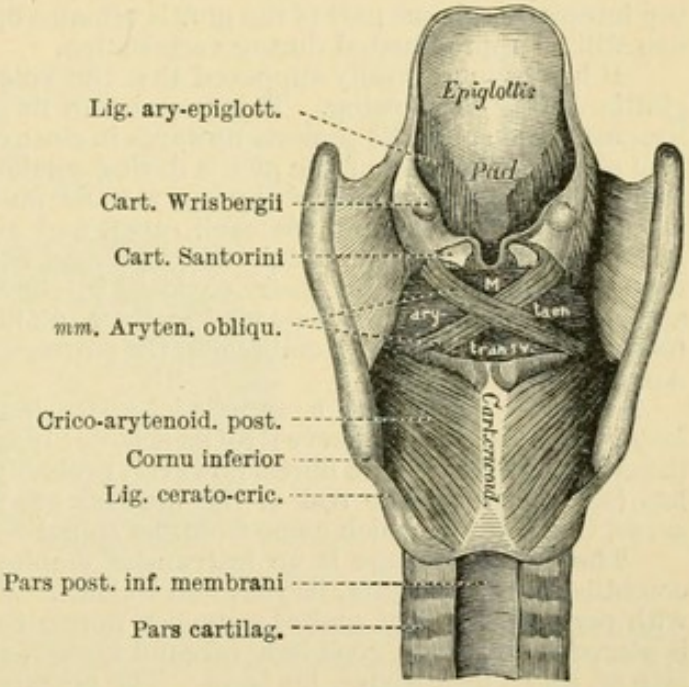


FIG. 555.—The larynx as seen from behind. To show the intrinsic muscles posteriorly. (Stoerk.)

The antero-posterior fibres will tend to draw forward the arytenoid cartilage, and with it the posterior part of the cricoid cartilage, rotating the latter upwards and antagonising the action of the crico-thyroid muscle, the effect being to relax the vocal cords. But if the latter are kept stretched those fibres of the inner portion of the muscle which are inserted into the vocal cord may serve to modify its elasticity, tightening the parts of the cord in front of, and relaxing those behind, its attachment. The vertical fibres of the muscle which extend from the crico-thyroid membrane across the base of the vocal fold and over the ventricle into the false vocal cord, render the free edge of the former more prominent. Then the fibres which are inserted into the muscular process and outer surface of the arytenoid cartilage will tend to draw the arytenoid cartilage forwards and rotate it inwards; finally, the fibres which pass into the aryteno-epiglottidean fold may assist in depressing the epiglottis.

If these muscles are paralysed, the lips of the glottis are no longer parallel, but are curved with the concavity inwards, and a much stronger blast of air is required for the production of the voice.

5. *Arytenoid.*—When the mucous membrane is removed from the back of the arytenoid cartilages, a band of transverse fibres is exposed, on the dorsal surface of which are two slender decussating oblique bundles. These are often described as separate muscles (arytenoid and aryteno-epiglottidean), but they are intimately blended together. The ventral fibres (arytenoid proper) pass straight across from the outer half of the concave surface on the back of one arytenoid cartilage to the corresponding surface of the other. The dorsal fibres can be followed to the lateral walls of the larynx, the uppermost ones to the cartilage of Santorini, the intermediate ones run with the uppermost fibres of the thyro-arytenoid muscle forming the so-called aryteno-epiglottidean muscle, and the lowest fibres blend at the level of the true vocal cords with the thyro-arytenoid and lateral crico-arytenoid muscles.

The arytenoid muscle draws the arytenoid cartilages together. If it is paralysed, the intercartilaginous part of the glottis remains open, although the membranous lips can still be approximated during vocalisation.

It has been generally supposed that the epiglottis is depressed as a lid over the glottis during swallowing. This may be so in some animals, but in man it is not the case; the epiglottis projects upwards in close contact with the base of the tongue. The necessary closure of the glottis during swallowing is brought about by the contraction of the arytenoid and thyro-arytenoid muscles; by this means the arytenoid cartilages are drawn towards each other, and also forwards into contact with the posterior surface of the epiglottis (Anderson Stuart). Henle remarks that "the muscles which lie in the space enclosed by the laminæ of the thyroid cartilage and above the cricoid may be regarded in their totality as a kind of sphincter such as is found in its simplest form embracing the entrance of the larynx in reptiles" (Quain's Anatomy).

Nerves.—The larynx is supplied by two branches of the vagus; the *superior laryngeal* is the sensory nerve; by its *external* branch, it supplies one muscle, namely, the crico-thyroid. These fibres, however, probably arise from glosso-pharyngeal rootlets (see p. 658). The rest of the muscles are supplied by the *inferior laryngeal nerve*, the fibres of which come from the spinal accessory, not the vagus proper.

The laryngoscope is an instrument employed in investigating during life the condition of the pharynx, larynx, and trachea. It consists of a large concave mirror with perforated centre, and of a smaller mirror fixed in a long handle. The patient is placed in a chair, a good light (argand burner, or electric lamp) is arranged on one side of, and a little above, his head. The operator fixes the large mirror round his head in such a manner, that he looks through the central aperture with one eye. He then seats himself opposite the patient, and so alters the position of the mirror, which is for this purpose provided with a ball-and-socket joint, that a beam of light is reflected on the lips of the patient.

The patient is now directed to throw his head slightly backwards, and to open his mouth; the reflection from the mirror lights up the cavity of the mouth, and by a little alteration of the distance between the operator and the patient the point at which the greatest amount of light is reflected by the mirror—in other words, its focal length—is readily discovered. The small mirror fixed in the handle is then warmed, either by holding it over the lamp, or by putting it into a vessel of warm water; this is necessary to prevent the condensation of breath upon its surface. The degree of heat is regulated by applying the back of the mirror to the hand or cheek, when it should feel warm without being painful.

After these preliminaries the patient is directed to put out his tongue, which is held by the left hand gently but firmly against the lower teeth by means of a handkerchief. The warm mirror is passed to the back of the mouth, until it rests upon and slightly raises the base of the uvula, and at the same time the light is directed upon it: an inverted image of the larynx and trachea will be seen in the mirror. If the dorsum of the tongue is alone seen, the handle of the mirror must be slightly lowered until the larynx comes into view; care should be taken, however, not to move the mirror upon the uvula, as it excites retching. The observation should not be prolonged, but should rather be repeated at short intervals.

The structures seen will vary somewhat according to the condition of the parts as to inspiration, expiration, phonation, etc.; they are (fig. 558) first, and apparently at the posterior part, the *base of the tongue*, immediately below which is the arcuate

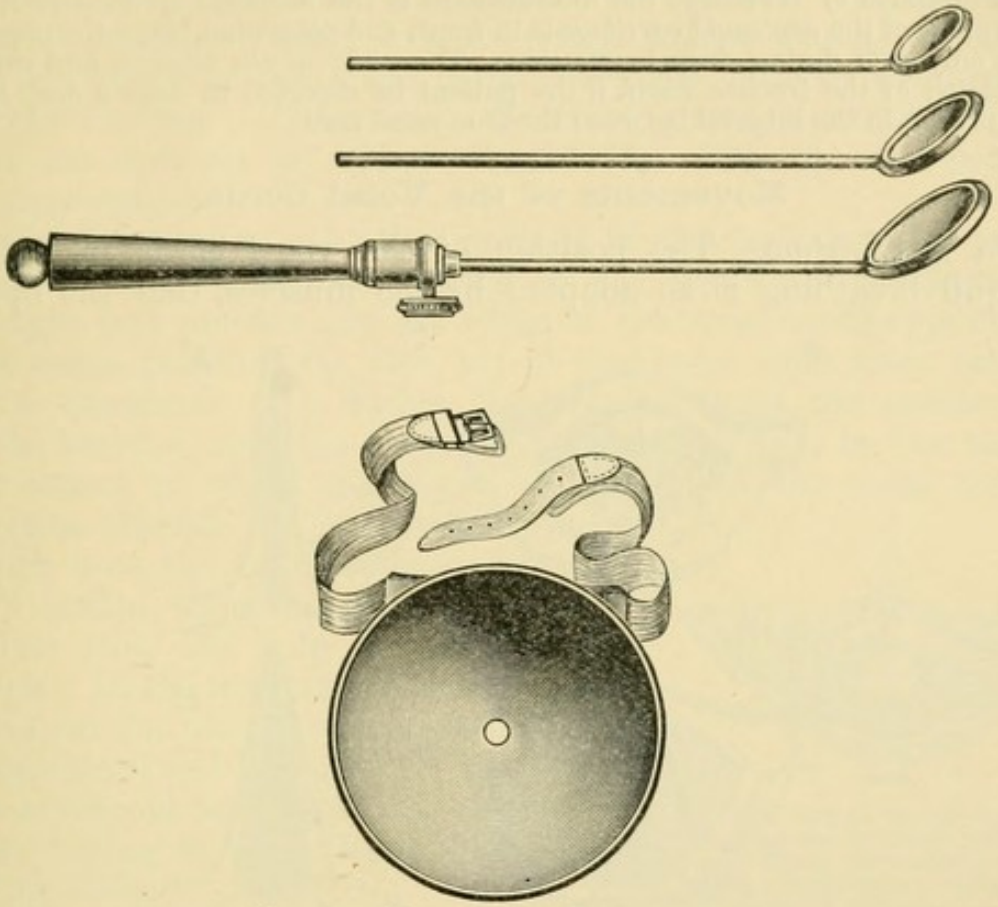


FIG. 556.—The parts of the Laryngoscope.

outline of the *epiglottis*, with its cushion or tubercle. Then are seen in the central line the *true vocal cords*, white and shining in their normal condition. The cords

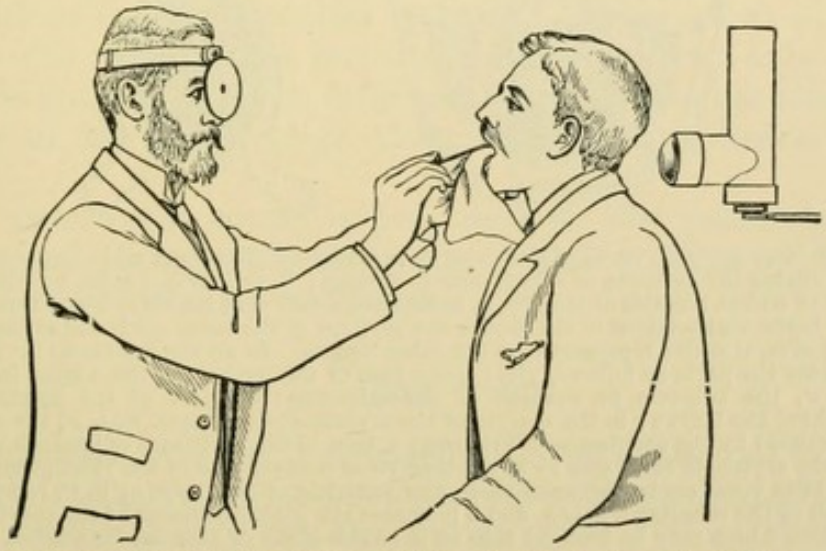


FIG. 557.—To show the position of the operator and patient when using the Laryngoscope.

approximate (in the inverted image) posteriorly; between them is left a chink, narrow whilst a high note is being sung, wide during a deep inspiration. On each

side of the true vocal cords, and on a higher level, are the pink *false vocal cords*. Still more externally than the false vocal cords is the *aryteno-epiglottidean* fold, in which are situated upon each side three small elevations ; of these the most external is the *cartilage of Wrisberg*, the intermediate is the *cartilage of Santorini*, whilst the summit of the *arytenoid cartilage* is in front, and somewhat below the preceding, being only seen during deep inspiration. The *rings of the trachea*, and even the bifurcation of the trachea itself, if the patient be directed to draw a deep breath, may be seen in the interval between the true vocal cords.

Movements of the Vocal Cords.

In Respiration.—The position of the vocal cords in ordinary tranquil breathing is so adapted by the muscles, that the opening

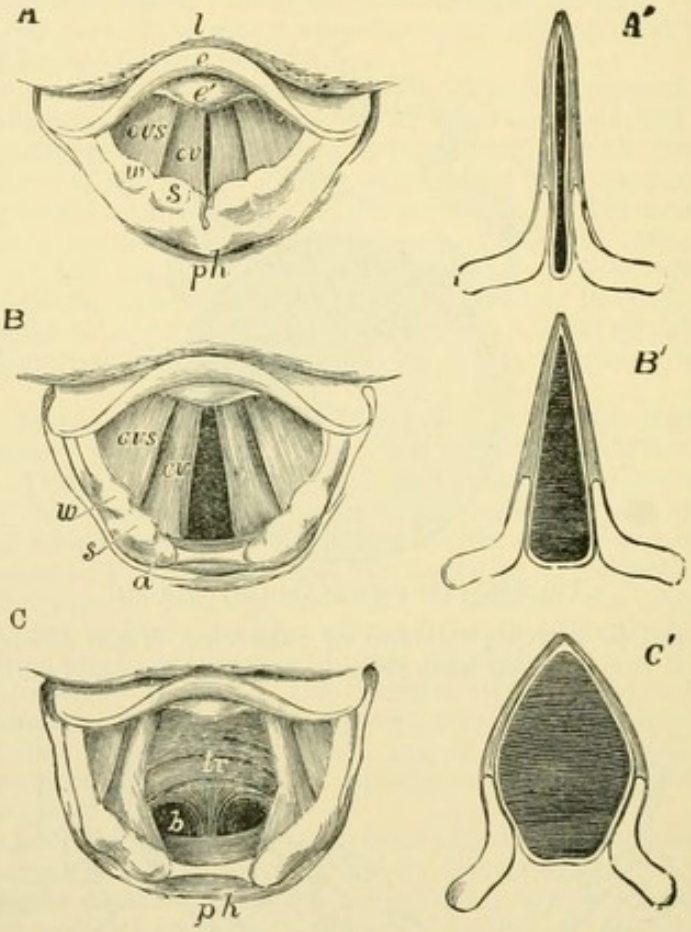


FIG. 558.—Three laryngoscopic views of the superior aperture of the larynx and surrounding parts. A, The glottis during the emission of a high note in singing ; B, in easy and quiet inhalation of air ; C, in the state of widest possible dilatation, as in inhaling a very deep breath. The diagrams A′, B′, and C′, show in horizontal sections of the glottis the position of the vocal cords and arytenoid cartilages in the three several states represented in the other figures. In all the figures so far as marked, the letters indicate the parts as follows, viz. : *l*, the base of the tongue ; *e*, the upper free part of the epiglottis ; *e′*, the tubercle or cushion of the epiglottis ; *ph*, part of the anterior wall of the pharynx behind the larynx ; in the margin of the aryteno-epiglottidean fold, *w*, the swelling of the membrane caused by the cartilages of Wrisberg ; *s*, that of the cartilages of Santorini ; *a*, the tip or summit of the arytenoid cartilages ; *c v*, the true vocal cords or lips of the rima glottidis ; *c v s*, the superior or false vocal cords ; between them the ventricle of the larynx ; in C, *tr* is placed on the anterior wall of the receding trachea, and *b* indicates the commencement of the two bronchi beyond the bifurcation which may be brought into view in this state of extreme dilatation. (Quain, after Czermak.)

of the glottis is wide and triangular (fig. 558, B). The glottis remains unaltered during ordinary quiet breathing, though in a

small proportion of people it becomes a little wider at each inspiration, and a little narrower at each expiration. In the cadaveric position the glottis has about half the width it has during ordinary breathing; during life, therefore, except during vocalisation, the abductors of the vocal cords (posterior crico-arytenoids) are in constant action. (F. Semon.) On making a rapid and deep inspiration the opening is widely dilated (fig. 558, C), and somewhat lozenge-shaped.

In Vocalisation.—At the moment of the emission of a note, the chink is narrowed, the margins of the arytenoid cartilages being brought into contact, and the edges of the vocal cords approximated and made parallel (fig. 558, A); at the same time their tension is much increased. The higher the note produced, the tenser do the cords become; and the range of a voice depends, in the main, on the extent to which the degree of tension of the vocal cords can be thus altered. In the production of a high note the vocal cords are brought well within sight, so as to be plainly visible with the help of the laryngoscope. In the utterance of low-pitched tones, on the other hand, the epiglottis is depressed and brought over them, and the arytenoid cartilages look as if they were trying to hide themselves under it (fig. 559).

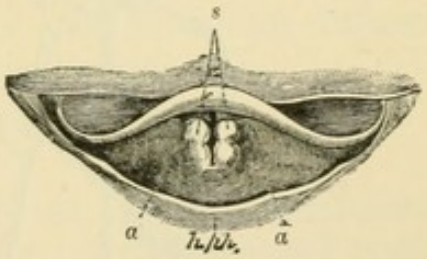


FIG. 559.—View of the upper part of the larynx as seen by means of the laryngoscope during the utterance of a bass note. *e*, Epiglottis; *s*, tubercles of the cartilages of Santorini; *a*, arytenoid cartilages; *z*, base of the tongue; *ph*, the posterior wall of the pharynx. (Czermak.)

The approximation of the vocal cords also usually corresponds with the height of the note produced; but the width of the aperture has no essential influence on the pitch of the note, as long as the vocal cords have the same tension: only with a wide aperture the tone is more difficult to produce and is less perfect, the rushing of the air through the aperture being heard at the same time.

No true vocal sound is produced at the posterior part of the aperture of the glottis, that, viz., which is formed by the space between the arytenoid cartilages.

The Voice.

The human musical instrument is often compared to a reed organ-pipe: certainly the notes produced by such pipes in the *vox humana* stop of organs is very like the human voice. Here there is not only the vibration of a column of air, but also of a reed, which corresponds to the vocal cords in the air-chamber composed of the trachea and the bronchial system beneath it. The pharynx, mouth, and

nasal cavities above the glottis are resonating cavities, which, by alterations in their shape and size, are able to pick out and emphasize certain component parts of the fundamental tones produced in the larynx. The natural voice is often called the *chest voice*. The *falsetto voice* is differently explained by different observers; on laryngoscopic examination, the glottis is found to be widely open, so that there is an absence of chest resonance; some have supposed that the attachment of the thyro-arytenoid muscle to the vocal cord renders it capable of acting like the finger on a violin string, part of the cord being allowed to vibrate while the rest is held still.

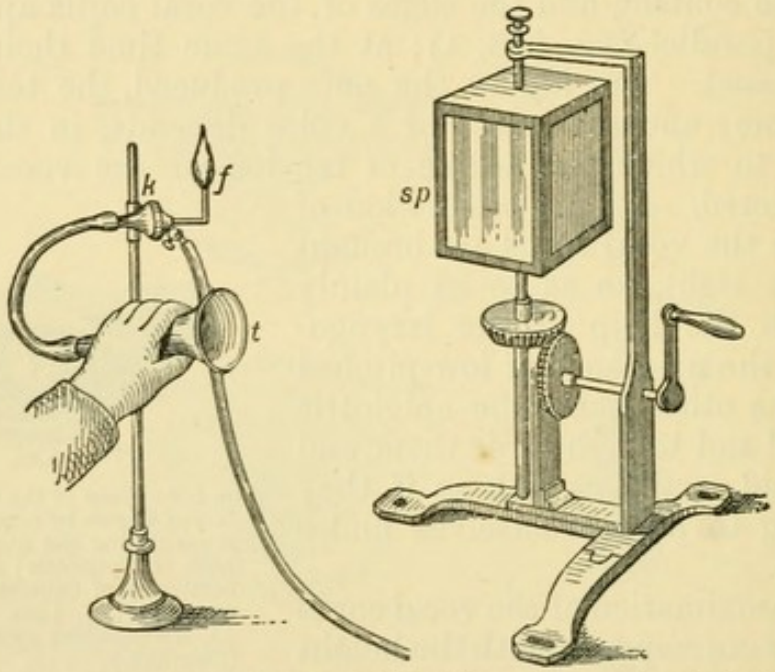


FIG. 560.—König's apparatus for obtaining flame pictures of musical notes.

Such a shortening of a vibrating string would produce a higher note than is natural.

Musical sounds differ from one another in three ways :—

1. *In pitch.*—This depends on the rate of vibration; and in the case of a string, the pitch increases with the tension, and diminishes with the length of the string. The vocal cords of a woman are shorter than those of a man, hence the higher pitched voice of women. The average length of the female cord is 11·5 millimetres; this can be stretched to 14; the male cord averages 15·5, and can be stretched to 19·5 millimetres.

2. *In loudness.*—This depends on the amplitude of the vibrations, and is increased by the force of the expiratory blast which sets the cords in motion.

3. *In "timbre."*—This is the difference of character which distinguishes one voice, or one musical instrument, from another. It is due to admixture of the primary vibrations with secondary vibra-

tions or overtones. If one takes a tracing of a tuning-fork on a revolving cylinder, it writes a simple series of up and down waves corresponding in rate to the note of the fork. Other musical instruments do not lend themselves to this form of graphic record, but their vibrations can be rendered visible by allowing them to act on a small sensitive gas-flame; this bobs up and down, and if the reflection of this flame is allowed to fall on a series of mirrors, the top of the continuous image formed is seen to present waves. The mirrors are usually arranged on the four lateral sides of a cube which is rapidly rotated. If one sings a note on to the membrane in the side of the gas-chamber with which the flame is in connection, the waves seen are not simple up and down ones, but the primary large waves are complicated by smaller ones on their surface, at twice, thrice, etc., the rate of the primary vibration. The richer a voice, the richer the sound of a musical instrument, the more numerous are these overtones or harmonics. The range of the voice is seldom, except in celebrated singers, more than two-and-a-half octaves, and for different voices this is in different parts of the musical scale.

Speech.

This is due to the modification produced in the fundamental laryngeal notes, by the resonating cavities above the vocal cords. By modifying the size and shape of the pharynx, mouth, and nose, certain overtones or harmonics are picked out and exaggerated: this gives us the vowel sounds; the consonants are produced by interruptions, more or less complete, of the outflowing air in different situations. When the larynx is passive, and the resonating cavities alone come into play, then we get whispering.

The pitch of the **Vowels** has been estimated musically; *u* has the lowest pitch, then *o*, *a* (as in father), *a* (as in cane), *i*, and *e*. We may give a few examples of the shape of the resonating cavities in pronouncing vowel sounds, and producing their characteristic timbre: when sounding *a* (in father) the mouth has the shape of a funnel wide in front; the tongue lies on the floor of the mouth; the lips are wide open; the soft palate is moderately and the larynx slightly raised.

In pronouncing *u* (*oo*), the cavity of the mouth is shaped like a capacious flask with a short narrow neck. The whole resonating cavity is then longest, the lips being protruded as far as possible; the larynx is depressed and the root of the tongue approaches the fauces.

In pronouncing *o*, the neck of the flask is shorter and wider, the lips being nearer the teeth; the larynx is slightly higher than in sounding *oo*.

In pronouncing *e*, the flask is a small one with a long narrow neck. The resonating chamber is then shortest as the larynx is raised as much as possible, and the mouth is bounded by the teeth, the lips being retracted; the approach of the tongue near the hard palate makes the long neck of the flask.

The **Consonants** are produced by a more or less complete closure of certain doors on the course of the outgoing blast. If the closure is complete, and the blast suddenly opens the door, the result is an *explosive*; if the door is partly closed, and the air rushes with a hiss through it, the result is an *aspirate*; if the door is nearly closed and its margins are thrown into vibration, the result is a *vibrative*; if the

mouth is closed, and the sound has to find its way out through the nose, the result is a *resonant*.

These doors are four in number; Brücke called them the *articulation positions*. They are—

1. Between the lips.
2. Between the tongue and hard palate.
3. Between the tongue and soft palate.
4. Between the vocal cords.

The following table classifies the principal consonants according to this plan :—

Articulation position.	Explosives.	Aspirates.	Vibratives.	Resonants.
1	B, P.	F, V, W.	...	M.
2	T, D.	S, Z, L, Sch, Th.	R.	N.
3	K, G.	J, Ch.	Palatal R.	Ng.
4	...	H.	R of lower Saxon	...

The introduction of the phonograph has furnished us with an instrument which it is hoped in the future will enable us to state more accurately than has hitherto been possible, the meaning of the changes in nature and intensity of the complex vibrations which constitute speech. The microscopic study of the tracing on the recording phonographic cylinder, and various methods of obtaining a high magnification of the movements of the recording style have been carried out by M'Kendrick and others. The subject is, however, not yet sufficiently ripe for definite statements to be made.

Defects of Speech.

Speech may be absent in certain forms of lunacy, and temporarily in that defect of will called *hysteria*.

It may be absent owing to congenital defects. Children born deaf are dumb also. This is because we think with remembered sounds, and in a person born deaf the auditory centres are never set into activity. By educating the child by the visual inlet, it can be taught to think with the remembered shapes of the mouth and expressions of the face produced in the act of speaking, and so can itself speak in time.

If a child becomes deaf before it is six or seven years old, there is a liability it will forget the speech it has learnt, and so become dumb.

In congenital hemiplegia there may be speechlessness, especially if the injury is due to meningeal hæmorrhage affecting the grey cortex of the left hemisphere. These children generally talk late, the right side of the brain taking on the function of the left.

Disorders of speech and voice occur from affections of the larynx, and of the nerves which supply the larynx. Stammering is a want of co-ordination between the various muscles employed in the act of speaking.

Perhaps the most interesting of the disorders of speech, however, are those due to brain disease in adults. These fall into three principal categories :—

1. *Aphemia.*—A difficulty or inability to utter or articulate words. It is often associated with difficulty of swallowing, and occurs in lesions of the base of the brain, especially of pons and bulb. The blurring of speech noticed in most cases of apoplexy may also be included under this head.

2. *Aphasia.*—This is a complex condition in which the will to speak exists, and also the ability to speak, but the connection between the two is broken down. When the patient speaks, the words which he utters are well pronounced, but are not those he wishes to utter. This is often associated with *Agraphia*, a similar condition in respect to writing. It is the form of disordered speech associated with disorganisation of Broca's convolution.

3. *Amnesia.*—This term includes a large class of cases in which the main symptom is loss of memory for words, or a defect of the association of ideas of things with ideas of words, not, as in aphasia, with ideas of verbal action. Amnesia

is associated with lesions of the intellectual, *i.e.*, the sensory centres of the cortex behind the Rolandic area. We have seen that in this region of the brain there are two important centres, the visual and the auditory, and the parts of these which are associated with words may be called the *visual word-centre* and the *auditory word-centre*. In amnesia (sometimes called sensory aphasia), either these centres themselves, or the tracts that connect them, are diseased or broken down. See p. 708.

With regard to the auditory word-centre, impressions for the sounds of words are revived in one of three ways :—

a. Spontaneous or volitional; owing to accumulated traces which constitute memory, a man when he wants to express his thoughts in words remembers the sounds it is necessary to use; impulses pass to the motor-centre (Broca's convolution), thence to the nerve-centres, nerves, and muscles of the larynx, mouth, chest, etc., and the man speaks.

b. In slight disease of the auditory word-centre, he is unable to do this, but if his mind is set into a certain groove he will speak; thus if the alphabet or a well-known piece of poetry be started for him he will finish it by himself.

c. Mimetic. In more severe cases, a more powerful stimulus still is needed; he will repeat any words after another person, but forget them immediately afterwards.

With regard to the visual word-centre as tested by writing, there are also three ways of reviving impressions for written words or letters.

(*a*) Spontaneous or normal.

(*b*) A train of thought must first be set going; as, for instance, converting printed words into written characters.

(*c*) Mimetic; he can only write from a copy.

Some operations, such as reading aloud, and writing from dictation require the combined activity of both centres. This, however, we have previously considered in connection with the subject of association in the brain (see p. 708).

In the investigation of any case of defective speech there are always the following six things to be inquired into :—

1. Can the patient understand spoken words? (The patient, of course, not being deaf.) If he cannot, the auditory word-centre is deranged.

2. Can he repeat words when requested? This tests the emission fibres from the auditory word-centre which pass through the motor-centres for speech in Broca's convolution. If he cannot do this, the patient has aphasia.

3. Can he write from dictation? If he cannot, either the auditory or visual word-centre, or the fibres passing from the one to the other, are injured.

4. Does he understand printed matter, and can he point out printed letters and words? Can he read to himself? (The patient, of course, not being blind.) This tests the visual word-centre.

5. Can he copy written words? This tests the channels from the visual word-centre to the motor-centres for movements of the hand in writing.

6. Can he read aloud, or, what is the same thing, name objects he sees? This is the opposite to writing from dictation, and tests the healthiness of the word-centres or the fibres which connect the visual to the auditory word-centre.

CHAPTER LVI

THE EYE AND VISION

THE eyeball is contained in the cavity of the skull called the orbit; here also are vessels and nerves for the supply of the eyeball, muscles to move it, and a quantity of adipose tissue. In the front of the eyeball are the lids and lacrimal apparatus.

The *eyelids* consist of two movable folds of skin, each of which is kept in shape by a thin plate of fibrous tissue called the *tarsus*. Along their free edges are inserted a number of curved hairs (*eyelashes*), which, when the lids are half closed, serve to protect the eye from dust and other foreign bodies: the tactile sensibility of the lids is very delicate. Imbedded in the tarsus are a number of long sebaceous glands (*Meibomian*), the ducts of which open near the free edge of the lid. In the loose connective tissue in front of the tarsus, the bundles of the orbicularis muscle are situated.

The orbital surface of each lid is lined by a delicate, highly sensitive mucous membrane (*conjunctiva*), which is continuous with the skin at the free edge of each lid, and after lining the inner surface of the eyelid is reflected on to the eyeball, being somewhat loosely adherent to the sclerotic coat. Its epithelium, which is columnar, is continued over the cornea as its anterior epithelium, where it becomes stratified. At the inner edge of the eye the conjunctiva becomes continuous with the mucous lining of the lacrimal sac and duct, which again is continuous with the mucous membrane of the nose.

The eyelids are closed by the contraction of a sphincter muscle (*orbicularis*), supplied by the facial nerve; the upper lid is raised by the *levator palpebræ superioris*, supplied by the third nerve.

The *lacrimal gland*, composed of lobules made up of acini resembling the serous salivary glands, is lodged in the upper and outer angle of the orbit. Its secretion, which issues from several ducts on the inner surface of the upper lid, under ordinary circumstances just suffices to keep the conjunctiva moist. It passes out through two small openings (puncta lacrimalia) near the inner angle of the eye,

one in each lid, into the lacrimal sac, and thence along the nasal duct into the inferior meatus of the nose. The excessive secretion poured out under the influence of an irritating vapour or painful emotion overflows the lower lid in the form of tears. The secretory nerves are contained in the lacrimal and subcutaneous malar branches of the fifth nerve, and in the cervical sympathetic.

The Eyeball.

The eyeball (fig. 561) consists of the following structures:—

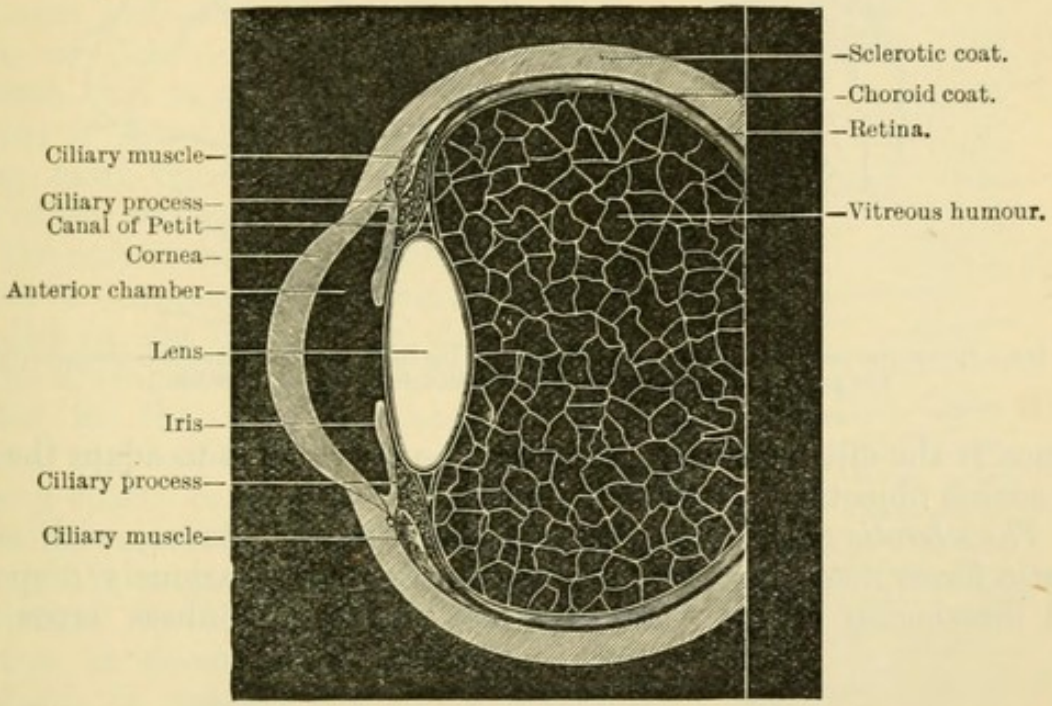


FIG. 561.—Section of the anterior four-fifths of the eyeball.

The *sclerotic*, or outermost coat, envelops about five-sixths of the eyeball: continuous with it, in front, and occupying the remaining

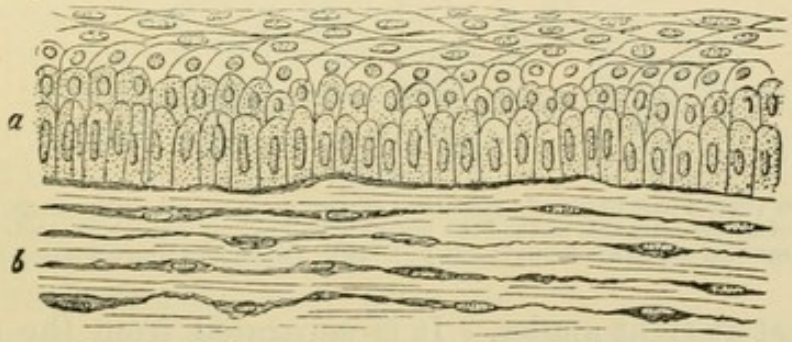


FIG. 562.—Vertical section of rabbit's cornea. *a*, Anterior epithelium, showing the different shapes of the cells at various depths from the free surface; *b*, portion of the substance of cornea. (Klein.)

sixth, is the *cornea*. Immediately within the sclerotic is the *choroid* coat, and within the choroid is the *retina*. The interior of the

eyeball is filled by the *aqueous* and *vitreous humours* and the *crystalline lens;* but, also, there is suspended in the interior a contractile and perforated curtain,—the *iris*, for regulating the admission of light, and behind at the junction of the sclerotic and

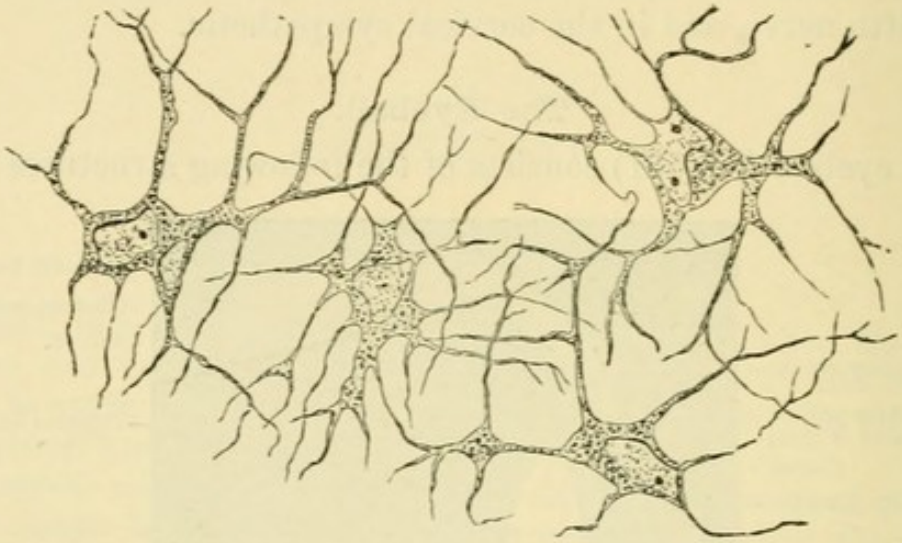


FIG. 563.—Horizontal preparation of cornea of frog; showing the network of branched cornea-corpuscles. The ground substance is completely colourless. × 400. (Klein.)

cornea is the ciliary muscle, the function of which is to adapt the eye for seeing objects at various distances.

The sclerotic coat is composed of white fibrous tissue, with some elastic fibres near the inner surface, arranged in variously disposed and interlacing layers. Many of the bundles of fibres cross the

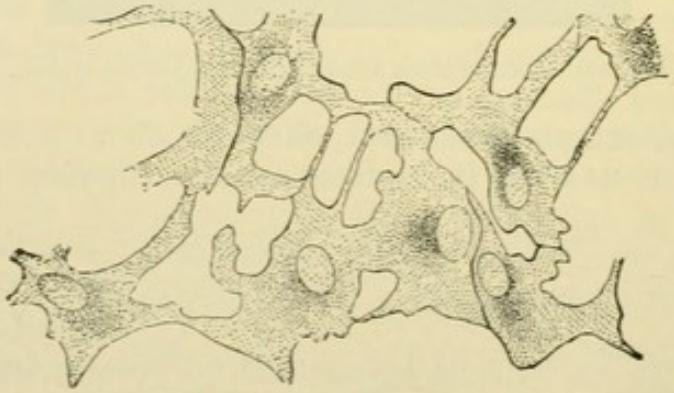


FIG. 564.—Surface view of part of lamella of kitten's cornea, prepared first with caustic potash and then with nitrate of silver. (By this method the branched cornea-corpuscles with their granular protoplasm and large oval nuclei are brought out.) × 450. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

others almost at right angles. It is separated from the choroid by a lymphatic space (*perichoroidal*), and this is in connection with smaller spaces lined with endothelium in the sclerotic coat itself. There is a lymphatic space also outside the sclerotic, separating it from a loose investment of connective tissue, containing some smooth

muscular fibres, called the *capsule of Tenon*. The innermost layer of the sclerotic is made up of loose connective tissue and pigment-cells, and is called the *lamina fusca*.

The cornea is a transparent membrane which forms a segment of a smaller sphere than the rest of the eye-ball, let in, as it were, into the sclerotic, with which it is continuous all round. It is covered by stratified epithelium (*a*, fig. 562), consisting of seven or eight layers of cells, of which the superficial ones are flattened and scaly, and the deeper ones more or less columnar. Immediately beneath this is the *anterior homogeneous lamina of Bowman*, which differs, only in being more condensed tissue, from the rest of the cornea.

The rest of the cornea consists of many layers of connective tissue fibres arranged parallel to the free surface, the direction of the fibres crossing one another at right angles in the alternate laminæ. The corneal corpuscles lie in branched anastomosing spaces between the laminæ. They have been seen to execute amœboid movements. At its posterior surface the cornea is limited by the *posterior homogeneous lamina*, or *membrane of Descemet*, which is elastic in nature, and lastly a single stratum of cubical epithelial cells (fig. 565, *d*).

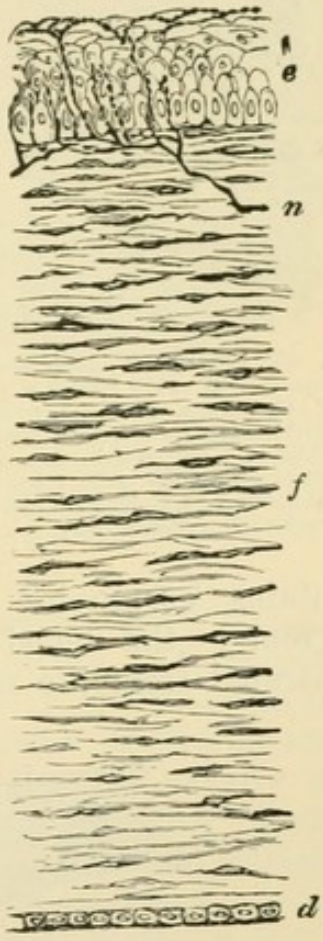


FIG. 565.—Vertical section of rabbit's cornea, stained with gold chloride. *e*, Stratified anterior epithelium. Immediately beneath this is the anterior homogeneous lamina of Bowman. *n*, Nerves forming a delicate sub-epithelial plexus, and sending up fine twigs between the epithelial cells to end in a second plexus on the free surface; *d*, Descemet's membrane, consisting of a fine elastic layer, and a single layer of epithelial cells; the substance of the cornea, *f*, is seen to be fibrillated, and contains many layers of branched corpuscles, arranged parallel to the free surface, and here seen edgewise. (Schofield.)

The nerves of the cornea are both large and numerous: they are derived from the ciliary nerves. They traverse the substance of the cornea, in which some of them near the anterior surface break up into axis cylinders, and their primitive fibrillæ. The latter form a plexus immediately beneath the epithelium, from which delicate fibrils pass up between the cells anastomosing with horizontal branches, and forming an intra-epithelial plexus. Most of the primitive fibrillæ have a beaded or varicose appearance. The cornea has no blood-vessels or lymphatics, but is nourished by the circulation of lymph in the spaces in which the corneal corpuscles lie. These communicate freely and form a lymph-canalicular system.

The Choroid Coat (*tunica vasculosa*) is attached to the inner layer of the sclerotic in front at the corneo-scleral junction and behind at the entrance of the optic nerve; elsewhere it is connected to it only by loose connective tissue. Its external coat is formed chiefly of elastic fibres and large pigment corpuscles loosely arranged; it contains lymphatic spaces lined with endothelium. This is the *lamina suprachoroidea*. More internally is a layer of arteries and veins arranged in a system of venous whorls, together with elastic fibres and branched pigment cells. The lymphatics, too, are well developed around the blood-vessels, and there are besides distinct lymph spaces lined with endothelium. Internal to this is a layer of fine capillaries, very dense, and derived from the arteries of the outer coat and ending in veins in that coat. It contains corpuscles without pigment, and lymph spaces which surround the blood-vessels (*membrana chorio-capillaris*). It is separated from the retina by a fine elastic membrane (*membrane of Bruch*), which is either structureless or finely fibrillated. (Fig. 566, 1.)

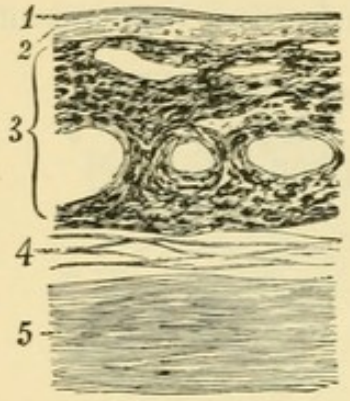


FIG. 566.—Section through the choroid coat of the human eye. 1, Membrane of Bruch; 2, chorio-capillaris or tunica Ruyschiana; 3, proper substance of the choroid with large vessels cut through; 4, suprachoroidea; 5, sclerotic. (Schwalbe.)

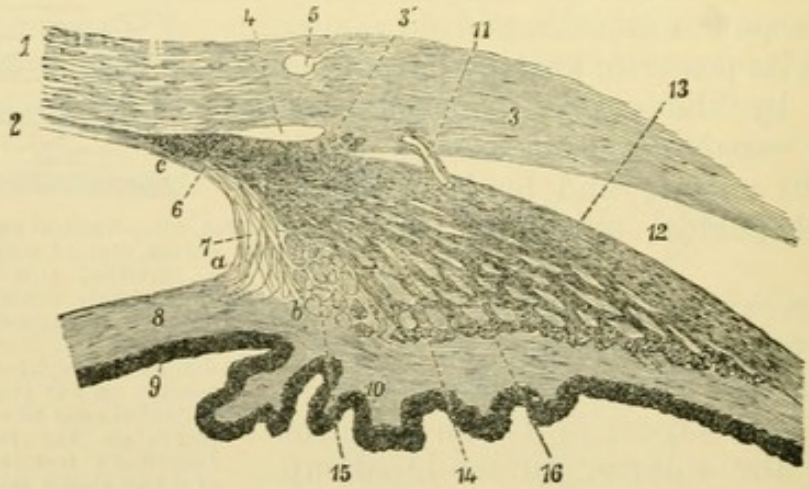


FIG. 567.—Section through the eye carried through the ciliary processes. 1, Cornea; 2, membrane of Descemet; 3, sclerotic; 3', corneo-scleral junction; 4, canal of Schlemm; 5, vein; 6, nucleated network on inner wall of canal of Schlemm; 7, lig. pectinatum iridis, *a b c*; 8, iris; 9, pigment of iris (uvea); 10, ciliary processes; 11, ciliary muscle; 12, choroid tissue; 13, meridional, and 14, radiating fibres of ciliary muscle; 15, ring-muscle of Müller; 16, circular or angular bundles of ciliary muscle. (Schwalbe.)

The choroid coat ends in front in what are called the *ciliary processes* (figs. 567, 568). These consist of from 70 to 80 meridionally arranged radiating plaits, which consist of blood-vessels, fibrous

connective tissue, and pigment corpuscles. They are lined by a continuation of the membrane of Bruch. The ciliary processes terminate abruptly at the margin of the lens. The *ciliary muscle* (13, 14, and 15, fig. 567), takes origin at the corneo-scleral junction. It is a ring of muscle, 3 mm. broad and 8 mm. thick, made up of fibres running in three directions. (*a*) Meridional fibres near the sclerotic and passing to the choroid; (*b*) radial fibres inserted into the choroid behind the ciliary processes; and (*c*) circular fibres (muscle of Müller), more internal; they constitute a sphincter.

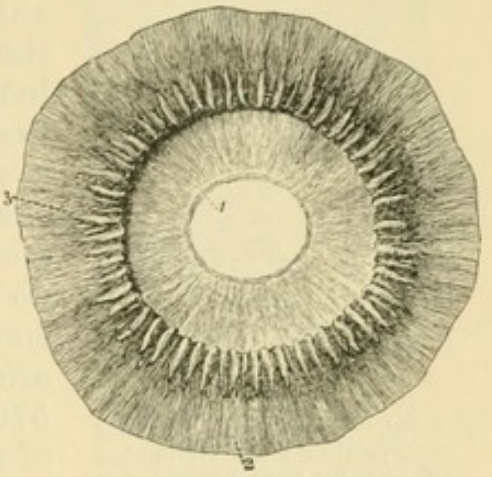


FIG. 568.—Ciliary processes, as seen from behind. 1, Posterior surface of the iris, with the sphincter muscle of the pupil; 2, anterior part of the choroid coat; 3, one of the ciliary processes, of which about seventy are represented.

The Iris is a continuation of the choroid inwards beyond the ciliary processes. It is a fibro-muscular membrane perforated by a central aperture, the pupil.

Posteriorly is a layer of pigment cells (*uvea*), which is a continuation forwards of the pigment layer of the retina. The structure of the iris proper is made of connective tissue in front with corpuscles which may or may not be pigmented, and behind of similar tissue supporting blood-vessels. The pigment cells are usually well developed here, as are also many nerve-fibres radiating towards the pupil. Surrounding the pupil is a layer of circular unstriped muscle, the *sphincter pupillæ*. In some animals there are also muscle-fibres which radiate from the sphincter in the substance of the iris forming the *dilator pupillæ*. The iris is covered anteriorly by a layer of epithelium continued upon it from the posterior surface of the cornea.

The Lens is situated behind the iris, being enclosed in a distinct capsule, the posterior layer of which is not so thick as the anterior. It is supported in place by the suspensory ligament, fused to the anterior surface of the capsule. The suspensory ligament is derived from the hyaloid membrane, which encloses the vitreous humour.

The lens is made up of a series of concentric laminæ (fig. 569), which, when it has been hardened, can be peeled off like the coats of an onion. The laminæ consist of long ribbon-shaped fibres, which in the course of development have originated from cells.

The fibres near the margin have nuclei and are smooth, those near the centre are without nuclei and have serrated edges. They are hexagonal in transverse section. The fibres are united together

by a scanty amount of cement substance. The central portion (*nucleus*) of the lens is the hardest.

The epithelium of the lens consists of a layer of cubical cells anteriorly, which merge at the equator into the lens fibres. The development of the lens explains this transition. The lens at first consists of a closed sac composed of a single layer of epithelium. The cells of the posterior part soon elongate forwards and obliterate the cavity; the anterior cells do not grow, but at the edge they become continuous with the posterior cells, which are gradually developed into fibres (fig. 570). The principal chemical constituent of the lens is a protein of the globulin class called *crystallin*.

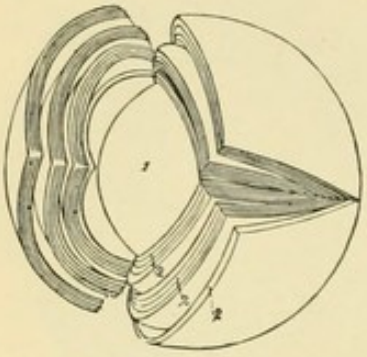


FIG. 569.—Laminated structure of the crystalline lens. The laminæ are split up after hardening in alcohol. 1, The denser central part or nucleus; 2, the successive external layers. ½. (Arnold.)

Corneo-scleral junction.—At this junction the relation of parts (fig. 567) is so important as to need a short description. In this neighbourhood, the iris and ciliary processes join with the cornea. The proper substance of the cornea and the posterior elastic lamina become continuous with the iris, at *the angle of the iris*, and the iris sends forwards processes towards the posterior elastic lamina, form-

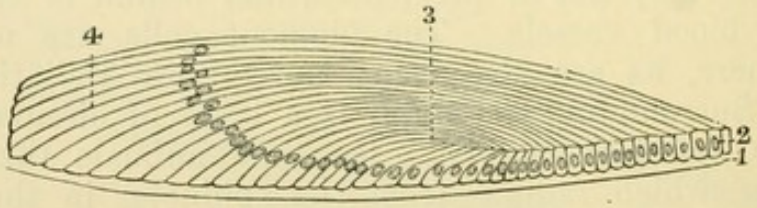


FIG. 570.—Meridional section through the lens of a rabbit. 1, Lens capsule; 2, epithelium of lens; 3, transition of the epithelium into the fibres; 4, lens fibres. (Bubuchin.)

ing the *ligamentum pectinatum iridis*, and these join with fibres of the elastic lamina. The epithelial covering of the posterior surface of the cornea is, as we have seen, continuous over the front of the iris. At the iridic angle, the compact inner substance of the cornea is looser, and between the bundles are lymph spaces called the *spaces of Fontana*. They are little developed in the human cornea.

The spaces which are present in the broken-up bundles of corneal tissue at the angle of the iris are continuous with the larger lymphatic space of the anterior chamber. Above the angle at the corneo-scleral junction is a canal, which is called the *canal of Schlemm*. It is a lymphatic channel.

The retina (fig. 571) apparently ends in front, near the outer part of the ciliary processes, in a finely-notched edge,—the *ora*

serrata, but is really represented by the uvea to the very margin of the pupil. The nerve-cells in the retina remind us that the optic, like the olfactory nerve, is not a mere nerve, but an outgrowth of the brain.

In the centre of the retina is a round yellowish elevated spot, about $\frac{1}{24}$ of an inch (1 mm.) in diameter, having a depression in the centre, called after its discoverer the *macula lutea* or *yellow spot of Sœmmering*. The depression in its centre is called the *fovea centralis*. About $\frac{1}{10}$ of an inch (2·5 mm.) to the inner side of the yellow spot, is the point (*optic disc* or *white spot*) at which the optic nerve leaves the eyeball. The optic nerve-fibres are the axons of the nerve-cells of the retina; the dendrons of these cells ultimately communicate with the visual nerve-epithelium (rods and cones).

The optic nerve passes backwards to the ventral surface of the cerebrum enclosed in prolongations of the membranes, which cover the brain. This external sheath at the exit of the nerve from the eyeball becomes continuous with the sclerotic, which at this part is perforated by holes to allow of the passage of the optic nerve-fibres, the perforated part being the *lamina cribrosa*. The pia mater here becomes incomplete, and the subarachnoid and the superarachnoid spaces become continuous. The pia mater sends in processes into the nerve to support the fibres. The fibres of the nerve themselves are exceedingly fine, and are surrounded by the myelin sheath, but do not possess the ordinary external nerve sheath. In the retina itself they have no myelin sheaths. In the centre of the nerve is a small artery, the *arteria centralis retinæ*. The number of fibres in the optic nerve is said to be upwards of 500,000.

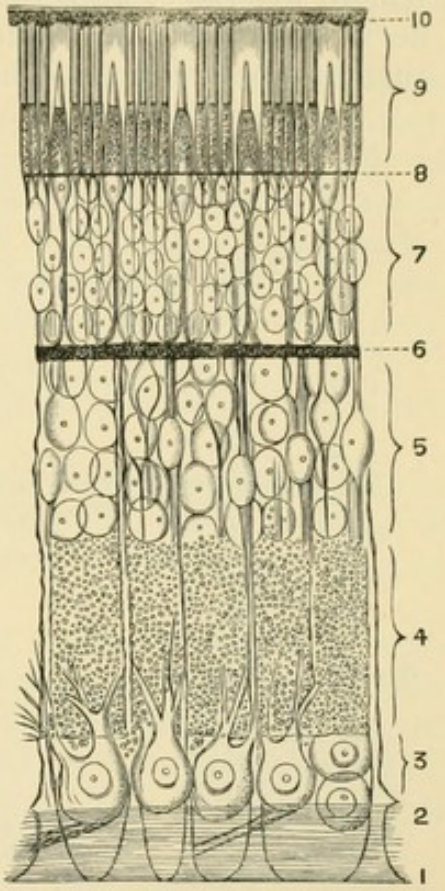


FIG. 571. — Diagrammatic section of human retina (M. Schultze). 1, Membrana limitans interna; 2, layer of optic nerve-fibres; 3, layer of optic nerve-cells; 4, inner synapse or molecular layer; 5, inner nuclear or bipolar layer; 6, outer synapse or molecular layer; 7, outer nuclear layer; 8, membrana limitans externa; 9, layer of rods and cones; 10, layer of pigment cells.

The retina consists of certain elements arranged in ten layers from within outwards (figs. 571, 572, 573).

1. *Membrana limitans interna.*—This so-called membrane in contact with the vitreous humour is formed by the junction laterally of the bases of the *sustentacular* or *supporting fibres of Müller*, which bear the same relation to the retina as the neuroglia does to the brain. The character of these fibres may be seen in fig. 572.

2. *Optic nerve-fibres.*—This layer is of very varying thickness in different parts of the retina: it consists of non-medullated fibres which interlace, and most of which are the axons of the large nerve-cells forming the next layer. The fibres are supported by the sustentacular fibres. They are less and less numerous anteriorly,

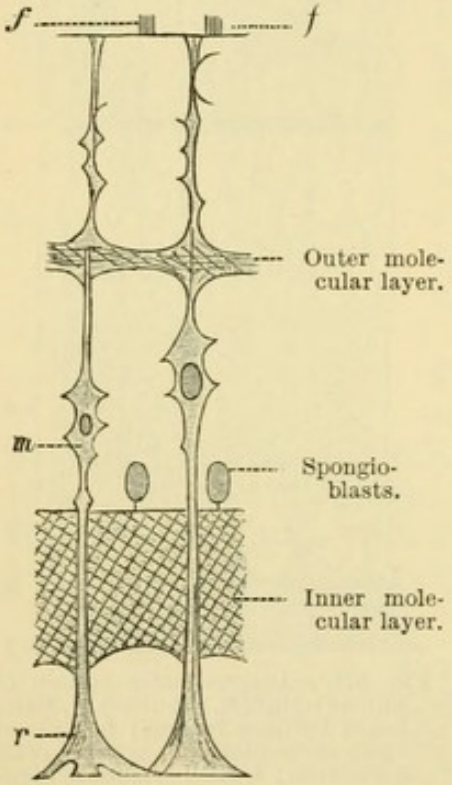


FIG. 572.—Diagram showing the sustentacular fibres of the retina; *f*, fibre-basket above the external limiting membrane; *m*, nucleus of the fibre; *r*, base of the fibre.
(From M'Kendrick, after Stöhr.)

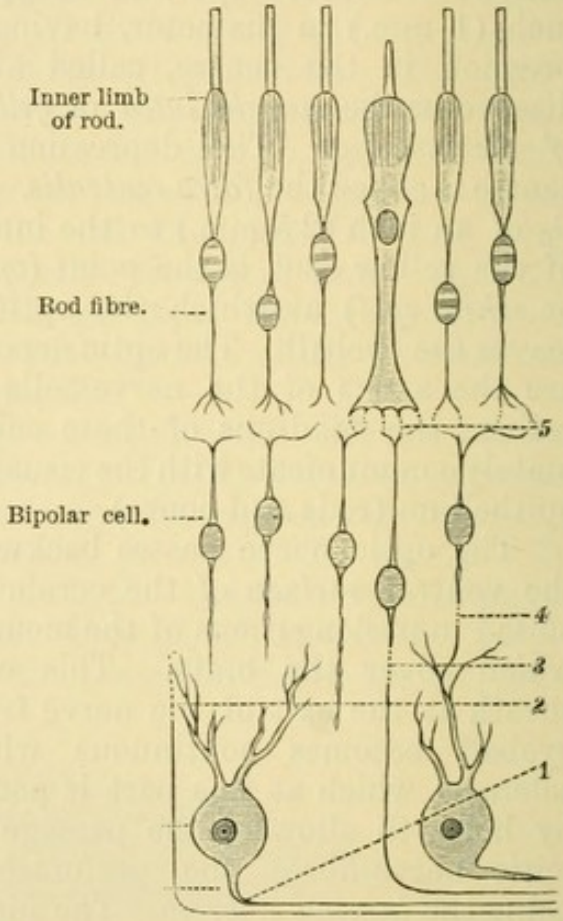


FIG. 573.—Diagram showing the nervous elements of retina. 1, Nerve-fibre of ganglion cell; 2, processes of ganglion cell going outwards; 3, nerve-fibre passing from bipolar cell in inner nuclear layer; 4, process of ganglion cell towards bipolar cell; 5, arborisations of fibres from rods and cones with the branches of bipolar cells.
(From M'Kendrick, after Stöhr.)

and end at the ora serrata. They all converge towards the optic disc, where they leave the retina as the optic nerve.

3. *Layer of ganglion cells.*—This consists of large multipolar nerve-cells with large and round nuclei, forming either a single layer, or in some parts of the retina, especially near the *macula lutea*, where this layer is very thick, it consists of several strata of nerve-cells. They are arranged with their single axis-cylinder processes inwards. These pass into and are continuous with the layer of optic nerve-fibres. Externally the cells send off several branched processes which pass into the next layer.

4. *Inner molecular layer.*—This presents a finely granulated appearance. It consists of neuroglia traversed by numerous fibrillar processes of the nerve-cells just described, and the minute branchings of the processes of the bipolar cells of the next layer.

5. *Inner nuclear layer.*—This consists chiefly of numerous small round cells, each with a very small quantity of protoplasm surrounding a large ovoid nucleus; they are generally bipolar, giving off one process outwards and another inwards. One process passes inwards to form a synapse with the arborisation of a ganglion cell, the other outwards to similarly arborise with the branchings of the rod and cone fibres. Some cells, called *spongioblasts*, or *amacrine* cells, however, only send off one process, which passes inwards (fig. 572). The large oval nuclei (fig. 572) belonging to the Müllerian fibres occur in this layer.

6. *Outer molecular layer.*—This layer closely resembles the inner molecular layer, but is much thinner. It contains the branchings of the rod and cone fibres on the one hand and of the bipolar cells on the other.

7. *External nuclear layer.*—This layer consists of small cells resembling at first sight those of the internal nuclear layer; they are classed as rod and cone granules, according as they are connected with the rods and cones respectively, and will be described with them. They are lodged in the meshes of a frame-work, which is formed by the breaking up of the Müllerian fibres.

8. *Membrana limitans externa.*—This is a well-defined membrane, marking the internal limit of the rod and cone layer, and made up of the junction of the sustentacular fibres externally.

9. *Layer of rods and cones.*—This layer is the nerve-epithelium of the retina. It consists of two kinds of cells, rods and cones, which are arranged at right angles to the external limiting membrane, and supported by hairlike processes (*basket*) proceeding from the latter for a short distance (fig. 572).

Each rod (fig. 573) is made up of two parts, very different in structure, called the outer and inner limbs. The outer limb of the rods is about 30μ long and 2μ broad, is transparent, and doubly refracting. It is said to be made up of fine superimposed discs. It stains brown with osmic acid but not with hæmatoxylin, and resembles in some ways the myelin sheath of a medullated nerve. It is the part of the rod in which the pigment called *visual purple* is found. In some animals, a few rods have a greenish pigment instead. The inner limb is about as long but slightly broader than the outer, is longitudinally striated at its outer, and granular at its inner part. It stains with hæmatoxylin, but not with osmic acid. Each rod is connected internally with a *rod fibre*, very fine, but here and there varicose; in the middle of the fibre is a *rod granule*, really the

nucleus of the rod, striped broadly transversely, and situated about the middle of the external nuclear layer; the internal end of the rod fibre terminates in branchings in the outer molecular layer.

Each cone (fig. 573), like the rods, is made up of two limbs, outer and inner. The outer limb is tapering and not cylindrical like the corresponding part of the rod, and about one-third only of its length. There is, moreover, no visual purple found in the cones. The inner limb of the cone is broader in the centre. It is protoplasmic, and under the influence of light has been seen to execute movements. In birds, reptiles and amphibia, there is often a coloured oil globule present here. Each cone is in connection by its internal end with a *cone fibre*, which has much the same structure as the rod fibre, but is much stouter and has its nucleus (*cone granule*) quite near to the external limiting membrane. Its inner end terminates by branchings in the external molecular layer.

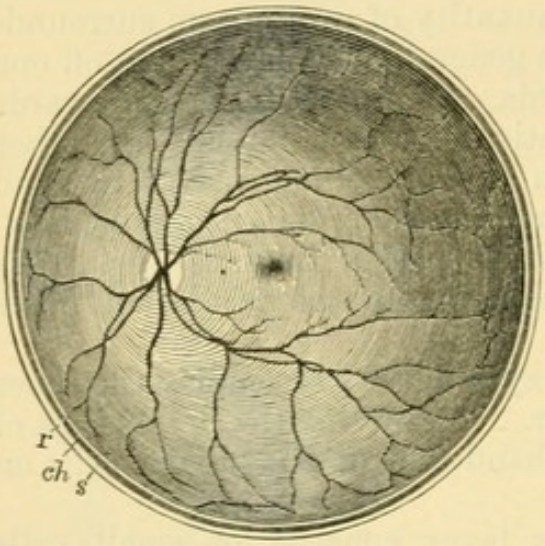


FIG. 574.—The posterior half of the retina of the left eye, viewed from before; *s*, the cut edge of the sclerotic coat; *ch*, the choroid; *r*, the retina; in the interior at the middle the macula lutea with the depression of the fovea centralis is represented by a slight oval shade; towards the left side the light spot indicates the colliculus or eminence at the entrance of the optic nerve, from the centre of which the arteria centralis is seen spreading its branches into the retina, leaving the part occupied by the macula comparatively free. (After Henle.)

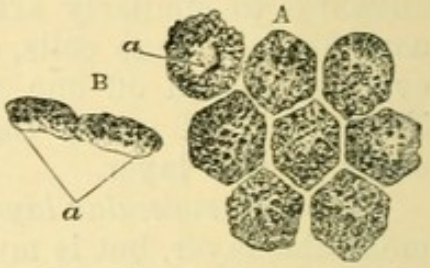


FIG. 575.—Pigment-cells from the retina. A, Cells still cohering, seen on their surface; *a*, nucleus indistinctly seen. In the other cells the nucleus is concealed by the pigment granules. B, Two cells seen in profile; *a*, the outer or posterior part containing scarcely any pigment. × 370. (Henle.)

In the rod and cone layer of birds, the cones usually predominate largely in number, whereas in man the rods are by far the more numerous, except in the fovea centralis, where cones only are present. The number of cones has been estimated at 3,000,000.

10. *Pigment-cell layer* consists of a single layer of polygonal cells, mostly six-sided, which send down a beard-like fringe to surround the outer ends of the rods. It is this layer which is continuous with the uvea, where, however, the cells become rounded, and arranged two or three deep.

Differences in Structure of different parts.—Towards the centre

of the *macula lutea* all the layers of the retina become greatly thinned out and almost disappear, except the rod and cone layer, and at the *fovea centralis* the rods disappear, and the cones are long and narrow. At the margin of the fovea the layers increase in thickness, and in the rest of the macula lutea are thicker than elsewhere. The ganglionic layer is especially thickened, the cells being six to eight deep (2, fig. 576). The bipolar inner granules (cone nuclei) are obliquely disposed (figs. 576 and 577) on the course of the cone fibres, and are situated at some distance from the *membrana limitans externa*, which is cupped towards the fovea (fig. 576). The yellow tint of the macula is due to a diffuse colouring matter in the interstices of the four or five inner layers; it is absent at the centre of the fovea.

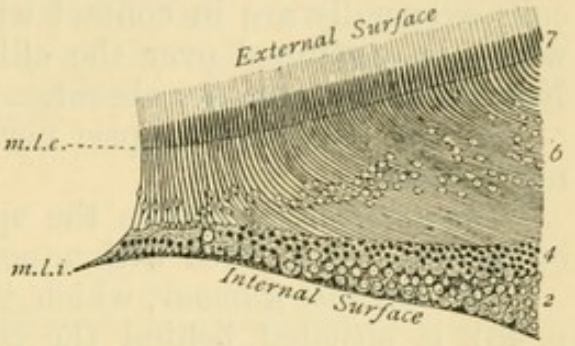


FIG. 576.—Diagram of a section through half the fovea centralis. 2, Ganglionic layer; 4, inner nuclear; 6, outer nuclear layer, the cone fibres forming the so-called *external fibrous layer*; 7, cones; *m.l.e.*, membrana limitans externa; *m.l.i.*, membrana limitans interna. (Schäfer and Golding Bird.)

It is important to notice what is clearly brought out in fig. 577, that at the fovea each cone is connected to a separate chain of

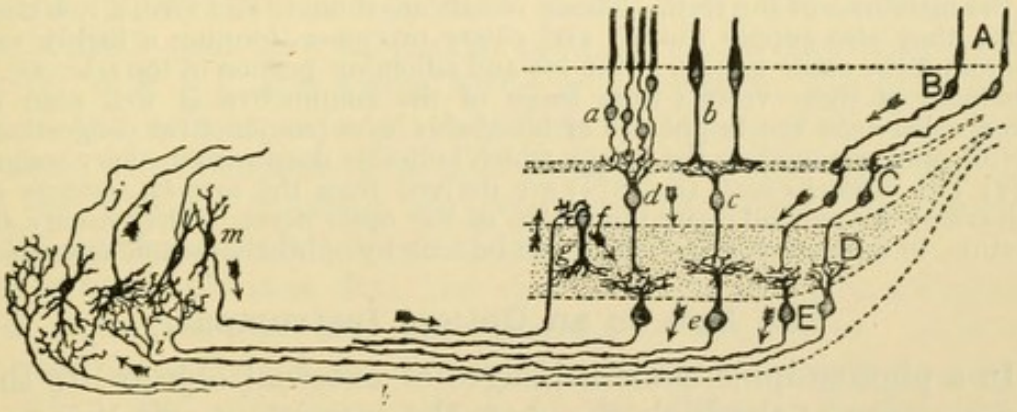


FIG. 577.—Scheme of the retinal elements. A, Cones of the fovea centralis; B, granules (nuclei) of these cones; C, synapse between the cones and bipolar cells in external molecular layer; D, synapse between the bipolar and ganglion cells in the internal molecular layer; *a* and *b*, rods and cones in other regions of the retina; *c*, bipolar cell destined for the cones; *d*, bipolar cell destined for the rods; E, *e*, ganglion cells; *f*, spongioblast; *g*, efferent fibre (? trophic), originating from the cell *m*, in geniculate body; *h*, optic nerve; *i*, terminal arborisations of optic nerve-fibres in geniculate body; *j*, fibres from the cells of geniculate body on the way to cerebral cortex. (R. y Cajal.)

neurons, whereas in other regions the rods and cones are connected in groups to these chains; this explains the greater sensitiveness of foveal vision.

At the *ora serrata* the layers are not perfect, and disappear in this order: nerve-fibres and ganglion cells, then the rods, leaving only the inner limbs of the cones, next these cease, then the outer

molecular layer, the inner and outer nuclear layers coalescing, and finally the inner molecular layer also is unrepresented.

At the *pars-ciliaris retinæ*, the retina consists of a layer of columnar cells, which probably represent the Müllerian fibres. These cells externally are in contact with the pigment layer of the retina, which is continued over the ciliary processes and back of the iris. Nervous structures are absent.

At the exit of the optic nerve the only structures present are nerve-fibres.

The anterior chamber is the space behind the cornea and in front of the iris. It is filled with aqueous humour (dilute lymph).

The vitreous humour, which is a jelly-like connective tissue (see p. 48), is situated behind the *crystalline lens*. It is enclosed in a membrane called *membrana hyaloidea*, which in front is continuous with the capsule of the lens; round the edge of the lens the canal left is called the *Canal of Petit* (fig. 561, p. 765), the membrane itself being the *Zonule of Zinn*. The hyaloid membrane separates the vitreous from the retina.

Blood-vessels of the Eyeball.—The eye is very richly supplied with blood-vessels. In addition to the conjunctival vessels which are derived from the palpebral and lacrimal arteries, there are at least two other distinct sets of vessels supplying the tunics of the eyeball.

(1) These are the short and long *posterior* ciliary arteries which pierce the sclerotic in the posterior half of the eyeball, and the *anterior* ciliary which enter near the insertions of the recti. These vessels anastomose and form a rich choroidal plexus; they also supply the iris and ciliary processes, forming a highly vascular circle round the outer margin of the iris and adjoining portion of the sclerotic. The distinctness of these vessels from those of the conjunctiva is well seen in the difference between the bright red of blood-shot eyes (conjunctival congestion), and the pink zone surrounding the cornea which indicates deep-seated ciliary congestion.

(2) The *retinal vessels* (fig. 574) are derived from the *arteria centralis retinæ*, which enters the eyeball along the centre of the optic nerve. They ramify all over the retina, in its inner layers. They can be seen by ophthalmoscopic examination.

The Eye as an Optical Instrument.

In a photographic camera images of external objects are thrown upon a screen at the back of a box, the interior of which is painted black. In the eye, the camera is represented by the eyeball with its black pigment, the screen by the layer of rods and cones of the retina, and the lens by the refracting media. In the case of the camera, the screen is enabled to receive clear images of objects at different distances, by an apparatus for focussing. The corresponding contrivance in the eye is called *accommodation*.

The iris, which allows more or less light to pass into the eye, corresponds with the diaphragms used in the photographic apparatus.

The refractive media are the cornea, aqueous humour, crystalline lens, and vitreous humour. The most refraction or bending of the rays of light occurs where they pass from the air into the cornea; they

are again bent slightly in passing through the lens. Alterations in the anterior curvature of the lens lead to accommodation.

We may first consider the refraction through a transparent spherical surface, separating two media of different density.

The rays of light which fall upon the surface exactly perpendicularly do not suffer refraction, but pass through, cutting the optic axis (O A, fig. 578), a line which passes exactly through the centre

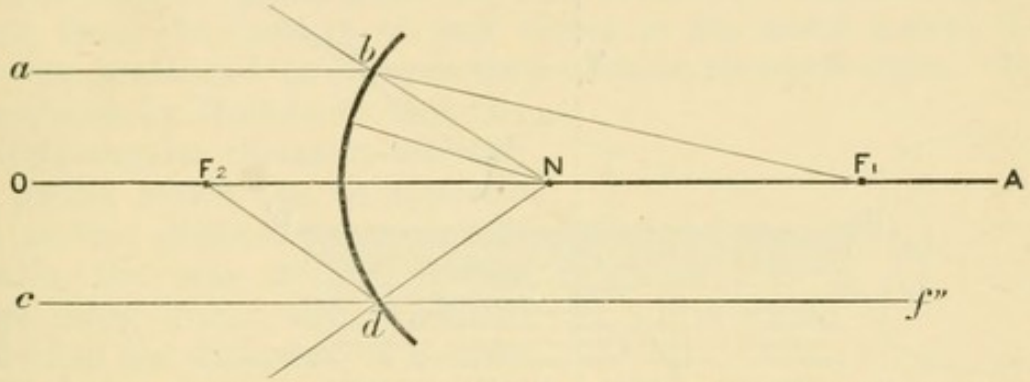


FIG. 578.—Diagram of a simple optical system (after M. Foster). The curved surface, *b*, *d*, is supposed to separate a less refractive medium towards the left from a more refractive medium towards the right.

of the surface, at a certain point, the *nodal point* (fig. 578, N), or centre of curvature. Any rays which do not so strike the curved surface are refracted towards the optic axis. Rays which impinge upon the spherical surface parallel to the optic axis, will meet at a point behind, upon the said axis which is called the *chief posterior focus* (fig. 578, F_1); and again there is a point on the optic axis in front of the surface, rays of light from which so strike the surface that they are refracted in a line parallel with the axis *d f''*; this point (fig. 578, F_2) is called the *chief anterior focus.* The optic axis cuts the surface at what is called the *principal point.*

It is quite obvious that the eye is a much more complicated optical apparatus than the one described in the figure. It is, however, possible to reduce the refractive surfaces and media to a simpler form when the refractive indices of the different media and the curvature of each surface are known. These data are as follows:—

Index of refraction of cornea	=	1·37
,, ,, aqueous and vitreous	=	1·34 to 1·36
,, ,, lens	=	1·4 in outer to 1·45 in inner part.
Radius of curvature of cornea	=	7·8 mm.
,, ,, anterior surface of lens	=	10 ,,
,, ,, posterior	=	6 ,,
Distance from anterior surface of cornea to anterior surface of lens	=	3·6 ,,
Distance from posterior surface of cornea to posterior surface of lens	=	7·2 ,,
Distance from posterior surface of lens to retina	=	15·0 ,,

With these data it has been found comparatively easy to reduce by calculation the different surfaces of different curvature into one mean curved surface of known curvature, and the differently refracting media into one mean medium the refractive power of which is known.

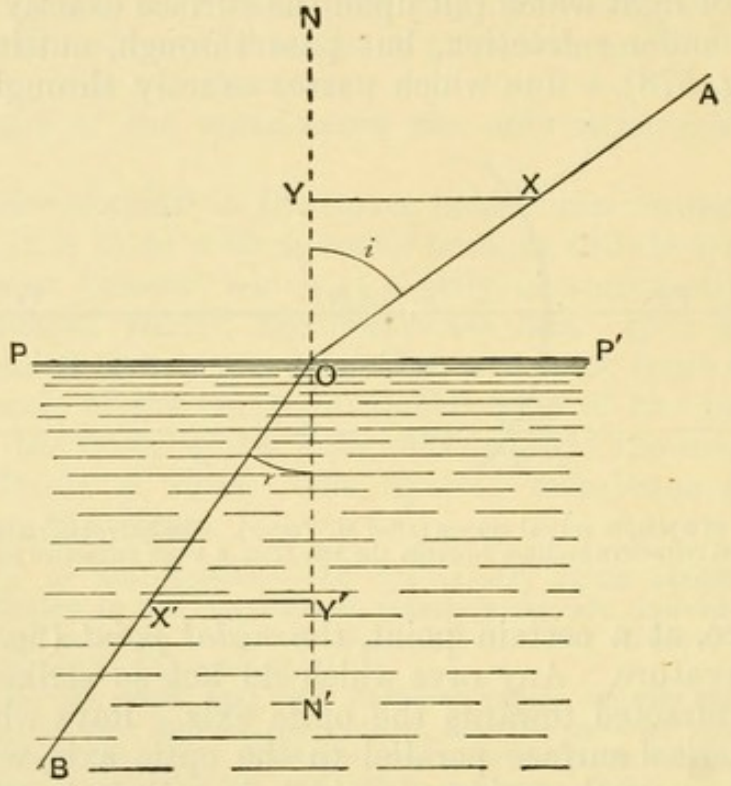


FIG. 579.—If P P′ is a line which separates two media, the lower one being the denser, and A O is a ray of light falling on it, it is bent at O towards the normal or perpendicular line N N′. A O is called the incident ray, and O B the refracted ray; A O N is called the angle of incidence (i), N′ O B the angle of refraction (r). If any distance O X is measured off along O A, and an equal distance O X′ along O B and perpendiculars drawn to N N′; then $\frac{X\,Y}{X'Y'}$ = index of refraction.

The simplest so-called schematic eye formed upon this principle, suggested by Listing as *the reduced eye*, has the following dimensions:—

From anterior surface of cornea to the principal point	=	2·3448 mm.
From the nodal point to the posterior surface of lens	=	·4764 ,,
Posterior chief focus lies behind cornea . . .	=	22·8237 ,,
Anterior chief focus in front of cornea . . .	=	12·8326 ,,
Radius of curvature of ideal surface	=	5·1248 ,,

The term index of refraction means the ratio of the sine of the angle of incidence to that of the angle of refraction; this is explained in the small text beneath fig. 579.

In this reduced or simplified eye, the principal posterior focus, about 23 mm. behind the spherical surface, would correspond to the position of the retina behind the anterior surface of the cornea. The refracting surface would be situated about midway between the posterior surface of the cornea and the anterior surface of the lens.

The *optical axis* of the eye is a line drawn through the centres of curvature of the cornea and lens, prolonged backwards to touch the retina between the porus opticus and fovea centralis, and this differs from the *visual axis* which passes through the nodal point of the reduced eye to the fovea centralis; this forms an angle of 5° with the optical axis. But for practical purposes the optical axis and the visual axis may be considered to be identical.

The *visual* or *optical angle* (fig. 580) is included between the lines drawn from the borders of any object to the nodal point; if the lines are prolonged backwards they include an equal angle. It has been shown by Helmholtz that the smallest angular distance between two points which can be appreciated as two distinct points = 50 seconds, the size of the retinal image being 3·65μ; this is a little more than the diameter of a cone at the fovea centralis which = 3μ, the distance between the centres of two adjacent cones being = 4μ. If the two points are so close together that they subtend a visual angle less than 50 seconds, both images will fall upon one cone, and the two points will therefore appear as one.

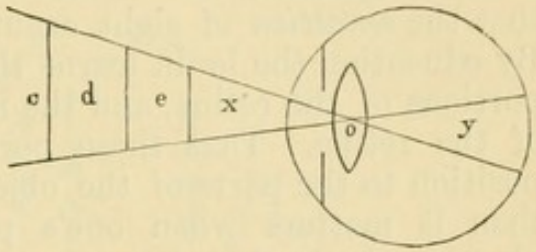


FIG. 580.—Diagram of the optical angle.

Any object, for example, the arrow A B (fig. 581), may be considered as a series of points from each of which a pencil of light

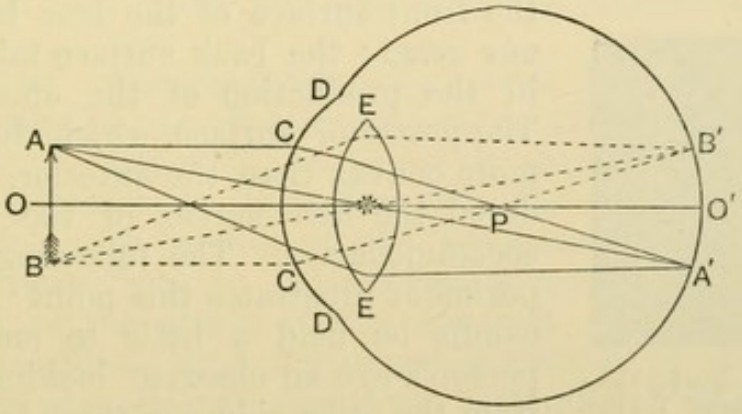


FIG. 581.—Diagram of the course of the rays of light, to show how an image is formed upon the retina. The surface C C should be supposed to represent the ideal curvature.

diverges to the eye. Take, for instance, the rays diverging from the tip of the arrow A; C C represents the curvature of the schematic or reduced eye; the ray which passes through the centre of the circle of which C C is part is not refracted; this point is represented as an asterisk in fig. 581; it is near the posterior surface of the crystal-

line lens; the ray A C, which is parallel to the optic axis O O′, is refracted through the principal posterior focus P, and cuts the first ray at the point A′ on the retina. All the other rays from A meet at the same point. Similarly the other end of the arrow B is focussed at B′, and rays from all other points have corresponding focusses.

It will thus be seen that an inverted image of external objects is formed on the retina. The retina is a curved screen, but the images fall only on a small area of the retina under normal circumstances; hence, for practical purposes, this small area may be regarded as flat.

The question then arises, Why is it that objects do not appear to us to be upside down? This is easily understood when we remember that the *sensation* of sight occurs not in the eye, but in the brain. By education the brain learns that the tops of objects excite certain portions of the retina, and the lower parts of objects other portions of the retina. That these portions of the retina are reversed in position to the parts of the object does not matter at all, any more than it matters when one's photograph arrives home from the photographer's that it was wrong way up in the photographer's camera—one puts it right way up in the photograph album.

Accommodation

The power of accommodation is primarily due to an ability to vary the shape of the lens; its front surface becomes more or less convex, according as the distance of the object looked at is near or far. The nearer the object, the more convex, up to a certain limit, the front surface of the lens becomes, and *vice versâ*; the back surface takes no share in the production of the effect required. The posterior surface, which during rest is more convex than the anterior, is thus rendered the less convex of the two during accommodation. The following simple experiment illustrates this point: If a lighted candle be held a little to one side of a person's eye an observer looking at the eye from the other side sees three images of the flame (fig. 582). The first and brightest is (1) a small erect image formed by the anterior convex surface of the cornea; the second (2) is also erect, but larger and less distinct than the preceding, and is formed at the anterior convex surface of the lens; the third (3) is smaller, inverted, and indistinct; it is formed at the posterior surface of the lens, which is concave forwards, and therefore, like all concave mirrors, gives an inverted image. If

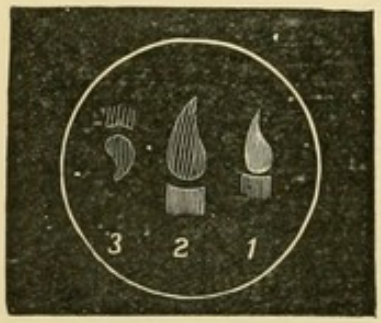


Fig. 582.—Diagram showing three reflections of a candle. 1, From the anterior surface of cornea; 2, from the anterior surface of lens; 3, from the posterior surface of lens.

now the eye under observation is made to look at a near object, the second image becomes smaller, clearer, and approaches the first. If the eye is now adjusted for a far point, the second image enlarges again, becomes less distinct, and recedes from the first. In both cases the first and third images remain unaltered in size, distinctness, and position. This proves that during accommodation for near objects the curvature of the cornea, and of the *posterior surface* of the lens, remain unaltered, while the *anterior* surface of the lens becomes more convex and approaches the cornea.

The experiment is more striking when two bright images (represented by arrows in fig. 583) are used; the two images from the front

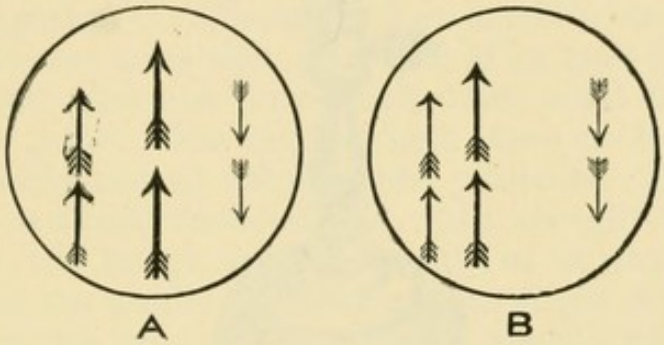


FIG. 583.—Diagram of Sanson's images. A, When the eyes are not, and B, when they are focussed for near objects. The fig. to the right in A and B is the inverted image from the posterior surface of the lens.

surface of the lens during accommodation not only approach those from the cornea, but also approach one another, and become somewhat smaller. (*Sanson's Images.*) Helmholtz's Phakoscope (fig. 584) is a triangular box with arrangements for demonstrating this experiment.

Mechanism of Accommodation.—The lens having no inherent power of contraction, its changes of outline must be produced by some power from without; this power is supplied by the ciliary muscle. Its action is to draw forwards the choroid, and by so doing to slacken the tension of the suspensory ligament of the lens which arises from it. The anterior surface of the lens is kept flattened by the action of this ligament. The ciliary muscle during accommodation, by diminishing the tension of this ligament, diminishes to a proportional degree the flattening of which it is the cause. On diminution or cessation of the action of the ciliary muscle, the lens returns to its former shape, by virtue of the elasticity of the suspensory ligament (fig. 585). From this it will appear that the eye is usually focussed for distant objects. In viewing near objects the ciliary muscle contracts; the ciliary muscle relaxes on withdrawal of the attention from near to distant objects.

It is possible to calculate the curvature of the lens or cornea in the body, by measuring the size of the image of an object upon it. The radius (r) of curvature

of a convex reflecting surface is given by the formula $r = \frac{2ab}{c}$; a is the distance of the object from the surface, b the diameter of the image, and c that of the object. a and c are easily measured; b is measured by Helmholtz's *ophthalmometer*, the

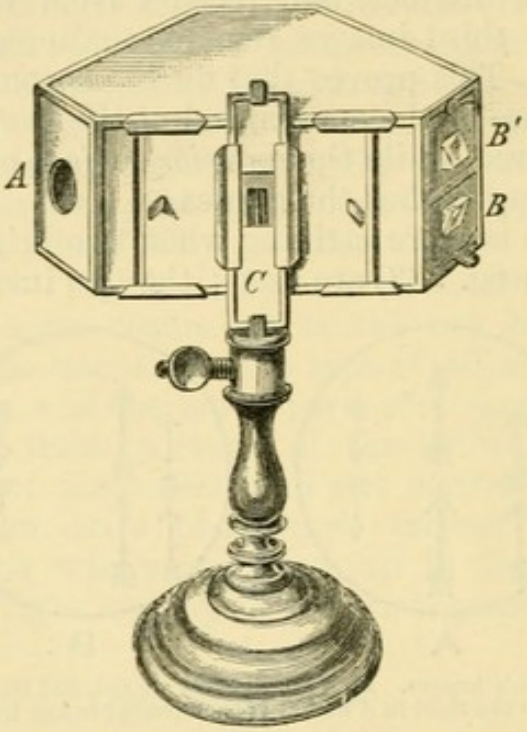


FIG. 584.—Phakoscope of Helmholtz. At B B' are two prisms, by which the light of a candle is concentrated on the eye of the person experimented with, which is looking through a hole in the third angle of the box opposite to the window C. A is the aperture for the eye of the observer. The observer notices three double images, represented by arrows, in fig. 583, reflected from the eye under examination when the eye is fixed upon a distant object; the position of the images having been noticed, the eye is made to focus a near object, such as a reed pushed up at C; the images from the anterior surface of the lens will be observed to move as described in the text.

principle of which is as follows:—If a line is looked at through a plate of glass placed obliquely between it and the eye, the line is shifted sideways to either right

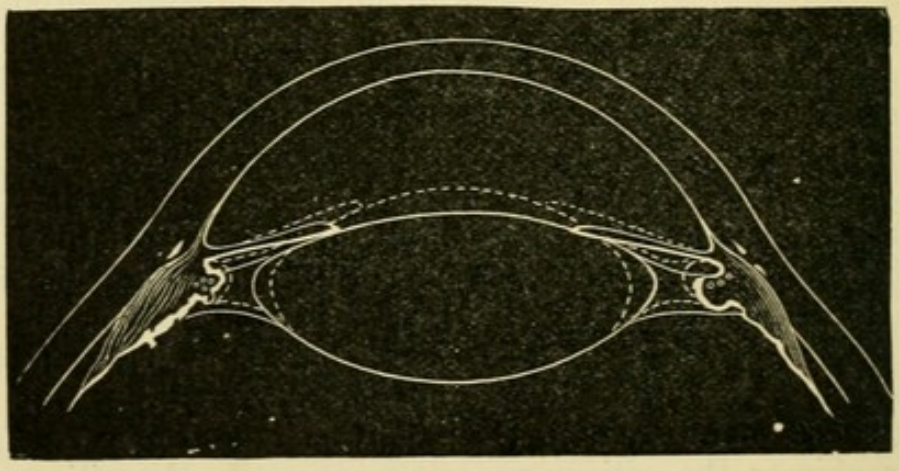


FIG. 585.—Diagram representing by dotted lines the alteration in the shape of the lens on accommodation for near objects. (E. Landolt.)

or left; if the glass plate is then placed obliquely at right angles to its previous position, the line is shifted in the opposite direction. In the ophthalmometer there

are two glass plates intersecting each other at an angle; the image of a bright horizontal line upon the lens or cornea is looked at through the junction between the two plates; one plate shifts the image to the right, the other to the left; the angle between the two plates is altered until the line appears as two distinct lines just touching each other. The amount of shifting of each, which must therefore be half the length of the image of the line, can be easily calculated if the thickness of the glass plates, their refractive index, and the angle between them are known. Double this result gives the size of the image on the surface under investigation.

Range of Distinct Vision. Near-point.—In every eye there is a limit to the power of accommodation. If a book be brought nearer and nearer to the eye, the type at last becomes indistinct, and cannot be brought into focus by any effort of accommodation, however strong. This, which is termed the *near-point*, can be determined by the following experiment (*Scheiner*). Two small holes are pricked in a card with a pin not more than a twelfth of an inch (2 mm.) apart; at any rate their distance from each other must not exceed the diameter of the pupil. The card is held close in front of the eye, and a small needle viewed through the pin-holes. At a moderate distance it can be clearly focussed, but when brought nearer, beyond a certain point, the image appears double, or at any rate blurred. This point where the needle ceases to appear single is the near-point. Its distance from the eye can of course be readily measured. It is usually about 5 or 6 inches (13 cm.). In the accompanying figure (fig. 586) the lens *b* represents the refractive apparatus of the eye;

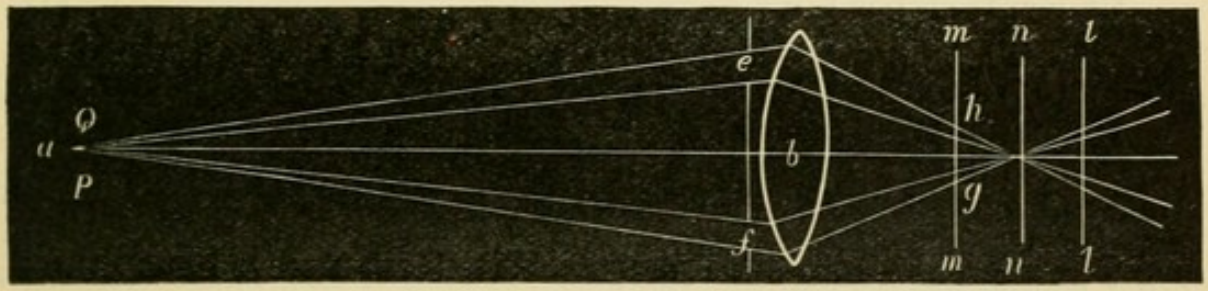


FIG. 586.—Diagram of experiment to ascertain the minimum distance of distinct vision.

e and *f* the two pin-holes in the card, *nn* the retina; *a* represents the position of the needle. When the needle is at a moderate distance, the two pencils of light coming from *e* and *f* are focussed at a single point on the retina *nn*. If the needle is brought nearer than the near-point, the strongest effort of accommodation is not sufficient to focus the two pencils, they meet at a point behind the retina. The effect is the same as if the retina were shifted forward to *mm*. Two images *h.g.* are formed, one from each hole. It is interesting to note that when two images are produced, the lower one *g* really appears in the position Q, while the upper one appears in the position P. This may be readily verified by covering the holes in succession.

During accommodation two other changes take place in the eyes:

(1) *The eyes converge* owing to the action of the internal rectus muscle of each eyeball. (2) *The pupils contract.*

The contraction of all of the muscles which have to do with accommodation, viz., of the ciliary muscle, of the internal recti muscles, and of the sphincter pupillæ, is under the control of the third nerve. It should further be noted that although the act is a voluntary one, the fibres of the ciliary muscle and of the sphincter pupillæ are of the plain variety.

The account of accommodation as given in the preceding pages is true for man and other mammals, birds, and certain reptiles.

Beer has, however, shown that in many animals lower in the scale, the mechanism of accommodation varies a good deal, and is often very different from that just described, consisting, in fact, in a power of altering the distance between the lens and the retina.

In bony fishes, the eye at rest is accommodated for near objects; in focussing for distant objects the lens is drawn nearer to the retina by a special muscle called the *retractor lentis*. In cephalopods the same occurs, but the retractor lentis is absent; here the approach of the lens to the retina is brought about by an alteration of intra-ocular tension. In Amphibia and most snakes, the eye at rest is focussed for distant objects; in accommodating for near objects the lens, by alteration of intra-ocular tension, is brought forward, that is, the distance between it and the retina is increased. There appear to be not a few animals in all classes which do not possess the power of accommodation at all. Indeed, Barrett states this is so for most mammals.

Defects in the Optical Apparatus

Under this head we may consider the defects known as (1) Myopia, (2) Hypermetropia, (3) Astigmatism, (4) Spherical Aberration, (5) Chromatic Aberration.

The normal (*emmetropic*) eye is so adjusted that at rest parallel rays are brought exactly to a focus on the retina (1, fig. 587). Hence all objects except near ones (practically all objects more than twenty feet off) are seen without any effort of accommodation; in other words, the far-point of the normal eye is at an infinite distance. In viewing near objects we are conscious of the effort (the contraction of the ciliary muscle) by which the anterior surface of the lens is rendered more convex, and rays which would otherwise be focussed *behind* the retina are converged upon the retina (see dotted lines, 2, fig. 587).

1. *Myopia* (short-sight), (4, fig. 587).—This defect is due to an abnormal elongation of the eyeball. The retina is too far from the lens, and consequently parallel rays are focussed *in front of* the retina, and, crossing, form little circles on the retina; thus the images of distant objects are blurred and indistinct. The eye is, as it were, permanently adjusted for a near-point. Rays from a point near the eye are exactly focussed on the retina. But those which issue from any object beyond a certain distance (*far-point*) cannot be distinctly focussed. This defect is corrected by *concave* glasses which cause the

rays entering the eye to diverge: hence they do not come to a focus so soon. Such glasses, of course, are only needed to give a clear vision of distant objects. For near objects, except in extreme cases, they are not required.

2. *Hypermetropia* (3, fig. 587).—This is the reverse defect. The

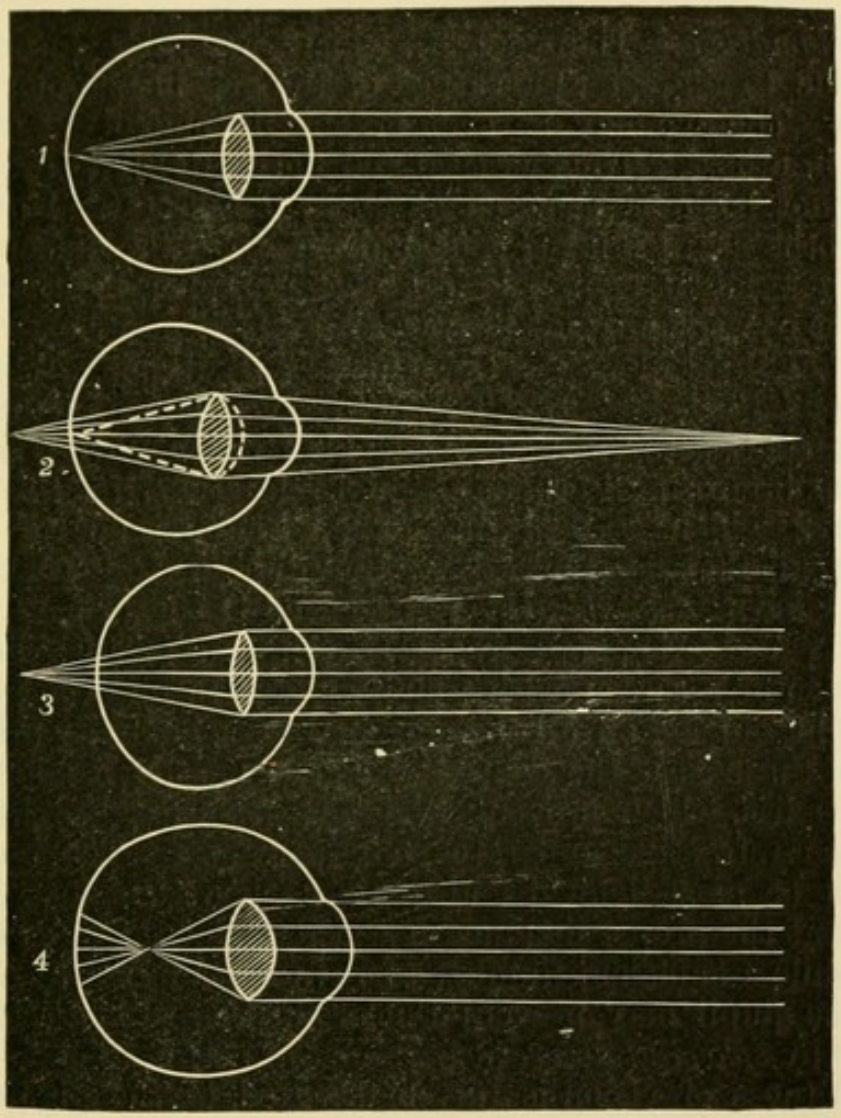


FIG. 587.—Diagram showing—1, normal (*emmetropic*) eye bringing parallel rays exactly to a focus on the retina; 2, normal eye adapted to a near-point; without accommodation the rays would be focussed behind the retina, but by increasing the curvature of the anterior surface of the lens (shown by a dotted line) the rays are focussed on the retina (as indicated by the meeting of the two dotted lines); 3, *hypermetropic* eye; in this case the axis of the eye is shorter than normal; parallel rays are focussed behind the retina; 4, *myopic* eye; in this case the axis of the eye is abnormally long; parallel rays are focussed in front of the retina. The figure incorrectly represents the refraction as occurring only in the crystalline lens; the principal refraction really occurs at the anterior surface of the cornea.

eyeball is too short. Parallel rays are focussed *behind* the retina: an effort of accommodation is required to focus even parallel rays on the retina; and when they are divergent, as in viewing a near object, the accommodation is insufficient to focus them. Thus, in well-marked cases, distant objects require an effort of accommodation, and

near ones a very powerful effort, and the ciliary muscle is, therefore, constantly acting. This defect is obviated by the use of *convex* glasses, which render the pencils of light more convergent. Such glasses are, of course, especially needed for near objects, as in reading, etc. They rest the eye by relieving the ciliary muscle from excessive work.

3. *Astigmatism.*—This defect, which was first discovered by Airy, is due to a greater curvature of the eye in one meridian than in others. The eye may be even myopic in one plane, and hypermetropic in others. Thus vertical and horizontal lines crossing each other cannot both be focussed at once; one set stand out clearly, and the others are blurred and indistinct. This defect, which is present in a slight degree in all eyes, is generally seated in the cornea, but occasionally in the lens as well; it may be corrected by the use of cylindrical glasses (*i.e.*, curved only in one direction).

4. *Spherical Aberration.*—The rays of a cone of light from an object situated at the side of the field of vision do not meet all in the same point, owing to their unequal refraction; for the refraction of the rays which pass through the circumference of a lens is greater than that of those traversing its central portion. This defect is known as *spherical aberration*, and in the camera, telescope, microscope, and other optical instruments, it is remedied by the interposition of a screen with a circular aperture in the path of the rays of light, cutting off all the marginal rays, and only allowing the passage of those near the centre. Such correction is effected in the eye by the iris, which prevents the rays from passing through any part of the refractive apparatus but its centre. The image of an object will be most defined and distinct when the pupil is narrow, the object at the proper distance for vision, and the light abundant; so that, while a sufficient number of rays are admitted, the narrowness of the pupil may prevent the production of indistinctness of the image by *spherical aberration.*

Distinctness of vision is further secured by the pigment of the outer surface of the retina, the posterior surface of the iris and the ciliary processes, which absorbs most of the light which is reflected within the eye, and prevents its being thrown again upon the retina so as to interfere with the images there formed.

5. *Chromatic Aberration.*—In the passage of light through an ordinary convex lens, decomposition of each ray into its elementary colours commonly ensues, and a coloured margin appears around the image, owing to the unequal refraction which the elementary colours undergo. In optical instruments this, which is termed *chromatic aberration*, is corrected by the use of two or more lenses, differing in shape and density, the second of which continues or increases the refraction of the rays produced by the first, but by

recombining the individual parts of each ray into its original white light, corrects any chromatic aberration which may have resulted from the first. It is probable that the unequal refractive power of the transparent media in front of the retina may be the means by which the eye is enabled to guard against the effect of chromatic aberration. The human eye is achromatic, however, only so long as the image is received at its focal distance upon the retina, or so long as the eye is properly accommodated. If these conditions are interfered with, a more or less distinct appearance of colours is produced.

From the insufficient adjustment of the image of a small white object, it appears surrounded by a sort of halo or fringe. This phenomenon is termed *Irradiation.* It is partly for this reason that a white square on a black ground appears larger than a black square of the same size on a white ground. The phenomenon is naturally more marked when the white object is a little out of focus.

Defective Accommodation—Presbyopia.—This condition is due to the gradual loss of the power of accommodation which is an early sign of advancing years. In consequence, the person is obliged in reading to hold the book further and further away in order to focus the letters, till at last the letters are held too far for distinct vision. The defect is remedied by weak convex glasses. It is due chiefly to the gradual increase in density of the lens, which is unable to swell out and become convex when near objects are looked at, and also to a weakening of the ciliary muscle, and a general loss of elasticity in the parts concerned in the mechanism.

Functions of the Iris

The iris has the following uses:—

1. To act as a diaphragm in order to lessen spherical aberration in the manner just described. This is specially necessary when one wishes to obtain a clearly defined image of an object; the pupil therefore contracts when accommodation for a near object takes place.

2. To regulate the amount of light entering the eye. In a bright light the pupil contracts; in a dim light it enlarges. This may be perfectly well seen in one's own iris by looking at it in a mirror while one alternately turns a gas-light up and down.

The muscular fibres (unstriped in mammals, striped in birds) of the iris are arranged circularly around the margin of the pupil, and radiatingly from its margin. The radiating fibres are best seen in the eyes of birds and otters; some look upon them as elastic in nature, but there is little doubt that they are contractile. Those

who believe they are not contractile explain dilatation of the pupil as due to inhibition of the circular fibres. But if the iris is stimulated near its outer margin at three different points simultaneously the pupil assumes a triangular shape, the angles of the triangle corresponding to the points stimulated; this must be due to contraction of three strands of the radiating muscle; inhibition of the circular fibres would occur equally all round.

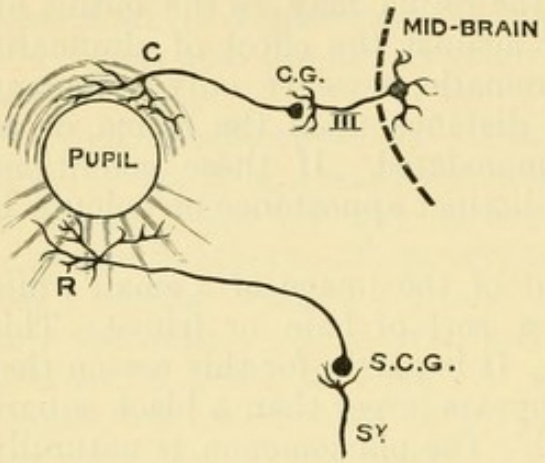


FIG. 588.—Diagram of the motor nerves of the iris. Around the upper half of the pupil the circular fibres (C) only are indicated. These are supplied by the third nerve, one fibre of which (III.) is seen issuing from the mid-brain; the cell-station for these fibres is in the ciliary ganglion (C.G.). Around the lower half of the pupil, the radiating fibres (R) are indicated; these are supplied by the cervical sympathetic (Sy), one fibre of which is shown with its cell-station in the superior cervical ganglion (S.C.G.) (After Dixon.)

The iris is supplied by three sets of nerve-fibres contained in the ciliary nerves.

(*a*) The third nerve *viâ* the short ciliary nerves supplies the circular fibres.

(*b*) The cervical sympathetic supplies the radiating fibres. The cilio-spinal centre which governs them is in the cervical region of the cord (see p. 690). The fibres leave the cord by the anterior root of the second thoracic nerve, pass into the cervical sympathetic, and reach the eyeball *viâ* the ophthalmic branch of the fifth, and long ciliary nerves.

(*c*) Fibres of the fifth nerve which are sensory.

The experiments on the motor nerves are those of section and stimulation of the peripheral ends; the usual experiments by which the functions of such nerves are discovered.

Nerve.	Experiment.	Effect on pupil.
Third	Section	Dilatation.
Third	Stimulation	Contraction.
Sympathetic	Section	Contraction.
Sympathetic	Stimulation	Dilatation.
Both nerves together	Stimulation	Contraction overcomes the dilatation.

Certain drugs dilate the pupil. These are called *mydriatics;* atropine is a well-known example. Others cause the pupil to contract. These are called *myotics;* physostigmine and opium (taken internally) are instances. Different myotics and mydriatics act in different ways, some exerting their activity on the muscular, and others on the nervous structures of the iris.

Reflex actions of the iris.—When the iris contracts under the influence of light, the sensory nerve is the optic, and the motor the third nerve. The central connection of the two nerves in the region of the mid-brain we shall see later on. The iris also contracts on accommodation; and the reflex path concerned in this action is a different one from that concerned in the light reflex, as this reflex often remains, in cases of locomotor ataxy, after there is an entire loss of the reflex to light (Argyll-Robertson pupil).

On painful stimulation of any part of the body, there is reflex dilatation of the pupil. This is accompanied by starting of the eyeballs, due to contraction of the plain muscle in the capsule of Tenon, which, like the dilator fibres of the iris, is supplied by the cervical sympathetic nerve.

We may sum up the principal conditions under which the pupil contracts and dilates in the following table:—

Causes of—

Contraction of the Pupil.	Dilatation of the Pupil.
1. Stimulation of third nerve.	1. Paralysis of the third nerve.
2. Paralysis of cervical sympathetic.	2. Stimulation of the cervical sympathetic.
3. When the eye is exposed to light.	3. In the dark.
4. When accommodation occurs.	4. When the accommodation is relaxed.
5. Under the local influence of physostigmine.	5. Under the local influence of atropine. This drug also paralyses the ciliary muscle.
6. Under the influence of opium.	6. In the last stage of asphyxia.
7. During sleep.	7. In deep chloroform narcosis.
	8. Under the influence of certain emotions, such as fear.
	9. During pain.

There is a close connection of the centres that govern the activity of the two irides. If one eye is shaded by the hand, its pupil will of course dilate, but the pupil of the other eye will also dilate. The two pupils always contract or dilate together unless the cause is the local injury to the nerves of one side or the local action of drugs.

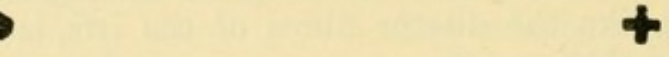
Functions of the Retina

The Retina is the nervous coat of the eye; it contains the layer of nerve-epithelium (rods and cones) which is capable of receiving the stimulus of light, and transforming it into a nervous impulse which passes to the brain by the optic nerve.

The bacillary layer, or layer of rods and cones, is at the back of all the other retinal layers, which the light has to penetrate before it can affect this layer. The proofs of the statement that this

is the layer of the retina which is capable of stimulation by light are the following:—

(1) The point of entrance of the optic nerve into the retina, where the rods and cones are absent, is insensitive to light, and is called the *blind spot*. This is readily demonstrated by what is known as Mariotte's experiment. If we direct one eye, the other being closed, upon a point at such a distance to the side of any object, that the image of the latter must fall upon the retina at the point of entrance of the optic nerve, this image is lost. If, for example, we close the left eye, and look steadily with the right eye at the dot



here represented, while the page is held about six inches from the eye, both dot and cross are visible. On gradually increasing the distance between the page and the eye, still keeping the right eye steadily on the dot, it will be found that suddenly the cross disappears from view, because its image has fallen on the blind spot; on removing the book still farther, it comes in sight again. The question has arisen why we are not normally conscious of a gap in the image. The gap is not felt for the reason that a defect of light sensations at a spot blind from the beginning can no more be perceived as a gap in the image than the blindness, say, of the skin of the back or foot can be so perceived.

(2) In the fovea centralis which contains the bacillary layer, but in which the other layers of the retina are thinned down to a minimum, light produces the greatest effect. In the macula lutea, cones occur in large numbers, and in the fovea centralis cones without rods are found, whereas, in the rest of the retina which is not so sensitive to light, there are fewer cones than rods.

(3) If a small lighted candle is moved to and fro at the side of and close to one eye in a darkened room, while the eyes look steadily forward on to a dull background, a remarkable branching figure (*Purkinje's figures*) is seen floating before the eye, consisting of dark lines on a reddish ground. As the candle moves, the figure moves in the opposite direction, and from its whole appearance there can be no doubt that it is a reversed picture of the retinal vessels projected before the eye.* This remarkable appearance is due to shadows of the retinal vessels cast by the candle; and it is only when they are thrown upon the retina in an unusual slanting direction that they are perceived. The branches of these vessels are distributed in the nerve-fibre and ganglionic layers; and since the

* Purkinje's figures can be much more readily seen by simply looking steadily down a microscope, and moving the whole instrument backwards and forwards, or from side to side, while so doing.

light of the candle falls on the retinal vessels from in front, the shadow is cast behind them, and hence those elements of the retina which perceive the shadows must also lie behind the vessels. Here, then, we have a clear proof that the light-perceiving elements are not the inner, but one of the external layers of the retina; further than this, calculation has shown it is the layer of rods and cones. The data for such a calculation are—the dimensions of the eyeball, the distance of the screen from the eye, the angle through which the candle is moved, and the displacement of the figure seen.

Duration of Visual Sensations.—The duration of the sensation produced by a luminous impression on the retina is always greater than that of the impression which produces it. However brief the luminous impression, the effect on the retina always lasts for about one-eighth of a second. Thus, supposing an object in motion, say a horse, to be revealed on a dark night by a flash of lightning. The object would be seen apparently for an eighth of a second, but it would not appear in motion; because, although the image remained on the retina for this time, it was really revealed for such an extremely short period (a flash of lightning lasting only a millionth of a second) that no appreciable movement on the part of the object could have taken place in the period during which it was revealed to the retina of the observer. The same fact is proved in a reverse way. The spokes of a rapidly revolving wheel are not seen as distinct objects, because at every point of the field of vision over which the revolving spokes pass, a given impression has not faded before another replaces it. Thus every part of the interior of the wheel appears occupied.

The stimuli which excite the retina are exceedingly slight; for instance, the minimum stimulus in the form of green light is equal in terms of work to that which is done in raising a ten-millionth part of a milligramme to the height of a millimetre, and even some of this is doubtless wasted in the form of heat. The time during which the stimulus acts may be excessively small; thus light from a rapidly rotating mirror is visible even when it only falls upon the retina for one eight-millionth part of a second. Some physiologists have drawn an analogy between retinal and muscular excitations. There is no complete analogy, but the following points of resemblance may be noted:—

1. The retina like the muscle possesses a store of potential energy, which the stimulus serves to fire off.

2. Fatigue on action, and recovery after rest are noticeable in both.

3. The curve of retinal excitation, like the muscle curve, rises not abruptly but gradually to its full height, and on the cessation of the stimulus takes a measurable time to fall again, the retinal impression outlasting the stimulus by about one-eighth of a second.

4. With comparatively slow intermittent excitation, the phenomenon known as *flicker* takes place; this may be shown by the slow rotation on Maxwell's machine of a disc painted with alternate black and white sectors. This roughly corresponds with what in a muscle is called incomplete tetanus.

5. When the rate of stimulation is increased, as by increasing the speed of rotation of the disc just alluded to (say to twenty or thirty times a second) the resulting sensation is a smooth one of greyness. This fusion of individual stimuli into a con-

tinuous sensation, does not by any means correspond to the complete tetanus of muscle, for the resultant sensation has a brightness corresponding not to a summation of the individual fusing sensations, but to a brightness which would ensue if the stimuli were spread evenly over the surface of the disc (Talbot's Law).

The Ophthalmoscope.

Every one is perfectly familiar with the fact, that it is quite impossible to see the *fundus* or back of another person's eye by simply looking into it. The interior of the eye forms a perfectly black background.* The same remark applies to the difficulty we experience in seeing into a room from the street through the window unless the room is lighted within. In the case of the eye this fact is partly due to the feebleness of the light reflected from the retina, most of it being absorbed by the retinal pigment; but far more to the fact that every such ray is reflected straight to the source of light (*e.g.*, candle), and cannot, therefore, be seen by the unaided eye without intercepting the incident light from the candle, as well as the reflected rays from the retina. This difficulty is surmounted by the use of the *ophthalmoscope.*

The ophthalmoscope was invented by Helmholtz; as a mirror for reflecting the light into the eye, he employed a bundle of thin glass plates; this mirror was transparent, and so he was able to look through it in the same direction as that of the rays of the light it reflected. It is almost impossible to over-estimate the boon this instrument has been to mankind; previous to this in the examination of cases of eye disease, the principal evidence on which the surgeon had to rely was that derived from the patient's sensations; now he can look for himself.

The instrument, however, has been greatly modified since Helmholtz's time; the principal modification is the substitution of a concave mirror of silvered glass for the bundle of glass plates; this is mounted on a handle, and is perforated in the centre by a small hole through which the observer can look.

The methods of examining the eye with this instrument are—the *direct* and the *indirect:* both methods of investigation should be employed. A drop of a solution of atropine (two grains to the ounce) or of homatropine hydrobromate, should be instilled about twenty minutes before the examination is commenced; the ciliary muscle is thereby paralysed, the power of accommodation is abolished, and the pupil is dilated. This will materially facilitate the examination; but it is quite possible to observe all the details to be presently described without the use of such

* In some animals (*e.g.*, the cat), the pigment is absent from a portion of the retinal epithelium; this forms the *Tapetum lucidum.* The use of this is supposed to be to increase the sensitiveness of the retina, the light being reflected back through the layer of rods and cones. It is probably the case that these animals are able to see clearly with less light than we can, hence the popular idea that a cat can see in the dark. In fishes a tapetum lucidum is often present; here the brightness is increased by crystals of guanine.

drugs. The room being now darkened, the observer seats himself in front of the person whose eye he is about to examine, placing himself upon a somewhat higher level. Let us suppose that the right eye of the patient is being examined. A brilliant and steady light is placed close to the left ear of the patient. Taking the mirror in his right hand, and looking through the central hole, the operator directs a beam of light into the eye of the patient. A red glare, known as *the reflex*, is seen; it is due to the illumination of the retina. The patient is then told to look at the little finger of the observer's right hand as he holds the mirror; to effect this the eye is rotated somewhat inwards, and at the same time the reflex changes from red to a lighter colour, owing to the reflection from the optic disc. The observer now approximates the mirror, with his eye to the eye of the patient, taking care to keep the light fixed upon the pupil, so as not to lose the reflex. At a certain point, which varies with different eyes, but is usually reached when there is an interval of about two or three inches between the observed and the observing eye, *the vessels of the retina* become visible. Examine carefully the fundus of the eye, *i.e.*, the red surface—until *the optic disc* is seen; trace its circular outline, and observe the small central white spot, the porus opticus, or *physiological pit:* near the centre is the central artery of the retina breaking up upon the disc into branches; veins also are present, and correspond roughly to the course of the arteries. Trace the vessels over the disc on to the retina. Somewhat to the outer side, and only visible after some practice, is the *yellow spot*, with the smaller lighter-coloured *fovea centralis* in its centre. This constitutes the direct method of examination; by it the various details of the fundus are seen as they really exist, and it is this method which should be adopted for ordinary use.

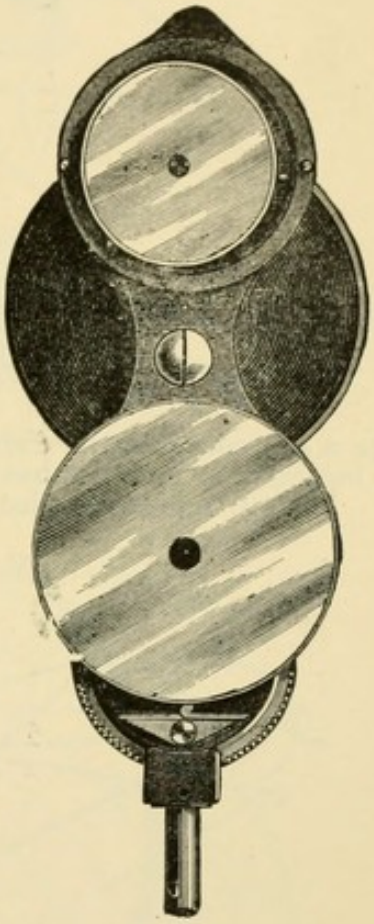


FIG. 589.—The Ophthalmoscope. The small upper mirror is for direct, the larger for indirect, illumination.

If the observer is myopic or hypermetropic, he will be unable to employ the direct method of examination until he has remedied his defective vision by the use of proper glasses.

In the indirect method the patient is placed as before, and the operator holds the mirror in his right hand at a distance of twelve to eighteen inches from the patient's right eye. At the same time he rests his left little finger lightly upon the patient's right temple, and holding a convex lens between his thumb and forefinger, two or three inches in front of the patient's eye, directs the light through the lens into the eye. The red reflex, and subsequently the white one, having been gained, the operator slowly moves his mirror, and with it his eye, towards or away from the face of the patient, until the outline of one of the retinal vessels becomes visible, when very slight movements on the part of the operator will suffice to bring into view the details of the fundus above described, but the image will be much smaller and inverted. The appearances seen are depicted in fig. 574. The lens should be kept fixed at a distance of two or three inches, the mirror alone being moved until the disc becomes visible: should the image of the mirror, however, obscure the disc, the lens may be slightly tilted.

The two next figures show diagrammatically the course of the rays of light.

Fig. 590 represents what occurs when employing the direct method. S is the source of light, and M M the concave mirror with its central aperture, which reflects the rays; these are focussed by the eye E, which is being examined, to a point in the

vitreous humour, and this produces a diffuse lighting of the interior of the eyeball. Rays of light issuing from the point p emerge from the eye parallel to one another, and enter the observer's eye E^1; they are brought to a focus p^1 on the retina as the

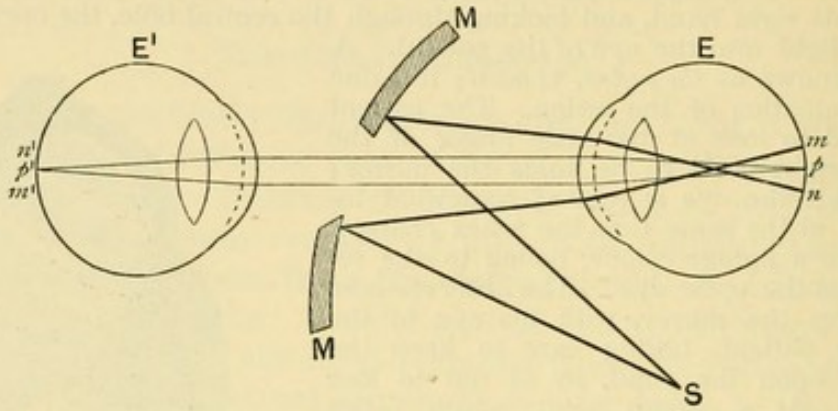


FIG. 590.—The course of the light in examining the eye by the direct method. (T. G. Brodie.)

eye is accommodated for distant vision. Similarly the point m and n will give rise to images at m^1 and n^1 respectively.

Fig. 591 represents what occurs in examining the eye by the indirect method.

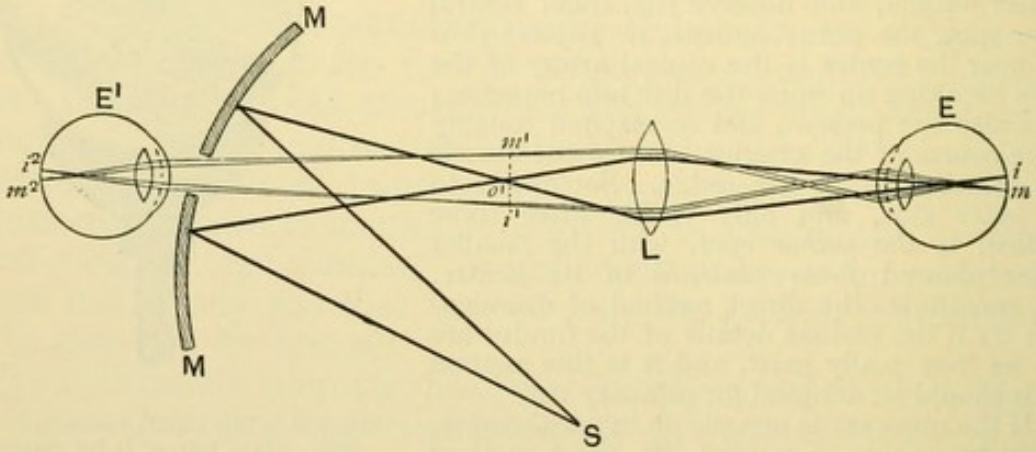


FIG. 591.—The course of the light in examining the eye by the indirect method. (T. G. Brodie.)

S is the source of light, M M the mirror, E the observed, and E^1 the observing eye as before. The rays of light are reflected from the mirror and form an image at o^1; they then diverge and are again made convergent by the lens L held in front of the eye by the observer; by this means a second image is focussed just behind the crystalline lens of the eye E. They then again diverge and diffusely light up the interior of the eyeball. The rays of light reflected from two points i and m on the retina diverging from the eye are refracted to the glass lens L, and give an inverted real image i^1 m^1 larger than the object i m. These latter rays then diverge, and are collected and focussed by the observing eye E^1 to give an image i^2 m^2 on the retina. (T. G. Brodie.)

The Perimeter.

This is an instrument for mapping out the field of vision. It consists of a graduated arc, which can be moved into any position, and which when rotated traces out a hollow hemisphere. In the centre of this the eye under examination is placed, the other eye

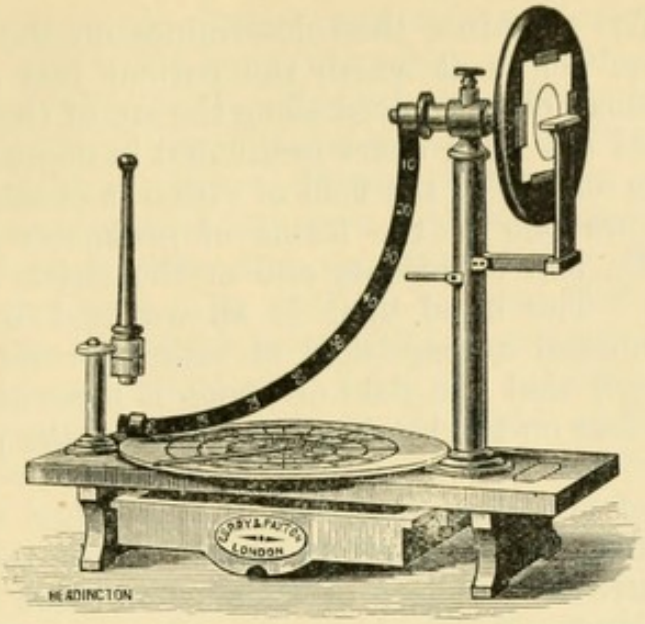


FIG. 592.—Priestley Smith's Perimeter.

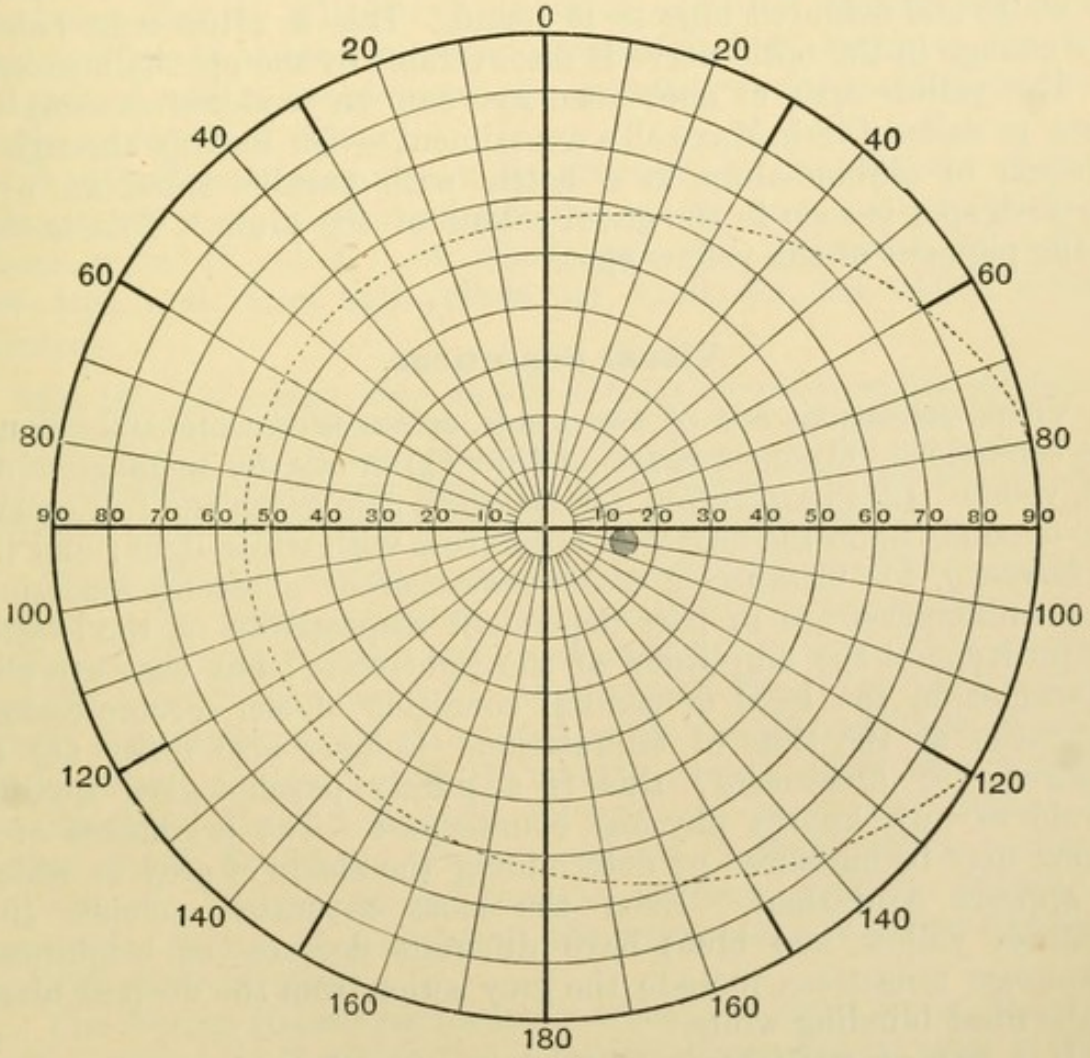


FIG. 593.—Perimeter chart for the right eye.

being closed. The examiner then determines on the surface of the hemisphere those points at which the patient just ceases or just begins to see a small object moved along the arc of the circle. These points are plotted out on a chart graduated in degrees, and by connecting them the outline of the field of vision is obtained.

Fig. 592 shows one of the forms of perimeter very generally employed, and fig. 593 represents one of the charts provided with the instrument. The blind spot is shown, and the dotted line represents the normal average field of vision for the right eye.

It will be seen that the field of vision is most extensive on the outer side; it is less on the inner side because of the presence of the nose.

By the use of the same instrument, it is found that the colour of a coloured object is not distinguishable at the margin, but only towards the centre of the field of vision, but there are differences for different colours; thus a blue or yellow object is seen to be blue or yellow over a wider field than a red or green object.

In disease of the optic nerve, contraction of the field of vision for white and coloured objects is found. This is often seen before any change in the optic nerve is discoverable by the ophthalmoscope.

The yellow spot of one's own eye can be rendered evident by what is called Clerk-Maxwell's experiment:—On looking through a solution of chrome-alum in a bottle with parallel sides, an oval purplish spot is seen in the green colour of the alum. This is due to the pigment of the yellow spot.

Visual Sensations.

Visual sensations are of two kinds, colour sensations and colourless sensations. Colour sensations differ (1) in *hue*, for instance, blue, red, yellow; (2) in *saturation*, for instance, pale green and full green; this depends upon the degree of admixture with white light; and (3) in *intensity*, for instance, a weak sensation or a strong sensation. These differences are in part dependent respectively on the length, the purity, and the amplitude of the light-wave; but they are also dependent on the local or general condition of the cerebro-retinal apparatus at the time of stimulation. Colours also differ (4) in *brightness* or *luminosity;* this is a purely psychological quality devoid of any known physical counterpart. The brightness of a colour may be measured by determining the shade of grey to which it appears equivalent. Even the most saturated colours (for instance, yellow and blue) have different degrees of brightness. Colourless sensations include the grey series from the deepest black to the most blinding white.

If a ray of sunlight is allowed to pass through a prism, it is

decomposed by its passage into rays of different colours, which are called the colours of the spectrum; they are red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo, and violet. The red rays are the least turned out of their course by the prism, and the violet the most, whilst the other colours occupy in order places between these two extremes. The differences in the colour of the rays depend upon the rapidity of vibrations producing each, the red rays being the least rapid and the violet the most. In addition to these, there are other rays which are invisible but which have definite properties; those to the left of the red are less refrangible, being the calorific rays which act upon the thermometer, and those to the right of the violet, which are called the actinic or chemical rays, have a powerful chemical action.

White light may be built from its constituents in several ways, for instance, by a second prism reversing the dispersion produced by the first, or by causing the colours of the spectrum to fall on the retina in rapid succession. The best way to study the effects of compounding successive colour stimuli is by means of a rapidly revolving disc to which two or more coloured sectors are fixed. Each colour is viewed in rapid succession, but owing to the persistence of retinal impressions, the constituent colour stimuli give a single sensation of colour.

A colourless sensation can be produced by the mixture of three colours, or even of two colours in certain hues and proportions. These pairs of colours, of which red and greenish-blue, orange and blue, and violet and yellow are examples, are called *complementary*.

Thus blue and orange, when rotated on the colour-wheel, produce a colourless sensation; but it is well known that a mixture of blue and orange paint gives green. This is explained on the supposition that the colours used are not pure and that each contains green; the true blue and orange present neutralise each other to produce white, and thus green is the only colour sensation obtained.

Three properly chosen colours will not only produce a colourless sensation, but when combined in appropriate amounts they can be made to yield any other colour sensation. It is on this principle that Thomas Young based his trichromatic theory of colour vision, which was subsequently elaborated by Helmholtz and Clerk-Maxwell. It is known as the Young-Helmholtz theory. The theory selects as the three above-mentioned colours red, green, and violet, and terms these the three primary colours. These three particular colours are chosen, partly because of their position within the spectrum, partly on account of the phenomena of colour-blindness, and for other reasons.

The Young-Helmholtz theory teaches that there are in the retina certain elements (? within the cones) which answer to each of these

primary colours, whereas the innumerable intermediate shades of colour are produced by stimulation of the three primary colour terminals in different degrees, the sensation of white being produced when the three elements are equally excited. Thus, if the retina is stimulated by rays of certain wave length, at the red end of the spectrum, the terminals of the other colours, green and violet, are hardly stimulated at all, but the red terminals are strongly stimulated, the resulting sensation being red. The orange rays excite the red terminals considerably, the green rather more, and the violet slightly, the resulting sensation being that of orange, and so on (fig. 594).

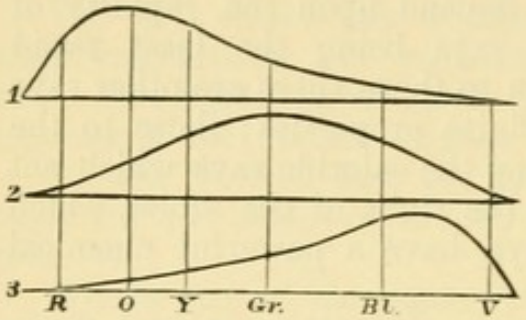


FIG. 594.—Diagram of the three primary colour sensations. (Young-Helmholtz theory.) 1 is the red; 2, green, and 3, violet, primary colour sensation. The lettering indicates the colours of the spectrum. The diagram indicates by the height of the curve to what extent the several primary sensations of colour are excited by vibrations of different wave lengths.

Another theory of colour vision (Hering's) supposes that there are six primary colour sensations, viz.: three antagonistic (complementary) pairs, black and white, red and green, and yellow and blue; and that these are produced by the changes either of disintegration or of assimilation taking place in certain substances, which (the theory supposes) exist in the cerebro-retinal apparatus. Each of the substances corresponding to a pair of colours is capable of undergoing two changes, one of disintegration, and the other of construction, with the result of producing one or other colour. For instance, in the white-black substance, when disintegration is in excess of construction or assimilation, the sensation is white, and when assimilation is in excess of disintegration the reverse is the case; and similarly with the red-green substance, and with the yellow-blue substance. When the repair and disintegration are equal with the first substance, the visual sensation is grey; but in the other pairs, when this is the case, no colour sensation occurs. The rays of the spectrum to the red end produce changes in the red-green substance, with a resulting sensation of red, whilst the (orange) rays further to the right affect both the red-green and the yellow-blue substances; blue rays cause constructive changes in the yellow-blue substances, but none in the red-green, and so on. All colours act on the white-black substance as well as on the red-green or yellow-blue substance.

Neither theory satisfactorily accounts for all the numerous complicated problems presented in the physiology of colour vision. One of these problems is *colour blindness*, a by no means uncommon visual defect. Some people are completely colour blind, but the

commonest form is the inability to distinguish between red and green. Helmholtz's explanation of such a condition is, that the elements of the retina which receive the impression of red or green are absent, or very imperfectly developed, and Hering's would be that the red-green substance is absent from the cerebro-retinal apparatus. Other varieties of colour-blindness, in which the other colour-perceiving elements are absent, have been shown to exist occasionally.

Hering's theory appears to meet the difficulty best, for if the red element of Helmholtz were absent, the patient ought not to be able to perceive white sensations, of which red is a constituent part; whereas, according to Hering's theory, the white-black visual substance remains intact.

These two theories have been for a long time before the scientific world. As facts have accumulated, it has been for some years recognised that many facts could not be reconciled with either; and modifications of one or the other have been from time to time introduced.

C. J. Burch found that by exposing the eye to bright sunlight in the focus of a burning glass behind transparent coloured screens, it is possible to produce temporary colour blindness. After red light, the observer is for some minutes red-blind, scarlet geraniums look black, yellow flowers green, and purple flowers violet. After violet light, violet looks black, purple flowers crimson, and green foliage richer than usual. After light of other colours, corresponding effects are produced. If one eye is made purple-blind, and the other green-blind, all objects are seen in their natural colours, but in exaggerated perspective, due to the difficulty the brain experiences in combining the images from the two eyes.

By using a brightly-illuminated spectrum, and directing the eye to certain of its colours, the eye in time becomes fatigued and blind for that colour, so that it is no longer seen in the spectrum. Thus, after green blindness is induced the red appears to meet the blue, and no green is seen. If, however, the eye is exposed to yellow light, it does not similarly become blind for yellow only, but for red and green too. This supports the Young-Helmholtz theory, that the sensation yellow is one compounded of the red and green sensations. By an exhaustive examination of the different parts of the spectrum, in this way it thus becomes possible to differentiate between the primary colour sensations and those which are compound. By a study of this kind, Burch concludes that the phenomena of colour vision are in accordance with the Young-Helmholtz theory, with the important addition that there is a fourth primary colour sensation, namely, blue. He could not discover that colour sensations are related to each other in the sense indicated by Hering. Each may be exhausted without either weakening or strengthening the others. These observations were confirmed by examining in a similar way the colour sensations of seventy other people, but there are individual differences in the extent to which the colour sensations overlap.

After-Images.—These are the after-effects of retinal excitation, and are divided into *positive* and *negative*. Positive after-images resemble the original image in distribution of brightness and colour. In negative after-images bright parts appear dark, dark parts bright, and coloured parts in the complementary or contrast colours.

If a bright white object is looked at, and the eyelids are then

closed, a positive after-image is seen which fades gradually, but as it fades it passes through blue, violet or red, to orange; according to the Young-Helmholtz theory, this is explained on the hypothesis that the excitation does not decline with equal rapidity in the three colour terminals. A positive after-image is readily obtained by momentarily looking at a bright object, *e.g.*, a window, after waking from sleep. Negative after-images may be seen either by closing the eyes or by turning them to a uniform grey surface after viewing an object steadily.

If the object looked at is coloured, the negative after-image seen upon such a background is in its complementary colour; this is explained by the Young-Helmholtz theory, by the supposition that the colour-perceiving element for the colour looked at is the most fatigued, and the terminals for its complementary colour least fatigued. On the Hering theory, one colour produces anabolic or katabolic effects as the case may be; on withdrawing the eye from stimulation by that particular colour, the opposite phase of metabolism takes place and produces the complementary colour. One has an analogy to this in the case of the heart; when that organ has been thrown into an anabolic state by the stimulation of the vagus, it will beat better when the stimulation stops owing to increase of katabolic processes.

Simultaneous Contrast.—Negative after-images are frequently spoken of as phenomena of *successive contrast.* Somewhat more complex than these are the phenomena of *simultaneous contrast.* A grey object looks whiter when viewed against a dark background than when seen against a white background; the colour of an object is intensified by viewing it against a background of its complementary hue. Another familiar experiment is the following:—A piece of grey paper is placed on a green sheet, and the whole covered with tissue paper; the grey patch then appears to be reddish, that is, of the colour complementary to green. Helmholtz regarded such phenomena as the result of false judgment, and not of changes in excitability of the different parts of the retina.* It certainly appears easier to explain contrast by the Hering theory; excitation by one colour induces an opposite metabolic process in neighbouring areas of the retina; if two stimuli of opposite character are presented simultaneously side by side, the contrast effect will be most marked. In the experiment with tissue paper, the greater part of the retina is being excited by green, and the part of the retina stimulated by the feeble white light from the grey paper will undergo the opposite change and produce a sensation of red.

* By "retina" here and elsewhere we mean "cerebro-retinal apparatus." We have no knowledge of the precise share of retina and brain in the development of visual sensations and after-sensations.

Binocular colour-mixture.—By means of the stereoscope, binocular combinations of colour can be obtained. Thus, if one eye is exposed to a red disc, and the corresponding portion of the other eye to a yellow one, the mind usually perceives one disc of an orange tint; but frequently, especially if there be differences of brightness or of form in the two objects, we notice that "rivalry of the fields of vision" occurs, first one then the other disc rising into consciousness. A stereoscopic combination of black and white produces the appearance of metallic lustre; this is very beautifully shown with figures of crystals, one black on a white ground, the other white on a black ground. Probably the combination of black and white is interpreted as indicating a polished surface, because a polished surface reflects rays irregularly so that the two eyes receive stimuli of unequal intensity.

Changes in the Retina during Activity.

The method by which a ray of light is able to stimulate the endings of the optic nerve in the retina in such a manner that a visual sensation is perceived by the cerebrum, is not yet understood. It is supposed that the change effected by the agency of the light which falls upon the retina is in fact a chemical alteration in the protoplasm, and that this change stimulates the optic nerve-endings. The discovery of a certain temporary reddish-purple pigmentation of the outer limbs of the retinal rods in certain animals (*e.g.*, frogs) which had been killed in the dark, forming the so-called *rhodopsin or visual purple*, appeared likely to offer some explanation of the matter, especially as it was also found that the pigmentation disappeared when the retina was exposed to light, and reappeared when the light was removed, and also that it underwent distinct changes of colour when other than white light was used. It was also found that if the operation were performed quickly enough, the bleached image of a bright object (*optogram*) might be fixed on the retina by soaking the retina of an animal which has been killed in the dark, in alum solution.

The rhodopsin is derived in some way from the black pigment (melanin or fuscin) of the polygonal epithelium of the retina, since the colour is not renewed after bleaching, if the retina is detached from its pigment layer.

Certain pigments, not sensitive to light, are contained in the inner segments of the cones. These are oil globules of various colours, red, green, and yellow, called *chromophanes*, and are found in the retinæ of marsupials (but not other mammals), birds, reptiles, and fishes. Nothing is known about the yellow pigment of the yellow spot.

Another change produced by the action of the light upon the

retina is the *movement of the pigment cells.* On being stimulated by light the granules of pigment in the cells which overlie the outer part of the rod and cone layer of the retina pass down into the processes of the cells, which hang down between the rods: these *melanin* or *fuscin* granules are generally rod-shaped, and look almost like crystals. In addition to this, a *movement of the cones* and possibly of the rods occurs, as has been already mentioned; in the light the cones shorten, and in the dark they lengthen (Engelmann).

Dewar and McKendrick were the first to show that the chemical changes in the retina are accompanied with an electrical change.

Red light has no action on visual purple; the maximum bleaching effect takes place in greenish-yellow light. Now, when the living eye is brought into a condition of "dark adaptation," that is, when the retina has become adapted to light of low intensity, the colours of the spectrum alter in brightness; the red end becomes shortened and much darker; the blue end becomes brighter, and the region of maximum brightness is in the green. This change of brightness with change of adaptation is absent in the fovea, where there are no rods. The selective action of the colours of the spectrum on the visual purple is so strikingly similar to the altered conditions of brightness just described, that changes in the visual purple of the rods have been supposed to be the cause of sensations excited by feeble illumination (*i.e.*, in the "dark-adapted" eye), while the cones are affected under more ordinary conditions of illumination. This conclusion gains support from several interesting facts. Visual purple is specially abundant in the retinæ of almost all animals whose habits are nocturnal, or who live underground. Further, if the intensity of a colour stimulus is gradually increased, it at first is too faint to produce any sensation; then it produces a sensation of greyness, and at last the colour itself is seen; the interval between the appearance of the grey or white-black effect and of the true colour effect of the stimulus is spoken of as the "*photo-chromatic interval.*" Red light has no effect on visual purple, and has no photo-chromatic interval (that is, it appears either red or nothing), and according to several observers, there is no such interval at the fovea, where the rods and therefore visual purple, are absent. Thirdly, a very similar effect has been described by M'Dougall, when the retina is momentarily stimulated by a coloured light; the sensation arising from the stimulus is followed by a series of "primary responses" or after-sensations; the first members of the series have the same colour as the stimulus, and these are sometimes followed by a series of colourless (grey) sensations; these grey sensations are only present outside the fovea, and under conditions of "dark adaptation" are absent with red and brightest with green stimuli. Here again we are able to differentiate between a visual-purple (rod) effect, and a cone effect, the former, active under conditions of feeble illumination, affected most by green, and unaffected by red light, and yielding colourless sensations; the latter being more specially concerned in developing sensations of colour under conditions of adaptation to ordinary light. The fovea centralis thus becomes the region where the colours of objects are best distinguishable, and where with ordinary illumination visual acuity is most marked. In the dark, however, extra-foveal (rod) vision is more sensitive than foveal (cone) vision; astronomers see faint stars more readily in the periphery of the field of vision.

Two abnormal conditions may be described here, for they throw light on these phenomena. In cases of *achromatopsia* (total colour blindness) the spectrum is seen as a band of light differing only in brightness; the region of maximum brightness is the same as in extra-foveal vision of the normal eye; in many of these cases there is a central *scotoma* (blind spot), that is, the rodless fovea is blind; there isre duced acuity of vision as in the "dark-adapted" eye, and *photophobia* (fear of strong light); *nystagmus* (oscillating movements of the eye) also occurs, due to absence of an area of distinct vision. We are thus in typical cases of achromatopsia dealing with cases of cone blindness. In *nyctalopia* (night blindness) on the other hand, we meet the converse condition. Here there is an abnormal slowness of "dark adaptation," and

a pathological change known as *retinitis pigmentosa* is present, suggesting an impaired function of the visual purple. Pilocarpine has been found an effective drug in such cases, and this is also interesting because it hastens the regeneration of visual purple in the extirpated eye.

The electrical variations in the retina under the influence of light have been recently reinvestigated by Waller. The excised eyeball of a frog is led off by non-polarisable electrodes to a galvanometer. One electrode is placed on the front, the other on the back of the eye. If the eyeball is quite fresh, a current is observed passing through the eyeball from back to front. When light falls on the eye this current is increased; on shutting off the light there is a momentary further increase, and then the current slowly returns back to its previous condition. Waller explains this by supposing that anabolic changes in the eye predominate during stimulation by light. With the onset of darkness, the katabolic changes cease at once, and the anabolic more slowly; hence a further positive variation.

As already stated, the current in a fresh eyeball passes from back to front before the stimulus is applied, but this cannot be regarded as a true current of rest, but as a current due to previous action which very slowly subsides. When this has subsided, the true current of rest is from cornea to fundus, *i.e.*, it is like that of the skin (see p. 484) ingoing—the response to stimulation is like that of the skin outgoing. Waller has also studied the electrical responses of the eyeball to other methods of stimulation; if electrical currents are employed, and the eyeball is still healthy, the response is always an outgoing current, whatever may be the direction of the electrical current used as the stimulus. These currents of action are no doubt mainly of retinal origin, but later Waller showed that the anterior portions of the eye, especially the crystalline lens, participate in their causation. The response of the eye to non-luminous stimuli lasts some time, and is spoken of as a "blaze current." An analogous response has been seen in skin, plant-tissues, etc.

Gotch has studied the photo-electric changes in the frog's eyeball with the capillary electrometer. He, like Waller, draws attention to the long latent period and sustained character of the response. The photo-electric changes are all monophasic effects, whether produced by illumination, or by shutting off the light. Gotch suggests there are two chemical substances in the retina, one of which reacts to light, the other to darkness. Each reaction is a change of the same type, but for the change to occur markedly, the eye must be previously adapted, *i.e.*, the substances must undergo a phase of metabolism under conditions opposite to those which evoke the reaction effects. Observations with red and green light do not support the view that the photo-chemical changes are of opposite characters, for the photo-electric change is always in the same direction, differing only in period of latency, that for red being the longer.

Movements of the Eyeball

Protrusion of the eyeballs occurs (1) when the blood-vessels of the orbit are congested; (2) when contraction of the plain muscular fibres of the capsule of Tenon takes place; these are innervated by the cervical sympathetic nerve; and (3) in the disease called exophthalmic goitre.

Retraction occurs (1) when the lids are closed forcibly; (2) when the blood-vessels of the orbit are comparatively empty; (3) when the fat in the orbit is reduced in quantity, as during starvation; and (4) on section or paralysis of the cervical sympathetic nerves.

The most important movements, however, are those produced by the six ocular muscles.

The internal rectus turns the eyeball inwards, the external rectus

turns it outwards. If the superior rectus acted alone, it would turn the eyeball not only upwards, but owing to the sloping direction of the muscle, the eyeball would be turned inwards also; in turning the eyeball directly upwards, this inward movement is arrested by the outward tendency of the inferior oblique. Similarly, in turning the eyeball directly downwards, the inferior rectus acts in conjunction with the superior oblique. Movements in intermediate directions are produced by other combinations of the muscles.

These muscles are all supplied by the third nerve except the superior oblique, which is supplied by the fourth and the external rectus by the sixth nerve.

The muscles of the two eyes act simultaneously, so that images of the objects looked at may fall on corresponding points of the two retinæ. The inner side of one retina corresponds to the outer side of the other, so that any movement of one eye inwards must be accompanied by a movement of the other eye outwards. If one eyeball is forcibly fixed by pressing the finger against it so that it cannot follow the movement of the other, the result is double vision (*diplopia*), because the image of the objects looked at will fall on points of the two retinæ which do not correspond. The same is experienced in a squint, until the subject learns to disregard the image from one eye.

If the external rectus is paralysed, the eye will squint inwards; if this occurs in the right eye the false image will lie on the left side of the yellow spot, and appear in the field of vision to the right of the true image. If the third nerve is paralysed, the case is a more complicated one: owing to the paralysis of the levator palpebræ superioris, the patient will be unable to raise his upper lid (*ptosis*), and so in order to see will walk with his chin in the air. If the paralysis is on the right side, the eyeball will squint downwards and to the right; the false image will be formed below and to the right of the yellow spot, and the apparent image in the field of vision will consequently appear above and to the left of the true image, and owing to the squint being an oblique one, the false image will slant in a corresponding direction.

Various Positions of the Eyeballs.

All the movements of the eyeball take place around the *point of rotation*, which is situated 1·77 mm. behind the centre of the visual axis, or 10·9 mm. behind the front of the cornea.

The three axes around which the movements occur are:—

1. The *visual* or antero-posterior axis. (A P, fig. 595).

2. The *transverse* axis, which connects the points of rotation of the two eyes. (Tr, fig. 595).

3. The *vertical* axis, which passes at right angles to the other two axes through their point of intersection.

The line which connects the fixed point in the outer world at which the eye is looking to the point of rotation is called the *visual*

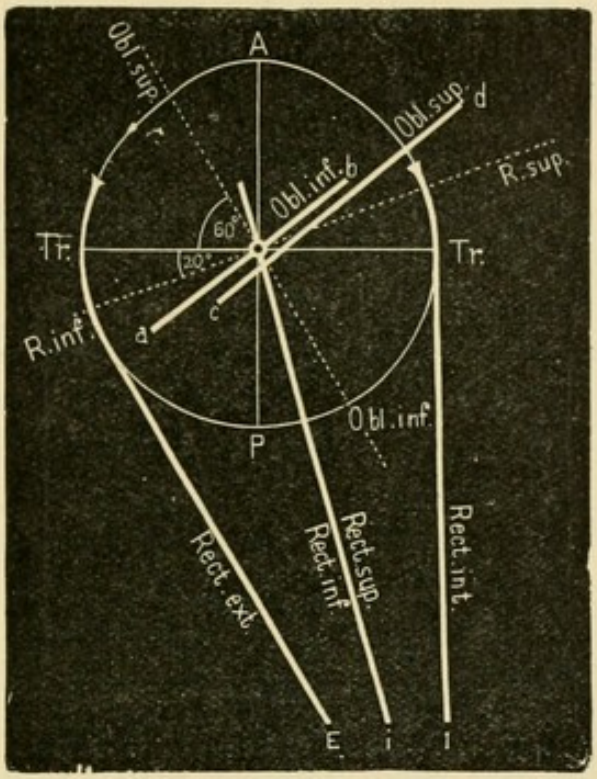


FIG. 595.—Diagram of the axes of rotation to the eye. The thin lines indicate axes of rotation, the thick the position of muscular attachment.

line. The plane which passes through the two visual lines is called the *visual plane.*

The various positions of the eyeballs are designated primary, secondary, and tertiary.

The *primary* position occurs when both eyes are parallel, the visual lines being horizontal (as in looking at the horizon).

Secondary positions are of two kinds:—

(1) The visual lines are parallel, but directed either upwards or downwards from the horizontal (as in looking at the sky).

(2) The visual lines are horizontal, but converge towards one another (as in looking at a small object near to and on the same level as the eyes).

Tertiary positions are those in which the visual lines are not horizontal, and converge towards one another (as in looking at the tip of the nose).

It is possible to conceive positions of the eyeballs in which the visual lines diverge from one another; but such positions do not occur in normal vision in man.

Both eyes are moved simultaneously, even if one of them

happens to be blind. They are moved so that the object in the outer world is focussed on the two yellow spots, or other corresponding points of the two retinæ. The images which do not fall on corresponding points are seen double, but these are to a great extent disregraded by the brain, which pays particular attention to those images which fall on corresponding points.

The accompanying diagrams will assist us in understanding what is meant by *corresponding* or *identical* points of the two retinæ.

If R and L (fig. 596) represent the right and left retinæ respectively, O and O′ the two yellow spots are identical; so are A

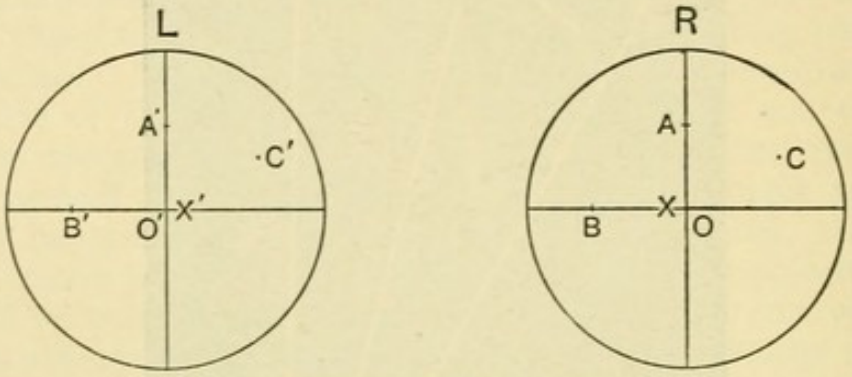


Fig. 596.—Identical points of the retinæ.

and A′, both being the same distance above O and O′. But the corresponding point to B on the inner side of O in the right retina, is B′, a point to the same distance on the outer side of O′ in the left retina; similarly C and C′ are identical. The two blind spots X and X′ are not identical.

Fig. 597 shows the same thing in rather a different way; A and B represent horizontal sections through the two retinæ; the points a a′, b b′, and c c′, being identical. In the lower part of the diagram is shown the way in which the brain combines the images in the two retinæ, one overlapping so as to coincide with the other.

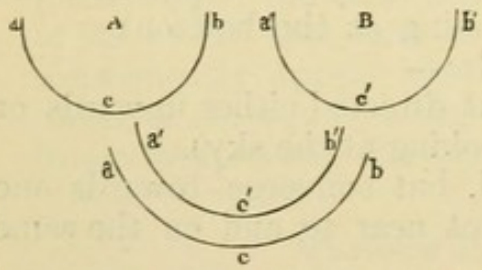


Fig. 597.—Diagram to show the corresponding parts of both retinæ.

The *Horopter* is the name given to the surface in the outer world which contains all the points which fall on the identical points of the retinæ. The shape of the horopter will vary with the position of the eyeballs. In the primary position, and in the first variety of the secondary position, the visual lines are parallel; hence the horopter will be a plane at an infinite distance.

In the other variety of the secondary position, and in tertiary

positions in which the visual lines converge, as when looking at a near object, the horopter is a circle (fig. 598) which passes through the nodal points of the two eyes, and through the fixed point (I) in the outer world at which the eyes are looking, and which will consequently fall on the two yellow spots (O and O′). All other points in this circle (II, III) will fall on identical points of the retinæ. The image of II will fall on A and A′; of III on B and B′; it is a simple mathematical problem to prove that OA = O′A′, and OB = O′B′.

In those animals in which the eyes are lateral in position, and the visual lines diverge, the problem of binocular vision is a very different one (see also p. 727).

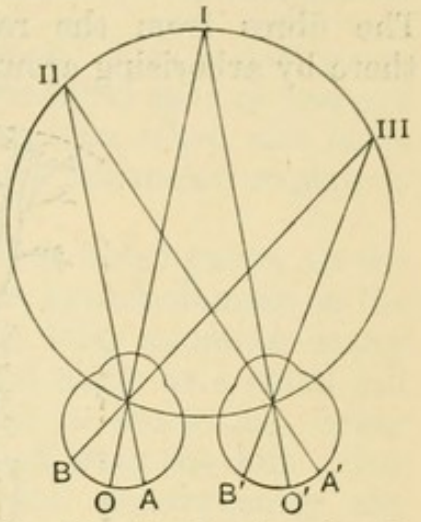


FIG. 598.—The Horopter, when the eyes are convergent.

Nervous Paths in the Optic Nerves.

The correspondence of the two retinæ and of the movements of the eyeballs is produced by a close connection of the nervous centres controlling these phenomena, and by the arrangement of the nerve-fibres in the optic nerves. The crossing of the nerve-fibres at the optic chiasma is incomplete, and the next diagram (fig. 599) gives a simple idea of the way the fibres go.

It will be seen that it is only the fibres from the inner portions of the retinæ that cross; and that those represented by continuous lines from the right side of the two retinæ ultimately reach the right hemisphere, and those represented by interrupted lines from the left side of the two retinæ ultimately reach the left hemisphere. The two halves of the retinæ are not, however, separated by a hard-and-fast line from one another; this is represented by the two halves being depicted as slightly overlapping, and this comes to the same thing as saying that the central region of each retina is represented in each hemisphere.

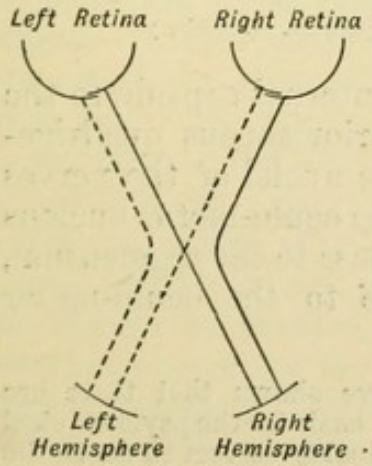


FIG. 599.—Course of fibres at optic chiasma.

The part of the hemisphere concerned in vision is the occipital lobe, and the reader should turn back to our previous consideration of this subject in connection with cerebral localisation, the phenomena of hemianopsia (p. 703) and the conjugate deviation of head and eyes (pp. 703, 717).

Fig. 600, though diagrammatic, will assist the reader in more fully comprehending the paths of visual impulses, and the central connections of the nerves and nerve-centres concerned in the process. The fibres from the retina to the external geniculate body end there by arborising around its cells, and a fresh relay of fibres from

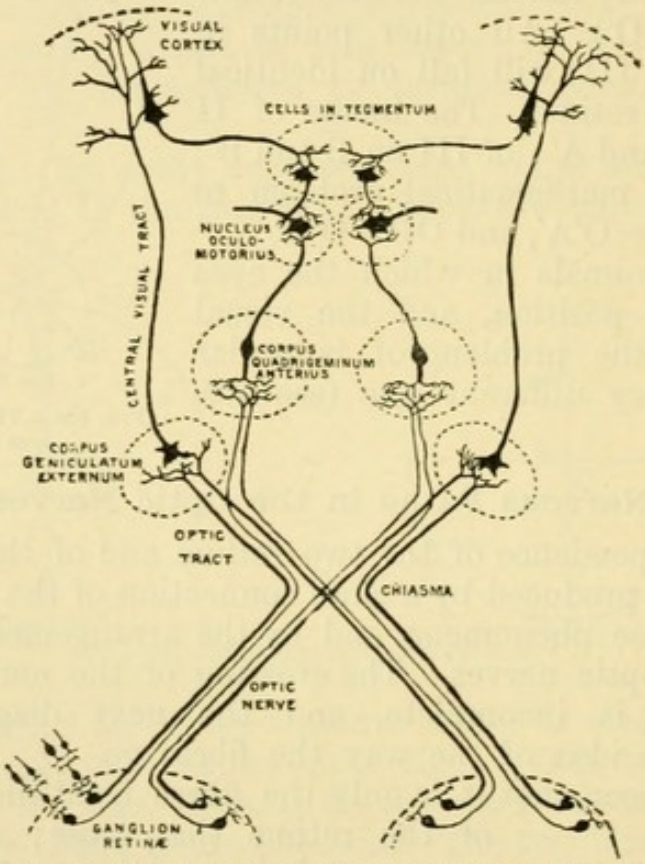


FIG. 600.—Relations of nerve cells and fibres of visual apparatus. (Schäfer.)

these cells passes in the posterior part of the internal capsule to the cortex of the occipital lobe. Those to the anterior corpus quadrigeminum are continued on by a fresh relay to the nuclei of the nerves concerned in eye-movements (represented by the oculo-motor nucleus in the diagram); the axons of the cortical cells pass to the tegmentum, whence a fresh relay continues the impulse to the oculo-motor nucleus.

Sherrington's observations on binocular flicker have shown that there are difficulties in accepting fig. 600 as a complete anatomical basis for the psychological processes involved in binocular vision, although it is probably correct so far as the motor mechanisms involved are concerned.

Visual Judgments.

The psychical or mental processes which constitute the visual sensation proper have been studied to a far greater degree than is possible in connection with other forms of sensation.

We have already seen that in spite of the reversion of the image in the retina, the mind sees objects in their proper position; this is explained on p. 792.

We are also not conscious of the blind spot. This is partly due to the fact that those images which fall on the blind spot of one eye are not focussed there in the other eye. But even when one looks at objects with one eye, there is no blank, for the reason explained on p. 802.

Our estimate of the size of various objects is based partly on the visual angle (p. 791) under which they are seen, but much more on the estimate we form of their distance. Thus a lofty mountain many miles off may be seen under the same visual angle as a small hill near at hand, but we infer that the former is much the larger object because we know it is much farther off than the hill. Our estimate of distance is often erroneous, and consequently the estimate of size also. Thus persons seen walking on the top of a small hill against a clear twilight sky appear unusually large, because we over-estimate their distance, and for similar reasons most objects in a fog appear immensely magnified. The same mental process gives rise to the idea of depth in the field of vision; this idea is fixed in our mind principally by the circumstance that, as we ourselves move forwards, different images in succession become depicted on our retina, so that we seem to pass between these images, which to the mind is the same thing as passing between the objects themselves.

The action of the sense of vision in relation to external objects is, therefore, quite different from that of the sense of touch. The objects of the latter sense are immediately present to it; and our own body, with which they come in contact, is the measure of their size. The part of a table touched by the hand appears as large as the part of the hand receiving an impression from it, for the part of our body in which a sensation is excited, is here the measure by which we judge of the magnitude of the object. In the sense of vision, on the contrary, the images of objects are mere fractions of the objects themselves, realised upon the retina, the extent of which remains constantly the same. But the imagination, which analyses the sensations of vision, invests the images of objects, together with the whole field of vision in the retina, with very varying dimensions; the relative size of the image in proportion to the whole field of vision, or of the affected parts of the retina to the whole retina, alone remains unaltered.

The estimation of the form of bodies by sight is the result partly of the mere sensation, and partly of the association of ideas. Since the form of the images perceived by the retina depends wholly on the outline of the part of the retina affected, the sensation alone is

adequate to the distinction of superficial forms from each other, as of a square from a circle. But the idea of a solid body like a sphere, or a cube, can only be attained by the action of the mind constructing it from the different superficial images seen in different positions of the eye with regard to the object, and, as shown by Wheatstone and illustrated in the *stereoscope*, from two different perspective projections of the object being presented simultaneously to the mind by the two eyes.

Thus, if a cube is held at a moderate distance before the eyes, and viewed with each eye successively while the head is kept perfectly steady, A (fig. 601) will be the picture presented to the right eye, and B that seen by the left eye. Wheatstone has shown that on this circumstance depends in a great measure our conviction of the solidity of an object, or of its projection in relief. If different

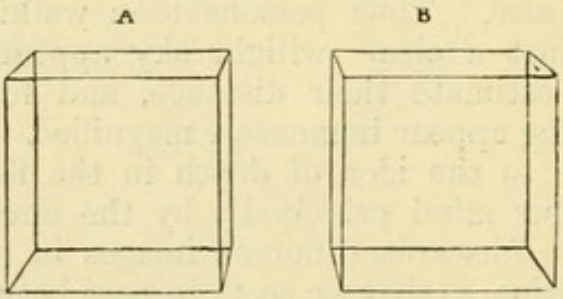


FIG. 601.—Diagrams to illustrate how a judgment of a figure of three dimensions is obtained.

perspective drawings of a solid body, one representing the image seen by the right eye, the other that seen by the left (for example, the drawing of a cube, A, B, fig. 601) be presented to corresponding parts of the two retinæ, as may be readily done by means of the stereoscope, the mind will perceive not merely a single representation of the object, but a body projecting in relief, the exact counterpart of that from which the drawings were made.

By transposing two stereoscopic pictures a reverse effect is produced; the elevated parts appear to be depressed, and *vice versâ*. An instrument contrived with this purpose is termed a *pseudoscope*. Viewed with this instrument a bust appears as a hollow mask, and as may readily be imagined the effect is most bewildering.

The clearness with which the details of an object is perceived irrespective of accommodation, would appear to depend largely on the number of rods and cones which its retinal image covers. Hence the nearer an object is to the eye (within moderate limits) the more clearly are all its details seen. Further, if we want carefully to examine any object, we always direct the eyes straight to it, so that its image shall fall on the two yellow spots, where an image of a given area will cover a larger number of cones than anywhere else

in the retina. Moreover, as previously pointed out, each cone in the macula lutea is connected to a separate chain of neurons.

The importance of binocular vision is very great. If an object is looked at with one eye only, it is impossible to estimate its distance by the sense of vision alone. For instance, if one eye is closed and the other looks at a wire or bar, it is impossible to tell

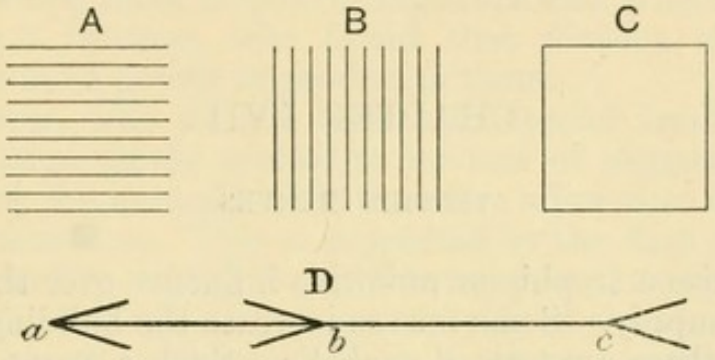


FIG. 602.—Diagrams to illustrate visual illusions.

whether, if some one drops a small object, it falls in front of or behind the bar.

Visual judgments are not always correct; there are a large number of puzzles and toys which depend on visual illusions. One or two of the best known are represented in the accompanying diagrams.

In fig. 602, A, B, and C are of the same size; but A looks taller than B, while C appears to cover a less area than either. The sub-

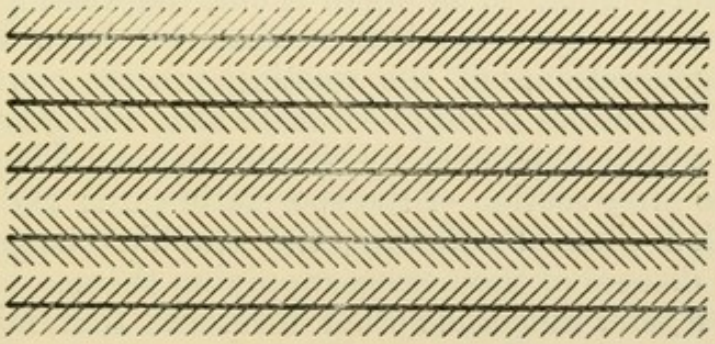


FIG. 603.—Parallel puzzle.

division of a space or line increases its apparent size or length. In fig. 602 D, *ab* is equal to *bc*. Vertical distances also are usually over-estimated. In fig. 603, the horizontal lines are parallel, though they do not appear so, owing to the mind being distracted by the intercrossing lines.

CHAPTER LVII

TROPHIC NERVES

NERVES exercise a trophic or nutritive influence over the tissues and organs they supply. Some nerves increase the building-up stage of metabolism; these are termed anabolic. Such a nerve is the vagus in reference to the heart; when it is stimulated the heart beats more slowly or may stop, and is thus enabled to rest and repair its waste. The opposite kind of nerves (katabolic) are those which lead to increase of work, and so increased wear and tear and formation of waste products. Such a nerve in reference to the heart is the sympathetic.

There has been considerable diversity of opinion as to whether trophic nerve-fibres are a distinct anatomical set of nerve-fibres, or whether all nerves in addition to their other functions exercise a trophic influence.

When a nerve going to an organ is cut, the wasting of the nerve itself beyond the cut constitutes what we have learnt to call Wallerian degeneration, but the wasting process continues beyond the nerve; the muscles it supplies waste also, and waste much more rapidly than can be explained by simple disuse. The same is seen in the testicle after section of the spermatic cord; and in the disease of joints called Charcot's disease, the trophic changes are to be explained by disease of the nerves supplying them.

From these, and numerous other instances that might be given, there is no question that nerves do exert a trophic influence; the question, however, whether this is due to special nerve-fibres has been chiefly worked out in connection with the fifth cranial nerve.

After the division of this nerve there is loss of sensation in the corresponding side of the face: the cornea in two or three days begins to get opaque, and this is followed by a slow inflammatory process which may lead to a destruction not only of the cornea, but of the whole eyeball. The same is seen in man; when the fifth nerve is diseased or pressed upon by a tumour beyond the Gasserian

ganglion, the result is loss of sensation in the face and conjunctiva, an eruption (*herpes*) appears on the face, and ulceration of the cornea leading in time to disintegration of the eyeball may occur too. In disease such as hæmorrhage in the spinal ganglia there is a similar herpetic eruption on the skin (*shingles*).

In the case of the fifth nerve the evidence that there are special nerve-fibres to which these trophic changes are due, is an experiment by Meissner and Büttner, who found that division of the most internal fibres is most potent in producing them.

Those, however, who do not believe in special trophic nerves, attribute the changes in the eyeball to its loss of sensation. Dust, etc., is not felt by the cornea, and is therefore allowed to accumulate and set up inflammation. This is supported by the fact that if the eyeball is protected by sewing the eyelids together the trophic results do not ensue. On the other hand, in paralysis of the seventh nerve, the eyeball is much more exposed, and yet no trophic disorders follow.

Others have attributed the change to increased vascularity due to disordered vaso-motor changes; against this is the fact that in disease of the cervical sympathetic, the disordered vaso-motor phenomena which ensue do not lead to the disorders of nutrition we have described. Nevertheless in trophic disorders, it is very difficult to be sure that the disordered metabolism is not in part due to vascular disturbances.

There can, therefore, be but little doubt that we have to deal with the trophic influence of nerves;* but the dust, etc., which falls on the cornea must be regarded as the *exciting* cause of the ulceration. The division or disease of the nerve acts as the *predisposing* cause. The eyeball is more than usually prone to undergo inflammatory changes, with very small provocation.

The same explanation holds in the case of the influence of the vagi on the lungs. If both these nerves are divided, the animal usually dies within a week or a fortnight from a form of pneumonia called *vagus pneumonia*, in which gangrene of the lung substance is a marked characteristic. Here the predisposing cause is the division of the trophic fibres in the pneumogastric nerves; the exciting cause is the entrance of particles of food into the air passages, which on account of the loss of sensation in the larynx and neighbouring parts are not coughed up. Another trophic disturbance that follows division of the vagi is fatty degeneration of the heart.

Many bedsores are due to prolonged confinement in bed with bad nursing; these are of slow onset. But there is one class of bedsores which are acute; these are especially met with in cases of

* The proof, however, that there are distinct nerve-fibres anatomically is not very conclusive.

paralysis, due to disease of the spinal cord; they come on in three or four days after the onset of the paralysis in spite of the most careful attention; they cannot be explained by vaso-motor disturbance, nor by loss of sensation; there is, in fact, no doubt they are of trophic origin; the nutrition of the skin is so greatly impaired that the mere contact of it with the bed for a few days is sufficient to act as the exciting cause of the sore.

It will be noticed that in some instances of trophic disorder the nerves which are injured are efferent; the muscular wasting that occurs when a muscular nerve is cut is the best marked example of this. In nerve itself Wallerian degeneration follows the direction of growth, which, as a rule, is the direction in which the nerve transmits impulses. The acute Wallerian change does not actually leap synapses, still the trophic influence of one set of neurons upon a second set among which the axons of the first set terminate is shown by a slow wasting process, of which chromatolysis is an early visible sign. In the peripheral axons of the cells of the spinal and corresponding cranial ganglia, the trophic disorder follows a peripheral direction, while impulses are carried in the opposite or afferent direction. The trophic influence here travels against the stream of impulse. It cannot fail to be a striking fact that the most marked trophic disorders with which we are acquainted, herpes, acute bedsores, Charcot's disease, eye changes after division or injury to the fifth nerve, vagus pneumonia, etc., are due to interference with sensory channels. Loss of sensation is the great predisposing cause of nutritive mischief.

CHAPTER LVIII

THE REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS

THE reproductive organs consist in the male of the two testes which produce spermatozoa, and the ducts which lead from them,



FIG. 604.—Plan of a vertical section of the testicle, showing the arrangement of the ducts. The true length and diameter of the ducts have been disregarded. *a a*, Tubuli seminiferi coiled up in the separate lobes; *b*, tubuli recti; *c*, rete testis; *d*, vasa efferentia ending in the coni vasculosi; *l*, *e*, *g*, convoluted canal of the epididymis; *h*, vas deferens; *f*, section of the back part of the tunica albuginea; *i i*, fibrous processes running between the lobes; *s*, mediastinum.

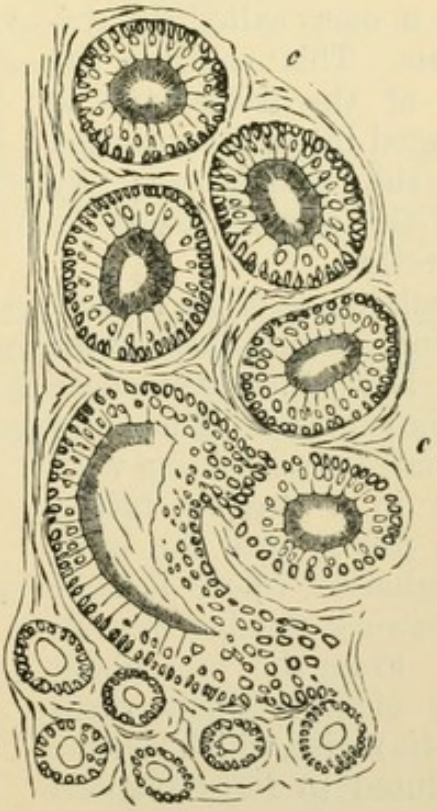


FIG. 605.—Section of the epididymis of a dog.—The tube is cut in several places, both transversely and obliquely; it is seen to be lined by a ciliated epithelium, the nuclei of which are well shown. *c*, Connective tissue. (Schofield.)

and in the female of the two ovaries which produce ova, the Fallopian tubes or oviducts, the uterus, and the vagina.

Male Organs

The testis is enclosed in a serous membrane called the *tunica vaginalis*, originally a part of the peritoneum, which descends into the scrotum before the testis and subsequently gets entirely cut off from the remainder of the peritoneum. There are, however, many animals in which the testes remain permanently in the abdomen. The external covering of the testicle itself is a strong fibrous capsule, called, on account of its white appearance, the *tunica albuginea*. Passing from its inner surface are a number of septa or trabeculæ, which divide the organ imperfectly into lobules. On the posterior aspect of the organ the capsule is greatly thickened, and forms a mass of fibrous tissue called the *Corpus Highmorianum* (body of Highmore) or *mediastinum testis*. Attached to this is a much convoluted tube, which forms a mass called the *epididymis*. This receives the ducts of the testis, and is prolonged into a thick walled tube, the *vas deferens*, by which the semen passes to the urethra.

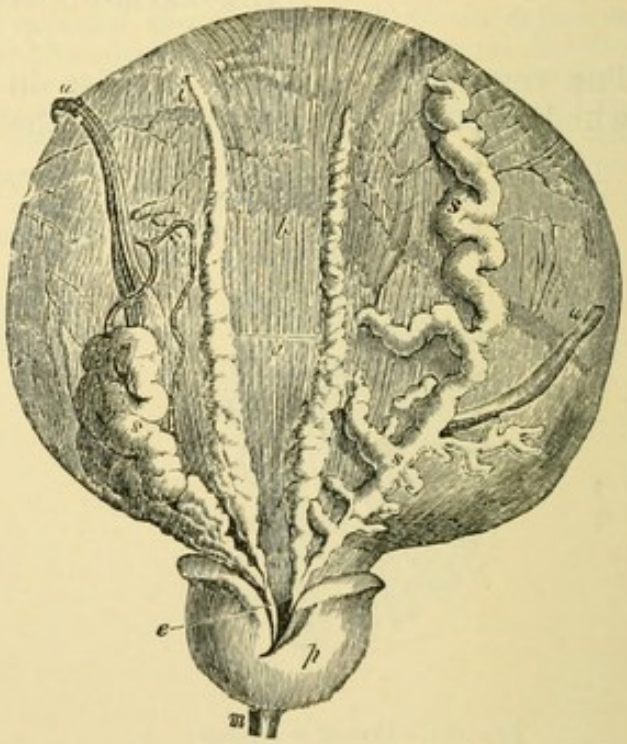


Fig. 606.—Dissection of the base of the bladder and prostate gland, showing the vesiculæ seminales and vasa deferentia. *a*, Lower surface of the bladder at the place of reflexion of the peritoneum; *b*, the part above covered by the peritoneum; *i*, left vas deferens, ending in *e*, the ejaculatory duct; the vas deferens has been divided near *i*, and all except the vesical portion has been taken away; *s*, left vesicula seminalis joining the same duct; *s s*, the right vas deferens and right vesicula seminalis, which has been unravelled; *p*, under side of the prostate gland; *m*, part of the urethra; *u u*, the ureters (cut short), the right one turned aside. (Haller.)

Each lobule of the testicle contains several *convoluted* tubes. Every tube commences near the tunica albuginea, and terminates after joining with others in a *straight tubule*, which passes into the body of Highmore, where it ends in a network of tubes, the *rete testis*. From the rete about fifteen efferent ducts (*vasa efferentia*) arise, which become convoluted to form the *coni vasculosi*, and then pass into the tube of the epididymis.

The *convoluted* or seminiferous tubes (fig. 607) have the following structure: each consists of (1) an outer boundary of flattened connective tissue cells intermingled with elastic fibres; (2) a fine membrana propria; (3) a lining epithelium of many layers of germinal cells. Next to the membrana propria is a layer of cells, some of which are prim-

ordial germinal cells, others are *spermatogonia* produced from the primordial germinal cells, but differing from them in structure, and the remainder are supporting or nurse cells which provide nutriment for the developing spermatozoa. More internally, between the

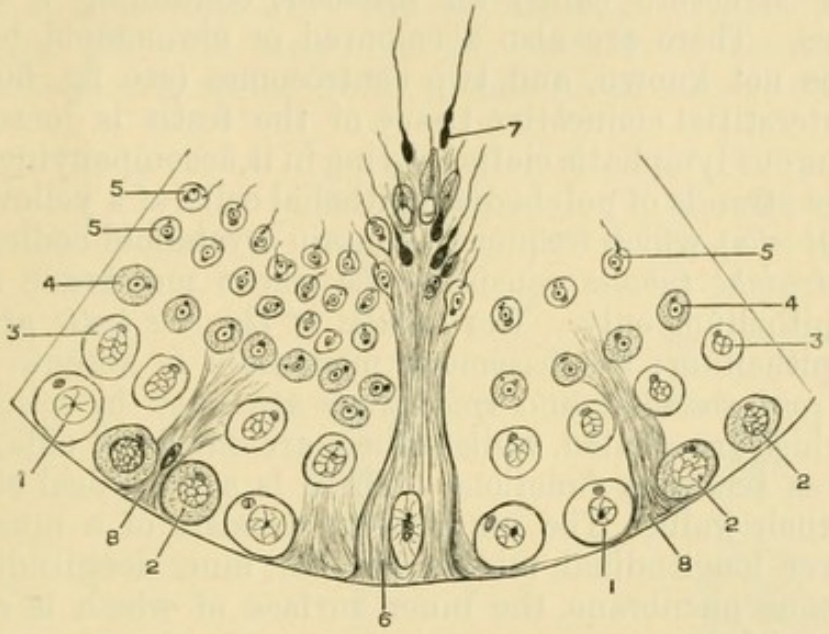


FIG. 607.—Diagram of a portion of a seminal tubule showing development of spermatozoa. 1, Primitive germ cell; 2, spermatogonia; 3, spermatocysts of the first order; 4, spermatocysts of the second order; 5, spermatids, some with commencement of axial filament; 6, a nurse cell with spermatids and spermatozoa in various stages of development; 7, free spermatozoa in lumen of tube; 8, portions of nurse cells. (After Waldeyer.)

projecting processes of the nurse cells, are large *spermatocysts* of the first order, derived from the spermatogonia by karyokinesis and growth. Still nearer the lumen of the tube lie the spermatocysts of the second order, which are the daughter-cells of the spermato-

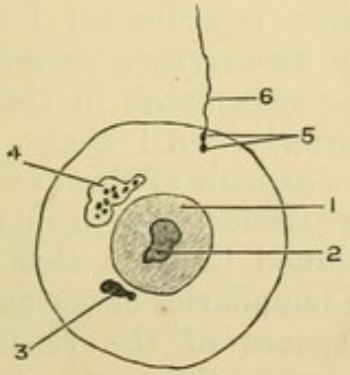


FIG. 608.—A spermatid largely magnified. 1, nucleus; 2, nucleolus; 3, chromatoid body; 4, idiosome; 5, centrosomes; 6, commencement of axial filament. (After Meves.)

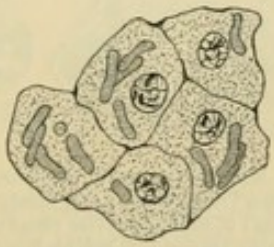


FIG. 609.—Cells of the interstitial tissue of the testis with crystalloid bodies.

cysts of the first order, and the spermatocysts of the second order give rise by division to the *spermatids* which lie next the lumen.

The spermatids become embedded in the inner ends of the nurse cells, where they lose their distinct cellular characters and become converted into spermatozoa. Every spermatid consists of a cell body and a nucleus with a nucleolus. In the cell body near the nucleus is another structure called an *idiosome*, containing a number of microsomes. There are also a coloured or chromatoid body whose function is not known, and two centrosomes (see fig. 608).

The interstitial connective tissue of the testis is loose, and contains numerous lymphatic clefts. Lying in it, accompanying the blood-vessels, are strands of polyhedral epithelial cells, of a yellowish colour (*interstitial cells*), which frequently contain crystalloid bodies (fig. 609).

The *straight tubules* consist of basement membrane and lining cubical epithelium only. The *tubules of the rete testis* are lined by cubical epithelium; the basement membrane is absent. The *vasa efferentia*, *coni vasculosi*, and *epididymis* are lined by columnar cells, some of which are ciliated, whilst others are devoid of cilia, and probably possess secretory functions. There is a good deal of muscular tissue in their walls. The *vas deferens* consists of a muscular wall (outer layer longitudinal, middle circular, inner longitudinal), lined by a mucous membrane, the inner surface of which is covered by columnar epithelium.

The *vesiculæ seminales* (fig. 606) are outgrowths of the vasa deferentia. Each is a much convoluted, branched, and sacculated tube of structure similar to that of the vas deferens, except that the wall is thinner, and the lining epithelium is often of transitional character.

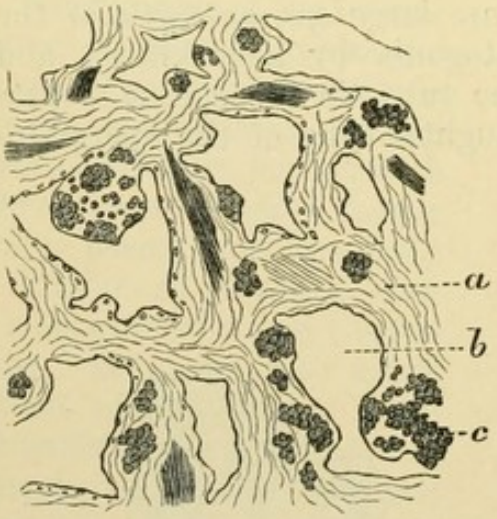


FIG. 610.—Erectile tissue of the human penis. *a*, Fibrous trabeculæ with their ordinary capillaries; *b*, section of the venous sinuses; *c*, muscular tissue. (Cadiat.)

The *penis* is composed of cavernous tissue covered by skin. The cavernous tissue is collected into three tracts, the two *corpora cavernosa* and the *corpus spongiosum* in the middle line inferiorly. All these are enclosed in a capsule of fibrous and plain muscular tissue; the septa which are continued in from this capsule, form the boundaries of the cavernous venous spaces of the tissue. The arteries run in the septa; the capillaries open into the venous spaces. The arteries are often called *helicine*, as in injected specimens they form twisted loops projecting into the cavernous spaces (see also p. 313). The structure of the urethra and prostate is described on pp. 551-553.

The Spermatozoa, suspended in a richly albuminous fluid, con-

stitute the semen. Each spermatozoon consists of a head, a very short neck, a body, a tail, and an end-piece. The head is of flattened ovoid shape, and in the anterior two-thirds of its extent is surmounted by a head-cap which, sharpened at its extremity, forms a cutting edge. The neck is very short, but contains two centrosomes. The body is about the same length as the head; it is traversed by an axial filament and a spiral fibril wound round the sheath of the

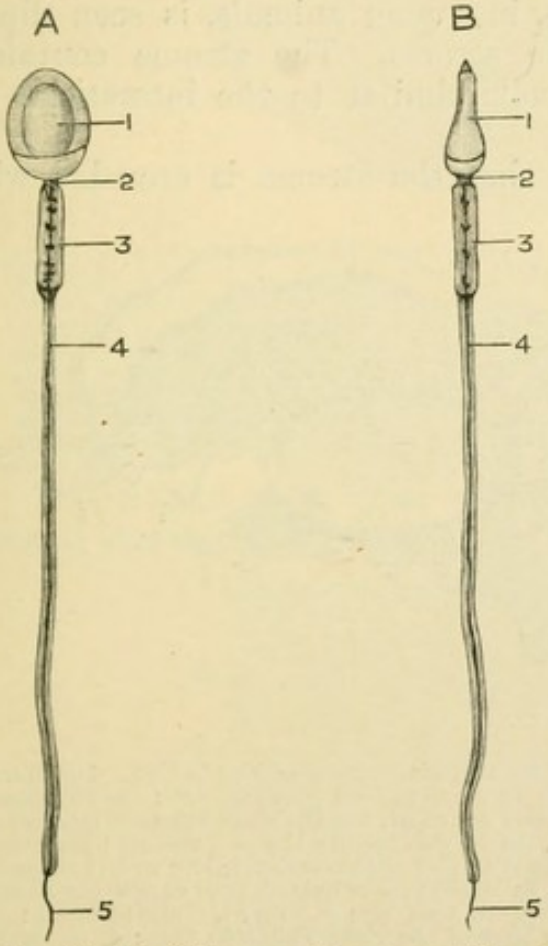


FIG. 611.—Semi-diagrammatic representation of human spermatozoa. A, Front view; B, side view. 1, Head cap surrounding head; 2, neck; 3, body; 4, tail; 5, end-piece. The axial filament runs through the body and tail into the end-piece.

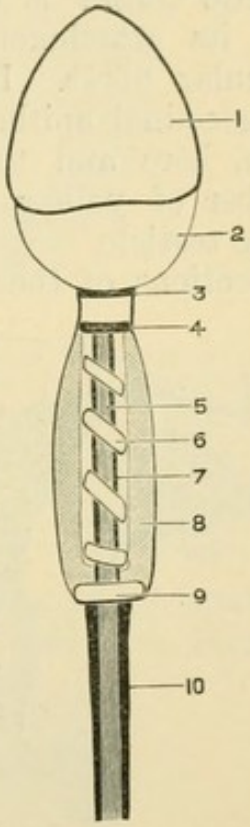


FIG. 612.—Diagram of part of a human spermatozoon highly magnified (after Meves). 1, Head cap; 2, head; 3, anterior centrosome in neck; 4, posterior centrosome in neck; 5, axial filament; 6, spiral sheath; 7, sheath of axial filament in body; 8, mitochondrial sheath; 9, annulus; 10, thick sheath of axial filament in tail.

axial filament. More externally is a layer of punctiform substance called the mitochondrial sheath, which terminates at the junction with the tail on an annular disc. The axial filament is continued through the tail into the end-piece, and in the tail is surrounded by thick sheath. In some animals, newts and salamanders, the tail is surrounded by a spiral membrane, but this is not present in the human spermatozoon. The head of the

spermatozoon is formed from the nucleus of the spermatid, the head-cap from the idiosome; the centrosomes of the spermatid pass to the neck, and the cytoplasm of the spermatid is transformed into the parts of the body and tail of the spermatozoon.

Female Organs

The Ovary is composed of fibrous tissue (stroma) containing, near its attachment to the broad ligament, a number of plain muscular fibres. It is covered by a layer of cubical cells, called the germinal epithelium, which, in young animals, is seen dipping down, here and there, into the stroma. The stroma contains a number of yellow polyhedral cells similar to the interstitial cells of the testicle.

Sections of the ovary show that the stroma is crowded with a

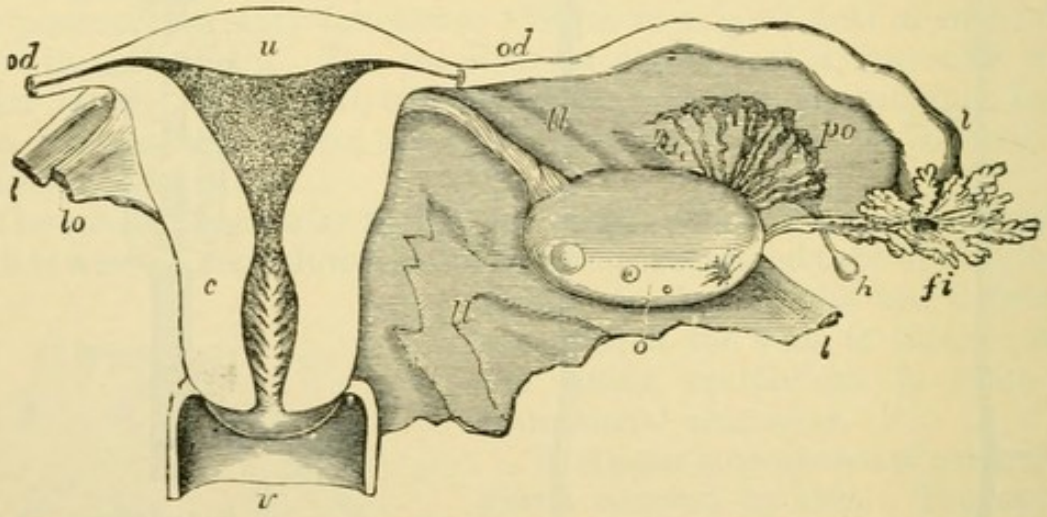


Fig. 613.—Diagrammatic view of the uterus and its appendages, as seen from behind. The uterus and upper part of the vagina have been laid open by removing the posterior wall; the Fallopian tube, round ligament, and ovarian ligament have been cut short, and the broad ligament removed on the left side; *u*, the upper part of the uterus; *c*, the cervix opposite the os internum; the triangular shape of the uterine cavity is shown, and the dilatation of the cervical cavity with the rugæ termed arbor vitæ; *v*, upper part of the vagina; *od*, Fallopian tube or oviduct; the narrow communication of its cavity with that of the cornu of the uterus on each side is seen; *l*, round ligament; *lo*, ligament of the ovary; *o*, ovary; *i*, wide outer part of the right Fallopian tube; *fi*, its fimbriated extremity; *po*, parovarium; *h*, one of the hydatids frequently found connected with the broad ligament. ½. (Allen Thomson.)

number of rounded cells, the *oocytes*, derived from primitive germ cells, which, in the early stages, were intermingled with the cells of the germinal epithelium. There are also numerous vesicles of different sizes which are called *Graafian follicles*. The smallest follicles are near the surface, the largest are deeply placed, but as they expand they again approach the surface, and ultimately rupture upon it.

A Graafian follicle has an external wall formed by the stroma; this is lined internally by a layer of cells, derived from the germinal epithelium, which surrounds the oocyte. At a later stage there are

two layers of cells, one lining the cavity, and the other surrounding the oocyte, but the two are close together. A viscid fluid collects between the two, and as the follicle grows, separates them.

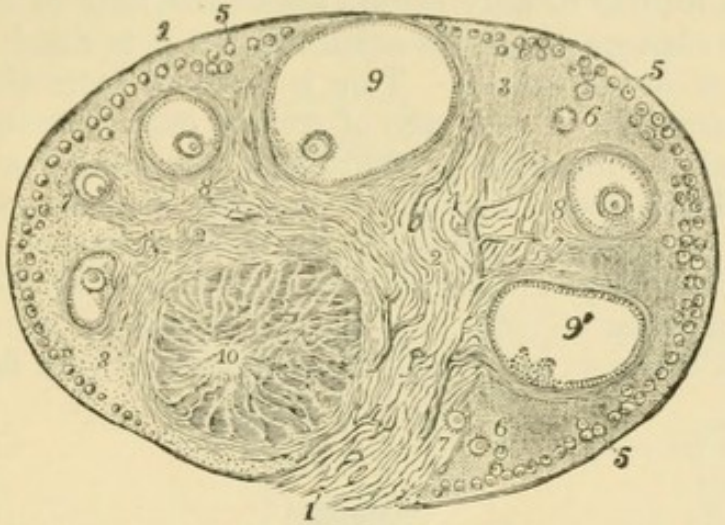


FIG. 614.—View of a section of the ovary of the cat. 1, Outer covering and free border of the ovary; 1', attached border; 2, the ovarian stroma, presenting a fibrous and vascular structure; 3, granular substance lying external to the fibrous stroma; 4, blood-vessels; 5, ovigerms in their earliest stages occupying a part of the granular layer near the surface; 6, ovigerms which have begun to enlarge and to pass more deeply into the ovary; 7, ovigerms round which the Graafian follicle and tunica granulosa are now formed, and which have passed somewhat deeper into the ovary and are surrounded by the fibrous stroma; 8, more advanced Graafian follicle with the ovum imbedded in the layer of cells constituting the proligerous disc; 9, the most advanced follicle containing the ovum, etc.; 9', a follicle from which the ovum has accidentally escaped; 10, corpus luteum. (Schrön.)

The cells in each layer multiply, and are eventually arranged in several strata. The lining epithelium of the follicle is then called

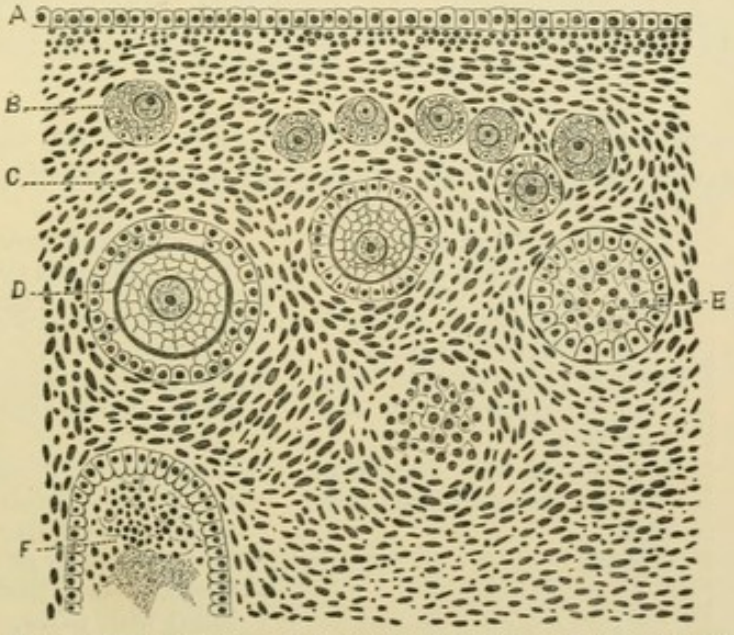


FIG. 615.—Section of the ovary of a cat. A, germinal epithelium; B, immature Graafian follicle; C, stroma of ovary; D, zona pellucida containing the ovum; E, Graafian follicle showing lining cells; F, follicle from which the ovum has fallen out. (V. D. Harris.)

the *membrana granulosa*, and the heaped mass of cells around the ovum, the *discus proligerus*. The fluid increases in quantity, the

follicle becomes tenser, and finally it reaches the surface of the organ and bursts; the ovum is thus set free, and is seized by the fringed ends of the Fallopian tube and thence passes to the uterus. The bursting of a follicle usually occurs about the time of menstruation.

After the rupture of the Graafian follicle, it is filled up with what is known as a *corpus luteum*. This is derived from the wall of the follicle, and consists of columns of yellow cells developed from the yellow cells of the membrana granulosa; it contains a blood-clot in its centre. These cells multiply, and their strands get folded and converge to a central strand of connective tissue; between the columns there are septa of connective tissue with blood-vessels. The corpus luteum after a time gradually disappears; but if pregnancy supervenes it becomes larger and more persistent (see fig. 616). The

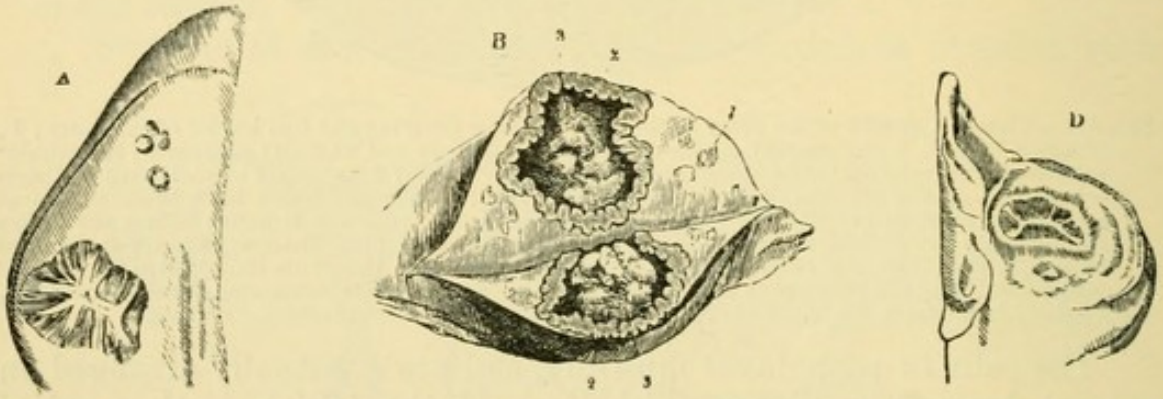


FIG. 616.—Corpora lutea of different periods. B, Corpus luteum of about the sixth week after impregnation, showing its plicated form at that period. 1, Substance of the ovary; 2, substance of the corpus luteum; 3, a greyish coagulum in its cavity. (Paterson.) A, Corpus luteum two days after delivery; D, in the twelfth week after delivery. (Montgomery.)

following table gives the chief facts in the life-history of the ordinary corpus luteum of menstruation, compared with that of pregnancy:—

	Corpus Luteum of Menstruation.	Corpus Luteum of Pregnancy.
At the end of three weeks.	Three-quarters of an inch in diameter; central clot reddish; convoluted wall pale.	
One month .	Smaller; convoluted wall bright yellow; clot still reddish.	Larger; convoluted wall bright yellow; clot still reddish.
Two months .	Reduced to the condition of an insignificant cicatrix.	Seven-eighths of an inch in diameter; convoluted wall bright yellow; clot decolorised.
Six months .	Absent.	Still as large as at end of second month; clot fibrinous; convoluted wall paler.
Nine months.		One half an inch in diameter; central clot converted into a radiating cicatrix; the external wall tolerably thick and convoluted, but without any bright yellow colour.

The corpus luteum possibly yields an internal secretion, the effect of which is to assist gestation in some at present unknown way.

Many Graafian follicles never burst; they attain a certain degree of maturity even during childhood, and then atrophy.

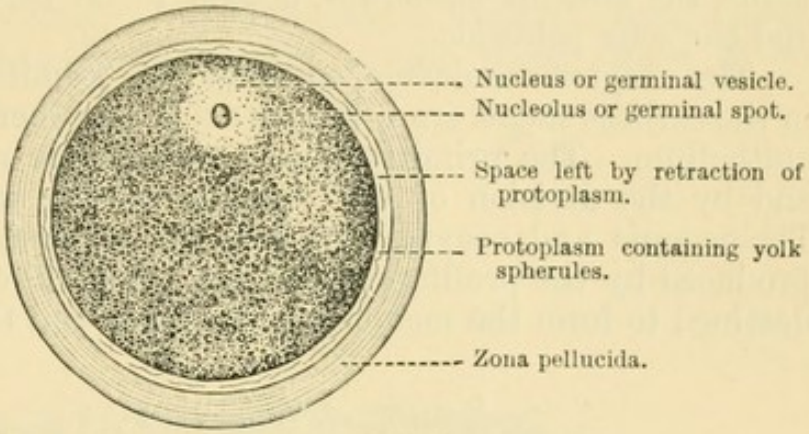


FIG. 617.—A human ovum. (Cadiat.)

The ovarian ovum or oocyte of the first order (fig. 617) is a large spheroidal cell surrounded by a transparent striated membrane called

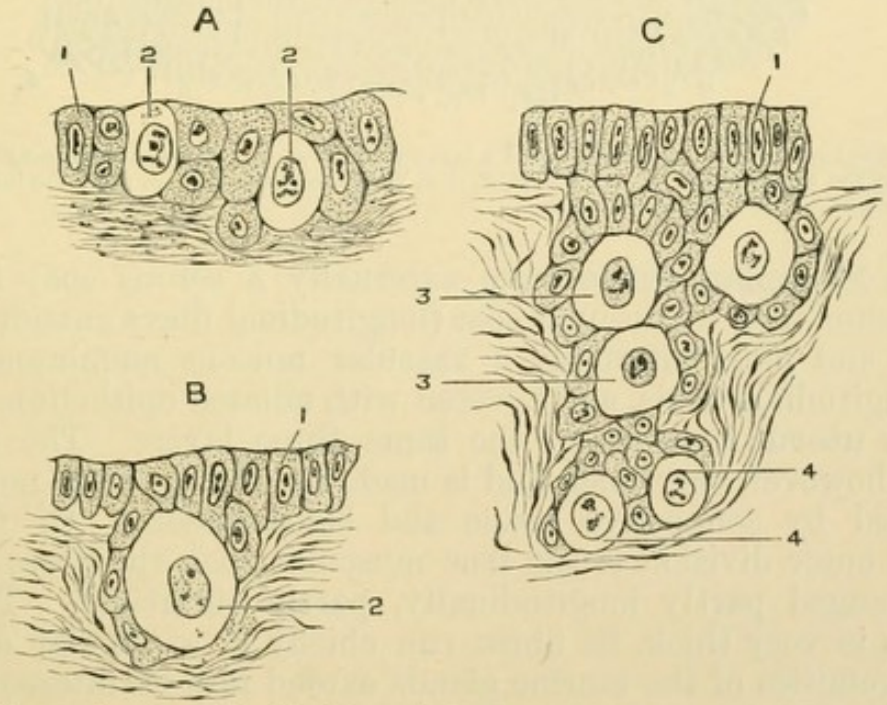


FIG. 618.—Diagram showing mode of development of oocytes of the first order from primitive germ cells in mammalian ovary. 1, germinal epithelium; 2, primitive germ cells; 3, oogonia; 4, oocytes of the first order. In A, two primitive germ cells are seen imbedded in the germinal epithelium. In B, a primitive germ cell has descended into the stroma of the ovary accompanied by cells proliferated from the germinal epithelium which will become the cells of the membrana granulosa. In C, the oogonia derived from primitive germ cells, and oocytes of the first order produced by division of the oogonia, are seen. (After Bühler.)

the *zona pellucida*, or *zona striata*. The protoplasm is filled with large fatty and albuminous granules (*yolk spherules*), except in the part

around the nucleus, which is comparatively free from them. It contains a nucleus, and usually one very well-marked nucleolus. The nucleus and nucleolus are still often called by their old names, *germinal vesicle* and *germinal spot* respectively. An attraction sphere, not shown in the figure, is also present, and a fine membrane, the *vitelline membrane*, is said to lie between the protoplasm and the zona pellucida.

The oocytes are developed from the primitive germ cells which in the earliest stages are interspersed amid other cells of the germinal epithelium. The primitive germ cells divide and produce *oogonia*; and by the division of the oogonia, oocytes are formed (fig. 618). The oogonia and oocytes sink into the stroma, surrounded by cells, produced by the proliferation of the germinal epithelium, which are destined to form the membrana granulosa and the discus proligerus.

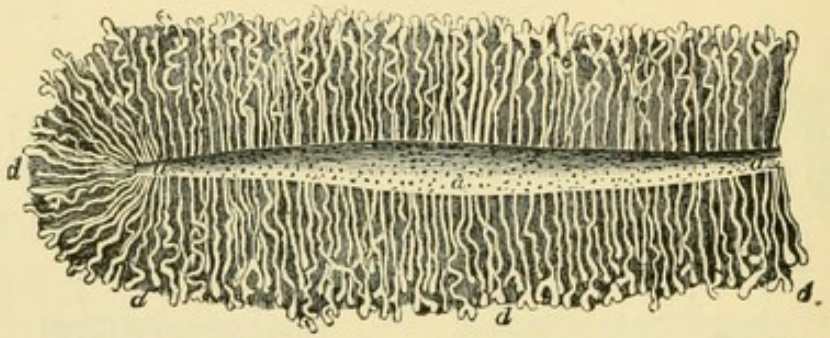


FIG. 619.—Section of the lining membrane of a human uterus at the period of commencing pregnancy, showing the arrangement of the glands, *d*, *d*, *d*, with their orifices, *a*, *a*, *a*, on the internal surface of the organ. Twice the natural size.

The Fallopian tubes have externally a serous coat from the peritoneum, then a muscular coat (longitudinal fibres outside, circular inside), and most internally a vascular mucous membrane thrown into longitudinal folds, and covered with ciliated epithelium.

The uterus consists of the same three layers. The muscular coat is, however, very thick and is made up of two strata imperfectly separated by connective tissue and blood-vessels. Of these the thinner outer division is the true muscular coat, the fibres of which are arranged partly longitudinally, partly circularly. The inner division is very thick, its fibres run chiefly in a circular direction; the extremities of the uterine glands extend into its internal surface. It is in fact a much hypertrophied muscularis mucosæ. The mucous membrane is thick and consists of a corium of soft connective tissue, lined with ciliated epithelium; this is continued down into long tubular glands which have, as a rule, a convoluted course. In the cervix the glands are shorter. Near the os uteri the epithelium becomes stratified; stratified epithelium also lines the vagina.

At each menstrual period the uterus becomes congested, and some of the blood-vessels of the mucous membrane are ruptured; the blood, together with the secretion of the glands and some epithelial *débris* from the surface, constitutes the menstrual flow, which usually lasts two or three days. The amount of destruction of the surface epithelium is not, however, a marked phenomenon; still less is there any disintegration of the deeper parts of the mucous membrane.

CHAPTER LIX

DEVELOPMENT

THE description of the origin and formation of the tissues and organs constitutes the portion of biological science known as embryology. In a physiological text-book it is only possible to deal with the merest outlines of the principal facts of development.

The following descriptions are based, as far as possible, upon observations which have been made on the development of mammals, but many of the phenomena of development have only been seen in lower forms, and their occurrence in mammals (including man) is a matter of inference.

Interest is added to the subject, however, by the consideration of phenomena which occur in lower animals; for the scientific discussion of embryology must always start from a wide survey of the whole animal kingdom, because the changes which occur in the embryological history of the highest animals, form a compressed, though in many cases a modified picture of the changes which have taken place in their historical development from lower types.

The Ovum.

The human ovum is like that of other mammals, a small cell about $\frac{1}{125}$ to $\frac{1}{150}$ inch in diameter.

The changes by which the ovum, or a portion of the ovum, is transformed into the young animal may take place either inside or outside the body of the parent. If they take place inside the parent, as in mammals, including the human subject, the ovum is small, and the nutriment necessary for its growth and development is derived from the surrounding tissues and fluids of the mother. If the development takes place outside the parent's body, as in birds, the egg is larger; it contains a large amount of nutritive material called the yolk, and it may, in addition, be surrounded by sheaths of nutritive substance. Thus, in the hen's egg, the yellow part alone is comparable with the mammalian ovum, and the larger part of that

is merely nutritive substance. Upon the yolk is a whitish speck, the cicatricula, which is a small mass of protoplasm, about $\frac{1}{6}$ of an inch in diameter. In the cicatricula lies the nucleus or germinal vesicle, and it is this small mass of protoplasmic substance which divides and grows to produce the chick; the yolk and the surrounding white being used as food.

Ova like the hen's, in which only a small part, the cicatricula, divides and grows, are called meroblastic. Small ova, with little food yolk, such as the human ovum, divide completely during development, and are called holoblastic, but numerous gradations occur between the two extreme types.

The structure of the ovarian ovum in mammals and its mode of formation have already been considered (p. 835), but before such an ovum can develop it must first become mature, and then it must be impregnated by the entrance of a spermatozoon.

Maturation of the Ovum.

It will be remembered that the germ cells which form the ova are at first embedded in the germinal epithelium, from which they pass into the stroma of the ovary, and then by division and growth they form oogonia; from the oogonia, oocytes of the first order are developed, and the oocytes of the first order become enclosed in Graafian follicles. It is the process by which the oocytes of the first order become converted into mature ova, which is known as maturation, and it consists essentially of a double mitotic division of the oocyte, each division producing two unequal parts. The first division produces an oocyte of the second order and the first polar body, and the second, which takes place without any resting-stage, results in the formation of the mature ovum and the second polar body. Thus, when the two divisions are completed, the mature ovum and two polar bodies lie inside the zona pellucida. In some cases, only one polar body is formed, that is, only one division occurs.

The unequal division is naturally associated with an eccentric position of the spindle. At each division one end of the spindle projects on the surface with a little surrounding protoplasm, and it is the small process which becomes the polar body (see fig. 620).

One of the essential features of maturation is the reduction of the number of chromosomes in the nucleus. It is well known that the nuclei of all animal cells, including germ cells and oogonia, contain a definite number of chromosomes. When maturation commences in the oocytes of the first order, an achromatic spindle is formed in the usual way; but instead of the ordinary number of chromosomes appearing at its equator, only half that number are seen: for example, if eight be the normal number of chromosomes,

only four appear. Further, each chromosome is not a slender V-shaped loop, but a short, thick rod, or ring, or group of four particles. Neither

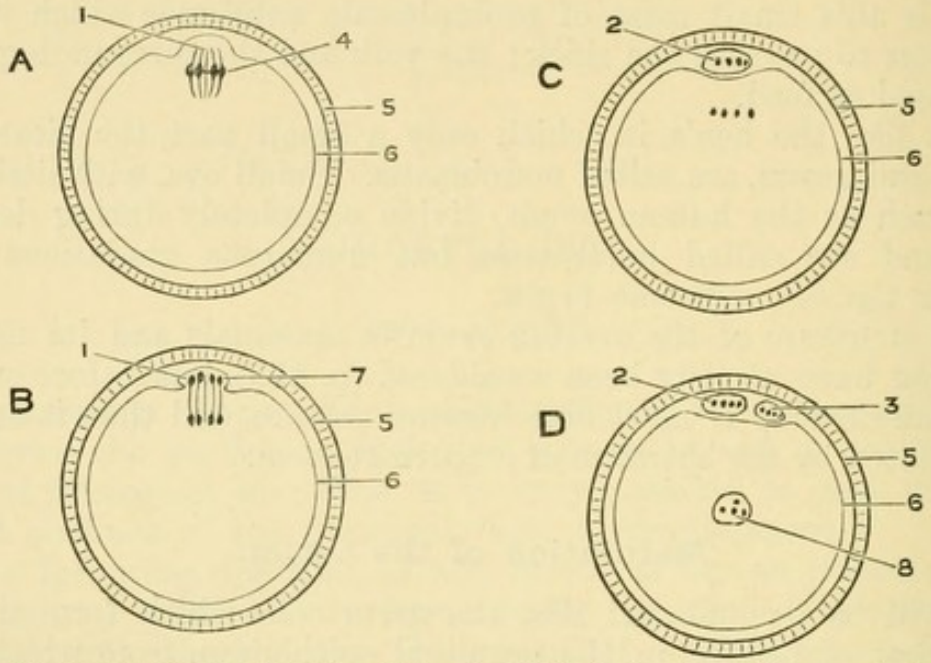


FIG. 620.—Diagram showing the formation of the polar bodies (maturation of the ovum). A, B, and C show stages in the formation of the first polar body by heterotype mitosis. A is the oocyte of the first order at the commencement of mitosis, when only half the usual number of chromosomes appear. C is the oocyte of the second order; it has no distinct nucleus, because no resting-stage occurs; after the separation of the first polar body, the chromosomes which remain in the oocyte of the second order at once rearrange themselves on a new spindle. D is the mature ovum, with the female pronucleus and the two polar bodies. 1, First polar bud; 2, first polar body; 3, second polar body; 4, chromosomes on spindle of oocyte of first order; 5, zona striata; 6, vitelline membrane; 7, daughter chromosomes in first polar bud; 8, female pronucleus.

does it split longitudinally in the usual way, but transversely; and at the end of the process the oocyte of the second order and the first

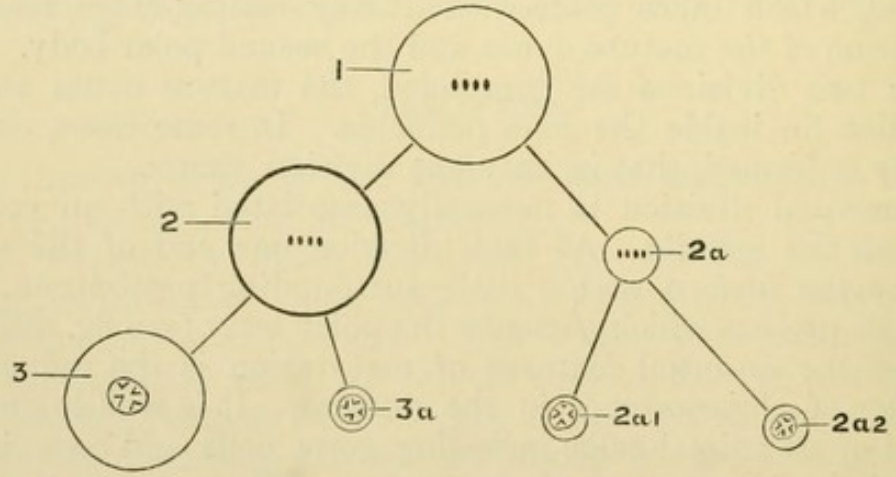


FIG. 621.—Diagram showing the stages in the maturation of the ovum when the first polar body divides. A similar diagram would represent the formation of spermatids from a spermatocyst of the first order. 1, Oocyte of the first order; 2, oocyte of the second order; 2*a*, first polar body; 3, mature ovum; 3*a*, second polar body; 2*a*1, and 2*a*2, daughter cells of the first polar body. All the last generation in the male would be spermatids of equal value.

polar body both contain four chromosomes. This form of mitosis is

known as heterotype, whilst the ordinary form is called homotype. The second division which produces the mature ovum and the second polar body is of the homotype form, and the final result is that each of the segments into which the oocyte of the first order has divided —the mature ovum and the two polar bodies—contains half the number of chromosomes present in the parent germinal cell. In some cases the first polar body divides at the same time that the second polar body is formed, and the process may be represented by the schema in fig. 621.

The nucleus of the mature ovum is known as the female pronucleus.

Impregnation.

By impregnation is meant the union of a spermatozoon with a mature ovum. The spermatozoon, moving by the flagellar movement of its tail, meets the mature ovum in the upper part of the Fallopian tube, and by means of its sharp head cap it pierces the zona pellucida, and the head, neck, and possibly part of the body, enter the substance of the ovum, where they undergo transformation, and are converted into a male pronucleus with an attendant attraction sphere and its centrosome. The male pronucleus contains the same number of chromosomes as the female pronucleus, for the mitosis which occurs when the spermatocyst of the first order divides to form the two spermatocysts of the second order, is a heterotype mitosis, in which only half the usual number of chromosomes appear; and consequently the spermatocysts of the second order, and their descendants the spermatids, also contain only half the typical number of chromosomes. These are retained in the spermatozoa, which are produced by modification of the spermatid, and they reappear in the male pronucleus.

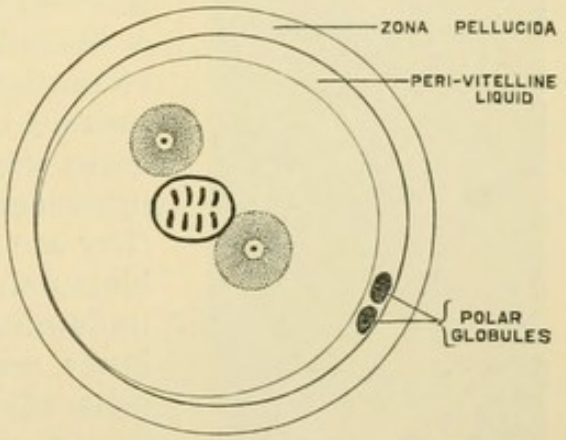


FIG. 622.—The fertilised ovum or blastosphere, showing its new nucleus and attraction spheres; the yolk granules have been omitted.

After the male pronucleus has formed in the substance of the mature ovum, it approaches the female pronucleus, and when the two pronuclei fuse, fertilisation is completed. The nucleus which results from the fusion—the first segmentation nucleus—contains the typical number of chromosomes, half being derived from the female and half from the male germinal element. When the fertilisation is completed, the segmentation nucleus is accompanied by two attraction spheres with their centrosomes (see fig. 622); one of these spheres

is that associated with the male pronucleus, but the origin of the other is uncertain. It may belong to the ovum, though it was not apparent during the maturation, or it may have been produced by the division of the centrosome and attraction sphere which accompany the male pronucleus.

Segmentation.

After fertilisation is completed, the ovum divides into two parts; each of these again divides, and so on till a mulberry-shaped mass—the morula—is formed. It consists of a large number of small cells, and it is enclosed together with the polar bodies, in the zona pellucida. The polar bodies soon disappear; indeed in many cases they have vanished long before the morula is completed. A cavity soon appears in the morula, which thus becomes converted into a blastula or blastocyst. The cells which form the peripheral wall of the blastula assume a more or less cubical form, whilst those which lie in the interior and form the inner cell mass are irregular in outline, and they are grouped together at one pole of the blastula. At this period the blastula is unilaminar, except at the region where the inner cell mass is situated; but soon the cells of the inner mass extend round the cavity and the wall of the cyst becomes bilaminar, the outer layer being called *epiblast* and the inner *hypoblast*. In amphioxus and in many invertebrates the blastula is at first entirely unilaminar, no inner cell mass being present. In these cases the inner layer is formed by the invagination of a part of the wall of the vesicle, and the opening at which the invagination occurs is known as the blastopore or primitive mouth.

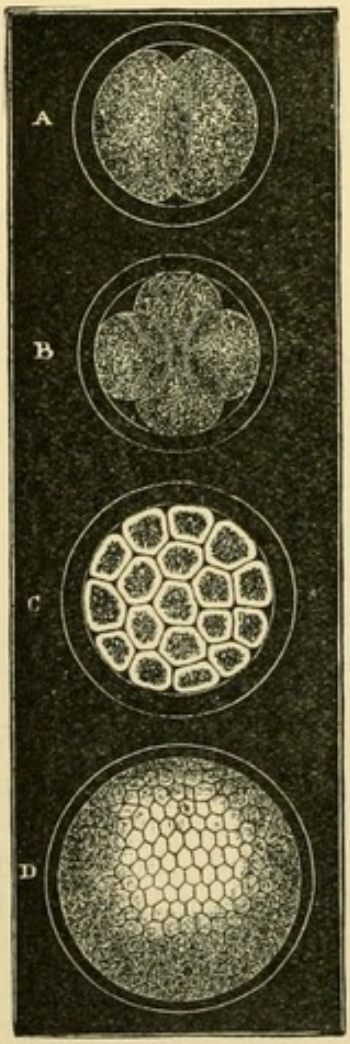


FIG. 623.—Diagrams of the various stages of cleavage of the ovum. (Dalton.)

If the surface of a bilaminar mammalian blastoderm is examined, an area is found which is darker or more opaque than the rest; this is the area where the embryo will be formed, and it is known as the germinal or embryonic area (fig. 624). It corresponds with the region where the inner mass is adherent to the outer layer, and in it the epiblast cells are of cubical or columnar form, whilst over the remainder of the wall of the vesicle they have been transformed into flattened

plates (fig. 625). At first the germinal area is circular, then it becomes ovoid, and ultimately pear-shaped, the narrow part of the pear-shaped area indicating the region of the posterior end of

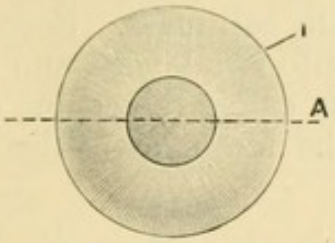


FIG. 624.—Diagram of a surface view of a young mammalian blastula. 1, Germinal area. A, line of section represented in fig. 625.

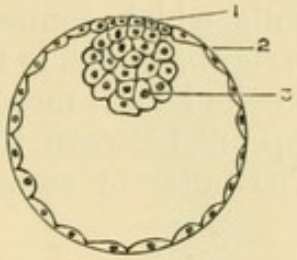


FIG. 625.—Diagram of a section of the mammalian blastula shown in fig. 624 along the line A. 1, Germinal area; 2, epiblast; 3, inner cell mass.

the body of the future embryo (fig. 626). A linear streak—the primitive streak—quickly appears in the narrow part of the area, and after a time, a groove—the primitive groove—appears on its surface. In the meantime, a second groove has appeared on the surface of the ovum in front of the primitive streak. This is the neural groove or rudiment of the central canal of the brain and spinal cord. It is bounded by two folds—the neural folds, which are united together at their anterior ends, but their posterior ends, which embrace the anterior end of the primitive streak, do not unite until after the appearance of the opening at the anterior end of the primitive streak. This opening, therefore, connects the neural groove with the cavity in the interior of the blastodermic vesicle, which is called the archenteric cavity, and through it the epiblast becomes continuous with the hypoblast. Therefore it evidently represents a part of the blastopore of more primitive forms, and it is called the neurenteric canal. It soon closes, and all traces of it are lost.

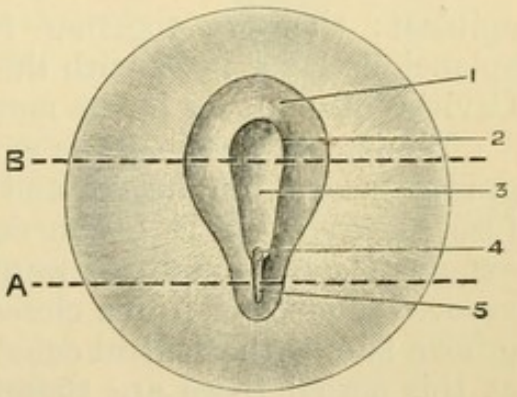


FIG. 626.—Diagram of a surface view of a mammalian blastoderm after the formation of the neural groove. 1, Germinal area; 2, neural ridge; 3, neural groove; 4, neurenteric canal (part of blastopore); 5, primitive groove and streak. A, line of section shown in fig. 627; B, line of section shown in fig. 628.

The primitive streak itself is due to a down-growth of a linear ridge of epiblastic cells, and soon after its formation a layer of cells, the *mesoblast* or third layer of the blastoderm, grows out from its sides and posterior end, and extends between the epiblast and hypoblast over the whole area of the vesicle.

That portion of the mesoblast which lies immediately at the sides

of the neural groove becomes partially separated from the rest, and at the same time divided into cuboidal blocks, the protovertebræ or mesoblastic somites. The more laterally situated part of the mesoblast constitutes the lateral plates, and the narrow strand of mesoblastic cells which connects the lateral plate on each side with the protovertebral somites is the intermediate cell mass. Soon after its formation the lateral mesoblast is cleft into two layers, and the space which appears between the two layers is called the cœlom (figs. 627, 628). The outer or somatic layer of the mesoblast adheres to the

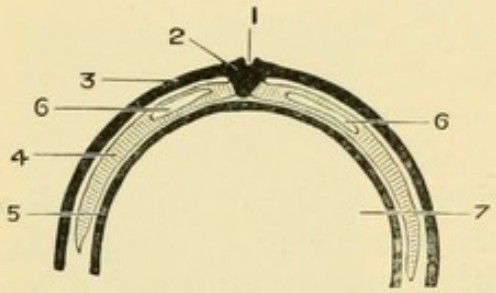


FIG. 627.—Diagram of a transverse section through a mammalian blastoderm along line A in fig. 626. 1, primitive groove; 2, primitive streak; 3, epiblast; 4, mesoblast; 5, hypoblast; 6, cœlom; 7, archenteron.

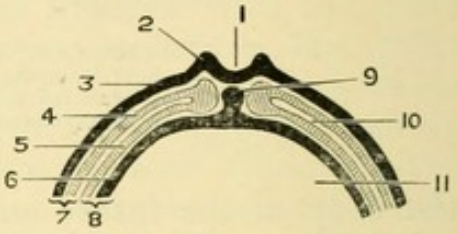


FIG. 628.—Diagram of a transverse section through a mammalian blastoderm along line B in fig. 626. 1, neural groove; 2, neural ridge; 3, epiblast; 4, somatic mesoblast; 5, splanchnic mesoblast; 6, hypoblast; 7, somatopleur; 8, splanchnopleur; 9, notochord; 10, cœlom; 11, archenteron.

epiblast; the two together form the somatopleur. The inner or splanchnic layer fuses with the hypoblast to form the splanchnopleur. Cavities also appear in the mesoblastic somites.

Whilst the mesoblast is extending and cleaving, the neural folds gradually grow in height, and their free margins turn inwards and fuse together. This fusion commences in the cervical region, and extends forwards and backwards, and when it is completed the neural groove is converted into a closed tube, the neural tube, and the original groove is now the central canal of the nervous system. In the ovum at this period there are, therefore, three cavities: (1) The neural or central canal confined to the embryonic region; (2) The cœlom or space in the mesoblast; (3) The archenteron within the hypoblast. The embryonic area is still outspread on the surface of the ovum. When the changes to which reference has been made are well advanced, and in many cases before the neural groove is closed, the embryonic area begins to fold off from the rest of the ovum. A sulcus appears all round the margins of the area, and over this sulcus the area bends forwards, backwards, and laterally. It looks as if some constricting agent had been placed round the margin of the area, and that afterwards the area above the constriction, and the area below had gone on growing rapidly. In this way, the ovum is clearly separated into two parts, an upper, the embryo, and a lower, which becomes the appendages of the embryo. The anterior part

of the folded embryonic area is known as the head fold, the posterior as the tail fold, and the two are connected together on each side by the lateral folds. As the constriction between the embryonic and non-embryonic parts affects the interior as well as the exterior of the ovum, it follows that three cavities are present in the embryo. (1) The central canal of the neural tube, which is of course lined by epiblast. (2) A portion of the archenteron lined by hypoblast. (3) A portion of the cœlom or cavity of the mesoblast (fig. 630).

The central canal of the neural tube, as before stated, becomes the cavity of the permanent central nervous system, and it forms the central canal of the spinal cord, the lateral, third and fourth ventricles, and the aqueduct of Sylvius which connects the third and fourth ventricles together.

The portion of the archenteron enclosed in the embryo forms the primitive gut. The part contained in the head fold is the fore-gut, that in the tail fold is the hind-gut, and the remainder is the mid-gut (fig. 631).

The constriction where the body of the embryo becomes continuous with the remainder of the ovum, is known ultimately as the umbilicus. It remains pervious till birth, when the embryo is separated from the rest of the ovum, and through it the mid-gut is connected with the remainder of the archenteron (which is henceforth called the yolk sac) by a narrow hypoblastic tube, the vitello-intestinal duct (fig. 630, 10).

The portion of the mesoblastic cavity enclosed in the embryo is called the body cavity. It gradually differentiates into the pericardial, pleural and peritoneal cavities, which are eventually entirely separated from each other.

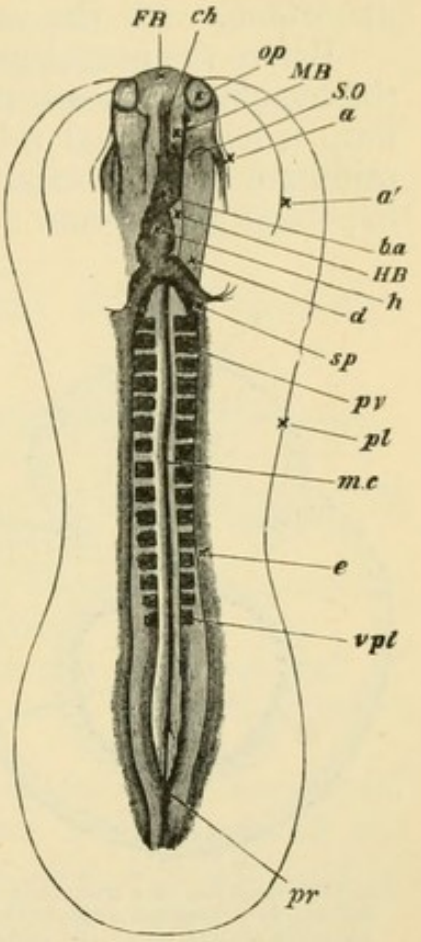


FIG. 629.—Embryo chick (36 hours), viewed from beneath as a transparent object (magnified). *pl*, Outline of pellucid area; *FB*, fore-brain, or first cerebral vesicle: from its sides project *op*, the optic vesicles; *SO*, backward limit of somatopleur fold, "tucked in" under head; *a*, head-fold of true amnion; *a'*, reflected layer of amnion, sometimes termed "false amnion"; *sp*, backward limit of splanchnopleur folds, along which run the omphalo-mesenteric veins uniting to form *h*, the heart, which is continued forwards into *ba*, the bulbus arteriosus; *d*, the fore-gut, lying behind the heart, and having a wide crescentic opening between the splanchnopleur folds; *HB*, hind-brain; *MB*, mid-brain; *pv*, protovertebræ lying behind the fore-gut; *mc*, line of junction of medullary folds and of notochord; *ch*, front end of notochord; *vpl*, vertebral plates; *pr*, the primitive groove at its caudal end. (Foster and Balfour.)

In the early stages the gut is close to the posterior wall of the body, but after a time it advances into the body cavity; it remains connected, however, with the dorsal wall by

a fold of the splanchnic portion of the mesoblast, which is called the dorsal mesentery. A similar mesentery is found connecting the ventral wall of that portion, fore-gut, which becomes stomach and duodenum, with the ventral wall of the body.

Before the neural groove is closed and becomes the neural canal, the hypoblast beneath the middle of the groove becomes thickened to form a longitudinal ridge (fig. 628). This ridge is the notochord or primitive skeletal axis. It soon separates from the remainder of the hypoblast, and forms a round cord, which lies at first immediately

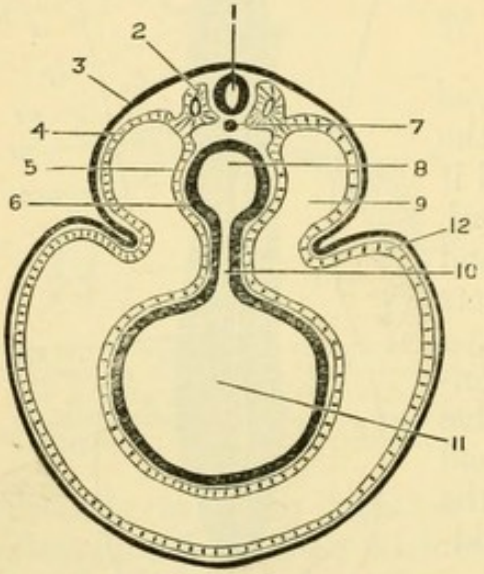


FIG. 630.—Diagram of a transverse section through a mammalian ovum at the period when the folding off of the embryo has commenced. 1, Neural tube; 2, proto-vertebral somite; 3, epiblast; 4, somatic mesoblast; 5, splanchnic mesoblast; 6, hypoblast; 7, notochord; 8, primitive alimentary canal; 9, cœlom; 10, vitello-intestinal duct; 11, yolk sac; 12, lateral fold of amnion.

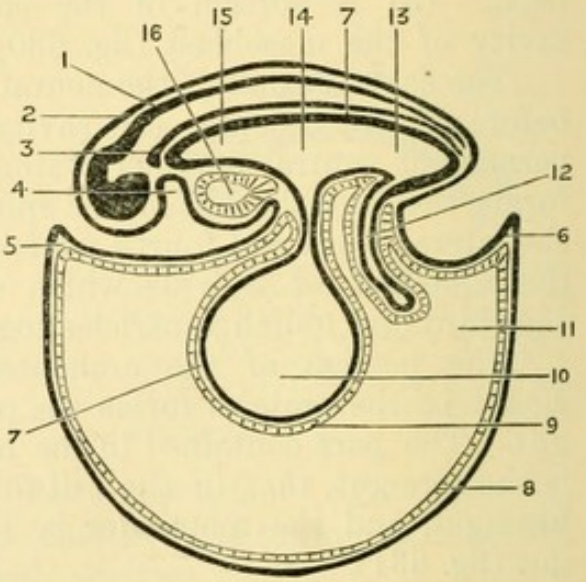


FIG. 631.—Diagram of a longitudinal section of a mammalian ovum at the period when the folding off of the embryo has commenced. 1, Neural tube; 2, epiblast; 3, notochord; 4, stomadœal space; 5, head fold of amnion; 6, tail fold of amnion; 7, hypoblast; 8, somatic mesoblast; 9, splanchnic mesoblast; 10, yolk sac; 11, cœlom; 12, allantois; 13, hind-gut; 14, mid-gut; 15, fore-gut; 16, pericardium.

beneath the neural groove, and afterwards beneath the neural tube, extending from the anterior end of the primitive gut, which lies beneath that region of the neural tube which afterwards becomes the mid-brain, to the caudal end of the embryo (figs. 630, 631).

It follows from what has already been stated, that the embryo attains its distinct form by a process of folding; but for some time after it is separated off from the remainder of the ovum (except at the margins of the umbilical orifice), it has no limbs. After a time a ridge appears on each side of the body, along the line of the intermediate cell mass in the interior; this is the Wolffian ridge, and from its anterior and posterior parts, the limbs grow out as small horizontal ledges.

The differentiated embryo contains parts of all the layers of the

blastoderm, and from each of these certain organs are formed as indicated in the following list:—

1. **From Epiblast.**—*a*. The epidermis and its appendages.

b. The nervous system, both central and peripheral.

c. The epithelial structures of the sense-organs.

d. The epithelium of the mouth, and the enamel of the teeth.

e. The epithelium of the nasal passages.

f. The epithelium of the glands opening on the skin and into the vestibule of the mouth, and nasal passages.

g. The muscular fibres of the sweat-glands.

2. **From Mesoblast.**—*a*. The skeleton and all the connective tissues of the body.

b. All the muscles of the body.

c. The vascular system, including the lymphatics, serous membranes, and spleen.

d. The urinary and generative organs, except the epithelium of the bladder and urethra.

The Somatic mesoblast forms the osseous, fibrous, and muscular tissues of the body-wall, including the true skin.

The Splanchnic mesoblast forms the fibrous and muscular wall of the alimentary canal, the vascular system, and the urino-genital organs.

3. **From Hypoblast.**—*a*. The epithelium of the alimentary canal from the inner sides of the teeth to the anus, and that of all the glands (including liver and pancreas) which open into this part of the alimentary tube.

b. The epithelium of the respiratory cavity.

c. The epithelium of the Eustachian tube and tympanum.

d. The epithelium lining the vesicles of the thyroid.

e. The epithelial nests of the thymus.

f. The epithelium of the bladder and urethra.

The Decidua and the Fœtal Membranes.

When the uterus is ready for the reception of an ovum it is lined by a greatly hypertrophied mucous membrane, called the decidua, because, after the delivery of the child, a portion of it comes away from the uterus with the other membranes.

When the ovum, which has been fertilised in the upper part of the Fallopian tube, reaches the uterine cavity, it is usually in the stage of a morula or blastula. It rapidly eats its way into the substance of the decidua which closes over it, obliterating the opening through which it passed, and thus the ovum becomes embedded in the membrane, which thereupon becomes separable into three parts. 1. The part between the ovum and the muscular wall of the uterus,

the *decidua basalis*. 2. The part between the ovum and the uterine cavity, the *decidua capsularis or reflexa*. 3. The remaining part is called the *decidua vera*. Between the decidua capsularis and the decidua basalis lies the ovum, which speedily becomes differentiated into embryo membranes, and appendages. The outermost of the fœtal membranes is the chorion; this is covered with vascular villi, which dip into the decidua capsularis and basalis. Inside the chorion is the amnion, a closed sac, which surrounds the embryo and is attached to its ventral wall at the umbilicus. The amnion is filled with fluid, the amniotic fluid in which the fœtus floats, and it forms a sheath for the umbilical cord by which after a certain time, the embryo is attached to the inner surface of the chorion, or outer wall of the ovum. The umbilical cord contains not only the blood-vessels which pass between a specialised portion of the chorion, which forms the fœtal part of the placenta, and the embryo, but also the remains of the yolk-sac, and the duct by which it is connected with the intestine of the embryo.

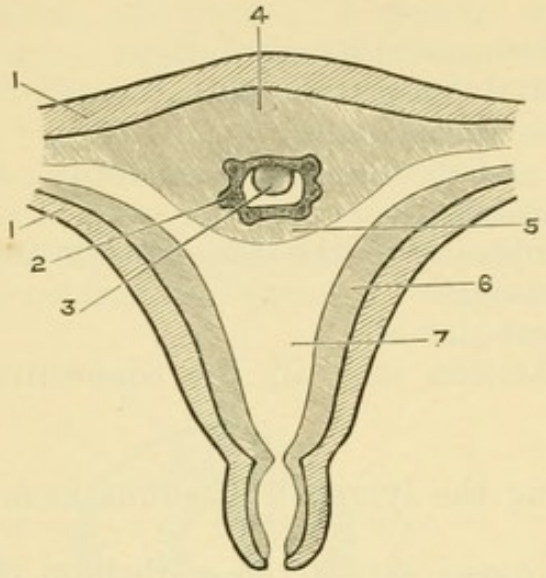


FIG. 632.—Diagram representing the relation of the developing ovum to the decidua at a very early stage. 1, Uterine muscle; 2, epiblast of ovum; 3, inner cell mass of ovum (hypoblast and embryonic epiblast); 4, decidua basalis; 5, decidua capsularis; 6, decidua vera; 7, cavity of uterus.

As the ovum grows, the decidua capsularis is expanded over its surface, and as the growth continues the uterine cavity is gradually obliterated, and the decidua capsularis is forced into contact with the decidua vera, with which it fuses.

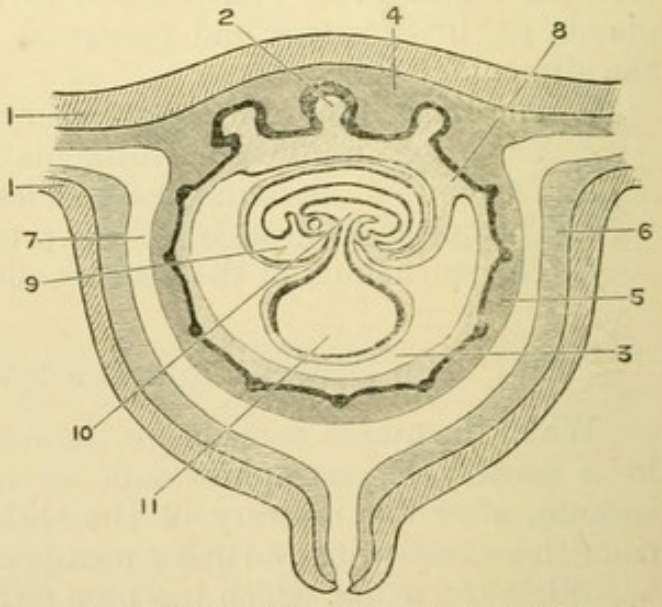


FIG. 633.—Diagram representing a later stage of development than that shown in fig. 632. 1, Uterine muscle; 2, villi of chorion of ovum; 3, cœlom; 4, decidua basalis; 5, decidua capsularis; 6, decidua vera; 7, cavity of uterus; 8, allantois; 9, amnion cavity; 10, primitive intestine; 11, yolk-sac.

As the decidua is merely thickened mucous membrane, it naturally contains glands which become enlarged as the decidua thickens. It was believed, at one

time, that the villi of the chorion entered the glands, but this is now known to be incorrect. The villi enter the interglandular substance, and, in the human subject, the glands of the decidua capsularis eventually disappear entirely. In the decidua basalis and the decidua vera the superficial portions of the glands also disappear; their deep portions remain in an almost unchanged condition, and furnish the

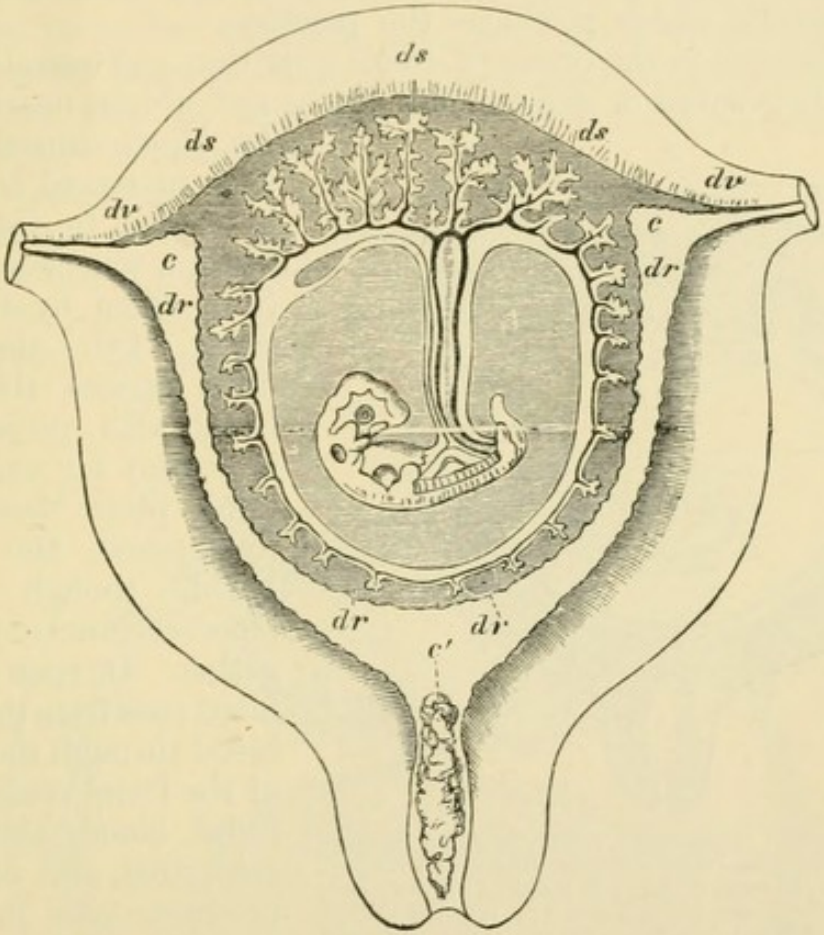


FIG. 634.—Diagrammatic view of a vertical transverse section of the uterus at the seventh or eighth week of pregnancy. *c*, *c*, *c'*, cavity of uterus, which becomes the cavity of the decidua, opening at *c*, *c*, the cornua, into the Fallopian tubes, and at *c'* into the cavity of the cervix, which is closed by a plug of mucus; *dv*, decidua vera; *dr*, decidua reflexa, with the sparser villi embedded in its substance; *ds*, decidua basalis or serotina, involving the more developed chorionic villi of the commencing placenta. The fœtus is seen lying in the amniotic sac; passing up from the umbilicus is seen the umbilical cord and its vessels passing to their distribution in the villi of the chorion; also the pedicle of the yolk-sac, which lies in the cavity between the amnion and chorion. (Allen Thomson.)

epithelium for the regeneration of the glands and the lining of the uterine cavity after parturition. The intermediate parts of the glands in the decidua vera and the decidua basalis become very much enlarged, and form a stratum of the decidua called the spongy layer, and ultimately this layer is converted into a series of clefts, and it is along the line of these clefts that the decidua is separated at birth.

In some mammals in which the connection between the chorion and the decidua is less intimate than in the human subject, the

glands persist to a greater or less extent, and secrete a fluid called uterine milk, which is absorbed by the chorion.

The portion of the decidua which undergoes the greatest change is the decidua basalis, formerly called the decidua serotina. In it a number of large blood spaces are formed, and these are separated into masses or cotyledons by fibrous strands. The cotyledons are penetrated by chorionic villi, and it is this conjunction of chorionic villi and decidua basalis which produces the placenta.

The placenta is the organ of fœtal nutrition and excretion, and at full term it is seven or eight inches across and weighs nearly a pound. Its blood sinuses are filled with maternal blood, which is carried to them by the uterine arteries and away from them by the uterine veins. Into these blood-filled spaces the vascular fœtal villi project; hence it is easy for exchanges to take place between the fœtal and the maternal blood, though the two blood-streams never mix together. Oxygen and nutriment pass from the maternal blood through the coverings of the fœtal vessels into the fœtal blood, and carbonic acid, urea, and other waste products pass in the contrary direction. The fœtal blood is carried to the placenta by the umbilical arteries, which are the terminal branches of the aorta of the fœtus; these pass to the placenta by the umbilical cord, and the blood is returned, through the cord, by the umbilical vein.

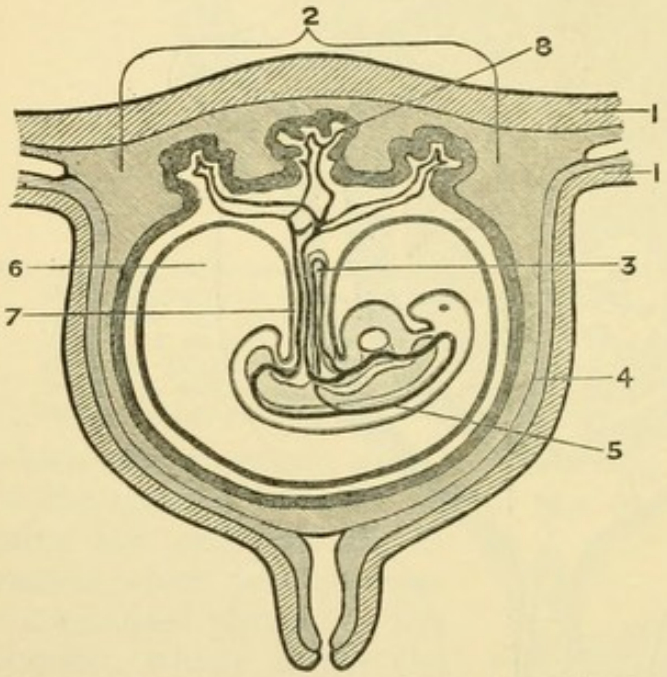


FIG. 635.—Diagram representing a later stage of development of membranes and placenta than that shown in fig. 633. 1, Uterine muscle; 2, placenta; 3, yolk-sac; 4, fused decidua vera and capsularis; 5, primitive blood-vessel of embryo; 6, amnion cavity (outer surface of amnion is fused with inner surface of chorion); 7, umbilical cord; 8, fœtal villus in placenta. For blood-vessels see subsequent figures.

Development of the Fœtal Appendages and Membranes.

The manner in which the primitive intestinal canal is separated from the yolk-sac during the folding off of the embryo from the ovum, has already been considered (p. 845).

In birds the yolk-sac affords nutriment till the end of incubation, and the omphalo-mesenteric blood-vessels which convey the nutriment to the embryo, are correspondingly well developed. In mammalia,

the office of the umbilical vesicle ceases at an early period, for the quantity of yolk is small, and the embryo soon becomes independent of it, on account of the intimate relations established with the maternal blood in the placenta. In birds, moreover, as the yolk-sac empties, it is gradually withdrawn into the abdomen of the chick through the umbilical opening which then closes over it. In mammals it remains outside the embryo, and in man its remnants, in a contracted and shrivelled condition, are found in the umbilical cord. In some mammals, however, it plays a much more important part than it does in man, and the time and mode of its disappearance differ in different orders of mammals.

At an early stage, and whilst the changes to which reference has been made are proceeding, three important structures, the amnion, the chorion, and the allantois, are developed.

Amnion.—As the embryo is differentiated, the surface of the ovum beyond its margins, formed by somatopleur, is gradually

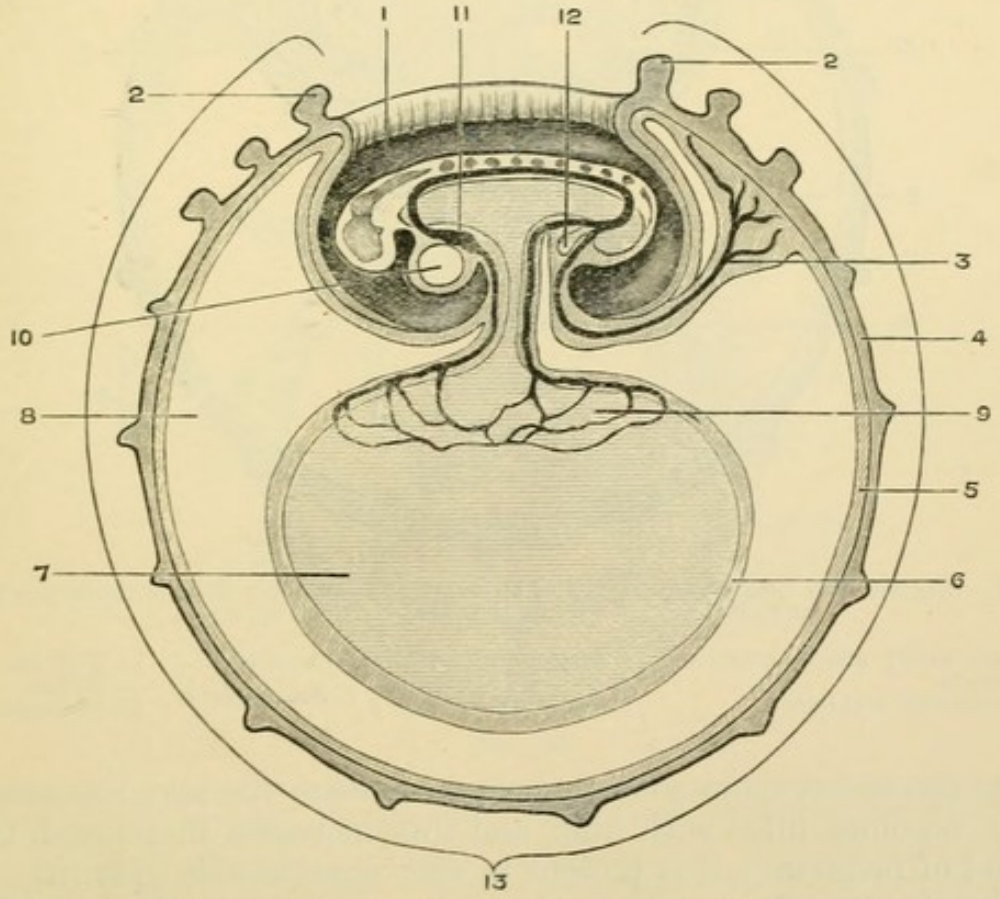


FIG. 636.—Diagram of a longitudinal section of an ovum showing mode of formation of amnion, allantois, and the primitive blood-vessels. 1, Amnion cavity; 2, villi on placental part of chorion; 3, allantois; 4, epiblast of chorion; 5, somatic mesoblast; 6, splanchnic mesoblast; 7, yolk-sac; 8, cœlom; 9, vascular area on yolk-sac; 10, pericardium; 11, heart; 12, allantois diverticulum from cloaca; 13, chorion.

raised as a circular fold which is looked upon as consisting of head, tail, and lateral portions. The various parts of the fold rise quickly

and converge over the embryo, which, at the same time, passes towards the interior of the ovum. Finally, the folds meet and fuse together at a point which is called the amnion navel. As soon as the folds fuse, the inner parts separate from the outer and form a closed sac (figs. 630 to 639). The inner wall of the sac is formed by epiblast, the outer by mesoblast, and both are continuous with the same layers of the embryo at the umbilical orifice. At first the amnion closely

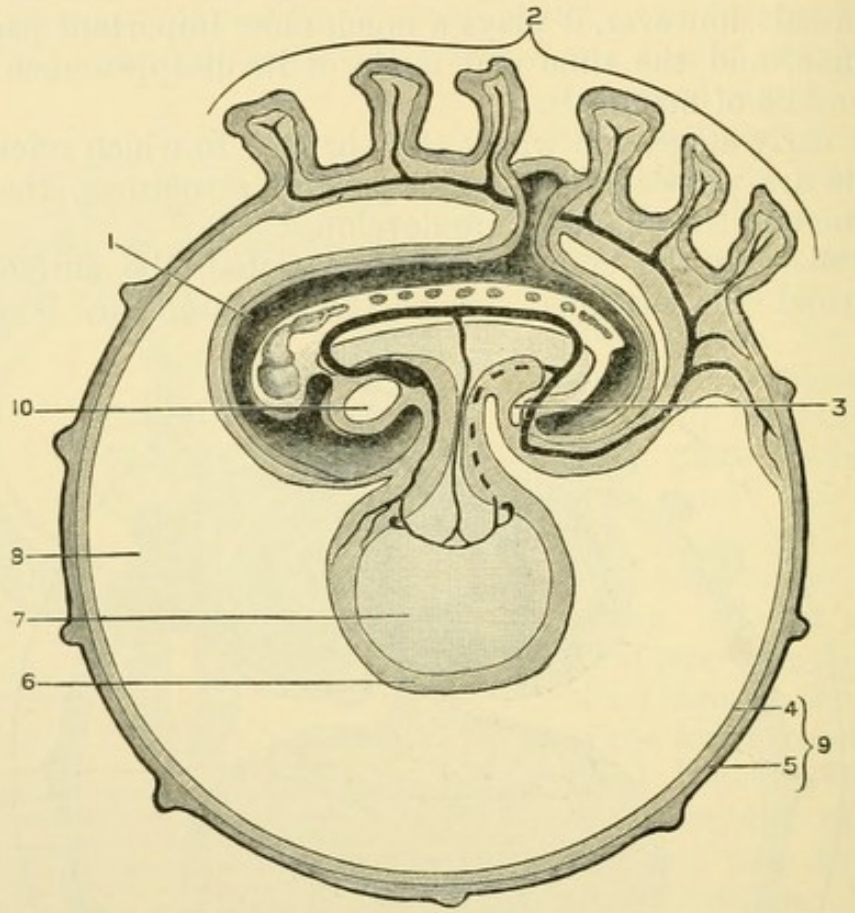


FIG. 637.—Diagram of a longitudinal section of an ovum, showing later stage of formation, amnion and fœtal part of placenta than that shown in fig. 636.

1. Amnion cavity almost completely closed in.
2. Placental villi of chorion.
3. Allantoic diverticulum from cloaca.
4. Epiblast of chorion } 9. Somatopleur.
5. Somatic mesoblast }
7. Yolk sac.
8. Cœlom.
10. Pericardium.

invests the embryo, but soon the space between the two, the *amniotic cavity*, becomes filled with fluid, and this increases in amount, till at the end of pregnancy it is present in very considerable quantity.

The *amniotic fluid* consists of water containing small quantities of albumin, urea, and salts. It is an exudation from the fœtal and the maternal blood, and the urea in it comes from the fœtal urine which is passed into the amniotic cavity in the later part of pregnancy.

The function of the fluid appears to be purely mechanical. It supports the embryo on all sides, and protects it from blows and other

injuries to the abdomen of the mother, and from sudden irregular contractions of the abdominal walls.

The preceding account of amnion formation is based upon the phenomena observed in the majority of amniotic vertebrates, but the

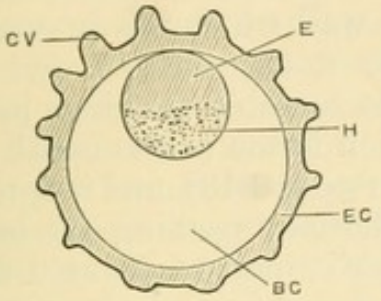


FIG. 638.

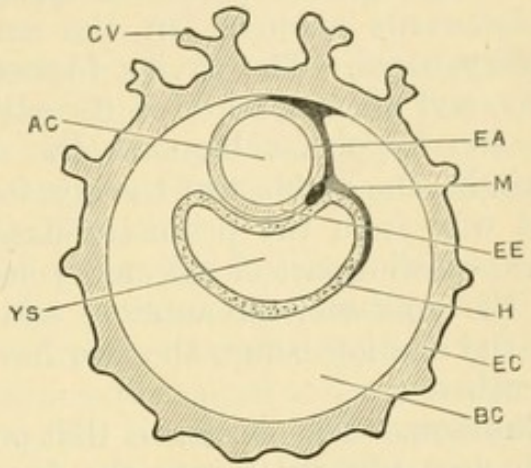


FIG. 639.

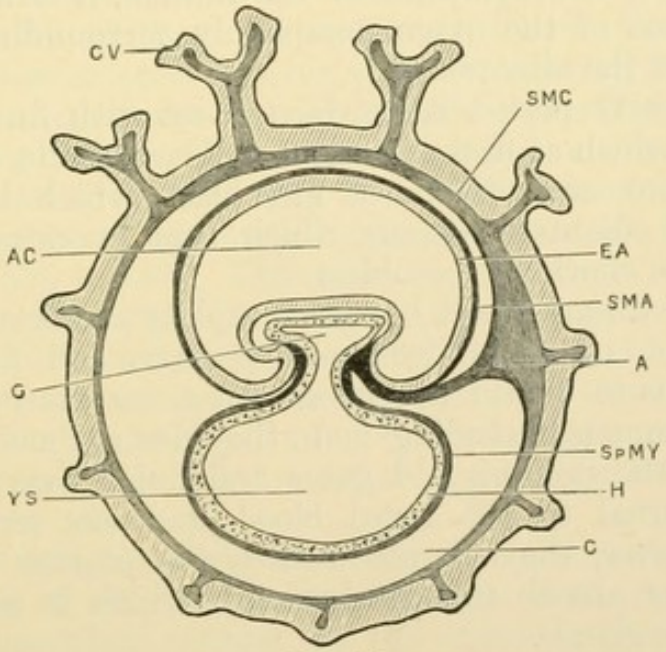


FIG. 640.

FIGS. 638, 639, and 640 are diagrammatic representations of three stages in the development of the ovum in certain mammals. They show the method of amnion formation and mesodermal extension in monkeys and probably also in the human subject. A, Allantoic mesoblast; AC, Amnion Cavity; BC, Blastula Cavity; C, Cœlom; CV, Chorionic Villi; E, Rudiment of Epiblast; EA, Epiblast of Amnion; EC, Epiblast of Chorion; EE, Epiblast of Embryo; G, Gut; H, Hypoblast; SMA, Somatic Mesoblast on Amnion; SMC, Somatic Mesoblast on Chorion; SpMY, Splanchnic Mesoblast on Yolk-sac; YS, Yolk-sac.

process is considerably modified in many rodents, cheiroptera, monkeys, and probably also in man. In the animals in which such modifications occur the inner cell mass which becomes distinct as the blastula condition is attained (p. 842), contains not only the rudiments of the hypoblast but also the rudiments of the epiblast of

the embryo and the amnion and the rudiments of the mesoblast, whilst the outer wall of the blastula consists of chorionic epiblast alone. As the epiblastic and hypoblastic parts of the inner mass begin to differentiate from each other a cavity appears in each (fig. 639). The cavity in the hypoblast is the yolk-sac cavity, a part of which is afterwards enclosed in the embryo to form the primitive alimentary canal. The cavity formed in the epiblast is the amnion cavity, and that portion of its epiblastic wall which lies in contact with the hypoblast becomes the epiblast of the embryo, and the remainder the epiblast of the amnion. The mesoblast springs in the usual way from the primitive streak, which forms in the usual way in the posterior part of the embryonic area (see p. 843), and it spreads over the yolk-sac, the amnion, and the chorion, reaching the latter from the amnion before the two have been distinctly separated from each other.

Chorion.—The chorion is that portion of the surface of the ovum which does not enter into the formation of the embryo or of the amnion, and after the separation of the amnion, it forms the whole of the outer surface of the ovum, completely surrounding the embryo, the amnion, and the allantois.

At a very early period its surface is set with fine processes, the *chorionic villi*, which at first consist of epiblastic cells, alone, but very soon they acquire cores of somatic mesoblast, which becomes vascularised by the allantoic vessels which rapidly extend throughout the whole of the chorionic mesoblast.

The young villi are small, but grow rapidly and branch repeatedly, as they project into the decidua capsularis and decidua basalis. Their function is to obtain nutriment from the uterine tissues. In the higher mammals, including man, they destroy and eat up many of the cells of the decidua, and gases and fluids pass through them from the maternal to the fœtal blood, and *vice versâ*. In some mammals, however, they do not destroy the uterine tissues, and in those cases they absorb the uterine milk, which is secreted by the enlarged uterine glands.

The chorionic villi which penetrate the decidua capsularis gradually disappear as the capsularis fuses with the vera, and is reduced to a thin membrane; but the villi which enter the decidua basalis increase enormously in size and complexity, to form the fœtal part of the placenta, and their branches hang free in the interiors of large blood sinuses which are filled with maternal blood (fig. 634).

Allantois.—The allantois is an outgrowth from the ventral portion of the posterior part of the primitive alimentary canal, and it consists of a hollow process of hypoblast covered with mesoblast (fig. 631, 12). In the human embryo it appears at a very early period, before the amnion has separated from the chorion, and it conveys the allantoic

arteries from the embryo to the chorion, and the allantoic vein from the chorion to the embryo. As development proceeds, and that part of the chorion in contact with the decidua basalis is converted into the fœtal part of the placenta (figs. 634 to 637), the allantoic blood-vessels in the chorion gradually disappear, except in the placental area, where they grow larger till birth.

At first the allantois is very short, but, as the amnion distends and the embryo passes further and further into the interior of the enlarging ovum, it is elongated into a cord which, together with the remains of the yolk-sac, is surrounded and ensheathed by the amnion; this cord is called the *umbilical cord* (fig. 634).

In the human subject that portion of the allantois which lies in the umbilical cord consists entirely of vascular mesoblast, for the hollow pouch of hypoblast ends near the umbilicus; but in some mammals the hypoblastic diverticulum is prolonged to the inner surface of the chorion. In man, therefore, the umbilical cord consists of—1, An outer covering of amnion; 2, a core of modified mesoblast derived from the mesoblast of the allantois and the wall of the yolk-sac; 3, the remains of the hypoblastic portion of the yolk-sac, and 4, the two allantoic arteries and the allantoic vein.

In the early stages immediately after the separation of the amnion from the chorion, the embryo and its amnion are attached to the chorion by the allantois, and they are situated in a space which is part of the original cœlomic space between the somatic and splanchnic mesoblast (figs. 635 to 637). This space is continuous with the cœlom in the embryo at the umbilical orifice. In the later periods it is entirely obliterated, for the amnion is distended till its outer surface fuses with the inner surface of the chorion; and at the same time the umbilical cord is differentiated as the distending amnion surrounds and presses together the allantoic stalk and the remains of the yolk-sac (fig. 634).

At birth, on account of the contraction of the walls of the uterus and the pressure of the surrounding muscles, the liquor amnii forces part of the membrane formed by the fused amnion and chorion through the cervix uteri, which is gradually distended. When the distension is sufficient, the membrane ruptures, the liquor amnii escapes, and afterwards the child is forced out. It still remains connected with the placenta by the umbilical cord which is about 20 inches long, and this connection should not be severed for a few minutes, in order that as much blood as possible may be aspirated from the fœtal part of the placenta into the child as breathing commences.

After the child is expelled the contraction of the uterine wall continues and the placenta is separated and forced out. The separation gradually extends through the decidua, along the line of the stratum

spongiosum, and the fused chorion, amnion and decidua turned inside out, follow the placenta to which they are attached, constituting, with the placenta, the after-birth.

After the umbilical cord is tied and separated, the umbilical arteries inside the child become filled with blood-clot, and ultimately they are converted into fibrous cords, the so-called obliterated hypogastric arteries, and at the same time the allantois is also converted into a fibrous strand, the urachus, which extends from the apex of the bladder to the umbilicus.

Development of the Framework of the Body.

In the early stages of development, the only indication of a framework or skeleton is the notochordal rod of hypoblastic cells, which

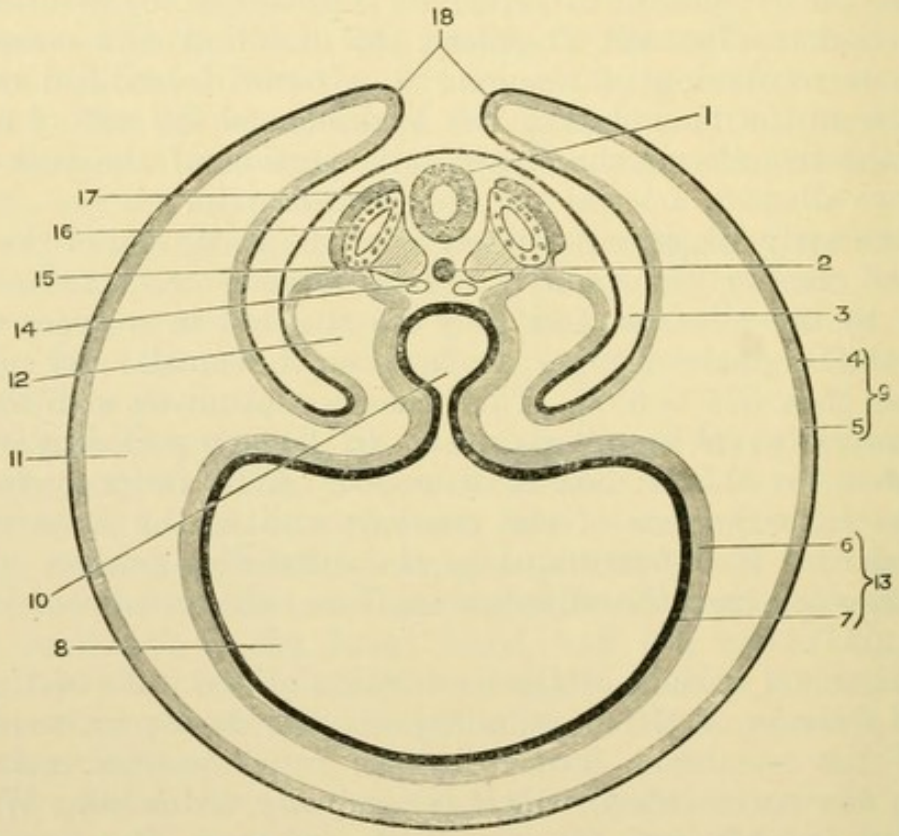


FIG. 641.—Diagram of a transverse section of an ovum showing differentiation of protovertebræ and formation of amnion folds, primitive intestine, and yolk-sac.

1. Spinal cord.
2. Notochord.
3. Amnion cavity.
4. Epiblast } 9. Somatopleur.
5. Somatic mesoblast }
6. Splanchnic mesoblast } 13. Splanchnopleur.
7. Hypoblast }
8. Yolk-sac.
10. Primitive intestine.
11. Cœlom (extra-embryonic).
12. Cœlom (intra-embryonic).
14. Primitive dorsal blood-vessel.
15. Scleratogenous part of protovertebra.
16. Muscle plate part of protovertebra.
17. Cutaneous lamella of protovertebra.
18. Amnion folds.

extends along the whole length of the dorsal wall of the primitive intestine beneath the neural tube, its anterior end being situated

immediately behind the position where the pituitary body is afterwards formed. In mammals the notochord disappears, except in the centres of the intervertebral discs, but in amphioxus and lampreys it persists as a permanent skeletal support, and in these cases it closely resembles cellular cartilage enclosed in a fibrous sheath. It is composed of a very insoluble protein-like substance, which, however, is not collagen. Collagen and gelatin (which is formed from collagen by boiling), are characteristic of true connective tissues which are formed from mesoblast; the notochord is hypoblastic. The notochord contains also, like all embryonic tissues, a large quantity of glycogen.

The rudiments from which the axial skeleton of the body is formed are the protovertebræ or mesoblastic somites (see p. 844). Each protovertebra separates into three parts:—1. An outer, the cutaneous lamella, from which the deeper parts of the skin and the subcutaneous tissues of the body are developed. 2. A middle portion, the muscle plate. From the muscle plates all the striped muscles of the body, with the exception of those of the heart, are formed. 3. A scleratogenous segment. The scleratogenous segments fuse together round the neural tube and the notochord, and in this way a continuous membranous vertebral column is formed. This is cleft on each side in every segment, for the passage of the nerve-roots and the accompanying blood-vessels. Part of the membranous column is converted first into cartilaginous and afterwards into bony vertebræ; other parts are transformed into intervertebral discs and ligaments, and the remainder forms the membranes which line the spinal canal and surround the spinal cord. From the sides of the vertebræ the ribs grow outwards and forwards in the thoracic region, and some of them meet together in front, and enter into the formation of the sternum or breast-bone.

The Limbs.—At first there are no limbs, and then they jut out as buds from the sides of the body. Each consists of an epiblastic covering and a core of mesoblast. The central part of the mesoblast condenses and forms the cartilaginous rudiments of the bones which afterwards become ossified, and it also forms the ligaments which connect the bones together. Buds from the muscle plates, opposite the limbs, grow into them to form the muscles, and nerves from the corresponding segments of the spinal cord enter the buds (fig. 642). Blood-vessels connected with the vessels of the body also appear.

The Head.—In the early stages the head is merely a rounded projection developed in the head fold of the embryo. Its anterior part is bent sharply downwards in front of the anterior end of the body in which the pericardium has been formed, and the cleft between the front of the head and the pericardium is the stomadæal space or

primitive mouth cavity (figs. 643, 644, 645). At this time there is no neck, but from the posterior part of the head to the side of the

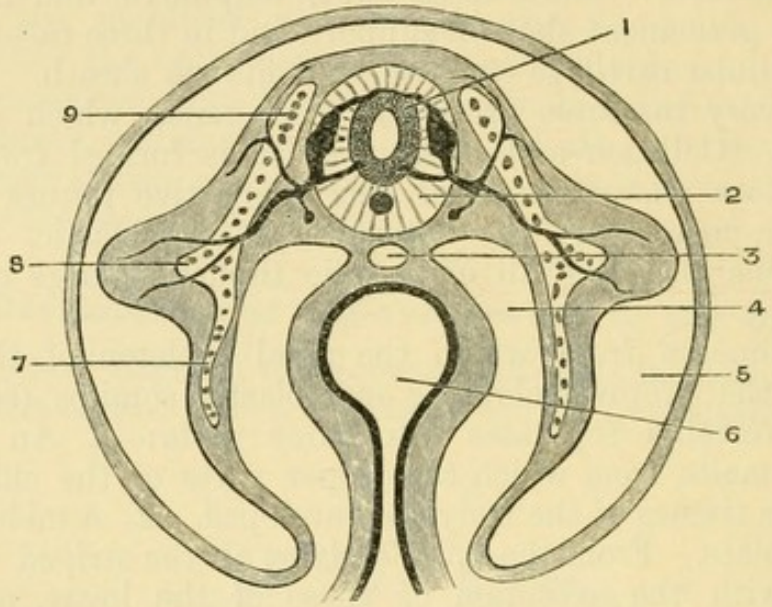


FIG. 642.—Diagram of a transverse section of embryo and amnion, showing extension of muscle plates, rudimentary limbs, and membranous vertebral column. 1, Spinal cord with nerve-roots; 2, membranous vertebral column, formed from fused scleratogenous segments of protovertebræ; 3, descending aorta; 4, cœlom; 5, amnion cavity; 6, primitive intestine; 7, muscle plate extending into body wall; 8, bud of muscle plate into limb; 9, muscle plate.

pericardium, a series of five visceral arches, with four intermediate clefts, extend round the sides of the foregut. As the neck forms, the visceral arches move forward with the head, and their lower ends meet in the middle line of the neck in front of the anterior end of the body; thus it comes about that the stomadæal space is now bounded laterally and below by the first or mandibular arches, and above by the anterior part of the head which is called the fronto-nasal process. The back of the space is bounded for a time by a thin membrane which separates the foregut from the stomadæum. Just in front of the upper end of this membrane a diverticulum projects from the stomadæum towards the brain—this is Rathke's pouch; it meets a downgrowth from the brain called the hypophysis, and the two structures unite to form the two lobes of the pituitary body. The membrane soon disappears, and the primitive mouth and the foregut form a continuous cavity. In the meantime two olfactory pits have appeared on the under surface of the fronto-nasal process, and they grow back into the roof of the stomadæum. These pits cut the fronto-nasal process into three parts, the mesial nasal process between them, and the lateral

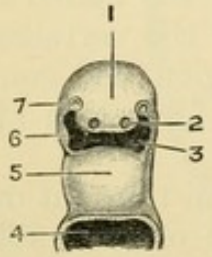


FIG. 643.—Diagram representing front view of anterior part of a very young embryo. 1, Fronto-nasal process of head; 2, olfactory pit; 3, stomadæum; 4, umbilical orifice; 5, pericardium; 6, mandibular arch; 7, eye.

nasal processes at the sides. Moreover, two little projections, the globular processes, grow down on each side of the middle line from the mesial nasal process. At this period the upper boundary of the orifice of the stomadæum is formed by the two globular processes separated by a small cleft, and the two lateral nasal processes separated from the globular processes by the olfactory pits, and the sides and the lower boundary of the orifice are formed by the first or mandibular arches. From the upper ends of the mandibular arches the maxillary processes grow forwards immediately beneath the eyeballs (which have appeared on the sides of the head), and as they

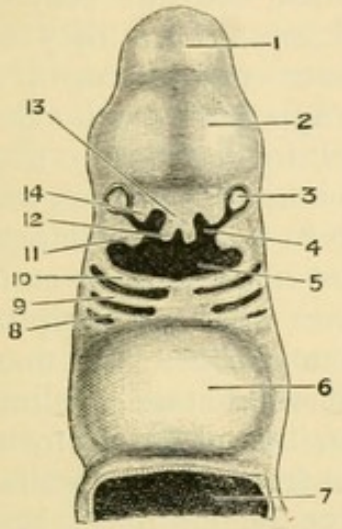


FIG. 644.—Diagram of anterior view of an embryo older than that shown in fig. 640. 1, Mid-brain; 2, fore-brain; 3, eye; 4, olfactory pit; 5, stomadæum; 6, pericardium; 7, umbilical orifice; 8, third visceral arch; 9, second visceral arch; 10, first or mandibular arch; 11, maxillary process of mandibular arch; 12, globular process; 13, mesial nasal process; 14, lateral nasal process.

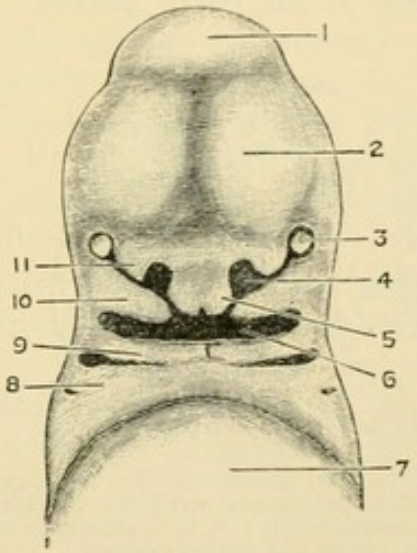


FIG. 645.—Diagram representing a later stage of development of the face than that shown in fig. 641. 1, Mid-brain; 2, fore-brain; 3, eye; 4, anterior nasal orifice; 5, globular process; 6, mouth; 7, pericardium; 8, second visceral arch; 9, first visceral arch; 10, maxillary process of first arch; 11, lateral nasal process.

grow they pass beneath the lateral nasal processes, and beneath the anterior ends of the olfactory depressions, and fuse with the globular processes which also fuse together. Thus the orifice of the stomadæal space is cut into three parts, the two nasal orifices and the mouth. The upper lip is formed by the fused globular and maxillary processes, and contains three lines of fusion—one in the middle line between the globular processes, and two more laterally placed between the maxillary processes and the globular processes. In certain cases the fusions do not take, and then clefts are left in the upper lip, and constitute the various forms of harelip. From the inner parts of the maxillary processes of opposite sides, palatal ledges grow across the stomadæal space; and meeting in the middle line, they fuse together

and separate the space into an upper or nasal and a lower or buccal space. If the palatal ledges fail to meet, cleft palate results. A cleft may also appear between the nasal orifice and the conjunctival sac, as a result of the absence of fusion between the maxillary process and the lateral nasal process. The lower boundary of the mouth orifice is formed by the mandibular arches.

Both the tissues of the fronto-nasal process and those of the mandibular arches take part in the formation of the skeleton of the head. The notochord extends forwards as far as the pituitary body in all vertebrates, and in some, protovertebral somites can be traced forwards to a similar point; but in mammals they are only distinct behind the ear in the occipital region, and even there they entirely disappear at an early period. In the lower vertebrates a bar of cartilage appears at each side of the notochord in the head; these are the parachordal cartilages, and they soon fuse to form a basilar plate in which the notochord is embedded. It becomes the basi-occipital and basi-sphenoid bones. In mammals, the parachordal stage is eliminated, and a basilar plate is formed at once. In front of the basilar plate two trabeculæ cranii embrace the pituitary body and extend forward into the fronto-nasal process, where they blend together to form an ethmovomerine plate; and from this processes extend down on each side, the nasal part of the stomadæal space forming the rudiments of the ethmoid and inferior turbinal bones, and a mesial process descends into a septum which has grown down from the under surface of the fronto-nasal process and united with the palate, dividing the nasal chamber into right and left halves. In this the vertical plate of the ethmoid and the vomer are ossified. The posterior parts of the trabeculæ fuse with the basilar plate and form the rudiment of the presphenoid. Posteriorly, and at the sides, cartilaginous plates grow over the cerebral vesicles; but in mammals the occipital region alone is roofed in by cartilage; the rest of the cranial vault being formed of membrane bones.

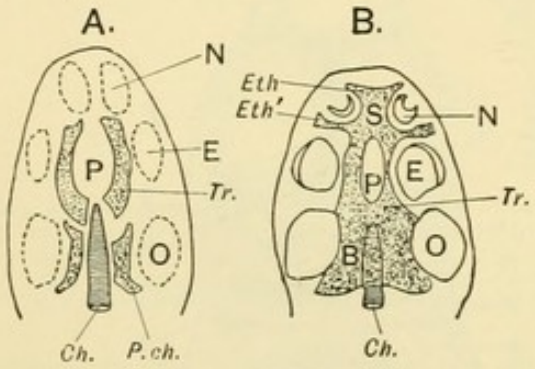


FIG. 646.—Diagrams of the cartilaginous cranium.

A, first stage. *Ch*, Notochord; *Tr*, trabeculæ cranii; *P.ch.*, parachordal cartilages; *P*, situation of pituitary body; *N*, *E*, *O*, situations of olfactory, visual, and auditory organs.

B, later stage. *B*, Basilar cartilages; *S*, nasal septum and ethmoidal cartilages; *Eth*, *Eth'*, prolongations of ethmoid around olfactory organ, completing the nasal capsule; *N*, *E*, *O*, *Ch*, *Tr*, *P*, as before. (After Wiedersheim.)

From the sides of the presphenoid, the lesser wings or orbito-sphenoids containing the optic foramina are developed, and from the sides of the basi-sphenoid the greater wings or alisphenoids. A cartilaginous capsule invests the auditory vesicle, and becomes connected to the parachordal cartilage on each side. It is called the

periotic capsule; it is replaced by bone, which constitutes the petrous and mastoid portions of the temporal bone.

Cartilaginous bars appear in the visceral arches, and from that in the mandibular arch on each side—Meckel's cartilage;—the symphysis of the jaw, the malleus, and possibly the incus are formed. The stapes is the result of a separate ossification round the stapedial artery. The remainder of the mandible is ossified in the membrane around the mandibular cartilage.

From the second bars the anterior part of the body of the hyoid bone, its small cornua, the stylo-hyoid ligaments, and the styloid processes are developed. The cartilages of the third arches give rise to the posterior part of the body of the hyoid, and its great cornua; the cartilages of the remaining arches take part in the formation of the cartilages of the larynx.

In mammals the clefts between the arches are merely grooves which do not communicate with the cavity of the foregut, as they do in fishes and amphibians. The outer depression of the first cleft forms the external auditory meatus, and the inner depression is converted into the tympanic cavity and the Eustachian tube. The remaining clefts disappear.

The cranial nerves are also associated with the arches and clefts. The third division of the fifth is distributed to the mandibular arch, its second division goes to the maxillary process, and its first division to the fronto-nasal process. The seventh is the nerve of the second arch, the ninth belongs to the third arch, and the remaining arches are associated with the tenth nerve.

Development of the Vascular System.

We have already seen that at an early stage of development, blood-vessels begin to form in the splanchnic mesoblast on the wall of the yolk-sac, outside the embryo, in an area called the area vasculosa. From the cephalic end of this area two longitudinal vessels run backwards through the embryonic region, and they terminate posteriorly in the caudal part of the area vasculosa (fig. 647). As they run through the embryonic region, which is still outspread on the surface of the ovum, they pass beneath the pericardium, and then beneath the inner parts of the protovertebræ, not far from the sides of the notochord. As the head and the tail folds of the embryo form, these longitudinal vascular tubes are bent, both in front and behind, and, after the bending, each consists of five parts. A dorsal part which extends along the dorsal wall of the alimentary canal; two ventral parts, one in front of the umbilicus and one behind that orifice, and two arches, a cephalic and a caudal, connecting the dorsal portion of each vessel with the anterior and posterior ventral portions respectively (figs. 636, 637, and

648). The blood flows from the anterior part of the yolk-sac wall into the anterior ventral parts of these primitive embryonic vessels by two channels, which are called the *omphalo-mesenteric veins*. The anterior ventral vessels into which the omphalo-mesenteric veins pass, lie, now

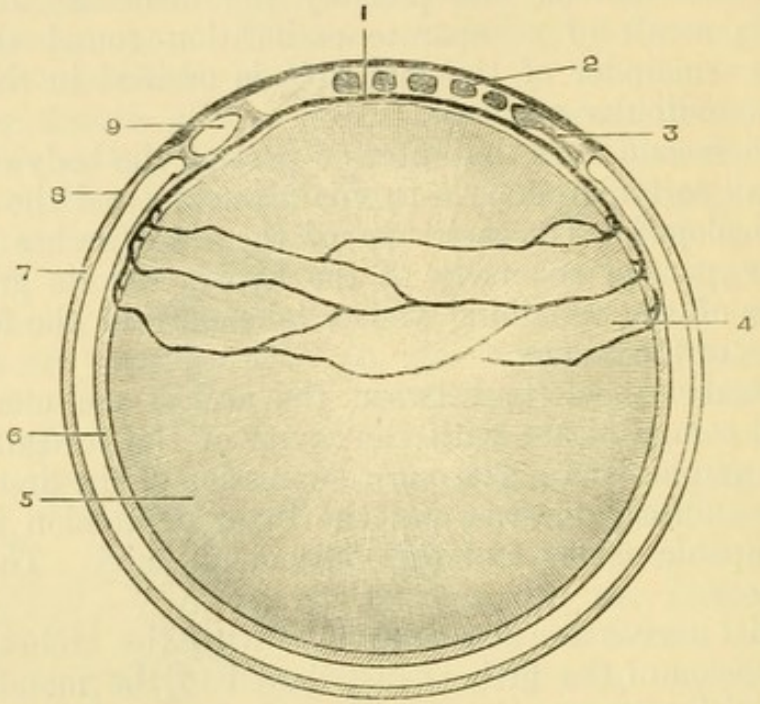


FIG. 647.—Diagram representing the arrangement of the primitive blood-vessels before the embryo is folded off from the ovum. 1, Primitive vessel of left side; 2, protovertebra; 3, primitive streak; 4, vascular area of yolk-sac; 5, non-vascular area of yolk-sac; 6, splanchnic mesoblast; 7, somatic mesoblast; 8, epiblast; 9, pericardium.

that the folding of the embryo has taken place, in the dorsal wall of the pericardium and on the ventral wall of the foregut; they are the primitive heart tubes, and their anterior ends run into the first cephalic aortic arches, which pass round the sides of the anterior end of the foregut into the primitive dorsal vessels. A little later the parts of the anterior ventral vessels in front of the heart are connected with the dorsal vessels by four additional arches, one in each visceral arch—that is, there are now five aortic arches on each side connecting the anterior parts of the ventral with the anterior parts of the dorsal vessels. The portions of the ventral vessels which lie behind the arches in the dorsal wall of the pericardium rapidly enlarge, and they fuse together to form the single heart, which is thus for a time a single longitudinal vessel. The parts of the ventral and dorsal vessels immediately behind each arch are called the roots of the arch.

In mammals, the first and second arches disappear, and their ventral roots become the external carotid artery. The third arches and the dorsal roots of the first and second arches form the internal carotids. The dorsal root of the third arch disappears on each side, and the ventral root forms the common carotid artery. The ventral

root of the right fourth arch becomes the innominate artery, and the arch itself takes part in the formation of the right subclavian artery. The dorsal roots of the right fourth and fifth arches and the dorsal part of the fifth arch itself disappear, and the ventral part of the fifth arch becomes the right pulmonary artery. The left fourth arch, with its dorsal and ventral roots, and the dorsal root of the left fifth arch, take part in the formation of the arch of the aorta. The left fifth arch persists till birth, then its dorsal part becomes a fibrous cord, the ligamentum arteriosum, and its ventral part forms the left pulmonary artery (fig. 650).

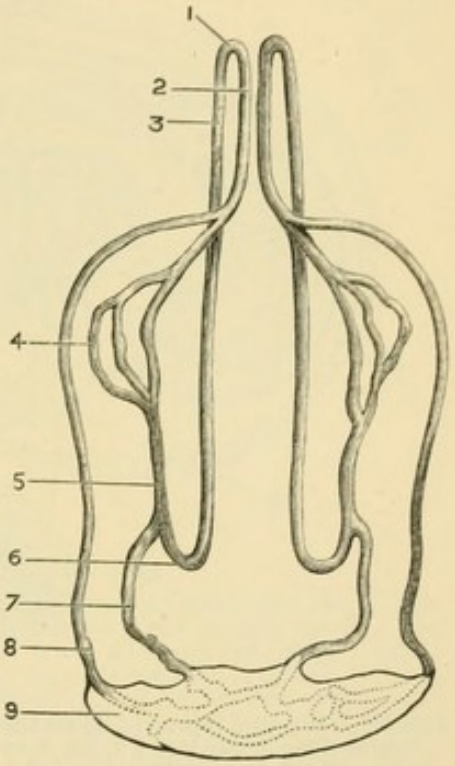


FIG. 648. — Diagram representing the primitive blood-vessels of the embryo. 1, First cephalic aortic arch; 2, anterior ventral part of primitive vessel; 3, dorsal part of primitive vessel; 4, vascular area of yolk-sac; 5, posterior ventral part of primitive vessel; 6, caudal aortic arch; 7, allantoic or umbilical branch; 8, umbilical or allantoic vein; 9, placenta.

The five aortic arches correspond with the gill arteries of fishes, but in mammals they never break up into capillaries, as in the fishes' gills. In amphibia three pairs persist throughout life. In reptiles the fourth pair remains throughout life as the permanent right and left aortæ. In birds the right fourth remains as the permanent aorta, curving over the right bronchus, whereas in mammals, the left fourth arch becomes the permanent aorta, curving over the left bronchus.

Behind the dorsal roots of the fifth arches the dorsal longitudinal vessels fuse together, as far back as the lumbar region, to form the descending aorta, and the lower or posterior end of this vessel is continued at first through the caudal arches into the posterior ventral portions of the longitudinal vessels which end on the yolk-sac (fig. 649). As soon as the allantois forms, each of the posterior ventral vessels gives off a large branch to it, and in front of the origin of this vessel it atrophies, so that now the dorsal vessels are continued through the caudal arches into the allantoic or umbilical arteries, which carry blood to the placenta, and new vessels of small size are given off from the descending aorta to the yolk-sac. A little later the primary caudal arches, which lie inside the posterior ends of the Wolffian ducts, are replaced by new arches, which pass outside the ducts, and connect the posterior ends of the dorsal longitudinal vessels with the allantoic arteries. At the same time the hind limbs appear, and each receives a branch from the corresponding dorsal vessel; this is the external iliac artery. After its appearance

the part of the dorsal vessel between it and the aorta is the common iliac artery, and the portion of the dorsal vessel behind it, together with the caudal arch, becomes the internal iliac or hypogastric artery.

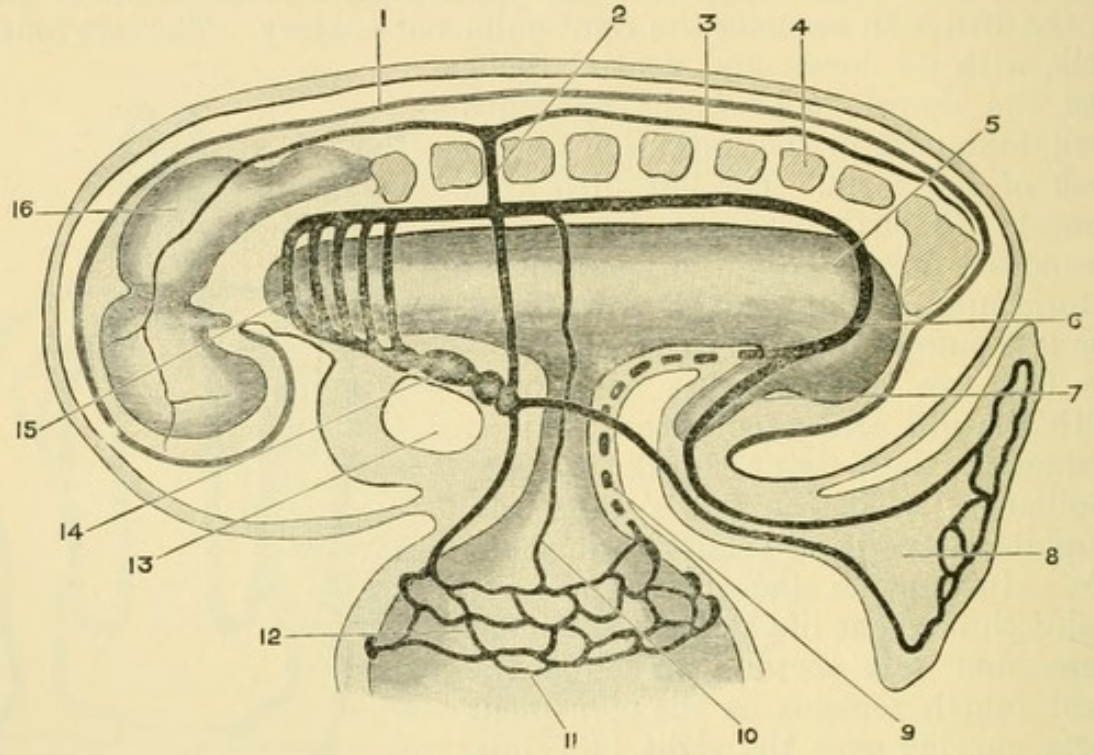


FIG. 649.—Diagram representing arrangement of primitive blood-vessels of left side of embryo. 1, Left primitive jugular vein; 2, left duct of Cuvier; 3, left cardinal vein; 4, protovertebra; 5, primitive intestine; 6, caudal aortic arch; 7, allantoic or umbilical artery; 8, placenta; 9, atrophied posterior ventral part of primitive vessel; 10, yolk-sac artery; 11, yolk-sac; 12, vascular area on yolk-sac; 13, pericardium; 14, heart; 15, cephalic aortic arch; 16, brain.

This is continued in the embryo along the ventral wall of the body as an umbilical artery to the placenta.

The Heart.—The simple longitudinal heart soon becomes separated by three transverse constrictions into four chambers, which are, from behind forwards, the sinus venosus, the auricle, the ventricle, and the aortic bulb (figs. 651 and 652). The sinus venosus receives the omphalo-mesenteric and other veins, and the aortic bulb terminates in the fifth arches and the ventral roots of the fourth arches. The sinus venosus is gradually absorbed into the auricle, and at the same time the heart tube bends so that the auricle is placed behind the ventricle and the aortic bulb—that is, between them and the wall of the foregut (figs. 653 and 654). As soon as the bending is completed each chamber is divided by septa into right and left halves, but an opening, the foramen ovale, remains in the interauricular septum till after birth. The aortic bulb is also divided into two parts: one of these is connected above with the fifth arches, which become the pulmonary arteries, and below with the right ventricle; it becomes, therefore, the stem of the pulmonary artery. The other

part, which is connected with the roots of the fourth arches above and the left ventricle below, forms the ascending part of the aorta.

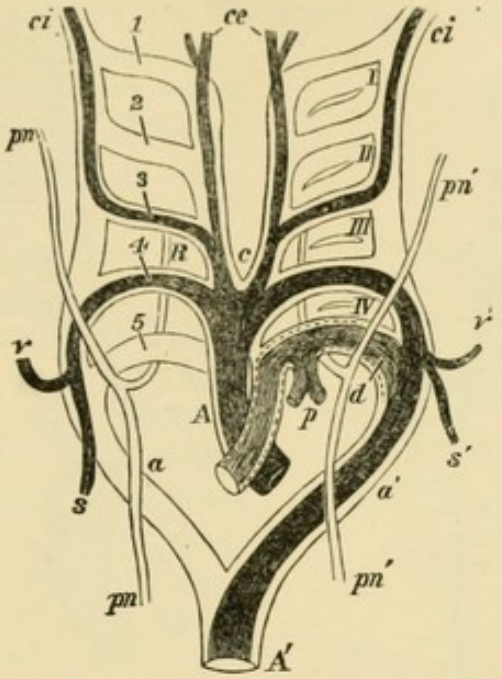


FIG. 650.—Diagram of the aortic arches in a mammal, showing transformations which give rise to the permanent arterial vessels. *A*, Primitive arterial stem or aortic bulb, now divided into *A*, the ascending part of the aortic arch, and *p*, the pulmonary; *a a'*, right and left aortic roots; *A'*, descending aorta; 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, the five primitive aortic or branchial arches; *I*, *II*, *III*, *IV*, the four branchial clefts which, for the sake of clearness, have been omitted on the right side. The permanent systemic vessels are deeply, the pulmonary arteries lightly, shaded; the parts of the primitive arches which are transitory are simply outlined; *c*, placed between the permanent common carotid arteries; *ce*, external carotid arteries; *ci*, internal carotid arteries; *s*, right subclavian, rising from the right aortic root beyond the fifth arch; *v*, right vertebral from the same, opposite the fourth arch; *v' s'*, left vertebral and subclavian arteries rising together from the left, or permanent aortic root, opposite the fourth arch; *p*, pulmonary arteries rising together from the left fifth arch; *d*, outer or back part of left fifth arch, forming ductus arteriosus; *p n*, *p n'*, right and left pneumogastric nerves descending in front of aortic arch, with their recurrent branches represented diagrammatically as passing behind, to illustrate the relations of these nerves respectively to the right subclavian artery (4) and the arch of the aorta and ductus arteriosus (*d*). (Allen Thomson, after Rathke.)

The Veins.—The veins of the embryo are:—1. The omphalo-mesenteric, which carry blood from the yolk-sac to the heart. 2. The umbilical or allantoic, bearing oxygenated blood from the placenta to the heart. 3. The primitive jugular veins, one on each side returning blood from the head, neck, and upper extremities. 4. The cardinal veins returning blood from the body walls, the Wolffian bodies, and the hind limbs. 5. The ducts of Cuvier, each of which receives a primitive jugular and a cardinal vein. Thus six veins terminate in the sinus venosus, and the blood passes through into the auricle (fig. 651). Both ducts of Cuvier retain their connection with the auricle, the right forming the lower part of the superior vena cava, and the left the oblique vein of Marshall in man, and the lower part of the left superior cava in some mammals.

The upper part of the primitive jugular vein on each side becomes the internal jugular. The lower part on the right side becomes the

right innominate vein, and the upper portion of the superior vena

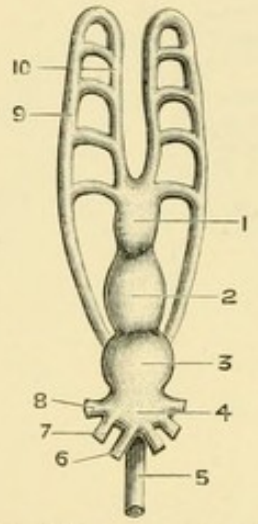


FIG. 651.—Diagram representing an anterior view of the primitive heart, aortic arches, and their roots. 1, Bulbus arteriosus; 2, ventricle; 3, auricle; 4, sinus venosus; 5, descending aorta; 6, omphalo-mesenteric vein; 7, umbilical vein; 8, duct of Cuvier; 9, dorsal roots of aortic arches; 10, ventral roots of aortic arches.

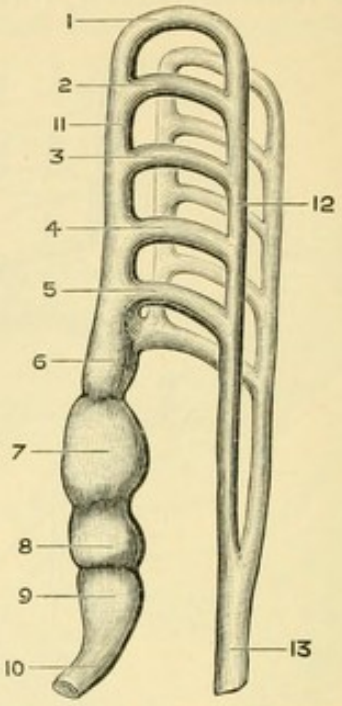


FIG. 652.—Diagram representing a side view of the primitive heart with the cephalic aortic arches and their roots. 1, First cephalic aortic arch; 2, second cephalic aortic arch; 3, third cephalic aortic arch; 4, fourth cephalic aortic arch; 5, fifth cephalic aortic arch; 6, bulbus arteriosus; 7, ventricle; 8, auricle; 9, sinus venosus; 10, omphalo-mesenteric vein (left); 11, ventral roots of aortic arches; 12, dorsal roots of aortic arches; 13, descending aorta.

cava. On the left side the lower part helps to form the left superior intercostal vein.

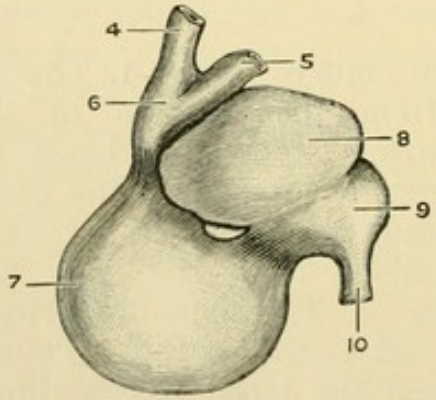


FIG. 653.—Diagram representing a side view of heart after it has folded on itself. 4, Ventral root of fourth aortic arch; 5, fifth aortic arch; 6, bulbus arteriosus; 7, ventricle; 8, auricle; 9, sinus venosus; 10, left omphalo-mesenteric vein.

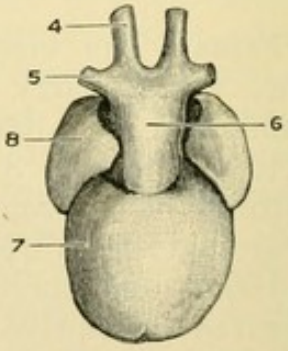


FIG. 654.—Diagram representing an anterior view of the heart after it has folded on itself. 4, Ventral root of fourth aortic arch; 5, fifth aortic arch; 6, bulbus arteriosus; 7, ventricle; 8, auricle.

The left innominate vein is a transverse anastomosis between the primitive jugular veins. The subclavian veins and the external

jugular veins are new formations, the former being developed in association with the growth of the upper limbs.

The cardinal veins receive the intercostal and lumbar veins from the walls of the body, and the veins from the Wolffian bodies and kidneys. Below the point of union with the external iliac vein from the hind limb the cardinal vein becomes the internal iliac vein. Above the external iliac vein the right cardinal vein forms the right common iliac vein, and the lower part of the inferior vena cava below the right renal vein. Above the right renal vein it becomes the vena azygos major. The parts of the left cardinal between the left lumbar veins disappear, and blood from the left lumbar veins and the left common iliac vein is carried across to the right cardinal, and subsequently to the inferior vena cava by a series of transverse anastomosing channels, of which the lowest becomes the left common iliac vein. The upper part of the left cardinal vein is also broken up, and its remains form the vertical parts of the minor azygos veins and lower part of the left superior intercostal vein. The transverse parts of the minor azygos veins are also developed from transverse anastomosing channels (fig. 655).

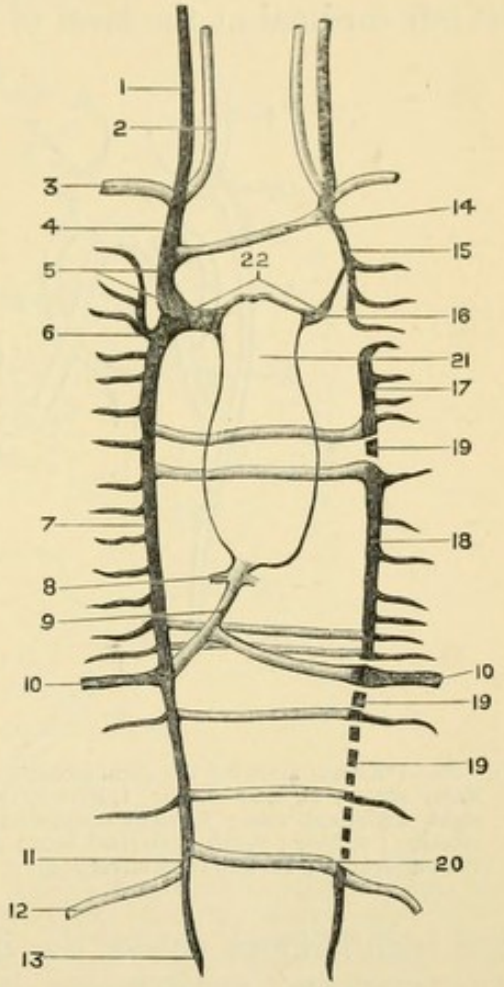


FIG. 655.—The dark are the primitive, the light the secondary veins, with the exception of the external and internal jugular veins. The dark portions entering the auricles are the remains of the primitive ducts of Cuvier. The dark portion above each duct of Cuvier, as far as the external and internal jugular veins, is the primitive jugular vein, and the dark portion below the duct of Cuvier is the cardinal vein. 1, External jugular vein; 2, internal jugular vein; 3, subclavian vein; 4, right innominate vein; 5, superior vena cava; 6, right superior intercostal vein; 7, vena azygos major; 8, right hepatic vein; 9, upper part of inferior vena cava; 10, renal vein; 11, right common iliac vein; 12, right external iliac vein; 13, right internal iliac vein; 14, left innominate vein; 15, left superior intercostal vein; 16, oblique vein of Marshall; 17, vena azygos minor superior; 18, vena azygos minor inferior; 19, atrophied part of left cardinal vein; 20, left common iliac vein; 21, auricle; 22, duct of Cuvier.

In the early stages both the omphalo-mesenteric and the right and left terminal branches of the umbilical vein end in the heart. When the liver forms, the omphalo-mesenteric veins end in venæ advehentes, which break up into capillaries in the liver, and the capillaries end in venæ revehentes, which become the hepatic veins (fig. 656). The left hepatic

vein joins the right hepatic vein to form a common trunk, which becomes the upper end of the inferior vena cava, and this is prolonged down to unite with the right cardinal at the level of the right renal vein; but before joining the right cardinal it gives off a branch to join the left cardinal at the level of the left renal vein, and thus the blood

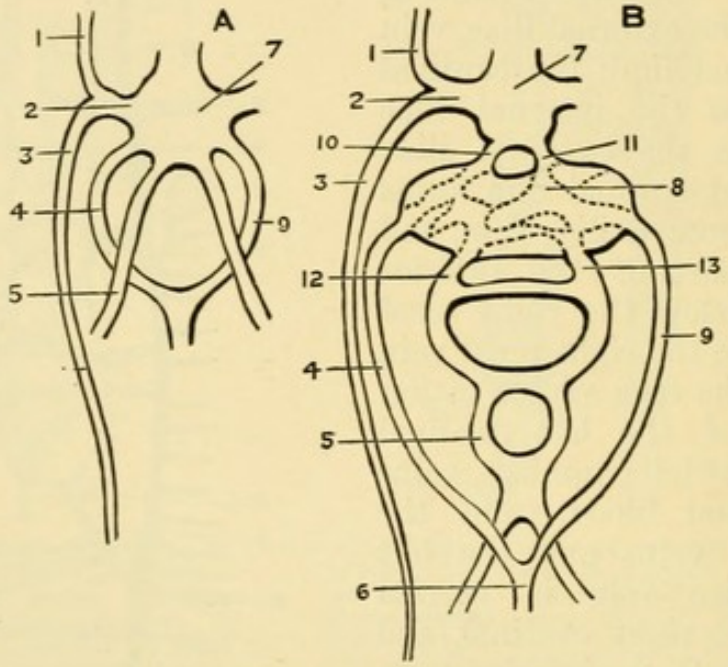


FIG. 656.—Diagram showing the arrangement and transformation of some of the primitive veins. A, Early stage; B, later stage. 1, Primitive jugular vein; 2, duct of Cuvier; 3, cardinal vein; 4, right umbilical vein; 5, right omphalo-mesenteric vein; 6, common umbilical vein; 7, sinus venosus; 8, liver; 9, left umbilical vein; 10, right vena revehens; 11, left vena revehens; 12, right vena advehens; 13, left vena advehens.

from both kidneys enters the inferior vena cava. In the meantime two transverse anastomoses have formed between the omphalo-mesenteric veins below the liver, and still lower the two veins fuse together; thus two loops are formed through which the duodenum passes. The veins from the intestine open into the fused trunks, and the splenic vein enters the left vein at the level of the lower transverse anastomosis. Subsequently the left side of the upper and the right side of the lower loop disappear, and the portal vein is produced from the remains. In the meantime the right umbilical vein has disappeared, and the left has united with the left omphalo-mesenteric vein at the point where the latter ends in the left vena advehens. From this point a direct channel opens up beneath the liver to the upper part of the inferior vena cava; this is the ductus venosus, and it conducts the greater part of the oxygenated blood from the umbilical vein directly to the inferior vena cava, and so to the right auricle; but part of the umbilical blood passes into the liver with the omphalo-mesenteric blood.

A pulmonary vein forms and carries blood from the lungs to the

left auricle. It is subsequently replaced first by two veins, one from each lung, and afterwards four veins, two from each lung.

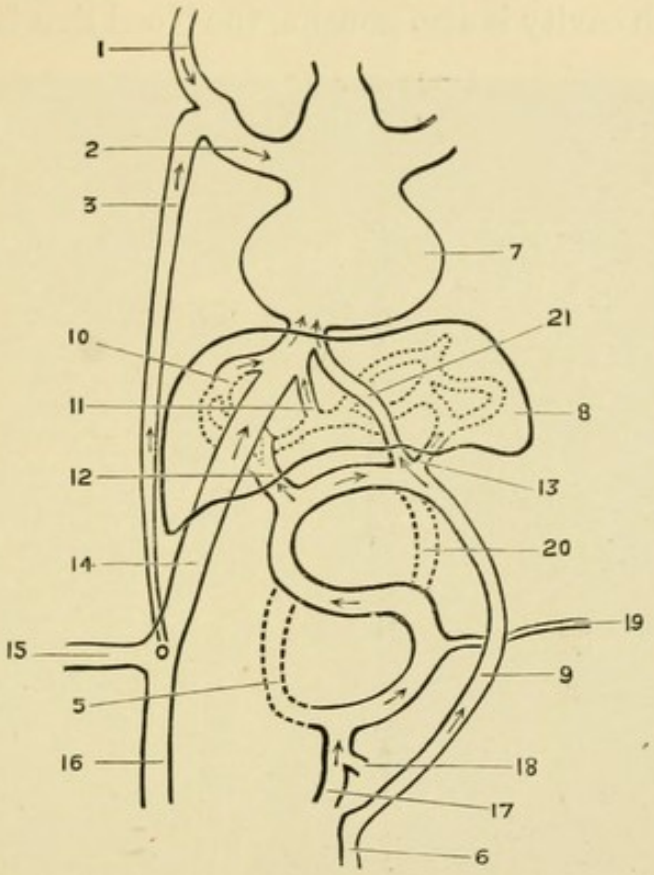


FIG. 657.—Diagram representing a later stage in the development of the veins than that shown in fig. 656. 1, Primitive jugular vein; 2, duct of Cuvier; 3, upper part of cardinal vein, now vena azygos major; 5, remains of light lower limb of loop formed by fusion of omphalo-mesenteric veins; 6, common umbilical vein; 7, sinus venosus; 8, liver; 9, left branch of umbilical vein; 10, right hepatic vein; 11, left hepatic vein; 12, right vena advehens; 13, left vena advehens; 14, upper part of inferior vena cava; 15, right renal vein; 16, lower part of inferior vena cava (cardinal vein); 17, fused part of omphalo-mesenteric vein; 18, vein from alimentary canal; 19, splenic vein; 20, remains of left upper limb of loop formed by fusion of omphalo-mesenteric veins; 21, ductus venosus.

CIRCULATION OF BLOOD IN THE FŒTUS

The circulation of blood in the fœtus differs considerably from that of the adult. It will be well, perhaps, to begin its description by tracing the course of the blood, which, after being carried to the placenta by the two umbilical arteries, has returned, oxygenated and replenished, to the fœtus by the umbilical vein.

It is at first conveyed to the under surface of the liver, and there the stream is divided,—a part of the blood passing straight on to the inferior vena cava, through a venous canal called the *ductus venosus*, while the remainder passes into the portal vein, and reaches the inferior vena cava after circulating through the liver. Whether, however, by the direct route through the ductus venosus or by the roundabout way through the liver,—all the blood which is returned

from the placenta by the umbilical vein reaches the inferior vena cava at last, and is carried by it (together with the blood from the lower part of the body and lower limbs) to the right auricle of the heart, into which cavity is also pouring the blood that has circulated in

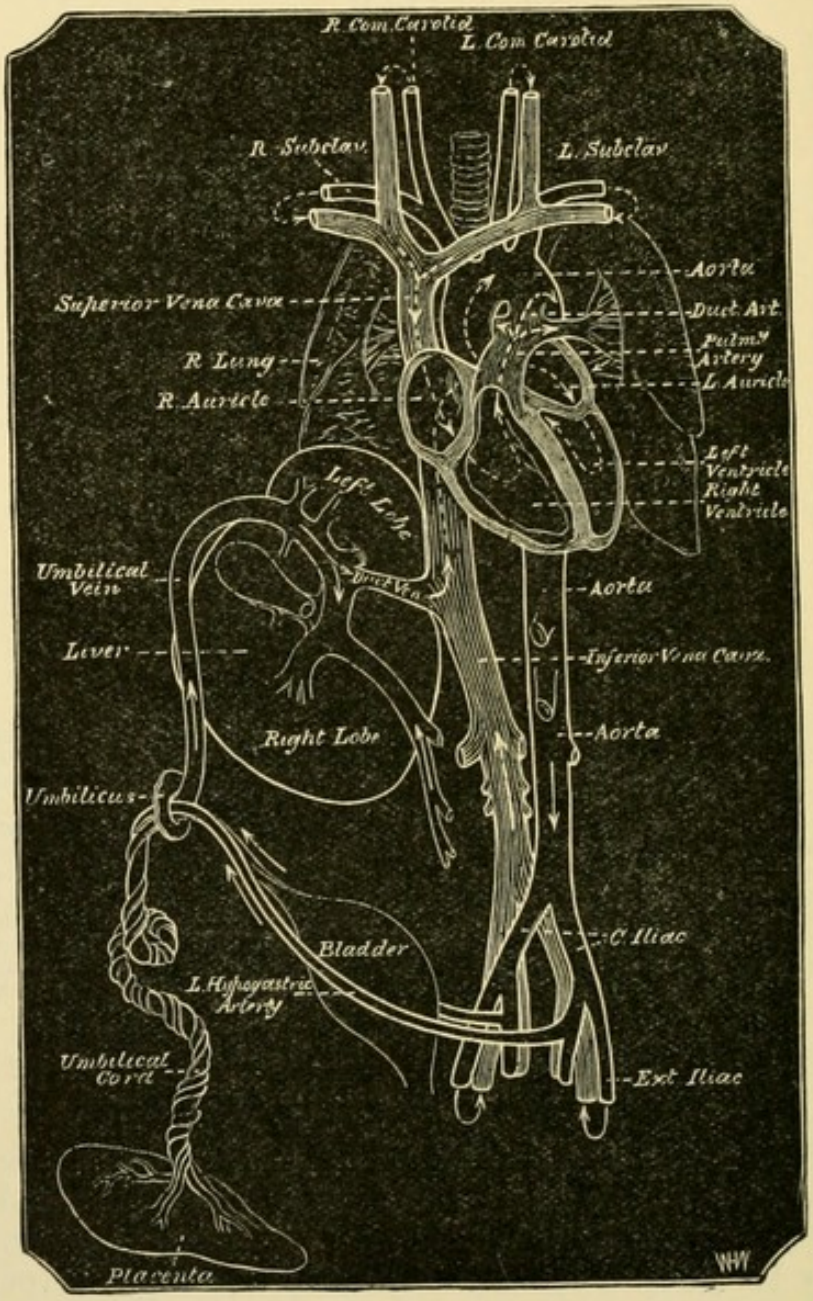


FIG. 658.—Diagram of the Fœtal Circulation.

the head and neck and arms, and has been brought to the auricle by the superior vena cava. It might be naturally expected that the two streams of blood would be mingled in the right auricle, but such is not the case, or only to a slight extent. The blood from the superior vena cava—the less pure fluid of the two—passes almost exclusively into the right ventricle, through the auriculo-ventricular opening, just

as it does in the adult; while the blood of the inferior vena cava is directed by the fold of the lining membrane of the heart, called the *Eustachian valve*, through the foramen ovale into the left auricle, whence it passes into the left ventricle, and out of this into the aorta, and thence to all the body, but chiefly to the head and neck. The blood of the superior vena cava, which, as before said, passes into the right ventricle, is sent out from there in *small amount* through the pulmonary artery to the lungs, and thence to the left auricle, by the pulmonary veins, as in the adult. The greater part, however, does not go to the lungs, but instead, passes through a canal, the *ductus arteriosus*, leading from the pulmonary artery into the aorta just below the origin of the three great vessels which supply the upper parts of the body; and there meeting that part of the blood of the inferior vena cava which has not gone into these large vessels, it is distributed with it to the trunk and other parts—a portion passing out by way of the two umbilical *arteries* to the placenta. From the placenta it is returned by the umbilical *vein* to the under surface of the liver, from which the description started.

Changes after Birth.—Immediately after birth the foramen ovale begins to close, and so do the ductus arteriosus and ductus venosus, as well as the umbilical vessels; the closure is completed in a few days, so that the circulation then takes the course it traverses for the rest of life.

Development of the Nervous System.

The nervous system originates from the thickened walls of the medullary groove, which by the meeting of the dorsal ridges is converted into the medullary canal. These walls are composed entirely of epiblast. The anterior part of this mass becomes the brain, the rest of it the spinal cord; the canal itself is seen in the adult as the ventricles of the brain and central canal of the spinal cord. The nerves are formed of epiblast too; they are outgrowths from masses of cells called neuroblasts, the primitive nerve-cells. In the case, however, of the olfactory and optic nerves we have not to deal with solid outgrowths, but with hollow protrusions from the brain, which become solid at a later stage.

The Spinal Cord.—The cavity formed by the closure of the neural canal soon becomes a cleft running from before backwards. It is bounded at first by columnar epithelium; these cells afterwards become ciliated; on their exterior is a homogeneous basement membrane. The wall soon becomes thicker, and the basement membrane is thus separated further and further from the central canal. This increase in thickness is due in part to the increase in length of the columnar cells which are called *spongioblasts:* in part to the appearance of new cells. The inner part of the columnar lining retains

its palisade-like character, and forms ultimately the lining epithelium of the central canal. The external ends of the cells break up into a reticulum called the *myelospongium*, and this is limited externally by the basement membrane at the circumference. The myelospongium forms the neuroglia.

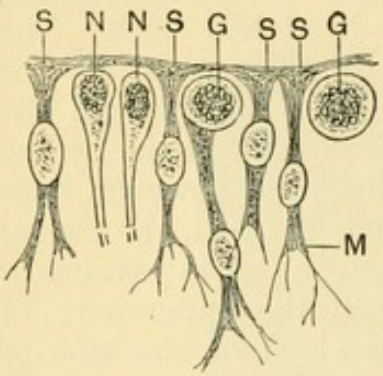


FIG. 659.—Inner ends of spongioblasts (S), with germinal cells (G) between them. NN, neuroblasts which have resulted from the division of a germinal cell; M, myelospongium formed by the branching outer ends of the spongioblasts. (After His.)

Between the inner ends of the spongioblasts (fig. 659, S) numerous rounded cells called *germinal cells* (G) next appear. These rapidly divide, and so form *neuroblasts* (N). The neuroblasts are the primitive nerve-cells. They are pear-shaped; each has a large oval nucleus, and its tapering stalk becomes the axis cylinder process of the adult nerve-cell. At a later period other processes, the dendrites, grow out from the cell-body. The nerve sheaths are formed later.

The neuroblasts collect into groups, one of which, especially large, is at the situation of the future anterior horn; the processes of the primitive nerve-cells pass out of the cord as the beginnings of the anterior roots (fig. 660). The somewhat oblique coursing of these fibres before they leave the cord forms the beginning of the anterior white column. The posterior white columns simultaneously begin to appear on each side of the narrow dorsal part of the canal. They are formed by the posterior roots entering the cord.

As the cornua of grey matter grow out from the central mass, the anterior fissure and the posterior septum of the cord begin to appear. The anterior or ventral fissure is simply a cleft between the enlarging lateral halves of the cord. The posterior septum is formed by a condensation of the neuroglia in the dorsal wall of the neural canal. The lateral columns are formed by the processes from the cells of the cord and processes from neuroblasts in the brain which grow down in the sides of the cord, and become medullated at a later period. The membranes and blood-vessels are formed from mesoblast.

Up to the fourth month the cord and vertebral canal increase in length *pari passu*, but after that, the vertebral canal grows faster, so that at birth the coccygeal end of the cord is opposite the third lumbar, and in the adult opposite the first lumbar vertebra. This gives an obliquity to the lower nerve roots, which, together with the *filum terminale*, form the *cauda equina*.

The Nerves.—Some fibres grow from the spinal cord and form the anterior roots (p. 873, fig. 660). The posterior roots are formed in the following way:—

Along the dorsal aspect of the primitive cord a crest of epiblast appears, the *neural crest*. Enlargements of this appear opposite the

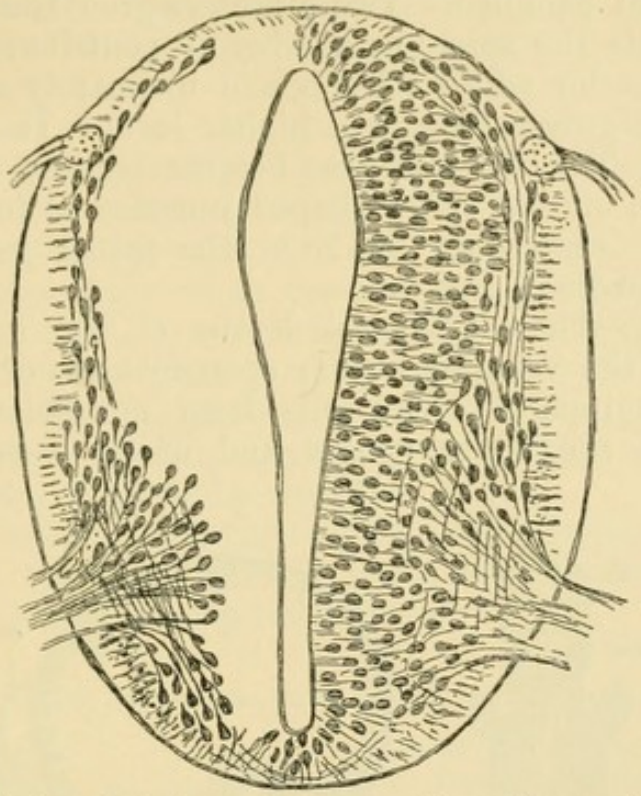


FIG. 660.—Section of spinal cord of a four weeks human embryo. The posterior roots are continued within the cord into a small longitudinal bundle, which is the rudiment of the posterior white column. The anterior roots are formed by the convergence of the processes of the neuroblasts. The latter, along with the elongated cells of the myelospongium, compose the grey matter. (His.)

middle of each pair of protovertebræ; they grow downwards on each side, and losing their attachment to the cord, they become isolated

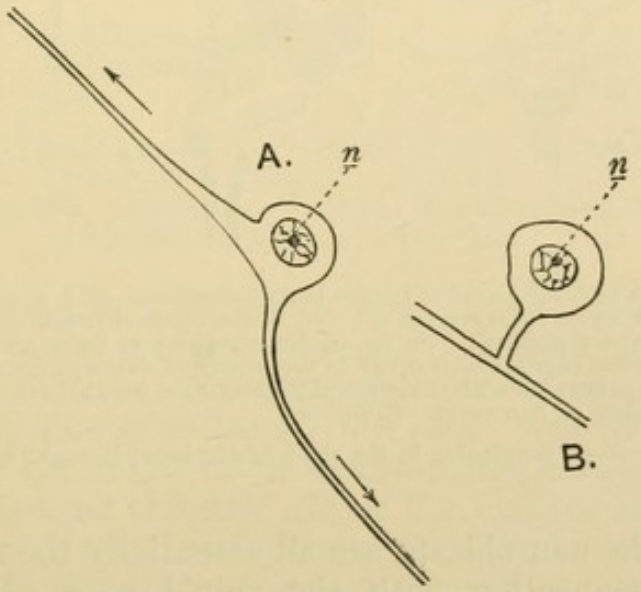


FIG. 661.—A, Bipolar cell from spinal ganglion of a 4½ weeks embryo (after His). *n*, Nucleus; the arrows indicate the direction in which the nerve processes grow, one to the spinal cord, the other to the periphery. B, a cell from a spinal ganglion of the adult; the two processes have coalesced to form a T-shaped junction. (Diagrammatic.)

islands of epiblast, each of which contains numerous neuroblasts; each island forms a spinal ganglion, and the neuroblasts within it become the cells of that ganglion. Two processes grow from each cell; one directed towards the spinal cord, where it contributes to the formation of the posterior white column, and ultimately arborises around the cells of the grey matter at a higher level. The other grows to the periphery. The two processes become blended in the first part of their course, and so the T-shaped junction is formed (fig. 661). Small portions segmented off from the spinal ganglia form the sympathetic ganglia.

The Brain.—The histological details of the formation of the epithelium of the ventricles from spongioblasts, of neuroglia from the myelospongium, of nerve-cells from neuroblasts, and of the nerve-fibres of the white matter and of the nerves as the out-

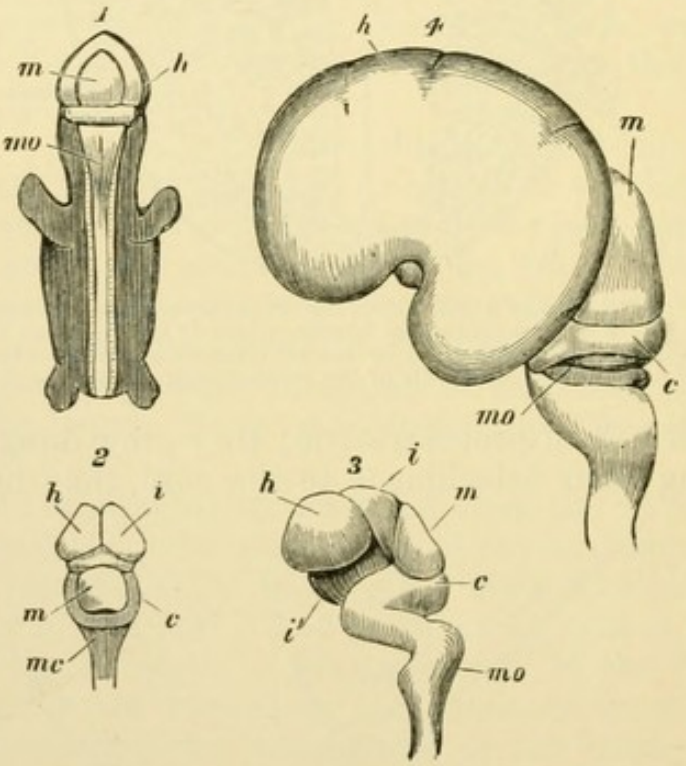


FIG. 662.—Early stages in development of human brain (magnified). 1, 2, 3, are from an embryo about seven weeks old; 4, about three months old. *m*, Middle cerebral vesicle (mesencephalon); *c*, cerebellum; *m o*, medulla oblongata; *i* (in fig. 3), diencephalon; *h*, telencephalon; *i'*, infundibulum; fig. 3 shows the several curves which occur in the course of development; fig. 4 is a lateral view, showing the great enlargement of the cerebral hemispheres which have covered in the thalami, leaving the optic lobes, *m*, uncovered. (Kölliker.)

N.B.—In fig. 2 the line *i* terminates in the right hemisphere; it ought to be continued into the diencephalon.

growths from the neuroblasts, are all essentially the same, as already described in connection with the spinal cord. But the grosser anatomical details differ.

The front portion of the medullary canal is almost from the first

widened out and divided into three vesicles. From the anterior vesicle the two primary optic vesicles are budded off laterally: their further history will be traced in the next section. Somewhat later the same vesicle divides into two, and thus the telencephalon and diencephalon are formed.

In the dorsal wall of the posterior (third) cerebral vesicle, a thickening appears (rudimentary cerebellum) which becomes separated from the rest of the vesicle by a deep inflection.

At this time there are two chief curvatures of the brain (fig. 662). (1.) A sharp bend of the whole cerebral mass downwards round the end of the notochord, by which the anterior vesicle, which was the highest of the three, is bent downwards, and the middle one comes to occupy the highest position. (2.) A sharp bend, with the convexity forwards, which runs in beneath the rudimentary cerebellum separating it from the medulla.

Thus, five fundamental parts of the fœtal brain may be distinguished, which, together with the parts developed from them, may be presented in the following tabular view:—

TABLE OF PARTS DEVELOPED FROM FUNDAMENTAL PARTS OF BRAIN.

I. Anterior Primary Vesicle.	First Secondary Vesicle, Telencephalon, or Fore-brain.	Anterior end of third ventricle, foramen of Monro, lateral ventricles, cerebral hemispheres, corpora striata, corpus callosum, fornix, lateral ventricles, olfactory bulb.	
	Second Secondary Vesicle, Diencephalon, or Twixt-brain.	Thalami optici, pineal gland, part of pituitary body, third ventricle, optic nerve and retina, infundibulum.	
II. Middle Primary Vesicle.	Third Secondary Vesicle, Mesencephalon, or Mid-brain.	Corpora quadrigemina, crura cerebri, aqueduct of Sylvius.	
III. Posterior Primary Vesicle.	Fourth Secondary Vesicle, or Metencephalon.	Fourth ventricle.	Cerebellum and Pons.
	Fifth Secondary Vesicle, or Myelencephalon.	Fourth ventricle.	Medulla oblongata.

The cerebral hemispheres formed by the bifurcation of the telencephalon grow rapidly upwards and backwards, while from their inferior surfaces the olfactory bulbs bud out. The middle cerebral vesicle (mesencephalon) for some time is the most prominent part of the fœtal brain, and in fishes, amphibia, and reptiles, it remains uncovered through life as the optic lobes. But in birds the growing cerebral hemispheres thrust the optic lobes down laterally, and in mammalia completely overlap them.

In the lower mammalia the backward growth of the hemispheres ceases in front of the cerebellum, but in the higher groups, such as the

monkeys and man, they grow still further back, until they completely cover in the cerebellum, so that on looking down on the brain from above, the cerebellum is quite concealed from view. The surface of the hemispheres is at first quite smooth, but as early as the third month the great Sylvian fissure begins to be formed (fig. 663).

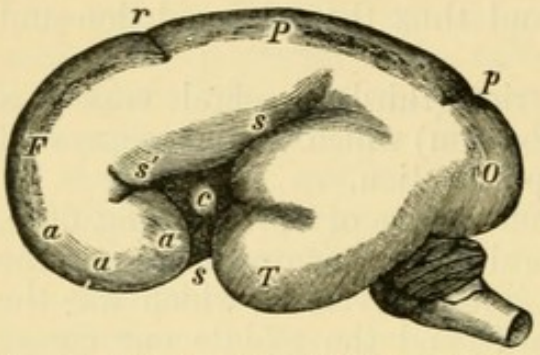


FIG. 663.—Side view of fœtal brain at six months, showing commencement of formation of the principal fissures and convolutions. *F*, Frontal lobe; *P*, parietal; *O*, occipital; *T*, temporal; *a a a*, commencing frontal convolutions; *s*, Sylvian fissure; *s'*, its anterior division; *c*, within it the central lobe or island of Reil; *r*, fissure of Rolando; *p*, parieto-occipital fissure. (R. Wagner.)

The next to appear is the parieto-occipital fissure; these two great fissures, unlike the rest of the sulci, are formed by a curving round of the whole cerebral mass.

In the fifth month the fissure of Rolando appears: from this time till the end of fœtal life the brain grows rapidly in size, and the convolutions appear in quick succession; first the great primary ones are sketched out, then the secondary ones. The commissures of the brain, and the corpus callosum, are developed by the growth of fibres across the middle line.

The Hippocampus major is formed by the folding in of the grey matter from the exterior into the lateral ventricles.

The Eye.—Soon after the first three cerebral vesicles have become distinct from each other, the anterior one sends out a lateral vesicle from each side (primary optic vesicle), which grows out towards the free surface, its cavity communicating with that of the

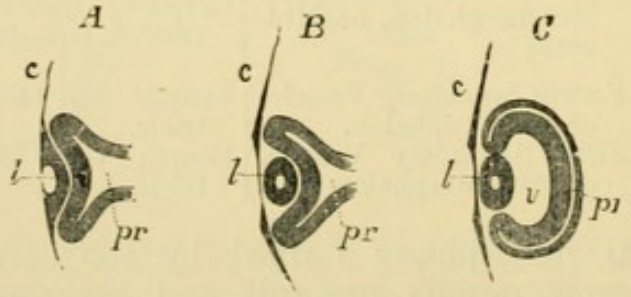


FIG. 664.—Longitudinal section of the primary optic vesicle in the chick, magnified (from Remak).—A, from an embryo of sixty-five hours; B, a few hours later; C, of the fourth day; *c*, the corneous layer or epidermis, presenting in A the open depression for the lens, which is closed in B and C; *l*, the lens follicle and lens; *pr*, the primary optic vesicle; in A and B, the pedicle which forms the optic nerve is shown; in C, the section being to the side of the pedicle, the latter is not shown; *v*, the secondary optic vesicle and vitreous humour.

cerebral vesicle through the canal in its pedicle. It remains connected to the diencephalon. It is soon met and invaginated by an ingrowing process from the epiblast of the surface (fig. 664).

This process of the epiblast is at first a depression, which ultimately becomes closed in at the edges so as to produce a hollow ball, which is thus completely severed from the epidermis with which it was originally continuous. From this hollow ball the crystalline lens is developed. The way in which this occurs has been described in a previous chapter (see p. 782). As the lens grows inwards, the anterior wall of the primary optic vesicle is forced back nearly into contact with the posterior, and thus the primary optic vesicle is almost obliterated. The cells in the anterior wall of the optic vesicle are much longer

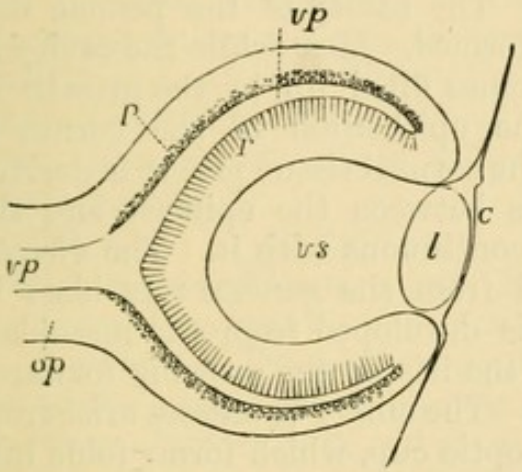


FIG. 665.—Diagrammatic sketch of a vertical longitudinal section through the eyeball of a human fœtus of four weeks. The section is a little to the side, so as to avoid passing through the ocular cleft; *c*, the cuticle where it becomes later the corneal epithelium; *l*, the lens; *op*, optic nerve formed by the pedicle of the primary optic vesicle; *vp*, primary medullary cavity or optic vesicle; *p*, the pigment layer of the retina; *r*, the inner wall forming the remaining layers of the retina; *vs*, secondary optic vesicle containing the rudiment of the vitreous humour. × 100. (Kölliker.)

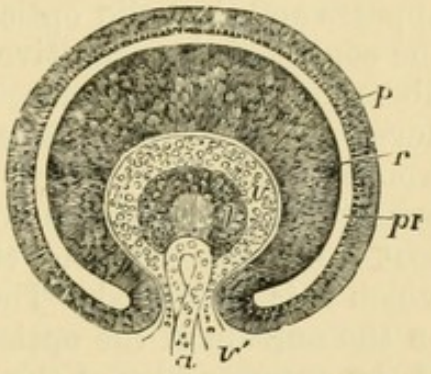


FIG. 666.—Transverse vertical section of the eyeball of a human embryo of four weeks. The anterior half of the section is represented: *pr*, the remains of the cavity of the primary optic vesicle; *p*, the inner part of the outer layer forming the retinal pigment; *r*, the thickened inner part giving rise to the other structures of the retina; *v*, the commencing vitreous humour within the secondary optic vesicle; *v'*, the ocular cleft through which the loop of the central blood-vessel, *a*, projects from below; *l*, the lens with a central cavity. × 100. (Kölliker.)

than those of the posterior wall; from the former all the layers of the retina are developed, except the layer of pigment cells which is formed from the latter.

The cup-shaped hollow in which the lens is now lodged is termed the secondary optic vesicle; its walls are complete except below where a slit exists, known as the choroidal fissure.

The cavity of the secondary optic cup is filled by processes of the neuroglia cells of the retina. Amidst these a process of vascular mesoblast projects through the choroidal fissure, and by the union of the two the vitreous humour, the lens capsule, and the capsulo-pupillary membrane are formed. In mammals the mesoblastic process projects, not only into the secondary optic vesicle, but also into the pedicle of the primary optic vesicle, invaginating it for some distance from

beneath, and thus carrying up the *arteria centralis retinæ* into its permanent position in the centre of the optic nerve.

This invagination of the optic nerve does not occur in birds, and consequently no arteria centralis retinæ exists in them. But they possess an important permanent relic of the original protrusion of the mesoblast through the choroidal fissure, in the *pecten*, while a remnant of the same fissure sometimes occurs in man under the name coloboma iridis. The cavity of the primary optic vesicle becomes completely obliterated, and the rods and cones get into apposition with the pigment layer of the retina. The inner segments of the rods are the first formed, then the outer. The cavity of the pedicle disappears and the solid optic nerve is formed. Meanwhile the cavity in the centre of the primitive lens becomes filled up by the growth of fibres from its posterior wall. The epithelium of the cornea is developed from the epiblast, while the corneal tissue proper is derived from the mesoblast which intervenes between the epiblast and the primitive lens which was originally continuous with it. The *sclerotic* coat is developed round the eyeball from the general mesoblast in which it is imbedded. The *choroid* is developed from the mesoblast on the outside of the optic cup, and the iris by the growing forwards of the anterior edge of the optic cup. The ciliary processes arise from the hypertrophy of the edge of the optic cup, which forms folds into which the choroidal mesoblast grows, and in which blood-vessels and pigment-cells develop.

The iris is completed rather late. It is formed by the anterior part of the optic cup, accompanied by a layer of mesoblast from the anterior part of the choroid, projecting inwards between the lens and the cornea. In the eye of a mammalian fœtus, the pupil is closed by a delicate membrane, the *membrana pupillaris*, which forms the front portion of a highly vascular membrane that surrounds the lens, and is named the *membrana capsulo-pupillaris*. It is supplied with blood by a branch of the *arteria centralis retinæ*, which passes forwards to the back of the lens, and there subdivides. This branch of the arteria centralis is obliterated in the adult, and is then called the canal of Stilling. The membrana capsulo-pupillaris disappears in the human subject a short time before birth.

The eyelids of the human subject and mammiferous animals, like those of birds, are first developed in the form of folds. They extend over the globe of the eye until they meet and become firmly agglutinated to each other. But before birth, or in the carnivora after birth, they separate.

The Ear.—Very early in the development of the embryo a depression or ingrowth of the epiblast occurs on each side of the head, which deepens and soon becomes a closed follicle. This *primary otic vesicle* sinks down to the side of the hind-brain; from it are

developed the epithelial lining of the *membranous* labyrinth of the internal ear, consisting of the utricle, saccule, the semicircular canals and the scala media of the cochlea. The surrounding mesoblast gives rise to the various fibrous bony and cartilaginous parts which complete and enclose this membranous labyrinth, the bony semicircular canals, the walls of the cochlea with its scala vestibuli and scala tympani.

The Eustachian tube, the cavity of the tympanum, and the external auditory passage, are the remains of the first or hyo-mandibular cleft. The membrana tympani divides the cavity of this cleft into the tympanum, and the external meatus. The mucous membrane of the pharynx, which is prolonged in the form of a diverticulum through the Eustachian tube into the tympanum, and the external cutaneous system come into relation with each other at this point; the two structures are separated only by the membrane of the tympanum.

The pinna or external ear is developed from a process of integument in the neighbourhood of the first and second visceral arches, and probably corresponds to the gill-cover (operculum) in fishes.

The Nose.—The nose originates, like the eye and ear, in a depression of the superficial epiblast at each side of the fronto-nasal process (primary olfactory pit), which is at first in front of the cavity of the primitive mouth, and gradually extends backwards into its roof (p. 859).

The olfactory bulbs of the brain lie in close relation with the roofs of the olfactory pits, and the olfactory nerves are outgrowths from special bipolar nerve-cells imbedded in the epithelium of the pit (see p. 748).

Development of the Alimentary Canal.

The alimentary canal in the earliest stages of its development consists of three parts—the fore- and hind-gut ending blindly at each end of the body, and a middle segment which communicates freely on its ventral surface with the cavity of the yolk-sac through the vitelline or omphalo-mesenteric duct.

From the fore-gut are formed the lower and back part of the mouth, the pharynx, œsophagus, stomach, and first and second parts of the duodenum; from the hind-gut, the lower end of the colon, the rectum, the bladder, the urethra in the female, and part of the urethra in the male. The upper and front part of the mouth, and the nasal chambers are developed from the stomadæal space (p. 859).

At the other end of the alimentary canal the anus is formed by a circular elevation of the surface tissues and the breaking down of

the septum which separates the posterior end of the hind-gut from the exterior. When the septum does not break down, or when the posterior part of the hind-gut is abnormally obliterated, the condition known as imperforate anus results.

The middle portion of the digestive canal becomes more and more closed in, till its wide communication with the yolk-sac becomes narrowed down to a small duct (vitelline). This duct usually completely disappears in the adult, but occasionally the proximal portion remains as a diverticulum from the intestine, Meckel's diverticulum. Sometimes a remnant of the diverticulum forms a fibrous cord which connects a part of the intestine to the umbilicus. Such a cord has been known to cause, in after-life, strangulation of the bowel and death.

The primitive alimentary canal lies in the form of a straight tube close beneath the vertebral column, but it gradually becomes long, convoluted, and divided into its special parts, stomach, small intestine, and large intestine (fig. 667), and at the same time comes to be

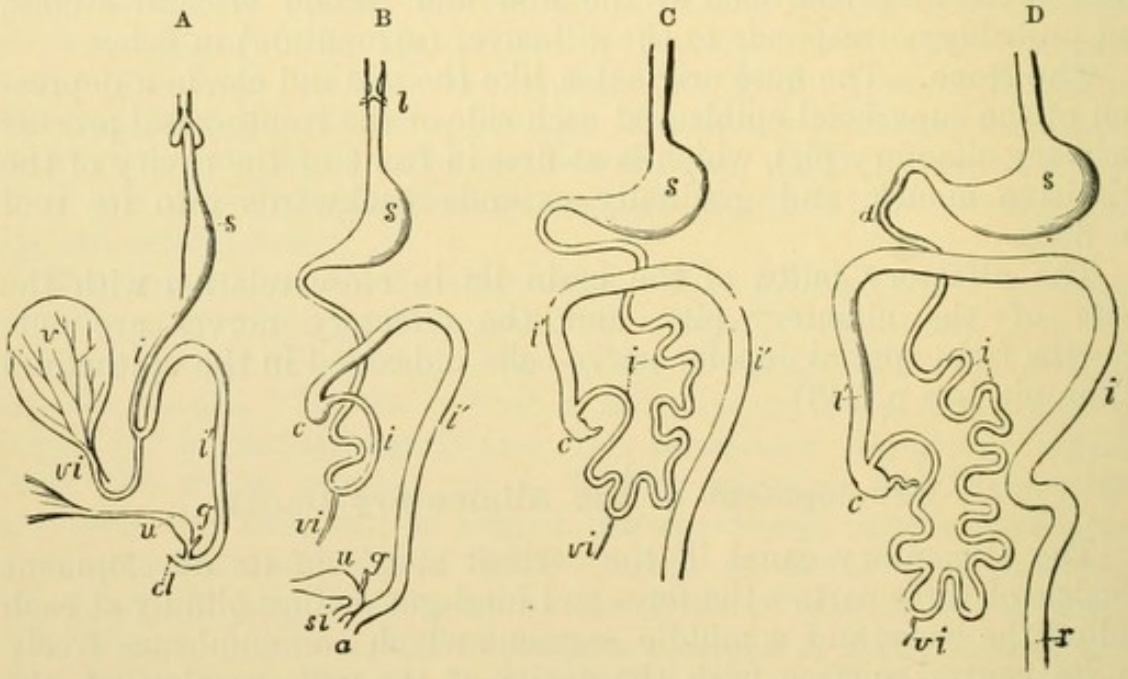


FIG. 667.—Outlines of the form and position of the alimentary canal in successive stages of its development. A, Alimentary canal, etc., in an embryo of four weeks; B, at six weeks; C, at eight weeks; *l*, the primitive lungs connected with the pharynx; *s*, the stomach; *d*, duodenum; *i*, the small intestine; *i'*, the large intestine; *c*, the cæcum and vermiform appendage; *r*, the rectum; *cl*, in A, the cloaca; *a*, in B, the anus distinct from *si*, the sinus uro-genitalis; *v*, the yolk-sac, *vi*, the vitello-intestinal duct; *u*, the urinary bladder and urachus leading to the allantois; *g*, genital ducts. (Allen Thomson.)

suspended in the abdominal cavity by means of a lengthening mesentery, formed from the splanchnopleur, which attaches it to the vertebral column. The stomach originally has the same direction as the rest of the canal; its cardiac extremity being superior, its pylorus inferior. The changes of position which succeed may be readily

understood from the accompanying figure (fig. 667). The principal glands in connection with the intestinal canal are the salivary glands, pancreas, and the liver.

Salivary Glands.—In mammalia, each salivary gland first appears as a bud-like process of epithelium lying in a mass of mesoblast, and continuous with the epithelium of the mouth. As the development of the gland advances, the bud grows, ramifies, and becomes hollow. The submaxillary and sublingual glands are developed exactly in the same way, and their cells are derived from the hypoblast lining the fore-gut, while those of the parotid glands are formed from the epiblast lining the stomadæum. In all cases the blood-vessels and connective tissues are formed from the mesoblast into which the glandular structure grows.

The Liver and Pancreas.—The secreting portions of the liver and pancreas are also developed as diverticula from the alimentary canal, and they are essentially similar to the diverticula which form

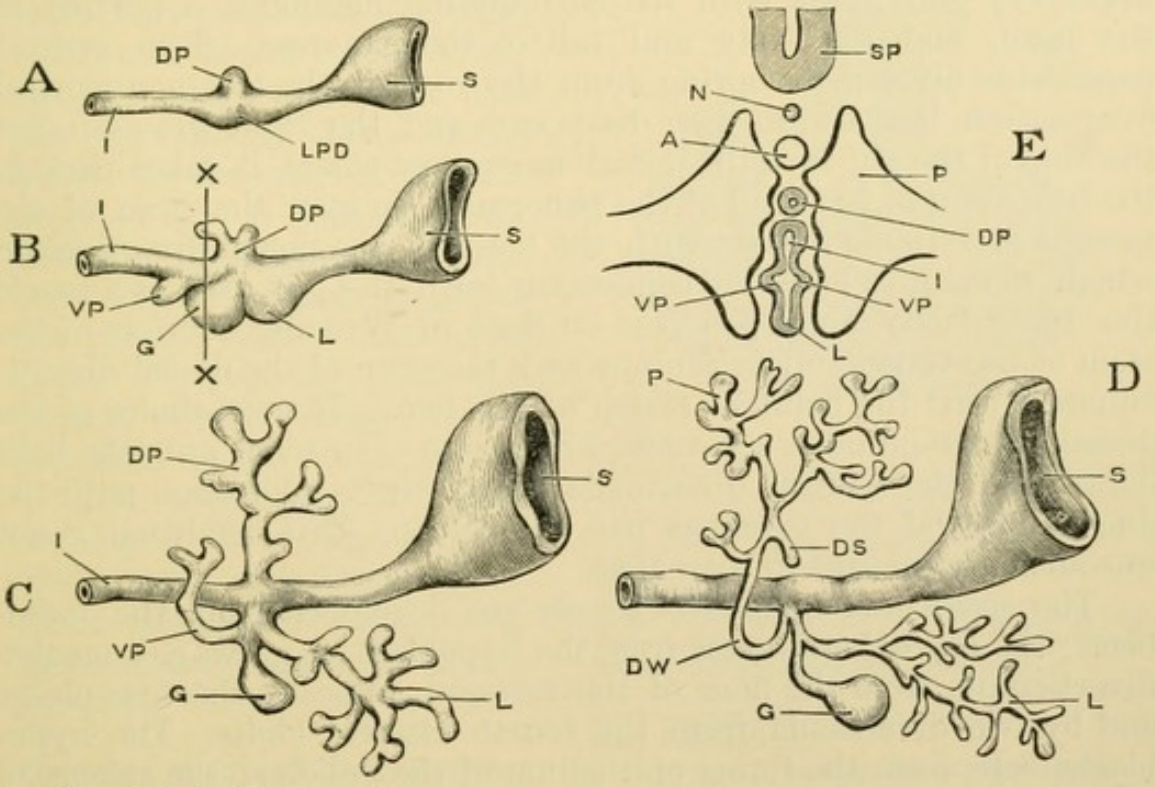


FIG. 668.—A, B, C, D, Schematic representations of four stages in the development of the liver and pancreas. E (after Stoss, modified), diagram of a transverse section through the fore-gut in the region of the hepato-pancreatic diverticulum.

A (in diagram E), Aorta. DP, Dorsal pancreatic diverticulum. DS, Duct of Santorini. DW, Duct of Wirsung. G, Gall bladder. I, Intestine. L, Rudiment of liver. LPD, Hepato-pancreatic diverticulum. N, Notochord. P, Pleuro-peritoneal cavity. S, Stomach. SP, Spinal cord. VP, Ventral pancreatic diverticulum.

the secreting parts of the salivary glands, but there are special points about the development of the two abdominal glands which require particular consideration. The liver is formed by a primarily single diverticulum from the ventral wall of the posterior part of the fore-

gut, and the pancreas by two diverticula, a dorsal which springs from the dorsal wall of the gut opposite the liver diverticulum, and a ventral which springs from the right side of the liver diverticulum.

The body of the ventral hepato-pancreatic diverticulum separates into an anterior and a posterior part. The former becomes the common hepatic duct, and from its anterior end two buds grow out which become the right and left hepatic ducts; the branches of these grow into the ventral mesentery and into a mass of mesoblast called the septum transversum, and they form, with the surrounding mesoblast, the liver substance. The posterior segment of the ventral diverticulum is the rudiment of the gall bladder and the cystic duct, whilst the root of the diverticulum is converted into the common bile duct, and the ampulla of Vater which lies in the substance of the wall of the duodenum and opens into its cavity.

The dorsal pancreatic diverticulum grows into the dorsal mesentery and forms with the surrounding mesoblast a portion of the head, and the body and tail of the pancreas. Two ventral pancreatic diverticula spring from the root of the common ventral evagination, but the left soon disappears and the right grows round the side of the gut into the dorsal mesentery where it takes part in the formation of the head of the pancreas. In man the stem of the ventral diverticulum fuses with the stem of the dorsal diverticulum which thereafter loses its connection with the gut, and as a result the duct of the adult pancreas or duct of Wirsung consists of the stem of the ventral diverticulum and the stem of the dorsal diverticulum beyond the point of fusion of the two. The remainder of the dorsal diverticulum is the duct of Santorini. In some animals both dorsal and the ventral diverticula retain their connection with the duodenum, and the pancreas has two ducts. This condition is not uncommonly present in man also.

The *spleen* and *lymphatic glands* are developed from the mesoblast: the *thyroid* originates from the hypoblast; it grows as a median diverticulum from the floor of the fore-gut, opposite the first clefts, and by two diverticula from the fourth visceral clefts. The hypoblastic cells form the lining epithelium of the vesicles; the stroma of the gland is formed by the surrounding mesoblast. The *thymus* is formed in a similar way from the third visceral clefts, and its hypoblastic cells form the corpuscles of Hassall; the lymphoid tissue by which they are invaded and ultimately surrounded is mesoblastic.

Development of the Respiratory Apparatus.

The rudiment of the larynx, trachea, bronchi, and lungs appears as a small longitudinal groove in the ventral wall of the fore-gut.

This groove bifurcates behind and is gradually separated off from the rest of the fore-gut except at its anterior end, which remains as the aperture of the larynx. The diverticula at its posterior end are the germs of the bronchi. When the groove is converted into a tube it forms the trachea and larynx, and the dorsal part of the fore-gut in the region from which the rudiment of the respiratory system is separated becomes the œsophagus.

The bronchial diverticula grow out into the surrounding mesoblast to form the air tubes and alveoli of the lungs, and with the surrounding mesoblast they constitute the lung substance; therefore the lining epithelium is hypoblastic and the surrounding tissue mesoblast. As the lungs grow, each projects into a corresponding anterior prolongation of the body cavity, which becomes the pleural sac, as soon as it is cut off from the peritoneal portion of that cavity by the formation of the diaphragm.

The *diaphragm* is early developed as a partition of mesoblast dividing the original pleuro-peritoneal cavity into thoracic and abdominal serous cavities.

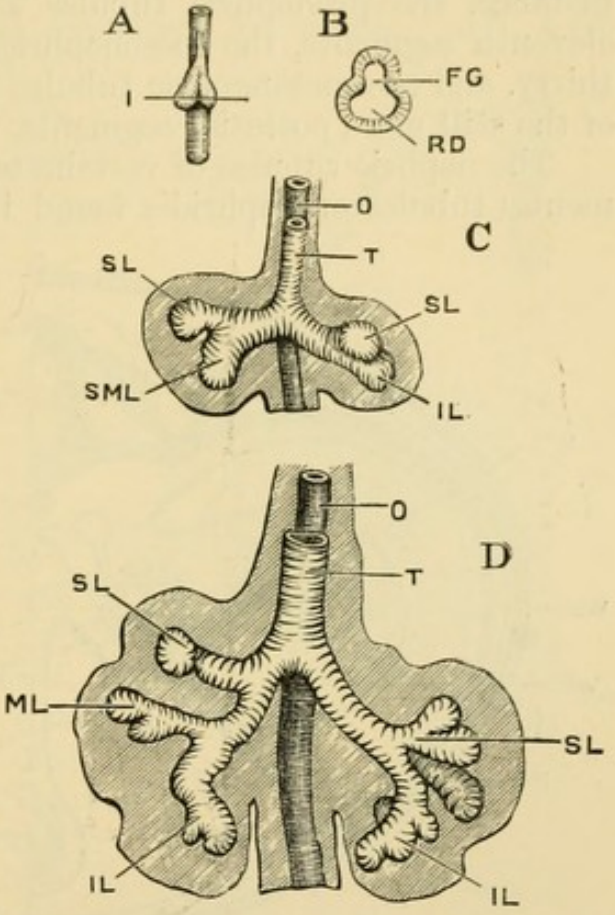


FIG. 669.—A, Anterior view of ventral protrusion of fore-gut which forms the rudiment of the respiratory apparatus. B, Transverse section through fore-gut in region of posterior part of respiratory protrusion along line 1, fig. A, showing bifurcation of the posterior part of respiratory diverticulum to form the bronchi.

FIG. 670.—C, Anterior view of lungs of a young human embryo, showing bifurcation of each main bronchus into two primary parts (after His, modified).

FIG. 671.—D, Anterior view of the lungs of an older human embryo, showing further divisions of bronchi (after His, modified).

FG, Fore-gut. IL, Bronchus of inferior lobe. ML, Bronchus of middle lobe on right side. O, Œsophagus. RD, Respiratory diverticulum. SL, Bronchus of superior lobe. SML, Bronchial rudiment on right side which divides into bronchi of middle and superior lobes (SL and ML).

Development of the Genito-urinary Apparatus.

The rudiments of the secreting parts of the genito-urinary system are found in, and in association with, the intermediate cell strand of mesoblast which connects the protovertebral somites with the lateral plates, p. 857. In lower animals it is probable that three sets of tubules appear at different times in the intermediate cell mass of almost every segment of the body. These tubules are known, in accordance with the relative time of their appearance, as pro-, meso-

and metanephric tubules, and their function is to remove from the body certain waste products and the genital elements. In mammals, however, the three sets of tubules appear not only at different times, but also in different segments of the body; in the rabbit, for instance, the pronephric tubules are formed in the fourth to the eleventh segments, the mesonephric tubules in segments thirteen to thirty, and the metanephric tubules in a small but indefinite number of the still more posterior segments.

The nephric tubules of vertebrates are homologous with the segmental tubules or nephridia found in worms and other invertebrata. In these invertebrates, the tubes extend from the body cavity internally to the exterior. In the vertebrates, however, this primitive communication with the exterior is lost and the tubules open into a common channel, the primitive ureter, pronephric or Wolffian duct (fig. 672), by which the secretion from the tubules is carried at first into a cloacal chamber, developed at the posterior end of the hind-gut, and afterwards into a genito-urinary chamber which is separated off from the cloaca. In the higher forms also, the communications of the nephric tubules with the body cavity are either quite transitory or do not exist, and each tubule commences in a blind invaginated extremity which embraces a mass of small blood-vessels, and with the vessels constitutes a glomerulus (figs. 672 and 673).

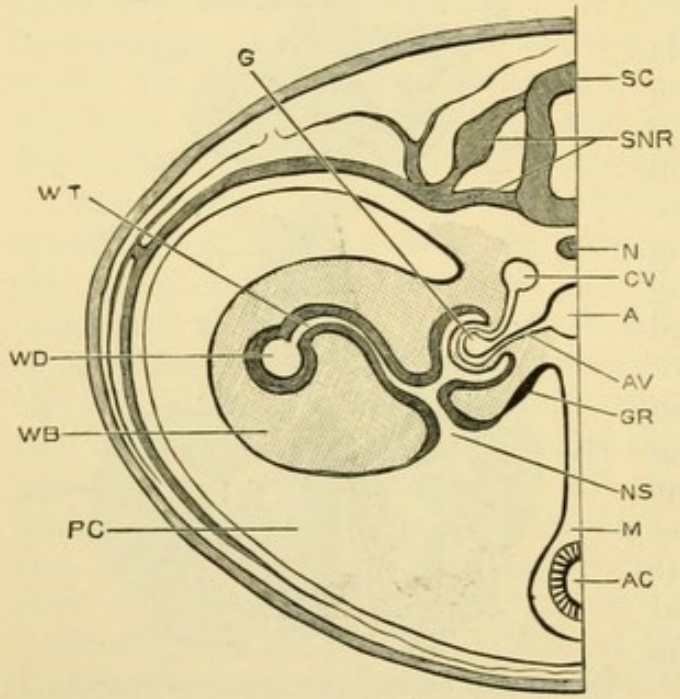


FIG. 672.—Diagram of half of a transverse section through the body of a young embryo, showing the relations of the Wolffian body, the Wolffian duct, and the mesonephric tubules. A, Aorta. AC, Alimentary canal. AV, Afferent blood-vessels to glomerulus. CV, Cardinal vein. G, Glomerulus. GR, Genital ridge. M, Mesentery of gut. N, Notochord. NS, Mouth of mesonephric tube = Nephrostome. PC, Peritoneal cavity. SC, Spinal cord. SNR, Spinal nerve roots. WB, Wolffian body. WD, Wolffian duct. WT, Wolffian tube.

The pronephric duct commences in mammals by the fusion of the outer ends of the pronephric tubules, and is therefore at its commencement of mesoblastic origin. As it passes backwards, it separates from the mesoblast and becomes closely associated with the epiblast, but it is a matter of doubt whether its further increase is due to the addition of epiblastic cells, or to the proliferation of its mesoblastic elements.

The pronephros has practically no function in man and soon disappears. The mesonephric tubules, on the other hand, grow rapidly. They open into the Wolffian duct, and together, with the surrounding mesoblast, they form a large mass, the Wolffian body or primitive kidney, which projects into the peritoneal cavity (figs. 672, 673). After a time (the second month in man), the Wolffian body undergoes atrophy and the majority of the mesonephric tubules disappear. Remnants of them are found in the female in the broad ligament of the uterus as the vertical tubules of the ep- and parovarium (fig. 675). In the male some of them attain connection with the germinal epithelium (fig. 675), and then become the seminal tubules of the testicle, the rete testis, and the vasa efferentia (fig. 675), whilst others persist in the vasa aberrantia and the organ of Giraldes, both of which are merely fœtal remnants. In the male the Wolffian duct persists and becomes the convoluted tube of the epididymis, the vas deferens, and the common ejaculatory duct, the seminal vesicle being merely a diverticulum from its lower end. In the female the greater part of the Wolffian duct disappears and the portions of it which persist form the horizontal tubes of the ep- and parovarium and the occasionally present Gartner's duct (figs. 674 and 675).

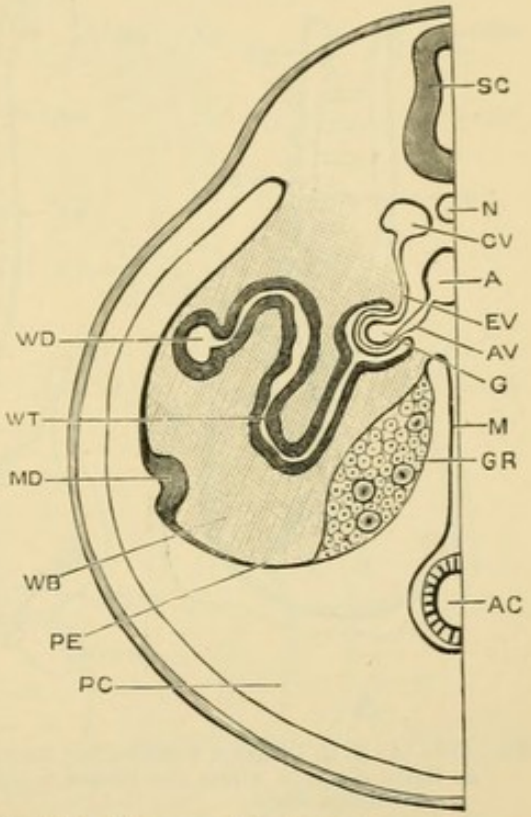


FIG 673.—Diagram of half of a transverse section through the body of an embryo, showing a more advanced stage of development than that represented in fig. 672. A, Aorta. AC, Alimentary canal. AV, Afferent vessel to nephric glomerulus. CV, Cardinal vein. EV, Efferent vessel from nephric glomerulus to cardinal vein. G, Glomerulus. GR, Genital ridge. M, Mesentery of gut. MD, Müllerian duct. N, Notochord. PC, Peritoneal cavity. PE, Peritoneal epithelium. SC, Spinal cord. WB, Wolffian body. WD, Wolffian duct. WT, Wolffian tube.

Before the above changes have taken place, indeed before the atrophy of the Wolffian body or mesonephros has commenced, a diverticulum grows from the posterior part of the Wolffian duct into the metanephric mesoderm posterior to the Wolffian body. This diverticulum is the permanent ureter (fig. 674 B). Its lower end soon separates from the Wolffian duct and, moving forwards, reaches to and opens into the anterior or bladder section of the cloaca (fig. 674 C). Its dorsal or upper end grows backwards into the metanephric mesoblast where it forms the pelvis of the ureter and the collecting tubules of the kidney. The latter fuse with the metanephric tubules

which are developed independently in the metanephric mesoblast. The collecting tubules, the metanephric tubules, and the surrounding mesoblast form, collectively, the metanephros or permanent kidney. The secreting parts of the kidney are the metanephric tubules, each

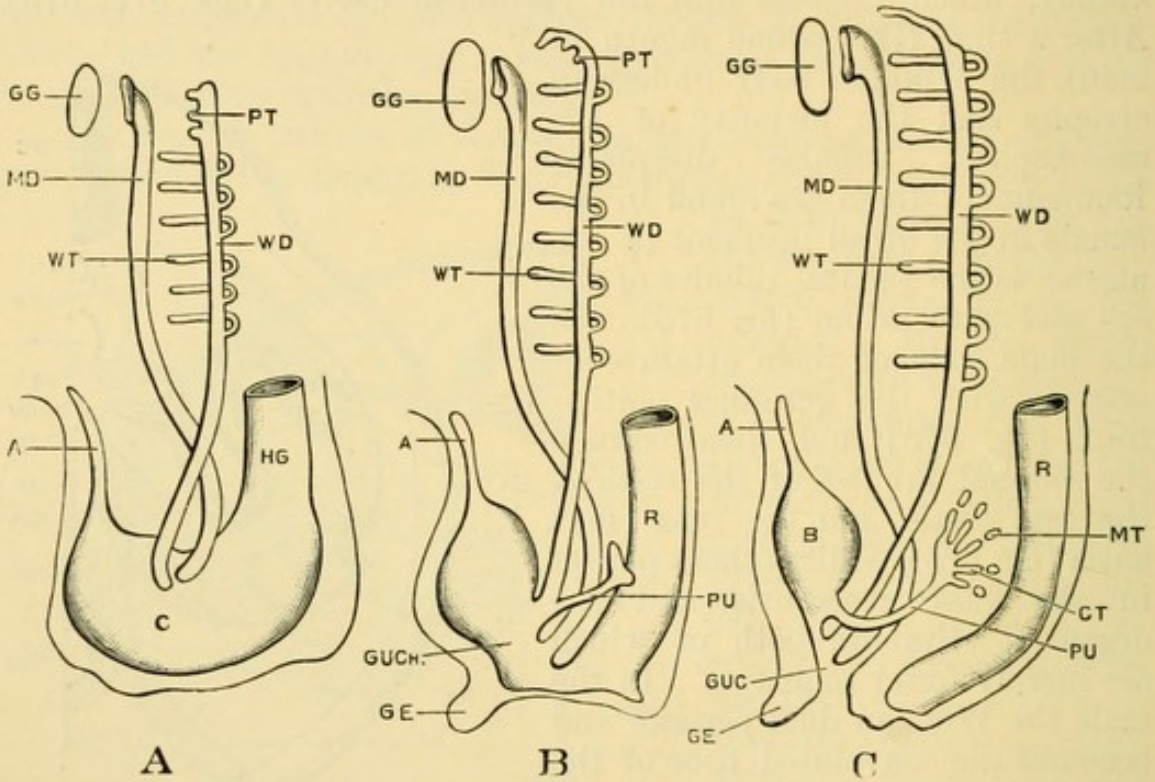


FIG. 674.—A, B, C, Diagram representing three stages in the development of the genito-urinary system.
A, Early stage in which the cloaca is still undivided, and receives ventrally the Müllerian and Wolffian ducts.
B, Later stage. The cloaca is separating into a genito-urinary and a rectal section, and the permanent ureter has appeared as an outgrowth from the Wolffian duct.
C, The cloaca has separated into rectal and genito-urinary parts, and the latter is differentiated into bladder and genito-urinary canal. The permanent ureter now opens into the bladder, and metanephric tubules are present.
A, Allantoic diverticulum. B, Bladder. C, Cloaca. CT, Collecting tubes of kidney developed as outgrowths from permanent ureter. GE, Genital eminence. GG, Genital gland. GUC, Genito-urinary canal. GUCH, Genito-urinary chamber. HG, Hind-gut. MD, Müllerian duct. MT, Metanephric tubules. PU, Permanent ureter. PT, Pronephric tubules. WD, Wolffian duct. WT, Wolffian or mesonephric tubules.

of which becomes expanded at one end to form a glomerular chamber which is invaginated by a mass of fine arteries, the arteries and the invaginated chamber forming together a kidney glomerulus.

The Bladder and Urethra.—It has already been stated that the posterior end of the hind-gut dilates and forms for a time a cloacal chamber. Into the ventral part of this chamber the urinary and genital ducts open, and from its anterior end the allantoic diverticulum is given off (p. 854). After a time the ventral part of the cloaca is separated from the dorsal, the latter becoming the rectum, whilst the former is the genito-urinary chamber, and each section of the divided cloaca attains a separate opening to the exterior (fig. 674 C). The genito-urinary chamber is differentiated into two sections, an

anterior the bladder, and a posterior the genito-urinary canal (fig. 675). In both sexes the genito-urinary canal opens on the surface in the posterior end of a groove, and the groove extends forwards on the under surface of a superficial eminence, the genital eminence, which is the rudiment of the clitoris or penis. In the

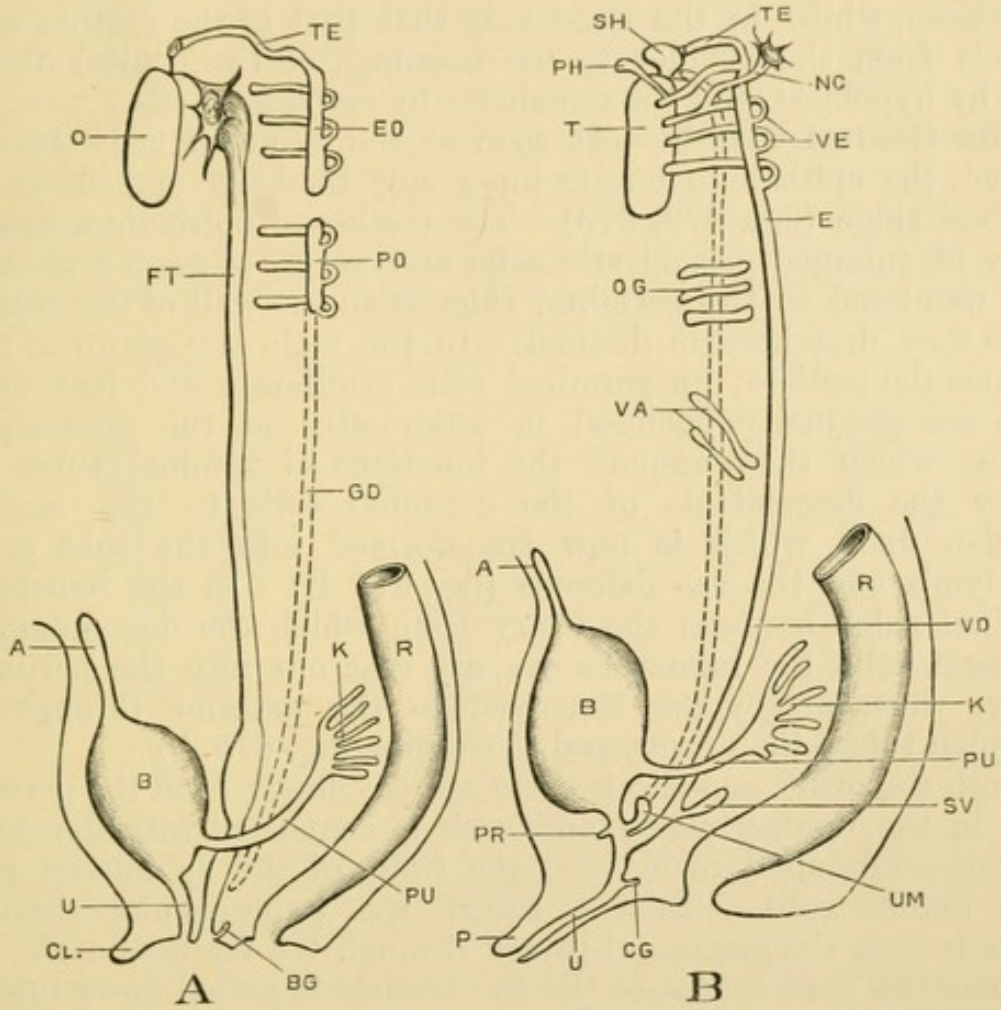


FIG. 675.—A and B, Diagrams representing fully developed period of genito-urinary system. A, Female. B, Male.

A, Allantois. B, Bladder. BG, Bartolin's gland. CG, Cowper's gland. CL, Clitoris. E, Tube of epididymis. EO, Epovarium. FT, Fallopian tube. GD, Gartner's duct (sometimes present as a variation). K, Kidney. NC, Nephrostomal canal, occasionally present and connecting one of the vasa-efferentia of testicle with cavity of tunica vaginalis. O, Ovary. OG, Organ of Giraldes. P, Penis. PH, Pedunculated hydatid, sometimes attached to upper end of testicle, developed from a Wolffian tubule. PO, Parovarium corresponding with organ of Giraldes of male. PR, Prostatic diverticulum. PU, Permanent ureter. R, Rectum. SH, Sessile hydatid attached to top of testicle is the remnant of the orifice of Müller's duct. SV, Seminal vesicle. T, Testicle. TE, Tubo-epoophoron canal of female, or tubo-epididymal canal of male, sometimes present, possibly a remnant of pronephric duct. U, Urethra. UM, Uterus masculinus, represents lower ends of fused Müllerian ducts. VA, Vasa aberrantia. VD, Vas deferens. VE, Vasa efferentia.

female the margins of this groove remain separate and form the labia minora, whilst the genito-urinary canal shortens till the vagina, formed by the fusion of the genital canals, is brought to the surface between the labia minora. When this has occurred the remainder of the genito-urinary canal becomes the urethra (fig. 675 A). In

the male, on the other hand, the genito-urinary canal is lengthened, the lips of the groove into which the primitive genito-urinary canal opens fuse together, thus converting the groove into a tube, and in this manner the canal is prolonged to the end of the penis (fig. 675 B). It follows from what has been said that the bladder and the whole of the urethra of the female are lined by hypoblastic epithelium, whilst in the male only that part of the urethra which extends from the bladder to the openings of the genital ducts is lined by hypoblast, and the remainder by epiblastic cells.

The Genital Glands.—As soon as the Wolffian body becomes distinct, the epithelium on its inner side thickens and forms the germinal ridge (figs. 672, 673). The thickened epithelium consists partly of enlarged mesoblastic cells and partly of germ cells which have wandered to the germinal ridge from the wall of the yolk-sac where they first become distinct. In the male the germinal ridge becomes the testicle; its germinal cells proliferate and form cords; these are gradually enclosed in outgrowths of the mesonephric tubules which then assume the functions of seminal tubes and convey the descendants of the germinal cells to the modified Wolffian duct, which is now transformed into the tube of the epididymis and the vas deferens (fig. 675 B). In the female the germinal ridge becomes the ovary from which the descendants of the germ cells, the immature ova, are cast out into the peritoneal cavity, whence they are conveyed to the exterior through the Fallopian tubes, the uterus, and the vagina (fig. 675 A).

Both the ovary and the testicle are developed from the germinal ridge in the lumbar region, and each is connected with the skin of the perineo-inguinal region and the front of the symphysis pubis by a fibrous cord. This is called the gubernacular cord; it descends from the gland and passes through the inguinal canal. In the male this cord contracts till the testicle is pulled down into the fold of skin which forms the scrotum, and in its descent it passes through the inguinal canal in the seventh and eighth months of fœtal life and is preceded by a pouch of peritoneum destined to become the tunica vaginalis; this is cut off from the peritoneum immediately before or after birth. The gubernacular cord of the ovary does not shorten to so great an extent as that of the testicle, and the ovary is merely drawn down into the pelvis to the back of the broad ligament when the gubernacular cord is converted into the ligament of the ovary and the round ligament of the uterus. The blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves of the ovary and testicle are formed in the lumbar region and are carried down with the organs to which they belong, hence it is that they rise in the adult so far from the organ to which they are distributed.

The Fallopian tubes, the uterus, and the vagina are developed from a pair of ducts called the Müllerian ducts.

In elasmobranch fishes the Müllerian ducts are split off from the pronephric ducts, the anterior ends and ventral parts of the latter becoming the Müllerian ducts and the dorsal parts the Wolffian ducts, but in man and other mammals the Müllerian ducts are developed quite independently of the pronephric ducts, and each commences as three thickenings of the peritoneal epithelium on the lower and outer side of the Wolffian body just beneath the Wolffian duct (figs. 673, 674, and 676). The deeper ends of the three thickenings unite to form a cord of cells which grows backwards to the cloaca and becomes hollow. In the meantime, however, two of the three primitive thickenings have disappeared but the anterior remains and forms the dilated anterior extremity of the duct. The margin of the

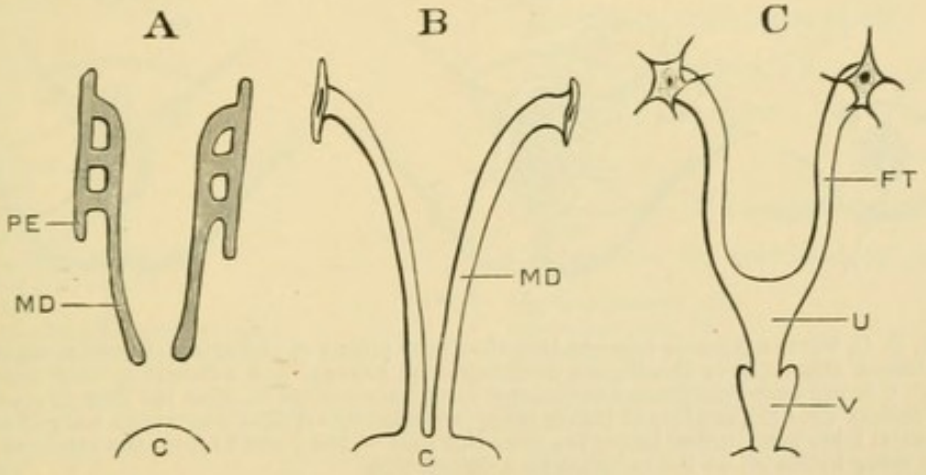


FIG. 676.—A, B, C, Three diagrams representing stages in the development of the Müllerian ducts In A they have formed as solid cords of cells proliferated from three thickenings of peritoneal epithelium, and they have not yet reached the cloaca. In B they have become hollow tubes, communicating at opposite extremities with the peritoneal cavity and the cloaca (c). In C they have partly fused to form the uterus and vagina.

dilated extremity is subsequently cleft into a number of processes or fimbriæ, and by means of one of these the open end of the duct gains attachment to the ovary (fig. 675 A).

As the two Müllerian ducts approach the cloaca they pass between the Wolffian ducts and are bound with them into a common cord, the genital cord, and after they have opened into the cloaca their lower parts fuse together. In the female the lowermost part of the fused tubes form the vagina, that next adjacent the uterus, and the highest parts, which remain separate, become the Fallopian tubes (fig. 676 C). It is obvious that if the fusion which should occur is incomplete, the vagina or the uterus may be double, in part or the whole of its extent, or its cavity may be more or less completely divided by a septum, and all of these abnormal conditions are occasionally met with. In the male the greater part of each Müllerian duct disappears, but the upper end remains in a modified

form and is attached to the upper end of the testicle, where it forms the sessile hydatid of Morgagni; and the fused lower ends are embedded in the prostate, where they form the sinus pocularis or uterus masculinus, which opens into the urethra between the mouths of the common ejaculatory ducts (fig. 675 B).

The external parts of generation are at first the same in both sexes. The opening of the genito-urinary apparatus is, in both sexes, bounded by two folds of skin, the external genital folds, whilst in front of it there is formed a penis-like body surmounted by the glans, with a cleft or furrow along its under surface. The borders of the furrows diverge posteriorly, running at the sides of the genito-urinary orifice internal to the cutaneous folds just mentioned; they form the internal genital folds. In the female, the genital

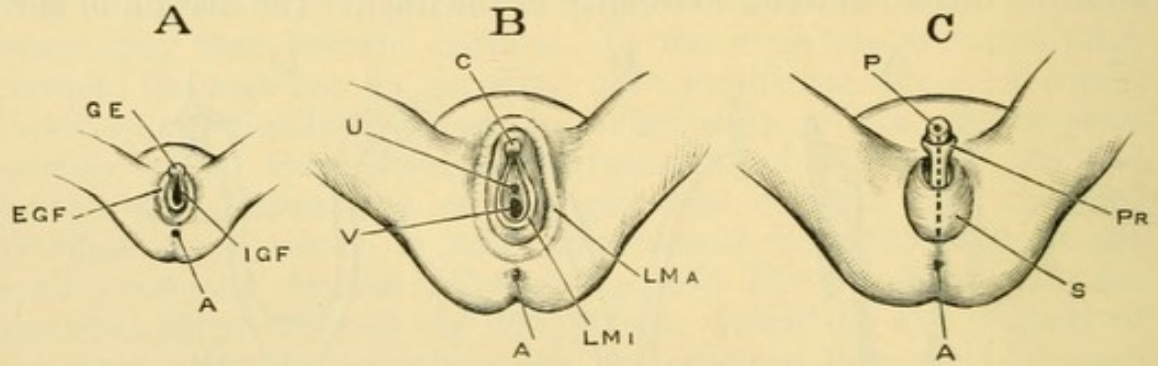


FIG. 677.—A, B, C, Three diagrams representing the development of the external genital organs. A is the indifferent stage. B is the female condition, the internal and external genital folds remain distinct. C is the male condition, the internal folds have united to form the floor of an elongated urethra (comp. fig. 675), the line of fusion being indicated by a dotted line on the body of the penis. The external folds have united below the posterior part of the penis to form the scrotum, the line of union being indicated on the scrotum by a dotted line.

eminence forms the clitoris, and the margins of the furrow on its under surface are converted into the nymphæ, or labiæ minora, the labia majora pudendæ being constituted by the external genital folds (fig. 677). In the male fœtus, the margins of the furrow at the under surface of the penis unite at about the fourteenth week, and form that part of the urethra which is included in the penis. The large cutaneous folds form the scrotum, and later receive the testicles. Sometimes the urethra is not closed, and the deformity called hypospadias then results. The appearance of hermaphroditism may, in these cases, be increased by the retention of the testes within the abdomen.

The *supra-renal capsules* originate partly from the mesoblast and partly from certain special cells of the sympathetic ganglia, called chromaffine cells, on account of the yellow colour they acquire when hardened with chromic salts. The chromaffine cells form the medullary parts of the suprarenal bodies, and the cortex is developed from buds of mesoblastic cells separated from the peritoneum on the inner sides of the germinal ridges.

INDEX

A.

Abderhalden's experiments, 531
Abdominal muscles, action in respiration, 352
Abdominal reflex, 682
Abducens nerve, 640, 652
  centre, 652
Aberration,
  chromatic, 798
  spherical, 798
Abrin, 453
Absorption
  of carbohydrates, 529
    fats, 532
    food, 529 *et seq.*
    proteins, 530
  by the skin, 590
Accelerator nerves, 162
  urinæ, 561
Accessory auditory nucleus, 654
Accommodation of eye, 788, 792
  defects of, 796
  mechanism of, 793
    Beer's experiments, 796
Acetonæmia, 528, 601
Acetyl, 398
Achromatin, 11
Achromatopsia, 814
Achroo-dextrin, 396, 491
Acids in gastric juice, 496
Acid-albumin, 414, 499
Acini of secreting glands, 483, 485
Acoustic tubercle, 654
Acrolein, 398
Acromegaly, 341
Acrylic series, 398
Adamantoblasts, 73
Adamkiewicz reaction, 403, 407
Adaptation in sensations, 741
Adenase, 574
Adenine, 335, 573
Adenoid or lymphoid tissue, 47
  in intestines, 469
Adipose tissue, 43. *See* Fat.
  development, 44
  situations of, *ib.*
  structure, *ib.*
  uses, 46
  vessels and nerves, *ib.*
Adrenaline, 340
  administration of, 528
Adsorption, 327 *n.*
Aërotonometer, 381
Æsthesiometers, 739
Affenspalte (ape's split), 727
Afferent nerves, 90, 162
  nerve-cells, 203
After-birth, 856
After-images, 811, 814
Agglutinin, 454
Agraphia, 775
Air,
  atmospheric, composition of, 374
  breathing, 356
  changes by breathing, 374
  complemental, 357
  quantity breathed, 357
  reserve, *ib.*
  residual, *ib.*
  tidal, *ib.*
  transmission of sonorous vibrations through, 759
  undulations of, conducted by external ear, 760
Air-calorimeters, 613
Air-pumps, 384, 385
Air-sacs, 349
Air-tubes. *See* Bronchi.
Alanine, 400, 401, 402
Albumin, 406, 409
  absence of glycine from, 404
  acid, 414
  alkali, 414
  egg, 414
  of blood, 428
Albuminates, 414
Albuminoids, 410
Albuminometer, Esbach's, 581
Albuminous alveoli, 486
Albuminous substances, 7
  action of gastric fluid on, 504
Albumins, 406, 409
Alcapton, 583
Alcaptonuria, 583
Alcohol as an accessory to food, 480
Alcohols, monatomic, 392
Aldehyde, 391
Aldoses, 391
Alimentary canal, 457 *et seq.*
  development of, 879
  nerves of, 540
Alisphenoids, 860
Alkali-albumin, 414
  properties of, 414
Allantoic diverticulum, 886
Allantoic veins, 865
Allantoin, 572
Allantois, development of, 854
Alloxan, 572
Alloxuric or purine bases, 413
Allyl alcohol, 398
Amacrine cells, 785
Amino-acids, 400, 402, 414
Amino-caproic acid, 401, 511

Ammonia, 403, 569, 570
  cyanate of, isomeric with urea, 564
Amnesia, 775
Amnion, 848
  development of, 851
Amniotic cavity, 852
  fluid, 848, 852
Amœbæ, 6
Amœboid movements, 12 *et seq.*, 433
  cells, 6
  colourless corpuscles, 432
  cornea-cells, 779
  protoplasm, 12, 100
  Tradescantia, 14, 326
Amyloids or starches, 396
  action of pancreas and intestinal glands, 504
    of saliva on, 491
Amylolytic ferments, 417
Amylopsin, action of, 504
Amyloses, 393
Anabolic nerve groups, 301
Anabolic phenomena, 594
Anacrotic pulse, 290
Anelectrotonus, 183
Angio-neuroses, 310
Angular convolution, 676
Angulus opticus seu visorius, 791
Animal cell, structure of, 8 *et seq.*
Animal heat. *See* Heat *and* Temperature.
Anions, 321
Ankle-clonus, 683
Anosmatic animals, 750
Ano-spinal centre, 544
Antagonistic muscles,
  reciprocal action of, 684
Antero-lateral ascending tract, 630
Antero-lateral descending tract, 628
Antilytic secretion, 488
Antithrombin, 423, 425
Antitoxin, 452, 453
Anus, the, 469, 879
Aortic arches, 862
Aortic bulb, 864
Aphasia, 702, 775
Aphemia, 774
Apnœa, origin of, 362
Apoplexy, 666
Appendices epiploicæ, 469
Appendix vermiformis, *ib.*
Aquæductus cochleæ, 756
Aqueduct of Sylvius, 635, 640, 649, 876
Aqueductus Fallopii, 754
Aqueous humour, 778
Arachnoid membrane, 618
Arbor vitæ, 660
Archenteron, 844 *et seq.*
Arches, visceral, 858
  aortic, 863
Archipallium, 677
Area cheiro-kinæsthetic, 709
  germinal, or embryonic, 842
  glosso-kinæsthetic, 709
  vasculosa, 861
Areas, of Cohnheim, 81
  intermediate, 709-711
  primary, 709, 710
  terminal, 709-711
Areolar tissue, 36
  development of, 40
Arginase, 568, 574
Arginine, 401, 402, 568
Aromatic amino-acids, 402
Arteria centralis retinæ, 783, 788, 878
Arterial blood, carbonic oxide method of estimating the oxygen tension of, 383
Arterial tension in asphyxia, 373

Arteries, 214
  allantoic, 865
  bronchial, 350
  circulation in, velocity of, 278
  coronary, 237
  development of, 861
  distribution, 214
  elasticity, 262
  hypogastric, 864
  muscularity, 263
  nerves of, 216
  nervous system, influence of, 307
  pressure of blood in asphyxia, 373
  pulse, 287 *et seq.*
  renal, ligature of, 560
  rhythmic contraction, 263 *et seq.*
  structure, 215 *et seq.*
  umbilical, 856, 864, 865
  velocity of blood-flow in, 278
Arterioles, 260
Articulate sounds, classification of, 773
  vowels and consonants, 773, 774
Articulation positions, 774
Artifacts, 9
Arytenoid cartilages, 765
  effect of approximation, 767
  movements of, *ib.*
Arytenoid muscle, 768
Ascending tubule of Henle, 546
Aspergillus niger, 531
Asphyxia, 370 *et seq.*
  causes of death in, 371
  conditions of the vascular system in, 371
  symptoms, 370
Assimilation, 6, 529
Association centres, 707
  fibres, 670, 705, 707
Astigmatism, 798
Atmospheric air, 373. *See* Air.
  composition of, 374
  pressure in relation to respiration, 373
Atropine, effect of,
  on heart, 250
  on salivary secretion, 488
Attraction sphere, 12, 841
Auditory area, 703
Auditory nerve, 640, 654, 756
  distribution, 757
  origin, 654
  word centre, 708, 775
Auerbach's plexus, 97, 464
Auricles of heart. *See* Heart.
Auricular diastole, 231
  systole, 232
Auriculo-ventricular valves. *See* Heart valves.
Auto-intoxication theory of the ductless glands, 329
Avogadro's law, 325, 375
Axial skeleton, 844
Axipetal conduction, law of, 204
Axis-cylinder of nerve-fibre, 92
Azygos veins, 867

B.

Bacterial action in intestinal digestion, 510
Bacterio-lysin, 451-453
Bacterium lactis, 395
Baillarger, line of, 669
Barcroft's apparatus for blood gas analysis, 386
Barnard's cardiometer, 246
Bartolin's gland, 887
Basal ganglia, 664
Basement-membrane, 47, 467
Basilar membrane of ear, 756, 757

Basilar plate, 860
Basi-occipital bones, 860
  sphenoid bones, *ib.*
Basophile cells, 433
Batteries and keys, 108
  Daniell cell, 107, 108
Bayliss, observations on vaso-dilator nerves of dogs, 302
  on adsorption, 327 *n.*
  on pancreatic secretion, 505
Bechterew, nucleus of, 655
Beckmann's differential thermometer, 325
Bed sores, 825
Beef-tea, the making of, 479
Beer's experiments on accommodation of the eye, 796
Bernard's discovery in the liver, 524
  experiment on independent muscular irritability, 102, 305
  on pancreatic secretion, 508
Betz cells, 669
Bezold's ganglion, 253
Bicuspid valve, 211
Bidder's ganglion, 253
Biedermann's fluid, 101 *n.*
Bilaminar blastoderm, 842
Bile, 513, 518
  absorption by lymph, 523
  analyses of human, 520
  capillaries, 516
  characters of, 519
  constituents of, *ib.*
  digestive properties, 509
  doubtful antiseptic power, 522
  influence of, on fat absorption, 532
  mixture with chyme, 522
  mucin, 520
  pigments, 521
  process of secretion, 518
  quantity secreted, 519
  salts, 520
  secretion and flow, 518, 519
  specific gravity, 519
  uses, 522
Bile-expelling mechanism, 523
Bilirubin, 443, 521
Biliverdin, 521
Binocular colour-mixture, 813
Binocular vision, 822, 823
Bipolar nerve-cells, 193, 750
Birth, changes after, 871
Biuret test, 407
"Black-water fever," 584
Bladder reflexes, 691
Bladder, urinary. *See* Urinary bladder.
Blastocyst, blastoderm, blastula, bilaminar, 842
Blastopore, 842
Blastosphere, 841
"Blaze current," 815
Blind spot, 802, 814
Blocking, 254
Blood, 76, 419
  agglutinating action of, 454
  amino-acids in, 530
  arterial and venous, difference between, 214
  bactericidal power of, 451
  buffy coat, 422
  carbonic acid in, 378, 379, 382
  circulation of, 226 *et seq.*
    in the fœtus, 870
    local peculiarities, 311
    schema of, 228
  coagulation, 76, 421 *et seq.*
  colour, 76, 419
  colouring matter, 439
    relation to that of bile, 443

Blood—*continued*
  corpuscles or cells of, 76, 419. *See* Blood-corpuscles.
    red, 429
  corpuscles, white, 432
  crystals, 440 *et seq.*
  extractive matters, 429
  fatty matters, 429
  fibrin, 76, 422
    separation of, 423
  gases of, 377, 380 *et seq.*
    method of analysing, 386
  globulicidal power of, 452
  hæmoglobin, 420, 429, 440 *et seq.*
    photographic spectrum of, 446
  nitrogen in, 377
  odour or halitus of, 419
  oxalated, 424
  oxygen in, 377
  oxyhæmoglobin, 440 *et seq.*
    photographic spectrum of, 446, 447
  plasma, 419, 426
  proteins of, 428
  quantity, 420
    Haldane's and Lorrain Smith's experiments, 420
  reaction, 419
  salts, 429
  serum of, 421, 426
  specific gravity, 419
  splenic, 332
  structural composition, 430
  taste, 419
  temperature, 419
  tests for, 450
  transfusion of, 318
  venous, 214
Blood-corpuscles, red, 76, 419, 429
  action of reagents on, 431 *et seq.*
  chemistry of, 439
  composition of, 429
  development, 436, 437, 438
    intracellular, 438
  disintegration and removal, 331, 332
  methods of counting, 434
  rouleaux, 430
  specific gravity, 429
  stroma, 429
  tendency to adhere, 430
  varieties, 429
  vertebrate, various, 430
Blood-corpuscles, white, 76, 432
  action of reagents on, 434
  amœboid movements of, 433
  chemistry of, 439
  composition of, 439
  emigration of, 295
  formation in spleen, 331
  locomotion, 434
  origin of, 423, 439
  varieties, 432
Blood-crystals, 440 *et seq.*
Blood-platelets, 419, 434
Blood-pressure, 263 *et seq.*
  in capillaries, 272
  in veins, 271
    action of respiratory movements on, 297
  measurement in man, 292 *et seq.*
  schema to illustrate, 265-267
Blood-vessels,
  circulation in, 259
    effect of gravity, 276
  elasticity of, 261
  of eyeball, 788
  in intestines, 465
  of kidney, 548

Blood-vessels—*continued*
of muscle, 86
of stomach, 463
influence of nervous system on, 297
primitive, 862, 863
Body-cavity, 845
Body, development of framework of, 856
Body, the chemical composition of, 390 *et seq.*
Boiler-makers' disease, 763
Bone, 54
canaliculi, 56
cancellous, 54
chemical composition, *ib.*
compact, *ib.*
lamellæ of, 57
development, 59 *et seq.*
growth, 64
Haversian canals, 56
lacunæ, 57
marrow, 54
medullary canal, *ib.*
microscopic structure, 55
ossification in cartilage, 60
ossification in membrane, 59
periosteum and nutrient blood-vessels, 55
structure, 54 *et seq.*
Bowman,
on muscle, 81
on urine, 555
Bowman's capsule, 546
glands, 748
lamina, 779
Boyle-Mariotte's law for gases, 324
Brain. *See* Bulb, Cerebellum, Cerebrum, Pons, etc.
capillaries of, 311
child's, 673
circulation of blood in, 311 *et seq.*
commissures, 876
comparative physiology of, 724 *et seq.*
convolutions, 673
development, 874 *et seq.*
dog's, 698
extirpation of, in mammals, 693
fissures, 673
in fœtus, 636, 875
grey matter, 191
lobes, 673 *et seq.*
lunatic's, 718
membranes of, 618
monkey's, 673
motor areas, 700
orang's, 674
quantity of blood in, 311, 312
sensori-motor area, 704
sensory areas, 703
structure, 634
ventricles, 635
vertebrate (section), 637
vesicles, 875
white matter, 191
Bread as food, 479
Breathing. *See* Respiration.
Bright's disease, 581, 583
Broca's convolution, 702
Brodie, on splenic nerve, 151
his bellows-recorder, 151, 310
on heat rigor, 157
Bronchi, arrangement and structure of, 343, 882
Bronchial arteries and veins, 350
Brownian movement, 100
Bruch, membrane of, 780, 781
Brücke on the self-steering action of the heart, 237
Brunner's glands, 467
Brunton, after Gaskell, tracing of actions of vagus on the heart, 248
Buffy coat, formation of, 422

Bulb, pons and mid-brain, 638 *et seq.*
anterior aspect, 638
internal structure, 640 *et seq.*
posterior aspect, 639
tracts of, 651
Bulbus arteriosus, 866
Bundle of Helweg, 629
of Monakow, 629, 651
of von Gudden, 651
Burch's experiments on colour vision, 811
Burdach's column, 623 *et seq.*
Burdon-Sanderson's stethograph, 354
Bursæ, synovial, 482
Butyric acid, 395, 510

C.

Cachexia strumipriva, 337
Cæcum, the, 468
Caffeine, 480
Caisson disease, 378
Cajal, law of axipetal conduction, 204
Cajal's descending cerebellar bundle, 662
Calcarine area, 727
Calcarine fissure, 677
Calcification of bone, 61
Calcium carbonate, 54
in urine, 580
fluoride, 54
oxalate in urine, 579
phosphate, 54
Calcium salts, the action of, 424
Calleja, islands of, 653
Callosal convolution, 676
Calloso-marginal fissure, 676
Calorimeters, 612, 613
Calyces of the kidneys, 546
Canal, alimentary. *See* Stomach, Intestines, etc.
external auditory, 752
function of, 759
spiral, of cochlea, 757
Canal of Schlemm, 782
of Petit, 788
Canaliculi of bone, 56
Canalis cochleæ, 756, 757
Canals, semicircular, of ear, 755
development of, 866
Cancellous tissue of bone, 54
Cane sugar, 394
Cannon, shadow photographs of the stomach, showing peristaltic movements, 539
Capacity of chest, vital, 357
Capillaries, 219
bile, 516
circulation in, 280, 293
velocity of, 280
development, 863
diameter, 219
form, *ib.*
influence on circulation, 294
network of, 219, 220
number, 221
passage of corpuscles through walls of, 295
pressure in, 272 *et seq.*
resistance to flow of blood in, 294
still layer in, *ib.*
size, 219
structure of, *ib.*
Capsule of Bowman, 546
external and internal, 666
of Glisson, 514
of Tenon, 779
Capsules, Malpighian, 546
Carbamide. *See* Urea

Carbohydrates, 390 *et seq.*
absorption of, 529
metabolism of, 596
Carbonates in urine, 576
Carbonic acid in atmosphere, 374, 375
in blood, 377, 378
effect of, 379
increase in breathed air, 374
influence of, on nerve, 171, 172
in lungs, 377
Carbonic oxide hæmoglobin, 448
Carbonic oxide, poisonous action of, 373
Cardiac cycle, 231
Cardiac glands, 461
Cardiac orifice of stomach, action of, 539
sphincter of, 540
relaxation in vomiting, *ib.*
Cardiac sympathetic, 249
Cardinal veins, 865
Cardiogram from human heart, 239
Cardiograph, 237 *et seq.*
Cardiometer, Barnard's, 246
Roy's, *ib.*
Carotid artery, 862
Carotid gland, 342
Cartilage, 49
articular, 50
cellular, 53
chondrin obtained from, 51
classification, 49
costal, 50
development, 52
elastic, 49, 52
fibrous, 51, 52. *See* Fibro-cartilage.
hyaline, 50
matrix, *ib.*
Meckel's, 871
ossification in, 60
parachordal, 860
perichondrium of, 51
structure, 49
temporary, 50
transitional, *ib.*
varieties, 49
Cartilages of larynx, 764
Cartilaginous cranium, 860
bars, 861
Casein, 411, 473. *See* Milk.
Caseinogen, 411, 473, 474
Cauda equina, 620, 872
Caudal arch, 861
Caudate nucleus, 665
Cavity of reserve, 75
Cell division, 16
Cells, 4, 5
amœboid, 6
blood. *See* Blood-corpuscles.
bone, 57
cartilage, 49 *et seq.*
central, 461, 494
characteristics of, 12
chromafine, 890
ciliated, 27
connective tissue, 36
definition of, 6
epithelium, 25. *See* Epithelium.
fission, 16
germinal, 872
gustatory, 745
hepatic, 514
nerve, 192
olfactorial, 748
parietal, 462, 494
pigment, 100
structure, 8 *et seq.*
varieties, 22 *et seq.*

Cells—*continued*
vegetable, 6, 13
distinctions from animal cells, 6 *et seq.*
Cells of Deiters, 759
of Purkinje, 197, 660 *et seq.*
Cellular cartilage, 53. *See* Cartilage.
Cellulose, 396
Cement of teeth, 69, 71, 74
Central cells, 461, 494
Centres, nervous, etc. *See* Nerve-centres.
of ossification, 59
Centrifugal machine, 427
nerve-fibres, 161
Centripetal nerve-fibres, 162
Centro-acinar cells, 502
Centrosome, 8, 12, 17, 830
Cephalic aortic arches, 862
Cephalic arch, 861
Cerebellar ataxy, 718
Cerebellum, 659
effects of removal or disease, 718
equilibration, *ib.*
functions of, 716 *et seq.*
grey matter, 197, 636, 659
hemi-extirpation, results of, 724
impulses, 718, 719
peduncles of, 662, 717
semicircular canals, 719, 722
extirpation of, 717, 721, 723
sensory impulses, 718
stimulation, 717, 718, 723
structure, 659
Cerebral cortex, 664, 667, 669
grey matter of, 673
histological structure, 667
pyramidal cells, 673
Cerebral hemispheres. *See* Cerebrum.
Cerebral nerves, origin of, 640 *et seq.*
See under names of nerves.
Cerebrins or cerebrosides, 176
Cerebro-spinal axis, 191, 619
Cerebro-spinal fluid, 178, 620, 635
Cerebro-spinal nervous system, 191, 618
See Brain, Spinal cord, etc.
Cerebrum, 663
convolutions of, 673 *et seq.*
crura of, 635
degeneration tracts after injury of Rolandic area, 696
development, 874
effects of injury, 696
removal, 692, 695
external capsule, 666
functions of, 692 *et seq.*
early notions, 692
grey matter, 197, 664
hemispheres, 663, 673, 675, 875
internal capsule, 666
localisation of functions, 693
motor areas, 695
relation to speech, 774
sensory areas, 696
extirpation, *ib.*
stimulation, *ib.*
structure, 663 *et seq.*
white matter, 666
Ceruminous glands of ear, 590
Chambers of the eye, 788
Charcot's disease, 824, 826
Chauveau's dromograph, 284
Cheiro-kinæsthetic area, 709
Chemical composition of the human body, 390 *et seq.*
Chest, expansion in inspiration, 351
Chest-voice, 772
Cheyne-Stokes' respiration, 365

Chimpanzee's brain, 700
Chittenden diet, 471, 472, 605
  important character of his work, 604
Chlorides in urine, 575
Cholagogues, 523
Cholalic acid, 520
Cholesterin, 9, 92, 176, 399, 521
Choletelin, 521
Choline, 171, 178, 399
Chondrin, 51, 411
Chorda secretion, 489
Chorda tympani, 487
  effects of stimulation of divided, 488
Chordæ tendineæ. *See* Heart.
Chorion, 848, 849, 854
Chorionic epiblast, 854
Chorionic villi, 854
Choroid coat of eye, 777, 780
  blood-vessels, 780
  development, 878
  structure, 780
Choroidal fissure, 878
Chromafine cells, 890
Chromatic aberration, 798
Chromatin, 11
Chromatolysis, 202
Chromatoplasm, 201
Chromogen, 339
Chromophanes, 813
Chromoplasm, 10
Chromo-proteins, 412
Chromosomes, 17, 839, 840
Chyle, 223, 315, 532
  molecular basis of, 315
Chyme, 519
Cicatricula, 839
Cilia, 28
Ciliary epithelium, 27
  function of, 28
Ciliary motion, 29
  nature of, *ib.*
Ciliary muscles, 781
  action of, in adaptation to distances, 792, 793
Ciliary processes, 780
Cilio-spinal centre, 690
Circulation of blood, 206, 226 *et seq.*
  action of heart, 206
  in brain, 311
  capillaries, 294
  course of, 213 *et seq.*
  erectile structures, 312
  in fœtus, 870
  influence of respiration on, 366
    of gravity, 276
  peculiarities of, in different parts, 311
  portal, 214
  pulmonary, *ib.*
  renal, *ib.*
  systemic, *ib.*
  in veins, 216
    velocity of, 278
Circulatory system, 206 *et seq.*
Circumvallate papillæ of the tongue, 743
Clarke's column, 622, 625, 632, 672
Claustrum, 665, 669
Cleft-palate, cause of, 860
Clefts, visceral, 858
Clerk-Maxwell's experiment, 808
Clitoris, 313
  development of, 887, 890
Cloaca, 886
Clonus, 121
Clot or coagulum of blood. *See* Coagulation.
Clupeine, 409
Coagulation of blood, 76, 421 *et seq.*
    conditions affecting, 422

Coagulation of blood—*continued*
    theories of, 423
  of milk, 473
Coagulative ferments, 417
Cocaine, 480
Coccygeal gland, 342
Cochlea of the ear, 755
  theories in connection with, 762, 763
Cochlear nerve, 640
Cœlom, 844
Cohnheim, areas of, 81
Cohnheim's experiment, 294
  with succus entericus, 509
Cold areas, 740
Collagen, 37, 54, 411
Collateral fissure, 676
Colloids, 323, 406
Colon, the, 468, 879
Colostrum, 472
  corpuscles, 473, 476
Colour-blindness, 810
Colour-perception, 808
Colour sensations, 808
  Burch's experiments, 811
  theories of, 809-811
Colours, optical phenomena, 808 *et seq.*
Columnar epithelium, 25
Combination-tones, 762
Comma tract, 624, 626
Commissural fibres, 670
  nucleus, 657
Common path, principle of, 686
Common sensations, 741
Complemental air, 357
Complementary colours, 809
Compound tubular glands, 483
  racemose glands, 483, 484
Conception, 729
Concha, 752
Condiments as accessories to food, 480
Conducting paths in cord, 678 *et seq.*
Conduction, law of axipetal, 204
Conductivity, 172
Cones and rods, 785, 786
  movement of, 814
Conical and filiform papillæ of tongue, 744
Coni vasculosi, 830
Conjugate deviation of head and eyes, 703, 717
Conjugated proteins, 411
Conjunctiva, 776
Conjunctival reflex, 683
Connective tissues, 35
  classification, *ib.*
  corpuscles, 38
  elastic, 43
  fibrous, 41
  general structure of, 36
  jelly-like, 48
  retiform, 46
  varieties, 35
Conservation of energy, law of, 614
Consonants, 774
Contractility of muscle, 99
Contraction of pupil, 796
Contrast of colour, 812
Convergence of eye, 796
Convolutions, cerebral, 673 *et seq.*
Cooking, effect of, 479
Co-ordination of muscular movements, 124
Copper sulphate, or Piotrowski's test, 407
Cord, spinal. *See* Spinal cord.
Corium, 459
Cornea, 779
  corpuscles, 779, 780
  nerves, 779
  structure, 779

Corneo-scleral junction, 782
Coronary arteries, 237
Corona radiata, 666
Corpora cavernosa, 312, 830
  quadrigemina, 640, 650
Corpus Arantii, 213
  callosum, 663, 676, 876
  dentatum
    of cerebellum, 660
    of olivary body, *ib.*
  Highmorianum, 828
  luteum, 834
    of human female, *ib.*
    of menstruation and pregnancy compared, 834
    spongiosum, 312, 830
    striatum, 664
Corpuscles of blood, 76, 419. *See* Blood-corpuscles.
Corpuscles, Malpighian, 546
Corpuscles, of Grandry, 735
  of Herbst, 733
  of Meissner, 734
Corti, organ of, 654, 655, 758
Cortico-pontine fibres, 647
Cortico-spinal fibres, 647, 670
Corti's rods, 758 *et seq.*
  office of, 762
Cotyledons, 850
Coughing, mechanism of, 364
Cowper's glands, 552, 887
Cranial nerves, 190, 640 *et seq.*, 861
  nuclei of, 641, 642, 644, 647
  origin and functions of, 652 *et seq.*
Creatine, 401
Creatinine, 401, 570
Cremasteric reflex, 682
Crescents of Gianuzzi, 486
Cretinism, cause of, 336
Crico-arytenoid muscles, 766, 767
Cricoid cartilage, 765
Crico-thyroid muscle, 766
Crista acoustica, 721
Crossed hemiplegia, 697
Crossed pyramidal tract, 627
Crosses of Ranvier, 93
Crowbar accident, 705
Crura cerebelli, 639
  cerebri, 635, 651, 666
    grey matter of, 636
Crusta, 650
  petrosa, 71, 74
Crypts of Lieberkuhn, 466
Crystallin, 782
Crystalline lens, 778, 788
Crystallisable proteins, 406
Crystalloids, 406
Cubical epithelium, 25
Cuneus or cuneate lobule, 677
Cupula, 721
Curative inoculation, 451
Curdling ferments, 473
Currents of action,
  constant, 108
  induced, 109
  nerve, 103
Cutaneous sensations, 733 *et seq.*
Cuticle. *See* Epidermis, Epithelium.
Cutis vera, 585
Cuvier, ducts of, 865
Cybulski's hæmatachometer, 283
Cyclopterine, 409
Cystic duct, 513
Cystine in urine, 579
Cystine, 403
Cytosine, 403

D.

Daniell's battery, 107, 108
Dark-adaptation of eye, 814
Deaf-mutes and equilibrium, 723
Decidua, 847, 849
  basalis, 848, 849, 850
  development of, 848
  menstrualis, 837
  reflexa, or capsularis, 848
  serotina, 850
  vera, 848
Decussation of fibres in medulla oblongata, 644, 646
  in spinal cord, 679
  of optic nerves, 819
Deep sensibility, 741
Defæcation, mechanism of, 543, 691
  centre, 690
  influence of spinal cord on, 544
Degeneration method, 164, 169, 307, 623 *et seq.*
Deglutition. *See* Swallowing.
Deiters, cells of, 759
  nucleus, 648, 655
Demilunes of Gianuzzi, 486
Demoor's sleep theory, 712
Dendrites, 872
Dental germ, 72
  papilla, *ib.*
Dentine, 69
  formation of, 73
  structure, 69
Depressor nerve, 305
Dermis, 585, 587
Descemet's membrane, 779
Descending tubule of Henle, 546
Deutero-albumose, 499
Development, 838 *et seq.*
  adipose tissue, 44
  alimentary canal, 879
  allantois, 854
  amnion, 851
  anus, 879
  arteries, 862
  blood-corpuscles, 436
  blood-vessels, 436, 862
  bone, 59 *et seq.*
  brain, 874
  decidua, 847
  diaphragm, 883
  ear, 878
  extremities, 857
  eye, 876
  eyelids, 878
  face, 859
  Fallopian tubes, 887
  fœtal membranes, 847
  framework of body, 856
  genital glands, 888
  genito-urinary apparatus, 883 *et seq.*
  head, 857
  heart, 864
  intestines, 880
  iris, 878
  limbs, 857
  liver, 881
  lungs, 882
  lymphatic glands, 882
  medulla oblongata, 874
  mouth, 879
  muscle, 88
  nasal chambers, 879
  nerve-fibres, 96
  nervous system, 871, 872, 873
  nose, 879
  œsophagus, *ib.*

Development—*continued*
optic nerve, 877
organs of sense, 878
ovary, 838, 888
ovum, 838
pancreas, 881
pharynx, 879
respiratory apparatus, 882
salivary glands, 881
spinal cord, 871
spleen, 882
stomach, 879
teeth, 71
testicle, 888
thymus, 882
thyroid glands, 882
urethra, 879
vagina, 887
vascular system, 861
veins, 865
vertebræ, 857
visceral arches and clefts, 858 *et seq.*
Wolffian bodies, urinary apparatus, and sexual organs, 884 *et seq.*
Dextrin, 396
Dextrose, 391, 393
in urine, 582
tests for determining, 393, 582
Diabetes, 526
artificial production in animals, 526, 527
Dialyser, a, 406
Dialysis, 323, 406
Diamino-acids, 401
Diapedesis of blood-corpuscles, 294
Diaphragm. *See* Inspiration, etc.
development, 883
Diastase of liver, 525
Diastole of heart, 231
Diastolic pressure, 292
Dicrotic pulse, 291
Diencephalon, 836, 875
Diet, 595 *et seq.*
a healthy, 470
Chittenden's, 471, 472
nutritive value, 470 *et seq.*
tables, 471, 473, 595 *et seq.*
Voit's, 471
Difference-tones, 762
Diffusion and osmosis, distinguished, 322, 406
Digestion,
in the intestines, 502 *et seq.*
duration of, 543
mechanical processes, 535 *et seq.*
See Gastric fluid, Food, Stomach.
Dilator pupillæ, 781
Dilemma, 689
Dipeptides, 405
Diphtheria toxin, 452
Diplopia, 816
Direct cerebellar tract, 630
pyramidal tract, 627
Disaccharides, 392, 393
Discus proligerus, 833
Disease, "germ theory" of, 416
Distributing nerve-cells, 204
Disuse atrophy, 203, 704
Diuretics, 559
Diverticulum, Meckel's, 880
Dobie's line, 82
Dog, "scratch" reflex of, 687
Dog's brain, 698
Dorsal mesentery, 846
ridges, 871
vessels, 862
Dorsal pancreatic diverticulum, 882
Double vision, 816

Dromograph, Chauveau's, 284
Drugs, action of, 543, 742
on the eye, 801
on the heart, 250
on perspiration, 592
Duct of Gartner, 885
Ductless glands, 328 *et seq.*
theories of secretion, 329
Ducts of Bellini, 547, 548
of Cuvier, 865
of Gartner, 885
of Santorini, 882
of Wirsung, 882
Ductus arteriosus, 865, 871
closure of, 871
venosus, 863
closure of, 871
Dudgeon's sphygmograph, 289
Dulong's calorimeter, 612
Duodenum, 463, 879
Dupré's urea apparatus, 566
Dura mater, 618
Dyne, 264
Dyspnœa, 359, 371

E.

Ear, 752
bones or ossicles of, 753
function of, 760
ceruminous glands of, 590
development, 878
external, 752
function of, 759
internal or labyrinth, 754, 879
function of, 760
middle, 752
function of, 760
Ectopia vesicæ, 561
Efferent nerves, 90, 161
nerve-cells, 203
Eggs as food, 470, 476
Ehrlich's experiments with methylene blue, 378, 695
side-chain theory, 453
Elastic cartilage, 49, 52
fibres, 41
tissue, 43
Elastin, 38, 411
Electrical currents of retina, 815
nerves, 162
phenomena of muscle, 133 *et seq.*, 186
variation in central nervous system, 711
in glands, 484
Electricity,
in muscle, 141 *et seq.*, 187
nerve, 187
Electrodes, non-polarisable, 135
Electrometer, Lippmann's capillary, 138
Electrotonus, 179
Eleidin, 586
Elementary substances in the human body, 390
Embryo, 838 *et seq.* *See* Development.
Embryological method, 623
Embryonic area, 842, 844
heart and blood-vessels, 862-865
Emetics, 541
Eminentia teres, 640
Emmetropic eye, 796
Emotions, 729
Emulsification, 399, 505
Enamel of teeth, 70
formation of, 73
Enamel organ, *ib.*
Enchylema, 9
End-bulbs, 734

Endogenous protein metabolism, 604
End-plates, motorial, 86, 95
Endocardiac pressure, 240 *et seq.*
Endocardium, 207
Endogenous fibres, 706
Endolymph, 720, 755, 759
Endomysium, 79
Endoneurium, 94
Endothelium, 24
  distinctive characters, *ib.*
  germinating, *ib.*
Energy, law of conservation of, 614
Englobulins, 581
Entero-kinase, 508
Eosinophile cells, 433
Epiblast, 21, 842 *et seq.*
  organs formed from, 847
Epicardium, 206
Epicritic sensibility, 741
Epidermis, 585
Epididymis, 828, 830
Epigastric reflex, 682
Epiglottis, 769, 770
Epimysium, 79
Epineurium, 94
Epithelium, 22
  chemistry of, 33
  ciliated, 27, 836
  cogged, 32
  columnar, 25
  compound, 22
  cubical, 25
  germinal, 832, 888
  goblet-shaped, 26
  nutrition of, 33
  pavement, 22
  renal, 546
  simple, 22
  spheroidal, 25
  stratified, 31
  transitional, 30
Erectile structures, circulation in, 312
Erection, 313, 691
  cause of, *ib.*
  centre, 690
  influence of muscular tissue in, 313
Erepsin, 509
Erg, 264
Ergograph, Mosso's, 150
Erythroblasts, 439
Erythro-dextrin, 396, 491
Esbach's albuminometer, 581
Ethmoid, 860
Ethmo-vomerine plate, 860
Eustachian tube, 656, 752, 760, 879
  function of, 761
  valve, 871
Ewald, "sound picture" theories of, 763
Excitability of nerves, 172
  of tissues, 99
Exercise, effects on temperature of body, 610
Exogenous fibres, 706
Exogenous protein metabolism, 604
Expiration, 352
  force of expiratory act, 359
  influence on circulation, 350, 359
  mechanism of, 353
  muscles concerned in, *ib.*
  relative duration of, 355
External auditory meatus, 752
External capsule, 666
External parieto-occipital fissure, 674
External respiration, 374
  sphincter muscle, 542
Extraventricular nucleus, 665

Extremities, development of, 857
Eye, 776
  action of drugs on pupil, 800
  adaptation of vision at different distances, 792 *et seq.*
  blood-vessels, 788
  causes of dilatation and contraction of pupil, 801
  chambers of, 788
  development, 876
  focus, 789
  optical apparatus of, 788
    defects in, 796
  principal point, 789
  refractive media of, 788, 789
  resemblance to camera, 788
Eyeball, 777
  blood-vessels of, 788
  electrical currents of, 815
  muscles influencing movement, 815
  point of rotation, 816
  transverse and visual axis, 816
  various positions of, 816
Eyelids, 776
  development of, 876
Eyes, simultaneous action in vision, 816

F.

Face, development of, 859
Facial nerve, 640, 653
  effects of paralysis of, 653
  origin, 654
  relation of, to expression, *ib.*
Fæces, composition of, 534
  quantity passed, *ib.*
Fallopian tubes, 836
  development of, 889
Falsetto voice, 772
Faradisation, 121
Far-point, 796
Fasciculus retroflexus, 651
Fasciculus solitarius, 642, 658
Fat. *See* Adipose tissue.
  action of bile on, 522
    of pancreatic secretion, 508
  metabolism of, 598
  situations where found, 43, 44
  uses of, 46
Fatigue, 711
  in nerves, 151
Fats,
  absorption of, 532
  acids of, 397
  action of pancreatic juice on, 504
  chemical constitution, 397
  decomposition products, 398
  emulsification, 399
  of milk, 474
  saponification, 399
Fatty acids, 397
Fehling's solution, 582
Female generative organs, 832
  pronucleus, 841
Fenestrated membrane of Henle, 216
Fenestra ovalis, 752, 755
  rotunda, 752, 756, 761, 762
    action of, 762
Ferment coagulation, 410
Ferments, 415. *See* also Blood, Milk, Digestive juices.
  classification of, 417
Fertilisation, 841
Fibres of Müller, 772
  of Remak, 95

Fibrils of muscle, 81
of nerve, 92
Fibrin, 422, 423
ferment, 423, 428, 429
formation, 422
Fibrinogen, 76, 423, 428
Fibro-cartilage, 51
classification, *ib.*
development, 52
white, 51
yellow, 52
Fibrous tissue, 41
white, *ib.*
yellow, 43
Fick's spring kymograph, 272, 273
Fifth cranial nerve, 640, 653
Filiform papillæ of tongue, 744
Fillet, 645, 649
Filtration, 318, 319, 323
Filum terminale, 620, 872
Fischer's laboratory, the work in, 404
Fishes, circulatory system in, 229
Fistula, intestinal, 508
Flechsig's method, 705
Fleischl's hæmoglobinometer, 449, 450
Flesh of animals, 470
Flicker, 803, 820
Flour as food, 478
Flourens' experiment, 722
Fluids, swallowing, 537
Fluids, tension of,
gases in, 380 *et seq.*
Fluoride of calcium, 54
Focal distance, 792
Fœtal membranes, 847
development of, 850
Fœtus,
circulation in, 869
communication with mother, 850
Follicles, Graafian. *See* Graafian follicles.
Food, 470 *et seq.*
absorption of, 529 *et seq.*
accessories to, 480
chemical compounds of, 470
cooking, 479
digestibility of articles of, 470
value dependent on, *ib.*
heat-value of, 610
of man, 470
proximate principles in, 470
vegetable, *ib.*, 479
Foramen ovale, 864
of Magendie, 635
of Munro, 665
Fore-brain, 875
Fore-gut, 846, 883
Formatio reticularis, 645
Formic acid, 397
Fornix, 665
Fourth cranial nerve, 640
Fovea centralis, 783, 787, 805
Fovea hemielliptica et hemispherica, 756
Frogs,
circulatory system in, 229
corpuscles of, 430
reflexes in, 680 *et seq.*
Fromann's lines, 93
Frontal lobe, 675
Fronto-cerebellar fibres, 65
Fronto-nasal process, 859
Fundus glands, 461, 493
Fundus of eye, 804
of urinary bladder, 551
Fungiform papillæ of the tongue, 744
Funiculus cuneatus, 639, 644
Funiculus gracilis, 639, 644

Funiculus solitarius, 647, 657
Furfuraldehyde, 521
Fürth, on muscle proteins, 156, 160
Fuscin granules, 814

G.

Galactose, 394
Gall-bladder, 518
development of, 882
structure, 518
Galvanism, 133
Galvanometer, 134
Gamgee, photographic spectrum of hæmoglobin and its derivatives, 447, 448
Ganglia. *See* Nerve-centres.
sympathetic, functions of, 299, 300, 489
Ganglion cells, layer of, 784
Ganglion spirale, 759
Gartner's duct, 885
Gases,
extraction from blood, 377
in blood, *ib.*
in the lungs, 376
of plasma and serum, 428
Gastric glands, 493
innervation of, 496
Gastric juice, 493
acids in, 494, 496
test for, 496
action on bacteria, 510
action on food, 498 (*see* 538)
artificial, 493
composition of, 495
pepsin of, 493, 496
secretion of, 495, 496
influence of nervous system on, 496, 497
Gastrin, 507
Gay-Lussac's law for gases, 325
Gehuchten, von, law of axipetal conduction, 204
Gelatin, 37, 411
as a constituent of food, 477
Generative organs of the female, 832
of the male, 827
Genital cord, 888
ducts, 886
glands, 888
Genito-urinary apparatus, development of, 883 *et seq.*
Gennari, line of, 670, 703, 727
Genu of internal capsule, 667
Gerlach's network, 622
Germinal area, 842
cells, 872, 888
epithelium, 832, 888
ridge, 888
spot, 20, 836
vesicle, 20, 836
Giant cells, 55
Gilbert's experiments, 715
Giraldes, organ of, 885
Glands. *See* names of different.
Glisson's capsule, 514
Globin, 409, 441
Globular processes, 859
Globulins, 176, 406, 408, 410, 581
distinctions from albumin, 406
Glomeruli, 550
activity of, 557
olfactory, 750
Glosso-kinæsthetic area, 708, 709
Glosso-pharyngeal nerve, 641, 656
communications of, 656
functions, *ib.*
motor filaments, 657
a nerve of common sensation and of taste, *ib.*

Glottis, movements of, 770 771
Gluco-proteins, 412
Glucosamine, 412
Glucose,
in liver, 524
test for, 396
Gluteal reflex, 682
Glycerides, 397
Glycerin or Glycerol, 398
Glycine, 401, 568
Glycocholic acid, 520
Glycogen, 391, 396, 524, 525
characters, 396
destination of, 525
preparation, *ib.*
quantity formed, *ib.*
source of, 524
variation with diet, 525
Glycosuria, 526
Glycuronic acid and sugar, 527
Glyoxylic acid, impurity of, 407
Gmelin's test, 521
Goblet cells, 26, 732
Golgi's method, 517, 622, 669, 704, 713
Goll's column, 623, 626, 629, 639, 644
Goltz, experiments on the cerebrum, 726
Gotch, experiments on nerves, 153, 171
Gowers' hæmacytometer, 434, 435
hæmoglobinometer, 449
Gowers-Haldane hæmoglobinometer, 420
Graafian follicles, 832, 839
formation and development of, *ib. et seq*
relation of ovum to, 833
rupture of, changes following, 834 *et seq.*
Gradient, pressure, 281, 367
Gramme-molecular solutions, 322
Grandry, corpuscles of, 735
Granular layers of retina, 785
Grape-sugar. *See* Dextrose.
Gravity, influence of, on circulation, 276
Gréhant, output of the heart, 246
Grey matter of cerebellum, 191, 636, 660
of cerebrum, 197, 664
of crura cerebri, 636
of medulla oblongata, 631, 644, 645, 648
of pons Varolii, 648
of spinal cord, 191, 622
Groove, primitive, 842
Grossmann, on the course of the inhibitory fibres in mammals, 250
Growth of bone, 64
Guanase, 574
Guanine, 573
Gubernacular cord, 888
Gudden, von, bundle of, 651
Gullet, 458. *See* Œsophagus.
Gunsberg's reagent, 496
Gustatory cells, 745
Gyrus fornicatus, 676

H.

Hæmacytometers, 434, 435, 436
Hæmadromometer, Volkmann's, 278
Hæmatachometer, Cybulski's, 283
Vierordt's, *ib.*
Hæmatin, 441
Hæmatoblasts, 332, 430
Hæmatogens of cells, 413
Hæmatoidin, 443
Hæmatoporphyrin, 442, 447
Hæmatoscope, Herrmann's, 445
Hæm-autograph, 292
Hæmin, 442
Hæmochromogen, 442

Hæmoglobin, 76, 406, 429, 440 *et seq.*
analysis of, 441
compounds of, 443
crystallisable, 406
distribution, 440
estimation of, 449
photographic spectrum of, 446
Hæmoglobinometers, 420, 449
Hæmoglobinuria, paroxysmal, 583
Hæmolymph glands, 333
Hæmolysins, 453
Hair-cells, 721, 759
Hair-follicles, 588
Hairs, 588
structure of, *ib.*
Haldane's apparatus for estimating the carbonic acid and aqueous vapour given off by an animal, 375
carbonic oxide method of estimating oxygen tension of arterial blood, 383
Haldane and Priestley's method in dealing with respiration, 362
Haldane's measurement of air breathed, 356
Haldane's modification of Gowers' hæmoglobinometer, 449
Hamburger's experiments with Succus entericus, 508
Hamulus, 757
Hardy, microscopic structure of cells, 9
Hare-lip, cause of, 859
Hassall, concentric corpuscles of, 334, 882
Haversian canals, 56
Head, development of, 857
Head and tail folds, 845, 861
Head's study of nerve regeneration, 741
Hearing, anatomy of organ of, 752 *et seq.*
influence of external ear on, 759
of middle ear, *ib.*
physiology of, 759
range of, 762
See Sound, Vibrations, etc.
Heart, 206 *et seq.*
action of,
accelerated, 249
auricle, 864
force of, 244
frequency, *ib.*
inhibited, 249, 252
self-steering, 237
auricles of, 207, 231
chambers, 207
capacity of, 210
chordæ tendineæ of, 212
columnæ carneæ of, *ib.*
conduction in the, 253
course of blood in, 213
cycle, 231
development, 864
endocardiac pressure, 240
endocardium, 207, 211
fœtal, 862
force, 244
frog's, 229, 230
instruments for studying, 256
nerves of, 250
ganglia of, 253
gaseous exchanges during inhibition, 252
influence of drugs, *ib.*
of pneumogastric nerve, 247
of sympathetic nerve, 249
innervation, 247
intracardiac nerves, 252
pressure, 240
investing sac, 206
muscular fibres of, 86
musculi papillares, 212

Heart—*continued*
nervous system, influence on, 247
output of, 245
pericardium, 206
physiology, 231 *et seq.*
reflex inhibition, 251
situation, 206
size and weight, 210
sounds of, 234
causes, 235
structure of, 210
valves, 211
auriculo-ventricular, 210
function of, 233
semilunar, 212
function of, 234
structure, 211
ventricles, their action, 207, 210, 864
work of, 244, 245
Heat, animal. *See* Temperature.
influence of nervous system, 665
of various circumstances on, 614 *et seq.*
losses by radiation, etc., 611
regulation of, 615
variations of, 609
Heat areas, 740
Heat coagulation, 405
Heat-rigor of muscle, 157
of nerve, 178
Heat-value of food, 610
Heidenhain's researches, 556
Held, experiments on myelination, 706
Helicine arteries, 830
Helicotrema, 757
Heller's nitric-acid test, 581
Helmholtz's induction coil, 111
myograph, 112
phakoscope, 793, 794
resonance theory, 763
Helweg's bundle, 629
Hemianopsia, 703, 819
Hemiplegia, 666, 697
Hemisection of spinal cord, 631
Hemispheres, cerebral. *See* Cerebrum.
Henle, sheath of, 94
tubule of, 546
Henry-Dalton law for gases, 325
Hensen's line or disc, 82
Hepatic artery, 513, 516
Hepatic cells, 514
colic, 523
duct, 513, 516
glycogen, 597
veins, 513, 516
Herbst, corpuscles of, 733
Hering's theory of colour, 810
Hermaphroditism, 890
Herpes, 825
Herrmann's hæmatoscope, 445
Hetero-albumose, 499
Heterotype mitosis, 841
Hexatomic alcohols, 392
Hexone bases, 402
Hexoses, 392
Hiccough, mechanism of, 365
Hill (Croft) on inverting ferments, 418
Hill (Leonard) on the circulation of blood in the brain, 312 *et seq.*
on the influence of gravity on the circulation, 277
on alterations in atmospheric pressure, 373
Hind-gut, 845
Hippocampal convolution, 676
Hippocampus major, 676, 876
Hippuric acid, 574
Histidine, 402

Histone, 409
Holoblastic ova, 839
Homotype mitosis, 841
Hopkins' test for lactic acid, 496
for uric acid, 573
Hormone, 506
Horopter, 818, 819
Hurst, "sound-picture" theories of, 763
Hürthle's manometer, 242, 273, 310
differential manometer, 243
Hyaline cartilage, 50
corpuscle, 433
Hyaloplasm, 9
Hydrobilirubin, 521
Hydro-kinetic force, 281
-static force, 281
Hydrolysis, 400
Hyo-mandibular cleft, 879
Hypermetropia, 797
Hyperpnœa, 371
Hypertonic solutions, 326
Hypoblast, 21, 842, 847
organs formed from, 847
Hypogastric artery, 864
Hypoglossal nerve, 641
distribution, 658
origin, *ib.*
Hypospadias, 890
Hypotonic solutions, 326
Hypoxanthine, 335, 573
presence in the spleen, 332
Hysteria, 774

I.

Idiosome, 830
Ileo-cæcal valve, 463, 467, 468, 469
Ileum, 463, 467
Iliac artery, 864
Image, formation on retina, 792
Immunity, 451 *et seq.*
Impregnation of ovum, 841
Inanition or starvation, 603, 607
Incus, 753, 754
development of, 861
Indican, 576
Indigo, *ib.*
Induction coil, 109 *et seq.*
current, 109
Infantile paralysis, 737
Infundibulum, 349
Inhibition, vagus, 247, 252
Inhibitory centre for heart, effect of venous blood on, 373
Inhibitory influence of pneumogastric nerve, 247
Inhibitory nerves, 162
Inoculation, curative, 451
protective, *ib.*
Inogen, 155
Inorganic compounds in body, 390
salts in protoplasm, 10
Inosite, 397
Insalivation, 535
Inspiration, 351
elastic resistance overcome by, 352
expansion of chest in, *ib.*
extraordinary, *ib.*
force employed in, *ib.*
mechanism of, 351 *et seq.*
Instruments for demonstrating muscular action, 107 *et seq.*
Intercellular material, 5, 36
passage, 349
Intercentral nerves, 163
Intercostal muscles, action in inspiration, 352 *et seq.*
action in expiration, 353

Intercrossing fibres of Sharpey, 58, 59
Intermediary nerve-cells, 203
Intermediate areas, 709
Intermittent pulse, 288
Internal capsule, 666
  importance of, 666
  respiration, 374
Internal secretion theory of the ductless glands, 328, 329
Internal sphincter muscle, 469
Interstitial cells, 830
Intestinal juice, 503 *et seq.*
Intestinal oncometer, 543
Intestines, 463
  action of drugs, 543
  digestion in, 502 *et seq.*
    duration of, 543
  development, 880
  large, 468
    coats of, 469
    glands, 469
    structure, *ib.*
  movements, 541
  mucous membrane of, 469
  nervous mechanism, 541, 544
  small, 463
    coats of, *ib.*
    glands, 466, 467
    structure, 467
Intracardiac nerves, 252
  pressure, 240
Intraventricular nucleus, 665
Inversion, 394, 507
Inversive ferments, 417
Invertin, 507
Involuntary muscles, 78 (*see* 158 *et seq.*)
  structure of, 78
Iodo-thyrin, 337
Iris, 778, 781, 788
  angle of, 782
  development of, 878
  functions, 799
  reflex actions, 801
Irradiation, 799
Irritability of tissues, 99
Island of Reil, 665, 669, 675, 676
Islands of Calleja, 653
Islets of Langerhans, 502, 512
Iso-cholesterin, 522
Iso-maltose, 395
Isometric contraction, 132
Isotonic contraction, *ib.*
  solutions, 326

J.

Jacksonian epilepsy, 697
Jacobsen's nerve, 656
Jaundice, 523
Jecorin, 339
Jejunum, 463
Jelly of Wharton, 40
Jelly-like connective tissue, 48
Jugular ganglia, 657
Juice, gastric, 493
  pancreatic, 583

K.

Kaiser's views on muscular contraction, 132
Karyokinesis, 16 *et seq.*
  phases of, 20
Katabolic nerve groups, 301
Katabolic phenomena, 594
Katelectrotonus, 183
Kations, 321

Kennedy, experiment on nerve crossing, 174
Kephalin, 176
Keratin, 33, 411, 586, 592
Ketone, 391
Ketoses, 392
Key, Du Bois Reymond's, 108
Kidney oncometer, the, 554
Kidneys, 545
  blood-vessels of, how distributed, 548
  calyces, 546
  capillaries of, 550
  development of, 885
  diseases of, effect on the skin, 593
  extirpation of, 560
  function, 553. *See* Urine.
  hilus of, 545
  Malpighian corpuscles of, 546, 553
  nerves, 553
  pelvis of, 546
  structure, 545
  tubules of, 546 *et seq.*
  weight, 545
  work done by, 559
Kinæsthetic area, 695, 704
  sense, 742
Kinetoplasm, 201
Kjeldahl's method of estimating urea, 566
Klein on the stages of karyokinesis, 17
Knee-jerk, 683, 685
König's apparatus for obtaining flame-pictures of musical notes, 773
Kossel on protamines, 409
Krause's membrane, 82-87
Kronecker's perfusion cannula, 257
Kühne's gracilis experiment, 173 (*see* 302)
  muscle plasma experiment, 156
Kymograph, Fick's spring, 272, 273
  Ludwig's, 270
  tracings, 272, 274
Kymoscope, Anderson Stuart's, 268

L.

Labia externa and interna, development of, 890
Labyrinth of the ear. *See* Ear.
Lacrimal gland, 776
Lact-albumin, 473
Lacteals, 223, 465, 466, 532
Lactic acid, tests for, 496
  fermentation, 395
Lactiferous ducts, 475
Lactose, 391, 394, 474, 582
Lamina cribrosa, 783
  spiralis, 756, 757
  supra-choroidea, 780
Lamina fusca, 779
Lamina of Bowman, 779
Langerhans, islets of, 502, 512
Langley's experiment on vagus and cervical sympathetic nerve, 174, 175 (*see* 732)
  ganglion, 487
  nicotine method, 301, 489
Lanoline, 522
Large intestine. *See* Intestines.
Laryngoscope, 768
Larynx, anatomy of, 764
  cartilages of, *ib.*
  mucous membrane, 766
  muscles of, 766 *et seq.*
  nerves of, 768
  rudiment, 882
  vocal cords, 764
    movements of, 770
Lateral nasal process, 859
Lateral sclerosis, 682

Lateral ventricle, 664
Lateritious deposit, 572
Lawes' and Gilberts' experiments, 599
Lecithin, 9, 92, 176, 399
Lee's experiments, 722
Lens, crystalline, 781, 782
Lenticular nucleus, 665
Le Page's investigations into pancreatic secretion, 505
Lépine's theory of the ferment of the pancreatic internal secretion, 527
Leucine, 335, 401, 511, 568
Leucocytes. *See* Blood-corpuscles (white).
Levator palpebræ superioris, 776
Levulose, 392, 394
Lewis, on hæmolymph glands, 333
Lieberkühn's glands, 466
  jelly, 414
Liebermann's reaction, 522
Ligamentum pectinatum iridis, 782
  arteriosum, 863
Limbic lobe, 676
Limbs, development of, 857
Line of Baillarger, 669
  of Gennari, 670, 703
Lipase, 599
Lippmann's capillary electrometer, 138
Liquor sanguinis, or plasma, 76, 419
Lissauer, tract of, 626
Liver, 513
  blood-vessels, 514
  capillaries, 516
  cells of, 513
  cirrhosis of, 567
  circulation in, 516
  diastase, 525
  development of, 867, 881
  extirpation in mammals, 526
  formation of urea by, 518
  functions, 518
  glycogenic function of, 524
  nerves of, 528
  secretion of. *See* Bile.
  structure, 514
  sugar formed by, 524, 525
  supply of blood to, 513
"Living test-tube" experiment, 427
Local sign, 738
Localisation of tactile sensations, 737
Locomotor ataxy, 673, 679, 685, 719
Loewenthal's tracts, 628
Loewy's aërotonometer, 381
Loop of Henle, 546
Lortet on the carotid flow, 285
Loudness of voice, 772
Ludwig's kymograph, 270
  Stromuhr, 279
Lugaro's sleep theory, 712
Lunatic's brain, 718
Lungs, 347
  air-sacs of, 349
  blood-supply, 350
  capillaries of, 349
  changes of air in, 374
  circulation in, 350
  coverings of, 347
  development of, 882
  diffusion of gases within, 376
  lobes of, 348
  lobules of, *ib.*
  lymphatics, 350
  muscular tissue of, 348
  nerves, 351
  nutrition of, 350
  position of, 343
  structure, 347

Lymph, 221, 314
  composition of, 314
  current of, 317
  formation of, 318
Lymph capillaries, 222
  origin of, 223
  structure, 225
Lymph-hearts, structure and action of, 317
  relation to spinal cord, 318
Lymphagogues, 319
Lymphatic glands, 223, 315, 462
  development, 882
Lymphatic vessels, 221
  of arteries and veins, 218
  communication with blood-vessels, 221
  structure of, 222
Lymphocytes, 331, 433
Lymphoid or retiform tissue, 47. *See* Adenoid tissue.
Lysine, 401

M.

Macallum's reagent, 178
MacMunn, use of the term myo-hæmatin, 156
Macrosmatic animals, 750
Macula, 721
  lutea, 703, 783, 784, 787
Magnesium phosphate, 54
Male organs of generation, 827, 828
  pronucleus, 841
  sexual functions, 830
Malleus, 753, 745, 861
Malpighian bodies or corpuscles of kidney, 546. *See* Kidney.
  corpuscles of spleen, 331
Malpighian layer, 585, 586
Maltase, 418
Maltose, 395, 491
Mammal, nerves of, 251
Mammalian ovum, 846
Mammary glands, 475
  evolution, 476
  involution, *ib.*
  lactation, *ib.*
  structure, 475
Mandibular arch, 859
Mannite, 392
Mannose, 392
Manometer, Hürthle's, 242, 273
  Martin's, 372
Marchi reaction, 177
Marey's sphygmograph, 287
  tambour, 122, 239, 310
Marginal convolution, 676
Marrow, 54
Martin's sphygmometer, 292, 293
Mastication, 535
Mastoid cells, 752
Maturation of the ovum, 839
Maxillary process, 859
Maximal pulsation, 292
May, Page, reaction of degeneration, 189
Meat as food, 477
Meatus of ear, 756
Meckel's cartilage, 861
  diverticulum, 880
Meckel's ganglion, 656
Meconium, 534
Mediastinum testis, 828
Medulla oblongata, 190, 635, 638 *et seq.*
  columns of, 639
  decussation of fibres, 644-646
  development, 875
  dorsal aspect, 643

Medulla oblongata—*continued*
fibres of, how distributed, 639
grey matter in, 631
pyramids, anterior, 638
posterior, 639
structure of, 640
Medullary groove, 871
Meibomian follicles, 483, 776
Meissner and Büttner's experiments, 825
Meissner's corpuscles, 734
plexus, 464
Melanin granules, 814
Membrana capsulo-pupillaris, 878
chorio-capillaris, 780
decidua, 847
granulosa, 833
development into corpus luteum, 834
hyaloidea, 788
limitans externa, 785, 787
interna, 783
propria or basement membrane. *See* Basement-membrane.
pupillaris, 878
tectoria, 759
action of, 762
tympani, 752, 753, 760, 879
Membrane, vitelline, 836
Membranes of the brain and spinal cord, 190
Membranes, mucous. *See* Mucous membranes.
semipermeable, 323
Membranous labyrinth, 755, 756, 879. *See* Ear.
Mendel and Rockwood's experiments, 531
Menière's disease, 722
Menstruation, 834
coincident with discharge of ova, 834
corpus luteum of, 834
Mercurial air-pumps, 384, 385
Mercurial kymograph, 269, 271
Meroblastic ova, 839
Mesencephalon, 636, 875
Mesentery, dorsal, 846
Mesial nasal process, 858
Mesoblast, 21, 843
organs formed from, 847
Mesoblastic somites, 844, 854, 857
Mesonephric tubules, 885
Mesonephros, 885
Metabolic balance-sheets, 595 *et seq.*
Metabolism, 7, 824
general, 594 *et seq.*
Metanephric tubules, 883 *et seq.*
Metanephros, 886
Meta-proteins, 414
Metencephalon, 636, 875
Methæmoglobin, 447, 448
photographic spectrum of, *ib.*
Mett's tubes, 500
Meyer, "sound picture" theories of, 763
Meynert's fountain decussation, 650
Micrococcus ureæ, 580
Microcytes, 430
Micro-organisms, types of, 416
Microsmatic animals, 750
Micro-spectroscope, 445
Micturition, 561
centre, 561, 690
Mid-brain, 635, 875
anterior aspect, 638
posterior aspect, 639
structure of, 638 *et seq.*
tracts of, 651
Middle ear. *See* Tympanum.
Mid-gut, 846
Milk, as food, 470, 472
alcoholic fermentation of, 474
chemical composition, 473

Milk—*continued*
coagulation of, *ib.*
fats of, 474
chemical composition, *ib.*
proteins of, 473
reaction and specific gravity, 473
salts of, 475
secretion of, 472
souring of, 474 (*see* 416)
uterine, 850
Milk-curdling ferment, 505
Milk-globules, 470
Milk-sugar, 394, 474
properties of, 395
Milk-teeth, 65 *et seq.*
Millon's reagent and test, 407
Mitochondrial sheath, 831
Mitosis, 16, 840, 841
Mitral cells, 750
Modiolus, 756
Molars. *See* Teeth.
Molecular layers, 668
Momentum, 264
Monakow's bundle, 629, 649, 651
Monaster stage of karyokinesis, 17
Monatomic alcohols, 392
Monkey's brain, 699
Mono-amino-acids, 401
Monoplegia, 697
Monosaccharides, 392
Monro-Kellie doctrine, 311
Moore and Rockwood's experiments, 533
Moore's test for sugar, 393
Morgagni, sessile hydatid of, 890
Mörner and Sjöquist's method of estimating urea, 566
Morphological development, 20
Morula, 847
Mosso's ergograph, 150
experiments on the effects of fatigue, 151
Motor areas of cerebrum, 695, 699
impulses, transmission in cord, 680
nerve-fibres, 91
Motor nerves, 161
Motor oculi nerve, 640
origin of, 652
Motorial sense, 742
Mott and Halliburton, on degenerated nerve, 167, 177
Mountain sickness, 373
Mouth, 457
Movements of protoplasm, 12, 100
peristaltic, of intestines, 541
of involuntary muscle, 158
of stomach, 539
Mucic acid, 394
Mucigen or Mucinogen, 26, 33, 486
Mucin, 26, 33, 412
Mucoids, 48, 412
Mucous membrane, 464, 482
digestive tract, *ib.*
epithelium-cells of, 482. *See* Epithelium.
gastro-pulmonary tract, 482
genito-urinary tract, *ib.*
gland-cells of, *ib.*
of intestines, 469
respiratory tract, 482
of stomach, 460
of uterus, changes in pregnancy, 836
Müllerian duct, 887, 889
Müller's fibres, 783
Müller's law of specific nerve energy, 732
Müller's muscle, 781
Munk's experiments, 533, 703
Multipolar nerve-cells, 194
Murexide test, 572

Muscarine, action of, on the heart, 250
Muscle, 105
  blood-vessels of, 86
  cardiac, 87
  changes in form, when it contracts, 107 *et seq.*
  chemical changes in, 149
    composition of, 154
  clot, *ib.*
  columns, 81
  contractility, 99
  curves, 113, 116-118, 132
  development, 88
  dynamometer, 131
  elasticity, 125
  electrical phenomena of, 133 *et seq.*, 186
  extensibility of, 125 *et seq.*
  fatigue, effect of, 117, 150
    curves, 117
  Hensen's line, 82
  involuntary, 79 (*see* 158 *et seq.*)
  irritability, 99
    evidence of, *ib.*
  nerves of, 86
  plain, 87
  plasma, 154, 156
  proteins, 156
  red, 87
  response to stimuli, 102 *et seq.*, 186
  rigor, 153, 160
  sarcolemma, 80
  sensory nerve-endings in, 736
  serum, 154
  shape, changes in, 121
  skeletal, 79
  sound, developed in contraction of, 122
  spindle, 86, 684. *See* Neuro-muscular spindle.
  stimuli, 102
  striated, structure of, 81 *et seq.*
  tetanus, 121
    negative variation of, 140
  thermal changes in, 147
  tonus, 130, 160
  twitch, 116 (*see* 141)
  voluntary, 79 (*see* 158 *et seq.*)
  wave, 118, 141
  work of, 130
Muscles, reciprocal action of antagonistic, 687
Muscular action, conditions of, 131
Muscular contraction, 106, 116
  effect of two successive stimuli, 119
    of more than two stimuli, 120
  voluntary tetanus, 121
Muscular fibres,
  development, 88
  plain, 78
  transversely striated, *ib.*
Muscular force, 130
  irritability, 99
  tissue, 78 *et seq.*
    composition of, 155
Muscularis mucosæ, 345, 459, 460, 464, 466, 467, 469
Musical sounds, 772
Mydriatics, 800
Myelencephalon, 636, 875
Myelination, 705
Myelocytes, 439
Myeloplaxes, 55
Myelospongium, 872
Myogen-fibrin, 156
Myoglobulin, 156
Myohæmatin, 156
Myograph, 107
  Helmholtz's, 112
  pendulum, 114
  spring, *ib.*
  transmission, 122 (*see* 172)

Myopia, or short-sight, 796
Myosin, 154, 156, 157
Myosin-fibrin, 156
Myosinogen, 155-157
Myotics, 800
Myxœdema, 336 (*see* 341)

N.

Nails, 588
Nasal cavities in relation to smell, 748 *et seq.*
Nasmyth's membrane, 69, 74
Near point, 795
Neopallium, 677
Nephric tubules, 884
Nerve-cells, classification of, 203
  structure of, 192 *et seq.*
Nerve-centres, 190 *et seq.* *See* Cerebellum, Cerebrum, etc.
  ano-spinal, 544
  cilio-spinal, 690
  defæcation, 543
  deglutition, 537
  erection, 690
  micturition, 561
  parturition, 690
  respiratory, 359
  secretion of saliva, 487
  speech, 702
  vaso-motor, 297, 685
Nerve-corpuscles, 192 *et seq.*
  bipolar, 193
  unipolar, *ib.*
Nerve epithelium, 730
Nerve-fibres, cardio-inhibitory, 247
  intercentral, 163
Nerve-impulse, velocity of, 172
Nerves, 90
  accelerator, 162
  action of stimuli on, 102, 561
  afferent, 90, 162
  axis-cylinder of, 92
  cells, 91, 192
  centrifugal, 161
  centripetal, 162
  cerebro-spinal, 191, 618
  changes in, during activity, 171
  classification, 161
  conductivity of, 181, 189
  cranial, 191, 640 *et seq.*, 848
  development of, 872
  degeneration, 164, 200
    chemistry of, 177
    reaction of, 188
  direction of a nerve impulse, 173
  efferent, 90, 161
  electrical, 162
    stimulation of, 186
  excitability of, 172
  fibres, 91
    development of, 96
  functions of, 164
  funiculi of, 94
  grey matter, 91
  inhibitory, 162
  intracardiac, 252
  irritability of, 99
  laws of conduction, 162 *et seq.*
  medullary sheath, 92
  medullated, 91
  motor, 161
    termination of, 95
  nodes of Ranvier, 92
  non-medullated, 91
  olfactory, 640, 749

Nerves—*continued*
physiology of, 161 *et seq.*
pilo-motor, 589
plexuses of, 95
reflex actions, 163, 198
secretory, 162
section of, 164, 487
size of, 94
spinal. *See* Spinal nerves.
splanchnic, stimulation of, 360
stimulation of cut, 164, 360
structure, 91
sympathetic, influence on heart, 249
taste, 745
terminations of,
in corpuscles of Golgi, 736
in corpuscles of Grandry, 735
in corpuscles of Herbst, 733
in end-bulbs, 734
in motorial end-plates, 95
in networks or plexuses, 737
in Pacinian corpuscles, 733
in touch-corpuscles, 734
trophic, 162, 824
Nervous circles, 673, 685
Nervous system,
cerebro-spinal, 191, 618 *et seq.*
development, 811 *et seq.*
electrical variation in central, 711
influence on the heart, 370
sympathetic, 249
vaso-motor, 297 *et seq.*
Nervous tissues, chemistry of, 175
potassium salts in, 178
Neural crest, 873
Neurenteric canal, 843
Neuroblasts, 872
Neuroglia, 191, 621
Neurokeratin, 92, 192, 411
Neuro-muscular spindles, 86, 736
Neutral sulphur, 576
Nicotine, action of, 301, 340, 489
Nissl's granules, 195 *et seq.*, 714
significance of, 200
Nitric oxide hæmoglobin, 448
Nitrogen in the blood, 377
eliminated in the form of urea, 470
Nodal point, 789
Nodes of Ranvier, 92
Normoblasts, 439
Nose. *See* Smell.
development of, 879
Notochord, 846, 857, 860
Nuclear layers, 785
sap or matrix, 10
Nuclease, 574
Nucleic acid, 412, 413
Nuclein, 11, 412
Nuclei pontis, 647
Nucleoli, 10
Nucleo-proteins, 9, 412, 413
Nucleus of animal cell, 5, 6, 10 *et seq.*
chemical composition, 11
division, 16
staining of, 11
structure, *ib.*
Nucleus ambiguus, 647, 657
Nucleus cuneatus, 644, 647, 672
gracilis, *ib.*
Nucleus of Bechterew, 655
of Deiters, 655
Nyctalopia, 814
Nymphæ, 890
Nystagmus, 814

O.

Oblique vein of Marshall, 865
Occipital convolutions, 676
Occipital lobe, 675
Odontoblasts, 68, 70, 72, 73
Odontogen, 73
Odours, 751. *See* Smell.
Œsophagus, development, 879
structure of, 458
Oleaginous principles, 397
Oleic acid, 398
Olein, 44, 397
Olfactory bulb, 749, 879
cells, 748
depression, 859
glomeruli, 750
nerves, 640, 750
tract, 749
"roots" of, *ib.*
Olivary body, 638, 646
Oliver's hæmacytometer, 436
his method of estimating hæmoglobin, 450
Omphalo-mesenteric veins, 850, 862, 865, 867
Oncograph, Roy's, 309
Oncometer, 309, 554
intestinal, 543
Roy's, 309, 333
Oocytes, 832, 835, 836, 839, 840
Oogonia, 836, 839
Ophthalmoscope, 804 *et seq.*
Opsonins, 455
Optic disc, 783
Optic nerve, 640, 783
decussation of fibres in, 819
development of, 877
fibres, 784
nervous paths in, 819
Optic thalamus, 665
vesicle, primary, 876
Optical angle, 791
apparatus of eye, 789
axis, 791
defects in, 796
Optogram, 813
Ora serrata of retina, 782, 783, 787
Orang's brain, 674
Orbicularis muscle, 776
Orbital sulcus, 677
Orbito-sphenoids, 860
Organ of Corti, 654, 655
of Giraldès, 885
Organic compounds in body, 390 *et seq.*
Organised ferments, 415, 416
Ornithine, 401, 568
Osazone, 395
Osmosis, 322
distinguished from diffusion, 406
Osmotic pressure, method of estimating, 321, 323-327
calculation of, 325
determination of, *ib.*
of proteins, 326
phenomena, 321 *et seq.*
physiological applications, 326
Os orbiculare, 754
Osseous labyrinth, 755. *See* Ear.
Ossicles of the ear, 753
action of, 760
Ossification, stages of, 59 *et seq.*
Osteoblasts, 59, 63
Osteoclasts, 63
Osteogen, 59
Otic vesicle, primary, 878
Otoliths, 721
Ovary, 827, 832

Ovary—*continued*
development of, 838, 888
Graafian follicles in, 832
Oviduct, or Fallopian tube, 827
Ovo-mucoid, 412
Ovum, 20, 833, 838
action of seminal fluid on, 889 *et seq.*
changes in ovary, 838
previous to fecundation, 839
cleaving of yolk, 842
development, 838
fertilised, 841, 847
formation of, 835
germinal vesicle and spot of, 836 *et seq.*
impregnation of, 841
maturation, 839
segmentation, 842
structure of, 838
in mammals, 835
subsequent to cleavage, 842 *et seq.*
Oxidases, 417, 574
Oxygen in the blood, 377, 390
Oxyhæmoglobin, 77, 440 *et seq.*, 443
spectrum of, 446, 447 (*see* coloured plate)
Oxyntic cells, 462, 493, 494
Oxyntic glands, 493

P.

Pacchionian bodies, 618
Pacinian corpuscles, 733
Pain, 730
Pain spots, 739, 740
Palmitic acid, 393
Palmitin, 44, 397
Pancreas, 502
adaptation of, 507
development of, 881
extirpation of, 511
diabetic condition produced in animals by, 512, 526
functions of, 512
so-called peripheral reflex, secretion of, 505
structure, 502
Pancreatic juice, 503
action on fats, 504
composition and action, 503
ferments in, *ib.*
Panoramic vision, 727
Papillæ,
of the kidney, 546
of skin, distribution of, 587
of tongue, 743
Parachordal cartilages, 860
Paradoxical contraction, 182
Parallel puzzle, 823
Paralytic secretion, 488
Paramyosinogen, 156
Parathyroids, 337
Parietal cells, 452, 494
Parietal lobe, 675
Parietal lobule, 676
Parieto-occipital fissure, 677, 876
Parotid gland, 490
alveoli of, 487
Parovarium, 885
Pars ciliaris retinæ, 788
Parturition centre, 690
Par vagum. *See* Pneumogastric nerve.
Pathological urine, 581
Patrick's experiments, 715
Pavy's views as to the liver being a sugar-forming organ, 525

Pawlow's method for obtaining pure gastric juice, 495, 506, 507, 508
his observations on the salivary glands, 490
Peduncles, superior cerebellar, 652
Pelvis of the kidney, 546
Pendulum myograph, 114
Penis, 830, 887, 890
structure, *ib.*
Pepsin, 493, 494, 496
Pepsinogen, 494
Pepsin-hydrochloric acid, 496
Peptides, 405
Peptogens, 498
Peptones, 400, 414, 499
characters of, 498, 499
Peptonuria, 581
Perception, 729
Perforated spots, 666
Perforating fibres of Sharpey, 58
Perfusion cannula, Kronecker's, 257
Pericardium, 206
Perichondrium of cartilage, 51
Perichoroidal space, 778
Perilymph, or fluid of labyrinth of ear, 720, 755
Perimeter, 806
Perimysium, 79
Perineurium, 94
Periotic capsule, 861
Peripheral resistance, 260
Peristaltic movements of intestines, 541, 542
of involuntary muscle, 158, 159 (*see* 537)
of stomach, 538
Perivitelline fluid, 841
Permanent teeth. *See* Teeth.
Perspiration, cutaneous, 590
insensible and sensible, 591
ordinary constituents of, 592
Petrosal ganglia, 657
Pettenkofer's reaction, 520
Peyer's patches, 466, 467, 469
Pflüger's law of contraction, 184, 189
his method in dealing with respiration, 363
Phagocytes, 295, 434, 451
Phakoscope, Helmholtz's, 794
Pharynx, 457
action in swallowing, *ib.*
development, 879
Phenyl-alanine, 402
Phenyl hydrazine test, 395 (*see* 583)
Phloridzin-diabetes, 527
Phosphates in urine, 577, 579
Phospho-proteins, 411
Photo-chromatic interval, 814
Photographic spectra of hæmoglobin, oxyhæmoglobin, and methæmoglobin, 447
Photophobia, 814
Phrenograph, 355
Physiological methods, 3
pit, 805
rheoscope, 145, 159
zero, 747
Pia mater, 618
Picric acid test, 582
Pigment cells of retina, 100, 786
movement of, 814
Pilo-motor nerves, 589
Pineal gland, 341
Pinna, 752, 879
Piotrowski's reaction, 407
Piperidine, action of, 340
Pitch of voice, 759, 772
Pitot's tube, 283
Pituitary body, 341
development, 854
effects of removal, 341
Placenta, maternal, 850

Placenta—*continued*
fœtal, 850
Plantar reflex, 682
Plasma of blood, 76, 419, 426
gases of, 428
Plethysmograph, 307
Schäfer's, 258
Pleura, 347
Plexus, terminal, 737
of Auerbach, 97, 464
Plimmer, experiments by, 507
Pneumogastric nerve, 641, 657
distribution of, 657
functions, 641, 657
influence on
deglutition, 537
gastric digestion, 540
secretion, 497
heart, 247
lungs (trophic), 825
muscles of stomach, 540
pancreatic secretion, 505
respiration, 361
vomiting, 541
mixed function of, 657
origin, *ib.*
Poggendorf's rheochord, 180
Pohl's commutator, 179
Polar globules, 840, 841
Polarimeter, 415
Polymorpho-nuclear cells, 432
Polymorphic layer, 669
Polypeptides, 400, 405, 414
Polysaccharides, 393
Pons Varolii, 635, 637
grey matter in, 636
Popielski's investigations into pancreatic secretion, 505
Portal canals, 514
circulation, 214
vein, 513, 514. *See* Liver.
Porus opticus, 783
Postero-lateral column, 630
Post-ganglionic fibres, 301
Potassium salts, in nervous tissues, 178
Precipitin, 455
Precuneus or quadrilateral lobule, 677
Preganglionic fibres, 301
Pregnancy,
corpus luteum of, 834
Prepyramidal tract, 629
Presbyopia, 799
Presphenoid, 860
Pressor nerves, 303
Pressure gradient, 281, 367
Pressure head, 282
Pressure-measurers, 264
Primary areas, 707
Primary responses of eye, 814
Primitive groove, 843
germ cells, 832
jugular veins, 865
mouth cavity, 858
nerve-sheath, or Schwann's sheath, 92
streak, 843
Processus gracilis, 753
vaginalis, 888
Projection fibres, 670
Pronephric tubules and ducts, 883, 884
Pronephros, 885
Pronucleus, female, 840, 841
male, 841
Propeptone, 499
Prosecretin, 506
Prosencephalon, 636
Prostate gland, 552

Protamines, 409
Protective inoculation, 451
Protein-hydrolysis, 414
Protein metabolism, 7, 399, 602
Proteins, 7, 399
absorption of, 530
action on polarised light, 407
of blood, 428
classification, 408
cleavage products, 399
coagulated, 408
colloidal solution, 405
colour reactions, 407
composition, 399, 400
conjugated, 411
crystallisation, 406
ferment coagulation, 408
heat coagulation, 405, 408
indiffusibility of, 400, 406
osmotic pressure of, 326
precipitants of, 407, 408
simple, 399
solubilities, 400, 405
Proteolytic ferments, 417
Proteoses, 400, 414, 499
characters of, 499
Prothrombin, 424
Proto-albumose, 499
Protones, 409
Protopathic sensations, 741
Protoplasm, 5, 6, 8
chemical structure, 9
irritability, 15
movements, 12 *et seq.*, 100
Proto-vertebræ, 844, 857
Protrusion of eyeball, 815
Pseudopodia, 13, 15
Pseudoscope, 822
Pseudo-stomata, 219
Ptosis, 816
Ptyalin, 486, 491
Ptyalinogen, 487
Pulmonary artery, 863
Pulsation, maximal, 292
Pulse, anacrotic, 290
arterial, 287 *et seq.*
dicrotic, 291
velocity, 281
venous, 294, 296
Purine bases, 413, 573
Purkinje's cells, 197, 660
fibres, 89
figures, 802
Pyloric glands, 462, 493
orifice, 539
Pyramidal tracts, 627, 651, 670 *et seq.*
Pyramids, layer of, 669
Pyramids of medulla oblongata, 638
of kidney. *See* Kidney.
Pyrimidine bases, 403
Pyrrolodine derivatives, 403
Pzibram, Hans, theory of classification by muscle proteids, 157

Q.

Quinquand, output of the heart, 246

R.

Racemose glands, 484
Ranke's diet, 611
Rathke's pouch, 858

Raynaud's disease, 311
Reaction time in man, 689
Rectum, the, 468, 879
Red nucleus, 649
Reduced eye, 790
Reflex arc, 682
  actions, 678 *et seq.*
  inhibition of, 681, 687
  in frog, 680
  in man, 682
    superficial, *ib.*
    tendon, 683
  of dog, 687
  of nerves, 163, 198
  of spinal cord, 680 *et seq.*
  "scratch," 687, 688
  time, 682
Reflex secretion, 490
Reflexes,
  cumulation of, 681
  inhibition of, *ib.*
  spreading of, *ib.*
  uterine, 691
Refraction, laws of, 789
Refractive media of eye, *ib.*
Reil, island of, 665, 669, 675, 676
Reissner's membrane, 758
Remak, fibres of, 95
  ganglion of, 253
Renal circulation, 214
  epithelium, activity of, 555
  oncometer, 554
Rennet, 473
Reproductive organs, 827 *et seq.*
Requisites of diet, 595
Reserve air, 357
Residual air, *ib.*
Resistance, peripheral, 260
Respiration, 343
  abdominal type, 353
  alteration in atmospheric pressure, 373
  breathing or tidal air, 356
  chemical cause of, 362
  chemistry of, 374
  effect on circulation, 366
  gases in relation to, 373, 377, 388
  influence of nervous system, 369
  mechanism of, 351 *et seq.*
  movements, 353
  nervous mechanism of, 359
    of vocal cords in, 770
  quantity of air changed, 356
  tissue, 384, 387, 388
Respirations, number of, in healthy person, 357
Respiratory acts, special, 364
  apparatus, 343
    development of, 882
  capacity of chest, 357
  movements of glottis, 356
    methods of recording, 353
  muscles, 351 *et seq.*
  muscular force of, 358
  nerve-centre, 359
  rate, 358
    relation to pulse-rate, *ib.*
      size of animal, *ib.*
  relation to will, 360 *et seq.*
  rhythm, 352, 368
  sounds, 355
Restiform bodies, 647, 652 *et seq.*
Rete testis, 830
Reticulum, 9
Retiform tissue, 46
Retina, 777, 782
  blind spot, 802, 814
  blood-vessels, 788

Retina—*continued*
  changes in, during activity, 813
  duration of impression on, 803
    of after-sensations, 811, 812
  electrical variations in, 815
  excitation of, 802
  focal distance of, 792
  fovea centralis, 783, 805
  functions of, 801
  identical points of, 818
  image on, how formed distinctly, 791
  layers, 783
  ora serrata, *ib.*
  pigment-cells, 100, 786
    movement of, 814
  pigments of, 814
  in relation to single vision, 816
  structure of, 782, 783
  visual purple, 785, 813, 814
Retinitis pigmentosa, 814
Retraction of eyeball, 815
Retractor lentis muscle, 796
Reymond, Du Bois, 711
Rheochord, 180
  Poggendorf's, *ib.*
Rheoscope, physiological, 145, 159
Rheoscopic frog, 145
Rheotome, 138
Rhodopsin or visual purple, 813
Rhythmicality of movement, 101, 158
Ricin, 453
Rigor mortis, 153, 154, 156
  affects all classes of muscles, 153, 154
  phenomena and causes of, 154
  physical basis of, 149
Rima glottidis, 766
Ringed amino-acids, 402, 403
Ritter's tetanus, 186
Rocci, Riva, his sphygmometer, 292
Rods and cones, 785, 814
Rolandic area, 669, 671, 695, 699, 701, 704
  injury of, 696
Rolando, fissure of, 674, 699, 876
Rollett's view of the red corpuscles, 429
Rose's test, 407
Roy's cardiometer, 246
  oncograph, 309
  oncometer, 309, 333
  tonometer, 257
Rubner, law of conservation of energy, 615
Rumination, 535
Rutherford's "sound-picture" theories, 763

S.

Saccharic acid, 394
Saccharoses, 393
St Martin, Alexis, case of, 481, 539
Saccule, 756
Salathe, effect of gravity on the circulation, 270
Saliva, 485, 490
  action of, 491
  composition, 491
  process of secretion, *ib.*
  reflex secretion, 490
  secretion following stimulation of nerves, 487 *et seq.*
Salivary glands, 485
  development of, 881
  digestion, 492
  extirpation of, 490
  influence of nervous system, 487, 488
    effect of section of, 487

Salivary glands—*continued*
structure, 485
Salkowski's reaction, 522
Salmine, 409
Sanderson's cardiograph, 239
Sanson's images, 793
Santorini's duct, 882
Saponification, 399, 505
Sarcolemma, 80
Sarcomeres, 83
Sarcoplasm, 81
Sarcosine, 571
Sarcostyles, 81
Scala media, 757
Scala tympani, 757, 762
Scala vestibuli, 757, 762
Scarpa, ganglion of, 655
Schäfer, heart plethysmograph, 258
experiments with liver cells, 517
researches on the structure of a sarcostyle, 83
views regarding the function of the Rolandic area, 704
Scheiner's experiment, 795
Schematic eye, 790
Schenk on muscular contraction, 132
Schiff's clip test, 704
Schlemm, canal of, 782
Schröder's experiment, 568
Schütz' law, 501
Schwann, white substance of, 176
Scleratogenous segment, 857
Sclero-proteins, 410
Sclerotic, 777, 778
development of, 878
Scotoma, 814
Scratch reflex, 687, 688
Scrotum, 890
Sebaceous glands, 589
Sebum, 589, 590
Secretin, 506
Secreting glands, 481 *et seq.*
classification of, 483
Secreting membranes. *See* Mucous *and* Serous membranes.
Secretion, internal, 328
of kidney, 560
pancreas, 505
reflex, 490
suprarenal, 339
thyroid, 336
Secretory nerves, 162
of pancreas, 506
of salivary glands, 487
effect of section of, 487
of stomach, 496
of sweat glands, 591
Segmentation of cells, 842
in chick, 845
nucleus, 841
ovum, 842
Semen, 830
spermatozoa, 830
Semicircular canals of ear, 755
development of, 879
structure, 719 *et seq.*
Semilunar valves. *See* Heart valves.
Seminiferous tubules, 828 *et seq.*
Semipermeable membranes, 323
Sensation, 728 *et seq.*
conception, 729
homologous stimuli, 731
nerves of, 162
pain, 730
perception, 729
subjective, 731
tactile, 718

Sense, organs of, development, 878, 879
Sensori-motor area, 695, 704
Sensory areas in cerebral cortex, 696
Sensory impressions, conduction of, by spinal cord, 678
in brain, 703 *et seq.*
Sensory nerve-endings in muscle, 736; in skin, 733
Serous alveoli, 486
Serous membranes, 206
Serum,
albumin, 410, 428
of blood, 421, 426, 428
globulin, 410, 428
Seventh cerebral nerve, 640, 653
Sexual organs in the female, 832
in the male, 827, 828
Sherrington,
observations on binocular flicker, 820
principal of the common path, 686
reciprocal action of antagonistic muscles, 684
Shingles, 825
Side-chain theory, 453
Sighing, mechanism of, 365
Sight. *See* Vision.
Silver nitrate reaction of cementing substance, 34
Simple tubular glands, 483
Sinus venosus, 864
Sinuses of Valsalva, 213
Sixth cerebral nerve, 640, 652
Skeletal muscles, 79
Skin, 585
absorption by, 590
dermis, 587
diseases, 593
epidermis of, 585
functions of, 590
nerve endings in, 733
papillæ of, 587
respiration, 590
rete mucosum of, 585
sebaceous glands of, 589
secretions, 590
sensory nerves of, 360
sweat, 590, 592
sweat-glands, 589
varnishing the, 593
Sleep, 711
Small intestine, 463 *et seq.* *See* Intestines.
Smell, sense of, 743 (*see* 703)
anatomy of regions, 748
delicacy of sense of, 751
tests for, 750
varies in different animals, 748
Smith, Lorrain, carbonic oxide method of estimating oxygen tension of arterial blood, 383
experiments on quantity of the blood, 420
Smith's perimeter, Priestly, 806
Sneezing, mechanism of, 364
Snoring, mechanism of, 365
Soap, 399
Sobbing, 365
Sodium chloride method, 413
Solitary glands. *See* Peyer's patches.
Solutions, gramme-molecular, 322
Somatic mesoblast, 847
Somatopleur, 844, 851
Somites, mesoblastic, 844, 854, 857
Sonorous vibrations, how communicated in ear, 759 *et seq.*
in air and in water, 760. *See* Sound.
Sorbite, 392
Soret's band, 447
Sound,
conduction by ear, 759
heart, 234

Sound—*continued*
production of, 771
Soup, value as food, 480
Spaces of Fontana, 782
Speaking, mechanism of, 773
Special senses, 733 *et seq.*
Specific nerve energy, law of, 732
Spectroscope, 444 *et seq.*
Speech, 764 *et seq.*, 773
centre, 702
defects of, 774
Spermatids, 829
Spermatocysts, 829, 841
Spermatogonia, 829
Spermatozoa, 827, 830, 831
form and structure of, 831
Spheno-palatine ganglion, 656
Spherical aberration, 798
correction of, *ib.*
Sphincter ani. *See* Defæcation.
pupillæ, 781
Sphygmographs, 288, 289
tracings, 289 *et seq.*
Sphygmometers, 292
Spinal accessory nerve, 641, 657
functions of, 658
origin, *ib.*
Spinal cord, 620
association fibres in, 630
canal of, 620
centres in, 690
columns of, 621
commissures of, 620
conduction of impressions by, 678 *et seq.*
course of fibres in, 625
development of, 871
fissures and furrows of, 620
functions of, 678 *et seq.*
of columns, 627
grey matter, 191, 622, 631
cells in, 622
hemisection, 631, 678
injuries of, 678, 681
membranes of, 618
morbid irritability of, 684
nerves of, 625
reflex action of, 680 *et seq.*
inhibition of, 681
in frog, 680
in man, 682
superficial, *ib.*
regions of, 631
special centres in, 690
structure of, 620 *et seq.*, 871
tracts, 611, 627, 678
transverse section of, 631
white matter, 191, 621
tracts in, 623
Spinal nerves, 168
functions of roots of, 168
origin of, 168 *et seq.*
physiology of, 168
Spinal visceral reflexes, 690
Spiral canal of ear, 756
Spiral ganglion, 759
Spiral ligament of ear, 757
Spirem, 17
Spirometer, 357
Splanchnic mesoblast, 846, 847
Splanchnopleur, 844
Spleen, 329
apparatus for splenic curves, 152
development, 882
functions, 331
influence of nervous system upon, 332
Malpighian corpuscles of, 331

Spleen—*continued*
pulp, 330
structure of, 329
trabeculæ of, *ib.*
Spongioblasts, 784, 871
Spongioplasm, 9
Spongy layer, 849
Spot, germinal, 836
Spring myograph, 114
Staircase phenomenon, 117, 159, 255
Stannius' experiment, 255
Stapedius muscle, 754, 761
Stapes, 753, 754, 761
development of, 861
Starch, 396
Starling, on swaying or pendulum movement of intestines, 543
on pancreatic secretion, 505, 506
on tendon phenomena, 685
Starvation, 603, 607
effects of, 604, 607
Steapsin, 503
Stearic acid, 398
Stearin, 44, 397
Steatolytic ferments, 417
Stercobilin, 521
Stereoscopic vision, 727, 822
Stethographs, 353, 354
Stewart's
experiments on the circulation of the blood, 286
on muscle proteins, 160
on the output of the heart, 246
Steyrer on paramyosinogen, 157
Stimulants as accessories to food, 480
Stimulation fatigue, 153
Stimuli, varieties of, 15, 102
Stokes' reagent, 444
Stolnikow, measurement of the heart's output, 245
Stomach, 460
blood-vessels, 463
development, 879
digestion in, 509, 543
glands, 461
lymphatics, 463
movements, 538
influence of nervous system on, 540
mucous membrane, 460
muscular coat, *ib.*
nerves, 463
peritoneal coat, 460
secretion of. *See* Gastric juice.
shadow photographs of, 539
submucous coat, 460
structure, *ib.*
Stomadæum, 858
Stomata, 25
Stratum granulosum, 586
intermedium of Hannover, 73
lucidum, 586
Striæ acousticæ, 640, 655
Striated border, 465 (*see* 25-27)
Striated muscle, 81 *et seq.* *See* Muscle.
Striate area, 727
Stroma, 429
Stromuhr, Ludwig's, 279
Tigerstedt's, 280, 281
Structure of cells, 9 *et seq.*
Stuart's kymoscope, 268
Sturine, 409
Stylo-hyoid ligaments, 861
Stylo-pharyngeus, 656
Submaxillary gland of dog, 486
Submaxillary and sublingual glands, 484, 487, 881

Submaxillary ganglion, 487
Substantia gelatinosa of Rolando, 622, 644, 646
  nigra, 650, 651
Subthalamic area, 666
Succagogues, 498
Succus entericus, 507, 508, 509
  functions of, 507
Sucroses, 393
Sugar. *See* Dextrose, Lactose, etc.
Sulci, 673-675
Sulphates in urine, 575
Summation-tones, 762
Superficial reflexes, 682
Superior laryngeal nerve, effects of stimulation of cut, 360
  olivary nucleus, 647
  parietal convolution, 676
Supra-renal capsules, 338
  development, 890 (*see* 340)
  function, 339
  structure, 338
Swallowing, 536
  centre, 537
  fluids, *ib.*
  nerves engaged, *ib.*
Sweat-glands. *See* Skin.
Swim-bladder of fishes, 380
Sylvius, fissure of, 674, 876
Sympathetic secretion, 489
Symphysis of jaw, 861
Synovial fluid, secretion of, 482
  membranes, *ib.*
Syntonin, 414
Syringomyelia, 679
Systemic circulation, 214. *See* Circulation.
Systole of heart, 231
Systolic pressure, 292

T.

Tache cérebrale, 310
Tactile end-organs, 733
  discs, 737
  sensibility, 704, 737
    variations in, 739
Talbot's law, 804
Tapetum lucidum, 804
Tarsus, 776
Taste, sense of (*see* 703)
  classification of, 746
  connection with smell, 743
  delicacy of, 747
  nerves of, 745
Taste-buds, *ib.*
Taurine, 520
Taurocholic acid, *ib.*
Taxis, positive and negative, 16
Teeth, 64
  development, 71
  eruption, times of, 66
  structure, 67 *et seq.*
  temporary and permanent, 66 *et seq.*
Tegmental nucleus, 649
Tegmentum, 649, 650
Telencephalon, 636, 875
Temperature, 609
  average of body, *ib.*
  changes of, effects, 609 *et seq.*
  circumstances modifying, 614
  effect on muscular contraction, 118
  of cold-blooded and warm-blooded animals, 609
  in disease, 610

Temperature—*continued*
  loss of, 614, 615
  maintenance of, 609
  of Mammalia, birds, etc., *ib.*
  regulation of, 615 *et seq.*
  sensation of variation of, 739. *See* Heat.
Temporo-occipital cerebellar fibres, 650
Temporo-sphenoidal lobe, 675
Tendon-reflexes, 683, 684
Tension, arterial, in asphyxia, 383
Tensor palati muscle, 760
  tympani muscle, 754, 761
    action of, 760
Terminal areas, 709, 710
Testicle, 827, 828
  development, 888
  descent of, *ib.*
  structure, 827 *et seq.*
Tetanus, 121 (*see* 141)
  Ritter's, 186
  voluntary, 122, 159
Thalamencephalon, 636
Thalami optici, 665
Theine, 480
Theobromine, *ib.*
Thoma-Zeiss hæmacytometer, 435, 436
Thoracic duct, 77, 223
  innervation of, 318
Throat deafness, 760
  ventricle, 766
Thrombin, 423
Thrombogen, 424
Thrombokinase, 424
Thymine, 403
Thymus gland, 334
  development, 882
  effects of removal, 335
  function, *ib.*
  structure, 334
Thyro-arytenoid muscle, 767
Thyro-epiglottidean muscle, 767
Thyroid cartilage, 764
Thyroid gland, 335
  development, 882
  function, 336
  structure, 335
Thyro-iodin, 337
  effect of intravenous injection of, on blood-pressure, 337, 341
Tigerstedt, measurement of the heart's output, 245
  Stromuhr, 280, 281
Timbre of voice, 759, 772
Tissue-erepsin, 531, 574
Tissue-respiration, 374, 384
Tongue, 743
  action in deglutition, 536
  epithelium of, 745
  muscles of, 743
  papillæ of, 743
  parts most sensitive to taste, 745
  structure of, 743
Tonometer, Roy's, 257
Tonsils, 458
Tonus, 130, 160, 684
Töpfer's test, 496
Touch, 733 *et seq.*
  muscular sense, 742
  sense of locality, 737
    of pressure, 739
    of temperature, 739
  tactile end organs, 733
Touch-corpuscles, 734
Toxin, 452
Trabeculæ cranii, 860
Trachea, 343, 882

Tract of Flechsig, 630
of Gowers, 630
of Lissauer, 626, 630
of Loewenthal, 628
Tracts in the spinal cord, 623, 627, 678, 679
of bulb, pons, and mid-brain, 651 *et seq.*
Transfusion of blood, 318
Transmission myograph, 122 (*see* 172)
Transverse axis of eyeball, 816
Trapezium, the, 647
Traube-Hering curves, 303, 304, 555
Triacetin, 398
Tricuspid valve, 211
Trigeminal nerve, 640, 653
function, 653
origin of, *ib.*
Trochlear nerve, 640, 652
origin of, 652
Trommer's test, 393
Trophic nerves, 162
influence of, 824
Tropœolin test, 496
Trypsin, action of, 504
Trypsinogen, 502
Tryptophane, 403
Tschistovitch's test, 455
Tubercle of Rolando, 644
Tubular glands, 469
Tubuli seminiferi, 827, 828, 830
uriniferi, 546 *et seq.*
Tubulo-racemose or tubulo-acinous glands, 484
Tunica albuginea of testicle, 828
dartos, 88
propria, 720
vaginalis, 828, 888
vasculosa, 780
Türck's column, 627
Tympanum or middle ear, 752
development, 879
membrane of, 752, 753
muscles of, 754
structure, 753
Tyrosine, 403, 511

U.

Umbilical arteries, 850, 862, 865
cord, 848, 855
vesicle, 848
Umbilicus, 845
Uncinate convolution, 676
Unicellular organisms, 6
Unilaminar blastoderm, 842
Unipolar nerve-cells, 193
Unorganised ferments, 417
Uræmia, 569
Urate of sodium, 579
Urates, deposit of, 579
Urea, 564
apparatus for estimating quantity, 566
chemical composition of, 564
difficulty of tracing, 557
formation of, by liver, 514, 567
isomeric with ammonium cyanate, 564
quantity, 567
Ureters, 545, 550, 885
Urethra, 545, 551, 879, 886
Uric acid, 571
condition in which it exists in urine, 574
deposit of, 578
forms in which it is deposited, 571, 578

Uric acid—*continued*
origin of, 564, 573
presence in the spleen, 332
proportionate quantity of, 573
tests, 571
Uricolytic ferment, 574
Urina potus, 564
Urinary apparatus, 545 *et seq.*
Urinary bladder, 551
development, 879, 886
nerves, 551
structure, *ib.*
Urinary deposits, 578 *et seq.*
Urine, 563 *et seq.*
analysis of, 564
bile in, 583
blood in, *ib.*
chemical sediments in, 580
colour, 563
composition, 564
cystine in, 579
expulsion, 561
flow into bladder, 561
hippuric acid in, 574
inorganic constituents, 575
mineral salts in, 575, 576
mucus in, 577
pathological, 581
phosphates in, 577, 579
physical characters, 563
pigments, *ib.*
proteins, 581
pus in, 584
quantity, 563
varies with blood-pressure, 554, 555
reaction of, 563
in different animals, 564
made alkaline by diet, *ib.*
saline matter, 564, 569
solids, 563
specific gravity of, 564
variations of, *ib.*
sugar in, 582 *et seq.*
tests for estimating, 582
tests for inorganic salts of, 578
urates, 579
urea, 564
uric acid in, 571
Urobilin, 521, 563
Urobilinogen, 563
Urochrome, 563
Uro-erythrin, 579
Uterine milk, 850
reflexes, 691
Uterus, 827, 836
change of mucous membrane of, 836
development in pregnancy, *ib.*
follicular glands of, *ib.*
round ligament of, 888
structure, 836
Uterus masculinus, 887
Utricle, 756
Uvea, 781

V.

Vaccination, 451
Vagina, 827
Vagina, development of, 887
Vago-sympathetic of frog, 248
Vagus escape, 249
nerve. *See* Pneumogastric.
pneumonia, 360, 825

Valsalva's experiment, 370
Valves of heart, 211. *See* Heart.
Valvulæ conniventes, 464
Vasa aberrantia, 885
Vas deferens, 828, 830
Vasa efferentia of testicle, 828, 830
Vasa vasorum, 216
Vascular system, development of, 861
  in asphyxia, 370
Vaso-constrictor nerves, 299
Vaso-dilator nerves, 300, 306, 488
Vaso-motor nerves,
  distribution of, 298
  effect of section, 298 *et seq.*
  experiments on, 305
  influence upon blood-pressure, 303
  of the liver, 528
  stimulation fatigue, 153
Vaso-motor nerve-centres, 297, 690
  nervous system, 297 *et seq.*
  reflex action, 303
Vegetables as food, 470, 479, 480
Vegetable cells, 5, 6
  protoplasmic movement in, 13, 14
Veins, 216
  allantoic, 865
  azygos, 867
  cardinal, 865
  circulation in, 295 *et seq.*
    velocity of, 285
  collateral circulation in, 217
  development, 865
  distribution, 216
  hepatic, 867
  iliac, 865, 867
  innominate, 866
  intercostal, 867
  jugular, 865, 866
  lumbar, 867
  omphalo-mesenteric, 850, 862, 865, 867
  pulmonary, 868
  pressure in, 273
  rhythmical action in, 296
  structure of, 217
  subclavian, 866
  umbilical, 856, 865
  valves of, 218 *et seq.*
Velocity head, 282
  pulse, 281
Velocity of blood in arteries, 278
    in capillaries, 280
    in veins, *ib.*
  of circulation, *ib.*
  of ferment action, 500, 501, 504
  of nervous impulse, 172
Vena azygos, 867
Vena cava, 867, 868
Venæ advehentes, 867
  revehentes, 867
Ventilation, 389
Ventral cerebellar tract, 630
Ventral hepato-pancreatic diverticulum, 882
Ventral vessels, 862
Ventricles of heart. *See* Heart.
Ventricular diastole, 232
  systole, *ib.*
Veratrine, effect of, on muscular contraction, 118
Vermicular movement of intestines, 541
Vernon, heat rigor experiment, 157
  on tissue-erepsin, 531
  pancreatic secretion, 507, 508
Vertebræ, development of, 856
Verworn, Max, strychnine and fatigue, 153
Vesicle, germinal, 20, 825
Vesiculæ seminales, 830

Vestibular nerve, 640
Vestibule of osseous internal ear, 755
Vibrations, conveyance of, to auditory nerve, 759 *et seq.*
Vierordt's hæmatachometer, 283
Villi in chorion, function of, 848, 849, 854
  of intestines, 465
Vincent, Swale, muscle proteins, 160
Visceral clefts and arches, development of, 858 *et seq.*
  connection with cranial nerves, 861
Visceral mesoblast, 843
  pain, 741, 742
Vision, 776
  angle of, 791
  at different distances, adaptation of eye to, 792 *et seq.*
  correction of aberration, 798 *et seq.*
    of inversion of image, 820
  defects of, 796 *et seq.*
  distinctness, how secured, 822 *et seq.*
  duration of sensation in, 803
  estimation of the size and form of objects, 820-822
  focal distance of, 792
  impaired by lesion of fifth nerve, 824
  range, 795
  relation of nerve-cells and fibres, 820
  single, with two eyes, 816 *et seq.*
Visual area, 703
  axis, 791, 816
  judgments, 820 *et seq.*
  plane, 817
  purple, 785, 813, 814
  sensations, 808
  word-centre, 708
Visuo-psychic region, 703
Visuo-sensory cortex, 703
Vital action, 326
Vitellin, 411
Vitelline duct, 880
  membrane, 20, 836
  spheres, 836
Vitello-intestinal duct, 846
Vitreous humour, 778, 788
Vocal cords, 764, 769
  action in respiratory actions, 770
  approximation of, effect on height of note, 771
  vibrations of, cause voice, 771, 772
Voice, 764 *et seq.*, 771
  range of, 772
Voit's diet, 471, 603, 604
Volition, 729
Volkmann's hæmadromometer, 278
Voluntary muscle, 79 *et seq.*
  nerves of, 86
Voluntary tetanus, 122, 159
Vomer, 860
Vomiting, 540
  action of stomach in, *ib.*
  centre, 541
  nerve actions in, *ib.*
  voluntary and acquired, *ib.*
Vowels and consonants, 773, 774

W.

Waldeyer, stages of karyokinesis, 17 *et seq.*
Wallerian degeneration method, 164, 169, 623, 714, 824, 826

Waller,
fatigue theory, 151-153
on the electrical currents of the eyeball, 815
"sound-picture" theories of, 763
variation in nerve action, 171
Water-hammer pulse, 288
Wave of blood causing the pulse, *ib.*
velocity of, *ib.*
Weber-Fechner law, 730
Weber's paradox, 129
Weigert's method, 705
Wertheimer's investigations into pancreatic secretion, 505
Whey protein, 473
White corpuscles. *See* Blood-corpuscles, white; *and* Lymph-corpuscles.
emigration of, 295
White fibro-cartilage, 51
fibrous tissue, 41
spot, 783
Widal's reaction, 454
Wirsung's duct, 882
Wolffian bodies, 865, 884 *et seq.*
duct, 863, 884
ridge, 846
Wooldridge's method of preparing tissue-fibrinogen, 413
Word-centres, 775
Worms, circulatory system in, 229
Wright, Hamilton, sleep theory, 713
Wrisberg, cartilages of, 765

X.

Xanthine, 332, 335, 573
presence in the spleen, 332
Xantho-proteic reaction, 407

Y.

Yawning, mechanism of, 365
Yeast plant, cells of, in process of budding, 416
Yellow elastic fibre, 37, 43
fibro-cartilage, 52
spot of Sömmering, 783, 805
Yolk-sac, 845, 850, 851
Yolk-spherules, 835
Young-Helmholtz theory, 809

Z.

Zona pellucida, or striata, 20, 835
Zonule of Zinn, 788
Zuntz, output of the heart, 246
on muscle respiration, 388
Zymogen, 424, 487, 494
Zymolysis, reversible, 596

PRINTED BY OLIVER AND BOYD, EDINBURGH.